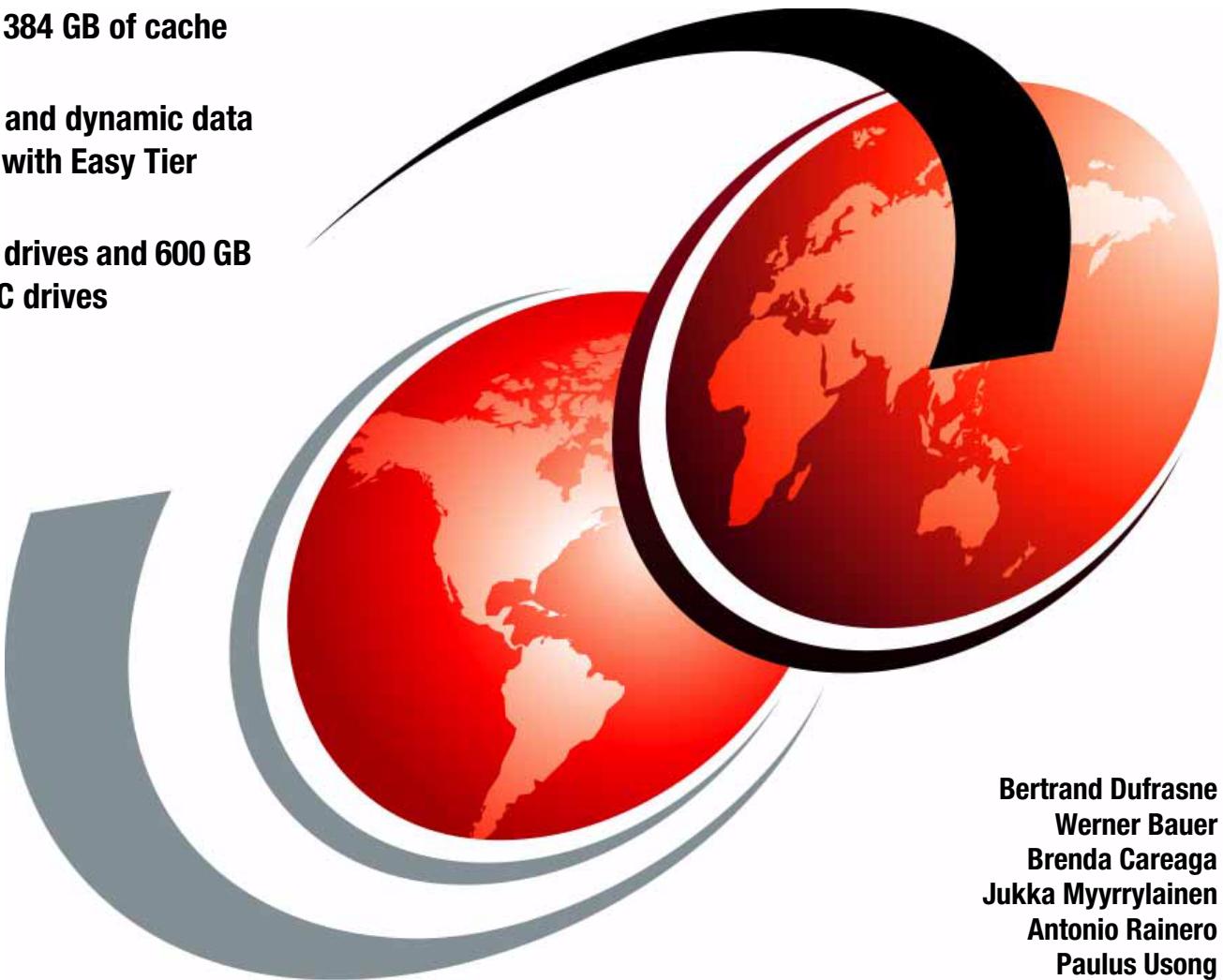


# IBM System Storage DS8700 Architecture and Implementation

Dual IBM POWER6 based controllers  
with up to 384 GB of cache

Automatic and dynamic data  
relocation with Easy Tier

2 TB SATA drives and 600 GB  
15K rpm FC drives



Bertrand Dufrasne  
Werner Bauer  
Brenda Careaga  
Jukka Myyrylainen  
Antonio Rainero  
Paulus Usong

# Redbooks





International Technical Support Organization

**IBM System Storage DS8700 Architecture and  
Implementation**

August 2010

**Note:** Before using this information and the product it supports, read the information in “Notices” on page xiii.

## **Second Edition (August 2010)**

This edition applies to the IBM System Storage DS8700 with DS8000 Licensed Machine Code (LMC) level 6.5.1.xx (bundle version 75.1.xx.xx).

**© Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 2010. All rights reserved.**

Note to U.S. Government Users Restricted Rights -- Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

# Contents

<b>Notices .....</b>	xiii
Trademarks .....	xiv
<b>Preface .....</b>	.xv
The team who wrote this book .....	.xv
Now you can become a published author, too! .....	.xvii
Comments welcome .....	.xviii
Stay connected to IBM Redbooks .....	.xviii
<b>Summary of changes .....</b>	.xix
August 2010, Second Edition .....	.xix
<b>Part 1. Concepts and architecture.....</b>	1
<b>Chapter 1. Introduction to the IBM System Storage DS8700 series.....</b>	3
1.1 The DS8700: A member of the DS family.....	4
1.2 DS8700 features and functions overview .....	7
1.2.1 Overall architecture and components .....	7
1.2.2 Storage capacity .....	10
1.2.3 Supported environments .....	11
1.2.4 Copy Services functions .....	11
1.2.5 DS8000 Thin Provisioning .....	14
1.2.6 Easy Tier.....	14
1.2.7 Service and setup .....	15
1.2.8 Configuration flexibility .....	15
1.2.9 IBM Certified Secure Data Overwrite .....	16
1.3 Performance features .....	17
1.3.1 Sophisticated caching algorithms .....	17
1.3.2 Solid State Drives .....	17
1.3.3 Multipath Subsystem Device Driver (SDD).....	18
1.3.4 Performance for System z .....	18
1.3.5 Performance enhancements for System p .....	19
1.3.6 Performance enhancements for z/OS Global Mirror .....	19
<b>Chapter 2. IBM System Storage DS8700 models .....</b>	21
2.1 DS8700 model overview .....	22
2.1.1 DS8700 Model 941 overview .....	23
2.1.2 Performance Accelerator feature (FC 1980) .....	26
2.2 Scalability for performance: Linear scalable architecture .....	28
<b>Chapter 3. Hardware components and architecture .....</b>	29
3.1 Frames .....	30
3.1.1 Base frame .....	30
3.1.2 Expansion frame .....	31
3.1.3 Rack operator window .....	32
3.2 DS8700 architecture .....	32
3.2.1 POWER6 processor .....	33
3.2.2 Peripheral Component Interconnect Express (PCI Express) .....	33
3.2.3 Device adapters and host adapters .....	35

3.2.4 Storage facility architecture .....	36
3.2.5 Server-based SMP design .....	37
3.3 Storage facility processor complex (CEC) .....	38
3.3.1 Processor memory and cache management .....	40
3.3.2 RIO-G .....	41
3.3.3 I/O enclosures .....	41
3.4 Disk subsystem .....	42
3.4.1 Device adapters .....	42
3.4.2 Disk enclosures .....	43
3.4.3 Disk drives .....	48
3.5 Host adapters .....	49
3.5.1 Fibre Channel/FICON host adapters .....	49
3.6 Power and cooling .....	50
3.7 Management console network .....	51
3.8 System Storage Productivity Center (SSPC) .....	52
3.9 Isolated Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM) server .....	53

#### **Chapter 4. Reliability, Availability, and Serviceability on the IBM System Storage DS8700 series**

4.1 Names and terms for the DS8700 storage system .....	56
4.2 RAS features of DS8700 CEC .....	57
4.2.1 POWER6 Hypervisor .....	57
4.2.2 POWER6 processor .....	58
4.2.3 AIX operating system .....	60
4.2.4 CEC dual hard drive rebuild .....	61
4.2.5 RIO-G interconnect .....	61
4.2.6 Environmental monitoring .....	62
4.2.7 Resource deallocation .....	62
4.3 CEC failover and fallback .....	63
4.3.1 Dual operational .....	63
4.3.2 Failover .....	65
4.3.3 Fallback .....	66
4.3.4 NVS and power outages .....	66
4.4 Data flow in DS8700 .....	67
4.4.1 New I/O enclosures .....	67
4.4.2 Host connections .....	68
4.4.3 Metadata checks .....	71
4.5 RAS on the HMC .....	71
4.5.1 Hardware .....	72
4.5.2 Microcode updates .....	72
4.5.3 Call Home and Remote Support .....	72
4.6 RAS on the disk subsystem .....	72
4.6.1 RAID configurations .....	72
4.6.2 Disk path redundancy .....	73
4.6.3 Predictive failure analysis .....	74
4.6.4 Disk scrubbing .....	74
4.6.5 RAID 5 overview .....	74
4.6.6 RAID 6 overview .....	75
4.6.7 RAID 10 overview .....	76
4.6.8 Spare creation .....	77
4.7 RAS on the power subsystem .....	79
4.7.1 Components .....	79
4.7.2 Line power loss .....	80

4.7.3 Line power fluctuation . . . . .	80
4.7.4 Power control . . . . .	80
4.7.5 Emergency power off . . . . .	81
4.8 RAS and Full Disk Encryption . . . . .	81
4.8.1 Deadlock recovery . . . . .	82
4.8.2 Dual platform TKLM servers . . . . .	83
4.9 Other features . . . . .	83
4.9.1 Internal network . . . . .	83
4.9.2 Remote support . . . . .	84
4.9.3 Earthquake resistance . . . . .	84
<b>Chapter 5. Virtualization concepts . . . . .</b>	<b>85</b>
5.1 Virtualization definition . . . . .	86
5.2 The abstraction layers for disk virtualization . . . . .	86
5.2.1 Array sites . . . . .	88
5.2.2 Arrays . . . . .	88
5.2.3 Ranks . . . . .	89
5.2.4 Extent Pools . . . . .	91
5.2.5 Logical volumes . . . . .	93
5.2.6 Space Efficient volumes . . . . .	96
5.2.7 Allocation, deletion, and modification of LUNs/CKD volumes . . . . .	99
5.2.8 Logical subsystems (LSS) . . . . .	105
5.2.9 Volume access . . . . .	108
5.2.10 Virtualization hierarchy summary . . . . .	109
5.3 Benefits of virtualization . . . . .	111
<b>Chapter 6. IBM System Storage DS8700 Copy Services overview . . . . .</b>	<b>113</b>
6.1 Copy Services . . . . .	114
6.2 FlashCopy and IBM FlashCopy SE . . . . .	115
6.2.1 Basic concepts . . . . .	115
6.2.2 Benefits and use . . . . .	117
6.2.3 Licensing requirements . . . . .	118
6.2.4 FlashCopy options . . . . .	118
6.2.5 FlashCopy SE options . . . . .	125
6.3 Remote Mirror and Copy . . . . .	125
6.3.1 Metro Mirror . . . . .	126
6.3.2 Global Copy . . . . .	127
6.3.3 Global Mirror . . . . .	128
6.3.4 Metro/Global Mirror . . . . .	131
6.3.5 z/OS Global Mirror . . . . .	133
6.3.6 z/OS Metro/Global Mirror . . . . .	133
6.3.7 Summary of the Copy Services function characteristics . . . . .	134
6.4 Interfaces for Copy Services . . . . .	135
6.4.1 Hardware Management Console . . . . .	136
6.4.2 DS Storage Manager . . . . .	136
6.4.3 DS Command-Line Interface . . . . .	137
6.4.4 Tivoli Storage Productivity Center for Replication . . . . .	137
6.4.5 DS Open application programming interface . . . . .	138
6.4.6 System z-based I/O interfaces . . . . .	138
6.5 Interoperability . . . . .	139
6.6 z/OS Global Mirror on zIIP . . . . .	139
<b>Chapter 7. Performance . . . . .</b>	<b>141</b>
7.1 DS8700 hardware: Performance characteristics . . . . .	142

7.1.1	Fibre Channel switched disk interconnection at the back end . . . . .	142
7.1.2	Fibre Channel device adapter. . . . .	145
7.1.3	Four-port host adapters . . . . .	146
7.1.4	IBM System p POWER6: Heart of the DS8700 dual cluster design . . . . .	146
7.1.5	Vertical growth and scalability. . . . .	148
7.2	Software performance enhancements: Synergy items . . . . .	148
7.2.1	End to end I/O priority: Synergy with AIX and DB2 on System p . . . . .	149
7.2.2	Cooperative caching: Synergy with AIX and DB2 on System p . . . . .	149
7.2.3	Long busy wait host tolerance: Synergy with AIX on System p . . . . .	149
7.2.4	HACMP-extended distance extensions: Synergy with AIX on System p . . . . .	149
7.3	Performance considerations for disk drives . . . . .	150
7.4	DS8000 superior caching algorithms . . . . .	153
7.4.1	Sequential Adaptive Replacement Cache. . . . .	153
7.4.2	Adaptive Multi-stream Prefetching . . . . .	155
7.4.3	Intelligent Write Caching . . . . .	155
7.5	Performance considerations for logical configuration . . . . .	157
7.5.1	Workload characteristics . . . . .	157
7.5.2	Data placement in the DS8000 . . . . .	157
7.5.3	Data placement. . . . .	158
7.5.4	Space Efficient volumes and repositories . . . . .	163
7.6	Performance and sizing considerations for open systems . . . . .	165
7.6.1	Determining the number of paths to a LUN. . . . .	165
7.6.2	Dynamic I/O load-balancing: Subsystem Device Driver (SDD). . . . .	165
7.6.3	Automatic port queues . . . . .	166
7.6.4	Determining where to attach the host . . . . .	166
7.7	Performance and sizing considerations for System z . . . . .	168
7.7.1	Host connections to System z servers . . . . .	168
7.7.2	Parallel Access Volume (PAV) . . . . .	169
7.7.3	z/OS Workload Manager: Dynamic PAV tuning . . . . .	171
7.7.4	HyperPAV . . . . .	172
7.7.5	PAV in z/VM environments . . . . .	175
7.7.6	Multiple Allegiance . . . . .	176
7.7.7	I/O priority queuing . . . . .	177
7.7.8	Performance considerations on Extended Distance FICON . . . . .	178
7.7.9	High Performance FICON for z. . . . .	180
7.7.10	Extended distance High Performance FICON . . . . .	181
<b>Part 2.</b>	<b>Planning and installation . . . . .</b>	183
<b>Chapter 8. Physical planning and installation . . . . .</b>		
8.1	Considerations prior to installation . . . . .	186
8.1.1	Who should be involved . . . . .	187
8.1.2	What information is required . . . . .	187
8.2	Planning for the physical installation . . . . .	188
8.2.1	Delivery and staging area . . . . .	188
8.2.2	Floor type and loading . . . . .	188
8.2.3	Room space and service clearance . . . . .	190
8.2.4	Power requirements and operating environment . . . . .	191
8.2.5	Host interface and cables . . . . .	193
8.3	Network connectivity planning . . . . .	194
8.3.1	Hardware Management Console and network access . . . . .	194
8.3.2	System Storage Productivity Center and network access . . . . .	195
8.3.3	DSCLI console . . . . .	196

8.3.4 DSCIMCLI.....	196
8.3.5 Remote support connection .....	196
8.3.6 Business-to-Business VPN connection.....	197
8.3.7 Remote power control.....	198
8.3.8 Storage area network connection .....	198
8.3.9 Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager server for encryption.....	198
8.3.10 Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server for single sign-on .....	200
8.4 Remote mirror and copy connectivity .....	200
8.5 Disk capacity considerations.....	201
8.5.1 Disk sparing .....	201
8.5.2 Disk capacity.....	201
8.5.3 Solid State Drive (SSD) considerations .....	203
8.5.4 Full Disk Encryption (FDE) disk considerations .....	204
8.6 Planning for growth .....	205
<b>Chapter 9. Hardware Management Console planning and setup.....</b>	<b>207</b>
9.1 Hardware Management Console overview .....	208
9.1.1 Storage Hardware Management Console hardware.....	208
9.1.2 Private Ethernet networks.....	209
9.2 Hardware Management Console software .....	209
9.2.1 DS Storage Manager GUI.....	210
9.2.2 Command-line interface .....	212
9.2.3 DS Open Application Programming Interface .....	215
9.2.4 Web-based user interface .....	215
9.3 HMC activities .....	217
9.3.1 HMC planning tasks .....	217
9.3.2 Planning for microcode upgrades .....	218
9.3.3 Time synchronization .....	219
9.3.4 Monitoring with the HMC.....	219
9.3.5 Call Home and remote support.....	220
9.4 HMC and IPv6.....	220
9.5 HMC user management .....	224
9.5.1 User management using the DS CLI .....	225
9.5.2 User management using the DS GUI .....	228
9.6 External HMC .....	232
9.6.1 External HMC benefits .....	233
9.6.2 Configuring DS CLI to use a second HMC .....	233
<b>Chapter 10. IBM System Storage DS8700 features and license keys .....</b>	<b>235</b>
10.1 IBM System Storage DS8700 licensed functions .....	236
10.2 Activation of licensed functions .....	238
10.2.1 Obtaining DS8700 machine information .....	239
10.2.2 Obtaining activation codes .....	241
10.2.3 Applying activation codes using the GUI.....	245
10.2.4 Applying activation codes using the DS CLI .....	249
10.3 Licensed scope considerations .....	250
10.3.1 Why you get a choice .....	251
10.3.2 Using a feature for which you are not licensed.....	251
10.3.3 Changing the scope to All .....	252
10.3.4 Changing the scope from All to FB .....	253
10.3.5 Applying an insufficient license feature key .....	254
10.3.6 Calculating how much capacity is used for CKD or FB.....	254
<b>Part 3. Storage configuration.....</b>	<b>257</b>

<b>Chapter 11. Configuration flow</b>	259
11.1 Configuration worksheets	260
11.2 Configuration flow	260
<b>Chapter 12. System Storage Productivity Center</b>	263
12.1 System Storage Productivity Center (SSPC) overview	264
12.1.1 SSPC components	264
12.1.2 SSPC capabilities	265
12.1.3 SSPC upgrade options	265
12.2 SSPC setup and configuration	267
12.2.1 Configuring SSPC for DS8700 remote GUI access	267
12.2.2 Manage embedded CIMOM on DS8700	275
12.2.3 Set up SSPC user management	277
12.2.4 Set up and discover DS8700 CIMOM from TPC	281
12.3 Maintaining TPC-BE for a DS8700 system	284
12.3.1 Schedule and monitor TPC tasks	284
12.3.2 Auditing TPC actions against the DS8700 system	285
12.3.3 Manually recover CIM Agent connectivity after HMC shutdown	286
12.4 Working with a DS8700 system in TPC-BE	286
12.4.1 Display and analyze the overall storage environment	286
12.4.2 Storage health management	294
12.4.3 Display host volumes through SVC to the assigned DS8700 volume	294
<b>Chapter 13. Configuration using the DS Storage Manager GUI</b>	295
13.1 DS Storage Manager GUI overview	296
13.1.1 Accessing the DS GUI	296
13.1.2 DS GUI Welcome window	302
13.2 Logical configuration process	304
13.3 Examples of configuring DS8700 storage	305
13.3.1 Define storage complex	305
13.3.2 Create arrays	308
13.3.3 Create ranks	315
13.3.4 Create Extent Pools	322
13.3.5 Configure I/O ports	330
13.3.6 Configure logical host systems	331
13.3.7 Create fixed block volumes	336
13.3.8 Create volume groups	341
13.3.9 Create LCUs and CKD volumes	343
13.3.10 Additional actions on LCUs and CKD volumes	349
13.4 Other DS GUI functions	352
13.4.1 Check the status of the DS8700	352
13.4.2 Explore the DS8700 hardware	354
<b>Chapter 14. Configuration with the DS Command-Line Interface</b>	359
14.1 DS Command-Line Interface overview	360
14.1.1 Supported operating systems for the DS CLI	360
14.1.2 User accounts	361
14.1.3 DS CLI profile	361
14.1.4 Command structure	363
14.1.5 Using the DS CLI application	363
14.1.6 Return codes	365
14.1.7 User assistance	366
14.2 Configuring the I/O ports	367
14.3 Monitoring the I/O ports	368

14.4 Configuring the DS8000 storage for FB volumes .....	370
14.4.1 Create arrays .....	370
14.4.2 Create ranks .....	371
14.4.3 Create Extent Pools .....	371
14.4.4 Creating FB volumes .....	374
14.4.5 Creating volume groups .....	379
14.4.6 Creating host connections .....	382
14.4.7 Mapping open systems host disks to storage unit volumes .....	383
14.5 Configuring DS8000 Storage for Count Key Data Volumes .....	386
14.5.1 Create arrays .....	386
14.5.2 Ranks and Extent Pool creation .....	386
14.5.3 Logical control unit creation .....	388
14.5.4 Create CKD volumes .....	389
<b>Part 4. Host considerations .....</b>	<b>397</b>
<b>Chapter 15. Open systems considerations .....</b>	<b>399</b>
15.1 General considerations .....	400
15.1.1 Getting up-to-date information .....	400
15.1.2 Boot support .....	401
15.1.3 Additional supported configurations .....	402
15.1.4 Multipathing support: Subsystem Device Driver .....	402
15.2 Windows .....	403
15.2.1 HBA and operating system settings .....	403
15.2.2 SSD for Windows .....	404
15.2.3 Windows 2003 and Multi Path Input Output .....	406
15.2.4 SSD Device Specific Module for Windows 2003 and 2008 .....	407
15.2.5 Windows 2008 and SDDDSM .....	410
15.2.6 Dynamic Volume Expansion of a Windows 2000/2003/2008 volume .....	411
15.2.7 Boot support .....	416
15.2.8 Windows Server 2003 Virtual Disk Service support .....	416
15.3 AIX .....	420
15.3.1 Finding the Worldwide Port Names .....	421
15.3.2 AIX multipath support .....	421
15.3.3 SSD for AIX .....	421
15.3.4 AIX Multipath I/O .....	424
15.3.5 LVM configuration .....	427
15.3.6 AIX access methods for I/O .....	428
15.3.7 Dynamic Volume Expansion .....	429
15.3.8 Boot device support .....	431
15.4 Linux .....	431
15.4.1 Support issues that distinguish Linux from other operating systems .....	432
15.4.2 Reference material .....	432
15.4.3 Important Linux issues .....	434
15.4.4 Troubleshooting and monitoring .....	441
15.5 OpenVMS .....	443
15.5.1 FC port configuration .....	443
15.5.2 Volume configuration .....	444
15.5.3 Command Console LUN .....	445
15.5.4 OpenVMS volume shadowing .....	446
15.6 VMware .....	447
15.6.1 VMware ESX Server 3 .....	448
15.6.2 VMware disk architecture .....	449

15.6.3 VMware setup and configuration .....	449
15.7 Sun Solaris .....	452
15.7.1 Locating the WWPNs of your HBAs .....	453
15.7.2 Solaris attachment to DS8000 .....	453
15.7.3 Multipathing in Solaris.....	454
15.7.4 Dynamic Volume Expansion with VxVM and DMP.....	457
15.8 Hewlett-Packard UNIX .....	462
15.8.1 Available documentation.....	463
15.8.2 DS8000-specific software.....	463
15.8.3 Locating the WWPNs of HBAs .....	463
15.8.4 Defining the HP-UX host for the DS8000 .....	464
15.8.5 Multipathing.....	466
<b>Chapter 16. IBM System z considerations .....</b>	<b>473</b>
16.1 Connectivity considerations .....	474
16.2 Operating systems prerequisites and enhancements.....	474
16.3 z/OS considerations .....	475
16.3.1 z/OS program enhancements.....	475
16.3.2 Parallel Access Volume definition.....	485
16.3.3 HyperPAV z/OS support and implementation.....	486
16.4 z/VM considerations .....	490
16.4.1 Connectivity .....	490
16.4.2 Supported DASD types and LUNs .....	490
16.4.3 PAV and HyperPAV z/VM support .....	490
16.4.4 Missing-interrupt handler.....	491
16.5 VSE/ESA and z/VSE considerations.....	491
16.6 Extended Distance FICON .....	492
16.6.1 Extended Distance FICON: Installation considerations .....	493
16.7 High Performance FICON for z with multitrack support .....	494
16.8 z/OS Basic HyperSwap.....	495
<b>Chapter 17. IBM System i considerations .....</b>	<b>499</b>
17.1 Supported environment.....	500
17.1.1 Hardware .....	500
17.1.2 Software .....	500
17.2 Logical volume sizes.....	500
17.3 Protected versus unprotected volumes.....	501
17.3.1 Changing LUN protection .....	502
17.4 Adding volumes to the System i configuration .....	502
17.4.1 Using the 5250 interface .....	502
17.4.2 Adding volumes to an Independent Auxiliary Storage Pool .....	506
17.5 Multipath .....	513
17.5.1 Avoiding single points of failure .....	513
17.5.2 Configuring multipath .....	514
17.5.3 Adding multipath volumes to System i using the 5250 interface.....	515
17.5.4 Adding multipath volumes to System i using System i Navigator .....	516
17.5.5 Managing multipath volumes using System i Navigator .....	517
17.5.6 Multipath rules for multiple System i hosts or partitions .....	520
17.5.7 Changing from a single path to multipath .....	520
17.6 Sizing guidelines .....	521
17.6.1 Planning for arrays and DDMs .....	521
17.6.2 Cache .....	522
17.6.3 Number of System i Fibre Channel adapters .....	522

17.6.4	Size and number of LUNs.....	522
17.6.5	Recommended number of ranks.....	523
17.6.6	Sharing ranks between System i and other servers .....	523
17.6.7	Connecting using SAN switches.....	523
17.7	Migration .....	524
17.7.1	Metro Mirror and Global Copy.....	524
17.7.2	IBM i data migration .....	525
17.8	Boot from SAN .....	526
17.8.1	Boot from SAN and cloning.....	526
17.8.2	Why consider cloning .....	527
<b>Part 5.</b>	<b>Maintenance and upgrades .....</b>	<b>529</b>
<b>Chapter 18. Licensed machine code.....</b> 531		
18.1	How new microcode is released .....	532
18.2	Bundle installation.....	532
18.3	DS8700 EFIXes .....	533
18.4	Concurrent and non-concurrent updates .....	534
18.5	Code updates .....	534
18.6	Host adapter firmware updates.....	534
18.7	Loading the code bundle.....	535
18.8	Post-installation activities .....	535
18.9	Summary.....	536
<b>Chapter 19. Monitoring with Simple Network Management Protocol .....</b> 537		
19.1	Simple Network Management Protocol overview .....	538
19.1.1	SNMP agent .....	538
19.1.2	SNMP manager .....	538
19.1.3	SNMP trap .....	538
19.1.4	SNMP communication.....	539
19.1.5	Generic SNMP security.....	540
19.1.6	Message Information Base .....	540
19.1.7	SNMP trap request .....	540
19.1.8	DS8000 SNMP configuration .....	541
19.2	SNMP notifications .....	541
19.2.1	Serviceable event using specific trap 3 .....	541
19.2.2	Copy Services event traps .....	542
19.3	SNMP configuration .....	549
<b>Chapter 20. Remote support .....</b> 551		
20.1	Introduction to remote support .....	552
20.1.1	Suggested reading .....	552
20.1.2	Organization of this chapter .....	552
20.1.3	Terminology and definitions .....	553
20.2	IBM policies for remote support .....	554
20.3	Remote connection types .....	555
20.3.1	Modem .....	555
20.3.2	IP network.....	557
20.3.3	IP network with traditional VPN.....	558
20.3.4	IP network with Business-to-Business VPN .....	558
20.4	DS8700 support tasks .....	559
20.4.1	Call Home and heartbeat (outbound) .....	559
20.4.2	Data offload (outbound) .....	560
20.4.3	Code download (inbound) .....	561

20.4.4 Remote support (inbound and two-way) . . . . .	561
20.5 Scenarios . . . . .	562
20.5.1 No connections . . . . .	562
20.5.2 Modem only . . . . .	562
20.5.3 Modem and network with no VPN. . . . .	563
20.5.4 Modem and traditional VPN . . . . .	564
20.5.5 Modem and Business-to-Business VPN. . . . .	565
20.6 Audit logging . . . . .	566
<b>Chapter 21. Capacity upgrades and Capacity on Demand</b> . . . . .	569
21.1 Installing capacity upgrades . . . . .	570
21.1.1 Installation order of upgrades . . . . .	571
21.1.2 Checking how much total capacity is installed . . . . .	572
21.2 Using Capacity on Demand . . . . .	573
21.2.1 What is Capacity on Demand . . . . .	574
21.2.2 How to tell if a DS8700 has CoD. . . . .	574
21.2.3 Using the CoD storage . . . . .	577
<b>Appendix A. Tools and service offerings</b> . . . . .	579
Capacity Magic. . . . .	580
Disk Magic . . . . .	581
HyperPAV Analysis . . . . .	582
FLASHDA. . . . .	582
IBM i SSD Analyzer Tool . . . . .	584
IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center . . . . .	584
IBM Certified Secure Data Overwrite . . . . .	585
Certificate of completion . . . . .	586
IBM Global Technology Services: Service offerings . . . . .	587
IBM STG Lab Services: Service offerings . . . . .	588
<b>Abbreviations and acronyms</b> . . . . .	589
<b>Related publications</b> . . . . .	593
IBM Redbooks publications . . . . .	593
Other publications . . . . .	593
Online resources . . . . .	594
How to get IBM Redbooks publications . . . . .	594
Help from IBM . . . . .	594
<b>Index</b> . . . . .	595

# Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

*IBM Director of Licensing, IBM Corporation, North Castle Drive, Armonk, NY 10504-1785 U.S.A.*

**The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:** INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you supply in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to the names and addresses used by an actual business enterprise is entirely coincidental.

## COPYRIGHT LICENSE:

This information contains sample application programs in source language, which illustrate programming techniques on various operating platforms. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM, for the purposes of developing, using, marketing or distributing application programs conforming to the application programming interface for the operating platform for which the sample programs are written. These examples have not been thoroughly tested under all conditions. IBM, therefore, cannot guarantee or imply reliability, serviceability, or function of these programs.

## Trademarks

IBM, the IBM logo, and ibm.com are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both. These and other IBM trademarked terms are marked on their first occurrence in this information with the appropriate symbol (® or ™), indicating US registered or common law trademarks owned by IBM at the time this information was published. Such trademarks may also be registered or common law trademarks in other countries. A current list of IBM trademarks is available on the Web at <http://www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml>

The following terms are trademarks of the International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both:

AIX 5L™	OS/390®	System Storage DS®
AIX®	Parallel Sysplex®	System Storage®
BladeCenter®	Power Architecture®	System x®
CICS®	POWER5™	System z10®
DB2®	POWER5+™	System z9®
DS4000®	POWER6®	System z®
DS6000™	PowerPC®	TDMF®
DS8000®	PowerVM™	Tivoli Enterprise Console®
ECKD™	POWER®	Tivoli®
Enterprise Storage Server®	Redbooks®	TotalStorage®
ESCON®	Redpapers™	WebSphere®
FICON®	Redbooks (logo)  ®	XIV®
FlashCopy®	Resource Link™	z/OS®
HACMP™	RMF™	z/VM®
HyperSwap®	S/390®	z/VSE™
i5/OS®	Solid®	z10™
IBM®	System i®	z9®
IMS™	System p®	zSeries®

The following terms are trademarks of other companies:

Java, and all Java-based trademarks are trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both.

Microsoft, Windows, and the Windows logo are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.

Intel Xeon, Intel, Intel logo, Intel Inside logo, and Intel Centrino logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Linux is a trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Other company, product, or service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

# Preface

This IBM® Redbooks® publication describes the concepts, architecture, and implementation of the IBM System Storage® DS8700 storage subsystem.

This book has reference information that will help you plan for, install, and configure the DS8700 and also discusses the architecture and components.

The DS8700 is the most advanced model in the IBM System Storage DS8000® series. It includes IBM POWER6®-based controllers, with a dual 2-way or dual 4-way processor complex implementation. Its extended connectivity, with up to 128 Fibre Channel/FICON® ports for host connections, make it suitable for multiple server environments in both open systems and IBM System z® environments. If desired, the DS8700 can be integrated in an LDAP infrastructure.

The DS8700 supports thin provisioning. Depending on your specific needs, the DS8700 storage subsystem can be equipped with SATA drives, FC drives, and Solid® State Drives (SSDs). The DS8700 can now automatically optimize the use of SSD drives through its no charge Easy Tier feature. The DS8700 also supports Full Disk Encryption (FDE) feature.

For additional information related to specific features, refer to the publications *IBM System Storage DS8700 Easy Tier*, REDP-4667, *IBM System Storage DS8700 Disk Encryption Implementation and Usage Guidelines*, REDP-4500, *DS8000 Thin Provisioning*, REDP-4554, *IBM System Storage DS8000: LDAP Authentication*, REDP-4505, and *DS8000: Introducing Solid State Drives*, REDP-4522.

Its switched Fibre Channel architecture, dual processor complex implementation, high availability design, and the advanced Point-in-Time Copy and Remote Mirror and Copy functions that incorporates make the DS8700 storage subsystem suitable for mission-critical business functions.

To read about DS8000 FlashCopy® or FlashCopy SE, and the set of Remote Mirror and Copy functions, refer to the IBM Redbooks publications *IBM System Storage DS8000: Copy Services in Open Environments*, SG24-6788, *DS8000 Copy Services for IBM System z*, SG24-6787, *IBM System Storage DS8000 Series: IBM FlashCopy SE*, REDP-4368, and *IBM System Storage DS8000: Remote Pair FlashCopy (Preserve Mirror)*, REDP-4504.

## The team who wrote this book

This book was produced by a team of specialists from around the world working at the International Technical Support Organization, San Jose Center.

**Bertrand Dufrasne** is an IBM Certified Consulting IT Specialist and Project Leader for IBM System Storage disk products at the International Technical Support Organization, San Jose Center. He has worked at IBM in various IT areas. Bertrand has written many IBM Redbooks publications and has also developed and taught technical workshops. Before joining the ITSO, he worked for IBM Global Services as an Application Architect in the retail, banking, telecommunication, and health care industries. He holds a Masters degree in Electrical Engineering from the Polytechnic Faculty of Mons, Belgium.

**Werner Bauer** is a certified consulting IT specialist in Germany. He has 29 years of experience in storage software and hardware as well with IBM S/390® and IBM z/OS®. His areas of expertise include disaster recovery solutions based on IBM enterprise disk storage subsystems. Werner is a frequent speaker at storage conferences and European GUIDE and SHARE meetings. He has also written extensively about the DS8000 series in other IBM Redbooks publications. He holds a degree in Economics from the University of Heidelberg and in Mechanical Engineering from FH Heilbronn.

**Brenda Careaga** is a Systems Engineer in the USA. Brenda has been working for Nestle for the past 7 years and is responsible for the design, implementation, and support of IBM System p® hardware and storage systems for North and South America, in addition to interfacing with offshore teams and managing/controlling changes being applied to Nestle's production environment. She holds an Master of Science degree in IT Software Engineering and has over 12 years of experience working with IBM AIX®, System p servers, and IBM high-end storage products. She has also participated and managed projects overseas, with international experience and exposure in Europe and Asia.

**Jukka Myyryläinen** is an Advisory IT Specialist in IBM Finland, providing storage services and technical support. He has 24 years of experience with IBM in the storage field. His areas of expertise include IBM high-end disk and tape storage subsystems and the design and implementation of storage solutions and data migration projects. He has co-authored several IBM Redbooks publications for IBM Enterprise Storage Systems. He holds a Masters degree in Mathematics from the University of Helsinki.

**Antonio Rainero** is a Certified IT Specialist working for Integrated Technology Services organization in IBM Italy. He joined IBM in 1998 and he has more than 10 years of experience in the delivery of storage services both for z/OS and open systems customers. His areas of expertise include storage subsystems implementation, performance analysis, storage area networks, storage virtualization, disaster recovery, and high availability solutions. Antonio holds a degree in Computer Science from University of Udine, Italy.

**Paulus Usong** started his IBM career in Indonesia decades ago. He rejoined IBM at the Silicon Valley Lab in San Jose. In 1995, he joined the ATS group, now known as the Advanced Technical Skills group. Currently, he is a Certified Consulting I/T Specialist. His main responsibilities are handling IBM System z disk storage subsystem performance critical situations and performing remote copy sizing for clients who want to implement the IBM solution for their disaster recovery system. Paulus holds a degree in Mechanical Engineering from Institut Teknologi Bandung, Indonesia.



*Figure 1 The team*

Thanks to the following people for their contributions to this project:

The authors of the previous edition of this book:

Steven Joseph, Robert Tondini, Jens Wissenbach, Roland Wolf

John Bynum  
**Worldwide Technical Support Management**

Peter Kimmel  
**IBM Germany**

Dale Anderson, James Davison, John Elliott, Denise Luzar, Stephen Manthorpe, Markus Navarro, Brian Rinaldi, Richard Ripberger, Kavita Shah, Cheng-Chong Sung  
**IBM USA**

## **Now you can become a published author, too!**

Here's an opportunity to spotlight your skills, grow your career, and become a published author - all at the same time! Join an ITSO residency project and help write a book in your area of expertise, while honing your experience using leading-edge technologies. Your efforts will help to increase product acceptance and customer satisfaction, as you expand your network of technical contacts and relationships. Residencies run from two to six weeks in length, and you can participate either in person or as a remote resident working from your home base.

Find out more about the residency program, browse the residency index, and apply online at:  
[ibm.com/redbooks/residencies.html](http://ibm.com/redbooks/residencies.html)

## Comments welcome

Your comments are important to us!

We want our books to be as helpful as possible. Send us your comments about this book or other IBM Redbooks publications in one of the following ways:

- ▶ Use the online **Contact us** review Redbooks form found at:

[ibm.com/redbooks](http://ibm.com/redbooks)

- ▶ Send your comments in an email to:

[redbooks@us.ibm.com](mailto:redbooks@us.ibm.com)

- ▶ Mail your comments to:

IBM Corporation, International Technical Support Organization  
Dept. HYTD Mail Station P099  
2455 South Road  
Poughkeepsie, NY 12601-5400

## Stay connected to IBM Redbooks

- ▶ Find us on Facebook:

<http://www.facebook.com/IBMRedbooks>

- ▶ Follow us on Twitter:

<http://twitter.com/ibmredbooks>

- ▶ Look for us on LinkedIn:

<http://www.linkedin.com/groups?home=&gid=2130806>

- ▶ Explore new Redbooks publications, residencies, and workshops with the IBM Redbooks weekly newsletter:

<https://www.redbooks.ibm.com/Redbooks.nsf/subscribe?OpenForm>

- ▶ Stay current on recent Redbooks publications with RSS Feeds:

<http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/rss.html>

# Summary of changes

This section describes the technical changes made in this edition of the book and in previous editions. This edition may also include minor corrections and editorial changes that are not identified.

Summary of Changes  
for SG24-8786-01  
for IBM System Storage DS8700 Architecture and Implementation  
as created or updated on February 11, 2011.

## August 2010, Second Edition

This revision reflects the addition, deletion, or modification of new and changed information described below.

### New information

- ▶ Easy Tier, including Dynamic Volume Relocation and Extent Pool Merge
- ▶ Multiple Global Mirror
- ▶ High Performance FICON - Extended Distance
- ▶ Thin provisioning support
- ▶ Active volume protection
- ▶ Disable Recovery key and rekey of encryption key
- ▶ Remote Pair FlashCopy (Preserve Mirror)

Note that the details of the Easy Tier feature, including Dynamic Volume Relocation and Extent Pool Merge topics, are covered in the IBM Redbooks publication *IBM System Storage DS8700 Easy Tier*, REDP-4667.

### Changed information

- ▶ New disk capacities
- ▶ Removed host attachment section
- ▶ Various updates to Chapter 6, “IBM System Storage DS8700 Copy Services overview” on page 113





# Part 1

# Concepts and architecture

This part gives an overview of the IBM System Storage DS8700 concepts and architecture. The topics covered include:

- ▶ Introduction to the IBM System Storage DS8700 series
- ▶ IBM System Storage DS8700 models
- ▶ Hardware components and architecture
- ▶ Reliability, Availability, and Serviceability on the IBM System Storage DS8700 series
- ▶ Virtualization concepts
- ▶ IBM System Storage DS8700 Copy Services overview





# Introduction to the IBM System Storage DS8700 series

This chapter introduces the features, functions, and benefits of the IBM System Storage DS8700 storage subsystem. This chapter is meant for readers who just want to get a comprehensive overview of the DS8700 functions and features. Details are covered in subsequent chapters.

The topics covered in the current chapter include:

- ▶ The DS8700: A member of the DS family
- ▶ DS8700 features and functions overview
- ▶ Performance features

## 1.1 The DS8700: A member of the DS family

IBM has a wide range of product offerings that are based on open standards and that share a common set of tools, interfaces, and innovative features. The System Storage DS® family is designed to offer high availability, multiplatform support, and simplified management tools, all to help you cost-effectively adjust to an on demand world.

The IBM System Storage DS8000 series encompasses the flagship disk enterprise storage products in the IBM System Storage portfolio, and the DS8700 represents the latest in this series.

The DS8700 is designed to support the most demanding business applications with its exceptional all-around performance and data throughput. This, combined with its world-class business resiliency and encryption features, provides a unique combination of high availability, performance, and security. Its tremendous scalability, broad server support, and virtualization capabilities can help simplify the storage environment by consolidating multiple storage systems onto a single DS8700.

Compared with its predecessors, the IBM System Storage DS8100 and IBM System Storage DS8300, the DS8700 introduces new functional capabilities, allowing you to choose the combination that is right for your application needs. New capabilities include:

- ▶ IBM POWER6 processor technology: The DS8700 features the IBM POWER6 server technology to help support high performance. Compared to the POWER5+™ processor in previous models, the POWER6 processor can deliver more than 50% performance improvement in I/O operations per second in transaction processing workload environments. Additionally, sequential workloads can receive as much as 150% bandwidth improvement. The DS8700 offers either a dual 2-way processor complex or a dual 4-way processor complex.
- ▶ Peripheral Component Interconnect Express (PCI Express Generation 2) IO enclosures: To improve I/O Operations Per Second (IOPS) and sequential read/write throughput, the new IO enclosures are directly connected to the internal servers with point-to-point PCI Express cables. IO enclosures no longer share common loops. They connect directly to each internal server via separate cables and link cards.
- ▶ Four-port device adapters: The device adapter processor hardware has been upgraded with processors that are twice as fast, providing more IOPS performance, and thus enabling better utilization of Solid State Drives (SSD).
- ▶ A nondisruptive upgrade path for the DS8700 Model 941 and additional Model 94E expansion frames allows processor, cache, and storage enhancement to be performed concurrently without disrupting applications.
- ▶ An improved DS GUI management interface with views mappings elements of the logical configuration to physical hardware components.
- ▶ Enhancements to disk encryption key management that can help address Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard (PCI-DSS) requirements:
  - Encryption deadlock recovery key option: When enabled, this option allows the user to restore access to a DS8700 when the encryption key for the storage is unavailable due to an encryption deadlock scenario.
  - Dual platform key server support: DS8000 requires an isolated key server in encryption configurations. The isolated key server currently defined is an IBM System x® server. Dual platform key server support allows two different server platforms to host the key manager with either platform operating in either *clear key* or *secure key* mode.

- ▶ Value based pricing/licensing: The Operating Environment License is now priced based on the performance, capacity, speed, and other characteristics that provide value in customer environments.

The Release 5.1 microcode (Licensed Machine Code level 6.5.1.xx) introduces new features to improve the efficiency, flexibility, and performance of the DS8700:

- ▶ DS8000 Thin Provisioning: This new feature allows the creation of over-provisioned devices for more efficient usage of the storage capacity.
- ▶ Quick Initialization for open system (FB) volumes: This new feature provides volume initialization that is up to 2.6 times faster and therefore allows the creation of devices and making them available as soon as the command completes.
- ▶ Active Volume Protection: This is a feature that prevents the deletion of volumes still in use.
- ▶ Easy Tier: This is a new feature that introduces dynamic data relocation capabilities. Configuration flexibility and overall storage cost-performance can greatly benefit from the exploitation of this feature.
- ▶ Storage Tier Advisor Tool: This tool is used in conjunction with the Easy Tier facility to help clients understand their current disk system workloads and provide guidance on how much of their existing data would be better suited for Solid State Drives (SSDs) and what data is better left on traditional spinning drives.

The Release 5.1 microcode also introduces some enhancements to existing features:

- ▶ High Performance FICON for System z (zHPF) Extended Distance capability: This new feature enhances zHPF write performance by supporting the zHPF “Disable Transfer Ready” protocol.
- ▶ Multiple Global Mirror Sessions: This allows creation of separate global mirror sessions so that separate applications can fail over to remote sites at different times. The support for this feature is available via RPQ only.
- ▶ Recovery key Enabling/Disabling and Rekey data key option for the Full Disk Encryption (FDE) feature: Both of these enhancements can help clients satisfy Payment Card Industry (PCI) security standards
- ▶ Remote Pair FlashCopy: This allows you to establish a FlashCopy relationship where the target is a remote mirror Metro Mirror primary volume keeping the pair in the *full duplex* state.

In addition to these new functions, the DS8700 inherits most of the features of its predecessors, the DS8100 and DS8300:

- ▶ Storage virtualization offered by the DS8000 series allows organizations to allocate system resources more effectively and better control application quality of service. The DS8000 series improves the cost structure of operations and lowers energy consumption through a tiered storage environment. The availability of Serial ATA (SATA) drives gives you the option to retain frequently accessed or high-value data on Fibre Channel (FC) disk drives and to archive less valuable information on the less costly SATA disk drives.
- ▶ The Dynamic Volume Expansion simplifies management by enabling easier, online volume expansion to support application data growth, and to support data center migrations to larger volumes to ease addressing constraints.
- ▶ The FlashCopy SE capability enables more Space Efficient utilization of capacity for copies, enabling improved cost effectiveness.

- ▶ System Storage Productivity Center (SSPC) single pane control and management integrates the power of the Tivoli® Storage Productivity Center (TPC) and the DS Storage Manager user interfaces into a single view.
- ▶ LDAP authentication support, which allows single sign-on functionality, can simplify user management by allowing the DS8700 to rely on a centralized LDAP directory rather than a local user repository. Refer to *IBM System Storage DS8000: LDAP Authentication*, REDP-4505 for more information.
- ▶ Storage Pool Striping helps maximize performance without special tuning.
- ▶ Adaptive Multistream Prefetching (AMP) is a breakthrough caching technology that can dramatically improve sequential performance, thereby reducing times for backup, processing for Business Intelligence, and streaming media.
- ▶ RAID 6 allows for additional fault tolerance by using a second independent distributed parity scheme (dual parity).
- ▶ The DS8000 series has been certified as meeting the requirements of the IPv6 Read Logo program, indicating its implementation of IPv6 mandatory core protocols and the ability to interoperate with other IPv6 implementations. The IBM DS8000 can be configured in native IPv6 environments. The logo program provides conformance and interoperability test specifications based on open standards to support IPv6 deployment globally.
- ▶ Extended Address Volume support extends the addressing capability of IBM System z environments. Volumes can scale up to approximately 223 GB (262,668 cylinders). This capability can help relieve address constraints to support large storage capacity needs. These Extended Address Volumes are supported by z/OS 1.10 or later versions.
- ▶ Optional Solid State Drives provide extremely fast access to data, energy efficiency, and higher system availability.
- ▶ Intelligent Write Caching (IWC) improves the Cache Algorithm for random writes. Specifically, database applications would benefit from the new IWC technology.
- ▶ The Full Disk Encryption (FDE) feature can protect business sensitive data by providing disk based hardware encryption combined with a sophisticated key management software (Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager). The Full Disk Encryption support feature is available only as a plant order. Refer to *IBM System Storage DS8700 Disk Encryption Implementation and Usage Guidelines*, REDP-4500 for more information.
- ▶ Business continuity

The DS8000 series is designed for the most demanding, mission-critical environments requiring extremely high availability. It is designed to avoid single points of failure. With the advanced Copy Services functions that the DS8000 series integrates, data availability can be enhanced even further. FlashCopy and FlashCopy SE allow production workloads to continue execution concurrently with data backups.

Metro Mirror, Global Copy, Global Mirror, Metro/Global Mirror, z/OS Global Mirror, and z/OS Metro/Global Mirror business continuity solutions are designed to provide the advanced functionality and flexibility needed to tailor a business continuity environment for almost any recovery point or recovery time objective. The DS8000 also offers three-site solutions with Metro/Global Mirror and z/OS Metro/Global Mirror for additional high availability and disaster protection. z/OS Global Mirror offers Incremental Resync, which can significantly reduce the time needed to restore a D/R environment after a HyperSwap® in a three-site Metro / z/OS Global Mirror configuration, once it is possible to change the copy target destination of a copy relation without requiring a full copy of the data. Another important feature for z/OS Global Mirror (2-site) and z/OS Metro/Global Mirror (3-site) is Extended Distance FICON, which can help reduce the need for channel extenders configurations by increasing the number of read commands in flight.

The Copy Services can be managed and automated with IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center for Replication (TPC-R).

## 1.2 DS8700 features and functions overview

The IBM System Storage DS8700 is a high-performance, high-capacity series of disk storage subsystems. It offers balanced performance and storage capacity that scales linearly up to hundreds of terabytes.

The IBM System Storage DS8700 highlights include:

- ▶ Robust, flexible, enterprise class, and cost-effective disk storage
- ▶ Exceptionally high system availability for continuous operations
- ▶ Centralized and simplified management
- ▶ IBM POWER6 processor technology
- ▶ Capacities from 1.1 TB to 614/2048 TB (FC/SATA)
- ▶ An eight drive install group of Solid State Drive (SSD). This feature offers the support of an eight drive install group of SSD (half disk drive set), providing additional price/performance and capacity flexibility to help address application and business requirements.
- ▶ Point-in-time copy function with FlashCopy, FlashCopy SE, or Remote Pair FlashCopy, and Remote Mirror and Copy functions with Metro Mirror, Global Copy, Global Mirror, Metro/Global Mirror, z/OS Global Mirror, and z/OS Metro/Global Mirror with Incremental Resync capability
- ▶ Thin Provisioning features
- ▶ Dynamic data relocation facilities with Easy Tier
- ▶ Support for a wide variety and intermix of OSs, including IBM System i® and System z
- ▶ Designed to increase storage efficiency and utilization, the DS8000 can be part of a Green Data Center

### 1.2.1 Overall architecture and components

From an architectural point of view, the DS8700 offers continuity with respect to the fundamental architecture of the predecessor DS8100 and DS8300 models. This ensures that the DS8700 can use a stable and well-proven operating environment, offering the optimum in availability. The hardware is optimized to provide higher performance, connectivity, and reliability.

The DS8700 is available with different features. The available features are discussed in detail in Chapter 2, “IBM System Storage DS8700 models” on page 21.

Figure 1-1 shows a front view (rack door open) of the base DS8700 frame.



Figure 1-1 DS8700: Base frame (front)

### IBM POWER6 processor technology

The DS8700 exploits the IBM POWER6 technology. The SMP system features 2-way or 4-way, copper-based, silicon on insulator (SOI) based POWER6 microprocessors running at 4.7 GHz.

Compared to the POWER5+ processor in previous models, the POWER6 processor can enable over a 50% performance improvement in I/O operations per second in transaction processing workload environments. Additionally, sequential workloads can receive as much as 150% bandwidth improvement. The DS8700 offers either a dual 2-way processor complex or a dual 4-way processor complex. A processor complex is referred to as a storage server or Central Electronic Complex (CEC).

## **Internal fabric**

DS8700 uses direct point-to-point high speed PCI Express connections to the I/O enclosures to communicate with the device and host adapters. Each single PCI Express connection operates at a speed of 2 Gbps in each direction. There are up to 16 PCI Express connections from the processor complexes to the I/O enclosures.

## **Switched Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop (FC-AL)**

The DS8700 uses switched FC-AL for its disk interconnection. This offers a point-to-point connection to each drive and device adapter, so that there are four paths available from the controllers to each disk drive.

## **Fibre Channel disk drives**

The DS8700 offers a selection of industry standard Fibre Channel disk drives, including 300 GB (15K rpm), 450 GB (15K rpm), and 600 GB (15K rpm). The 600 GB 15K rpm Fibre Channel Disk Drive allows a single system to scale up to 614 TB of Fibre Channel capacity. This support is in addition to the already supported 73 GB (15,000 rpm), 146 GB (15,000 rpm) Fibre Channel disk drive sets. The DS8700 series also allows customers to install Full Disk Encryption drive sets.

**Note:** The 600 GB FC disk drives support is available on DS8700 with DS8000 Licensed Machine Code (LMC) level 6.5.1.xx (bundle version 75.1.xx.xx) or later.

## **Serial ATA drives**

With the 2 TB SATA drives, the DS8700 capacity scales up to 2 PB (1024 TB = 1 petabyte = 1 PB). The SATA drives offer a cost-effective option for lower priority data. This support is in addition to the already supported 1 TB (7,200 rpm) SATA disk drive sets.

**Note:** The 2 TB SATA disk drives support is available is available on DS8700 with DS8000 Licensed Machine Code (LMC) level 6.5.1.xx (bundle version 75.1.xx.xx) or later.

## **Solid State Drives**

With the Solid State Drives (SSD), which are available in 73 GB and 146 GB, the DS8700 offers opportunities for ultra high performance applications. The SSD drives are the best choice for I/O intensive workload. They provide up to 100 times the throughput and 10 times lower response time than 15K rpm spinning disks. Additionally, they also consume much less power.

For more information about SSDs, refer to *DS8000: Introducing Solid State Drives*, REDP-4522.

## **Host adapters**

The DS8000 series offers host connectivity with four-port Fibre Channel/FICON host adapters. The DS8700 currently supports 4 Gbps Fibre Channel/FICON host adapters.

The 4 Gbps Fibre Channel/FICON Host Adapters are offered in longwave and shortwave, and auto-negotiate to either 4 Gbps, 2 Gbps, or 1 Gbps link speeds. Each port on the adapter can be individually configured to operate with Fibre Channel Protocol (FCP) (also used for mirroring) or FICON.

A DS8700 with the dual 4-way feature can support up to a maximum of 32 host adapters, which provide up to 128 Fibre Channel/FICON ports. Note that ESCON® adapters are no longer supported.

## **Storage Hardware Management Console for the DS8700**

The Hardware Management Console (HMC) is one of the focal points for configuration, Copy Services management, and maintenance activities. The management console is a dedicated workstation (mobile computer) that is physically located (installed) inside the DS8700 and can proactively monitor the state of your system, notifying you and IBM when service is required. It can also be connected to your network to enable centralized management of your system using the IBM System Storage DS Command-Line Interface or storage management software utilizing the IBM System Storage DS Open API.

The HMC supports the IPv4 and IPv6 standards. For further information about IPv4 and IPv6, refer to 8.3, “Network connectivity planning” on page 194.

Client and IBM services can also connect to the Hardware Management Console through a web-base unit interface (WUI), which is connected to the client network. This connection brings improved response time for remote HMC operations. The connection uses a standard SSL based authentication with encryption capability and user ID and password protection.

An external management console is available as an optional feature and can be used as a redundant management console for environments with high availability requirements.

## **IBM System Storage Productivity Center management console**

The DS8000 series leverages the IBM System Storage Productivity Center (SSPC), an advanced management console that can provide a view of both IBM and non-IBM storage environments. SSPC can enable a greater degree of simplification for organizations grappling with the growing number of element managers in their environment. The SSPC is an external System x server with pre-installed software, including IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center Basic Edition.

Utilizing IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center (TPC) Basic Edition software, SSPC extends the capabilities available through the IBM DS Storage Manager. SSPC offers the unique capability to manage a variety of storage devices connected across the storage area network (SAN). The rich, user-friendly graphical user interface provides a comprehensive view of the storage topology, from which the administrator can explore the health of the environment at an aggregate or in-depth view. Moreover, the TPC Basic Edition, which is pre-installed on the SSPC, can be optionally licensed and used to enable more in-depth performance reporting, asset and capacity reporting, automation for the DS8000, and to manage other resources, such as server file systems, tape drives, and libraries.

## **Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM) isolated key server**

The Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager software performs key management tasks for IBM encryption enabled hardware, such as the IBM System Storage DS8000 Series family and IBM encryption-enabled tape drives, by providing, protecting, storing, and maintaining encryption keys that are used to encrypt information being written to, and decrypt information being read from, encryption enabled disks.

For DS8700 storage subsystems shipped with Full Disk Encryption (FDE) drives, two TKLM key servers are required. An isolated key server (IKS) with dedicated hardware and non-encrypted storage resources is required and can be ordered from IBM.

### **1.2.2 Storage capacity**

The physical capacity for the DS8700 is purchased through disk drive sets. A disk drive set contains sixteen identical disk drive modules (DDMs), which have the same capacity and the same revolutions per minute (rpm).

In addition, SSD drives can be now be ordered in eight drive install groups (half disk drive set). This provides additional capacity and price/performance options to address specific application and business requirements. As with HDDs, it is possible to order 16 drive install groups (a disk drive set) for SSDs as well.

For additional flexibility, feature conversions are available to exchange existing disk drive sets.

In the first frame, there is space for a maximum of 128 disk drive modules (DDMs) and each Expansion Frame can contain 256 DDMs. With a maximum of 1024 DDMs, the DS8700 model with the dual 4-way feature, using 600 GB drives, provides up to 614 TB of storage capacity with four Expansion Frames. When using 2 TB SATA drives, you can scale up your storage to 2048 TB or 2PB of raw capacity.

The DS8000 can be configured as RAID 5, RAID 6, RAID 10, or as a combination (some restrictions apply for Full Disk Encryption (FDE) and Solid State Drives).

### **IBM Standby Capacity on Demand offering for the DS8700**

Standby Capacity on Demand (Standby CoD) provides *standby* on demand storage for the DS8700 that allows you to access the extra storage capacity whenever the need arises. With CoD, IBM installs up to four disk drive sets (64 disk drives) in your DS8000. At any time, you can logically configure your CoD drives, concurrently with production, and you are automatically charged for the capacity.

#### **1.2.3 Supported environments**

The DS8700 offers connectivity support across a broad range of server environments, including System z, IBM System p, System i, and System x servers, servers from Sun and Hewlett-Packard, and non-IBM Intel®-based servers.

The DS8700 supports over 90 platforms. For the most current list of supported platforms, refer to the DS8000 System Storage Interoperation Center at:

<http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/ssic/index.jsp>

This rich support of heterogeneous environments and attachments, along with the flexibility to easily partition the DS8700 storage capacity among the attached environments, can help support storage consolidation requirements and dynamic, changing environments.

#### **1.2.4 Copy Services functions**

For the IT environments that cannot afford to stop their systems for backups, the DS8700 provides a fast replication technique that can provide a point-in-time copy of the data in a few seconds or even less. This function is called *FlashCopy*.

For data protection and availability needs, the DS8700 provides Metro Mirror, Global Mirror, Global Copy, Metro/Global Mirror, and z/OS Global Mirror, which are Remote Mirror and Copy functions. These functions are also available and are fully interoperable with previous models of the DS8000 family and even the ESS 800 and 750 models. These functions provide storage mirroring and copying over large distances for disaster recovery or availability purposes.

We discuss Copy Services in Chapter 6, “IBM System Storage DS8700 Copy Services overview” on page 113.

## **FlashCopy**

The primary objective of FlashCopy is to quickly create a point-in-time copy of a source volume on a target volume. The benefits of FlashCopy are that the point-in-time target copy is immediately available for use for backups or testing and that the source volume is immediately released so that applications can continue processing with minimal application downtime. The target volume can be either a logical or physical copy of the data, with the latter copying the data as a background process. In a z/OS environment, FlashCopy can also operate at a data set level.

The following sections summarize the options available with FlashCopy.

### ***Multiple Relationship FlashCopy***

Multiple Relationship FlashCopy allows a source to have FlashCopy relationships with up to 12 targets simultaneously.

### ***Incremental FlashCopy***

Incremental FlashCopy provides the capability to *refresh* a LUN or volume involved in a FlashCopy relationship. When a subsequent FlashCopy is initiated, only the data required to make the target current with the source's newly established point-in-time is copied.

### ***FlashCopy to a remote mirror primary***

FlashCopy to a remote mirror primary lets you establish a FlashCopy relationship where the target is a remote mirror (Metro Mirror or Global Copy) primary volume. While the background copy task is copying data from the source to the target, the remote mirror pair goes into a *copy pending* state.

### ***Remote Pair FlashCopy***

Remote Pair FlashCopy provides improvement to resiliency solutions by ensuring data synchronization when a FlashCopy target is also a Metro Mirror source. This keeps the local and remote site consistent which facilitates recovery, supports HyperSwap, and reduces link bandwidth utilization. Refer to *IBM System Storage DS8000: Remote Pair FlashCopy (Preserve Mirror)*, REDP-45044 for more information.

**Note:** The Remote Pair FlashCopy support is available on DS8700 with DS8000 Licensed Machine Code (LMC) level 6.5.1.xx (bundle version 75.1.xx.xx) or later.

### ***Consistency Groups***

Consistency Groups can be used to maintain a consistent point-in-time copy across multiple LUNs or volumes, or even multiple DS8000, ESS 800, and ESS 750 systems.

### ***Inband commands over remote mirror link***

In a remote mirror environment, inband FlashCopy allows commands to be issued from the local or intermediate site and transmitted over the remote mirror Fibre Channel links for execution on the remote DS8000. This eliminates the need for a network connection to the remote site solely for the management of FlashCopy.

## **IBM FlashCopy SE**

The IBM FlashCopy SE feature provides a “space efficient” copy capability that can greatly reduce the storage capacity needed for point-in-time copies. Only the capacity needed to save pre-change images of the source data is allocated in a copy repository. This enables more space efficient utilization than is possible with the standard FlashCopy function. Furthermore, less capacity can mean fewer disk drives and lower power and cooling requirements, which can help reduce costs and complexity. FlashCopy SE might be

especially useful in the creation of temporary copies for tape backup, online application checkpoints, or copies for disaster recovery testing. For more information about FlashCopy SE, refer to *IBM System Storage DS8000 Series: IBM FlashCopy SE*, REDP-4368.

## **Remote Mirror and Copy functions**

The Remote Mirror and Copy functions include Metro Mirror, Global Copy, Global Mirror, and Metro/Global Mirror. There is also z/OS Global Mirror for the System z environments. As with FlashCopy, Remote Mirror and Copy functions can also be established between DS8000 systems and ESS 800/750 systems.

The following sections summarize the Remote Mirror and Copy options available with the DS8000.

### ***Metro Mirror***

Metro Mirror, previously called Peer-to-Peer Remote Copy (PPRC), provides a synchronous mirror copy of LUNs or volumes at a remote site within 300 km.

### ***Global Copy***

Global Copy, previously called Extended Distance Peer-to-Peer Remote Copy (PPRC-XD), is a non-synchronous long distance copy option for data migration and backup.

### ***Global Mirror***

Global Mirror provides an asynchronous mirror copy of LUNs or volumes over virtually unlimited distances. The distance is typically limited only by the capabilities of the network and channel extension technology being used.

**Note:** LMC level 6.5.1.xx.xx enables the Multiple Global Mirror Sessions feature for the DS8700. This allows creation of separate global mirror sessions so that separate applications can fail over to remote sites at different times. A SCORE/RPQ must be submitted for the full support of this feature.

### ***Metro/Global Mirror***

Metro/Global Mirror is a three-site data replication solution for both Open Systems and the System z environments. Local site (site a) to intermediate site (site b) provides high availability replication using synchronous Metro Mirror, and intermediate site (site b) to remote site (site c) provides long distance disaster recovery replication using asynchronous Global Mirror.

### ***z/OS Global Mirror***

z/OS Global Mirror, previously called Extended Remote Copy (XRC), provides an asynchronous mirror copy of volumes over virtually unlimited distances for the System z. It now provides increased parallelism through multiple SDM readers (Multiple Reader capability).

### ***z/OS Metro/Global Mirror***

This is a combination of Copy Services for System z environments that uses z/OS Global Mirror to mirror primary site data to a remote location that is at a long distance and also that uses Metro Mirror to mirror the primary site data to a location within the metropolitan area. This enables a z/OS three-site high availability and disaster recovery solution. Now z/OS Global Mirror offers Incremental Resync, which can significantly reduce the time needed to restore a DR environment after a HyperSwap in a three-site z/OS Metro/Global Mirror configuration, once it is possible to change the copy target destination of a copy relation without requiring a full copy of the data.

## 1.2.5 DS8000 Thin Provisioning

In addition to FlashCopy SE, the DS8700 now also offers the Thin Provisioning feature that allows for volume over-provisioning. With the DS8000 Thin Provisioning feature, it is possible to create space efficient volumes designed for standard host access. The possible benefits are a more efficient usage of the storage capacity and reduced storage management requirements, hence improving cost efficiency and reducing the total cost of ownership (TCO). For detailed information about DS8000 Thin Provisioning, refer to *DS8000 Thin Provisioning*, REDP-4554.

**Note:** The DS8000 Thin Provisioning is a DS8700 firmware feature available with LIC level 6.5.1.xx or later.

## 1.2.6 Easy Tier

Easy Tier is a DS8700 built-in dynamic data relocation feature that allows a host transparent movement of data among the storage subsystem resources. This improves significantly the configuration flexibility and the performance tuning and planning.

**Note:** Easy Tier is a no charge feature of the DS8700. It is not supported on systems with the Full Disk Encryption (FDE) feature.

Easy Tier can operate in two modes:

- ▶ Easy Tier Automatic Mode

Easy Tier automatic mode is a facility that autonomically manages the capacity allocated in a DS8700 Extent Pool containing mixed disk technology (HDD + SSD) in order to place the most demanding pieces of data (hot data) on the appropriate storage media. The data relocation is at the extent level. This improves significantly the overall storage cost-performance ratio and simplifies the performance tuning and management.

- ▶ Easy Tier Manual Mode

Easy Tier manual mode allows a set of manual initiated actions to relocate data among the storage subsystem resources in dynamic fashion, that is, without any disruption of the host operations. The Easy Tier Manual Mode capabilities are *Dynamic Volume Relocation* and *Dynamic Extent Pool Merge*. Dynamic Volume Relocation allows a DS8700 volume to be migrated to the same or different Extent Pool. Dynamic Extent Pool Merge allows an Extent Pool to be merged to another Extent Pool. By combining these two capabilities, we can improve greatly the configuration flexibility of the DS8700.

**Note:** Easy Tier is a DS8700 firmware function available with LMC level 6.5.1.xx or later. An additional no cost LIC feature must be order and installed.

Easy Tier provides a performance monitoring capability whether or not the licensed feature is activated. This monitoring capability enables workload data collection that can be off loaded and further processed with the *Storage Tiering Advisor Tool*. Providing a graphical representation of hot data distribution at the volume level, this powerful tool allows you to analyze the workload characteristics and evaluate the benefits of the higher performance possible with the Solid State Drive technology.

Refer to *IBM System Storage DS8700 Easy Tier*, REDP-4667 for more information.

## 1.2.7 Service and setup

The installation of the DS8700 is performed by IBM in accordance with the installation procedure for this machine. The client's responsibility is the installation planning, retrieval and installation of feature activation codes, and logical configuration planning and execution.

For maintenance and service operations, the Storage Hardware Management Console (HMC) is the focal point. The management console is a dedicated workstation that is physically located (installed) inside the DS8700 storage subsystem and that can automatically monitor the state of your system, notifying you and IBM when service is required.

We recommend having a dual HMC configuration, particularly when using Full Disk Encryption.

The HMC is also the interface for remote services (Call Home and Call Back), which can be configured to meet client requirements. It is possible to allow one or more of the following:

- ▶ Call on error (machine-detected)
- ▶ Connection for a few days (client-initiated)
- ▶ Remote error investigation (service-initiated)

The remote connection between the management console and the IBM Service organization is done using a virtual private network (VPN) point-to-point connection over the internet or modem. A new secure SSL connection protocol option is now available for call home support and additional audit logging.

The DS8700 can be ordered with an outstanding four year warranty, an industry first, on both hardware and software.

## 1.2.8 Configuration flexibility

The DS8000 series uses virtualization techniques to separate the logical view of hosts onto LUNs from the underlying physical layer, thus providing high configuration flexibility. Virtualization is discussed in Chapter 5, "Virtualization concepts" on page 85.

### **Dynamic LUN/volume creation, deletion, and expansion**

The DS8000 gives a high degree of flexibility in managing storage, allowing LUNs to be created and deleted non-disruptively. Also, when a LUN is deleted, the freed capacity can be used with other free space to form a LUN of a different size. A LUN can also be dynamically increased in size.

### **Large LUN and large count key data (CKD) volume support**

You can configure LUNs and volumes to span arrays, allowing for larger LUN sizes up to 2 TB. The new maximum CKD volume size is 262,668 cylinders (about 223 GB), greatly reducing the number of volumes to be managed and creating a new volume type on z/OS called 3390 Model A. This new capability is referred to as Extended Address Volumes and requires z/OS 1.10 or later.

### **Flexible LUN to LSS association**

With no predefined association of arrays to LSSs on the DS8000 series, users are free to put LUNs or CKD volumes into LSSs and make best use of the 256 address range, overcoming previous ESS limitations, particularly for System z.

## **Simplified LUN masking**

The implementation of volume group-based LUN masking (as opposed to adapter-based masking, as on the ESS) simplifies storage management by grouping all or some WWPNs of a host into a Host Attachment. Associating the Host Attachment to a Volume Group allows all adapters within it access to all of the storage in the Volume Group.

## **Dynamic data relocation**

The Easy Tier feature provides a set of capabilities that allow the user to dynamically relocate data among the disk hardware resources. LUNs can be migrated to the same or a different Extent Pool using the Dynamic Volume Relocation capability. With the Dynamic Extent Pool Merge capability, an Extent Pool can be merged with another Extent Pool. Combining these two capabilities can greatly improve the configuration flexibility of the DS8700.

## **Thin provisioning features**

The DS8700 provides two different types of space efficient volumes, Track Space Efficient volumes and Extent Space Efficient volumes. Both these features enable over-provisioning capabilities that provide the customers with benefits in terms of more efficient usage of the storage capacity and reduced storage management requirements.

## **Logical definitions: Maximum values**

Here is a list of the current DS8000 maximum values for the major logical definitions:

- ▶ Up to 255 logical subsystems (LSS)
- ▶ Up to 65280 logical devices
- ▶ Up to 1280 paths per FC port
- ▶ Up to 2 TB LUNs
- ▶ Up to 262,668 cylinder CKD volumes, which is provided by a functionality called Extended Address Volumes
- ▶ Up to 8192 process logins (509 per SCSI-FCP port)

### **1.2.9 IBM Certified Secure Data Overwrite**

Sometimes regulations and business prudence require that the data actually be removed when the media is no longer needed.

An STG Lab Services Offering for all the DS8000 series and the ESS models 800 and 750 includes the following services:

- ▶ Multi-pass overwrite of the data disks in the storage subsystem
- ▶ Purging of client data from the server and HMC disks

**Note:** The secure overwrite functionality is offered as a service exclusively and is not intended for use by clients, IBM Business Partners, or IBM field support personnel.

To discover more about the IBM Certified Secure Data Overwrite service offerings, refer to Appendix A, “Tools and service offerings” on page 579 and contact your IBM sales representative or IBM Business Partner.

## 1.3 Performance features

The IBM System Storage DS8700 offers optimally balanced performance. This is possible because the DS8700 incorporates many performance enhancements, such as the dual 2-way and dual 4-way POWER6 processor complex implementation, faster device adapters, Fibre Channel disk drives, Solid State Drives, and the high bandwidth, fault-tolerant point-to-point PCI Express internal interconnections.

With all these components, the DS8700 is positioned at the top of the high performance category.

### 1.3.1 Sophisticated caching algorithms

IBM Research conducts extensive investigations into improved algorithms for cache management and overall system performance improvements.

#### **Sequential Prefetching in Adaptive Replacement Cache (SARC)**

One of the performance enhancers of the DS8700 is its self-learning cache algorithm, which improves cache efficiency and enhances cache hit ratios. This algorithm, which is used in the DS8000 series, is called Sequential Prefetching in Adaptive Replacement Cache (SARC).

SARC provides the following abilities:

- ▶ Sophisticated, patented algorithms to determine what data should be stored in cache based upon the recent access and frequency needs of the hosts
- ▶ Pre-fetching, which anticipates data prior to a host request and loads it into cache
- ▶ Self-learning algorithms to adaptively and dynamically learn what data should be stored in cache based upon the frequency needs of the hosts

#### **Adaptive Multi-stream Prefetching (AMP)**

Adaptive Multi-stream Prefetching is a breakthrough caching technology that improves performance for common sequential and batch processing workloads on the DS8000. AMP optimizes cache efficiency by incorporating an autonomic, workload responsive, and self-optimizing prefetching technology.

#### **Intelligent Write Caching (IWC)**

IWC improves performance through better write cache management and destaging order of writes. It can double the throughput for random write workload. Specifically, database workloads benefit from this new IWC Cache algorithm.

SARC, AMP, and IWC play complementary roles. While SARC is carefully dividing the cache between the RANDOM and the SEQ lists so as to maximize the overall hit ratio, AMP is managing the contents of the SEQ list to maximize the throughput obtained for the sequential workloads. IWC manages the write cache and decides what order and rate to destage to disk.

### 1.3.2 Solid State Drives

To improve data transfer rate (IOPS) and response time, the DS8000 series provides support for Solid State Drives (SSD). Solid State Drives have improved I/O transaction-based performance over traditional platter-based drives. The DS8000 initially offers Solid State Drives in 73 GB and 146 GB capacities, with a nominal 150,000 rpm speed, reflecting the drives' enhanced seek time performance. Solid State Drives are a high-IOPS class enterprise storage device targeted at Tier 0, I/O intensive workload applications that can use high level of fast-access storage. Furthermore, the usage of the Solid State Drives technology in

conjunction with the Easy Tier Automatic Mode facility provide significant advantages for performance tuning and storage configuration management and a remarkable improvement of the overall storage cost to performance ratio.

Solid State Drives offer a number of potential benefits over Hard Disk Drives, including better IOPS performance, lower power consumption, less heat generation, and lower acoustical noise.

The DS8700 can even take better advantage of Solid Disk Drives because of its faster device adapters compared to previous models of the DS8000 family.

### 1.3.3 Multipath Subsystem Device Driver (SDD)

The Multipath Subsystem Device Driver (SDD) is a pseudo-device driver on the host system designed to support the multipath configuration environments in IBM products. It provides load balancing and enhanced data availability capability. By distributing the I/O workload over multiple active paths, SDD provides dynamic load balancing and eliminates data-flow bottlenecks. SDD also helps eliminate a potential single point of failure by automatically rerouting I/O operations when a path failure occurs.

SDD is provided with the DS8000 series at no additional charge. Fibre Channel (SCSI-FCP) attachment configurations are supported in the AIX, HP-UX, Linux®, Windows®, Novell NetWare, and Sun Solaris environments.

**Note:** Support for multipath is included in an IBM i server as part of Licensed Internal Code and the IBM i operating system (i5 / OS).

For more information about SDD, refer to 15.1.4, “Multipathing support: Subsystem Device Driver” on page 402.

### 1.3.4 Performance for System z

The DS8000 series supports the following IBM performance enhancements for System z environments:

- ▶ *Parallel Access Volumes* (PAV) enable a single System z server to simultaneously process multiple I/O operations to the same logical volume, which can help to significantly reduce device queue delays. This is achieved by defining multiple addresses per volume. With Dynamic PAV, the assignment of addresses to volumes can be automatically managed to help the workload meet its performance objectives and reduce overall queuing. PAV is an optional feature on the DS8000 series.
- ▶ *HyperPAV* is designed to enable applications to achieve equal or better performance than with PAV alone, while also using fewer Unit Control Blocks (UCBs) and eliminating the latency in targeting an alias to a base. With HyperPAV, the system can react immediately to changing I/O workloads.
- ▶ *Multiple Allegiance* expands the simultaneous logical volume access capability across multiple System z servers. This function, along with PAV, enables the DS8000 series to process more I/Os in parallel, helping to improve performance and enabling greater use of large volumes.
- ▶ *I/O priority queuing* allows the DS8000 series to use I/O priority information provided by the z/OS Workload Manager to manage the processing sequence of I/O operations.
- ▶ *High Performance FICON for z (zHPF)* reduces the impact associated with supported commands on current adapter hardware, thereby improving FICON throughput on the

DS8000 I/O ports. The DS8700 also supports the new zHPF I/O commands for multi-track I/O operations. With LMC level 6.5.1.xx.xx, the zHPF feature has been further enhanced by the implementation of the zHPF *Disable Transfer Ready* protocol. This introduces the *High Performance FICON Multi-track Extended Distance* capability, which provides higher throughput for longer distances.

Chapter 7, “Performance” on page 141 gives you more information about the performance aspects of the DS8000 family.

### 1.3.5 Performance enhancements for System p

Many System p users can benefit from the following DS8000 features:

- ▶ End-to-end I/O priorities
- ▶ Cooperative caching
- ▶ Long busy wait host tolerance
- ▶ Automatic Port Queues

More information about these performance enhancements can be found in Chapter 7, “Performance” on page 141.

### 1.3.6 Performance enhancements for z/OS Global Mirror

Many users of z/OS Global Mirror, which is the System z-based asynchronous disk mirroring capability, will benefit from the DS8000 enhancement “z/OS Global Mirror suspend instead of long busy option”. In the event of high workload peaks, which can temporarily overload the z/OS Global Mirror configuration bandwidth, the DS8000 can initiate a z/OS Global Mirror SUSPEND, preserving primary site application performance, which is an improvement over the previous LONG BUSY status.

Consider the following points:

- ▶ All users of z/OS Global Mirror benefit from the DS8000’s “z/OS Global Mirror Multiple Reader” support. This recent enhancement spreads the z/OS Global Mirror workload across more than a single reader. In the event of high workload peaks restricted to a few volumes, which can mean restricted to a single reader, the peak demand can now be balanced across a set of up to 16 readers. This enhancement provides more efficient use of the site-to-site network capacity, a higher single volume throughput capability, and an environment that can effectively use Parallel Access Volumes.
- ▶ Extended Distance FICON is a recently introduced capability that can help reduce the need for channel extenders in z/OS Global Mirror configurations by increasing the numbers of read commands in flight.

Refer to *DS8000 Copy Services for IBM System z*, SG24-6787 for a detailed discussion of z/OS Global Mirror and related enhancements.





# IBM System Storage DS8700 models

This chapter provides an overview of the DS8700 storage subsystem, the different models, and how well they scale regarding capacity and performance.

## 2.1 DS8700 model overview

The DS8700 series includes the DS8700 Model 941 base frame and the associated DS8700 Expansion Unit Model 94E.

- ▶ DS8700 Model 941

This model is available as either a dual 2-way processor complex with installation enclosures for 64 DDMs and eight FC adapter cards, a dual 2-way processor complex with enclosures for 128 DDMs and 16 FC adapter cards, or a dual 4-way processor complex with enclosures for 128 DDMs and 16 FC adapter cards.

**Note:** Model 941 supports nondisruptive upgrades from dual 2-way to dual 4-way.

- ▶ DS8700 Model 94E

This expansion frame for the 941 model includes enclosures for additional DDMs and additional FC adapter cards to allow a maximum configuration of 32 FC adapter cards. The Expansion Unit 94E can only be attached to the 941 4-way processor complex. Up to four expansion frames can be attached to a Model 941. FC adapter cards can only be installed in the first expansion frame.

- ▶ Former 92E expansion frames can be reused in the DS8700 as third, fourth, and fifth frames.
- ▶ A model 941 supports nondisruptive upgrades from a 64 DDM install to a full four expansion rack unit.

Table 2-1 provides a comparison of the DS8700 model 941 and its available combination of resources.

*Table 2-1 DS8700 series model comparison 941 and additional resources*

Base model	Images	Expansion model	Processor type	Max DDMs	Max processor memory	Max host adapters
941	1	None	2-way 4.7 GHz	<= 64	<=128 GB	<= 8
941	1	None	2-way 4.7 GHz	<= 128	<=128 GB	<= 16
941	1	None	4-way 4.7 GHz	<= 64	<= 384 GB	<= 16
		1 x 94E		<= 384		<= 32
		2 x 94E		<= 640		
		3 x 94E		<= 896		
		4 x 94E		<= 1024		

Depending on the DDM sizes, which can be different within a 941 or 94E, and the number of DDMs, the total capacity is calculated accordingly.

Each Fibre Channel/FICON host adapter has four Fibre Channel ports, providing up to 128 Fibre Channel ports for a maximum configuration.

## Machine type 242x

DS8700 series models are associated to machine type 242x, exclusively. This machine type corresponds to the more recently available “Enterprise Choice” length of warranty offer that allows a 1 year, 2 year, 3 year, or 4 year warranty period ( $x=1, 2, 3, \text{ or } 4$ , respectively). The 94E expansion frame has the same 242x machine type as the base unit.

### 2.1.1 DS8700 Model 941 overview

The DS8700 Model 941, shown in Figure 2-1, has the following features:

- ▶ Two processor complexes, each with a IBM System p POWER6 4.7 GHz 2-way or 4-way Central Electronic Complex (CEC).
- ▶ A 2-way configuration requires two battery packs. A 4-way configuration requires three battery packs.
- ▶ A base frame with up to 128 DDMs for a maximum base frame disk storage capacity of 256 TB with SATA DDMs.
- ▶ Up to 128 GB (2-way) or 384 GB (4-way) of processor memory, also referred to as the *cache*. Note that the DS8700 supports concurrent cache upgrades.
- ▶ Up to 16 four-port Fibre Channel/FICON host adapters (HAs) of 4 Gbps. Each port can be independently configured as either:
  - FCP port to open systems hosts attachment
  - FCP port for Metro Mirror, Global Copy, Global Mirror, and Metro/Global Mirror connectivity
  - FICON port to connect to System z hosts
  - FICON port for z/OS Global Mirror connectivity
  - This totals up to 64 ports with any mix of FCP and FICON ports
- ▶ The DS8700 Model 941 can connect up to four expansion frames (Model 94E/92E). Figure 2-1 displays a front view of a DS8700 Model 941 and 94E with the covers off.

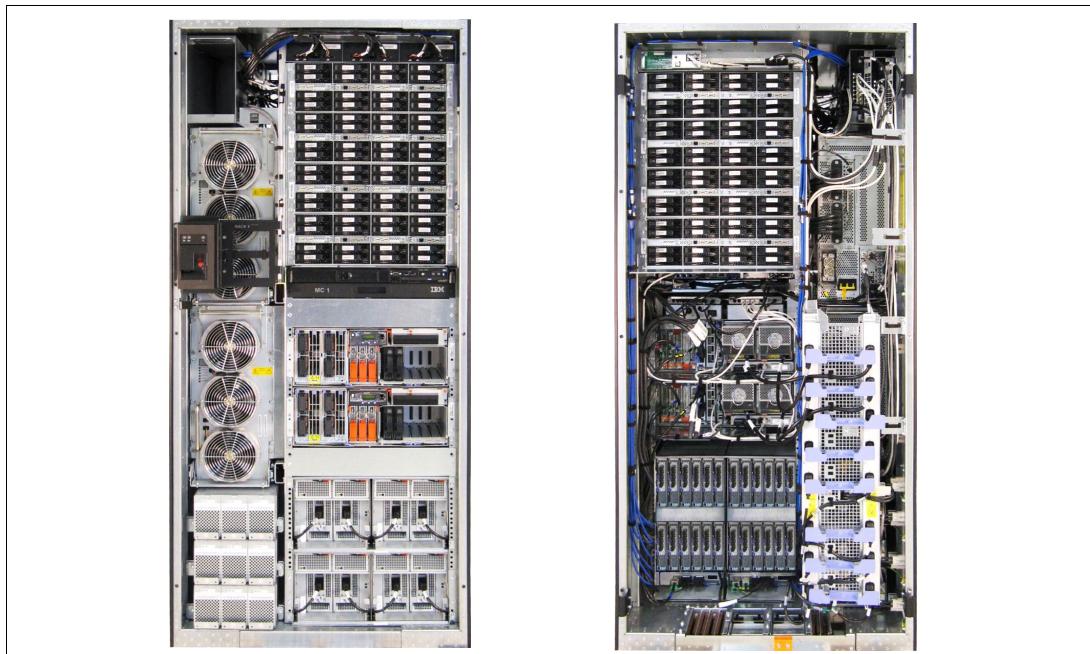


Figure 2-1 DS8700 base frame with covers removed: Front and rear

Figure 2-2 shows the maximum configuration for a DS8700 Model 941 base frame with one 94E expansion frame. It shows the placement of the hardware components within the frames.

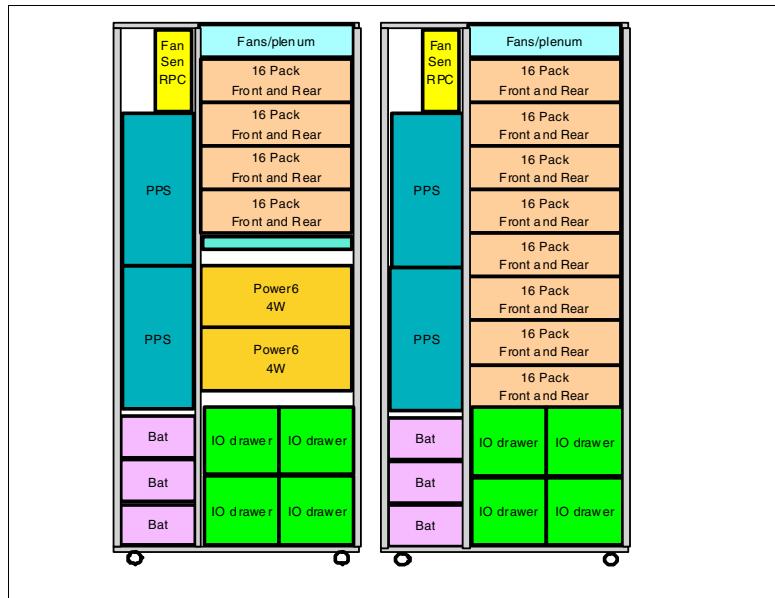


Figure 2-2 DS8700 configuration: 941 base unit with one 94E expansion frame

There are no additional I/O enclosures installed for the second, third, and fourth expansion frames. The result of installing all possible 1024 DDMs is that they will be distributed evenly over all the device adapter (DA) pairs (for an explanation of DA pairs, refer to 3.4.1, “Device adapters” on page 42). The installation sequence for the third and fourth expansion frames mirrors the installation sequence of the first and second expansion frames with the exception of the last 128 DDMs in the fourth expansion frame, as shown in Figure 2-3.

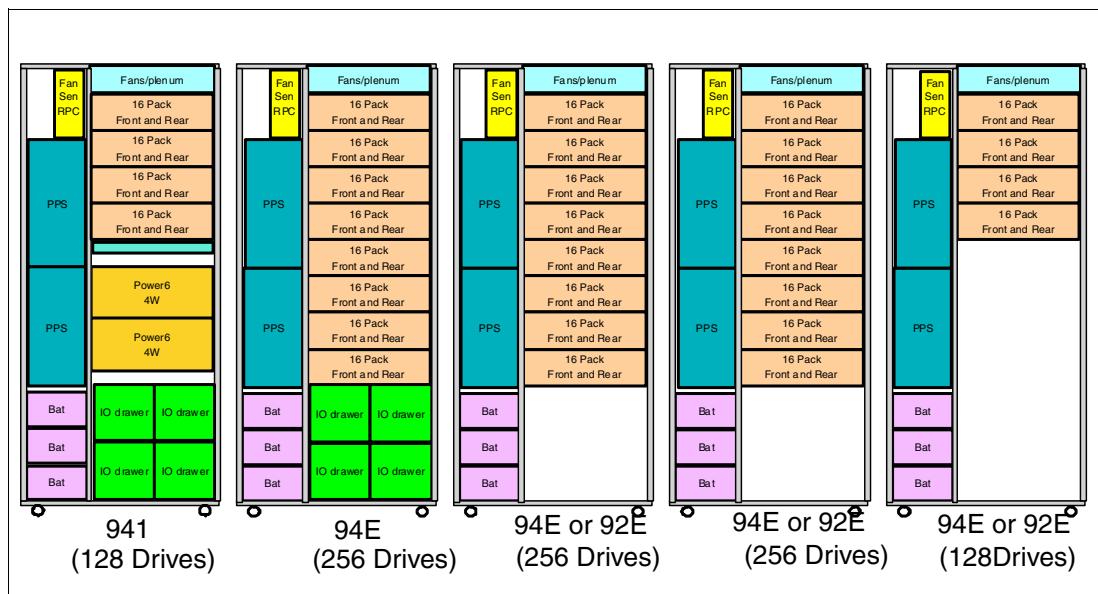


Figure 2-3 DS8700 models 941/94E maximum configuration with 1024 disk drives

The DS8700 series can now contain 600 GB (15K RPM) Fibre Channel (FC) disk drives and the 2 TB (7,200 RPM) Serial ATA (SATA) disk drives. This support is in addition to the already supported 73 GB (15,000 rpm), 146 GB (15,000 rpm), 300 GB (15,000 rpm), and 450 GB

(15,000 rpm) Fibre Channel disk drive sets, as well as the 1 TB (7,200 rpm) SATA disk drive sets.

Besides FC and SATA hard disk drives (HDDs), it is also possible to install 73 GB and 146 GB Solid State Drives (SSDs) in the DS8700. SSD drives can be ordered in 16 drive install groups (disk drive set), like HDD drives, or in eight drive install groups (half disk drive set). There are some restrictions about how many SSDs drives are supported and how configurations are intermixed. For additional information about supported SSD configurations, refer to *IBM System Storage DS8700 Easy Tier*, REDP-4667.

The DS8700 can be ordered with Full Disk Encryption (FDE) drives, with a choice of 300 GB (15K RPM) and 450 GB (15K RPM) FC drives. You cannot intermix FDE drives with other drives in a DS8700 system. For additional information about FDE drives, refer to *IBM System Storage DS8700 Disk Encryption Implementation and Usage Guidelines*, REDP-4500.

- ▶ The DS8700 model 941 can have up to 128 DDMs and 16 FC adapter cards in the 2-way configuration.
- ▶ The DS8700 model 941 can have up to 1024 DDMs and 32 FC adapter cards in the 4-way configuration.

We summarize the capacity characteristics in Table 2-2. The minimum capacity is achieved by installing one eight drive group of 73 GB SSD drives.

*Table 2-2 Capacity comparison of device adapters, DDMs, and storage capacity*

Component	2-way base frame with one I/O tower pair	2-way and 4-way base with two I/O tower pairs	4-way (one expansion frame)	4-way (four expansion frames)
DA pairs	1	1 to 2	1 to 8	1 to 8
HDDs	Up to 64 increments of 16	Up to 128 increments of 16	Up to 384 increments of 16	Up to 1024 increments of 16
SSDs	Up to 32 increments of 8	Up to 64 increments of 8	Up to 192 increments of 8	Up to 256 increments of 8
Physical capacity	0.6 to 128TB	0.6 to 256TB	0.6 to 768TB	0.6 to 2048TB

## Adding DDMs and Capacity on Demand

The DS8700 series has a linear capacity growth up to 2048 TB.

A significant benefit of the DS8700 series is the ability to add DDMs without disruption for maintenance. IBM offers capacity on demand solutions that are designed to meet the changing storage needs of rapidly growing e-business. The Standby Capacity on Demand (CoD) offering is designed to provide you with the ability to tap into additional storage and is particularly attractive if you have rapid or unpredictable storage growth. Up to four standby CoD disk drive sets (64 disk drives) can be concurrently field-installed into your system. To activate, you simply logically configure the disk drives for use, which is a nondisruptive activity that does not require intervention from IBM.

Upon activation of any portion of a standby CoD disk drive set, you must place an order with IBM to initiate billing for the activated set. At that time, you can also order replacement standby CoD disk drive sets. For more information about the standby CoD offering, refer to the DS8700 series announcement letter, which can be found at the following address:

<http://www.ibm.com/common/ssi/index.wss>

## Adding I/O towers

With the DS8700, it is now possible to start with a 2-way configuration with disk enclosures for 64 DDMs, and grow to a full scale, five frame configuration concurrently. See the upgrade path illustrated in Figure 2-4 for details.

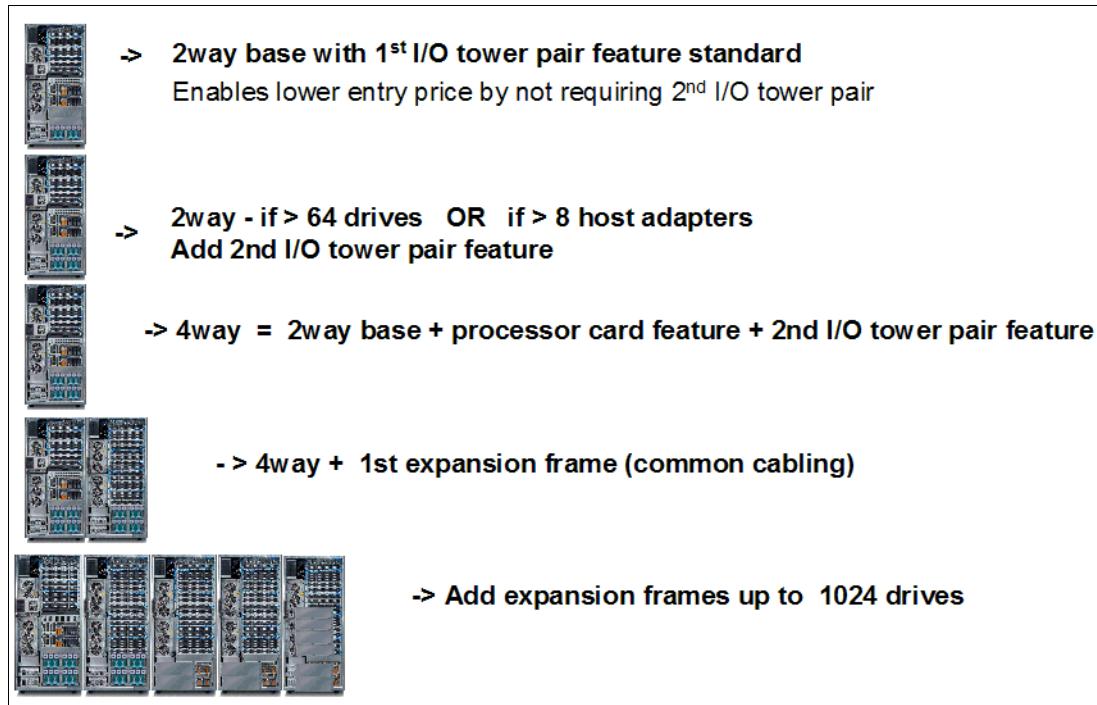


Figure 2-4 DS8700 concurrent upgrade path

### 2.1.2 Performance Accelerator feature (FC 1980)

By default, the DS8700 comes with a new pair of Device Adapters per 64 DDMs. If you order a system with, for example, 128 drives, you will get two Device Adapter (DA) pairs. When ordering 512 disk drives, you get eight DA pairs, which is the maximum number of DA pairs. Adding more drives will not add DA pairs. Having many DA pairs is important to achieving a higher throughput level required by some sequential workloads, such as data warehouse installations requiring a throughput of 1 GBps or more.

It is possible that your sequential throughput requirements will be high, but your capacity requirements are low; for example, you might have capacity requirements for 256 disks only, but still want the full sequential throughput potential of all DAs. For such situations, IBM offers the *Performance Accelerator* feature (PAF, FC 1980). It is a plant only feature, meaning that it can only be installed on new machines. Once the feature is enabled, you will get one new DA pair for every 32 DDMs. The feature is supported on machines with at most two expansion units, but the second expansion unit can only hold up to 64 drives. With this feature, the maximum configurations are:

- Base frame only: Two DA pairs and 64 drives
- One expansion unit: Six DA pairs and 192 disk drives
- Two expansion units: Eight DA pairs and 256 drives.

Figure 2-5 shows a Performance Accelerator configuration of 16 HDD disk drive sets. This is the maximum PAF configuration; no more drives can be added. The example assumes that all drives are of the same type and capacity.

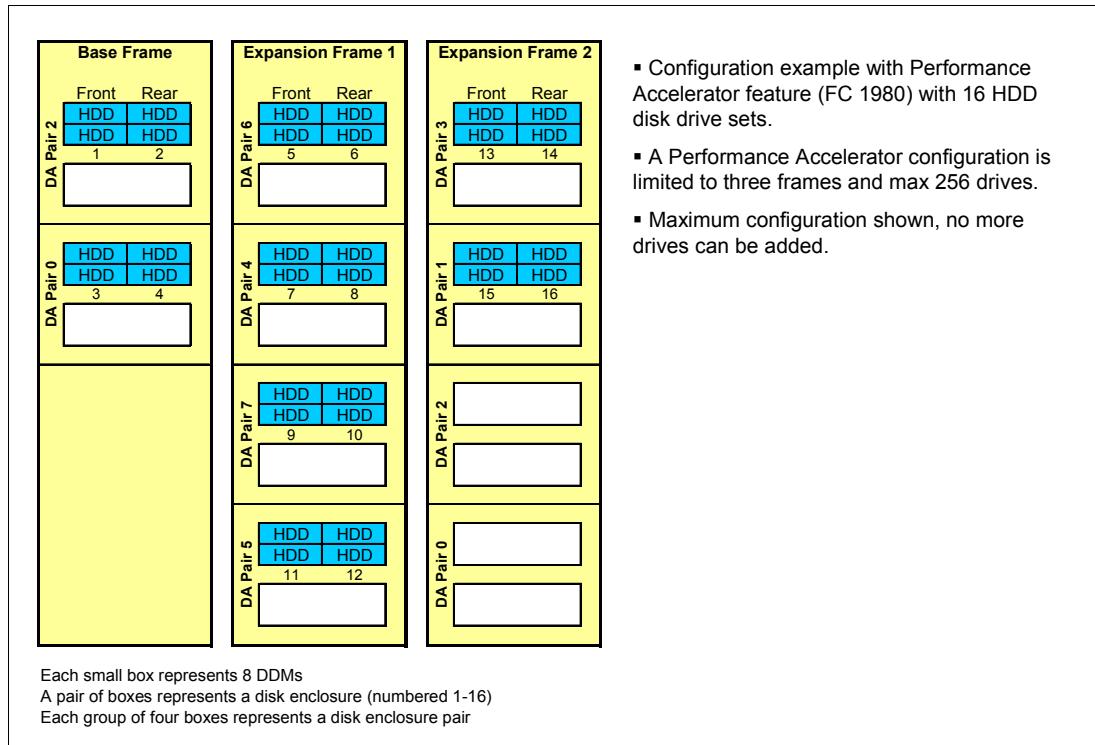


Figure 2-5 Configuration with Performance Accelerator feature

## 2.2 Scalability for performance: Linear scalable architecture

The DS8700 series also has linear scalability for performance. This capability is due to the architecture of the DS8700 series. Figure 2-6 shows how you can achieve linear scalability in the DS8700 series.

Figure 2-6 describes the main components of the I/O controller for the DS8700 series. The main components include the I/O processors, data cache, internal I/O bus (PCI Express bus), host adapters, and device adapters. You can see that if you upgrade from the 2-way model to the 4-way model, the number of main components doubles within a storage unit.

More discussion about the DS8700 series performance can be found in Chapter 7, “Performance” on page 141.

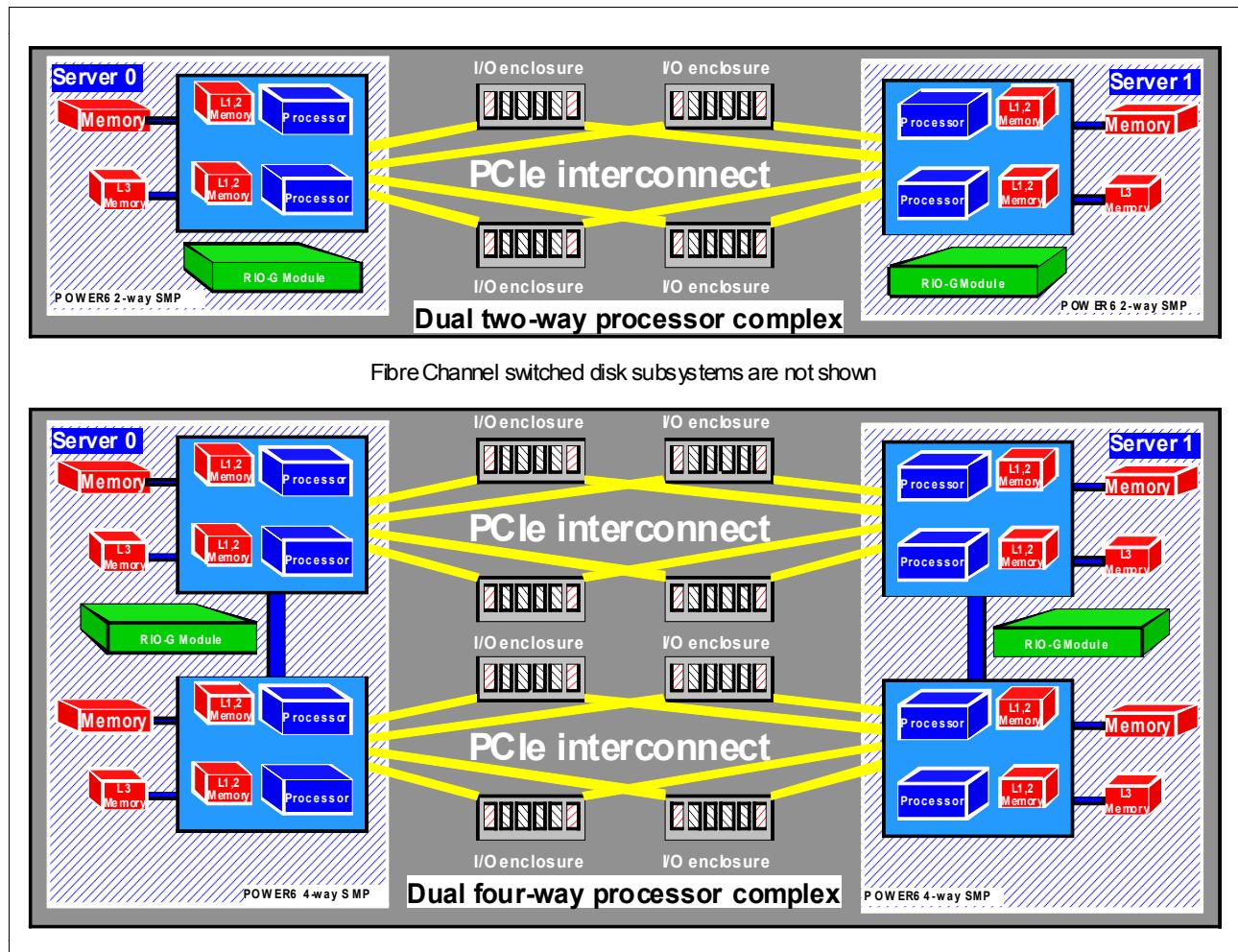


Figure 2-6 2-way versus 4-way model components

### Benefits of the DS8700 scalable architecture

Because the DS8700 series adopts this architecture for the scaling of models, the DS8700 series has the following benefits:

- ▶ The DS8700 series is easily scalable for performance and capacity.
- ▶ The DS8700 series architecture can be concurrently upgraded.
- ▶ The DS8700 series has a longer life cycle than other storage devices.



# Hardware components and architecture

This chapter describes the hardware components of the IBM System Storage DS8700. This chapter is intended for readers who want to get more insight into the individual components and the architecture that holds them together.

The following topics are covered in this chapter:

- ▶ Frames
- ▶ DS8700 architecture
- ▶ Storage facility processor complex (CEC)
- ▶ Disk subsystem
- ▶ Host adapters
- ▶ Power and cooling
- ▶ Management console network
- ▶ System Storage Productivity Center (SSPC)
- ▶ Isolated Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM) server

## 3.1 Frames

The DS8700 is designed for modular expansion. From a high-level view, there appear to be three types of frames available for the DS8700. However, on closer inspection, the frames themselves are almost identical. The only variations are the combinations of processors, I/O enclosures, batteries, and disks that the frames contain.

Figure 3-1 is an attempt to show some of the frame variations that are possible with the DS8700. The left frame is a base frame that contains the processors. In this example, it is two 4-way IBM System p POWER6 servers, as only the 4-way systems can have expansion frames. The center frame is an expansion frame that contains additional I/O enclosures but no additional processors. The right frame is an expansion frame that contains just disks and no processors, I/O enclosures, or batteries. Each frame contains a frame power area with power supplies and other power-related hardware. A DS8700 can consist of up to five frames.

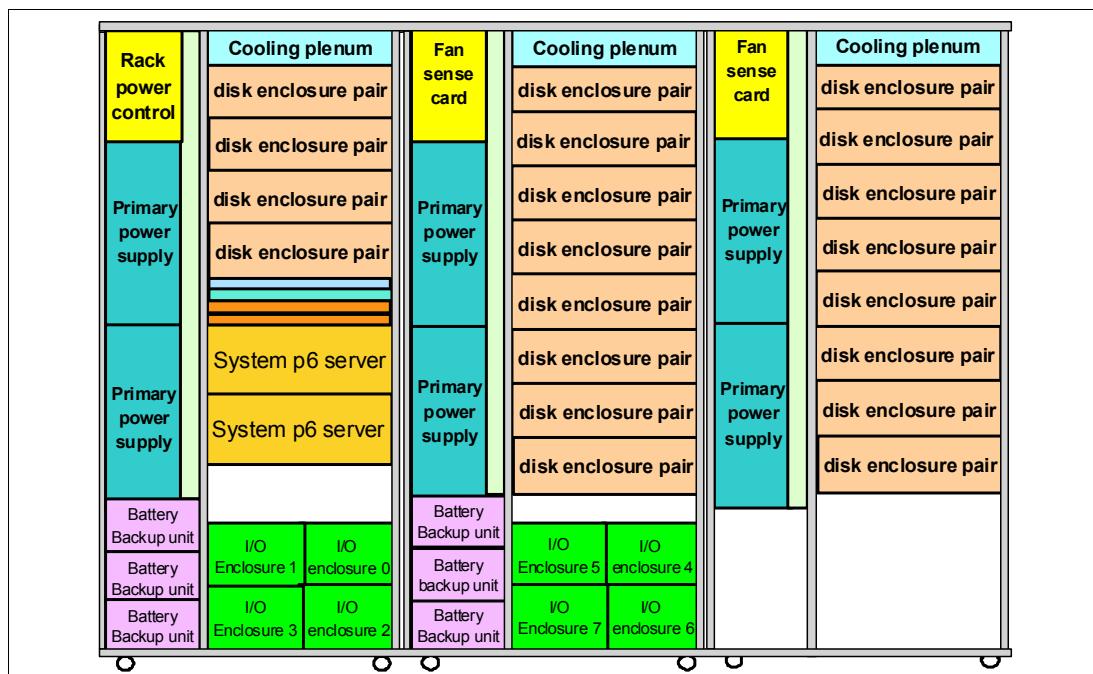


Figure 3-1 DS8700 frame types

### 3.1.1 Base frame

The left side of the base frame, viewed from the front of the machine, is the frame power area. Only the base frame contains rack power control cards (RPC) to control power sequencing for the storage unit. It also contains a fan sense card to monitor the fans in that frame. The base frame contains two primary power supplies (PPSs) to convert input AC into DC power. The power area also contains two or three battery backup units (BBUs), depending on the model and configuration.

The base frame can contain up to eight disk enclosures, each of which can contain up to 16 disk drives. In a maximum configuration, the base frame can hold 128 disk drives. Disk drives are either hard disk drives (HDD) with real spinning disks or Solid State Drives (SSD), which have no moving parts and operate at the speed of electricity. A disk enclosure contains either HDDs or SSDs. With SSDs in a disk enclosure, it is either 16 drives or a half populated disk enclosure with eight SSD drives. A disk enclosure populated with HDDs contains always

16 drives. Note that only up to 32 SSDs can be configured per Device Adapter (DA) pair. It is not advisable to configure more than 16 SSDs per DA pair.

Above the disk enclosures are cooling fans located in a cooling plenum.

Between the disk enclosures and the processor complexes are two Ethernet switches and a Storage Hardware Management Console (HMC).

The base frame contains two processor complexes (CECs). These System p POWER6 servers contain the processor and memory that drive all functions within the DS8000.

Finally, the base frame contains two or four I/O enclosures. These I/O enclosures provide connectivity between the adapters and the processors. The adapters contained in the I/O enclosures can be either device adapters (DAs), host adapters (HAs), or both.

The communication path used for adapter to processor complex communication in the DS8700 consists of four lane (x4) PCI Express Generation 2 connections, providing a bandwidth of 2 GBps for each connection.

The inter processor complex communication still utilizes the RIO-G loop as in previous models of the DS8000 family. However, this RIO-G loop no longer has to handle data traffic, which greatly improves reliability.

### 3.1.2 Expansion frame

The left side of each expansion frame, viewed from the front of the machine, is the frame power area. The expansion frames do not contain rack power control cards; these cards are only present in the base frame. They do contain a fan sense card that monitors the fans in that frame. Each expansion frame contains two primary power supplies (PPSs) to convert the AC input into DC power. Finally, the power area can contain three battery backup units (BBUs), depending on the model and configuration.

Expansion frames 1 through 3 can each hold up to 16 disk enclosures, which contain the disk drives. They are described as *16-packs*, because each enclosure can hold 16 disks. In a maximum configuration, these expansion frames can hold 256 disk drives. Disk drives are either hard disk drives (HDD) with real spinning disks or Solid State Drives (SSD), which have no moving parts and operate at the speed of electricity. A disk enclosure contains either HDDs or SSDs (note that expansion frames 3 and 4 cannot contain SSD drives). With SSDs in a disk drive enclosure, it is either 16 drives or a half populated disk enclosure with eight SSD drives. A disk enclosure populated with HDDs contains always 16 drives. Note that only up to 32 SSDs can be configured per Device Adapter (DA) pair, and it is not advisable to configure more than 16 SSDs per DA pair.

Above the disk enclosures are cooling fans, located in a cooling plenum. Expansion frame 4 can be populated with a maximum of eight disk enclosures. There are additional limitations regarding the number of disks and enclosures in a frame when populated with Solid State Drives. Refer to *IBM System Storage DS8700 Easy Tier*, REDP-4667 for more details.

An expansion frame can contain I/O enclosures and adapters if it is the first expansion frame that is attached to a DS8700 4-way system. Note that you cannot add any expansion frame to a DS8700 2-way system. The other expansion frames cannot have I/O enclosures and adapters. If the expansion frame contains I/O enclosures, the enclosures provide connectivity between the adapters and the processors. The adapters contained in the I/O enclosures can be either device or host adapters, or both. The expansion frame model is called 94E. You can,

however, also use expansion frame Models 92E from previous DS8000 models as third, fourth, or fifth frame in a DS8700 storage subsystem.

### 3.1.3 Rack operator window

Each DS8700 frame features some status indicators. The status indicators can be seen when the doors are closed. When the doors are open, the emergency power off switch (an EPO switch) is also accessible. Figure 3-2 shows the operator panel. Each panel has two line cord indicators, one for each line cord. For normal operation, both of these indicators should be illuminated if each line cord is supplying correct power to the frame. There is also a fault indicator on the right side. If this indicator is illuminated, use the DS Storage Manager GUI or the HMC to determine why this indicator is illuminated.

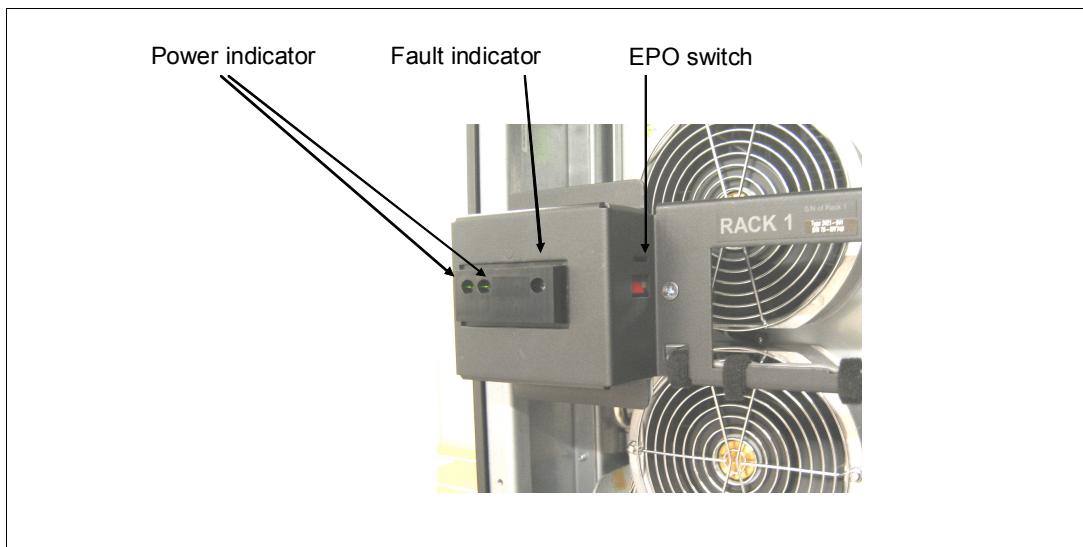


Figure 3-2 Rack operator window

There is also an EPO switch to the side of the panel. This switch is only for emergencies. Tripping the EPO switch will bypass all power sequencing control and result in immediate removal of system power. Do not trip this switch unless the DS8000 is creating a safety hazard or is placing human life at risk. Data in non-volatile storage (NVS) will *not* be destaged and will be lost.

There is no power on/off switch on the operator window because power sequencing is managed through the HMC. This ensures that all data in nonvolatile storage, known as *modified data*, is destaged properly to disk prior to power down. It is not possible to shut down or power off the DS8700 from the operator window, except in an emergency, and using the EPO switch.

## 3.2 DS8700 architecture

Now that we have described the frames themselves, we use the rest of this chapter to explore the technical details of each of the components. The overall architecture that connects the components of a storage facility is shown in Figure 3-5 on page 36.

In effect, the DS8700 consists of two processor complexes. Each processor complex has access to multiple host adapters to connect to Fibre Channel or FICON hosts. A DS8700 can have up to 32 host adapters with 4 I/O ports on each adapter.

Fibre Channel adapters are also used to connect to internal fabrics, which are Fibre Channel switches to which the disk drives are connected.

### 3.2.1 POWER6 processor

The DS8700 is based on POWER6 p570 server technology. The 64-bit POWER6 processors in the p570 server are integrated into a dual-core single chip module and a dual-core dual chip module, with 32 MB of L3 cache, 8 MB of L2 cache, and 12 DDR2 memory DIMM slots. The unique DDR2 memory uses a new memory architecture to provide greater bandwidth and capacity. This enables operating at a higher data rate for large memory configurations. Each new processor card can support up to 12 DDR2 DIMMs running at speeds of up to 667 MHz.

The Symmetric Multi-Processing (SMP) system features 2-way or 4-way, copper-based, Silicon-on Insulator-based (SOI-based) POWER6 microprocessors running at 4.7 GHz.

Each POWER6 processor provides a GX+ bus that is used to connect to an I/O subsystem or fabric interface card. GX+ is a Host Channel Adapter used in POWER6 systems. For more information, refer to *IBM System p 570 Technical Overview and Introduction*, REDP-4405.

Refer also to Chapter 4, “Reliability, Availability, and Serviceability on the IBM System Storage DS8700 series” on page 55 and 7.1.4, “IBM System p POWER6: Heart of the DS8700 dual cluster design” on page 146 for additional information about the POWER6 processor.

### 3.2.2 Peripheral Component Interconnect Express (PCI Express)

The DS8700 processor complex utilizes a PCI Express infrastructure to access the I/O subsystem, which provides a great improvement in performance.

PCI Express was designed to replace the general-purpose PCI expansion bus, the high-end PCI-X bus, and the Accelerated Graphics Port (AGP) graphics card interface.

PCI Express is a serial I/O interconnect. Transfers are bidirectional, which means data can flow to and from a device simultaneously. The PCI Express infrastructure involves a switch so that more than one device can transfer data at the same time.

Unlike previous PC expansion interfaces, rather than being a bus, it is structured around point-to-point full duplex serial links called *lanes*. Lanes can be grouped by 1x, 4x, 8x, 16x, or 32x, and each lane is high speed, using an 8b/10b encoding that results in 2.5 Gbps = 250 MBps per lane in a generation 1 implementation. Bytes are distributed across the lanes to provide a high throughput (see Figure 3-3).

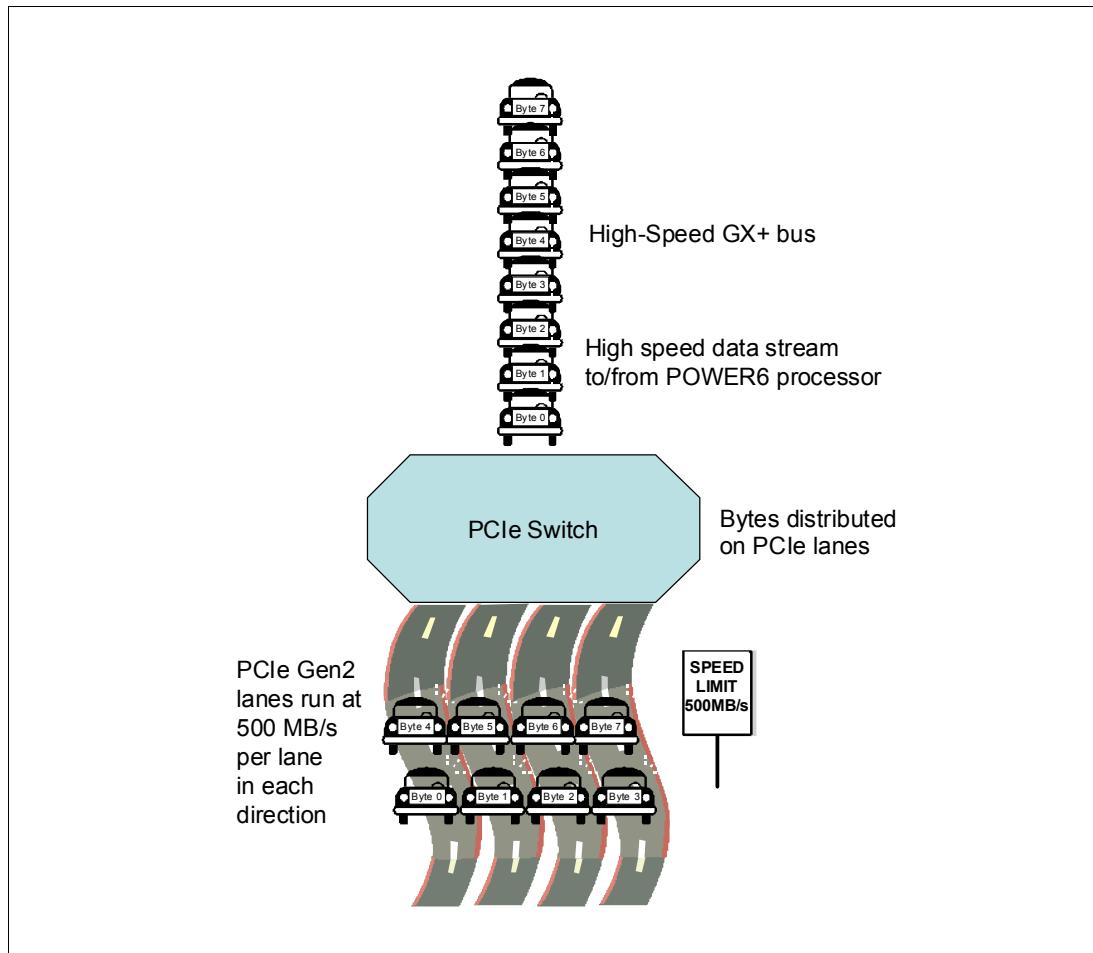


Figure 3-3 PCI Express architecture

There are two generations of PCI Express in use today:

- ▶ PCI Express 1.1 (Gen 1) = 250 MBps per lane (current P6 processor I/O)
- ▶ PCI Express 2.0 (Gen 2) = 500 MBps per lane (used in the DS8700 I/O drawer)

To translate the x8 Gen 1 lanes from the processor to the x4 Gen 2 lanes used by the I/O enclosures, a bridge is used, as shown in Figure 3-4.

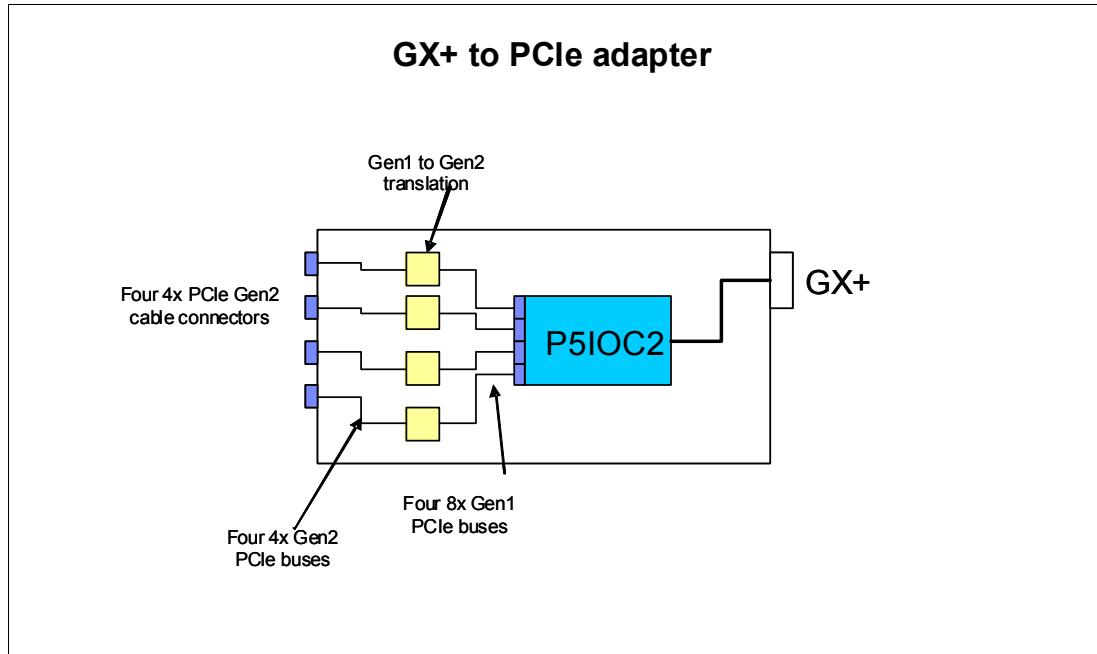


Figure 3-4 GX+ to PCI Express adapter

You can learn more about PCI Express at the following site:

<http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/Redbooks.nsf/RedbookAbstracts/tips0456.html?open>

### 3.2.3 Device adapters and host adapters

To access the disk subsystem, each complex (CEC) uses several four-port Fibre Channel arbitrated loop (FC-AL) device adapters. A DS8700 can have up to sixteen of these adapters arranged into eight pairs. Each adapter connects the complex to two separate switched Fibre Channel networks. Each switched network attaches disk enclosures that each contain up to 16 disks. Each enclosure contains two 20-port Fibre Channel switches. Of these 20 ports, 16 are used to attach to the 16 disks in the enclosure and the remaining four are used to either interconnect with other enclosures or to the device adapters. Each disk is attached to both switches. Whenever the device adapter connects to a disk, it uses a switched connection to transfer data. This means that all data travels through the shortest possible path.

The attached hosts interact with software running on the complexes to access data on logical volumes. The servers manage all read and write requests to the logical volumes on the disk arrays. During write requests, the servers use fast-write, in which the data is written to volatile memory on one complex and persistent memory on the other complex. The server then reports the write as complete before it has been written to disk. This provides much faster write performance. Persistent memory is also called *nonvolatile storage (NVS)*.

### 3.2.4 Storage facility architecture

As already mentioned, the DS8700 storage facility consists of two POWER6 p 570 servers. They form a processor complex that utilizes a RIO-G loop for processor communication and an PCI Express infrastructure to communicate to the I/O subsystem (see Figure 3-5).

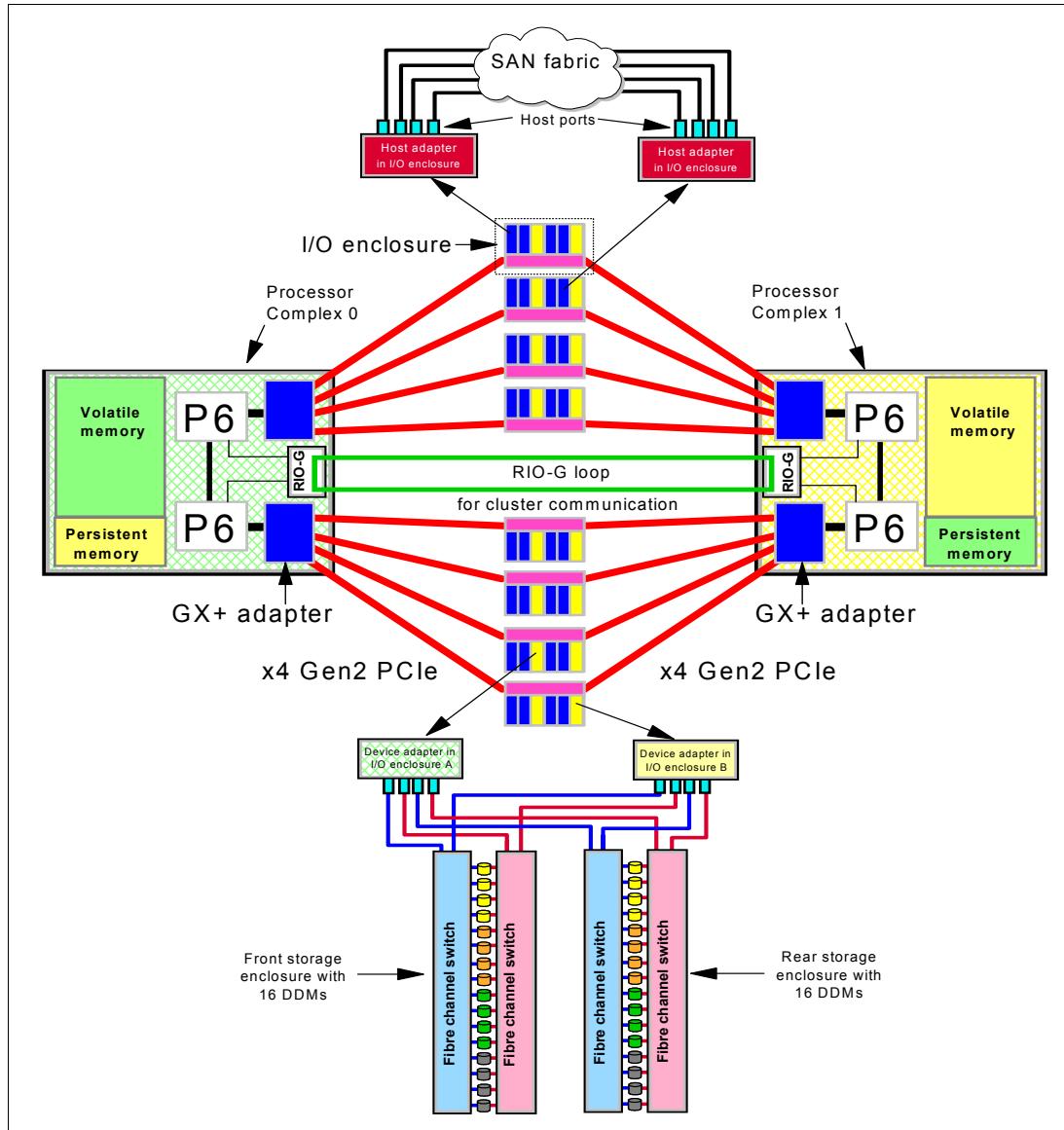


Figure 3-5 DS8000 series architecture

When a host performs a read operation, the servers, also called CECs, fetch the data from the disk arrays using the high performance switched disk architecture. The data is then cached in volatile memory in case it is required again. The servers attempt to anticipate future reads by an algorithm known as Sequential prefetching in Adaptive Replacement Cache (SARC). Data is held in cache as long as possible using this smart caching algorithm. If a cache hit occurs where requested data is already in cache, then the host does not have to wait for it to be fetched from the disks. The cache management has been enhanced by breakthrough caching technologies from IBM Research, such as the Adaptive Multi-stream Prefetching (AMP) and Intelligent Write Caching (IWC) (see 7.4, “DS8000 superior caching algorithms” on page 153).

Both the device and host adapters operate on high bandwidth fault-tolerant point-to-point four lane Generation 2 PCI Express interconnections with 2 GBps for each connection and direction. On a DS8700, the data traffic is isolated from the processor complex communication that utilizes the RIO-G loop.

Figure 3-5 on page 36 uses colors as indicators of how the DS8700 hardware is shared between the servers. The cross hatched color is green and the lighter color is yellow. On the left side, the green server is running on the left processor complex. The green server uses the N-way symmetric multiprocessor (SMP) of the complex to perform its operations. It records its write data and caches its read data in the volatile memory of the left complex. For fast-write data, it has a persistent memory area on the right processor complex. To access the disk arrays under its management (the disks shown in green), it has its own device adapter, again in green. The yellow server on the right operates in an identical fashion. The host adapters (in dark red) are deliberately not colored green or yellow, because they are shared between both servers.

### 3.2.5 Server-based SMP design

The DS8000 series, which includes the DS8700, benefits from a fully assembled, leading edge processor and memory system. The DS8000 systems use DDR2 memory DIMMs. Using SMPs as the primary processing engine sets the DS8000 systems apart from other disk storage systems on the market.

Additionally, the System p POWER6 processors used in the DS8700 support the execution of two independent threads concurrently. This capability is referred to as *simultaneous multi-threading (SMT)*. The two threads running on the single processor share a common L1 cache. The SMP/SMT design minimizes the likelihood of idle or overworked processors, while a distributed processor design is more susceptible to an unbalanced relationship of tasks to processors.

The design decision to use SMP memory as an I/O cache is a key element of the IBM storage architecture. Although a separate I/O cache could provide fast access, it cannot match the access speed of the SMP main memory.

All memory installed on any processor complex is accessible to all processors in that complex. The addresses assigned to the memory are common across all processors in the same complex. Alternatively, using the main memory of the SMP as the cache leads to a partitioned cache. Each processor has access to the processor complex’s main memory, but not to that of the other complex. You should keep this in mind with respect to load balancing between processor complexes.

### 3.3 Storage facility processor complex (CEC)

The DS8700 base frame contains two processor complexes. The 941 model can have the 2-way processor feature or the 4-way processor feature. (2-way means that each processor complex has two CPUs, while 4-way means that each processor complex has four CPUs.)

Figure 3-6 show the DS8700 storage subsystem with the 2-way processor feature. There can be two or four I/O enclosures.

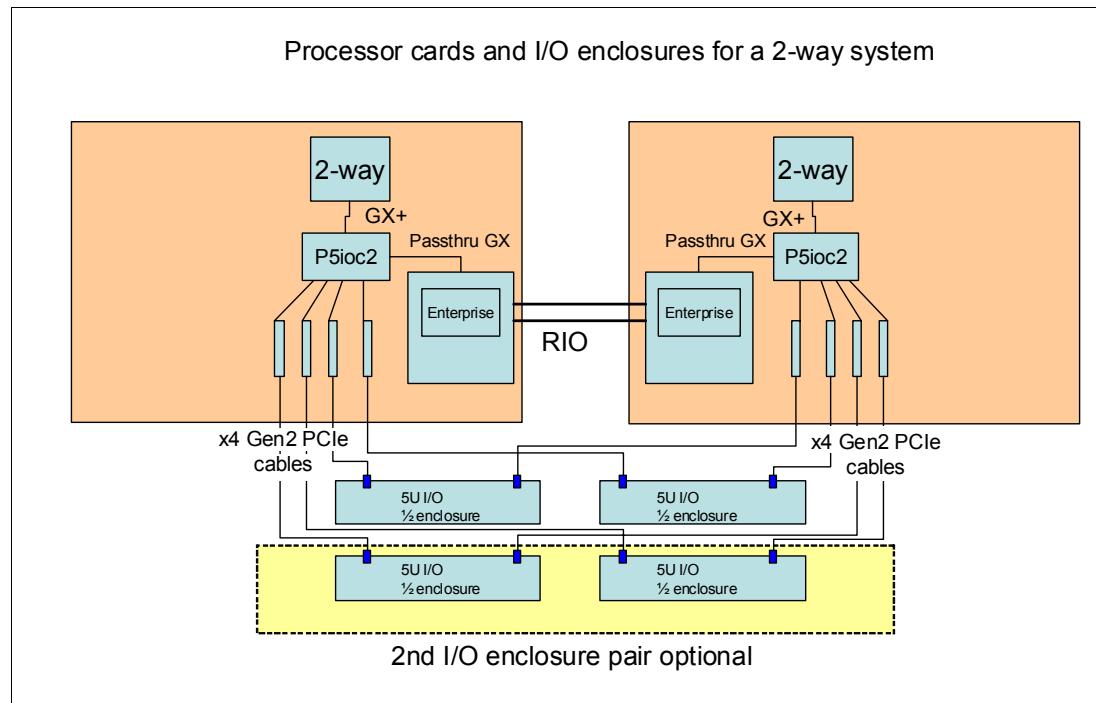


Figure 3-6 DS8700 2-way architecture

Figure 3-7 shows the DS8700 with the 4-way feature. In this case, at least four I/O enclosures are required. More might be necessary depending on the number of disk drives.

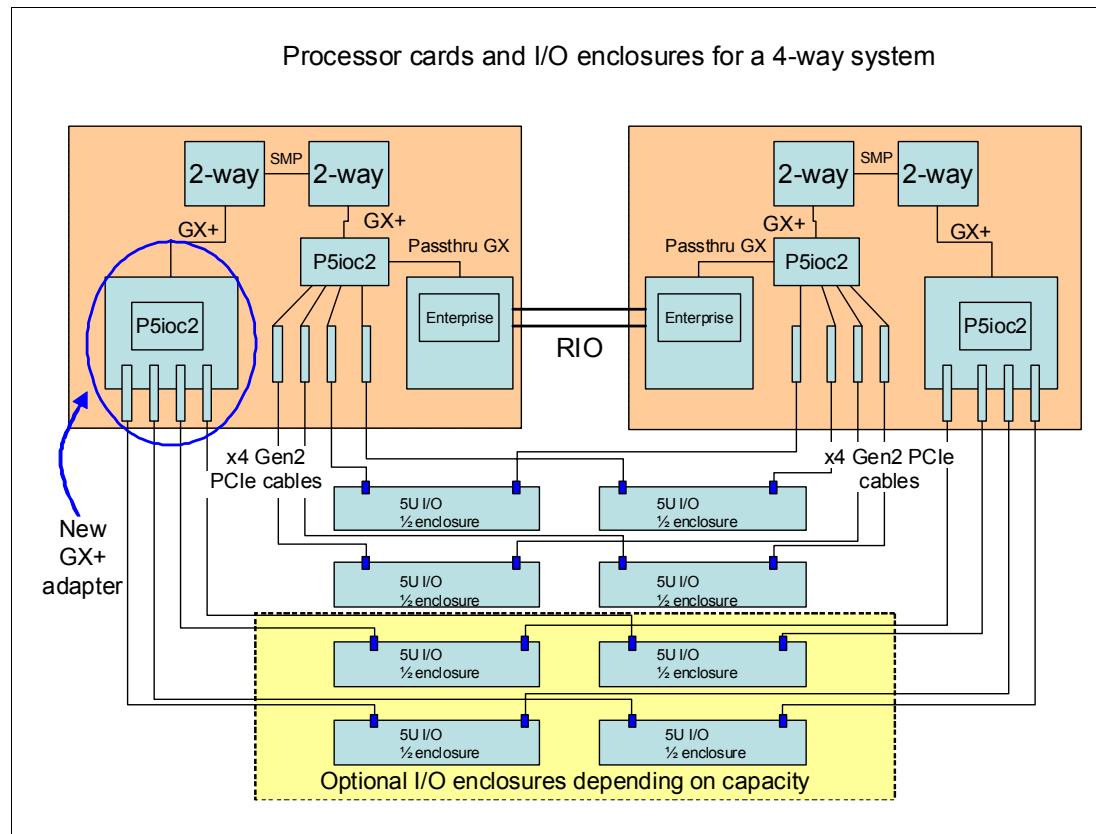


Figure 3-7 DS8700 4-way architecture

The DS8700 features IBM POWER6 server technology. Compared to the POWER5+ based processor models in DS8100 and DS8300, the POWER6 processor might achieve up to a 50% performance improvement in I/O operations per second in transaction processing workload environments and up to 150% throughput improvement for sequential workloads.

For details about the server hardware used in the DS8700, refer to *IBM System p 570 Technical Overview and Introduction*, REDP-4405, found at:

<http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/redpieces/pdfs/redp4405.pdf>

Figure 3-8 shows a rear view of the DS8700 processor complex.

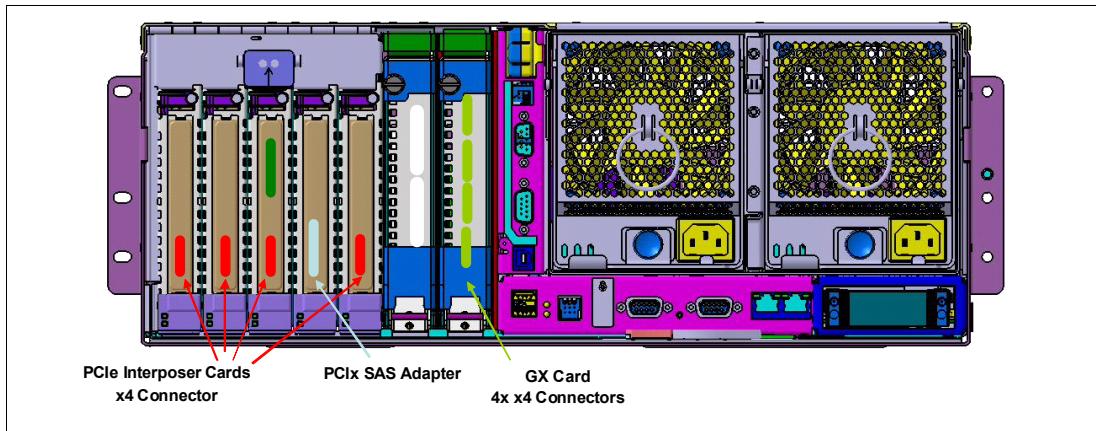


Figure 3-8 Processor complex

### 3.3.1 Processor memory and cache management

The DS8700 offers up to 384 GB of processor memory. Half of this will be located in each processor complex. Caching is a fundamental technique for hiding I/O latency. Like other modern cache, DS8000 contains volatile memory used as a read cache and non-volatile memory used as a write cache. The non-volatile storage (NVS) scales to the processor memory size selected, which can also help optimize performance.

The effectiveness of a read cache depends upon the hit ratio, which is the fraction of requests that are served from the cache without necessitating a read from the disk (read miss).

To help achieve dramatically greater throughput and faster response times, the DS8000 uses Sequential-prefetching in Adaptive Replacement Cache (SARC). SARC is an efficient adaptive algorithm for managing read caches with both:

- ▶ Demand-paged data: It finds recently used data in the cache.
- ▶ Prefetched data: It copies data speculatively into the cache before it is even requested.

The decision of when and what to prefetch is made in accordance with the Adaptive Multi-stream Prefetching (AMP), a cache management algorithm.

The Intelligent Write Caching (IWC) manages the write cache and decides in what order and at what rate to destage.

For details about cache management, see 7.4, “DS8000 superior caching algorithms” on page 153.

### Service processor and system power control network

The service processor (SP) is an embedded controller that is based on a PowerPC® processor. The system power control network (SPCN) is used to control the power of the attached I/O subsystem. The SPCN control software and the service processor software are run on the same PowerPC processor.

The SP performs predictive failure analysis based on any recoverable processor errors. The SP can monitor the operation of the firmware during the boot process, and it can monitor the operating system for loss of control. This enables the service processor to take appropriate action.

The SPCN monitors environmental conditions such as power, fans, and temperature. Environmental critical and noncritical conditions can generate Early Power-Off Warning (EPOW) events. Critical events trigger appropriate signals from the hardware to the affected components to prevent any data loss without operating system or firmware involvement. Non-critical environmental events are also logged and reported.

### 3.3.2 RIO-G

In a DS8700, the RIO-G ports are used for inter-processor communication only. RIO stands for remote I/O. The RIO-G has evolved from earlier versions of the RIO interconnect.

Each RIO-G port can operate at 1 GHz in bidirectional mode and is capable of passing data in each direction on each cycle of the port. It is designed as a high performance, self-healing interconnect.

### 3.3.3 I/O enclosures

The DS8700 base frame contains I/O enclosures and adapters, as shown in Figure 3-9. There can be two or four I/O enclosures in a DS8700 base frame. The I/O enclosures hold the adapters and provide connectivity between the adapters and the processors. Device adapters and host adapters are installed in the I/O enclosures. Each I/O enclosure has 6 slots.

In the current implementation, bridge cards are used to translate PCI Express to PCI-X adapters. Each PCI Express slot supports PCI-X adapters with bridge cards running at 64-bit and 133 MHz. Slots 3 and 6 are used for the device adapters. The remaining slots are available to install up to four host adapters per I/O enclosure.

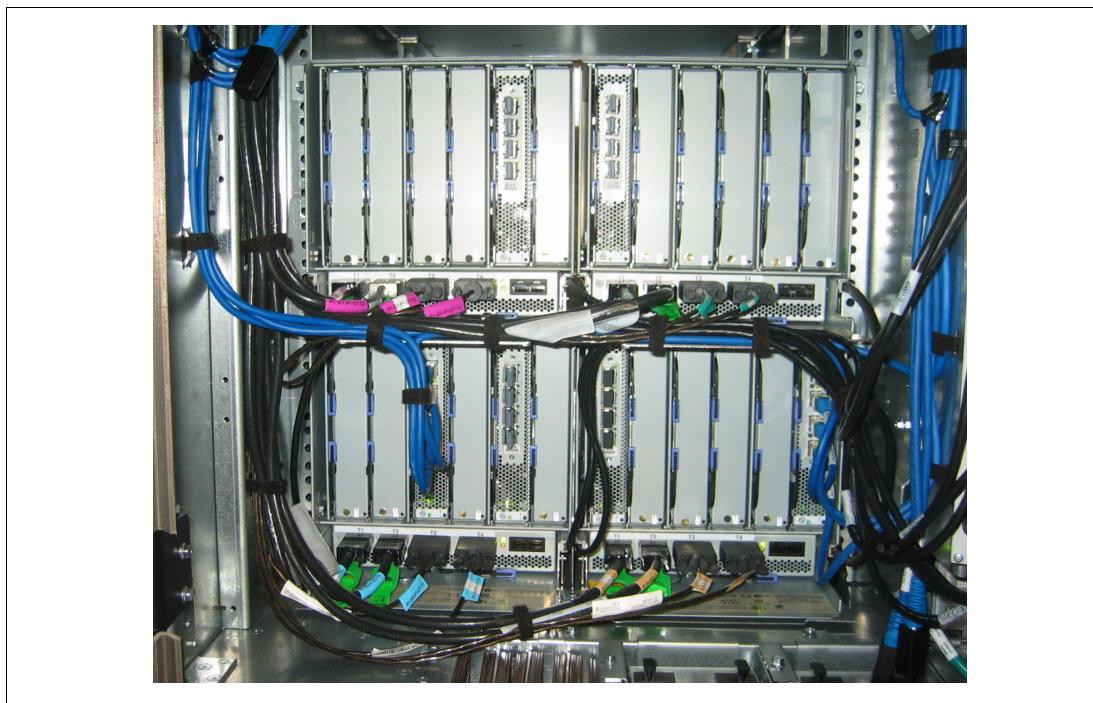


Figure 3-9 DS8700 I/O enclosure

Each I/O enclosure has the following attributes:

- ▶ 5U rack-mountable enclosure
- ▶ Six PCI Express slots
- ▶ Default redundant hot-plug power and cooling devices

## 3.4 Disk subsystem

The disk subsystem consists of three components:

1. First, located in the I/O enclosures are the device adapters. These are RAID controllers that are used by the storage images to access the RAID arrays.
2. Second, the device adapters connect to switched controller cards in the disk enclosures. This creates a switched Fibre Channel disk network.
3. Finally, the disks themselves. The disks are commonly referred to as disk drive modules (DDMs).

We describe the disk subsystem components in the remainder of this section. Refer also to 4.6, “RAS on the disk subsystem” on page 72 for additional information.

### 3.4.1 Device adapters

In the DS8700, a faster application-specific integrated circuit (ASIC) and a faster processor is used on the device adapter cards compared to adapters of other members of the DS8000 family, which leads to higher throughput rates.

Each DS8700 device adapter (DA) card offers four FC-AL ports. These ports are used to connect the processor complexes through the I/O enclosures to the disk enclosures. The adapter is responsible for managing, monitoring, and rebuilding the RAID arrays. The adapter provides remarkable performance thanks to a high function/high performance ASIC. To ensure maximum data integrity, it supports metadata creation and checking.

The device adapter design is shown in Figure 3-10.

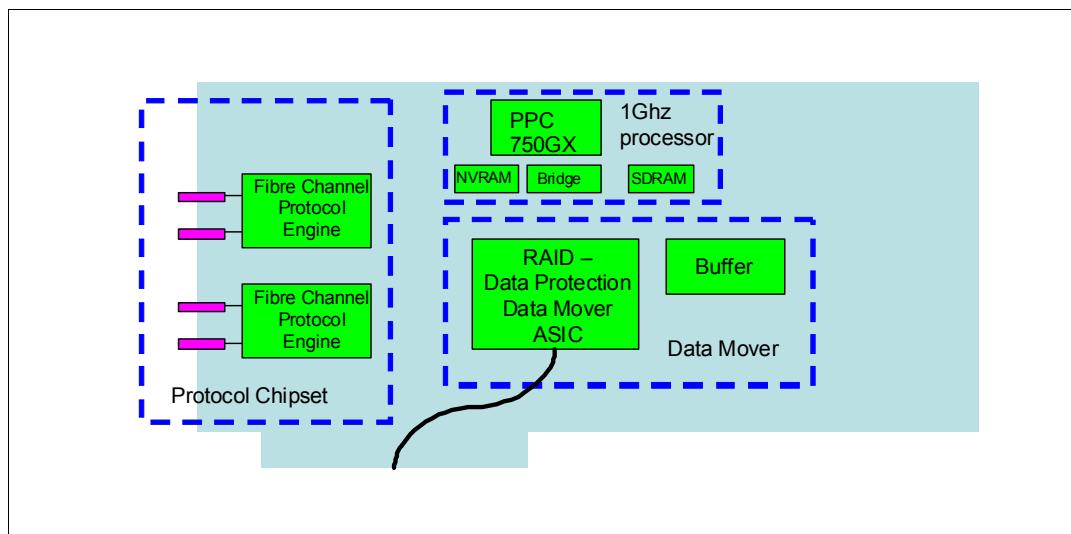


Figure 3-10 New DS8700 device adapter with 1 GHz processor

The DAs are installed in pairs for redundancy in connecting to each disk enclosure. This is why we refer to them as *pairs*.

### 3.4.2 Disk enclosures

Each DS8700 frame contains a maximum of either eight or 16 disk enclosures, depending on whether it is a base or expansion frame. Half of the disk enclosures are accessed from the front of the frame, and half from the rear. Each DS8700 disk enclosure contains a total of 16 DDMs or dummy carriers. A dummy carrier looks similar to a DDM in appearance, but contains no electronics. The enclosure is shown in Figure 3-11.

**Note:** If a DDM is not present, its slot must be occupied by a dummy carrier. This is because without a drive or a dummy, cooling air does not circulate properly.

The DS8700 also supports Solid State Drives (SSDs). SSDs also come in disk enclosures with either half populated with eight disks or fully populated with 16 disks. They have the same form factor as the traditional disks. SSDs and other disks cannot be intermixed within the same enclosure.

Each DDM is an industry standard FC-AL or SATA disk. Each disk plugs into the disk enclosure backplane. The *backplane* is the electronic and physical backbone of the disk enclosure.

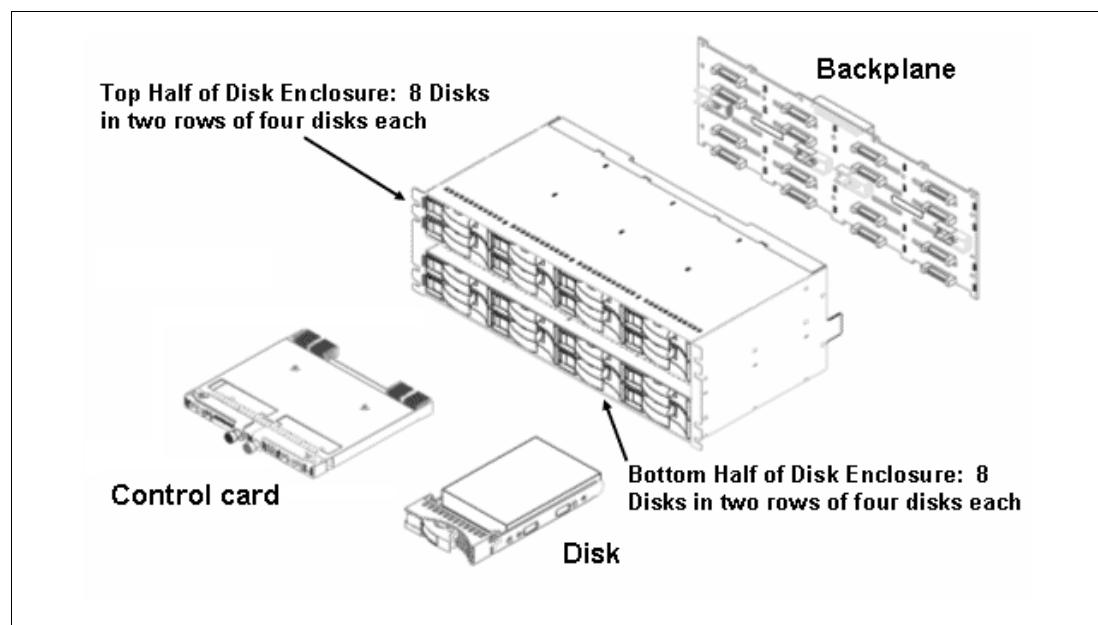


Figure 3-11 DS8700 disk enclosure

## Non-switched FC-AL drawbacks

In a standard FC-AL disk enclosure, all of the disks are arranged in a loop, as shown in Figure 3-12. This loop-based architecture means that data flows through all disks before arriving at either end of the device adapter (shown here as the *Storage Server*).

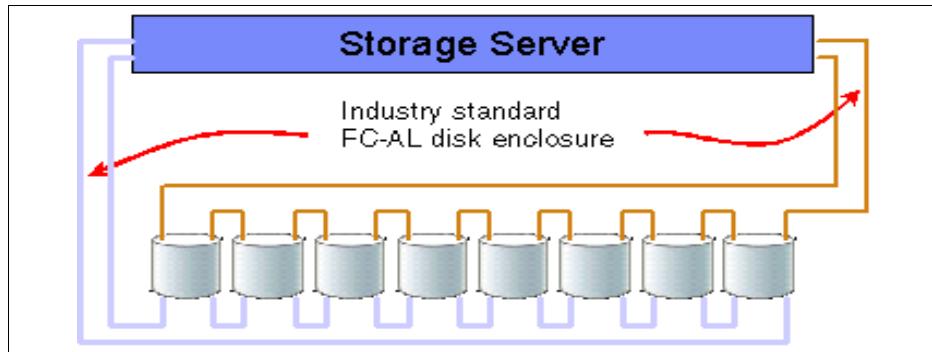


Figure 3-12 Industry standard FC-AL disk enclosure

The main problems with standard FC-AL access to DDMs are:

- ▶ The full loop is required to participate in data transfer. Full discovery of the loop through loop initialization protocol (LIP) is required before any data transfer. Loop stability can be affected by DDM failures.
- ▶ In the event of a disk failure, it can be difficult to identify the cause of a loop breakage, leading to complex problem determination.
- ▶ There is a performance degradation when the number of devices in the loop increases.
- ▶ To expand the loop, it is normally necessary to partially open it. If mistakes are made, a complete loop outage can result.

These problems do not exist with the *switched* FC-AL implementation in the DS8000 series.

## Switched FC-AL advantages

The DS8000 uses switched FC-AL technology to link the DA pairs and the DDMs. Switched FC-AL uses the standard FC-AL protocol, but the physical implementation is different. The key features of switched FC-AL technology are:

- ▶ Standard FC-AL communication protocol from DA to DDMs
- ▶ Direct point-to-point links are established between DA and DDM
- ▶ Isolation capabilities in case of DDM failures, providing easy problem determination
- ▶ Predictive failure statistics
- ▶ Simplified expansion, where no cable rerouting is required when adding another disk enclosure

The DS8000 architecture employs dual redundant switched FC-AL access to each of the disk enclosures. The key benefits of doing this are:

- ▶ Two independent networks to access the disk enclosures.
- ▶ Four access paths to each DDM.
- ▶ Each device adapter port operates independently.
- ▶ Double the bandwidth over traditional FC-AL loop implementations.

In Figure 3-13, each DDM is depicted as being attached to two separate Fibre Channel switches. This means that with two device adapters, we have four effective data paths to each disk. Note that this diagram shows one switched disk network attached to each DA. Each DA can actually support two switched networks.

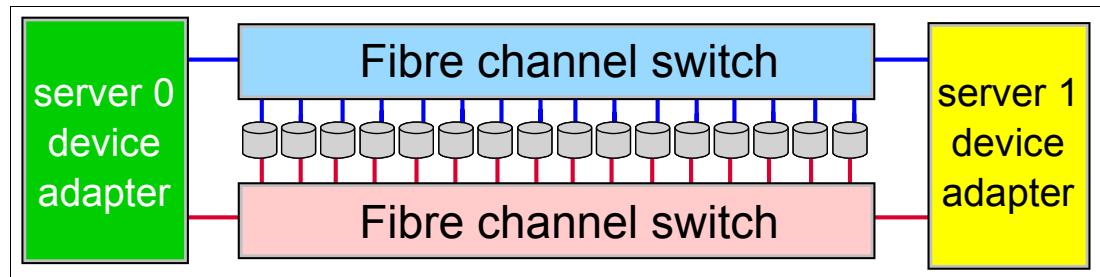


Figure 3-13 DS8000 disk enclosure

When a connection is made between the device adapter and a disk, the connection is a switched connection that uses arbitrated loop protocol. This means that a mini-loop is created between the device adapter port and the disk (see Figure 3-14).

### DS8000 Series switched FC-AL implementation

For a more detailed look at how the switched disk architecture expands in the DS8000 Series of storage subsystem, refer to Figure 3-14 that depicts how each DS8000 DA connects to two disk networks called *loops*.

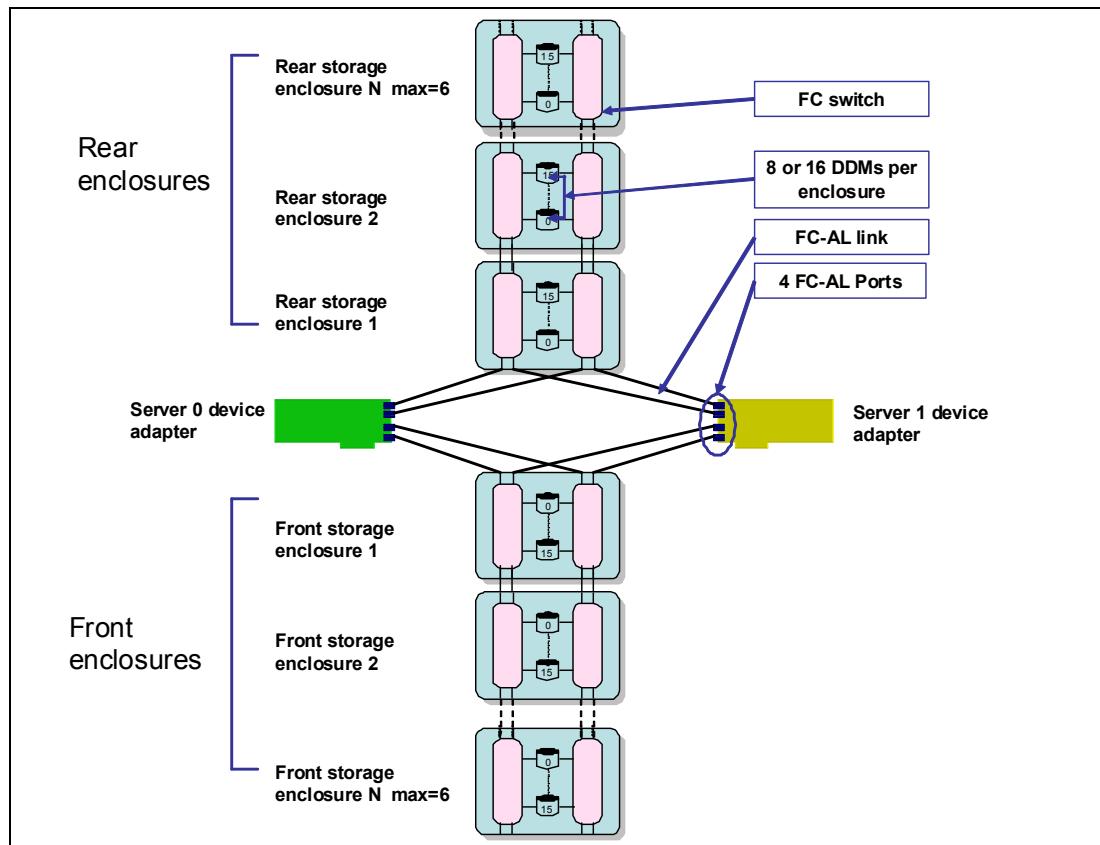


Figure 3-14 DS8000 switched disk expansion

Expansion is achieved by adding enclosures to the expansion ports of each switch. Each loop can potentially have up to six enclosures.

## **Expansion**

Storage enclosures are added in pairs and disks are added in groups of 16. It takes two orders of 16 DDMs to fully populate a disk enclosure pair (front and rear).

To provide an example, if a DS8700 had six disk enclosures total, it would have three at the front and three at the rear. If all the enclosures were fully populated with disks, and an additional order of 16 DDMs were purchased, then two new disk enclosures would be added, one at the front and one at the rear. The switched networks do not need to be *broken* to add these enclosures. They are simply added to the end of the *loop*; eight DDMs will go in the front enclosure and the remaining eight DDMs will go in the rear enclosure. If an additional 16 DDMs gets ordered later, they will be used to fill up that pair of disk enclosures. These additional DDMs added have to be of the same type as the eight DDMs residing in the two enclosures already.

## **Arrays and spares**

Array sites, containing eight DDMs, are created as DDMs are installed. During the configuration, you have the choice of creating a RAID 5, RAID 6, or RAID 10 array by choosing one array site. Note that for SSDs, only RAID 5 is supported. The first four array sites created on a DA pair each contribute one DDM to be a spare. So at least four spares are created per DA pair, depending on the disk intermix.

The intention is to only have four spares per DA pair, but this number can increase depending on DDM intermix. Four DDMs of the largest capacity and at least two DDMs of the fastest RPM are needed. If all DDMs are the same size and RPM, four spares are sufficient.

## **Arrays across loops**

Each array site consists of eight DDMs. Four DDMs are taken from the front enclosure in an enclosure pair, and four are taken from the rear enclosure in the pair. This means that when a RAID array is created on the array site, half of the array is on each enclosure. Because the front enclosures are on one switched loop, and the rear enclosures are on a second switched loop, this splits the array across two loops. This is called *array across loops* (AAL). To better understand AAL, refer to Figure 3-16 on page 48. To make the diagram clearer, only 16 DDMs are shown, eight in each disk enclosure. When fully populated, there would be 16 DDMs in each enclosure.

Figure 3-15 is used to show the DA pair layout. One DA pair creates two switched loops. The front enclosures populate one loop while the rear enclosures populate the other loop. Each enclosure places two switches onto each loop. Each enclosure can hold up to 16 DDMs. DDMs are purchased in groups of 16. Half of the new DDMs go into the front enclosure and half go into the rear enclosure.

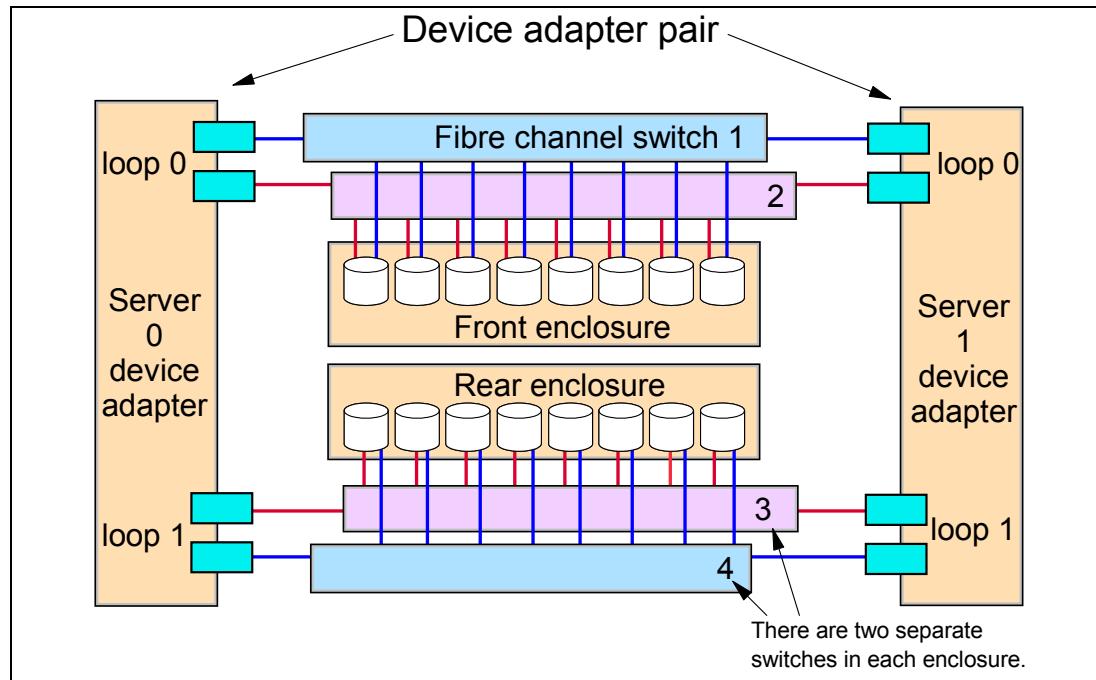


Figure 3-15 DS8700 switched loop layout

Having established the physical layout, the diagram is now changed to reflect the layout of the array sites, as shown in Figure 3-16. Array site 1 in green (the darker disks) uses the four left DDMs in each enclosure. Array site 2 in yellow (the lighter disks), uses the four right DDMs in each enclosure. When an array is created on each array site, half of the array is placed on each loop. A fully populated enclosure would have four array sites.

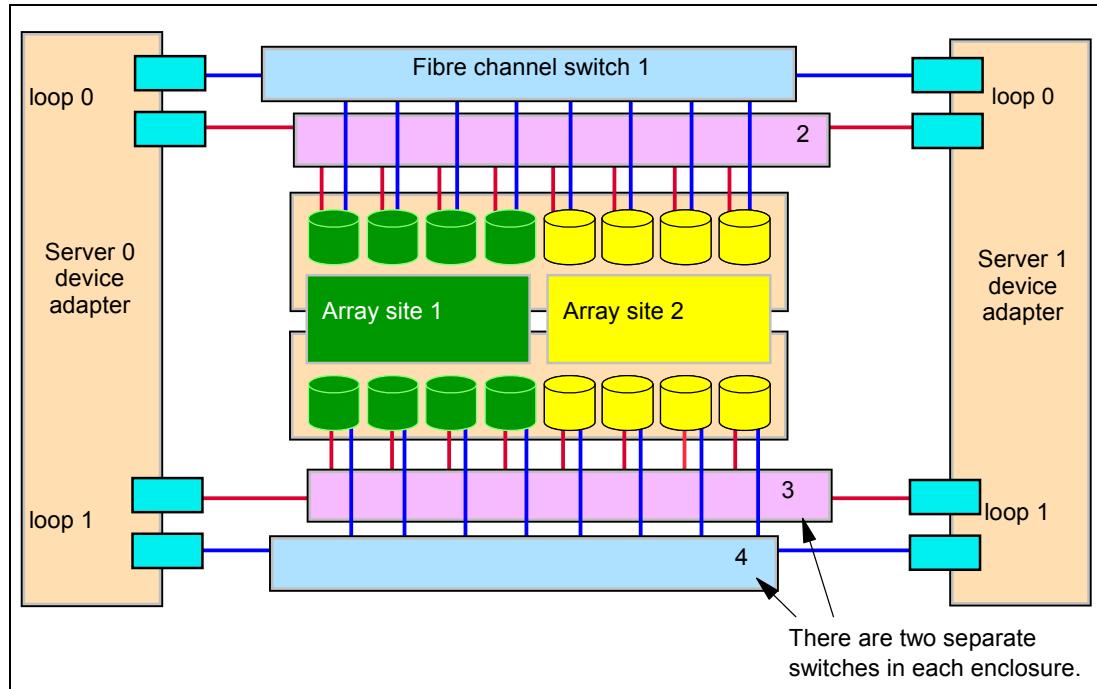


Figure 3-16 Array across loop

### AAL benefits

AAL is used to increase performance. When the device adapter writes a stripe of data to a RAID 5 array, it sends half of the write to each switched loop. By splitting the workload in this manner, each loop is worked evenly, which improves performance. If RAID 10 is used, two RAID 0 arrays are created. Each loop hosts one RAID 0 array. When servicing read I/O, half of the reads can be sent to each loop, again improving performance by balancing workload across loops.

### 3.4.3 Disk drives

Each disk drive module (DDM) is hot pluggable and has two indicators. The green indicator shows disk activity, while the amber indicator is used with light path diagnostics to allow for easy identification and replacement of a failed DDM.

In addition to the already supported 73 GB (15,000 rpm), 146 GB (15,000 rpm), 300 GB (15,000 rpm), and 450 GB (15,000 rpm) Fibre Channel disk drive sets, the DS8700 now supports 600 GB (15,000 rpm) FC disk drives as well as 1 TB (7,200 rpm), and 2 TB (7,200 rpm) SATA disk drive sets.

The DS8700 supports two different Solid State Drive (SSD) capacities of 73 GB or 146 GB. For more information about Solid State Drives, refer to *DS8000: Introducing Solid State Drives*, REDP-4522.

For information about encrypted drives and inherent restrictions, refer to *IBM System Storage DS8700 Disk Encryption Implementation and Usage Guidelines*, REDP-4500.

## 3.5 Host adapters

The DS8700 supports Fibre Channel adapters. An adapter has four ports. Each port can be configured to operate as a Fibre Channel port or as a FICON port.

### 3.5.1 Fibre Channel/FICON host adapters

Fibre Channel is a technology standard that allows data to be transferred from one node to another at high speeds and great distances (up to 10 km and beyond). The DS8700 uses the Fibre Channel protocol to transmit SCSI traffic inside Fibre Channel frames. It also uses Fibre Channel to transmit FICON traffic, which uses Fibre Channel frames to carry System z I/O.

Each DS8700 Fibre Channel card offers four 4 Gbps Fibre Channel ports. The cable connector required to attach to this card is an LC type. Each 4 Gbps port independently auto-negotiates to either 1, 2, or 4 Gbps link speed. Each of the four ports on one DS8700 adapter can also independently be either Fibre Channel protocol (FCP) or FICON. The type of the port can be changed through the DS Storage Manager GUI or by using DSCLI commands. A port cannot be both FICON and FCP simultaneously, but it can be changed as required.

The card itself is PCI-X 64-bit 133 MHz. The card is driven by a new high function, that is, high performance ASIC. To ensure maximum data integrity, it supports metadata creation and checking. Each Fibre Channel port supports a maximum of 509 host login IDs and 1,280 paths. This allows for the creation of very large storage area networks (SANs). The design of the card is shown in Figure 3-17.

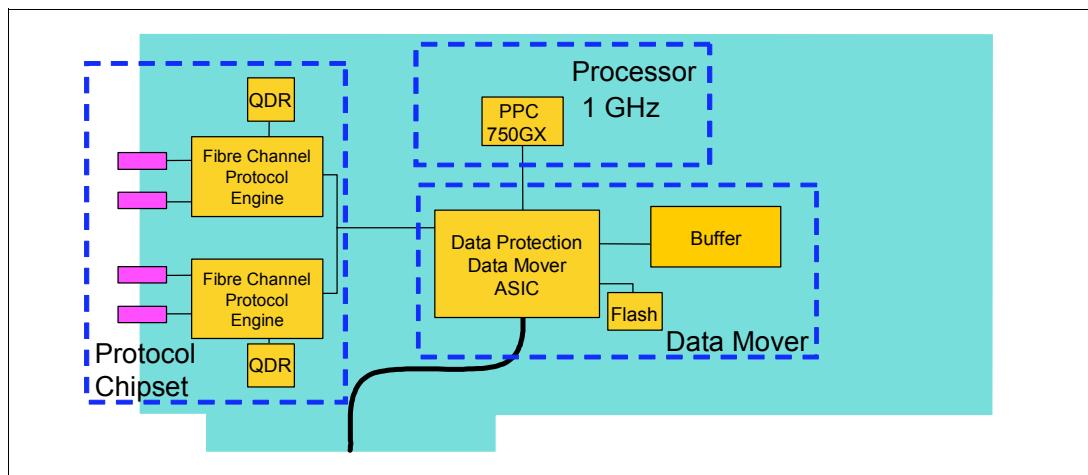


Figure 3-17 DS8700 Fibre Channel/FICON host adapter

### Fibre Channel supported servers

The current list of servers supported by Fibre Channel attachment can be found at:

<http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/ssic/index.jsp>

These documents should be consulted regularly, because they have the most up-to-date information about server attachment support.

### Fibre Channel distances

There are two types of host adapter cards you can select:

- ▶ Longwave

- ▶ Shortwave

With longwave, you can connect nodes at distances of up to 10 km (non-repeated). With shortwave, you are limited to a distance of 300 to 500 meters (non-repeated). All ports on each card must be either longwave or shortwave. There can be no intermixing of the two types within a card.

## 3.6 Power and cooling

The DS8700 series power and cooling system is highly redundant. The components are described in this section. Refer also to 4.7, “RAS on the power subsystem” on page 79.

### Rack Power Control cards (RPC)

The DS8700 has a pair of redundant RPC cards that are used to control certain aspects of power sequencing throughout the DS8700. These cards are attached to the Service Processor (SP) card in each processor, which allows them to communicate both with the Storage Hardware Management Console (HMC) and the storage facility. The RPCs also communicate with each primary power supply and indirectly with each rack's fan sense cards and the disk enclosures in each frame.

### Primary power supplies

The DS8000 primary power supply (PPS) is a wide range PPS that converts input AC voltage into DC voltage. The line cord needs to be ordered specifically for the operating voltage to meet special requirements. The line cord connector requirements vary widely throughout the world; for example, the line cord might not come with a suitable connector for your nation's preferred outlet. This connector might need to be replaced by an electrician after the machine is delivered.

There are two redundant PPSs in each frame of the DS8700. Each PPS is capable of powering the frame by itself. The PPS creates 208V output power for the processor complex and I/O enclosure power supplies. It also creates 5V and 12V DC power for the disk enclosures. There can also be an optional booster module that will allow the PPSs to temporarily run the disk enclosures off of a battery, if the extended power line disturbance feature has been purchased (see Chapter 4, “Reliability, Availability, and Serviceability on the IBM System Storage DS8700 series” on page 55 for a complete explanation of why this feature might be necessary for your installation).

Each PPS has internal fans to supply cooling for that power supply.

### Processor and I/O enclosure power supplies

Each processor and I/O enclosure has dual redundant power supplies to convert 208V DC into the required voltages for that enclosure or complex. Each enclosure also has its own cooling fans.

### Disk enclosure power and cooling

The disk enclosures do not have separate power supplies because they draw power directly from the PPSs. They do, however, have cooling fans located in a plenum above the enclosures. They draw cooling air through the front of each enclosure and exhaust air out of the top of the frame.

## Battery backup assemblies

The backup battery assemblies help protect data in the event of a loss of external power. In the event of a complete loss of input AC power, the battery assemblies are used to allow the contents of NVS memory to be written to a number of DDMs internal to the processor complex prior to power off.

The FC-AL DDMs are not protected from power loss unless the extended power line disturbance feature has been purchased.

## 3.7 Management console network

All base models ship with one Storage Hardware Management Console (HMC), and two Ethernet switches.

A mobile computer HMC (Lenovo ThinkPad), shown in Figure 3-18, will be shipped with a DS8700.

Changes done by the storage administrator to a DS8700 configuration, using the GUI or DSCLI, are passed to the storage system through the HMC.

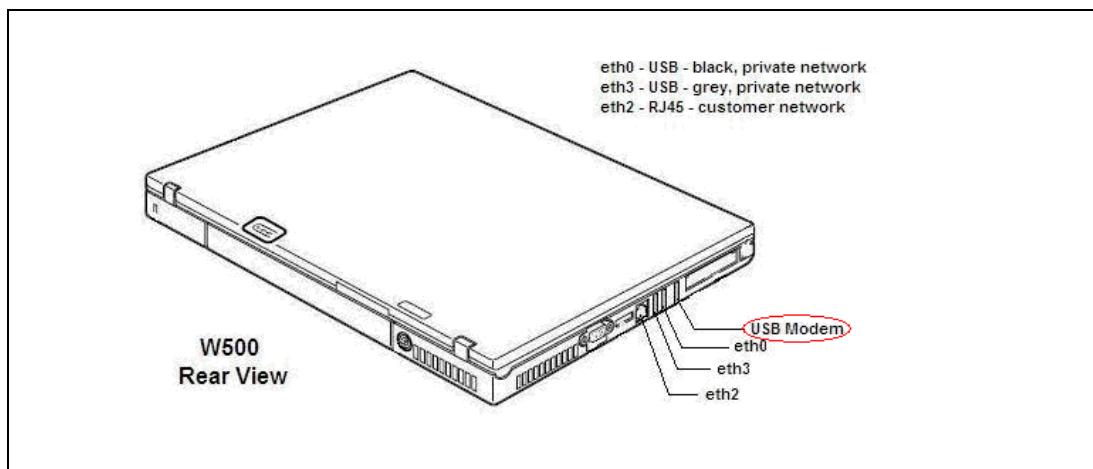


Figure 3-18 Mobile computer HMC

**Note:** The DS8700 HMC supports IPv6, the next generation of the Internet Protocol. The HMC continues to support the IPv4 standard and mixed IPV4 and IPV6 environments.

## Ethernet switches

In addition to the Fibre Channel switches installed in each disk enclosure, the DS8000 base frame contains two 8-port Ethernet switches. Two switches are supplied to allow the creation of a fully redundant management network. Each processor complex has multiple connections to each switch to allow each server to access each switch. This switch cannot be used for any equipment not associated with the DS8700. The switches get power from the internal power bus and thus do not require separate power outlets. The switches are shown in Figure 3-19.

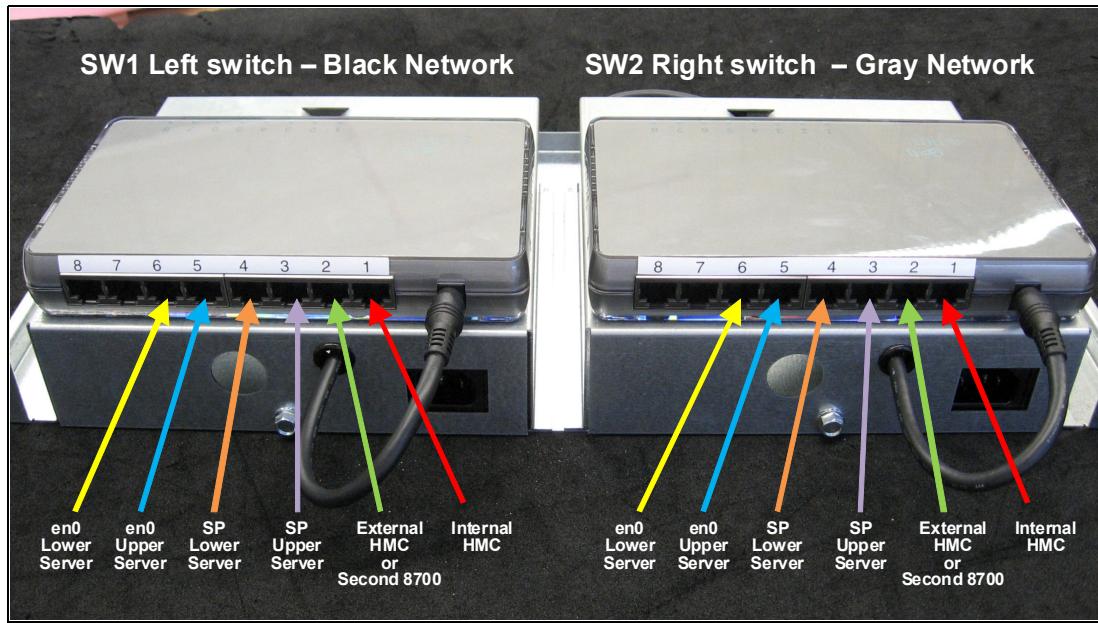


Figure 3-19 Ethernet switches

Refer to 4.5, “RAS on the HMC” on page 71 for more information.

## 3.8 System Storage Productivity Center (SSPC)

SSPC is a console (machine type 2805, hardware and software) that enables Storage Administrators to centralize and standardize the management of various storage network resources by using IBM storage management software.

With SSPC, it is possible to manage and fully configure multiple DS8000 storage systems from a single point of control.

**Note:** An SSPC is required to remotely access the DS8700 Storage Manager GUI.

SSPC consists of three components:

- ▶ IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center Basic Edition (TPC BE), which has an integrated DS8000 Storage Manager
- ▶ SVC GUI back end (can manage up to two clusters)
- ▶ SVC CIM Agent (can manage up to two clusters)

TPC BE enables you to perform:

- ▶ Disk management: Discovery, health monitoring, capacity reporting, and configuration operations
- ▶ Fabric management: Discovery, health monitoring, reporting, and configuration operations

Without installing additional software, customers have the option to upgrade their licenses of:

- ▶ TPC for Disk (to add performance monitoring capabilities)
- ▶ TPC for Fabric (to add performance monitoring capabilities)
- ▶ TPC for Data (to add storage management for open system hosts)
- ▶ TPC for Replication (to manage Copy Services sessions and support open systems and z/OS attached volumes)
- ▶ TPC Standard Edition (TPC SE) (to add all of these features)

SSPC can be ordered as a software (SW) package to be installed on the customer's hardware or can be ordered as Model 2805, which has the software pre-installed on an System x3550 with a Quad Core Intel Nahalem-EP processor (2.4 Ghz) with 8 GB of memory running Windows Server 2008 (see Figure 3-20).

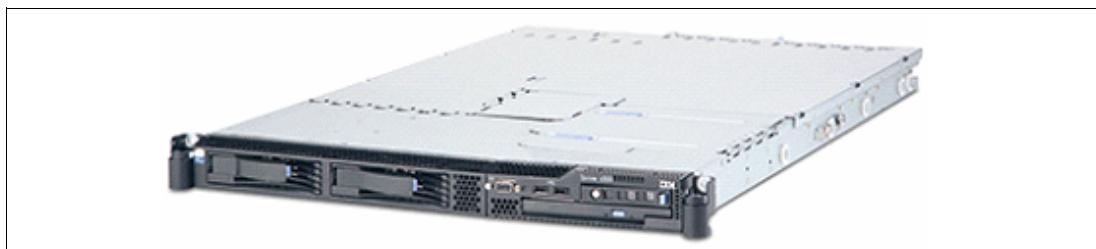


Figure 3-20 SSPC hardware

**Important:** Any DS8700 shipped requires a minimum of one SSPC per data center to enable the launch of the DS8000 Storage Manager other than from the HMC.

SSPC is described in detail in Chapter 12, "System Storage Productivity Center" on page 263.

## 3.9 Isolated Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM) server

The Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager software performs key management tasks for IBM encryption enabled hardware, such as the IBM System Storage DS8000 series and IBM encryption-enabled tape drives by providing, protecting, storing, and maintaining encryption keys that are used to encrypt information being written to, and decrypt information being read from, encryption enabled disks. TKLM operates on a variety of operating systems.

For DS8700 storage subsystems shipped with Full Disk Encryption (FDE) drives, two TKLM key servers are required. An isolated key server (IKS) with dedicated hardware and non-encrypted storage resources is required.

The isolated TKLM key server can be ordered from IBM. It is the same hardware as used for the SSPC. The following software is used on the isolated key server:

- ▶ Linux operating system
- ▶ Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager V, which includes DB2® V9.1 FB4

No other hardware or software is allowed on the IKS.

Refer to 4.8, “RAS and Full Disk Encryption” on page 81 for more information.

For more information, refer to *IBM System Storage DS8700 Disk Encryption Implementation and Usage Guidelines*, REDP-4500.



# Reliability, Availability, and Serviceability on the IBM System Storage DS8700 series

This chapter describes the reliability, availability, and serviceability (RAS) characteristics of the IBM System Storage DS8700. The following topics are covered in this chapter:

- ▶ Names and terms for DS8700
- ▶ RAS features of the DS8700 Central Electronic Complex (CEC)
- ▶ CEC failover and fallback
- ▶ Data flow in the DS8700
- ▶ RAS on the HMC
- ▶ RAS on the disk subsystem
- ▶ RAS on the power subsystem
- ▶ RAS and Full Disk Encryption
- ▶ Other features

## 4.1 Names and terms for the DS8700 storage system

It is important to understand the naming conventions used to describe DS8700 components and constructs to fully appreciate the discussion of RAS concepts. Although most terms have been introduced in previous chapters of this book, they are repeated and summarized here, as the rest of this chapter will use these terms frequently.

### Storage unit

This term describes a single DS8700 (base frame plus optional expansion frames). If your organization has one DS8700, then you have a single storage complex that contains a single storage unit.

### Base frame or primary frame

The DS8700 is available as a single model type (941), which includes a complete storage unit contained in a single primary frame, also called a *base frame*. To increase the storage capacity, up to 4 expansion frames may be added to the primary frame. A primary frame contains the following components:

- ▶ Power and cooling components (N+1 power supplies, batteries, and fans)
- ▶ Power control cards (RPC, SPCN, and Fan sense)
- ▶ Two POWER6 CECs
- ▶ Two or four I/O Enclosures for Host Adapters and Device Adapters
- ▶ 2 Gigabit Ethernet switches for internal network
- ▶ Storage Hardware Management Console
- ▶ Up to four pairs (eight total) Storage Enclosures for storage disks
  - Each Storage Enclosure has up to 16 disk drive modules (DDM).
  - The primary frame can have a maximum of 128 disk drive modules.

### Expansion frame

Expansion frames can be added one at a time to increase the overall capacity of the storage unit. All expansion frames contain the power and cooling components needed to run the frame. The first expansion frame contains storage disks and I/O Enclosures for the Fibre Channel Loops. The second, third, and fourth expansion frames contain storage disks only. Because the Fibre Channel Loops are switched, the addition of an expansion frame is a concurrent operation for the DS8700. Each expansion frame can have up to eight pairs (16 total) Storage Enclosures for storage disks, and:

- ▶ Each Storage Enclosure has up to 16 disk drive modules (DDM).
- ▶ An expansion frame can have a maximum of 256 disk drive modules (the fourth expansion frame is limited to 128 drives).

### Storage complex

This term describes a group of DS8700s managed by a single management console. A storage complex can, and usually does, consist of just a single DS8700 storage unit (primary frame plus optional expansion frames).

### Central Electronic Complex/processor complex/storage server

In the DS8700, a Central Electronic Complex (CEC) is an IBM System p server built on the POWER6 architecture. The CECs run the AIX V6.1 operating system and storage-specific microcode. The DS8700 contains two CECs as a redundant pair so that if either fails, the remaining CEC can continue to run the storage unit. Each CEC can have up to 192 GB of memory and one or two POWER6 processor cards. In other models of the DS8000 family, a CEC was also referred to as a *processor complex* or a *storage server*. The CECs are

identified as CEC0 and CEC1. Some chapters and illustrations in this publication refer to *Server 0* and *Server 1*; these are the same as CEC 0 and CEC 1 for the DS8700.

## Storage HMC

The Storage Hardware Management Console (HMC) is the master console for the DS8700 unit. With connections to the CECs, the customer network, the SSPC, and other management systems, the HMC becomes the focal point for most operations on the DS8700. All storage configuration and service actions are run through the HMC. Although many other IBM products also use an HMC, the Storage HMC is unique to the DS8000 family. Throughout this chapter, it will be referred to as the HMC, but keep in mind we are referring to the Storage HMC that is cabled to the internal network of the DS8700.

## System Storage Productivity Center

The DS8700 utilizes the IBM SSPC, a management system that integrates the power of the IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center (TPC) and the DS Storage Manager user interfaces (residing at the HMC) into a single view. The SSPC (machine type 2805-MC4) is an integrated hardware and software solution for centralized management of IBM storage products with IBM storage management software. SSPC is described in detail in Chapter 12, “System Storage Productivity Center” on page 263.

## Storage facility images and logical partitions

A logical partition (LPAR) is a virtual server within a physical processor complex. A storage facility image (SFI) is two logical partitions acting together as a virtual storage server. Earlier DS8000 models supported more than one SFI, meaning that the two physical CECs could be divided into four logical servers, each having control of some of the physical resources of the DS8000. The DS8700 does not divide the CECs into logical partitions. There is only one SFI, which owns 100% of the physical resources. So for the DS8700, the term storage facility image can be considered synonymous with storage unit.

**Important:** The DS8700 does not divide the CECs into logical partitions. There is only one SFI, which owns 100% of the physical resources. Information regarding multi-SFI or LPARs does not apply to the IBM System Storage DS8700.

## 4.2 RAS features of DS8700 CEC

Reliability, availability, and serviceability (RAS) are important concepts in the design of the IBM System Storage DS8700. Hardware features, software features, design considerations, and operational guidelines all contribute to make the DS8700 extremely reliable. At the heart of the DS8700 is a pair of POWER6 based System p servers known as CECs. These two servers share the load of receiving and moving data between the attached hosts and the disk arrays, but they also are redundant so that if either CEC fails, the remaining CEC can continue to run the DS8700 without any host interruption. This section looks at the RAS features of the CECs, including the hardware, the operating system, and the interconnect.

### 4.2.1 POWER6 Hypervisor

The POWER6 Hypervisor (PHYP) is a component of system firmware that will always be installed and activated, regardless of the system configuration. It operates as a hidden partition, with no processor resources assigned to it.

The Hypervisor provides the following capabilities:

- ▶ Reserved memory partitions allow the setting aside of a certain portion of memory to use as cache and a certain portion to use as NVS.
- ▶ Preserved memory support allows the contents of the NVS and cache memory areas to be protected in the event of a server reboot.
- ▶ I/O enclosure initialization control, so that when one server is being initialized, it does not initialize an I/O adapter that is in use by another server.
- ▶ Automatic reboot of a frozen partition or Hypervisor.

The AIX operating system uses PHYP services to manage the translation control entry (TCE) tables. The operating system communicates the desired I/O bus address to logical mapping, and the Hypervisor translates that into the I/O bus address to physical mapping within the specific TCE table. The Hypervisor needs a dedicated memory region for the TCE tables to translate the I/O address to the partition memory address, and then the Hypervisor can perform direct memory access (DMA) transfers to the PCI adapters.

#### **4.2.2 POWER6 processor**

IBM POWER6 systems have a number of new features that enable systems to dynamically adjust when issues arise that threaten availability. Most notably, POWER6 systems introduce the POWER6 Processor Instruction Retry suite of tools, which includes Processor Instruction Retry, Alternate Processor Recovery, Partition Availability Prioritization, and Single Processor Checkstop. Taken together, in many failure scenarios these features allow a POWER6 processor-based system to recover with no impact from the failing core.

The POWER6 processor implements the 64-bit IBM Power Architecture® technology and capitalizes on all the enhancements brought by the POWER5™ processor. Each POWER6 chip incorporates two dual-threaded Simultaneous Multithreading processor cores, a private 4 MB level 2 cache (L2) for each processor, a 36 MB L3 cache controller shared by the two processors, integrated memory controller, and data interconnect switch. It is designed to provide an extensive set of RAS features that include improved fault isolation, recovery from errors without stopping the processor complex, avoidance of recurring failures, and predictive failure analysis.

#### **POWER6 RAS features**

The following sections describe the RAS leadership features of IBM POWER6 systems in more detail.

##### ***POWER6 processor instruction retry***

Soft failures in the processor core are transient errors. When an error is encountered in the core, the POWER6 processor will first automatically retry the instruction. If the source of the error was truly transient, the instruction will succeed and the system will continue as before. On predecessor IBM systems, this error would have caused a checkstop.

##### ***POWER6 alternate processor retry***

Hard failures are more difficult, being true logical errors that will be replicated each time the instruction is repeated. Retrying the instruction will not help in this situation because the instruction will continue to fail. Systems with POWER6 processors introduce the ability to extract the failing instruction from the faulty core and retry it elsewhere in the system, after which the failing core is dynamically deconfigured and called out for replacement. The entire process is transparent to the partition owning the failing instruction. Systems with POWER6 processors are designed to avoid what would have been a full system outage.

### ***POWER6 cache availability***

In the event that an uncorrectable error occurs in L2 or L3 cache, the system will be able to dynamically remove the offending line of cache without requiring a reboot. In addition, POWER6 utilizes an L1/L2 cache design and a write-through cache policy on all levels, helping to ensure that data is written to main memory as soon as possible.

### ***POWER6 single processor checkstopping***

Another major advancement in POWER6 processors is single processor checkstopping. A processor checkstop would result in a system checkstop. A new feature in System 550 is the ability to contain most processor checkstops to the partition that was using the processor at the time. This significantly reduces the probability of any one processor affecting total system availability.

### ***POWER6 fault avoidance***

POWER6 systems are built to keep errors from ever happening. This quality-based design includes such features as reduced power consumption and cooler operating temperatures for increased reliability, enabled by the use of copper chip circuitry, silicon on insulator (SOI), and dynamic clock-gating. It also uses mainframe-inspired components and technologies.

### ***POWER6 First Failure Data Capture***

If a problem should occur, the ability to diagnose it correctly is a fundamental requirement upon which improved availability is based. The POWER6 incorporates advanced capability in startup diagnostics and in runtime First Failure Data Capture (FFDC) based on strategic error checkers built into the chips. Any errors that are detected by the pervasive error checkers are captured into Fault Isolation Registers (FIRs), which can be interrogated by the service processor (SP). The SP has the capability to access system components using special-purpose service processor ports or by access to the error registers.

The FIRs are important because they enable an error to be uniquely identified, thus enabling the appropriate action to be taken. Appropriate actions might include such things as a bus retry, error checking and correction (ECC), or system firmware recovery routines. Recovery routines could include dynamic deallocation of potentially failing components.

Errors are logged into the system nonvolatile random access memory (NVRAM) and the SP event history log, along with a notification of the event to AIX for capture in the operating system error log. Diagnostic Error Log Analysis (diagela) routines analyze the error log entries and invoke a suitable action, such as issuing a warning message. If the error can be recovered, or after suitable maintenance, the service processor resets the FIRs so that they can accurately record any future errors.

### ***N+1 redundancy***

High-opportunity components, or those that most affect system availability, are protected with redundancy and the ability to be repaired concurrently. The use of redundant parts allows the system to remain operational. Among them are:

- ▶ Redundant spare memory bits in cache, directories, and main memory
- ▶ Redundant and hot-swap cooling
- ▶ Redundant and hot-swap power supplies

### ***Self-healing***

For a system to be self-healing, it must be able to recover from a failing component by first detecting and isolating the failed component. It should then be able to take it offline, fix or isolate it, and then reintroduce the fixed or replaced component into service without any application disruption. Examples include:

- ▶ Bit steering to redundant memory in the event of a failed memory module to keep the server operational
- ▶ Bit scattering, thus allowing for error correction and continued operation in the presence of a complete chip failure (Chipkill recovery)
- ▶ Single-bit error correction using Error Checking and Correcting (ECC) without reaching error thresholds for main, L2, and L3 cache memory
- ▶ L3 cache line deletes extended from 2 to 10 for additional self-healing
- ▶ ECC extended to inter-chip connections on fabric and processor bus
- ▶ Memory scrubbing to help prevent soft-error memory faults
- ▶ Dynamic processor deallocation

### ***Memory reliability, fault tolerance, and integrity***

POWER6 uses Error Checking and Correcting (ECC) circuitry for system memory to correct single-bit memory failures and to detect double-bit memory failures. Detection of double-bit memory failures helps maintain data integrity. Furthermore, the memory chips are organized such that the failure of any specific memory module only affects a single bit within a four-bit ECC word (bit-scattering), thus allowing for error correction and continued operation in the presence of a complete chip failure (Chipkill recovery).

The memory DIMMs also utilize memory scrubbing and thresholding to determine when memory modules within each bank of memory should be used to replace ones that have exceeded their threshold of error count (dynamic bit-steering). Memory scrubbing is the process of reading the contents of the memory during idle time and checking and correcting any single-bit errors that have accumulated by passing the data through the ECC logic. This function is a hardware function on the memory controller chip and does not influence normal system memory performance.

### ***Fault masking***

If corrections and retries succeed and do not exceed threshold limits, the system remains operational with full resources and no client or IBM service representative intervention is required.

### ***Mutual surveillance***

The SP can monitor the operation of the firmware during the boot process, and it can monitor the operating system for loss of control. This enables the service processor to take appropriate action when it detects that the firmware or the operating system has lost control. Mutual surveillance also enables the operating system to monitor for service processor activity and can request a service processor repair action if necessary.

## **4.2.3 AIX operating system**

Each CEC runs the IBM AIX Version 6.1 operating system. This is the latest generation of the IBM well-proven, scalable, and open standards-based UNIX®-like operating system. This version of AIX includes support for Failure Recovery Routines (FRR).

With AIX V6.1, the kernel has been enhanced with the ability to recover from unexpected errors. Kernel components and extensions can provide failure recovery routines to gather serviceability data, diagnose, repair, and recover from errors. In previous AIX versions, kernel errors always resulted in an unexpected system halt.

Refer to *IBM AIX Version 6.1 Differences Guide*, SG24-7559 for more information about how AIX V6.1 adds to the RAS features of AIX 5L™ V5.3.

You can also reference the IBM web site for a more thorough review of the features of the IBM AIX operating system at:

<http://www.ibm.com/systems/power/software/aix/index.html>

#### 4.2.4 CEC dual hard drive rebuild

If a simultaneous failure of the dual hard drives in a CEC should occur, then they would need to be replaced and then have the AIX OS and DS8700 microcode reloaded. The DS8700 introduces a significant improvement in RAS for this process, known as a *rebuild*. Any fault that causes the CEC to be unable to load the operating system from its internal hard drives would lead to this service action.

For a rebuild on previous DS8000 models, the IBM service representative would have to load multiple CDs/DVDs directly onto the CEC being serviced. For the DS8700, there are no optical drives on the CECs; only the HMC has a DVD drive. For a CEC dual hard drive rebuild, the service representative acquires the needed code bundles on the HMC, which then runs as a Network Installation Management on Linux (NIMoL) server. The HMC provides the OS and microcode to the CEC over the DS8700 internal network, which is much faster than reading/verifying from an optical disc.

All of the tasks and status updates for a CEC dual hard drive rebuild are done from the HMC, which is also aware of the overall service action that necessitated the rebuild. If the rebuild fails, the HMC manages the errors, including error data, and allows the service representative to address the problem and restart the rebuild. When the rebuild completes, the server is automatically brought up for the first time (IML). Once the IML is successful, the service representative can resume operations on the CEC.

Overall, the rebuild process on a DS8700 is more robust and straightforward, reducing the time needed to perform this critical service action.

#### 4.2.5 RIO-G interconnect

The RIO-G interconnect is a high speed loop between the two CECs. Each RIO-G port can operate at 1 GHz in bidirectional mode and is capable of passing data in each direction on each cycle of the port. In previous generations of the DS8000, the I/O Enclosures were on the RIO-G loops between the two CECs. The RIO-G bus carried the CEC-to-DDM data (host I/O) and all CEC-to-CEC communications.

For the DS8700, the I/O Enclosures are wired point-to-point with each CEC using a PCI Express architecture. This means that only the CEC-to-CEC (XC) communications are now carried on the RIO-G and the RIO loop configuration is greatly simplified. Figure 4-1 shows the new fabric design of the DS8700.

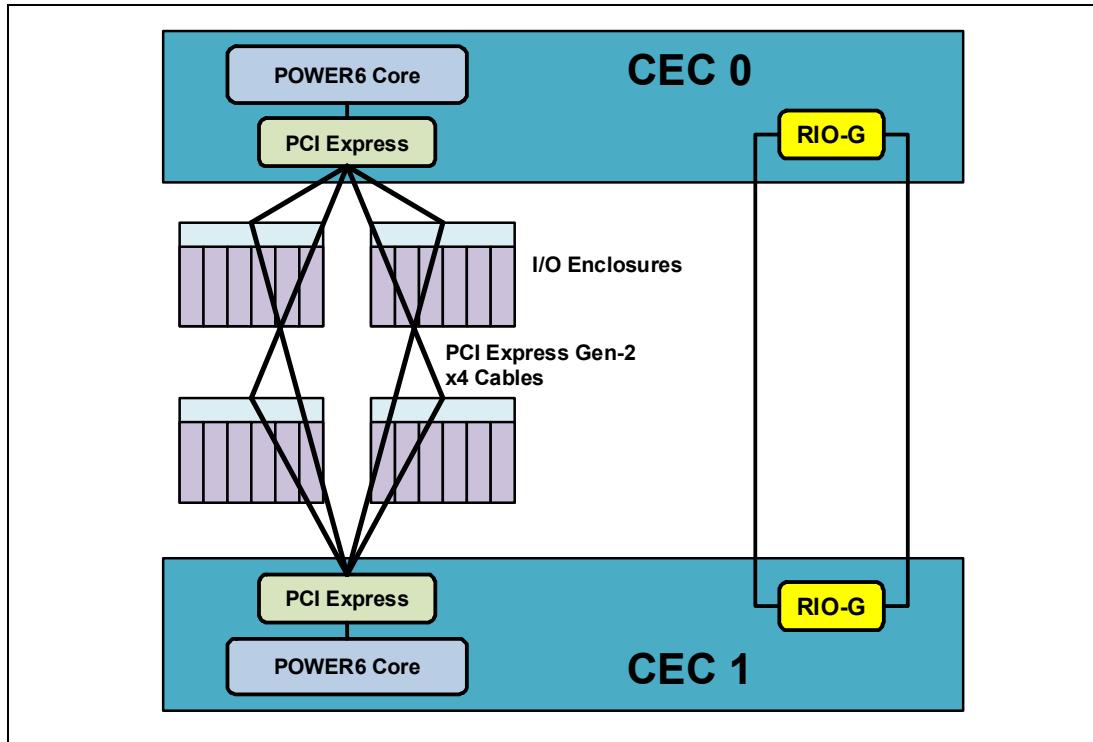


Figure 4-1 DS8700 design of RIO-G loop and I/O enclosures

#### 4.2.6 Environmental monitoring

Environmental monitoring related to power, fans, and temperature is performed by the System Power Control Network (SPCN). Environmental critical and non-critical conditions generate Early Power-Off Warning (EPOW) events. Critical events (for example, a Class 5 AC power loss) trigger appropriate signals from hardware to the affected components to prevent any data loss without operating system or firmware involvement. Non-critical environmental events are logged and reported using Event Scan.

Temperature monitoring is also performed. If the ambient temperature goes above a preset operating range, then the rotation speed of the cooling fans can be increased. Temperature monitoring also warns the internal microcode of potential environment-related problems. An orderly system shutdown will occur when the operating temperature exceeds a critical level.

Voltage monitoring provides warning and an orderly system shutdown when the voltage is out of operational specification.

#### 4.2.7 Resource deallocation

If recoverable errors exceed threshold limits, resources can be deallocated with the system remaining operational, allowing deferred maintenance at a convenient time. Dynamic deallocation of potentially failing components is nondisruptive, allowing the system to continue to run. Persistent deallocation occurs when a failed component is detected; it is then deactivated at a subsequent reboot.

Dynamic deallocation functions include the following components:

- ▶ Processor
- ▶ L3 cache lines
- ▶ Partial L2 cache deallocation
- ▶ PCI-X bus and slots

Persistent deallocation functions include the following components:

- ▶ Processor
- ▶ Memory
- ▶ Deconfigure or bypass failing I/O adapters
- ▶ L2 cache

Following a hardware error that has been flagged by the service processor, the subsequent reboot of the server invokes extended diagnostics. If a processor or cache has been marked for deconfiguration by persistent processor deallocation, the boot process will attempt to proceed to completion with the faulty device automatically deconfigured. Failing I/O adapters will be deconfigured or bypassed during the boot process.

## 4.3 CEC failover and fallback

To understand the process of CEC failover and fallback, we have to review the logical construction of the DS8700. For more complete explanations, you might want to refer to Chapter 5, “Virtualization concepts” on page 85.

Creating logical volumes on the DS8700 works through the following constructs:

- ▶ Storage DDMs are installed into predefined *array sites*.
- ▶ These array sites are used to form *arrays*, structured as RAID 5, RAID 6, or RAID 10 (restrictions apply for Solid State Drives and SATA drives).
- ▶ These RAID arrays then become members of a *rank*.
- ▶ Each rank then becomes a member of an *Extent Pool*. Each Extent Pool has an affinity to either server 0 or server 1. Each Extent Pool is either open systems fixed block (FB) or System z count key data (CKD).
- ▶ Within each Extent Pool, we create *logical volumes*. For open systems, these are called *LUNs*. For System z, these are called *volumes*. LUN stands for *logical unit number*, which is used for SCSI addressing. Each logical volume belongs to a *logical subsystem* (LSS).

For open systems, the LSS membership is really only significant for Copy Services. But for System z, the LSS is the logical control unit (LCU), which equates to a 3990 (a System z disk controller which the DS8700 emulates). It is important to remember that LSSs that have an even identifying number have an affinity with CEC 0, while LSSs that have an odd identifying number have an affinity with CEC 1. When a host operating system issues a write to a logical volume, the DS8700 host adapter directs that write to the CEC that *owns* the LSS of which that logical volume is a member.

### 4.3.1 Dual operational

One of the basic premises of RAS in respect to processing host data is that the DS8700 will always try to maintain two copies of the data while it is moving through the storage system. The CECs have two areas of their primary memory used for holding host data: cache memory and *non-volatile storage* (NVS). NVS is an area of the system RAM that is persistent across a server reboot.

**Note:** For the previous generation of DS8000, the maximum available NVS was 4 GB per server. For the DS8700, that maximum has been increased to 6 GB per server.

When a write is issued to a volume and the CECs are both operational, this *write data* gets directed to the CEC that owns this volume. The data flow begins with the write data being placed into the cache memory of the owning CEC. The write data is also placed into the NVS of the other CEC. The NVS copy of the write data is accessed only if a write failure should occur and the cache memory is empty or possibly invalid; otherwise, it will be discarded after the destaging is complete, as shown in Figure 4-2.

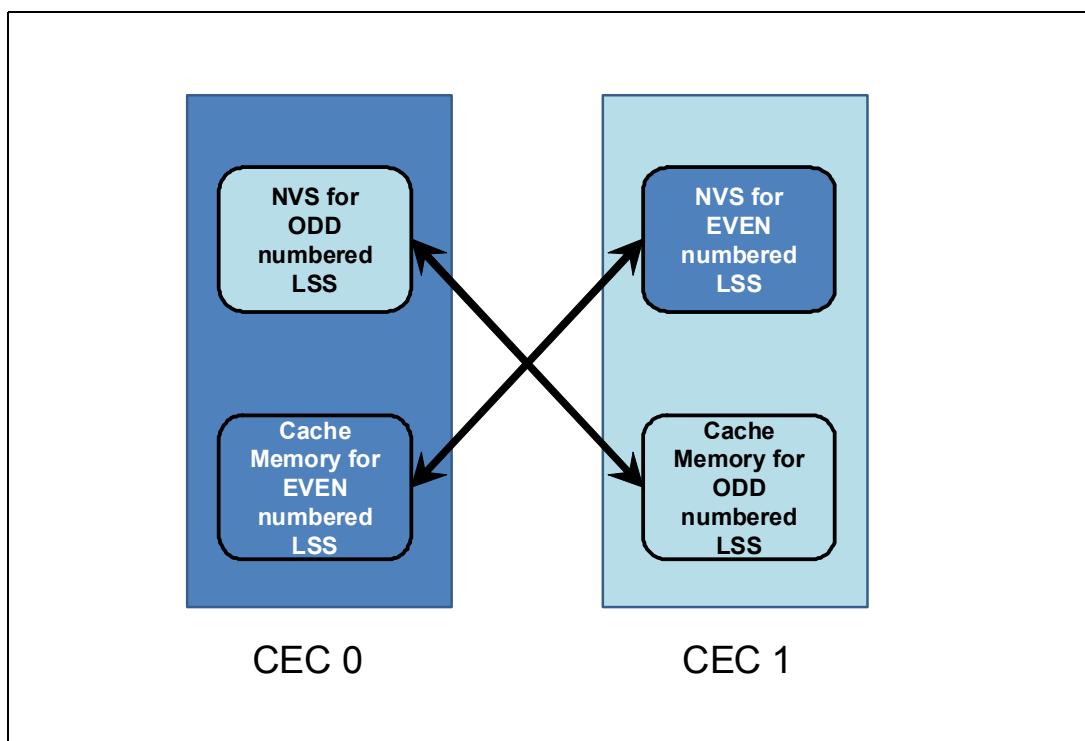


Figure 4-2 Write data when CECs are dual operational

Figure 4-2 shows how the cache memory of CEC 0 is used for all logical volumes that are members of the even LSSs. Likewise, the cache memory of CEC 1 supports all logical volumes that are members of odd LSSs. For every write that gets placed into cache, a second copy gets placed into the NVS memory located in the alternate CEC. Thus, the normal flow of data for a write when both CECs are operational is as follows:

1. Data is written to cache memory in the owning CEC.
2. Data is written to NVS memory of the alternate CEC.
3. The write operation is reported to the attached host as completed.
4. The write data is destaged from the cache memory to a disk array.
5. The write data is discarded from the NVS memory of the alternate CEC.

Under normal operation, both DS8700 CECs are actively processing I/O requests. The following sections describe the failover and fallback procedures that occur between the CECs when an abnormal condition has affected one of them.

### 4.3.2 Failover

In the example shown in Figure 4-3, CEC 0 has failed. CEC 1 needs to take over all of CEC 0's functions. Since the RAID arrays are on Fibre Channel Loops that reach both CECs, they can still be accessed via the Device Adapters owned by CEC 1. See 4.6.1, "RAID configurations" on page 72 for more information about the Fibre Channel Loops.

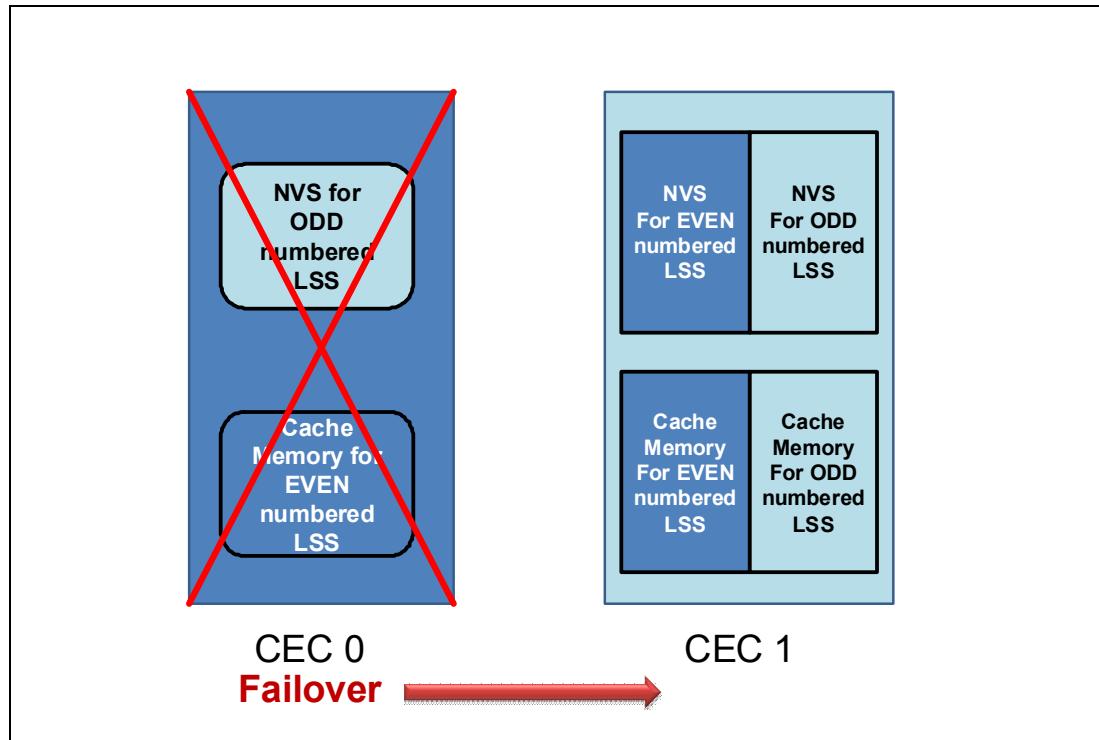


Figure 4-3 CEC 0 failover to CEC 1

At the moment of failure, CEC 1 has a backup copy of CEC 0's write data in its own NVS. From a data integrity perspective, the concern is for the backup copy of CEC 1's write data, which was in the NVS of CEC 0 when it failed. Since the DS8700 now has only one copy of that data (active in the cache memory of CEC 1), it will perform the following steps:

1. CEC 1 destages the contents of its NVS (CEC 0's write data) to the disk subsystem. However, before the actual destage and at the beginning of the failover:
  - a. The working CEC starts by preserving the data in cache that was backed by the failed CEC NVS. If a reboot of the single working CEC occurs before the cache data had been destaged, the write data remains available for subsequent destaging.
  - b. In addition, the existing data in cache (for which there is still only a single volatile copy) is added to the NVS so that it remains available if the attempt to destage fails or a server reboot occurs. This functionality is limited so that it cannot consume more than 85% of NVS space.
2. The NVS and cache of CEC 1 are divided in two, half for the odd LSSs and half for the even LSSs.
3. CEC 1 now begins processing the I/O for *all* the LSSs.

This entire process is known as a *failover*. After failover, the DS8700 now operates as shown in Figure 4-3. CEC 1 now owns all the LSSs, which means all reads and writes will be serviced by CEC 1. The NVS inside CEC 1 is now used for both odd and even LSSs. The entire failover process should be invisible to the attached hosts.

The DS8700 can continue to operate in this state indefinitely. There has not been any loss of functionality, but there has been a loss of redundancy. Any critical failure in the working CEC would render the DS8700 unable to serve I/O for the arrays, so IBM support should begin work right away to determine the scope of the failure and to build an action plan to restore the failed CEC to an operational state.

### 4.3.3 Failback

The *failback* process always begins automatically as soon as the DS8700 microcode determines that the failed CEC has been *resumed* to an operational state. If the failure was relatively minor and recoverable by the operating system or DS8700 microcode, then the resume action will be initiated by the software. If there was a service action with hardware components replaced, then the IBM service representative or remote support will resume the failed CEC.

For this example where CEC 0 has failed, we should now assume that CEC 0 has been repaired and has been resumed. The failback begins with CEC 1 starting to use the NVS in CEC 0 again, and the ownership of the even LSSs being transferred back to CEC 0. Normal I/O processing with both CECs operational then resumes. Just like the failover process, the failback process is invisible to the attached hosts.

In general, recovery actions (failover/failback) on the DS8700 do not impact I/O operation latency by more than 15 seconds. With certain limitations on configurations and advanced functions, this impact to latency is often limited to just 8 seconds. On logical volumes that are not configured with RAID 10 storage, there are some RAID related recoveries that cause latency impacts in excess of 15 seconds. If you have real-time response requirements in this area, contact IBM to determine the latest information about how to manage your storage to meet your requirements.

### 4.3.4 NVS and power outages

During normal operation, the DS8700 preserves write data by storing a duplicate in the NVS of the alternate CEC. To ensure that this write data is not lost due to a power event, the DS8700 contains battery backup units (BBUs). The single purpose of the BBUs is to preserve the NVS area of CEC memory in the event of a complete loss of input power to the DS8700. The design is to not move the data from NVS to the disk arrays. Instead, each CEC has dual internal SCSI disks, which are available to store the contents of NVS.

**Important:** Unless the power line disturbance feature (PLD) has been purchased, the BBUs are not used to keep the storage disks in operation. They keep the CECs in operation long enough to dump NVS contents to internal hard disks.

If both power supplies in the primary frame should stop receiving input power, the CECs would be informed that they are running on batteries and immediately begin a shutdown procedure. It is during this shutdown that the entire contents of NVS memory are written to the CEC hard drives so that the data will be available for destaging after the CECs are operational again. If power is lost to a single primary power supply (PPS), the ability of the other power supply to keep all batteries charged is not impacted, so the CECs would remain online.

If all the batteries were to fail (which is extremely unlikely because the batteries are in an N+1 redundant configuration), the DS8700 would lose this NVS protection and consequently would take all CECs offline because reliability and availability of host data are compromised.

The following sections show the steps followed in the event of complete power interruption.

## **Power loss**

When an on-battery condition shutdown begins, the following events occur:

1. All host adapter I/O is blocked.
2. Each CEC begins copying its NVS data to internal disk (not the storage DDMs). For each CEC, two copies are made of the NVS data.
3. When the copy process is complete, each CEC shuts down.
4. When shutdown in each CEC is complete (or a timer expires), the DS8700 is powered down.

## **Power restored**

When power is restored to the DS8700, the following events occur:

1. The CECs power on and perform power on self tests and PHYP functions.
2. Each CEC then begins boot up (IML).
3. At a certain stage in the boot process, the CEC detects NVS data on its internal SCSI disks and begins to destage it to the storage DDMs.
4. When the battery units reach a certain level of charge, the CECs come online and begin to process host I/O.

## **Battery charging**

In many cases, sufficient charging will occur during the power on self test, operating system boot, and microcode boot. However, if a complete discharge of the batteries has occurred, which can happen if multiple power outages occur in a short period of time, then recharging might take up to two hours.

**Note:** The CECs will not come online (process host I/O) until the batteries are sufficiently charged to handle at least one outage.

## **4.4 Data flow in DS8700**

One of the significant hardware changes for the DS8700 is the way in which host I/O is brought into the storage unit. The DS8700 has a new design for I/O Enclosures, which house the Device Adapter and host adapter cards. The connectivity between the CECs and the I/O Enclosures has been improved as well. These changes use the many strengths of the PCI Express architecture.

Refer to 3.2.2, “Peripheral Component Interconnect Express (PCI Express)” on page 33.

You can also discover more about PCI Express at the following site:

<http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/Redbooks.nsf/RedbookAbstracts/tips0456.html?Open>

### **4.4.1 New I/O enclosures**

The DS8700 I/O enclosure, also called a *bay*, is a new design compared to previous models of the DS8000 family. The older DS8000 bay consisted of multiple parts that required removal of the bay and disassembly for service. In the DS8700, the switch card can be replaced without removing the I/O cards, reducing time and effort in servicing the enclosure. As shown in Figure 4-1 on page 62, each CEC is connected to all four bays via PCI Express cables. This makes each bay an extension of each server.

The DS8700 I/O enclosures use hot-swap adapters with PCI Express connectors. These adapters are in blind-swap hot-plug cassettes, which allow them to be replaced concurrently. Each slot can be independently powered off for concurrent replacement of a failed adapter, installation of a new adapter, or removal of an old one.

In addition, each I/O enclosure has N+1 power and cooling in the form of two power supplies with integrated fans. The power supplies can be concurrently replaced and a single power supply is capable of supplying DC power to the whole I/O enclosure.

#### 4.4.2 Host connections

Each DS8700 Fibre Channel host adapter card provides four ports for connection either directly to a host, or to a Fibre Channel SAN switch.

##### Single or multiple path

In DS8700, the host adapters are shared between the CECs. To show this concept, Figure 4-4 shows a potential machine configuration. In this example, two I/O enclosures are shown. Each enclosure has a pair of Fibre Channel host adapters. If a host only has a single path to a DS8700, as shown in Figure 4-4, then it would still be able to access volumes belonging to all LSSs because the host adapter will direct the I/O to the correct CEC. However, if an error were to occur on the host adapter (HA), host port (HP), or I/O enclosure, or in the SAN, then all connectivity would be lost. Clearly, the host bus adapter (HBA) in the attached host is also a single point of failure.

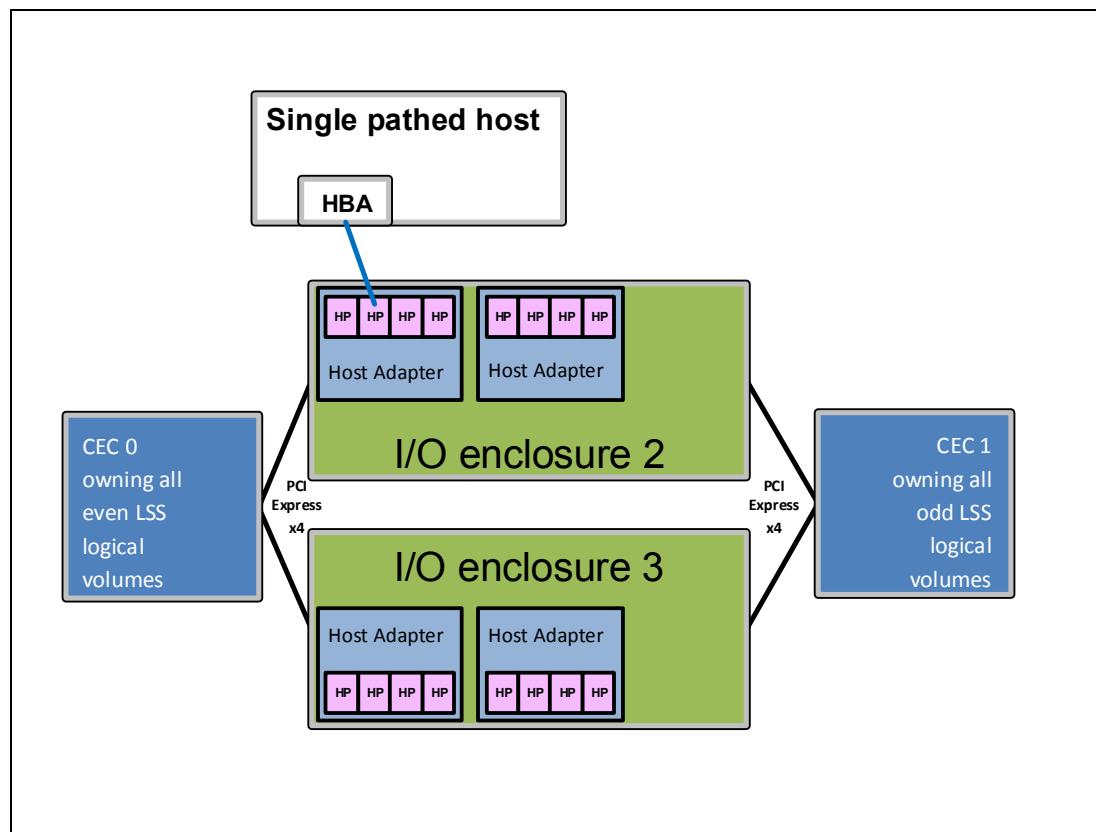


Figure 4-4 A single-path host connection

A more robust design is shown in Figure 4-5 where the host is attached to different Fibre Channel host adapters in different I/O enclosures. This is also important because during a microcode update, an I/O enclosure might need to be taken offline. This configuration allows the host to survive a hardware failure on any component on either path.

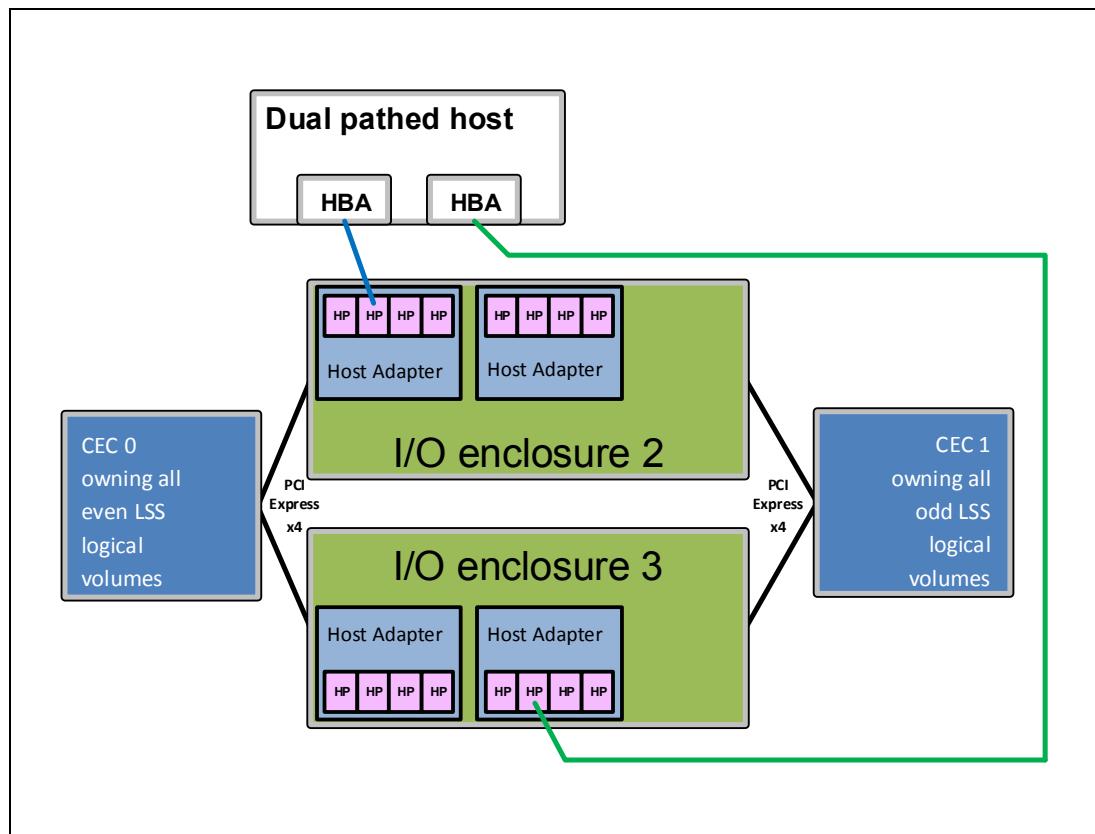


Figure 4-5 A dual-path host connection

**Important:** We strongly recommend that hosts that access the DS8700 have at least two connections to separate host ports in separate host adapters on separate I/O enclosures.

### SAN/FICON switches

Because a large number of hosts can be connected to the DS8700, each using multiple paths, the number of host adapter ports that are available in the DS8700 might not be sufficient to accommodate all the connections. The solution to this problem is the use of SAN switches or directors to switch logical connections from multiple hosts. In a System z environment, you will need to select a SAN switch or director that also supports FICON.

A logic or power failure in a switch or director can interrupt communication between hosts and the DS8700. We recommend that more than one switch or director be provided to ensure continued availability. Ports from two different host adapters in two different I/O enclosures should be configured to go through each of two directors. The complete failure of either director leaves half the paths still operating.

## **Multipathing software**

Each attached host operating system requires a mechanism to allow it to manage multiple paths to the same device, and to preferably load balance these requests. Also, when a failure occurs on one redundant path, then the attached host must have a mechanism to allow it to detect that one path is gone and route all I/O requests for those logical devices to an alternative path. Finally, it should be able to detect when the path has been restored so that the I/O can again be load-balanced. The mechanism that will be used varies by attached host operating system and environment, as detailed in the next two sections.

## **Open systems and SDD**

In the majority of open systems environments, we strongly recommend the use of the Subsystem Device Driver (SDD) to manage both path failover and preferred path determination. SDD is a software product that IBM supplies as a no charge option with the DS8700.

SDD provides availability through automatic I/O path failover. If a failure occurs in the data path between the host and the DS8700, SDD automatically switches the I/O to another path. SDD will also automatically set the failed path back online after a repair is made. SDD also improves performance by sharing I/O operations to a common disk over multiple active paths to distribute and balance the I/O workload.

SDD is not available for every supported operating system. Refer to the *IBM System Storage DS8000 Host Systems Attachment Guide*, SC26-7917, and the interoperability website for guidance about which multipathing software might be required. Refer to the IBM System Storage Interoperability Center (SSIC), found at:

<http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/ssic/index.jsp>

For more information about the SDD, refer to 15.1.4, “Multipathing support: Subsystem Device Driver” on page 402.

## **System z**

In the System z environment, the normal practice is to provide multiple paths from each host to a disk subsystem. Typically, four paths are installed. The channels in each host that can access each logical control unit (LCU) in the DS8700 are defined in the hardware configuration definition (HCD) or I/O configuration data set (IOCDs) for that host. Dynamic Path Selection (DPS) allows the channel subsystem to select any available (non-busy) path to initiate an operation to the disk subsystem. Dynamic Path Reconnect (DPR) allows the DS8700 to select any available path to a host to reconnect and resume a disconnected operation, for example, to transfer data after disconnection due to a cache miss.

These functions are part of the System z architecture and are managed by the channel subsystem on the host and the DS8700.

A physical FICON path is established when the DS8700 port sees light on the fiber (for example, a cable is plugged in to a DS8700 host adapter, a processor or the DS8700 is powered on, or a path is configured online by z/OS). At this time, logical paths are established through the port between the host and some or all of the LCUs in the DS8700, controlled by the HCD definition for that host. This happens for each physical path between a System z CPU and the DS8700. There may be multiple system images in a CPU. Logical paths are established for each system image. The DS8700 then knows which paths can be used to communicate between each LCU and each host.

## Control Unit Initiated Reconfiguration

Control Unit Initiated Reconfiguration (CUIR) prevents loss of access to volumes in System z environments due to wrong path handling. This function automates channel path management in System z environments, in support of selected DS8700 service actions.

CUIR is available for the DS8700 when operated in the z/OS and z/VM® environments. CUIR provides automatic channel path vary on and vary off actions to minimize manual operator intervention during selected DS8700 service actions.

CUIR also allows the DS8700 to request that all attached system images set all paths required for a particular service action to the offline state. System images with the appropriate level of software support respond to such requests by varying off the affected paths, and either notifying the DS8700 subsystem that the paths are offline, or that it cannot take the paths offline. CUIR reduces manual operator intervention and the possibility of human error during maintenance actions, at the same time reducing the time required for the maintenance. This is particularly useful in environments where there are many z/OS or z/VM systems attached to a DS8700.

### 4.4.3 Metadata checks

When application data enters the DS8700, special codes or *metadata*, also known as *redundancy checks*, are appended to that data. This metadata remains associated with the application data as it is transferred throughout the DS8700. The metadata is checked by various internal components to validate the integrity of the data as it moves throughout the disk system. It is also checked by the DS8700 before the data is sent to the host in response to a read I/O request. Further, the metadata also contains information used as an additional level of verification to confirm that the data returned to the host is coming from the desired location on the disk.

## 4.5 RAS on the HMC

The HMC is used to perform configuration, management, and maintenance activities on the DS8700. It can be ordered to be located either physically inside the base frame or external for mounting in a client-supplied rack. The DS8700 HMC is able to work with IPv4, IPv6, or a combination of both IP standards. For further information, refer to 8.3, “Network connectivity planning” on page 194.

**Important:** The HMC described here is the Storage HMC, not to be confused with the SSPC console, which is also required with any new DS8700. SSPC is described in 3.8, “System Storage Productivity Center (SSPC)” on page 52.

If the HMC is not operational, then it is not possible to perform maintenance, power the DS8700 up or down, perform modifications to the logical configuration, or perform Copy Services tasks, such as the establishment of FlashCopies using the DSCLI or DS GUI. We recommend that you order two management consoles to act as a redundant pair. Alternatively, if Tivoli Storage Productivity Center for Replication (TPC-R) is used, Copy Services tasks can be managed by that tool if the HMC is unavailable.

**Note:** The above alternative is only available if you have purchased and configured the TPC-R management solution.

## 4.5.1 Hardware

The DS8700 ships with a mobile computer HMC (Lenovo ThinkPad Model W500). A second HMC, highly recommended, can be ordered for redundancy. The second HMC is external to the DS8700 rack(s). For more information about the HMC and network connections, refer to 9.1.1, “Storage Hardware Management Console hardware” on page 208.

## 4.5.2 Microcode updates

The DS8700 contains many discrete redundant components. Most of these components have firmware that can be updated. This includes the PPS, FCIC cards, device adapters, and host adapters. Both DS8700 CECs also have an operating system (AIX) and Licensed Machine Code (LMC) that can be updated. As IBM continues to develop and improve the DS8700, new releases of firmware and licensed machine code become available to offer improvements in both function and reliability.

For a detailed discussion about microcode updates, refer to Chapter 18, “Licensed machine code” on page 531.

### Concurrent code updates

The architecture of the DS8700 allows for concurrent code updates. This is achieved by using the redundant design of the DS8700. In general, redundancy is lost for a short period as each component in a redundant pair is updated.

## 4.5.3 Call Home and Remote Support

Call Home is the capability of the HMC to contact IBM support services to report a problem. This is referred to as *Call Home for service*. The HMC will also provide machine-reported product data (MRPD) to IBM by way of the Call Home facility.

IBM Service personnel located outside of the client facility log in to the HMC to provide remote service and support. Remote support and the Call Home option are described in detail in Chapter 20, “Remote support” on page 551.

## 4.6 RAS on the disk subsystem

The reason for the DS8700’s existence is to safely store and retrieve large amounts of data. Redundant Array of Independent Disks (RAID) is an industry-wide implementation of methods to store data on multiple physical disks to enhance the availability of that data. There are many variants of RAID in use today. The DS8700 supports RAID 5, RAID 6, and RAID 10. It does not support the non-RAID configuration of disks better known as JBOD (just a bunch of disks).

**Note:** RAID 5 implementations are not compatible with the use of SATA disk drives. Solid State Drives (SSD) support only RAID 5.

### 4.6.1 RAID configurations

The following RAID configurations are possible for the DS8700:

- ▶ 6+P RAID 5 configuration: The array consists of six data drives and one parity drive. The remaining drive on the array site is used as a spare.
- ▶ 7+P RAID 5 configuration: The array consists of seven data drives and one parity drive.

- ▶ 5+P+Q RAID 6 configuration: The array consists of five data drives and two parity drives. The remaining drive on the array site is used as a spare.
- ▶ 6+P+Q RAID 6 configuration: The array consists of six data drives and two parity drives.
- ▶ 3+3 RAID 10 configuration: The array consists of three data drives that are mirrored to three copy drives. Two drives on the array site are used as spares.
- ▶ 4+4 RAID 10 configuration: The array consists of four data drives that are mirrored to four copy drives.

For information regarding the effective capacity of these configurations, refer to Table 8-10 on page 202.

#### 4.6.2 Disk path redundancy

Each DDM in the DS8700 is attached to two 20-port SAN switches. These switches are built into the disk enclosure controller cards. Figure 4-6 shows the redundancy features of the DS8700 switched disk architecture.

Each disk has two separate connections to the backplane. This allows it to be simultaneously attached to both switches. If either disk enclosure controller card is removed from the enclosure, the switch that is included in that card is also removed. However, the switch in the remaining controller card retains the ability to communicate with all the disks and both device adapters (DAs) in a pair. Equally, each DA has a path to each switch, so it also can tolerate the loss of a single path. If both paths from one DA fail, then it cannot access the switches; however, the partner DA retains connection.

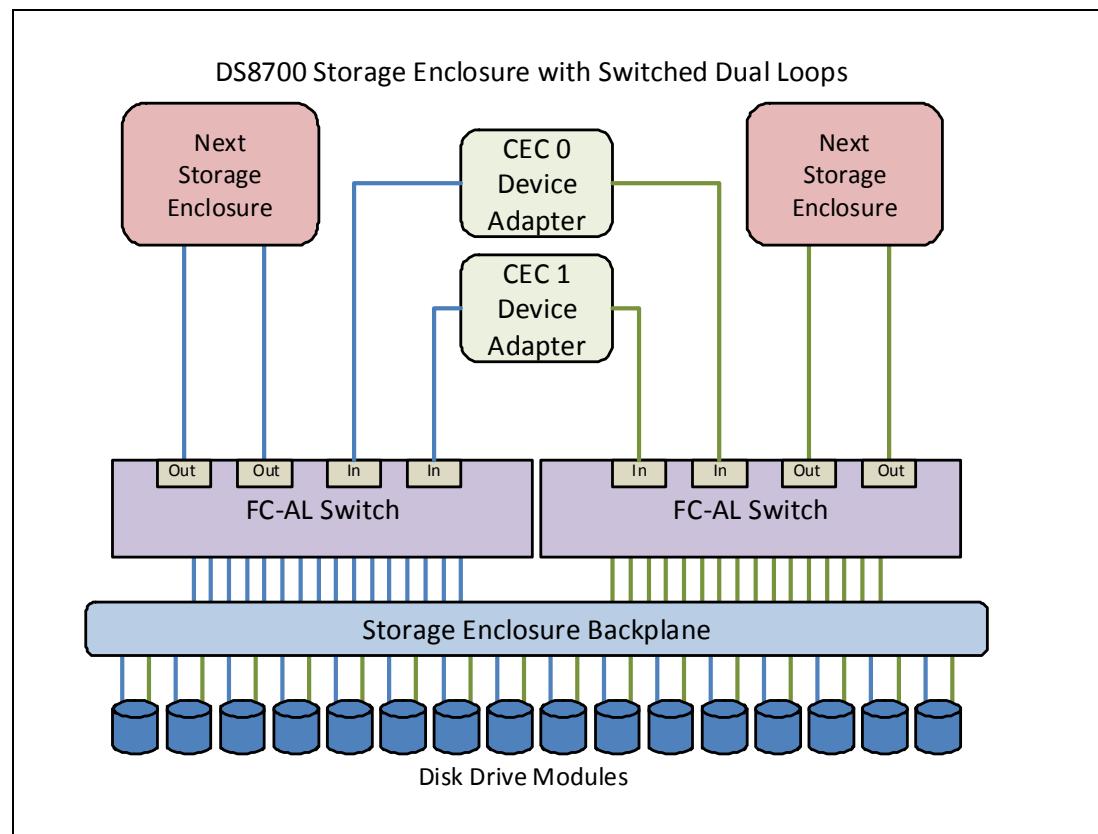


Figure 4-6 Switched disk path connections

Figure 4-6 on page 73 also shows the connection paths to the neighboring Storage Enclosures. Because expansion is done in this linear fashion, the addition of more enclosures is completely nondisruptive.

Refer to 3.4, “Disk subsystem” on page 42 for more information about the disk subsystem of the DS8700.

### 4.6.3 Predictive failure analysis

The drives used in the DS8700 incorporate Predictive Failure Analysis (PFA) and can anticipate certain forms of failures by keeping internal statistics of read and write errors. If the error rates exceed predetermined threshold values, the drive will be nominated for replacement. Because the drive has not yet failed, data can be copied directly to a spare drive. This avoids using RAID recovery to reconstruct all of the data onto the spare drive.

### 4.6.4 Disk scrubbing

The DS8700 will periodically read all sectors on a disk. This is designed to occur without any interference with application performance. If ECC-correctable bad bits are identified, the bits are corrected immediately by the DS8700. This reduces the possibility of multiple bad bits accumulating in a sector beyond the ability of ECC to correct them. If a sector contains data that is beyond ECC's ability to correct, then RAID is used to regenerate the data and write a new copy onto a spare sector of the disk. This scrubbing process applies to both array members and spare DDMs.

### 4.6.5 RAID 5 overview

The DS8700 series supports RAID 5 arrays. RAID 5 is a method of spreading volume data plus parity data across multiple disk drives. RAID 5 provides faster performance by striping data across a defined set of DDMs. Data protection is provided by the generation of parity information for every stripe of data. If an array member fails, then its contents can be regenerated by using the parity data.

#### RAID 5 implementation in DS8700

In a DS8700, a RAID 5 array built on one array site will contain either seven or eight disks depending on whether the array site is supplying a spare. A seven-disk array effectively uses one disk for parity, so it is referred to as a 6+P array (where the P stands for parity). The reason only seven disks are available to a 6+P array is that the eighth disk in the array site used to build the array was used as a spare. We then refer to this as a 6+P+S array site (where the S stands for spare). An 8-disk array also effectively uses 1 disk for parity, so it is referred to as a 7+P array.

#### Drive failure with RAID 5

When a disk drive module fails in a RAID 5 array, the device adapter starts an operation to reconstruct the data that was on the failed drive onto one of the spare drives. The spare that is used will be chosen based on a smart algorithm that looks at the location of the spares and the size and location of the failed DDM. The rebuild is performed by reading the corresponding data and parity in each stripe from the remaining drives in the array, then performing an exclusive-OR operation to recreate the data, and then writing this data to the spare drive.

While this data reconstruction is going on, the device adapter can still service read and write requests to the array from the hosts. There might be some degradation in performance while the sparing operation is in progress because some DA and switched network resources are used to do the reconstruction. Due to the switch-based architecture, this effect will be minimal. Additionally, any read requests for data on the failed drive require data to be read from the other drives in the array, and then the DA performs an operation to reconstruct the data.

Performance of the RAID 5 array returns to normal when the data reconstruction onto the spare device completes. The time taken for sparing can vary, depending on the size of the failed DDM and the workload on the array, the switched network, and the DA. The use of arrays across loops (AAL) both speeds up rebuild time and decreases the impact of a rebuild.

#### 4.6.6 RAID 6 overview

The DS8700 supports RAID 6 protection. RAID 6 presents an efficient method of data protection in case of double disk errors, such as two drive failures, two coincident medium errors, or a drive failure and a medium error. RAID 6 protection provides more fault tolerance than RAID 5 in the case of disk failures and uses less raw disk capacity than RAID 10.

RAID 6 allows for additional fault tolerance by using a second independent distributed parity scheme (dual parity). Data is striped on a block level across a set of drives, similar to RAID 5 configurations, and a second set of parity is calculated and written across all the drives, as shown in Figure 4-7.

Drives	1	2	3	4	5	P	Q
	0	1	2	3	4	P00	P01
	5	6	7	8	9	P10	P11
	10	11	12	13	14	P20	P21
	15	16	17	18	19	P30	P31
							P41

**One stripe with 5 data drives (5 + P + Q):**

P00 = 0+1+2+3+4; P10 = 5+6+7+8+9;... (parity on block level across a set of drives)

P01 = 9+13+17+0; P11 = 14+18+1+5;... (parity across all drives)

P41 = 4+8+12+16

**NOTE: For illustrative purposes only – implementation details may vary**

Figure 4-7 Illustration of one RAID 6 stripe

RAID 6 is best used in combination with large capacity disk drives, such as the 1 TB and 2 TB SATA drives, because they have a longer rebuild time. Comparing RAID 6 to RAID 5 performance gives about the same results on reads. For random writes, the throughput of a RAID 6 array is around only two thirds of a RAID 5, given the additional parity handling. Workload planning is especially important before implementing RAID 6 for write intensive applications, including copy services targets and FlashCopy SE repositories. Yet, when properly sized for the I/O demand, RAID 6 is a considerable reliability enhancement.

## RAID 6 implementation in the DS8700

A RAID 6 array in one array site of a DS8700 can be built on either seven or eight disks:

- ▶ In a seven-disk array, two disks are always used for parity, while the eighth disk of the array site is needed as a spare. This kind of a RAID 6 array is hereafter referred to as a 5+P+Q+S array, where P and Q stand for parity and S stands for spare.
- ▶ A RAID 6 array, consisting of eight disks, will be built when all necessary spare drives are available. An eight-disk RAID 6 array also always uses two disks for parity, so it is referred to as a 6+P+Q array.

## Drive failure with RAID 6

When a disk drive module (DDM) fails in a RAID 6 array, the device adapter (DA) starts to reconstruct the data of the failing drive onto one of the available spare drives. A smart algorithm determines the location of the spare drive to be used, depending on the size and the location of the failed DDM. After the spare drive has replaced a failed one in a redundant array, the recalculation of the entire contents of the new drive is performed by reading the corresponding data and parity in each stripe from the remaining drives in the array and then writing this data to the spare drive.

During the rebuild of the data on the new drive, the device adapter can still handle I/O requests of the connected hosts to the affected array. Some performance degradation could occur during the reconstruction because some device adapters and switched network resources are used to do the rebuild. Due to the switch-based architecture of the DS8700, this effect will be minimal. Additionally, any read requests for data on the failed drive require data to be read from the other drives in the array, and then the DA performs an operation to reconstruct the data. Any subsequent failure during the reconstruction within the same array (second drive failure, second coincident medium errors, or a drive failure and a medium error) can be recovered without loss of data.

Performance of the RAID 6 array returns to normal when the data reconstruction on the spare device has completed. The rebuild time will vary, depending on the size of the failed DDM and the workload on the array and the DA. The completion time is comparable to a RAID 5 rebuild, but slower than rebuilding a RAID 10 array in the case of a single drive failure.

### 4.6.7 RAID 10 overview

RAID 10 provides high availability by combining features of RAID 0 and RAID 1. RAID 0 optimizes performance by striping volume data across multiple disk drives at a time. RAID 1 provides disk mirroring, which duplicates data between two disk drives. By combining the features of RAID 0 and RAID 1, RAID 10 provides a second optimization for fault tolerance. Data is striped across half of the disk drives in the RAID 1 array. The same data is also striped across the other half of the array, creating a mirror. Access to data is preserved if one disk in each mirrored pair remains available. RAID 10 offers faster data reads and writes than RAID 5 because it does not need to manage parity. However, with half of the DDMs in the group used for data and the other half to mirror that data, RAID 10 disk groups have less capacity than RAID 5 disk groups.

RAID 10 is not as commonly used as RAID 5, mainly because more raw disk capacity is needed for every gigabyte of effective capacity. A typical area of operation for RAID 10 are workloads with a high random write ratio.

### **RAID 10 implementation in DS8700**

In the DS8700, the RAID 10 implementation is achieved by using either six or eight DDMs. If spares need to be allocated on the array site, then six DDMs are used to make a three-disk RAID 0 array, which is then mirrored. If spares do not need to be allocated, then eight DDMs are used to make a four-disk RAID 0 array, which is then mirrored.

### **Drive failure with RAID 10**

When a disk drive module (DDM) fails in a RAID 10 array, the controller starts an operation to reconstruct the data from the failed drive onto one of the hot spare drives. The spare that is used will be chosen based on a smart algorithm that looks at the location of the spares and the size and location of the failed DDM. Remember a RAID 10 array is effectively a RAID 0 array that is mirrored. Thus, when a drive fails in one of the RAID 0 arrays, we can rebuild the failed drive by reading the data from the equivalent drive in the other RAID 0 array.

While this data reconstruction is going on, the DA can still service read and write requests to the array from the hosts. There might be some degradation in performance while the sparing operation is in progress, because some DA and switched network resources are used to do the reconstruction. Due to the switch-based architecture of the DS8700, this effect will be minimal. Read requests for data on the failed drive should not be affected because they can all be directed to the good RAID 1 array.

Write operations will not be affected. Performance of the RAID 10 array returns to normal when the data reconstruction onto the spare device completes. The time taken for sparing can vary, depending on the size of the failed DDM and the workload on the array and the DA. In relation to a RAID 5, RAID 10 sparing completion time is a little faster. This is because rebuilding a RAID 5 6+P configuration requires six reads plus one parity operation for each write, while a RAID 10 3+3 configuration requires one read and one write (essentially a direct copy).

### **Arrays across loops and RAID 10**

The DS8700 implements the concept of arrays across loops (AAL). With AAL, an array site is actually split into two halves. Half of the site is located on the first disk loop of a DA pair and the other half is located on the second disk loop of that DA pair. AAL is implemented primarily to maximize performance and it is used for all the RAID types in the DS8700. However, in RAID 10, we are able to take advantage of AAL to provide a higher level of redundancy. The DS8700 RAS code will deliberately ensure that one RAID 0 array is maintained on each of the two loops created by a DA pair. This means that in the extremely unlikely event of a complete loop outage, the DS8700 would not lose access to the RAID 10 array. This is because while one RAID 0 array is offline, the other remains available to service disk I/O. Figure 3-15 on page 47 shows a diagram of this strategy.

#### **4.6.8 Spare creation**

When the arrays are created on a DS8700, the microcode determines which array sites will contain spares. The first array sites in each DA pair that are assigned to arrays will contribute one or two spares (depending on the RAID option), until the DA pair has access to at least four spares, with two spares being placed on each loop.

A minimum of one spare is created for each array site assigned to an array until the following conditions are met:

- ▶ There are a minimum of four spares per DA pair.
- ▶ There are a minimum of four spares for the largest capacity array site on the DA pair.
- ▶ There are a minimum of two spares of capacity and RPM greater than or equal to the fastest array site of any given capacity on the DA pair.

### Floating spares

The DS8700 implements a smart floating technique for spare DDMs. A *floating spare* is defined as follows: When a DDM fails and the data it contained is rebuilt onto a spare, then when the disk is replaced, the replacement disk becomes the spare. The data is not migrated to another DDM, such as the DDM in the original position the failed DDM occupied.

The DS8700 microcode takes this idea one step further. It might choose to allow the hot spare to remain where it has been *moved*, but it can instead choose to *migrate* the spare to a more optimum position. This will be done to better balance the spares across the DA pairs, the loops, and the enclosures. It might be preferable that a DDM that is currently in use as an array member is converted to a spare. In this case, the data on that DDM will be migrated in the background onto an existing spare. This process does not *fail* the disk that is being migrated, though it does reduce the number of available spares in the DS8700 until the migration process is complete.

The DS8700 uses this smart floating technique so that the larger or higher RPM DDMs are allocated as spares, which guarantees that a spare can provide at least the same capacity and performance as the replaced drive. If we were to rebuild the contents of a 300 GB DDM onto a 450 GB DDM, then approximately half of the 450 GB DDM will be wasted, because that space is not needed. When the failed 300 GB DDM is replaced with a new 300 GB DDM, the DS8700 microcode will most likely migrate the data back onto the recently replaced 300 GB DDM. When this process completes, the 300 GB DDM will rejoin the array and the 450 GB DDM will become the spare again.

Another example would be if we fail a 300 GB 15K RPM DDM onto a 1 TB 7.2K RPM DDM. The data has now moved to a slower DDM and is wasting a lot of space. This means the array will have a mix of RPMs, which is not desirable. When the failed disk is replaced, the replacement will be the same type as the failed 15K RPM disk. Again, a smart migration of the data will be performed after suitable spares have become available.

### Hot-pluggable DDMs

Replacement of a failed drive does not affect the operation of the DS8700, because the drives are fully hot-pluggable. Due to the fact that each disk plugs into a switch, there is no loop break associated with the removal or replacement of a disk. In addition, there is no potentially disruptive loop initialization process.

### Overconfiguration of spares

The DDM sparing policies support the overconfiguration of spares. This possibility might be of interest to some installations, because it allows the repair of some DDM failures to be deferred until a later repair action is required.

## 4.7 RAS on the power subsystem

The DS8700 has completely redundant power and cooling. Every power supply and cooling fan in the DS8700 operates in what is known as N+1 mode. This means that there is always at least one more power supply, cooling fan, or battery than is required for normal operation. In most cases, this simply means duplication.

### 4.7.1 Components

Here we discuss the power subsystem components.

#### Primary power supplies

Each frame has two primary power supplies (PPS). Each PPS produces voltages for two different areas of the machine:

- ▶ 208V is produced to be supplied to each I/O enclosure and each processor complex. This voltage is placed by each supply onto two redundant power buses.
- ▶ 12V and 5V are produced to be supplied to the disk enclosures.

If either PPS fails, the other can continue to supply all required voltage to all power buses in that frame. The PPS can be replaced concurrently.

**Important:** It should be noted that if you install the DS8700 such that both primary power supplies are attached to the same circuit breaker or the same switchboard, then the DS8700 will not be well protected from external power failures. This is a common cause of unplanned outages.

#### Battery backup units

Each frame with I/O enclosures, or every frame if the power line disturbance (PLD) feature is installed, will have battery backup units (BBUs). Each BBU can be replaced concurrently, provided no more than one BBU is unavailable at any one time. The DS8700 BBUs have a planned working life of at least four years.

#### Rack cooling fans

Each frame has a cooling fan plenum located above the disk enclosures. The fans in this plenum draw air from the front of the DDMs and then move it out through the top of the frame. There are multiple redundant fans in each enclosure. Each fan can be replaced concurrently.

**Attention:** Do not store any objects on top of a DS8700 frame that would block the airflow through the vent.

#### Rack power control card (RPC)

The rack power control cards (RPCs) are part of the power management infrastructure of the DS8700. There are two RPC cards for redundancy. Each card can independently control power for the entire DS8700.

## **System Power Control Network**

The System Power Control Network (SPCN) is used to control the power of the attached I/O subsystem. The SPCN monitors environmental components such as power, fans, and temperature. Environmental critical and noncritical conditions can generate Early Power-Off Warning (EPOW) events. Critical events trigger appropriate signals from the hardware to the affected components to prevent any data loss without operating system or firmware involvement. Non-critical environmental events are also logged and reported.

### **4.7.2 Line power loss**

The DS8700 uses an area of server memory as nonvolatile storage (NVS). This area of memory is used to hold data that has not been written to the disk subsystem. If line power were to fail, where both primary power supplies (PPS) in the primary frame were to report a loss of AC input power, then the DS8700 must take action to protect that data. Refer to 4.3, “CEC failover and fallback” on page 63 for a full explanation of NVS Cache operation.

### **4.7.3 Line power fluctuation**

The DS8700 primary frame contains battery backup units that are intended to protect modified data in the event of a complete power loss. If a power fluctuation occurs that causes a momentary interruption to power (often called a *brownout*), then the DS8700 will tolerate this for approximately 30 ms. If the power line disturbance feature is not present on the DS8700, then after that time, the DDMs will stop spinning and the servers will begin copying the contents of NVS to the internal SCSI disks in the processor complexes. For many clients, who use uninterruptible power supply (UPS) technology, this is not an issue. UPS-regulated power is in general reliable, so additional redundancy in the attached devices is often completely unnecessary.

#### ***Power line disturbance (PLD)***

If line power is not considered reliable, then the addition of the extended power line disturbance feature should be considered. This feature adds two separate pieces of hardware to the DS8700:

- ▶ For each primary power supply in each frame of the DS8700, a booster module is added that converts 208V battery power into 12V and 5V. This supplies the storage DDMs with power directly from the batteries.
- ▶ Batteries will be added to expansion frames that did not already have them. Primary frames (1) and expansion frames with I/O enclosures (2) get batteries by default. Expansion frames that do not have I/O enclosures (3, 4, and 5) normally do not get batteries.

With the addition of this hardware, the DS8700 will be able to run for up to 50 seconds on battery power before the CECs begin to copy NVS to internal disk and then shut down. This would allow for a 50 second interruption to line power with no outage to the DS8700.

### **4.7.4 Power control**

The DS8700 does not possess a white power switch to turn the DS8700 storage unit off and on, as was the case with previous storage models. All power sequencing is done using the Service Processor Control Network (SPCN) and RPCs. If you want to power the DS8700 off, you must do so by using the management tools provided by the Hardware Management Console (HMC). If the HMC is not functional, then it will not be possible to control the power sequencing of the DS8700 until the HMC function is restored. This is one of the benefits that is gained by purchasing a redundant HMC.

#### 4.7.5 Emergency power off

Each DS8700 frame has an operator panel with three LEDs that show the line power status and the system fault indicator. The LEDs can be seen when the front door of the frame is closed. Refer to Figure 4-8 for an illustration of the operator panel. On the side of the operator panel is an emergency power off (EPO) switch. This switch is red and is located inside the front door protecting the frame; it can only be seen when the front door is open. This switch is intended purely to remove power from the DS8700 in the following *extreme* cases:

- ▶ The DS8700 has developed a fault that is placing the environment at risk, such as a fire.
- ▶ The DS8700 is placing human life at risk, such as the electrocution of a person.

Apart from these two contingencies (which are highly unlikely), the EPO switch should never be used. The reason for this is that when the EPO switch is used, the battery protection for the NVS storage area is bypassed. Normally, if line power is lost, the DS8700 can use its internal batteries to destage the write data from NVS memory to persistent storage so that the data is preserved until power is restored. However, the EPO switch does not allow this destage process to happen and all NVS cache data is immediately lost. This will most likely result in data loss.

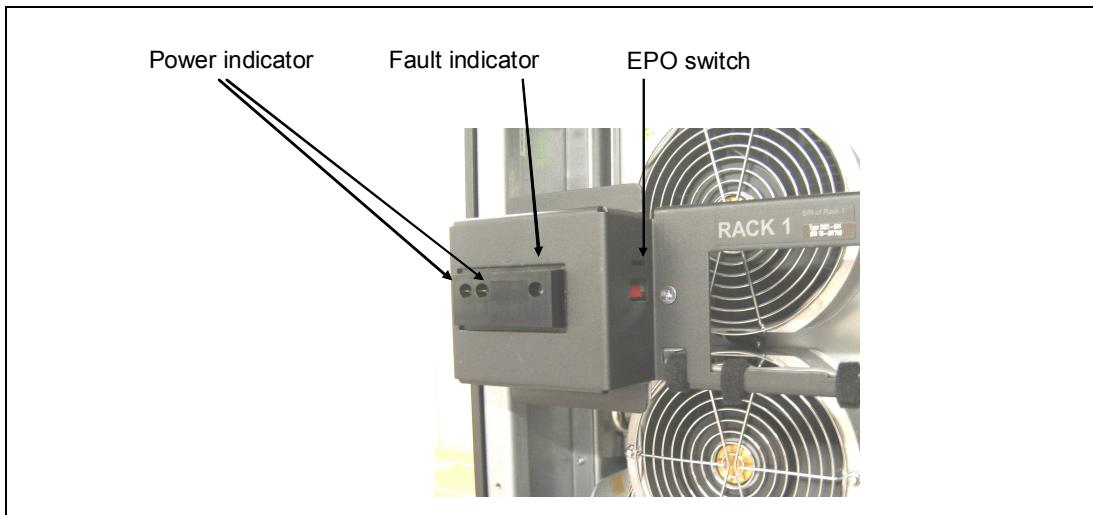


Figure 4-8 DS8700 operator panel and EPO switch

If the DS8700 needs to be powered off for building maintenance or to relocate it, you should always use the HMC to shut it down properly.

### 4.8 RAS and Full Disk Encryption

Like previous DS8000 models, the DS8700 can be ordered with disk drive modules (DDMs) that support Full Disk Encryption (FDE). These DDMs are available as 15K RPM drives in capacities of 300 GB, 450 GB. The purpose of FDE drives is to encrypt all data at rest within the storage system for increased data integrity.

The DS8700 provides two important reliability, availability, and serviceability enhancements to Full Disk Encryption storage: deadlock recovery and support for dual-platform key servers.

For up-to-date considerations and best practices regarding DS8700 encryption, refer to *IBM Encrypted Storage Overview and Customer Requirements*, found at:

<http://www.ibm.com/support/techdocs/atstrmstr.nsf/WebIndex/WP101479>

The above link also includes the *IBM Notice for Storage Encryption* that must be read by all customers acquiring an IBM storage device that includes encryption technology.

#### 4.8.1 Deadlock recovery

The DS8000 family of storage servers with Full Disk Encryption drives can utilize a System z key server running the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM) solution. A TKLM server provides a robust platform for managing the multiple levels of encryption keys needed for a secure storage operation. System z mainframes do not have local storage; their operating system, applications, and application data are often stored on an enterprise-class storage server, such as a DS8000 storage subsystem.

So it becomes possible, due to a planning error or even the use of automatically-managed storage provisioning, for the System z TKLM server storage to end up residing on the DS8000 that is a client for encryption keys. After a power interruption event, the DS8000 becomes inoperable because it must retrieve the Data Key (DK) from the TKLM database on the System z server. The TKLM database becomes inoperable because the System z server has its OS or application data on the DS8000. This represents a *deadlock* situation. Refer to Figure 4-9 for a depiction of this scenario.

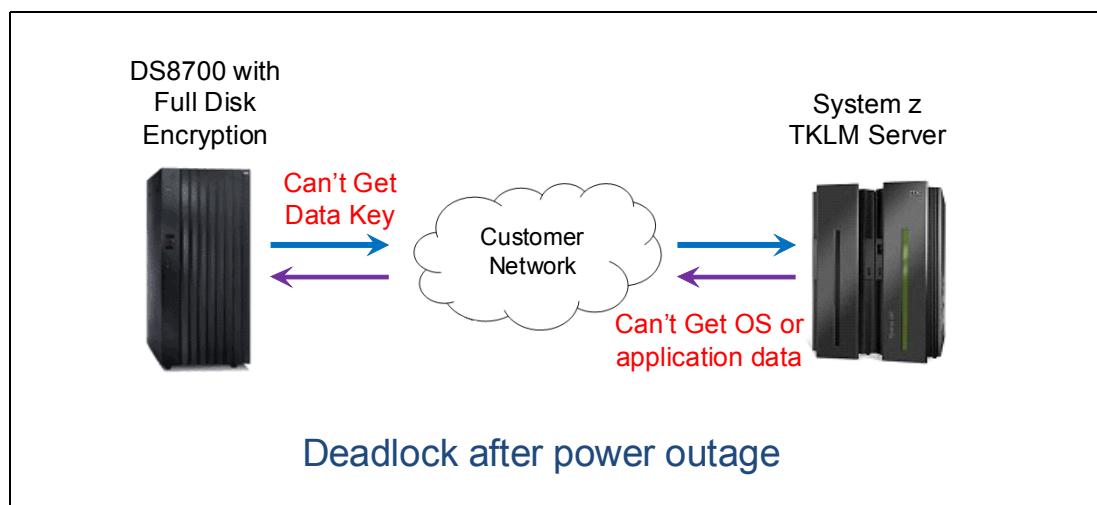


Figure 4-9 Deadlock scenario

The DS8700 mitigates this problem by implementing a *Recovery Key* (RK). The recovery key allows the DS8700 to decrypt the Group Key (GK) that it needs to come up to full operation. A new customer role is defined in this process: the Security Administrator. This should be a different person from the Storage Administrator so that no single user can perform recovery key actions. Setting up the recovery key and use of the recovery key to boot a DS8700 requires both people to take action. Usage of a recovery key is entirely within the customer's control; no IBM service representative needs to be involved. The DS8700 never stores a copy of the Recovery Key on the encrypted disks and it is never included in any service data.

Refer to *IBM System Storage DS8700 Disk Encryption Implementation and Usage Guidelines*, REDP-4500 for a more complete review of the deadlock recovery process and further information about working with a Recovery Key.

**Note:** Use the storage HMC to enter a Recovery Key. The Security Administrator and the Storage Administrator might need to be physically present at the DS8700 to perform the recovery.

The DS8000 Licensed Machine Code (LMC) level 6.5.1.xx introduces the option to disable an encryption recovery key for a given encryption group before the encryption group is created. The state of the recovery key must be “Unconfigured” to disable the recovery key. If for some reason you do not want a recovery key, you should disable it. A recovery key that has previously been disabled can be re-enabled later. These actions are performed using either the DSCLI or DS GUI.

Be aware that if you disable a recovery key, an encryption group can be configured but there is no recovery alternative. An encryption deadlock recovery key allows administrators to restore access to a DS8700 when the encryption key for the storage is unavailable due to an encryption deadlock scenario. If you disable the recovery key, do so at your own risk.

## 4.8.2 Dual platform TKLM servers

The current DS8700 Full Disk Encryption solution requires the use of an IBM System x SUSE Linux based key server (IKS), which operates in “clear key mode”. Customers have expressed a desire to run key servers that are hardware security module based (HSM), which operate in “secure key mode”. Key servers like the IKS, which implement a clear key design, can import and export their public and private key pair to other key servers. Servers that implement secure key design can only import and export their public key to other key servers.

To meet this request, the DS8700 allows propagation of keys across two different key server platforms. The current IKS is still supported to address the standing requirement for an isolated key server. Adding a z/OS Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM) Secure Key Mode server, which is common in Tape Storage environments, is concurrently supported by the DS8700.

Once the key servers are set up, they will each have two public keys. They are each capable of generating and wrapping two symmetric keys for the DS8700. The DS8700 stores both wrapped symmetric keys in the key repository. Now either key server is capable of unwrapping these keys upon a DS8700 retrieval exchange.

Refer to *IBM System Storage DS8700 Disk Encryption Implementation and Usage Guidelines*, REDP-4500 for more information regarding the dual-platform TKLM solution. Visit the following site for further information regarding planning and deployment of TKLM servers:  
<http://www.ibm.com/developerworks/wikis/display/tivolidoccentral/Tivoli+Key+Lifecycle+Manager>

## 4.9 Other features

There are many more features of the DS8700 that enhance reliability, availability, and serviceability.

### 4.9.1 Internal network

Each DS8700 base frame contains two Gigabit Ethernet switches to allow the creation of a fully redundant management network. Each CEC in the DS8700 has a connection to each switch. Each HMC also has a connection to each switch. This means that if a single Ethernet

switch fails, then all traffic can successfully travel from either HMC to other components in the storage unit using the alternate switch.

There are also Ethernet connections for the service processor card within each CEC. If two DS8700 storage complexes are connected together, they will also use ports on the Ethernet switches. Refer to 9.1.2, “Private Ethernet networks” on page 209 for more information about the DS8700 internal network.

**Note:** Connections to the customer’s network are made at the Storage HMC. No customer network connection should ever be made to the DS8700 internal Ethernet switches.

#### 4.9.2 Remote support

The DS8700 HMC has the ability to be accessed remotely by IBM service personnel for many service actions. IBM support can offload service data, change some configuration settings, and initiate repair actions over a remote connection. The customer decides which type of connection they want to allow for remote support. Options include:

- ▶ Modem only for access to the HMC command line
- ▶ VPN only for access to the HMC GUI (WebUI)
- ▶ Modem and VPN
- ▶ No access (secure account)

Remote support is a critical topic for customers investing in the DS8700. Refer to Chapter 20, “Remote support” on page 551 for a more thorough discussion of remote support operations. Refer to Chapter 9, “Hardware Management Console planning and setup” on page 207 for more information about planning the connections needed for HMC installation.

#### 4.9.3 Earthquake resistance

The Earthquake Resistance Kit is an optional seismic kit for stabilizing the storage unit rack, so that the rack complies with IBM earthquake resistance standards. It helps to prevent human injury and ensures that the system will be available following the earthquake by limiting potential damage to critical system components, such as hard drives.

A storage unit rack with this optional seismic kit includes cross-braces on the front and rear of the rack which prevent the rack from twisting. Hardware at the bottom of the rack secures it to the floor. Depending on the flooring in your environment, specifically non-raised floors, installation of required floor mounting hardware might be disruptive.

This kit must be special ordered for the DS8700; contact your sales representative for further information.



# Virtualization concepts

This chapter describes virtualization concepts as they apply to the IBM System Storage DS8000 series.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- ▶ Virtualization definition
- ▶ The abstraction layers for disk virtualization:
  - Array sites
  - Arrays
  - Ranks
  - Extent Pools
  - Logical volumes
  - Space Efficient volumes (both Extent Space Efficient and Track Space Efficient)
  - Logical subsystems (LSS)
  - Volume access
  - Virtualization hierarchy summary
- ▶ Benefits of virtualization

## 5.1 Virtualization definition

In a fast changing world, to react quickly to changing business conditions, IT infrastructure must allow for on demand changes. Virtualization is key to an on demand infrastructure. However, when talking about virtualization, many vendors are talking about different things.

For this chapter, the definition of *virtualization* is the abstraction process from the physical disk drives to a logical volume that is presented to the hosts and servers in a way so they *see it as though it were* a physical disk.

## 5.2 The abstraction layers for disk virtualization

In this chapter, when talking about virtualization, we are talking about the process of preparing a bunch of physical disk drives (DDMs) to become an entity that can be used by an operating system, which means we are talking about the creation of LUNs.

The DS8000 is populated with switched FC-AL disk drives that are mounted in disk enclosures. You can order disk drives in groups of eight or 16 drives of the same capacity and rpm. The options for eight drive sets are for 73 and 146 GB Solid State Drives (SSDs) only. The disk drives can be accessed by a pair of device adapters. Each device adapter has four paths to the disk drives. The four paths provide two FC-AL device interfaces, each with two paths, such that either path can be used to communicate with any disk drive on that device interface (the paths are redundant). One device interface from each device adapter is connected to a set of FC-AL devices so that either device adapter has access to any disk drive through two independent switched fabrics (the device adapters and switches are redundant).

Each device adapter has four ports, and because device adapters operate in pairs, there are eight ports or paths to the disk drives. All eight paths can operate concurrently and could access all disk drives on the attached fabric. In normal operation, however, disk drives are typically accessed by one device adapter. Which device adapter owns the disk is defined during the logical configuration process. This avoids any contention between the two device adapters for access to the disks.

Figure 5-1 shows the physical layer on which virtualization is based.

Because of the switching design, each drive is in close reach of the device adapter, and some drives will require a few more hops through the Fibre Channel switch. So, it is not really a loop, but a switched FC-AL loop with the FC-AL addressing schema, that is, Arbitrated Loop Physical Addressing (AL-PA).

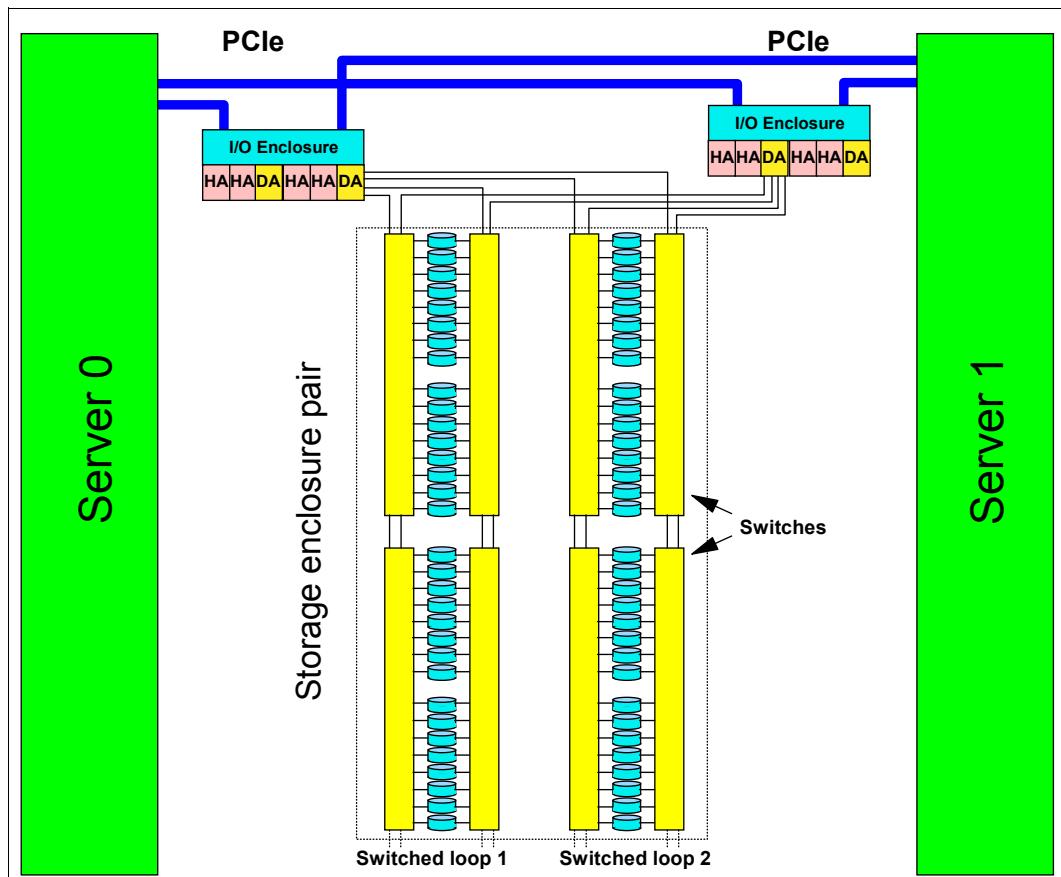


Figure 5-1 Physical layer as the base for virtualization

### 5.2.1 Array sites

An array site is a group of eight DDMs. Which DDMs are forming an array site is predetermined automatically by the DS8000, but note that there is no predetermined server affinity for array sites. The DDMs selected for an array site are chosen from two disk enclosures on different loops; see Figure 5-2.

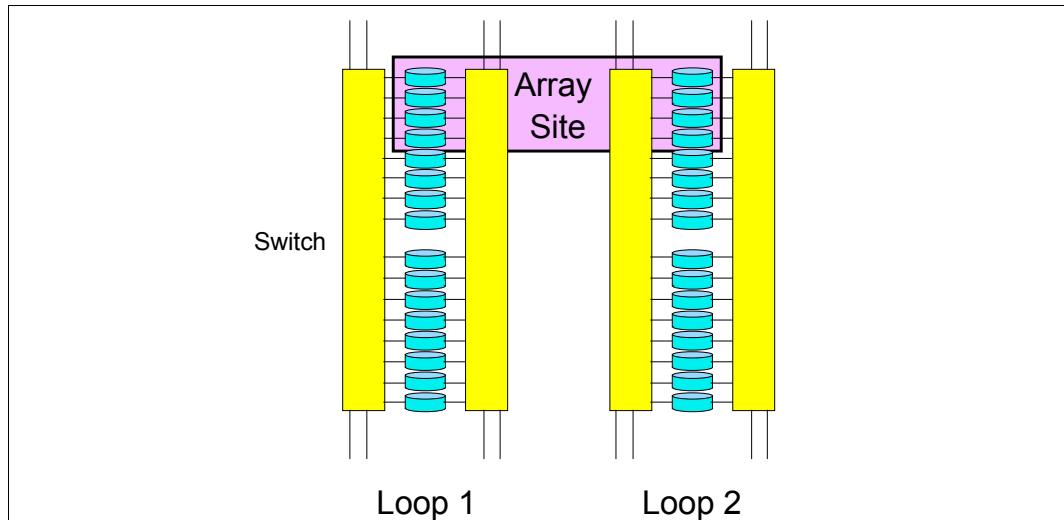


Figure 5-2 Array site

The DDMs in the array site are of the same DDM type, which means the same capacity and the same speed (rpm).

As you can see from Figure 5-2, array sites span loops. Four DDMs are taken from loop 1 and another four DDMs from loop 2. Array sites are the building blocks used to define arrays.

### 5.2.2 Arrays

An *array* is created from one *array site*. Forming an array means defining it as a specific RAID type. The supported RAID types are RAID 5, RAID 6, and RAID 10 (see “RAID 5 implementation in DS8700” on page 74, “RAID 6 implementation in the DS8700” on page 76, and “RAID 10 implementation in DS8700” on page 77). For each array site, you can select a RAID type (remember that Solid State Drives can only be configured as RAID 5). The process of selecting the RAID type for an array is also called *defining* an array.

**Note:** In a DS8000 series implementation, one array is defined using one array site.

According to the DS8000 series sparing algorithm, from zero to two spares can be taken from the array site. This is discussed further in 4.6.8, “Spare creation” on page 77.

Figure 5-3 shows the creation of a RAID 5 array with one spare, also called a 6+P+S array (it has a capacity of 6 DDMs for data, capacity of one DDM for parity, and a spare drive). According to the RAID 5 rules, parity is distributed across all seven drives in this example.

On the right side in Figure 5-3, the terms D1, D2, D3, and so on stand for the set of data contained on one disk within a stripe on the array. If, for example, 1 GB of data is written, it is distributed across all the disks of the array.

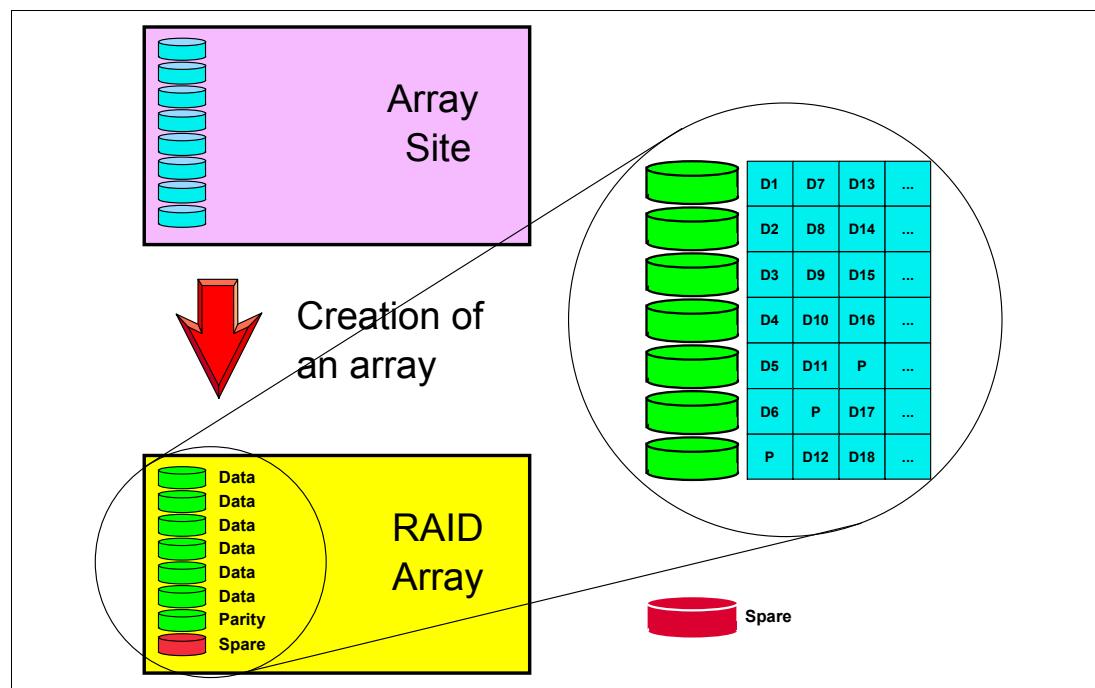


Figure 5-3 Creation of an array

So, an array is formed using one array site, and while the array could be accessed by each adapter of the device adapter pair, it is managed by one device adapter. You define which adapter and which server is managing this array later on in the configuration path.

### 5.2.3 Ranks

In the DS8000 virtualization hierarchy, there is another logical construct called a *rank*. When defining a new rank, its name is chosen by the DS Storage Manager, for example, R1, R2, or R3, and so on. You have to add an array to a rank.

**Note:** In the DS8000 implementation, a rank is built using just one array.

The available space on each rank will be divided into *extents*. The extents are the building blocks of the logical volumes. An extent is striped across all disks of an array as shown in Figure 5-4 and indicated by the small squares in Figure 5-5 on page 92.

The process of forming a rank does two things:

- ▶ The array is formatted for either fixed block (FB) data for open systems or count key data (CKD) for System z data. This determines the size of the set of data contained on one disk within a stripe on the array.
- ▶ The capacity of the array is subdivided into equal-sized partitions, called *extents*. The extent size depends on the *extent type*, FB or CKD.

A FB rank has an extent size of 1 GB (more precisely, GiB, gibibyte, or binary gigabyte, being equal to  $2^{30}$  bytes).

IBM System z users or administrators typically do not deal with gigabytes or gibibytes, and instead they think of storage in terms of the original 3390 volume sizes. A 3390 Model 3 is three times the size of a Model 1 and a Model 1 has 1113 cylinders, which is about 0.94 GB. The extent size of a CKD rank is one 3390 Model 1 or 1113 cylinders.

Figure 5-4 shows an example of an array that is formatted for FB data with 1 GB extents (the squares in the rank just indicate that the extent is composed of several blocks from different DDMs).

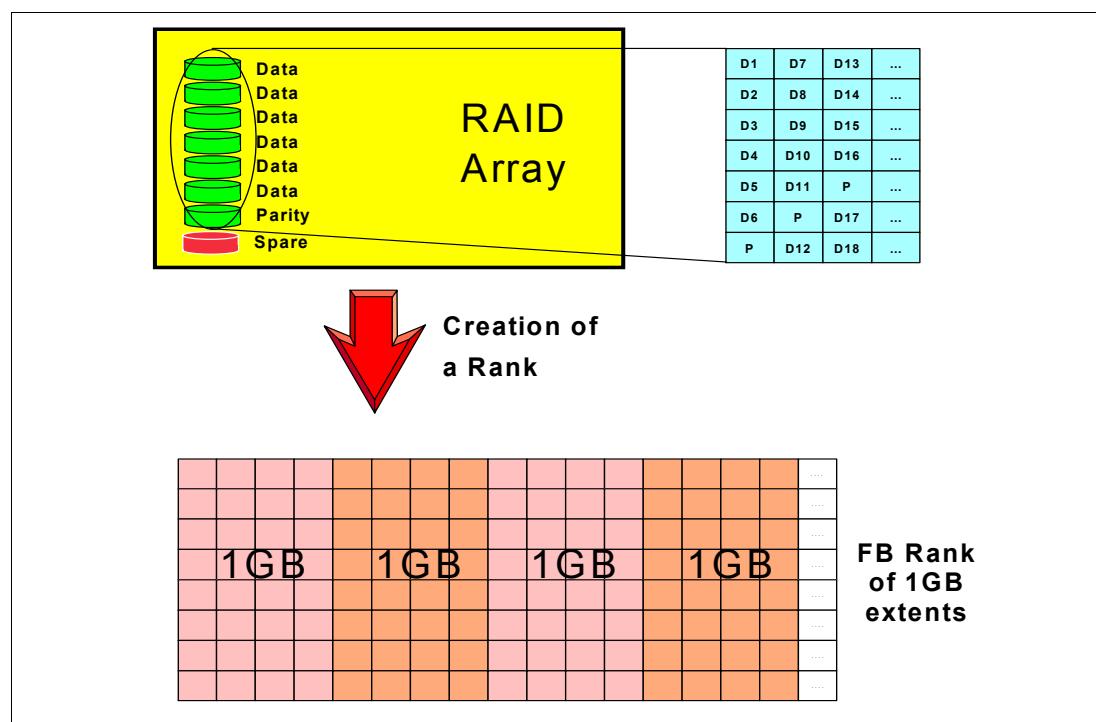


Figure 5-4 Forming an FB rank with 1 GB extents

It is still possible to define a CKD volume with a capacity that is an integral multiple of one cylinder or a fixed block LUN with a capacity that is an integral multiple of 128 logical blocks (64 KB). However, if the defined capacity is not an integral multiple of the capacity of one extent, the unused capacity in the last extent is wasted. For example, you could define a one cylinder CKD volume, but 1113 cylinders (1 extent) will be allocated and 1112 cylinders would be wasted.

## Encryption group

A DS8000 series can be ordered with encryption capable disk drives. If you plan to use encryption, before creating a rank, you must define an *encryption group* (for more information, refer to *IBM System Storage DS8700 Disk Encryption Implementation and Usage Guidelines*, REDP-4500). Currently, the DS8000 series supports only *one* encryption group. All ranks must be in this encryption group. The encryption group is an attribute of a rank. So, your choice is to encrypt everything or nothing. You can switch on (create an encryption group) encryption later, but then all ranks must be deleted and re-created, which means your data is also deleted.

### 5.2.4 Extent Pools

An *Extent Pool* is a logical construct to aggregate the extents from a set of ranks, forming a domain for extent allocation to a logical volume. Typically the set of ranks in the Extent Pool should have the same RAID type and the same disk RPM characteristics so that the extents in the Extent Pool have homogeneous characteristics.

**Important:** Do not mix ranks with different RAID types or disk rpm in an Extent Pool. Do not mix SSD and HDD ranks in the same Extent Pool, *unless* you want to enable the Easy Tier Automatic Mode facility.

There is no predefined affinity of ranks or arrays to a storage server. The affinity of the rank (and its associated array) to a given server is determined at the point it is assigned to an Extent Pool.

One or more ranks *with the same extent type (FB or CKD)* can be assigned to an Extent Pool. One rank can be assigned to only one Extent Pool. There can be as many Extent Pools as there are ranks.

There are some considerations about how many ranks should be added in an Extent Pool:

*Storage Pool Striping* allows you to create logical volumes striped across multiple ranks. This will typically enhance performance. To benefit from Storage Pool Striping (see “Storage Pool Striping: Extent rotation” on page 100), more than one rank in an Extent Pool is required.

Storage Pool Striping can enhance performance a great deal, but when you loose one rank (in the unlikely event that a whole RAID array failed due to a scenario with multiple failures at the same time), not only is the data of this rank lost, so is all data in this Extent Pool, because data is striped across all ranks. To avoid data loss, mirror your data to a remote DS8000.

The DS Storage Manager GUI prompts you to use the same RAID types in an Extent Pool. As such, when an Extent Pool is defined, it must be assigned with the following attributes:

- ▶ Server affinity
- ▶ Extent type
- ▶ RAID type
- ▶ Drive Class
- ▶ Encryption group

Just like the ranks, Extent Pools also belong to an encryption group. When defining an Extent Pool, you have to specify an encryption group. Encryption group 0 means no encryption, while encryption group 1 means encryption. Currently, the DS8000 series supports only one encryption group and encryption is *on* for *all* Extent Pools or *off* for *all* Extent Pools.

The minimum number of Extent Pools is two, with one assigned to server 0 and the other to server 1 so that both servers are active. In an environment where FB and CKD are to go onto

the DS8000 series storage server, four Extent Pools would provide one FB pool for each server, and one CKD pool for each server, to balance the capacity between the two servers. Figure 5-5 is an example of a mixed environment with CKD and FB Extent Pools. Additional Extent Pools might also be desirable to segregate ranks with different DDM types. Extent Pools are expanded by adding more ranks to the pool. Ranks are organized in two *rank groups*; rank group 0 is controlled by server 0 and rank group 1 is controlled by server 1.

**Important:** For best performance, capacity should be balanced between two DS8000 servers and at least two Extent Pools should be created, with one per server.

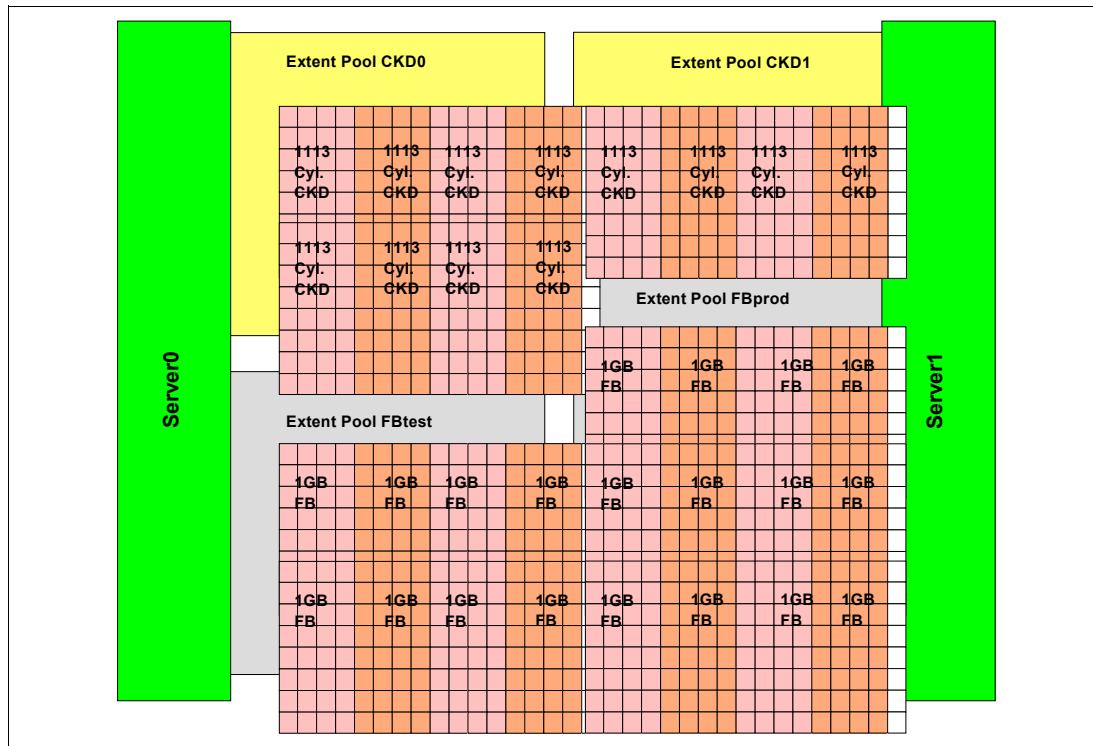


Figure 5-5 Extent Pools

### Dynamic Extent Pool merge

Dynamic Extent Pool Merge is a capability provided by the Easy Tier manual mode facility.

Dynamic Extent Pool Merge allows one Extent Pool to be merged into another Extent Pool while the logical volumes in both Extent Pools remain accessible to the host servers.

Dynamic Extent Pool Merge may be used for the following reasons:

- ▶ For the consolidation of two smaller Extent Pools with equivalent storage type (that is, the same disk class, disk RPM, and RAID) into a larger Extent Pool. Creating a larger Extent Pool allows logical volumes to be distributed over a greater number of ranks, which improves overall performance in the presence of skewed workloads. Newly created volumes in the merged Extent Pool will allocate capacity as specified by the extent allocation algorithm selected. Logical volumes that existed in either the source or the target Extent Pool can be redistributed over the set of ranks in the merged Extent Pool using the Migrate Volume function.
- ▶ For consolidating two Extent Pools with different storage types to create a merged Extent Pool with a mix of storage technologies (SSD + HDD). This is a prerequisite for using the Easy Tier automatic mode feature.

Figure 5-6 depicts the Easy Tier manual mode volume migration.

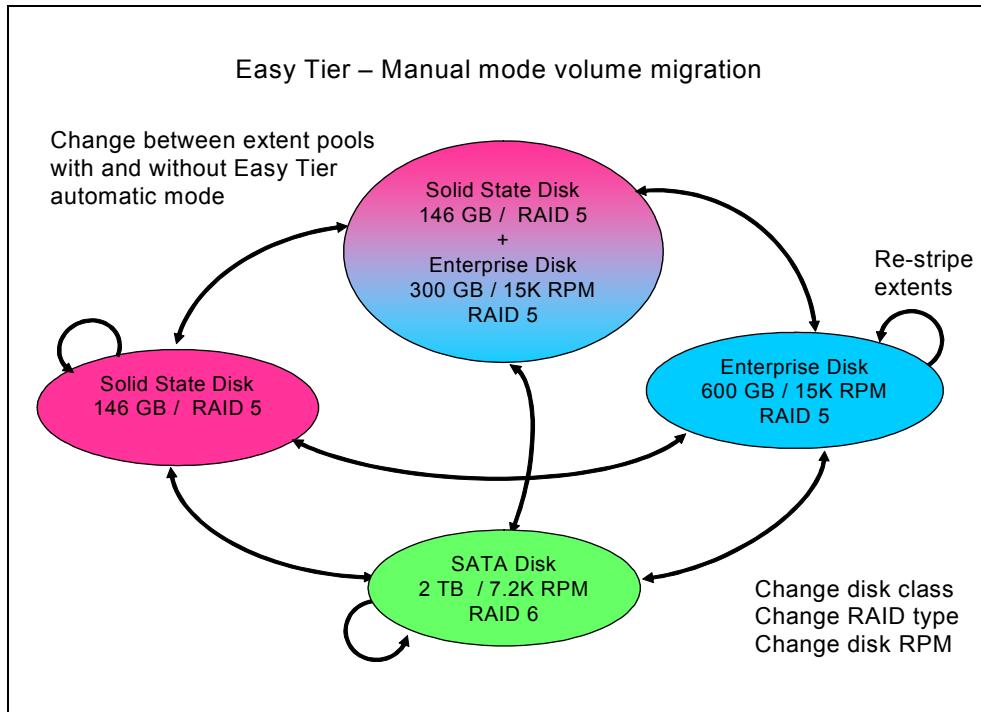


Figure 5-6 Easy Tier: Manual mode volume migration

An Extent Pool merge operation is not allowed under any the following conditions:

- The source and target Extent Pools are not on the same storage server (server 0 or server 1). Both the source and target Extent Pools must have an even (or odd) Extent Pool number.
- The source and target Extent Pools both contain virtual capacity or both contain a space efficient repository.
- One Extent Pool is composed of SSD ranks and has either virtual capacity or a space efficient repository and the other Extent Pool contains at least one non-SSD rank.

Refer to *IBM System Storage DS8700 Easy Tier*, REDP-4667 for more information.

**Note:** The Easy Tier function currently does not support encryption capable storage facilities.

## 5.2.5 Logical volumes

A *logical volume* is composed of a set of extents from one Extent Pool.

On a DS8000, up to 65280 (we use the abbreviation 64 K in this discussion, even though it is actually 65536 - 256, which is not quite 64 K in binary) volumes can be created (either 64 K CKD, or 64 K FB volumes, or a mixture of both types with a maximum of 64 K volumes in total).

## Fixed Block LUNs

A logical volume composed of fixed block extents is called a *LUN*. A fixed block LUN is composed of one or more 1 GiB ( $2^{30}$  bytes) extents from one FB Extent Pool. A LUN cannot span multiple Extent Pools, but a LUN can have extents from different ranks within the same Extent Pool. You can construct LUNs up to a size of 2 TiB ( $2^{40}$  bytes).

LUNs can be allocated in binary GiB ( $2^{30}$  bytes), decimal GB ( $10^9$  bytes), or 512 or 520 byte blocks. However, the physical capacity that is allocated for a LUN is always a multiple of 1 GiB, so it is a good idea to have LUN sizes that are a multiple of a gibibyte. If you define a LUN with a LUN size that is not a multiple of 1 GiB, for example, 25.5 GiB, the LUN size is 25.5 GiB, but 26 GiB are physically allocated, of which 0.5 GiB of the physical storage remain unusable.

## CKD volumes

A System z CKD volume is composed of one or more extents from one CKD Extent Pool. CKD extents are of the size of 3390 Model 1, which has 1113 cylinders. However, when you define a System z CKD volume, you do not specify the number of 3390 Model 1 extents but the number of cylinders you want for the volume.

The DS8000 and z/OS limit CKD extended address volumes (EAV) sizes. Now you can define CKD volumes with up to 262,668 cylinders, which is about 223 GB. This new volume capacity is called Extended Address Volume (EAV) and is supported by the 3390 Model A.

**Important:** EAV volumes can only be used by IBM z/OS 1.10 or later versions.

**Important:** Thin Provisioning of volumes, as included in Licensed Machine Code 6.5.1.xx, do not support CKD volumes at this time.

If the number of cylinders specified is not an exact multiple of 1113 cylinders, then some space in the last allocated extent is wasted. For example, if you define 1114 or 3340 cylinders, 1112 cylinders are wasted. For maximum storage efficiency, you should consider allocating volumes that are exact multiples of 1113 cylinders. In fact, multiples of 3339 cylinders should be considered for future compatibility.

If you want to use the maximum number of cylinders for a volume on a DS8700 (that is 262,668 cylinders), you are not wasting cylinders, as it is an exact multiple of 1113 (262,688 divided by 1113 is exactly 236). For even better future compatibility, you should use a size of 260,442 cylinders, which is an exact multiple (78) of 3339, a model 3 size. On DS8000s running older Licensed Machine Codes, the maximum number of cylinders was 65,520 and it is *not* a multiple of 1113. You could go with 65,520 cylinders and waste 147 cylinders for each volume (the difference to the next multiple of 1113) or you might be better off with a volume size of 64,554 cylinders, which is a multiple of 1113 (factor of 58), or even better, with 63,441 cylinders, which is a multiple of 3339, a model 3 size. See Figure 5-7 on page 95.

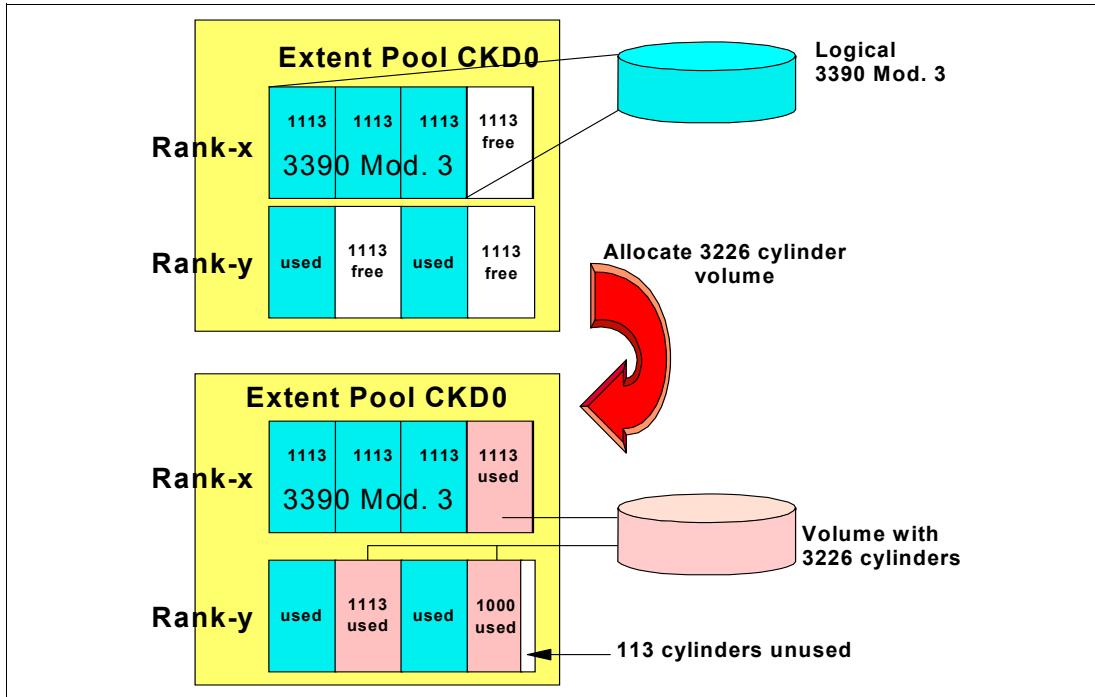


Figure 5-7 Allocation of a CKD logical volume

A CKD volume cannot span multiple Extent Pools, but a volume can have extents from different ranks in the same Extent Pool or you can stripe a volume across the ranks (see “Storage Pool Striping: Extent rotation” on page 100). Figure 5-7 shows how a logical volume is allocated with a CKD volume as an example. The allocation process for FB volumes is similar and is shown in Figure 5-8.

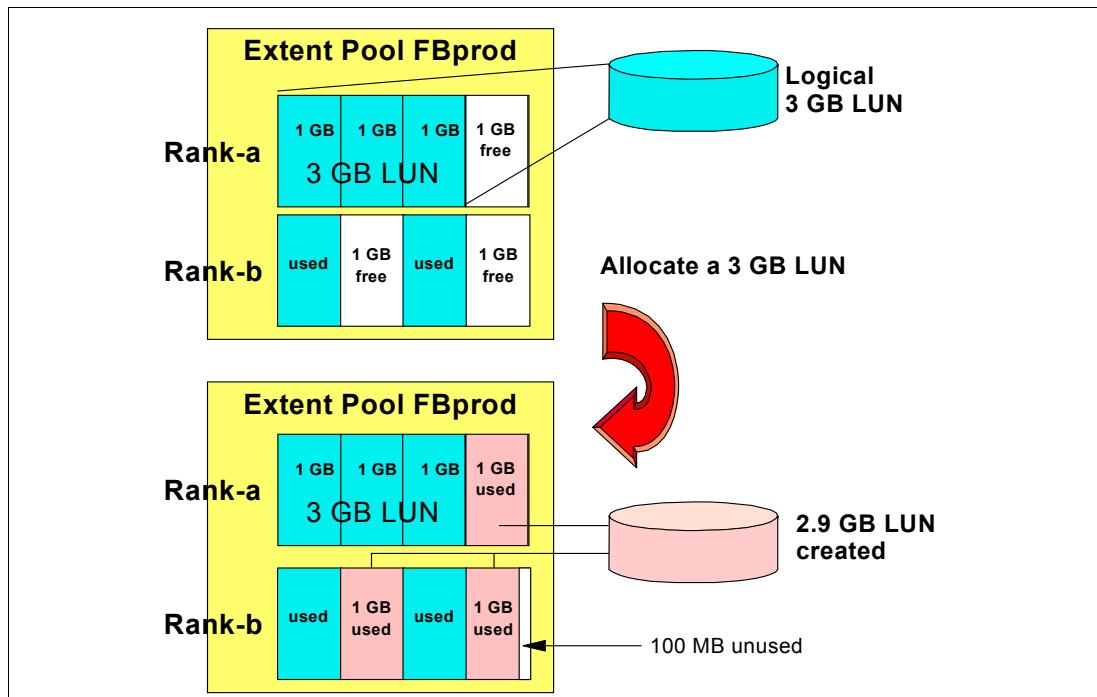


Figure 5-8 Creation of an FB LUN

## System i LUNs

System i LUNs are also composed of fixed block 1 GiB extents. There are, however, some special aspects with System i LUNs. LUNs created on a DS8000 are always RAID protected. LUNs are based on RAID 5, RAID 6, or RAID 10 arrays. However, you might want to deceive i5/OS® and tell it that the LUN is *not* RAID protected. This causes the i5/OS to do its own mirroring. System i LUNs can have the attribute *unprotected*, in which case, the DS8000 will lie to a System i host and tell it that the LUN is not RAID protected.

**Important:** Thin Provisioning of volumes, as included in Licensed Machine Code 6.5.1.xx, is not supported for IBM System i volumes at this time.

The i5/OS only supports certain fixed volume sizes, for example, model sizes of 8.5 GB, 17.5 GB, and 35.1 GB. These sizes are not multiples of 1 GB, and hence, depending on the model chosen, some space is wasted. System i LUNs expose a 520 Byte block to the host. The operating system uses 8 of these Bytes so the usable space is still 512 Bytes like other SCSI LUNs. The capacities quoted for the System i LUNs are in terms of the 512 Byte block capacity and are expressed in GB ( $10^9$ ). These capacities should be converted to GiB ( $2^{30}$ ) when considering effective utilization of extents that are 1 GiB ( $2^{30}$ ). For more information about this topic, see Chapter 17, “IBM System i considerations” on page 499.

### 5.2.6 Space Efficient volumes

When a standard FB LUN or CKD volume is created on the physical drive, it will occupy as many extents as necessary for the defined capacity.

For the DS8700 with Licensed Machine Code 6.5.1.xx, there are now two types of Space Efficient volumes that can be defined: *Extent Space Efficient Volumes* and *Track Space Efficient Volumes*. The two concepts are described in detail in *DS8000 Thin Provisioning*, REDP-4554.

A Space Efficient volume does not occupy physical capacity when it is created. Space gets allocated when data is actually written to the volume. The amount of space that gets physically allocated is a function of the amount of data written to or changes performed on the volume. The sum of capacities of all defined Space Efficient volumes can be larger than the physical capacity available. This function is also called *over-provisioning* or *thin provisioning*.

Space Efficient volumes can be created when the DS8000 has the IBM Thin Provisioning or IBM FlashCopy SE feature enabled (licensing is required).

The general idea behind Space Efficient volumes is to use or allocate physical storage when it is only potentially or temporarily needed.

#### Repository for Track Space Efficient volumes

The definition of Track Space Efficient (TSE) volumes begins at the Extent Pool level. TSE volumes are defined from *virtual space* in that the size of the TSE volume does not initially use physical storage. However, any data written to a TSE volume must have enough physical storage to contain this write activity. This physical storage is provided by the *repository*.

**Note:** The TSE repository cannot be created on SATA Drives.

The repository is an object within an Extent Pool. In some sense it is similar to a volume within the Extent Pool. The repository has a physical size and a logical size. The physical size of the repository is the amount of space that is allocated in the Extent Pool. It is the physical

space that is available for all Space Efficient volumes in total in this Extent Pool. The repository is striped across all ranks within the Extent Pool. There can only be one repository per Extent Pool.

**Important:** The size of the repository and virtual space is part of the Extent Pool definition. Each Extent Pool may have a TSE volume repository, but this physical space cannot be shared between Extent Pools.

Virtual space in an Extent Pool is used for both TSE and ESE volumes, while the repository is only used for TSE volumes for FlashCopy SE. ESE volumes use available extents in the Extent Pool in a similar fashion as standard, fully provisioned volumes, but extents are only allocated as needed to write data to the ESE volume.

The logical size of the repository is limited by the available virtual capacity for Space Efficient volumes. As an example, there could be a repository of 100 GB reserved physical storage and you defined a virtual capacity of 200 GB. In this case, you could define 10 TSE-LUNs with 20 GB each. So the logical capacity can be larger than the physical capacity. Of course, you cannot fill all the volumes with data because the total physical capacity is limited by the repository size, that is, to 100 GB in this example.

**Note:** In the current implementation of Track Space Efficient volumes, it is not possible to expand the physical size of the repository. Therefore, careful planning for the size of the repository is required before it is used. If a repository needs to be expanded, all Track Space Efficient volumes within this Extent Pool must be deleted, and then the repository must be deleted and re-created with the required size.

Space for a Space Efficient volume is allocated when a write occurs, more precisely, when a destage from the cache occurs and there is not enough free space left on the currently allocated extent or track. The allocation unit is either an extent (ESE, 1 GB for FB) or a track (TSE, 64 KB for open systems LUNs or 57 KB for CKD volumes).

Because space is allocated in extents or tracks, the system needs to maintain tables indicating their mapping to the logical volumes, so there is some impact involved with Space Efficient volumes. The smaller the allocation unit, the larger the tables and the impact.

**Summary:** Virtual space is created as part of the Extent Pool definition. This virtual space is mapped onto ESE volumes in the Extent Pool (physical space) and TSE volumes in the repository (physical space) as needed. Virtual space would equal the total space of the required ESE volumes and the TSE volumes for FlashCopy SE. No actual storage is allocated until write activity occurs to the ESE or TSE volumes.

Figure 5-9 illustrates the concept of Track Space Efficient volumes.

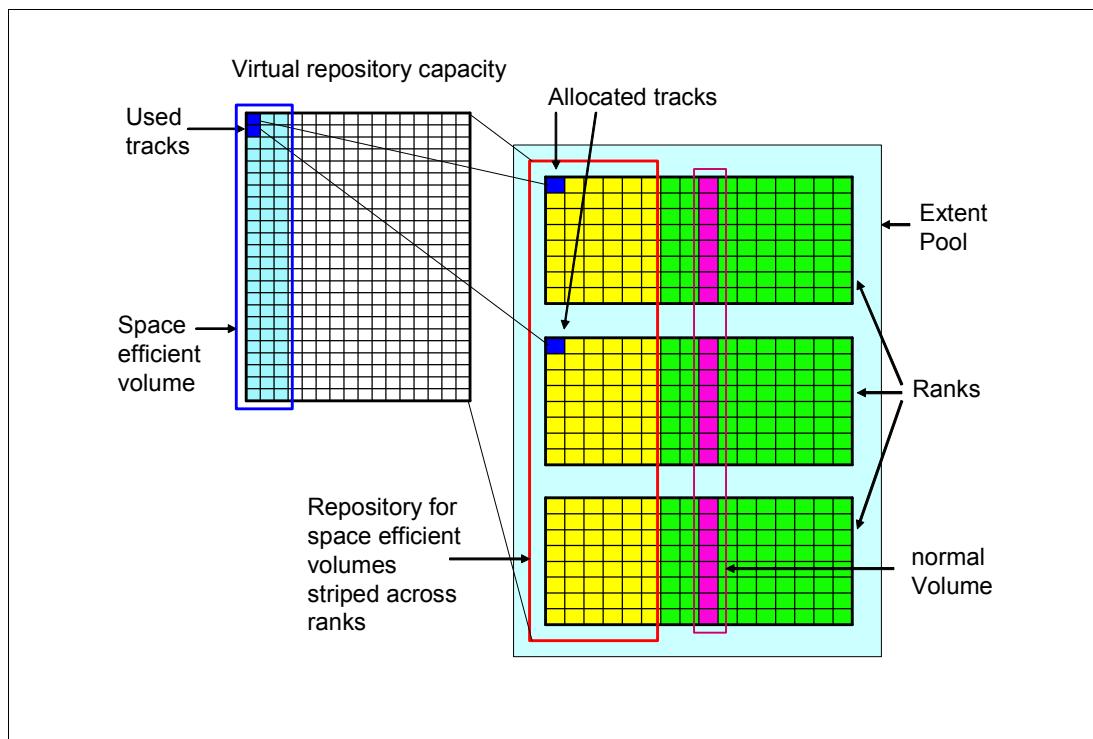


Figure 5-9 Concept of Track Space Efficient volumes for FlashCopy SE

The lifetime of data on Track Space Efficient volumes is expected to be short because they are used as FlashCopy targets only. Physical storage gets allocated when data is written to Track Space Efficient volumes and we need some mechanism to free up physical space in the repository when the data is no longer needed.

The FlashCopy commands have options to release the space of Track Space Efficient volumes when the FlashCopy relationship is established or removed.

The CLI commands `initfbvol` and `initckdvol` can also release the space for both types of Space Efficient volumes (ESE and TSE).

Figure 5-10 illustrates the concept of ESE logical volumes.

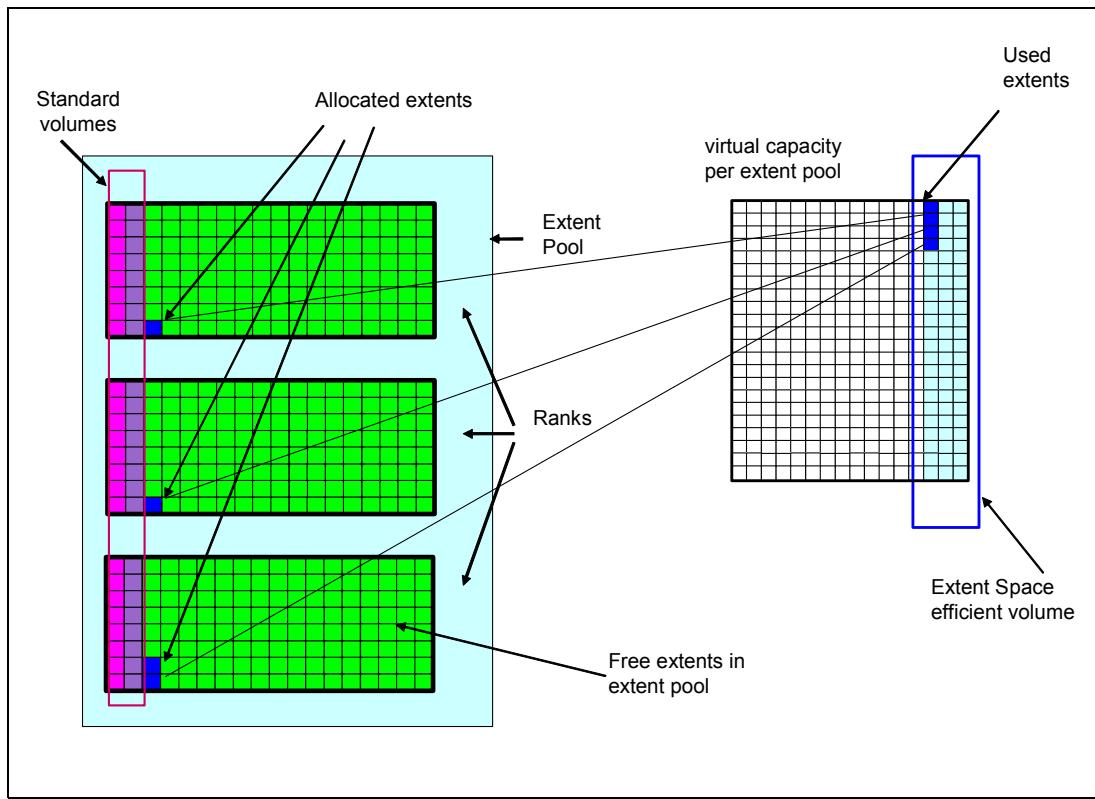


Figure 5-10 Concept of ESE logical volumes

### Use of Extent Space Efficient volumes

Like standard volumes (which are fully provisioned), ESE volumes can be mapped to hosts. However, they are not supported in combination with Copy Services functions at this time.

### Use of Track Space Efficient volumes

Track Space Efficient volumes are supported as FlashCopy target volumes only.

For detailed information about ESE and TSE volumes concepts, refer to *DS8000 Thin Provisioning*, REDP-4554.

**Important:** Space Efficient volumes (ESE or TSE) are not managed by the IBM System Storage Easy Tier function.

### 5.2.7 Allocation, deletion, and modification of LUNs/CKD volumes

All extents of the ranks assigned to an Extent Pool are independently available for allocation to logical volumes. The extents for a LUN/volume are logically ordered, but they do not have to come from one rank and the extents do not have to be contiguous on a rank.

This construction method of using fixed extents to form a logical volume in the DS8000 series allows flexibility in the management of the logical volumes. We can delete LUNs/CKD volumes, resize LUNs/volumes, and reuse the extents of those LUNs to create other LUNs/volumes, maybe of different sizes. One logical volume can be removed without affecting the other logical volumes defined on the same Extent Pool.

Since the extents are *cleaned* after you have deleted a LUN or CKD volume, it can take some time until these extents are available for reallocation. The reformatting of the extents is a background process.

There are two extent allocation algorithms for the DS8000: *Rotate volumes* and *Storage Pool Striping (Rotate extents)*.

### **Rotate volumes allocation method**

Extents can be allocated sequentially. In this case all extents are taken from the same rank until we have enough extents for the requested volume size or the rank is full, in which case the allocation continues with the next rank in the Extent Pool.

If more than one volume is created in one operation, the allocation for each volume starts in another rank. When allocating several volumes, we *rotate* through the ranks.

You might want to consider this allocation method when you prefer to manage performance manually. The workload of one volume is going to one rank. This makes the identification of performance bottlenecks easier; however, by putting all the volumes data onto just one rank, you might introduce a bottleneck, depending on your actual workload.

### **Storage Pool Striping: Extent rotation**

The second and actually preferred storage allocation method is *Storage Pool Striping*. Storage Pool Striping is an option when a LUN/volume is created. The extents of a volume can be striped across several ranks.

An Extent Pool with more than one rank is needed to use this storage allocation method.

The DS8000 maintains a sequence of ranks. The first rank in the list is randomly picked at each power on of the storage subsystem. The DS8000 keeps track of the rank in which the last allocation started. The allocation of the first extent for the next volume starts from the next rank in that sequence. The next extent for that volume is taken from the next rank in sequence and so on. So, the system rotates the extents across the ranks.

**Tip:** Rotate extents and rotate volume EAMs provide distribution of volumes over ranks. Rotate extents does this at a granular (1 GB extent) level, which is the preferred method to minimize hot spots and improve overall performance.

**Note:** In a mixed disk characteristics Extent Pool containing SSD ranks, the Storage Pool striping EAM is used independently of the requested EAM. Extent allocation is done on HDD ranks while space remains available and before allocating on SDD ranks.

Figure 5-11 shows an example of how volumes are allocated within the Extent Pool.

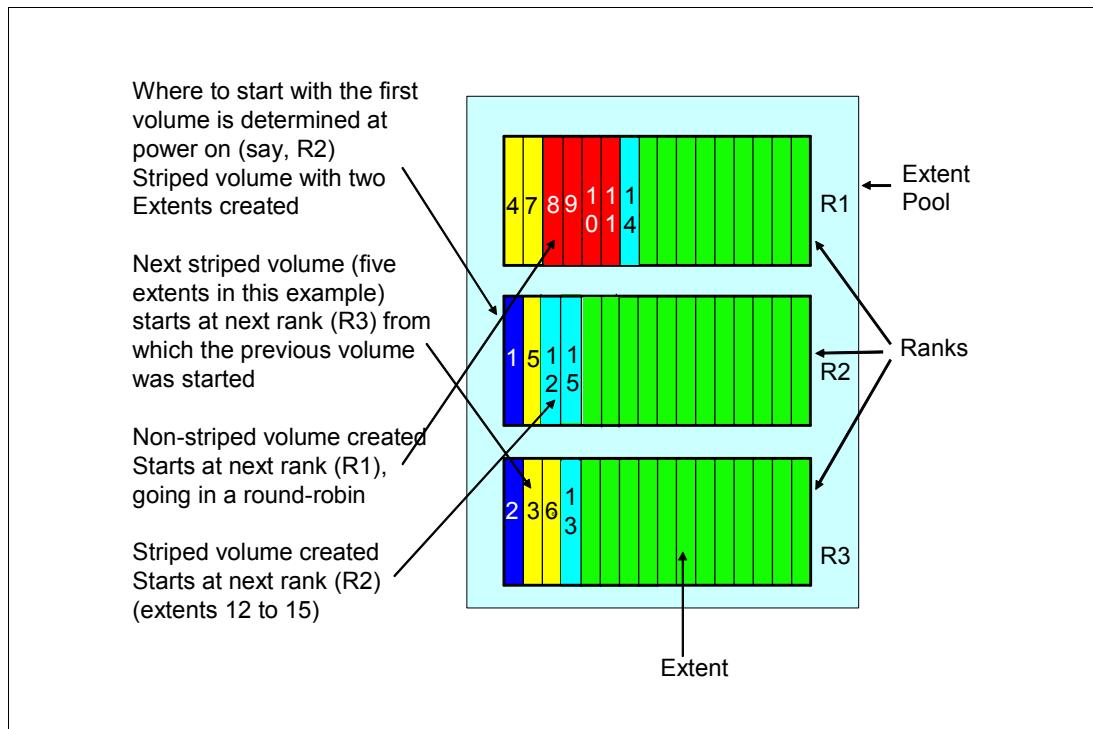


Figure 5-11 Extent allocation methods

When you create striped volumes and non-striped volumes in an Extent Pool, a rank could be filled before the others. A full rank is skipped when you create new striped volumes.

**Tip:** If you have to add capacity to an Extent Pool because it is nearly full, it is better to add several ranks at once, not just one. This allows new volumes to be striped across the newly added ranks.

With the Easy Tier manual mode facility, the user can request an Extent Pool merge followed by a volume relocation with striping to perform the same function.

Figure 5-12 shows both standard volumes and Extent Space Efficient volumes in an Extent Pool, both using the rotate volumes allocation method (red standard volume 8-12 and pink ESE volume 17-19, 26-27) and Storage Pool Striping extent allocation methods (all other standard and ESE volumes).

**Note:** The rotate volume EAM is not allowed if one Extent Pool is composed of SSD disks and has a Space Efficient repository or virtual capacity configured.

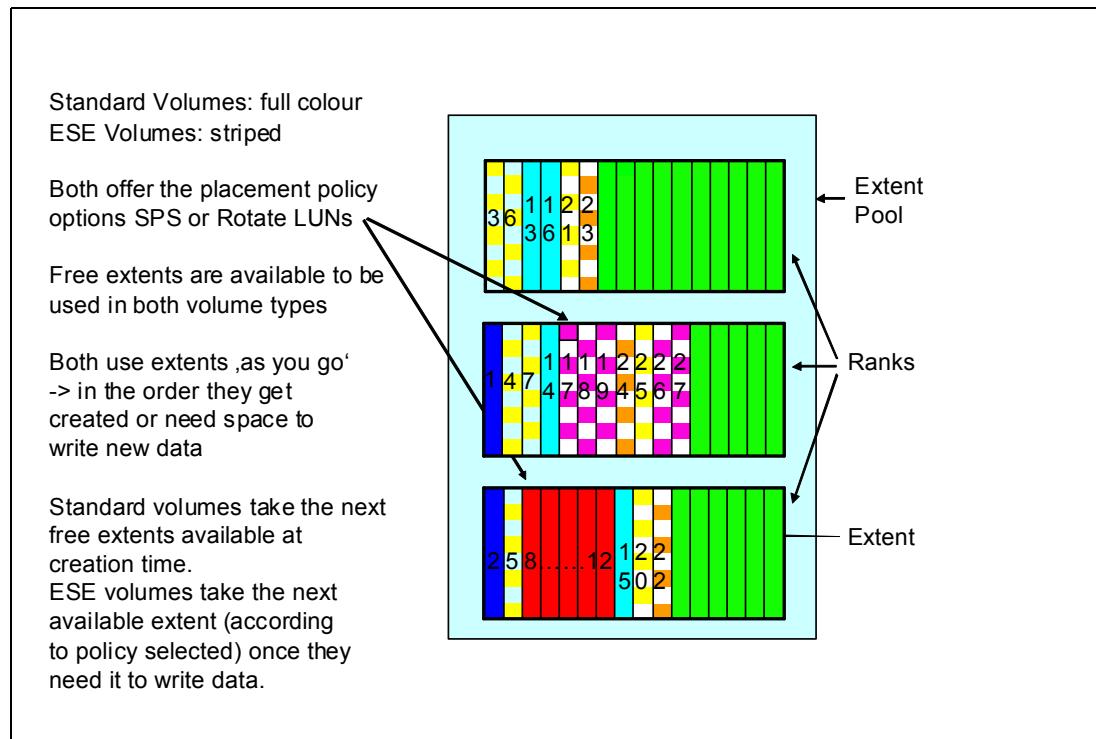


Figure 5-12 Free extents could be used for Standard Volumes or Extent Space Efficient Volumes

By using striped volumes, you distribute the I/O load of a LUN/CKD volume to more than just one set of eight disk drives. The ability to distribute a workload to many physical drives can greatly enhance performance for a logical volume. In particular, operating systems that do not have a volume manager that can do striping will benefit most from this allocation method.

However, if you have Extent Pools with many ranks and all volumes are striped across the ranks and you lose just one rank, for example, because there are two disk drives in the same rank that fail at the same time and it is not a RAID 6 rank, you will lose a lot of your data. To avoid data loss, mirror data to a remote DS8000.

On the other hand, if you do, for example, Physical Partition striping in AIX already, double striping probably will not improve performance any further. The same can be expected when the DS8000 LUNs are used by an SVC striping data across LUNs.

If you decide to use Storage Pool Striping it is probably better to use this allocation method for all volumes in the Extent Pool to keep the ranks equally filled and utilized.

**Tip:** When configuring a new DS8700, do not mix volumes using the storage pool striping method and volumes using the rotate volumes method in the same Extent Pool.

For more information about how to configure Extent Pools and volumes for optimal performance see Chapter 7, “Performance” on page 141.

## Logical volume configuration states

Each logical volume has a configuration state attribute. The configuration state reflects the condition of the logical volume relative to user requested configuration operations, as shown in Figure 5-13.

When a logical volume creation request is received, a logical volume object is created and the logical volume's configuration state attribute is placed in the *configuring* configuration state. Once the logical volume is created and available for host access, it is placed in the *normal* configuration state. If a volume deletion request is received, the logical volume is placed in the *deconfiguring* configuration state until all capacity associated with the logical volume is deallocated and the logical volume object is deleted.

The *reconfiguring* configuration state is associated with a volume expansion request (refer to “Dynamic Volume Expansion” for more information). The *transposing* configuration state is associated with an Extent Pool merge, as described in “Dynamic Extent Pool merge” on page 92. The *migrating*, *migration paused*, *migration error*, and *migration cancelled* configuration states are associated with a volume relocation request, as described in “Dynamic volume migration” on page 105.

As shown, the configuration state serializes user requests with the exception that a volume deletion request can be initiated from any configuration state.

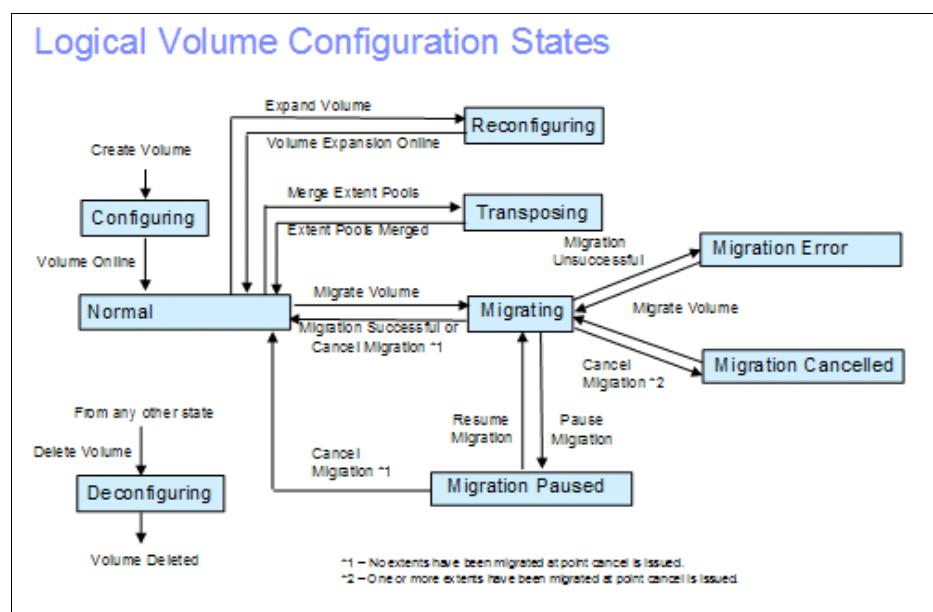


Figure 5-13 Logical volume configuration states

## Dynamic Volume Expansion

The size of a LUN or CKD volume can be expanded without destroying the data. On the DS8000, we just add extents to the volume. The operating system will have to support this re-sizing.

If you expand a volume in z/OS, a message will appear in the console indicating the new size (Example 5-1).

*Example 5-1 z/OS message to indicate a change of the volume size*

---

```
IEA019I BC07,ITS002,VOLUME CAPACITY CHANGE,OLD=0000FC2A,NEW=0004020C
```

---

Before you can actually see the change in other tools like ISMF, or before you can use it, you have to refresh the VTOC (Example 5-2 and Example 5-3).

*Example 5-2 Refresh VTOC*

---

```
//INIT EXEC PGM=ICKDSF,PARM='NOREPLYU'  
//IN1 DD UNIT=3390,VOL=SER=ITS002,DISP=SHR  
//SYSPRINT DD SYSOUT=*  
//SYSIN DD *  
    REFORMAT DDNAME(IN1) VERIFY(ITS002) REFVTOC  
/*
```

---

*Example 5-3 ISMF view of the volume size before and after the resize*

---

LINE	VOLUME	FREE	%	ALLOC	FRAG	LARGEST	FREE
OPERATOR	SERIAL	SPACE	FREE	SPACE	INDEX	EXTENT	EXTENTS
---(1)---	- (2) --	--- (3) ---	(4) -	--- (5) ---	(6) -	--- (7) ---	-- (8) --
	ITS002	53458444K	99	123898K	0	53458444K	1

---

\*\*\*\* Expand volume

\*\*\*\* Run ICKDSF: REFORMAT REFVTOC

---

LINE	VOLUME	FREE	%	ALLOC	FRAG	LARGEST	FREE
OPERATOR	SERIAL	SPACE	FREE	SPACE	INDEX	EXTENT	EXTENTS
---(1)---	- (2) --	--- (3) ---	(4) -	--- (5) ---	(6) -	--- (7) ---	-- (8) --
	ITS002	212794M	99	123897K	39	159805M	2

---

**Note:** It is possible to expand a 3390 Model 9 volume to a 3390 Model A volume. By executing the dynamic volume expansion on a 3390 Model 9, the new capacity is larger than 65,520 cylinders, the system will enlarge the volume and change its *datatype* to 3390-A.

See Chapter 15, “Open systems considerations” on page 399 for more information about other specific environments.

A logical volume has the attribute of being striped across the ranks or not. If the volume was created as striped across the ranks of the Extent Pool, then the extents that are used to increase the size of the volume are striped. If a volume was created without striping, the system tries to allocate the additional extents within the same rank that the volume was created from originally.

Since most operating systems have no means to move data from the end of the *physical* disk off to some unused space at the beginning of the disk, and because of the risk of data corruption, IBM does not support shrinking a volume. The DS8000 configuration interfaces DS CLI and DS GUI will *not* allow you to change a volume to a smaller size.

**Consideration:** Before you can expand a volume, you have to delete any copy services relationship involving that volume.

## **Dynamic volume migration**

Dynamic volume migration or Dynamic Volume Relocation (DVR) is a capability provided as part of the Easy Tier manual mode facility.

Dynamic Volume Relocation allows data stored on a logical volume to be migrated from its currently allocated storage to newly allocated storage while the logical volume remains accessible to attached hosts. The user can request Dynamic Volume Relocation using the Migrate Volume function that is available through the DS8700 Storage Manager GUI or DS CLI. Dynamic Volume Relocation allows the user to specify a target Extent Pool and an extent allocation method (EAM). The target Extent Pool may be the same or a different Extent Pool than the Extent Pool where the volume is currently located.

Dynamic volume migration provides:

- ▶ The ability to change the Extent Pool in which a logical volume is provisioned, which provides a mechanism to change the underlying storage characteristics of the logical volume to include the disk class (Solid State Drive, enterprise disk, or SATA disk), disk rpm, and RAID array type. Volume migration may also be used to migrate a logical volume into or out of an Extent Pool.
- ▶ The ability to specify the extent allocation method for a volume migration allowing the extent allocation method to be changed between the available extent allocation method any time after volume creation. Volume migration specifying the rotate extents EAM can also be used to re-distribute a logical volume's extent allocations across the currently existing ranks in the Extent Pool if additional ranks are added to an Extent Pool.

Each logical volume has a configuration state, as described in “Logical volume configuration states” on page 103. To initiate a volume migration, the logical volume must initially be in the normal configuration state. The volume migration will follow each of the states discussed.

There are additional functions that are associated with volume migration that allow the user to pause, resume, or cancel a volume migration. Any and all logical volumes can be requested to be migrated at any given time as long as there is sufficient capacity available to support the pre-allocation of the migrating logical volumes in their specified target Extent Pool.

For additional information about this topic, refer to *IBM System Storage DS8700 Easy Tier*, REDP-4667.

### **5.2.8 Logical subsystems (LSS)**

A *logical subsystem* (LSS) is another logical construct. It groups logical volumes and LUNs, in groups of up to 256 logical volumes.

On the DS8000 series, there is no fixed binding between any rank and any logical subsystem. The capacity of one or more ranks can be aggregated into an Extent Pool and logical volumes configured in that Extent Pool are not bound to any specific rank. Different logical volumes on the same logical subsystem can be configured in different Extent Pools. As such, the available capacity of the storage facility can be flexibly allocated across the set of defined logical subsystems and logical volumes. You can now define up to 255 LSSs for the DS8000 series.

For each LUN or CKD volume, you can now choose an LSS. You can have up to 256 volumes in one LSS. There is, however, one restriction. We already have seen that volumes are formed from a bunch of extents from an Extent Pool. Extent Pools, however, belong to one server (CEC), server 0 or server 1, respectively. LSSs also have an affinity to the servers. All even-numbered LSSs (X'00', X'02', X'04', up to X'FE') belong to server 0 and all

odd-numbered LSSs (X'01', X'03', X'05', up to X'FD') belong to server 1. LSS X'FF' is reserved.

System z users are familiar with a *logical control unit* (LCU). System z operating systems configure LCUs to create device addresses. There is a one to one relationship between an LCU and a CKD LSS (LSS X' $ab$ ' maps to LCU X' $ab$ '). Logical volumes have a logical volume number X' $abcd$ ' where X' $ab$ ' identifies the LSS and X' $cd$ ' is one of the 256 logical volumes on the LSS. This logical volume number is assigned to a logical volume when a logical volume is created and determines the LSS that it is associated with. The 256 possible logical volumes associated with an LSS are mapped to the 256 possible device addresses on an LCU (logical volume X' $abcd$ ' maps to device address X' $cd$ ' on LCU X' $ab$ '). When creating CKD logical volumes and assigning their logical volume numbers, you should consider whether Parallel Access Volumes (PAV) are required on the LCU and reserve some of the addresses on the LCU for alias addresses. For more information about PAV, see 16.3, "z/OS considerations" on page 475.

For open systems, LSSs do not play an important role except in determining which server manages the LUN (and in which Extent Pool it must be allocated) and in certain aspects related to Metro Mirror, Global Mirror, or any of the other remote copy implementations.

Some management actions in Metro Mirror, Global Mirror, or Global Copy, operate at the LSS level. For example, the freezing of pairs to preserve data consistency across all pairs, in case you have a problem with one of the pairs, is done at the LSS level. With the option to put all or most of the volumes of a certain application in just one LSS, makes the management of remote copy operations easier; see Figure 5-14.

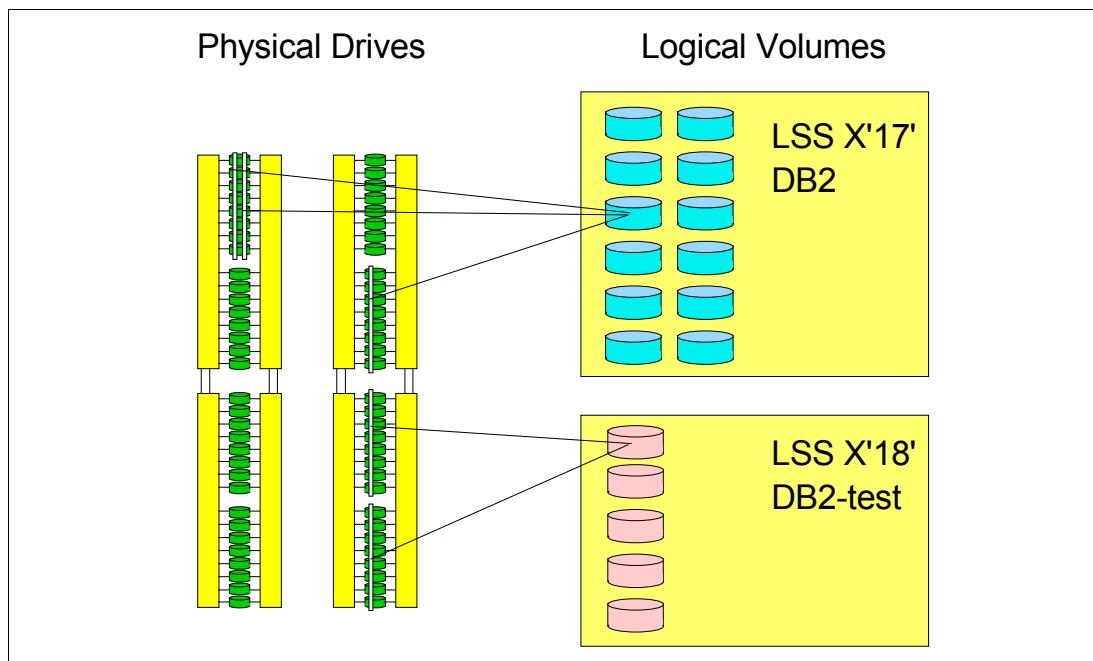


Figure 5-14 Grouping of volumes in LSSs

Fixed block LSSs are created automatically when the first fixed block logical volume on the LSS is created, and deleted automatically when the last fixed block logical volume on the LSS is deleted. CKD LSSs require user parameters to be specified and must be created before the first CKD logical volume can be created on the LSS; they must be deleted manually after the last CKD logical volume on the LSS is deleted.

## Address groups

Address groups are created automatically when the first LSS associated with the address group is created, and deleted automatically when the last LSS in the address group is deleted.

All devices in an LSS must be either CKD or FB. This restriction goes even further. LSSs are grouped into address groups of 16 LSSs. LSSs are numbered X'ab', where *a* is the address group and *b* denotes an LSS within the address group. So, for example, X'10' to X'1F' are LSSs in address group 1.

All LSSs within one address group have to be of the same type, CKD or FB. The first LSS defined in an address group sets the type of that address group.

**Important:** System z users who still want to use ESCON to attach hosts to the DS8000 series should be aware that ESCON supports only the 16 LSSs of address group 0 (LSS X'00' to X'0F'). Therefore, this address group should be reserved for ESCON-attached CKD devices in this case and not used as FB LSSs. The DS8700 no longer supports ESCON channels. ESCON devices can only be attached by using FICON/ESCON converters.

Figure 5-15 shows the concept of LSSs and address groups.

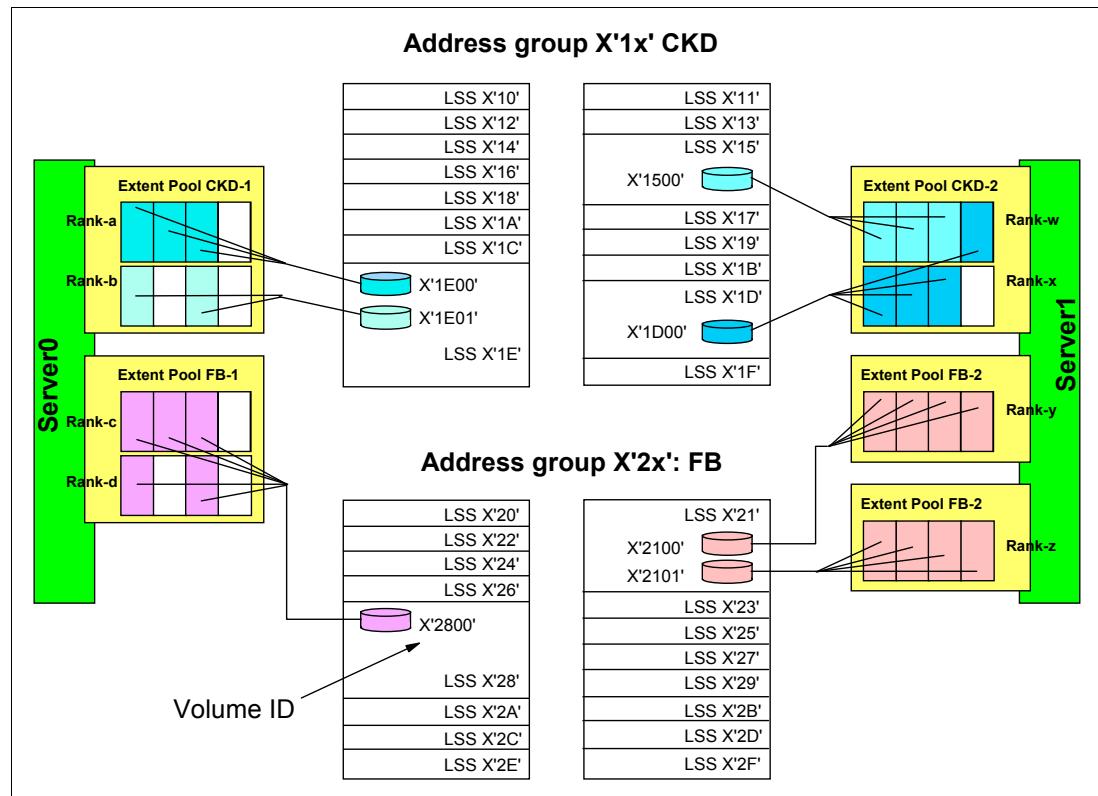


Figure 5-15 Logical storage subsystems

The LUN identifications X'gabb' are composed of the address group X'g', and the LSS number within the address group X'a', and the position of the LUN within the LSS X'bb'. For example, FB LUN X'2101' denotes the second (X'01') LUN in LSS X'21' of address group 2.

## 5.2.9 Volume access

A DS8000 provides mechanisms to control host access to LUNs. In most cases, a server has two or more HBAs and the server needs access to a group of LUNs. For easy management of server access to logical volumes, the DS8000 introduced the concept of host attachments and volume groups.

### Host attachment

Host bus adapters (HBAs) are identified to the DS8000 in a host attachment construct that specifies the HBAs' World Wide Port Names (WWPNs). A set of host ports can be associated through a port group attribute that allows a set of HBAs to be managed collectively. This port group is referred to as a host attachment within the GUI.

Each host attachment can be associated with a volume group to define which LUNs that HBA is allowed to access. Multiple host attachments can share the same volume group. The host attachment can also specify a port mask that controls which DS8700 I/O ports the HBA is allowed to log in to. Whichever ports the HBA logs in on, it sees the same volume group that is defined on the host attachment associated with this HBA.

The maximum number of host attachments on a DS8700 is 8192.

### Volume group

A *volume group* is a named construct that defines a set of logical volumes. When used in conjunction with CKD hosts, there is a default volume group that contains all CKD volumes and any CKD host that logs in to a FICON I/O port has access to the volumes in this volume group. CKD logical volumes are automatically added to this volume group when they are created and automatically removed from this volume group when they are deleted.

When used in conjunction with open systems hosts, a host attachment object that identifies the HBA is linked to a specific volume group. You must define the volume group by indicating which fixed block logical volumes are to be placed in the volume group. Logical volumes can be added to or removed from any volume group dynamically.

There are two types of volume groups used with open systems hosts and the type determines how the logical volume number is converted to a host addressable LUN\_ID on the Fibre Channel SCSI interface. A *map volume group* type is used in conjunction with FC SCSI host types that poll for LUNs by walking the address range on the SCSI interface. This type of volume group can map any FB logical volume numbers to 256 LUN\_IDs that have zeroes in the last six Bytes and the first two Bytes in the range of X'0000' to X'00FF'.

A *mask volume group* type is used in conjunction with FC SCSI host types that use the Report LUNs command to determine the LUN\_IDs that are accessible. This type of volume group can allow any and all FB logical volume numbers to be accessed by the host where the mask is a bitmap that specifies which LUNs are accessible. For this volume group type, the logical volume number X'abcd' is mapped to LUN\_ID X'40ab40cd00000000'. The volume group type also controls whether 512 Byte block LUNs or 520 Byte block LUNs can be configured in the volume group.

When associating a host attachment with a volume group, the host attachment contains attributes that define the logical block size and the Address Discovery Method (LUN Polling or Report LUNs) that are used by the host HBA. These attributes must be consistent with the volume group type of the volume group that is assigned to the host attachment so that HBAs that share a volume group have a consistent interpretation of the volume group definition and have access to a consistent set of logical volume types. The GUI typically sets these values appropriately for the HBA based on your specification of a host type. You must consider what volume group type to create when setting up a volume group for a particular HBA.

FB logical volumes can be defined in one or more volume groups. This allows a LUN to be shared by host HBAs configured to different volume groups. An FB logical volume is automatically removed from all volume groups when it is deleted.

The maximum number of volume groups is 8320 for the DS8700.

Figure 5-16 shows the relationships between host attachments and volume groups. Host AIXprod1 has two HBAs, which are grouped together in one host attachment and both are granted access to volume group DB2-1. Most of the volumes in volume group DB2-1 are also in volume group DB2-2, accessed by server AIXprod2. In our example, there is, however, one volume in each group that is not shared. The server in the lower left part has four HBAs and they are divided into two distinct host attachments. One can access some volumes shared with AIXprod1 and AIXprod2. The other HBAs have access to a volume group called “docs.”.

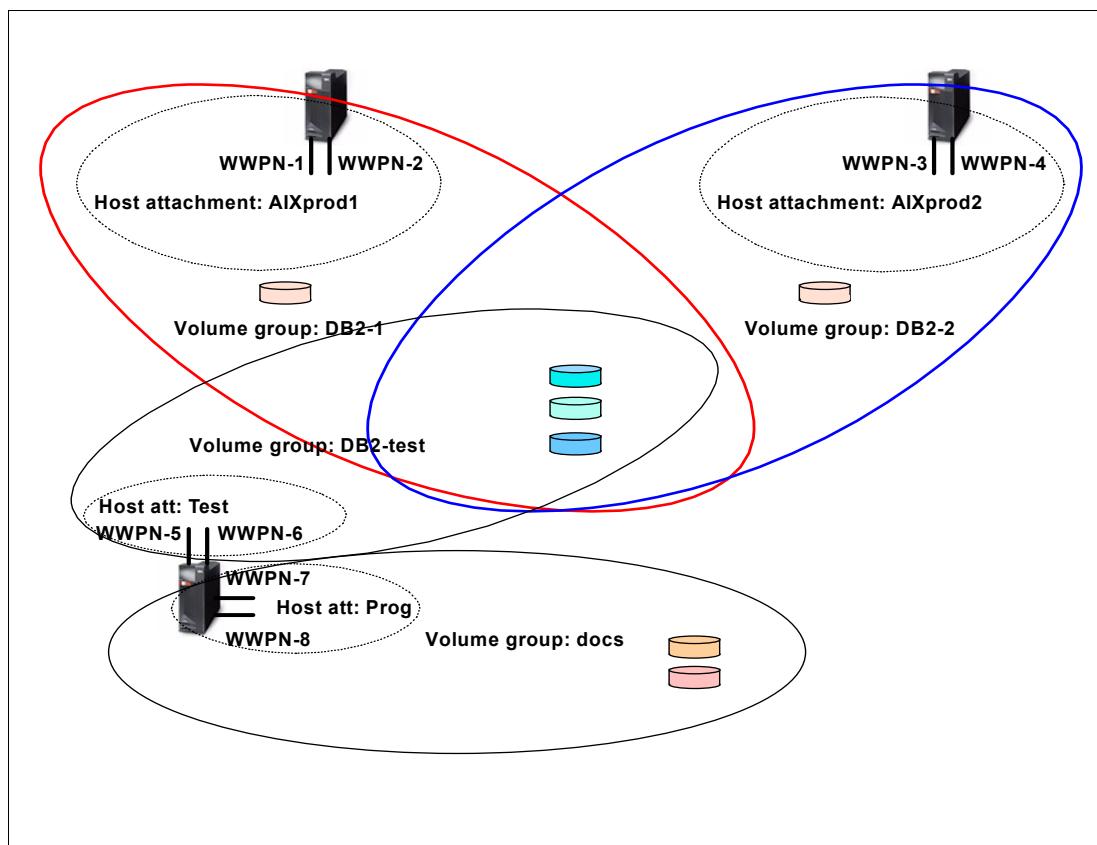


Figure 5-16 Host attachments and volume groups

### 5.2.10 Virtualization hierarchy summary

Going through the virtualization hierarchy, we start with just a bunch of disks that are grouped in array sites. An array site is transformed into an array, with spare disks. The array is further transformed into a rank with extents formatted for FB data or CKD.

Next, the extents from selected ranks are added to an Extent Pool. The combined extents from those ranks in the Extent Pool are used for subsequent allocation to one or more logical volumes. Within the Extent Pool, we can reserve some space for Track Space Efficient volumes by means of creating a repository. Both ESE and TSE volumes require virtual capacity to be available in the Extent Pool.

- ▶ Next, we create logical volumes within the Extent Pools (optionally striping the volumes), assigning them a logical volume number that determines which logical subsystem they would be associated with and which server would manage them. This is the same for both Standard volumes (fully allocated) and Extent Space Efficient volumes. Track Space Efficient volumes for use with FlashCopy SE can only be created within the repository of the Extent Pool.
- ▶ The LUNs are then assigned to one or more volume groups.
- ▶ Finally, the host HBAs are configured into a host attachment that is associated with a volume group.

This virtualization concept provides much more flexibility than in previous products. Logical volumes can dynamically be created, deleted, and resized. They can be grouped logically to simplify storage management. Large LUNs and CKD volumes reduce the total number of volumes, which contributes to the reduction of management effort.

Figure 5-17 summarizes the virtualization hierarchy.

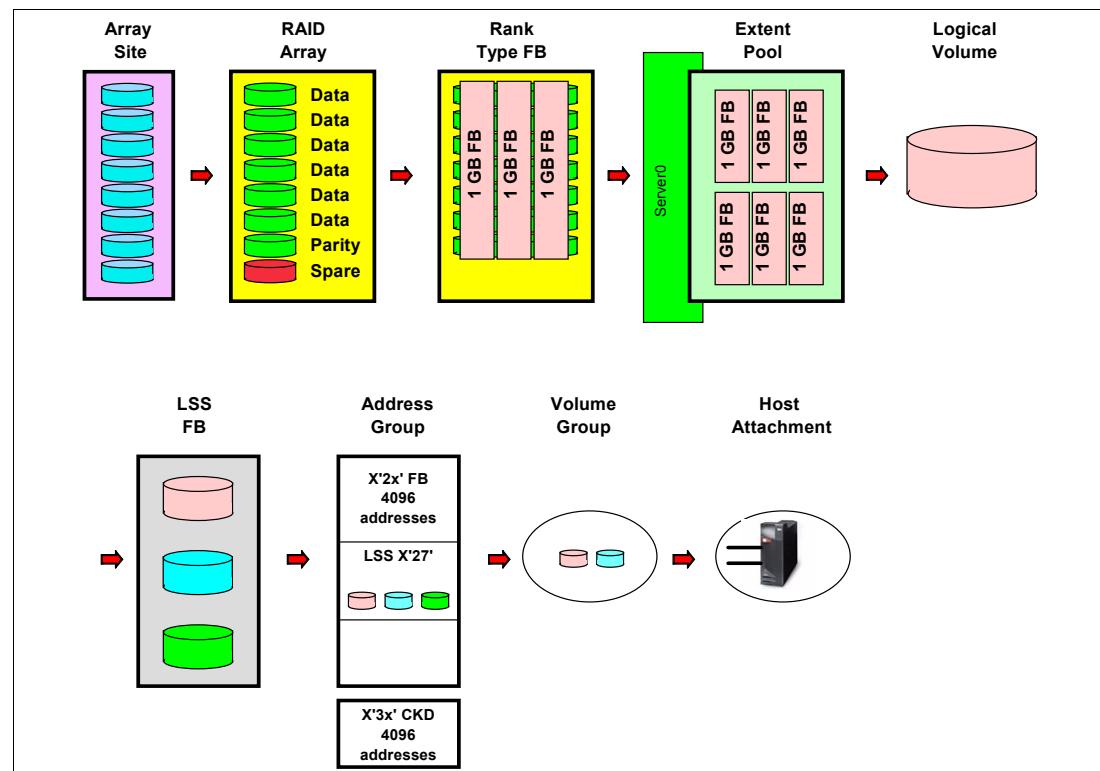


Figure 5-17 Virtualization hierarchy

## 5.3 Benefits of virtualization

The DS8000 physical and logical architecture defines new standards for enterprise storage virtualization. The main benefits of the virtualization layers are:

- ▶ Flexible LSS definition allows maximization and optimization of the number of devices per LSS.
- ▶ No strict relationship between RAID ranks and LSSs.
- ▶ No connection of LSS performance to underlying storage.
- ▶ Number of LSSs can be defined based upon device number requirements:
  - With larger devices, significantly fewer LSSs might be used.
  - Volumes for a particular application can be kept in a single LSS.
  - Smaller LSSs can be defined if required (for applications requiring less storage).
  - Test systems can have their own LSSs with fewer volumes than production systems.
- ▶ Increased number of logical volumes:
  - Up to 65280 (CKD)
  - Up to 65280 (FB)
  - 65280 total for CKD + FB
- ▶ Any mixture of CKD or FB addresses in 4096 address groups.
- ▶ Increased logical volume size:
  - CKD: 223 GB (262,668 cylinders), architected for 219 TB
  - FB: 2 TB, architected for 1 PB
- ▶ Flexible logical volume configuration:
  - Multiple RAID types (RAID 5, RAID 6, and RAID 10)
  - Storage types (CKD and FB) aggregated into Extent Pools
  - Volumes allocated from extents of Extent Pool
  - Storage pool striping
  - Dynamically add and remove volumes
  - Logical Volume Configuration States
  - Dynamic Volume Expansion
  - Extent Space Efficient volumes for Thin Provisioning
  - Track Space Efficient volumes for FlashCopy SE
  - Extended Address Volumes (CKD)
  - Dynamic Extent Pool merging for Easy Tier
  - Dynamic Volume Relocation for Easy Tier
- ▶ Virtualization reduces storage management requirements.





# IBM System Storage DS8700 Copy Services overview

This chapter discusses the Copy Services functions available with the DS8700 series models, which include Remote Mirror and Copy functions, and the Point-in-Time Copy functions, such as FlashCopy, FlashCopy SE, and Remote Pair FlashCopy.

These functions make the DS8700 series a key component for disaster recovery solutions, data migration activities, and for data duplication and backup solutions.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- ▶ Copy Services
- ▶ FlashCopy and IBM FlashCopy SE
- ▶ Remote Pair FlashCopy (Preserve Mirror)
- ▶ Remote Mirror and Copy:
  - Metro Mirror
  - Global Copy
  - Global Mirror
  - Metro/Global Mirror
  - z/OS Global Mirror
  - z/OS Metro/Global Mirror
- ▶ Interfaces for Copy Services
- ▶ Interoperability

The information discussed in this chapter is covered to a greater extent and in more detail in the following IBM Redbooks publications:

- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8000: Copy Services in Open Environments*, SG24-6788
- ▶ *DS8000 Copy Services for IBM System z*, SG24-6787
- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8000 Series: IBM FlashCopy SE*, REDP-4368
- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8000: Remote Pair FlashCopy (Preserve Mirror)*, REDP-4504

## 6.1 Copy Services

Copy Services is a collection of functions that provide disaster recovery, data migration, and data duplication functions. With the Copy Services functions, for example, you can create backup data with little or no disruption to your application, and you can back up your application data to the remote site for disaster recovery.

The Copy Services functions run on the DS8700 storage unit and support open systems and System z environments. These functions are supported also on other DS8000 family models, and on the DS6000™ series, and on the previous generation of storage systems, the IBM TotalStorage® Enterprise Storage Server® (ESS) models.

### DS8700 Copy Services functions

Copy Services in the DS8700 includes the following optional licensed functions:

- ▶ IBM System Storage FlashCopy and IBM FlashCopy SE, which are point-in-time copy functions
- ▶ Remote mirror and copy functions, which include:
  - IBM System Storage Metro Mirror, previously known as synchronous PPRC
  - IBM System Storage Global Copy, previously known as PPRC eXtended Distance
  - IBM System Storage Global Mirror, previously known as asynchronous PPRC
  - IBM System Storage Metro/Global Mirror, a three-site solution to meet the most rigorous business resiliency needs
  - For migration purposes on a RPQ base, consider IBM System Storage Metro/Global Copy. Understand that this combination of Metro Mirror and Global Copy is not suited for disaster recovery solutions; it is intended for migration purposes.
- ▶ Additionally for IBM System z users, the following options are available:
  - z/OS Global Mirror, previously known as eXtended Remote Copy (XRC)
  - z/OS Metro/Global Mirror, a three-site solution that combines z/OS Global Mirror and Metro Mirror

Many design characteristics of the DS8700 and its data copy and mirror capabilities and features contribute to the protection of your data, 24 hours a day and seven days a week.

We discuss these Copy Services functions in the following sections.

### Copy Services management interfaces

You control and manage the DS8700 Copy Services functions by means of the following interfaces:

- ▶ DS Storage Manager, which is a graphical user interface (DS GUI) running under SSPC and with the DS8700 Hardware Management Console (HMC).
- ▶ DS Command-Line Interface (DS CLI), which provides various commands that are executed on the HMC.
- ▶ Tivoli Storage Productivity Center for Replication (TPC-R). The TPC-R server connects to the DS8700.
- ▶ DS Open Application Programming Interface (DS Open API).

System z users can also use the following interfaces:

- ▶ TSO commands
- ▶ ICKDSF utility commands
- ▶ ANTRQST application programming interface (API)
- ▶ DFSMSdss utility

We explain these interfaces in 6.4, “Interfaces for Copy Services” on page 135.

## 6.2 FlashCopy and IBM FlashCopy SE

FlashCopy and FlashCopy SE are designed to provide point-in-time copy capability for logical volumes with minimal interruption to applications, and make it possible to access both the source and target copies immediately.

In this section, we discuss the FlashCopy and FlashCopy SE basic characteristics and options. For a more detailed and extensive discussion about these topics, refer to the following IBM Redbooks and IBM Redpapers™ publications:

- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8000: Copy Services in Open Environments*, SG24-6788
- ▶ *DS8000 Copy Services for IBM System z*, SG24-6787
- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8000 Series: IBM FlashCopy SE*, REDP-4368
- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8000: Remote Pair FlashCopy (Preserve Mirror)*, REDP-4504.

### 6.2.1 Basic concepts

FlashCopy creates a point-in-time copy of the data. When a FlashCopy operation is invoked, it takes only a few seconds to complete the process of establishing a FlashCopy source and target volume pair, and create the necessary control bitmaps. Thereafter, you have access to a point-in-time copy of the source volume as though all the data had been copied. As soon as the pair has been established, you can read and write to both the source and target volumes.

Two variations of FlashCopy are available.

- ▶ Standard FlashCopy uses a normal volume as target volume. This target volume has to have the same size, or larger, as the source volume and that space is allocated in the storage subsystem.
- ▶ FlashCopy Space Efficient (SE) uses Space Efficient volumes (see 5.2.6, “Space Efficient volumes” on page 96) as FlashCopy target volumes. A Space Efficient target volume has a virtual size that is equal to or greater than the source volume size. However, space is not allocated for this volume when the volume is created and the FlashCopy initiated. Only when updates are made to the source volume will any original tracks of the source volume (that will be modified) are copied to the Space Efficient target volume. Space in the repository is allocated for just these tracks or for any write to the target itself.

**Note:** Both FlashCopy and FlashCopy SE can coexist on a DS8700.

After a FlashCopy relationship is established, and if it is a standard FlashCopy, you can use the COPY option to start a background process and copy the tracks from the source to the target volume or use the NOCOPY option to *not* perform a physical copy of the volumes. With FlashCopy SE, you only have the NOCOPY option. See Figure 6-1 for an illustration of these FlashCopy basic concepts.

**Note:** In this chapter, *track* means a piece of data in the DS8700; the DS8700 uses the concept of logical tracks to manage Copy Services functions.

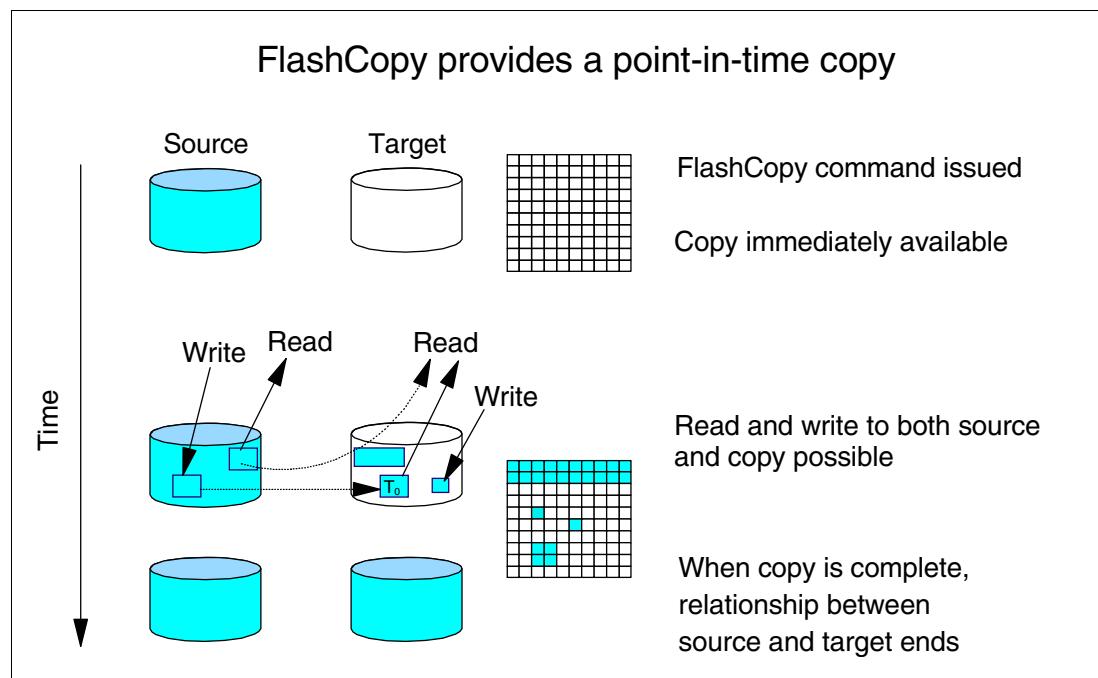


Figure 6-1 FlashCopy concepts

If you access the source or the target volumes during the background copy, standard FlashCopy manages these I/O requests as follows:

- ▶ Read from the source volume  
When a read request goes to the source volume, it is read from the source volume.
- ▶ Read from the target volume  
When a read request goes to the target volume, FlashCopy checks the bitmap and:
  - If the point-in-time data was already copied to the target volume, it is read from the target volume.
  - If the point-in-time data has not been copied yet, it is read from the source volume.
- ▶ Write to the source volume  
When a write request goes to the source volume, first the data is written to the cache and persistent memory (write cache). Then when the update is destaged to the source volume, FlashCopy checks the bitmap and:
  - If the point-in-time data was already copied to the target, then the update is written to the source volume.
  - If the point-in-time data has not been copied yet to the target, it is synchronously copied to the target volume and *then* the update is written to the source volume.

- ▶ Write to the target volume

Whenever data is written to the target volume while the FlashCopy relationship exists, the storage subsystem makes sure that the bitmap is updated. This way, the point-in-time data from the source volume never overwrites updates that were done directly to the target.

The background copy can have a slight impact on your application because the physical copy needs some storage resources, but the impact is minimal because the host I/O occurs prior to the background copy. Also, you can issue a standard FlashCopy with no background copy by using the NOCOPY option.

### No background copy option

If you invoke standard FlashCopy and use the NOCOPY option or FlashCopy SE, the FlashCopy relationship is established without initiating a background copy. Therefore, you can minimize the impact of the background copy. When the DS8700 receives an update to a source track in a FlashCopy relationship, a copy of the point-in-time data is copied to the target volume so that it is available when the data from the target volume is accessed. This option is useful when you do not need to issue FlashCopy in the opposite direction. It is useful to create the previous level at the source volume before the last FlashCopy action.

## 6.2.2 Benefits and use

The point-in-time copy created by FlashCopy is typically used where you need a copy of the production data produced with little or no application downtime, depending on the application. The point-in-time copy created by FlashCopy can be used for online backup, testing new applications, or for creating a database for data mining purposes. The copy looks exactly like the original source volume and is an instantly available, binary copy.

IBM FlashCopy SE is designed for temporary copies. Since the target is smaller than the source, a background copy would not make much sense and is not permitted with IBM FlashCopy SE. FlashCopy SE is optimized for use cases where about 5% of the source volume is updated during the life of the relationship. If more than 20% of the source is expected to change, then standard FlashCopy would likely be a better choice. Durations for typical use cases are expected to generally be less than eight hours unless the source data has little write activity. FlashCopy SE could also be used for copies that will be kept long term if it is known that the FlashCopy relationship will experience few updates to the source and target volumes.

Standard FlashCopy will generally have superior performance over FlashCopy SE. If performance on the source or target volumes is important, standard FlashCopy is strongly recommended.

Some scenarios where IBM FlashCopy SE is a good choice are:

- ▶ To create a temporary copy with IBM FlashCopy SE and then back it up to tape.
- ▶ Temporary point-in-time copies for application development or DR testing.
- ▶ Online backup for different points in time, for example, to protect your data against virus infection.
- ▶ Checkpoints, but only if the source volumes will undergo moderate updates.
- ▶ FlashCopy target volumes volume in a Global Mirror (GM) environment. If the repository space becomes completely full, writes to the GM target volume will be inhibited and the GM session will be suspended. Global Mirror is explained in 6.3.3, “Global Mirror” on page 128.

### 6.2.3 Licensing requirements

FlashCopy is an optional licensed feature of the DS8700. Two variations of FlashCopy are available:

- ▶ Standard FlashCopy, also referred to as the Point-in-Time Copy (PTC) *licensed function*
- ▶ FlashCopy SE *licensed function*

To use FlashCopy, you must have the corresponding licensed function indicator feature in the DS8700, and you must acquire the corresponding DS8700 function authorization with the adequate feature number license in terms of physical capacity. For details about feature and function requirements, see 10.1, “IBM System Storage DS8700 licensed functions” on page 236.

Example 6-1 shows the DSCLI command **1skey**, which is used to verify the existence of FlashCopy and FlashCopy SE functions in a particular DS8700.

*Example 6-1 Show license key and verify FlashCopy and FlashCopy SE availability*

```
dscli> 1skey -1 IBM.2107-75KAB25
Date/Time: 3. Mai 2010 22:53:44 CEST IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.1.193 DS:
IBM.2107-75KAB25
Activation Key                                     Authorization Level (TB) Scope
=====
IBM FlashCopy SE                                57,2          A11
Point in time copy (PTC)                         57,2          A11
Operating environment (OEL)                      57,2          A11
dscli>
```

(PTC) indicates that the general FlashCopy function is available.

**Note:** For a detailed explanation of the features involved and considerations when ordering FlashCopy, refer to the announcement letter “IBM System Storage DS8700 series (M/T 239x) high performance flagship - Function Authorizations”. IBM announcement letters can be found at the following address:

<http://www-01.ibm.com/common/ssi/index.wss>

Use the *DS8700* keyword as a search criteria in the Contents field.

### 6.2.4 FlashCopy options

FlashCopy has many options and expanded functions for data copy. We explain some of the options and capabilities in this section:

- ▶ Incremental FlashCopy (refresh target volume)
- ▶ Data Set FlashCopy
- ▶ Multiple Relationship FlashCopy
- ▶ Consistency Group FlashCopy
- ▶ Establish FlashCopy on existing Metro Mirror or Global Copy primary
- ▶ Remote Pair FlashCopy (Preserve Mirror) on existing Metro Mirror volume pairs
- ▶ Persistent FlashCopy
- ▶ Inband commands over remote mirror link

## Incremental FlashCopy (refresh target volume)

Refresh target volume provides the ability to *refresh* a LUN or volume involved in a FlashCopy relationship. When a subsequent FlashCopy operation is initiated, only the tracks changed on both the source and target need to be copied from the source to the target. The direction of the *refresh* can also be reversed.

In many cases, at most 10 to 20 percent of the entire data is changed in a day. In this situation, if you use this function for daily backup, you can save the time for the physical copy of FlashCopy.

Figure 6-2 explains the basic characteristics of Incremental FlashCopy.

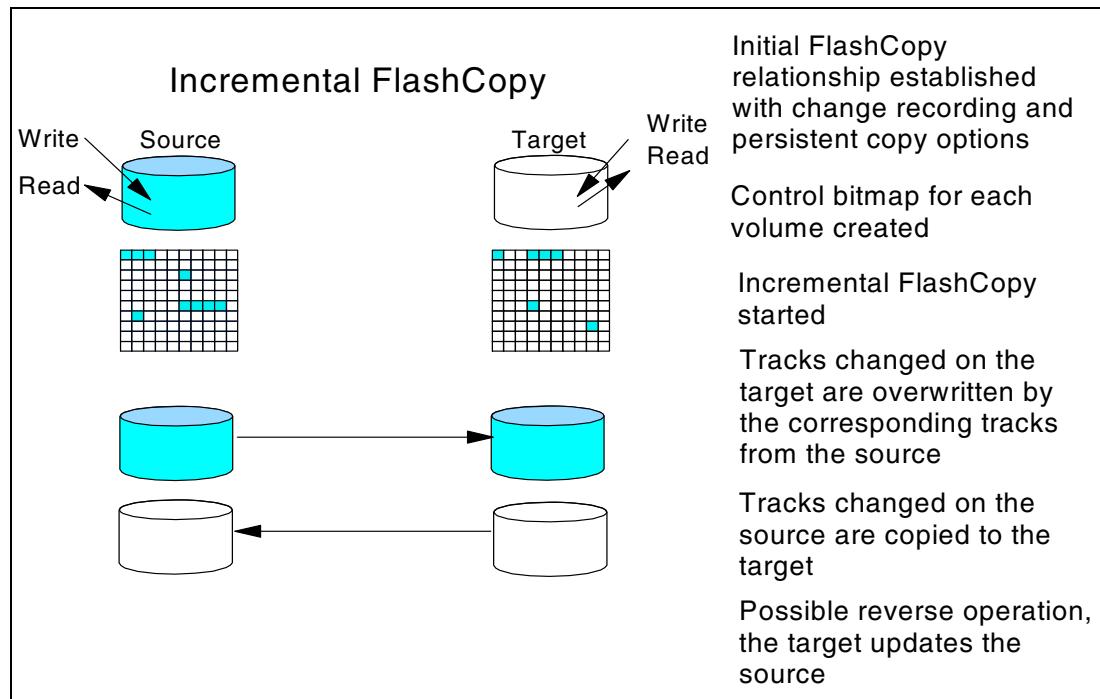


Figure 6-2 Incremental FlashCopy

When using the Incremental FlashCopy option, this is what happens:

1. At first, you issue full FlashCopy with the change recording option. This option is for creating change recording bitmaps in the storage unit. The change recording bitmaps are used for recording the tracks that are changed on the source and target volumes after the last FlashCopy.
2. After creating the change recording bitmaps, Copy Services records the information for the updated tracks to the bitmaps. The FlashCopy relationship persists even if all of the tracks have been copied from the source to the target.
3. The next time you issue Incremental FlashCopy, Copy Services checks the change recording bitmaps and copies only the changed tracks to the target volumes. If some tracks on the target volumes are updated, these tracks are overwritten by the corresponding tracks from the source volume.

You can also issue incremental FlashCopy from the target volume to the source volumes with the reverse restore option. The reverse restore operation cannot be done until the background copy in the original direction has finished.

## Data Set FlashCopy

Data Set FlashCopy allows a FlashCopy of a data set in an IBM System z environment (Figure 6-3).

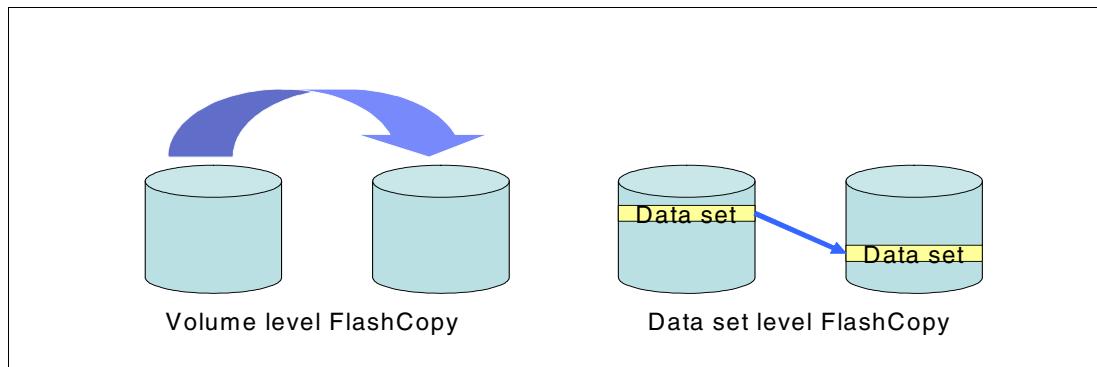


Figure 6-3 Data Set FlashCopy

## Multiple Relationship FlashCopy

Multiple Relationship FlashCopy allows a source to have FlashCopy relationships with multiple targets simultaneously. A source volume or extent can be FlashCopied to up to 12 target volumes or target extents, as illustrated in Figure 6-4.

**Note:** If a FlashCopy source volume has more than one target, that source volume can be involved only in a single incremental FlashCopy relationship.

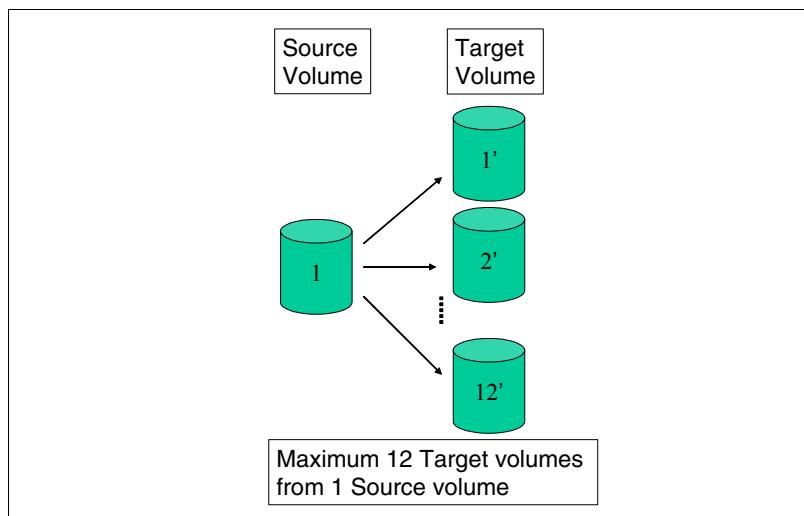


Figure 6-4 Multiple Relationship FlashCopy

## Consistency Group FlashCopy

Consistency Group FlashCopy allows you to freeze and temporarily queue I/O activity to a LUN or volume. Consistency Group FlashCopy helps you to create a consistent point-in-time copy across multiple LUNs or volumes, and even across multiple storage units.

### **What is Consistency Group FlashCopy**

If a consistent point-in-time copy across many logical volumes is required, and you do not want to quiesce host I/O or database operations, then you can use Consistency Group FlashCopy to create a consistent copy across multiple logical volumes in multiple storage units.

In order to create this consistent copy, issue a set of establish FlashCopy commands with the freeze option, which will freeze host I/O to the source volumes. In other words, Consistency Group FlashCopy provides the capability to temporarily queue at the host I/O level, not at the application level, subsequent write operations to the source volumes that are part of the Consistency Group. During the temporary queuing, Establish FlashCopy is completed. The temporary queuing continues until this condition is reset by the Consistency Group Created command or the timeout value expires.

After all of the Establish FlashCopy requests have completed, a set of Consistency Group Created commands must be issued using the same set of DS network interface servers. The Consistency Group Created commands are directed to each logical subsystem (LSS) involved in the Consistency Group. The Consistency Group Created command allows the write operations to resume to the source volumes.

The concept of FlashCopy Consistency Group is illustrated in Figure 6-5.

For a more detailed discussion about the concept of *data consistency* and how to manage the Consistency Group operation, you can refer also to the following IBM Redbooks publications:

- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8000: Copy Services in Open Environments*, SG24-6788 and
- ▶ *DS8000 Copy Services for IBM System z*, SG24-6787.

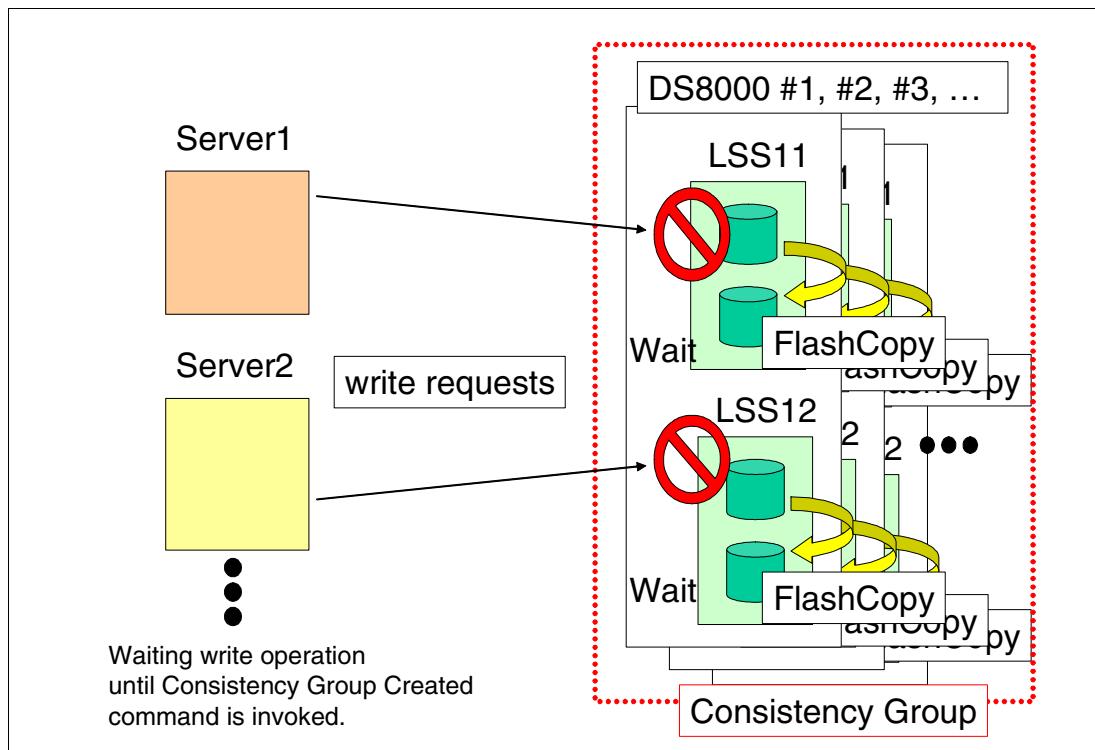


Figure 6-5 Consistency Group FlashCopy

**Important:** Consistency Group FlashCopy can create host-based consistent copies; they are not application-based consistent copies. The copies have *power-fail* or *crash* level consistency. This means that if you suddenly power off your server without stopping your applications and without destaging the data in the file cache, the data in the file cache can be lost and you might need recovery procedures to restart your applications. To start your system with Consistency Group FlashCopy target volumes, you might need the same operations as the crash recovery.

For example, if the Consistency Group source volumes are used with a journaled file system such as AIX JFS and the source LUNs are not unmounted before running FlashCopy, it is likely that `fsck` will have to be run on the target volumes.

### Establish FlashCopy on existing Metro Mirror or Global Copy primary

This option allows you to establish a FlashCopy relationship where the target is also a Metro Mirror or Global Copy primary volume, as shown in Figure 6-6. This enables you to create full or incremental point-in-time copies at a local site and then use remote mirroring to copy the data to the remote site.

**Note:** You cannot FlashCopy from a source to a target if the target is also a Global Mirror primary volume.

Metro Mirror and Global Copy are explained in 6.3.1, “Metro Mirror” on page 126 and in 6.3.2, “Global Copy” on page 127.

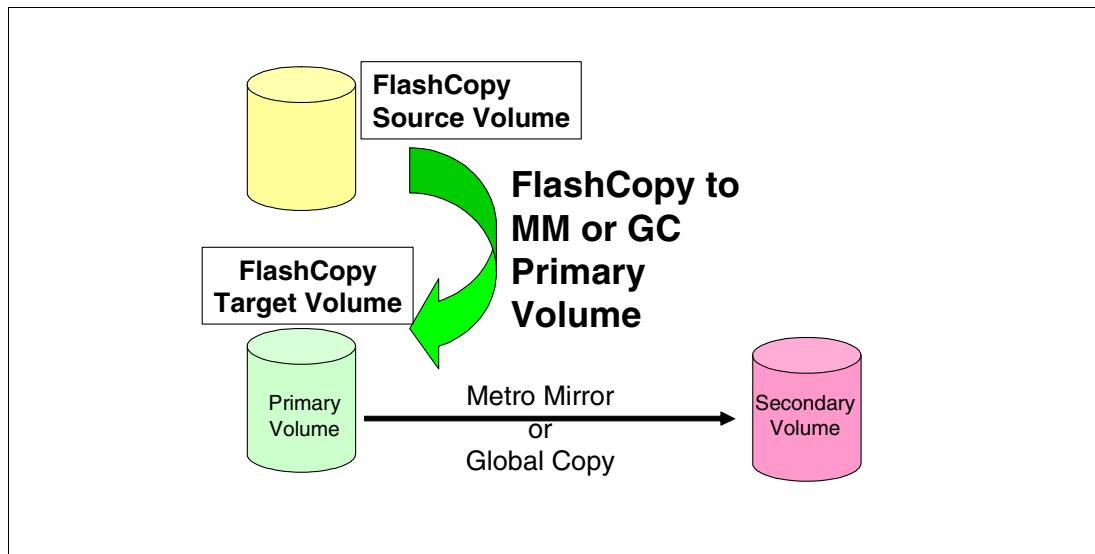


Figure 6-6 Establish FlashCopy on an existing Metro Mirror or Global Copy primary

It took some time to initialize all the bitmaps that were needed for the scenario described. In DS8700 LIC Release 3, the time to initialize the bitmaps has been greatly improved.

**Note:** When using FlashCopy on a Metro Mirror primary volume, the volume, which is in PRIMARY FULL DULPEX mode, will switch to PRIMARY PENDING mode during the FlashCopy background copy operation. After FlashCopy is finished, the primary volume will eventually go back to PRIMARY FULL DUPLEX mode. During the PRIMARY PENDING period, the configuration is exposed to disaster recovery and there is no disaster recovery protection until FULL DUPLEX mode is reached again. The solution to this issue is Remote Pair FlashCopy.

## Remote Pair FlashCopy

Remote Pair FlashCopy or Preserve Mirror is available for the DS8700 with Licensed Machine Code (LMC) level 6.5.1.xx. Note that Remote Pair FlashCopy is also available with the DS8100 and DS8300, but only on specific firmware (release 4.25).

Remote Pair FlashCopy or Preserve Mirror overcomes the shortcomings of the previous solution to FlashCopy onto a Metro Mirror source volume. Figure 6-7 illustrates this behavior.

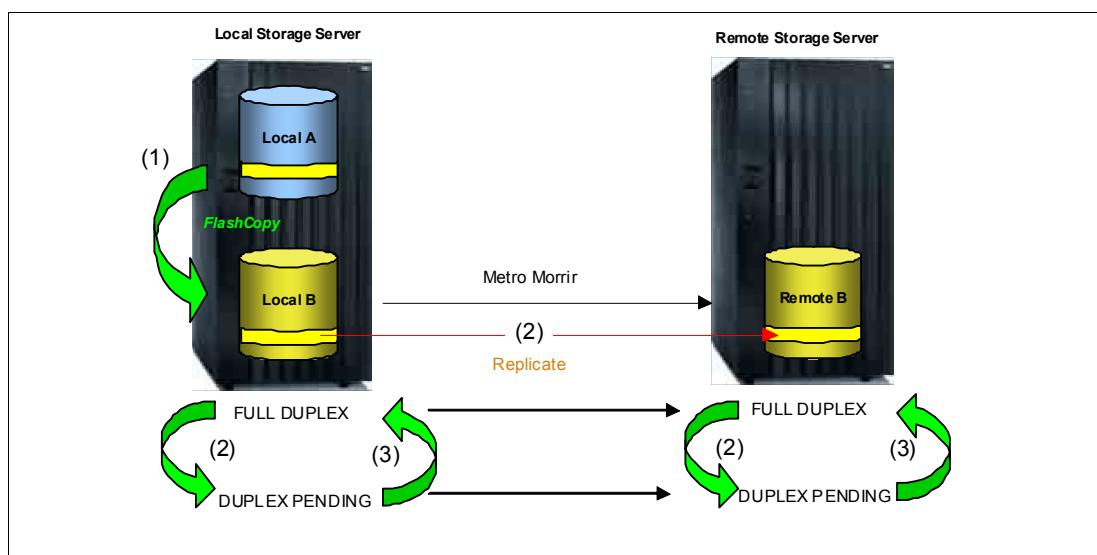


Figure 6-7 The FlashCopy target is also an MM or GC source

Where:

1. FlashCopy is issued at Local A volume, which starts a FlashCopy relationship between the Local A and the Local B volumes.
2. As soon as the FlashCopy operation starts and replicates the data from Local A to Local B volume, the Metro Mirror volume pair status changes from FULL DUPLEX to DUPLEX PENDING. During the DUPLEX PENDING window, the Remote Volume B does not provide a defined state regarding its data status and is unusable from a recovery viewpoint.
3. Once FlashCopy finishes replicating the data from Local A volume to Local B volume, the Metro Mirror volume pair changes its status from DUPLEX PENDING back to FULL DUPLEX. The remote Volume B provides a recoverable state and can be used in case of an planned or unplanned outage at the local site.

As the name implies, Preserve Mirror does preserve the existing Metro Mirror status of FULL DUPLEX. Figure 6-8 shows this approach, which guarantees that there is no discontinuity of the disaster recovery readiness.

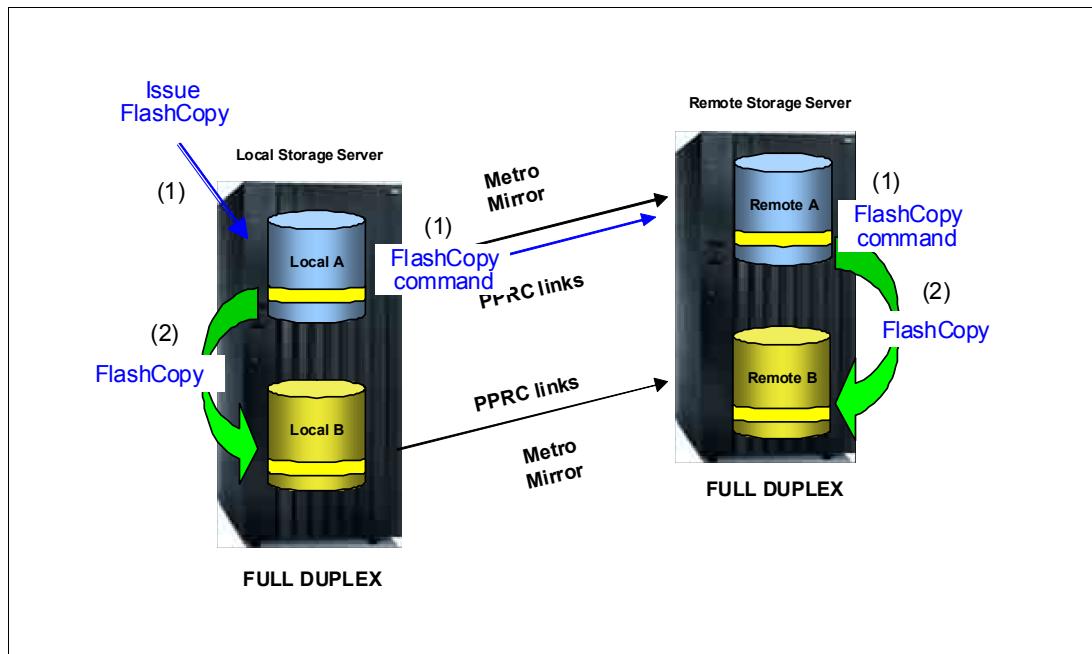


Figure 6-8 Remote Pair FlashCopy preserves the Metro Mirror FULL DUPLEX state

Where:

1. The FlashCopy command is issued by an application or by the customer to the Local A volume with Local B volume as the FlashCopy target. The DS8000 firmware propagates the FlashCopy command through the PPRC links from the Local Storage Server to the Remote Storage Server. This inband propagation of a Copy Services command is only possible for FlashCopy commands.
2. Independently of each other, the Local Storage Server and the Remote Storage Server then executes the FlashCopy operation. The Local Storage Server coordinates the activities at the end and takes action when the FlashCopies do not succeed at both Storage Servers. Figure 6-8 shows an example where Remote Pair FlashCopy might have the most relevance: A data set level FlashCopy in a Metro Mirror CKD volumes environment where all participating volumes are replicated. Usually the user has no influence where the newly allocated FlashCopy target data set is going to be placed. The key item of this configuration is that disaster recovery protection is not exposed at any time and FlashCopy operations can be freely taken within the disk storage configuration.

For a more detailed description about Remote Pair FlashCopy, see *IBM System Storage DS8000: Remote Pair FlashCopy (Preserve Mirror)*, REDP-4504.

### Persistent FlashCopy

Persistent FlashCopy allows the FlashCopy relationship to remain even after the copy operation completes. You must explicitly delete the relationship.

### Inband commands over remote mirror link

In a remote mirror environment, commands to manage FlashCopy at the remote site can be issued from the local or intermediate site and transmitted over the remote mirror Fibre Channel links. This eliminates the need for a network connection to the remote site solely for the management of FlashCopy.

This approach is also utilized by Remote Pair FlashCopy, as shown in Figure 6-8 on page 124.

**Note:** This function is available by using the DS CLI, TSO, and ICKDSF commands, but not by using the DS Storage Manager GUI.

## 6.2.5 FlashCopy SE options

Most options available for standard FlashCopy (see 6.2.4, “FlashCopy options” on page 118) are also available for FlashCopy SE. Only the options that differ are discussed in this section.

### Incremental FlashCopy

Because Incremental FlashCopy implies an initial full volume copy and a full volume copy is not possible in an IBM FlashCopy SE relationship, Incremental FlashCopy is not possible with IBM FlashCopy SE.

### Data Set FlashCopy

FlashCopy SE relationships are limited to full volume relationships. As a result, data set level FlashCopy is not supported within FlashCopy SE.

### Multiple Relationship FlashCopy SE

Standard FlashCopy supports up to 12 relationships and one of these relationships can be incremental. There is always some impact when doing a FlashCopy or any kind of copy within a storage subsystem. A FlashCopy onto a Space Efficient volume has more impact because additional tables have to be maintained. All IBM FlashCopy SE relations are *nocopy* relations; incremental FlashCopy is not possible. Therefore, the practical number of IBM FlashCopy SE relationships from one source volume will be lower than 12. You should test in your own environment how many concurrent IBM FlashCopy SE relationships are acceptable from a performance standpoint.

### Consistency Group FlashCopy

With IBM FlashCopy SE, consistency groups can be formed in the same way as with standard FlashCopy, as discussed in “Consistency Group FlashCopy” on page 120. Within a consistency group, there can be a mix of standard FlashCopy and IBM FlashCopy SE relationships.

## 6.3 Remote Mirror and Copy

The Remote Mirror and Copy functions of the DS8700 are a set of flexible data mirroring solutions that allow replication between volumes on two or more disk storage systems. These functions are used to implement remote data backup and disaster recovery solutions.

The Remote Mirror and Copy functions are optional licensed functions of the DS8700 that include:

- ▶ Metro Mirror
- ▶ Global Copy
- ▶ Global Mirror
- ▶ Metro/Global Mirror

In addition, System z users can use the DS8700 for:

- ▶ z/OS Global Mirror
- ▶ z/OS Metro/Global Mirror

In the following sections, we discuss these Remote Mirror and Copy functions.

For a more detailed and extensive discussion about these topics, refer to the following IBM Redbooks publications:

- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8000: Copy Services in Open Environments*, SG24-6788
- ▶ *DS8000 Copy Services for IBM System z*, SG24-6787

### Licensing requirements

To use any of these Remote Mirror and Copy optional licensed functions, you must have the corresponding licensed function indicator feature in the DS8700, and you must acquire the corresponding DS8700 function authorization with the adequate feature number license in terms of physical capacity. For details about feature and function requirements, see 10.1, “IBM System Storage DS8700 licensed functions” on page 236.

Also, consider that some of the remote mirror solutions, such as Global Mirror, Metro/Global Mirror, or z/OS Metro/Global Mirror, integrate more than one licensed function. In this case, you need to have all of the required licensed functions.

**Note:** For a detailed explanation of the features involved and considerations when ordering Copy Services licensed functions, refer to the announcement letter “IBM System Storage DS8700 series (M/T 239x) high performance flagship - Function Authorizations”.

IBM announcement letters can be found at:

<http://www-01.ibm.com/common/ssi/index.wss>

Use the *DS8700* keyword as a search criteria in the Contents field.

#### 6.3.1 Metro Mirror

Metro Mirror, previously known as Synchronous Peer-to-Peer Remote Copy (PPRC), provides real-time mirroring of logical volumes between two DS8700s or any other combination of DS8100, DS8300, DS6800, and ESS800 that can be located up to 300 km from each other. It is a synchronous copy solution where write operations are completed on both copies, at the local and remote sites, before they are considered complete.

Figure 6-9 illustrates the basic operational characteristics of Metro Mirror.

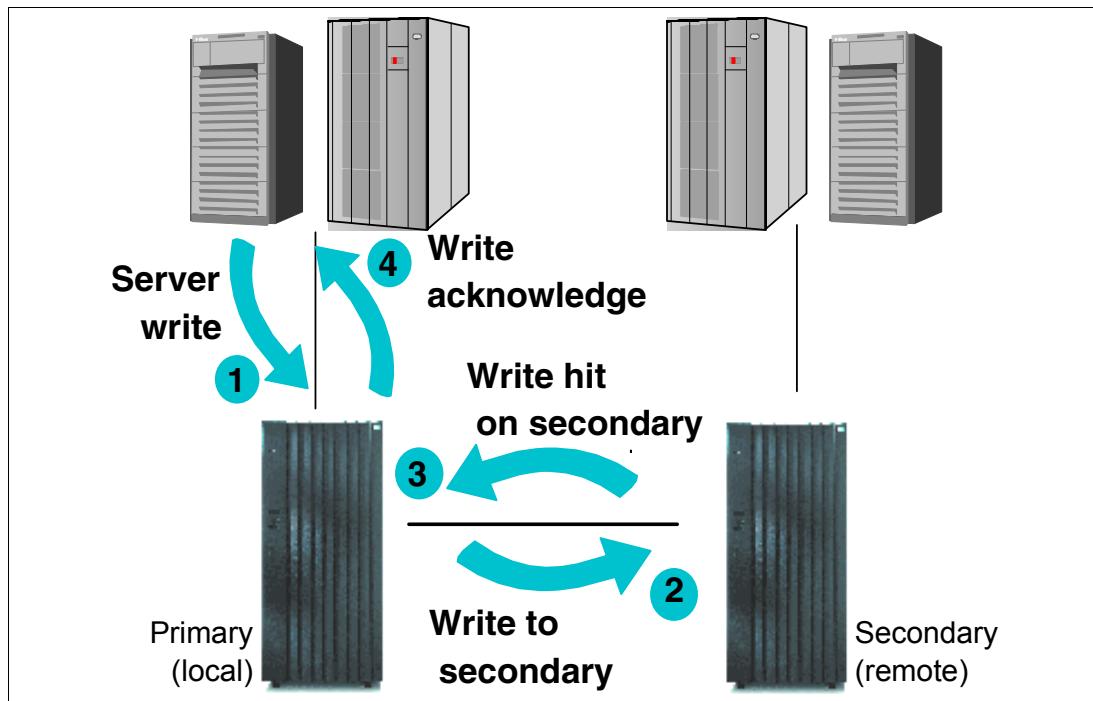


Figure 6-9 Metro Mirror basic operation

### 6.3.2 Global Copy

Global Copy, previously known as Peer-to-Peer Remote Copy eXtended Distance (PPRC-XD), copies data non-synchronously and over longer distances than is possible with Metro Mirror. When operating in Global Copy mode, the source volume sends a periodic, incremental copy of updated tracks to the target volume, instead of sending a constant stream of updates. This causes less impact to application writes for source volumes and less demand for bandwidth resources, while allowing a more flexible use of the available bandwidth.

Global Copy does not keep the sequence of write operations. Therefore, the copy is a fuzzy copy, but you can make a consistent copy through synchronization called a go-to-sync operation. After the synchronization, you can issue FlashCopy at the secondary site to make the backup copy with data consistency. After the establishment of the FlashCopy, you can change the mode back to the non-synchronous mode, as shown in Figure 6-10.

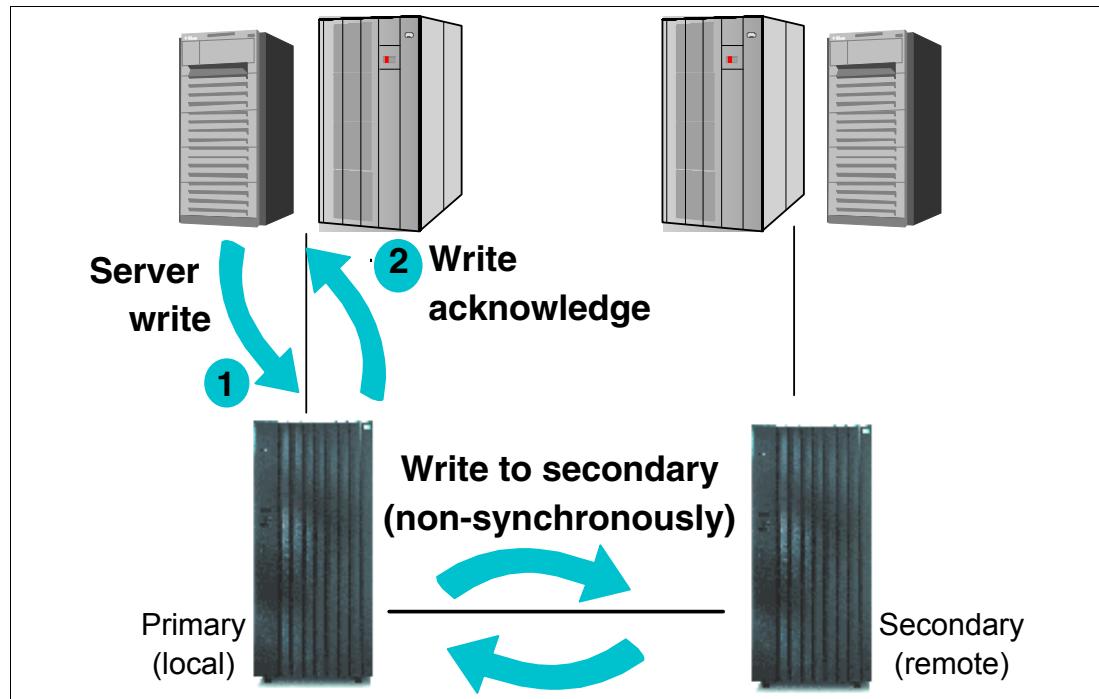


Figure 6-10 Global Copy basic operation

An alternative method to acquire a consistent copy is to pause the applications until all changed data at the local site has drained to the remote site. When all consistent data is replicated to the remote site, suspend Global Copy, restart the applications, issue a FlashCopy at the remote site, and then resume the non-synchronous (Global Copy) operation.

### 6.3.3 Global Mirror

Global Mirror, previously known as Asynchronous PPRC, is a two-site, long distance, asynchronous, remote copy technology for both System z and Open Systems data. This solution integrates the Global Copy and FlashCopy technologies. With Global Mirror, the data that the host writes to the storage unit at the local site is asynchronously mirrored to the storage unit at the remote site. With special management steps, under control of the local master storage unit, a consistent copy of the data is automatically maintained on the storage unit at the remote site.

Global Mirror operations provide the following benefits:

- ▶ Support for virtually unlimited distances between the local and remote sites, with the distance typically limited only by the capabilities of the network and the channel extension technology. This unlimited distance enables you to choose your remote site location based on business needs and enables site separation to add protection from localized disasters.
- ▶ A consistent and restartable copy of the data at the remote site, created with minimal impact to applications at the local site.

- ▶ Data currency where, for many environments, the remote site lags behind the local site typically 3 to 5 seconds, minimizing the amount of data exposure in the event of an unplanned outage. The actual lag in data currency that you experience will depend upon a number of factors, including specific workload characteristics and bandwidth between the local and remote sites.
- ▶ Dynamic selection of the desired recovery point objective (RPO), based upon business requirements and optimization of available bandwidth.
- ▶ Session support where data consistency at the remote site is internally managed across up to eight storage units that are located across the local and remote sites. The number of managed storage units can be greater. Submit an RPQ when the number of managed primary DS8000 machines within a single Global Mirror session exceeds eight.
- ▶ Multiple Global Mirror sessions: This allows creation of separate global mirror sessions so that separate applications can fail over to remote sites at different times. The support for this feature is available via RPQ only.
- ▶ Efficient synchronization of the local and remote sites with support for failover and fallback operations, helping to reduce the time that is required to switch back to the local site after a planned or unplanned outage.

Figure 6-11 illustrates the basic operation characteristics of Global Mirror.

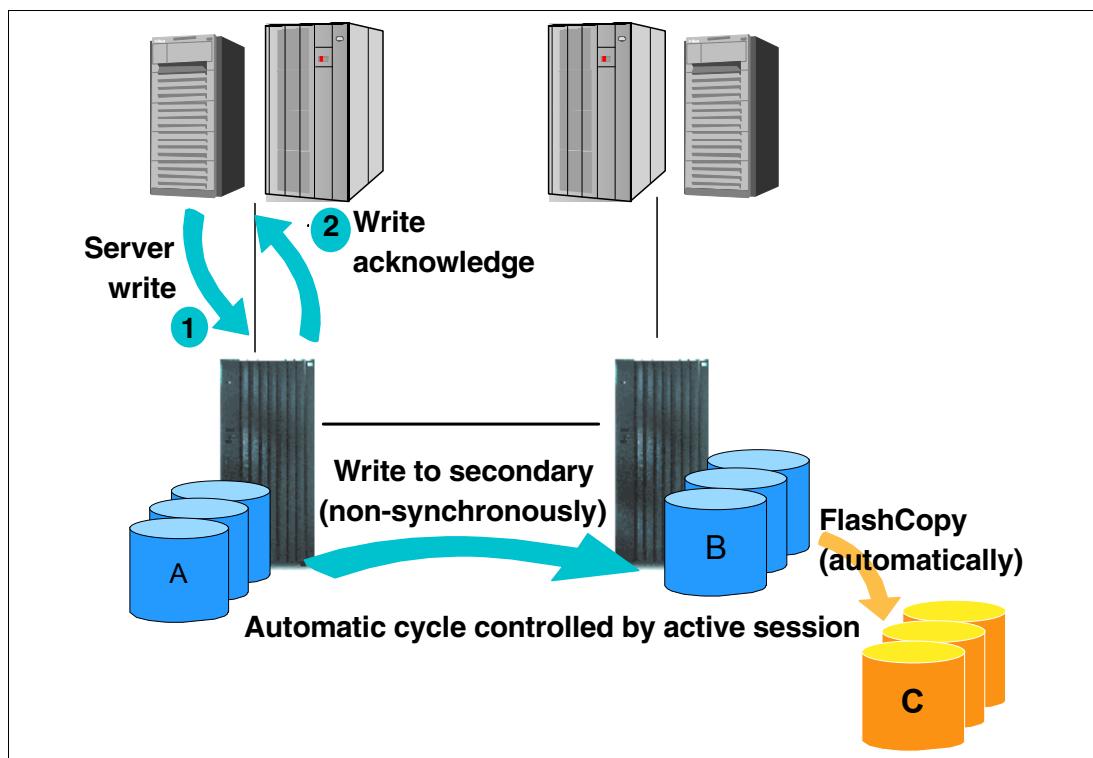


Figure 6-11 Global Mirror basic operation

## How Global Mirror works

Figure 6-12 illustrates the basics of how Global Mirror works: everything in an automatic fashion under the control of the DS8700 microcode and the Global Mirror session.

You can see in Figure 6-12 that the A volumes at the local site are the production volumes and are used as Global Copy primary volumes. The data from the A volumes is replicated to the B volumes, which are the Global Copy secondary volumes. At a certain point in time, a Consistency Group is created using all of the A volumes, even if they are located in different storage units. This has no application impact, because the creation of the Consistency Group is quick (on the order of a few milliseconds).

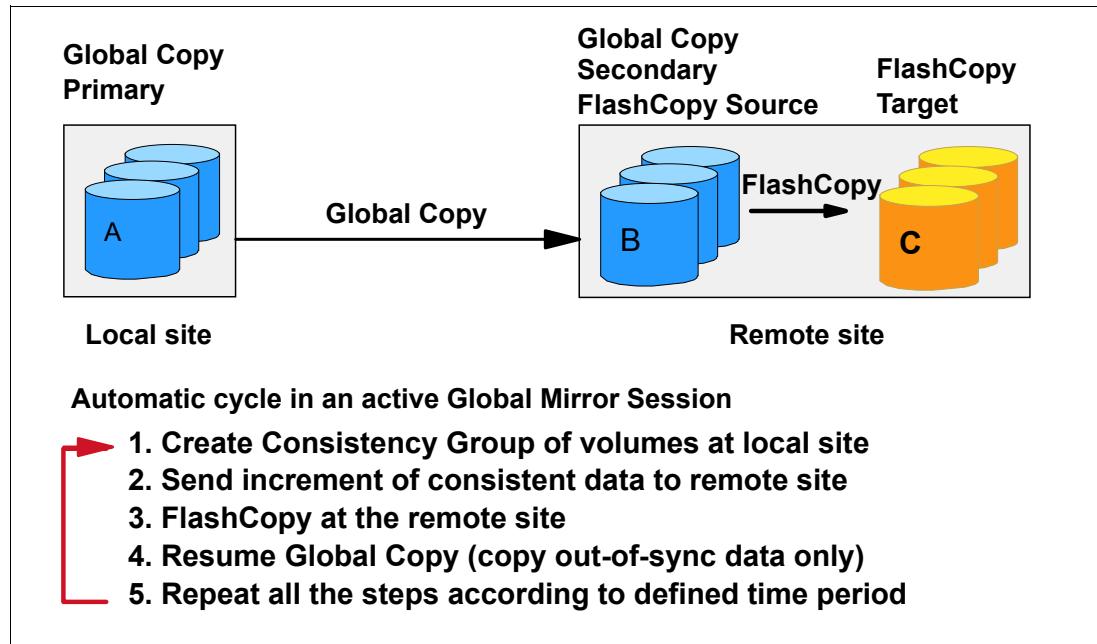


Figure 6-12 How Global Mirror works

Once the Consistency Group is created, the application writes can continue updating the A volumes. The increment of the consistent data is sent to the B volumes using the existing Global Copy relationships. Once the data reaches the B volumes, it is FlashCopied to the C volumes.

Once this step is complete, a consistent set of volumes have been created at the secondary site. For this brief moment only, the B volumes and the C volumes are equal in their content. Because the B volumes, except at the moment of doing the FlashCopy, usually contains a *fuzzy* copy of the data, the C volumes are used to hold the last consistent point-in-time copy of the data while the B volumes are being updated by Global Copy. So you need the B and the C volume to build consistent data.

The data at the remote site is current within 3 to 5 seconds, but this recovery point depends on the workload and bandwidth available to the remote site.

With its efficient and autonomic implementation, Global Mirror is a solution for disaster recovery implementations where a consistent copy of the data needs to be kept at all times at a remote location that can be separated by a long distance from the production site. For more information about the functionality of Copy Services, refer to following sources:

- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8000: Copy Services in Open Environments*, SG24-6788
- ▶ *DS8000 Copy Services for IBM System z*, SG24-6787

#### 6.3.4 Metro/Global Mirror

Metro/Global Mirror is a three-site, multi-purpose, replication solution for both System z and Open Systems data. Local site (site A) to intermediate site (site B) provides high availability replication using Metro Mirror, and intermediate site (site B) to remote site (site C) supports long distance disaster recovery replication with Global Mirror. See Figure 6-13.

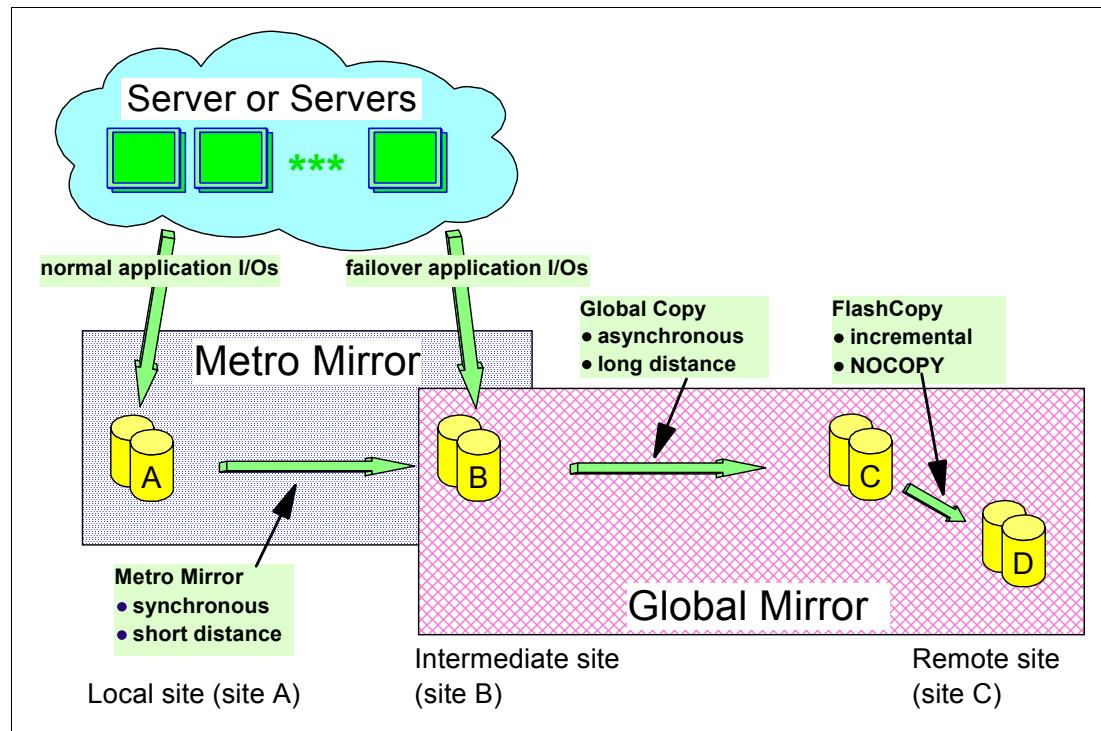


Figure 6-13 Metro/Global Mirror elements

Both Metro Mirror and Global Mirror are well established replication solutions. Metro/Global Mirror combines Metro Mirror and Global Mirror to incorporate the best features of the two solutions:

- ▶ Metro Mirror:
  - Synchronous operation supports zero data loss.
  - The opportunity to locate the intermediate site disk subsystems close to the local site allows use of intermediate site disk subsystems in a high availability configuration.

**Note:** Metro Mirror can be used for distances of up to 300 km, but when used in a Metro/Global Mirror implementation, a shorter distance might be more appropriate in support of the high availability functionality.

- ▶ Global Mirror:
  - Asynchronous operation supports long distance replication for disaster recovery.
  - The Global Mirror methodology allows for no impact to applications at the local site.
  - This solution provides a recoverable, restartable, and consistent image at the remote site with an RPO typically in the 3 to 5 second range.

## Metro/Global Mirror processes

Figure 6-14 gives an overview of the Metro/Global Mirror process. The Metro/Global Mirror process is better understood if the components' processes are understood. One important consideration is that the intermediate site volumes (site B volumes) are special, because they act as both Global Mirror (GM) *source* and Metro Mirror (MM) *target* volumes at the same time.

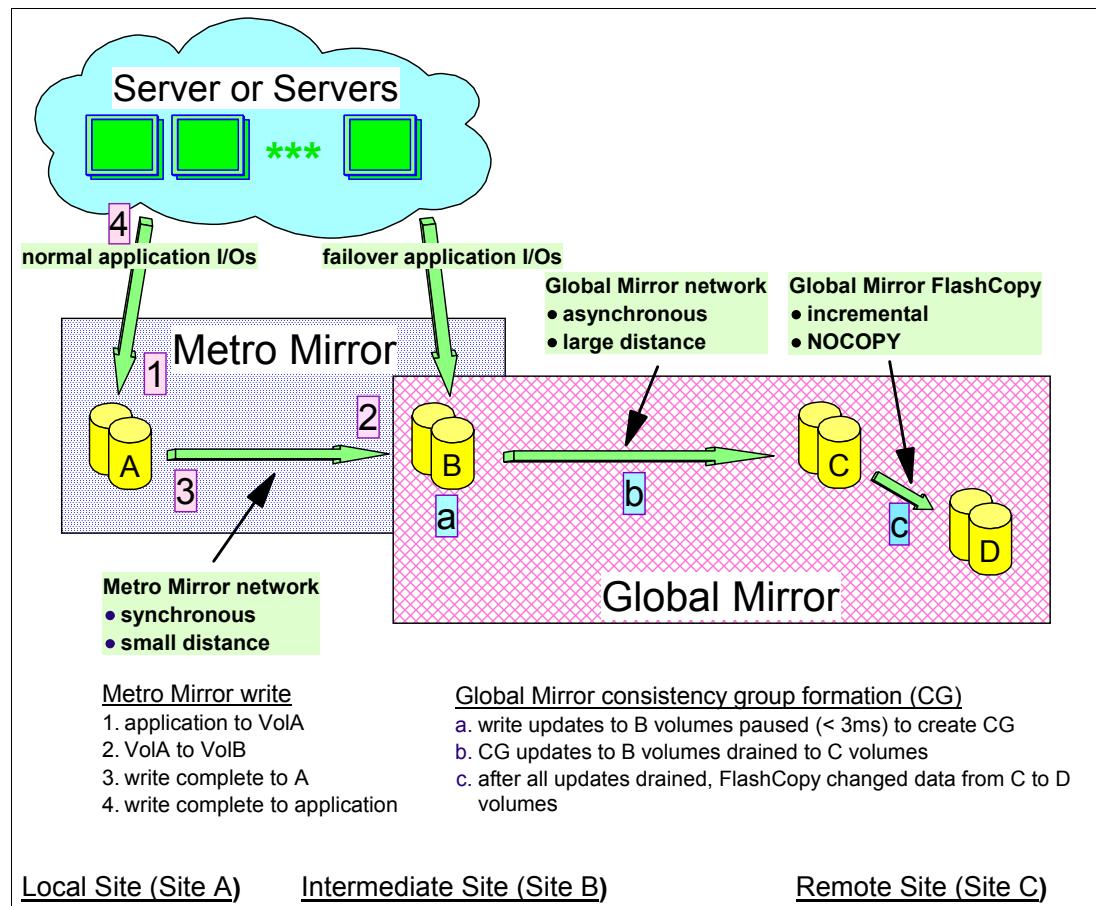


Figure 6-14 Metro/Global Mirror overview diagram

The local site (site A) to intermediate site (site B) component is identical to Metro Mirror. Application writes are synchronously copied to the intermediate site before write complete is signaled to the application. All writes to the local site volumes in the mirror are treated in exactly the same way.

The intermediate site (site B) to remote site (site C) component is identical to Global Mirror, except that:

- ▶ The writes to intermediate site volumes are Metro Mirror secondary writes and not application primary writes.
- ▶ The intermediate site volumes are both GC *source* and MM *target* at the same time.

The intermediate site disk subsystems are collectively paused by the Global Mirror Master disk subsystem to create the Consistency Group (CG) set of updates. This *pause* would normally take 3 ms, every 3 to 5 seconds. After the CG set is formed, the Metro Mirror writes from local site (site A) volumes to intermediate site (site B) volumes are allowed to continue. Also, the CG updates continue to drain to the remote site (site C) volumes. The intermediate site to remote site drain should take only a few seconds to complete.

Once all updates are drained to the remote site, all changes since the last FlashCopy from the C volumes to the D volumes are logically (NOCOPY) FlashCopied to the D volumes. After the logical FlashCopy is complete, the intermediate site to remote site Global Copy data transfer is resumed until the next formation of a Global Mirror CG. The process described above is repeated every 3 to 5 seconds if the interval for Consistency Group formation is set to zero. Otherwise, it will be repeated at the specified interval plus 3 to 5 seconds.

The Global Mirror processes are discussed in greater detail in *IBM System Storage DS8000: Copy Services in Open Environments*, SG24-6788 and *DS8000 Copy Services for IBM System z*, SG24-6787.

### 6.3.5 z/OS Global Mirror

z/OS Global Mirror, previously known as eXtended Remote Copy (XRC), is a copy function available for the z/OS and OS/390® operating systems. It involves a System Data Mover (SDM) that is found only in OS/390 and z/OS. z/OS Global Mirror maintains a consistent copy of the data asynchronously at a remote location, and can be implemented over unlimited distances. It is a combined hardware and software solution that offers data integrity and data availability and can be used as part of business continuance solutions, for workload movement, and for data migration. z/OS Global Mirror function is an optional licensed function of the DS8700.

Figure 6-15 illustrates the basic operational characteristics of z/OS Global Mirror.

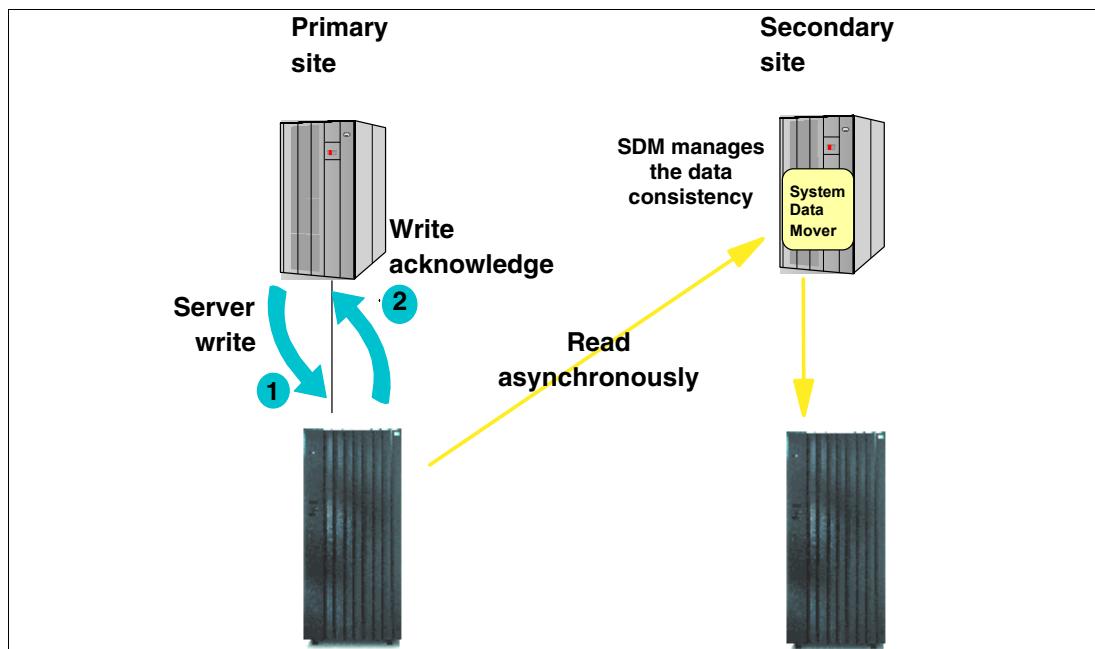


Figure 6-15 z/OS Global Mirror basic operations

### 6.3.6 z/OS Metro/Global Mirror

This mirroring capability implements z/OS Global Mirror to mirror primary site data to a location that is a long distance away and also uses Metro Mirror to mirror primary site data to a location within the metropolitan area. This enables a z/OS three-site high availability and disaster recovery solution for even greater protection against unplanned outages.

Figure 6-16 illustrates the basic operational characteristics of a z/OS Metro/Global Mirror implementation.

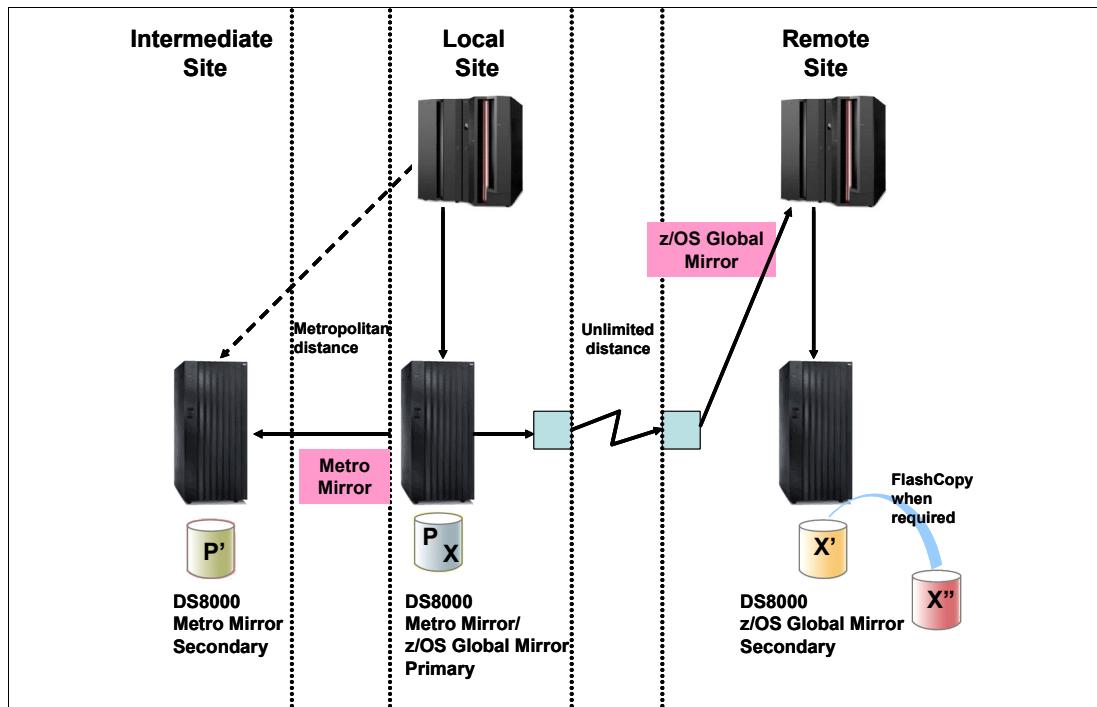


Figure 6-16 z/OS Metro/Global Mirror

### 6.3.7 Summary of the Copy Services function characteristics

In this section, we summarize the use of and considerations for the set of Remote Mirror and Copy functions available with the DS8700 series.

#### Metro Mirror

Metro Mirror is a function for synchronous data copy at a distance. The following considerations apply:

- ▶ There is no data loss, and it allows for rapid recovery for distances up to 300 km.
- ▶ There will be a slight performance impact for write operations.

#### Global Copy

Global Copy is a function for non-synchronous data copy at long distances, which is only limited by the network implementation. The following considerations apply:

- ▶ It can copy your data at nearly an unlimited distance, making it suitable for data migration and daily backup to a remote distant site.
- ▶ The copy is normally *fuzzy* but can be made consistent through a synchronization procedure.

To create a consistent copy for Global Copy, you need a go-to-sync operation, that is, synchronize the secondary volumes to the primary volumes. During the go-to-sync operation, the mode of remote copy changes from a non-synchronous copy to a synchronous copy. Therefore, the go-to-sync operation might cause a performance impact to your application system. If the data is heavily updated and the network bandwidth for remote copy is limited, the time for the go-to-sync operation becomes longer.

An alternative method to acquire a consistent copy is to pause the applications until all changed data at the local site has drained to the remote site. When all consistent data is at the remote site, suspend Global Copy, restart the applications, issue the FlashCopy, and then return to the non-synchronous (Global Copy) operation.

### Global Mirror

Global Mirror is an asynchronous copy technique; you can create a consistent copy in the secondary site with an adaptable Recovery Point Objective (RPO). RPO specifies how much data you can afford to recreate if the system needs to be recovered. The following considerations apply:

- ▶ Global Mirror can copy to nearly an unlimited distance.
- ▶ It is scalable across the storage units.
- ▶ It can realize a low RPO if there is enough link bandwidth; when the link bandwidth capability is exceeded with a heavy workload, the RPO might grow.
- ▶ Global Mirror causes only a slight impact to your application system.

### **z/OS Global Mirror**

z/OS Global Mirror is an asynchronous copy technique controlled by z/OS host software called *System Data Mover*. The following considerations apply:

- ▶ It can copy to nearly unlimited distances.
- ▶ It is highly scalable.
- ▶ It has low RPO; the RPO might grow if the bandwidth capability is exceeded, or host performance might be impacted.
- ▶ Additional host server hardware and software is required.

## 6.4 Interfaces for Copy Services

There are several interfaces for invoking and managing the Copy Services in the DS8700. We introduce them in this section.

Copy Services functions can be initiated using the following interfaces:

- ▶ DS Storage Manager web-based Graphical User Interface (DS GUI)
- ▶ DS Command-Line Interface (DS CLI)
- ▶ Tivoli Storage Productivity Center for Replication (TPC-R)
- ▶ DS open application programming interface (DS Open API)
- ▶ System z based I/O interfaces: TSO commands, ICKDSF commands, ANTRQST macro, and DFSMSdss utility

**Note:** All of the Copy Services options are not always available in each management interface. Refer to the following IBM Redbooks publications for specific considerations:

- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8000: Copy Services in Open Environments*, SG24-6788
- ▶ *DS8000 Copy Services for IBM System z*, SG24-6787

#### 6.4.1 Hardware Management Console

DS CLI and DS Open API commands are issued using the Ethernet network, and these commands are invoked by the Hardware Management Console (HMC). DS Storage Manager commands are issued using the Ethernet via the SSPC to the HMC. When the HMC has the command requests from these interfaces, including those for Copy Services, HMC communicates with each server in the storage units through the Ethernet network. Therefore, the HMC is a key component to configure and manage the DS8700 Copy Services functions.

Starting with Release 4 Licensed Machine Code (LMC) level 5.4.xx.xx or later, the HMC offers the possibility to be configured for IPv6, IPv4, or both. For further information, refer to 8.3, “Network connectivity planning” on page 194.

The network components for Copy Services are illustrated in Figure 6-17.

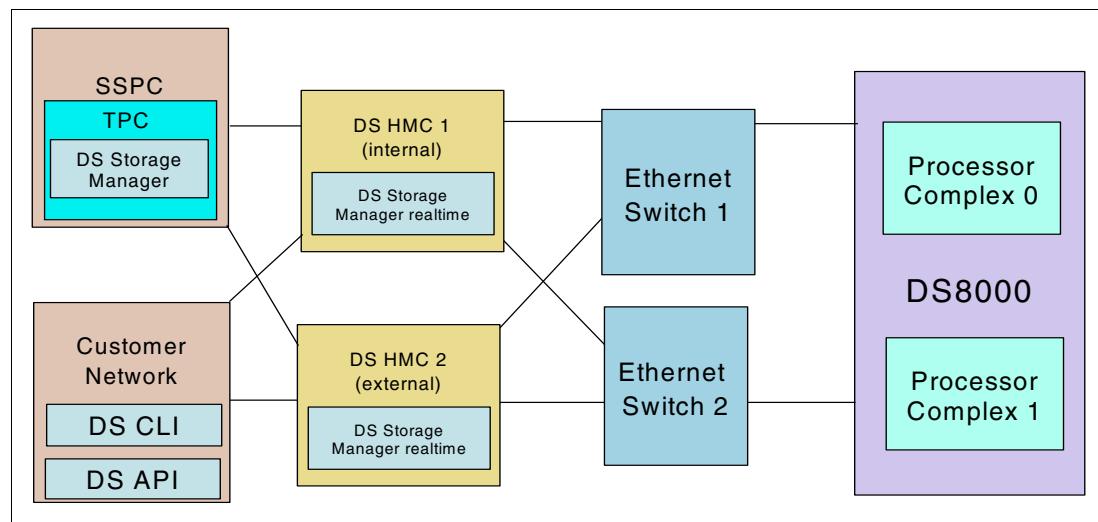


Figure 6-17 DS8700 Copy Services network components on the HMC

Each DS8700 will have an internal HMC in the base frame, and you can have an external HMC for redundancy.

For further information about the HMC, see Chapter 9, “Hardware Management Console planning and setup” on page 207.

#### 6.4.2 DS Storage Manager

The DS Storage Manager is a web-based management graphical user Interface (DS GUI). It is used to manage the logical configurations and the Copy Services functions.

The DS Storage Manager supports almost all of the Copy Services options. The following options are not supported:

- ▶ Consistency Group operation for FlashCopy and for Metro Mirror
- ▶ Inband FlashCopy commands over remote mirror links

For more information about the DS Storage Manager web-based graphical user interface, refer to the following sources:

- ▶ The IBM System Storage DS8000 Information Center website, found at:

<http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/dsicelhelp/ds8000ic/index.jsp>

- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8000: Copy Services in Open Environments*, SG24-6788
- ▶ *DS8000 Copy Services for IBM System z*, SG24-6787

For additional information about the DS Storage Manager usage, see Chapter 13, “Configuration using the DS Storage Manager GUI” on page 295.

### 6.4.3 DS Command-Line Interface

The DS Command-Line Interface (DS CLI) provides a full-function command set that enables open systems hosts to invoke and manage FlashCopy and the Remote Mirror and Copy functions through batch processes and scripts. You can use the DS CLI from a supported server to control and manage Copy Services functions on Open Systems and System z volumes.

For more information about the DS CLI and the supported platforms, refer to the following sources:

- ▶ The IBM System Storage DS8000 Information Center website, found at:  
<http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/dsicelp/ds8000ic/index.jsp>
- ▶ The System Storage Interoperation Center (SSIC), found at:  
<http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/ssic/index.jsp>
- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8000: Command-Line Interface User’s Guide*, GC53-1127
- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8000: Copy Services in Open Environments*, SG24-6788
- ▶ *DS8000 Copy Services for IBM System z*, SG24-6787

For additional information about DS CLI usage, see Chapter 14, “Configuration with the DS Command-Line Interface” on page 359.

### 6.4.4 Tivoli Storage Productivity Center for Replication

IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center for Replication (TPC-R) provides management of DS8700 series business continuance solutions, including FlashCopy and Remote Mirror and Copy functions. IBM TPC for Replication V4 for FlashCopy, FlashCopy SE, Metro Mirror, Global Mirror, and Metro/Global Mirror support focuses on automating administration and configuration of these services, operational control, such as starting, suspending, and resuming, Copy Services tasks, and monitoring and managing the copy sessions. TPC-R supports all flavors of Copy Services functions with the DS8000., which includes Global Copy since TPC-R Release 4.1+.

TPC-R is designed to help administrators manage Copy Services. This applies not only to the Copy Services provided by DS8000 and DS6000 family, but also to Copy Services provided by the ESS 800 and SAN Volume Controller (SVC).

In addition to these capabilities, TPC-R also provides two-site and three-site Business Continuity manageability. This is intended to provide disaster recovery management through planned and unplanned failover and fallback automation, and monitoring progress of the Copy Services so that you can verify the amount of replication that has been done and the amount of time required to complete the replication operation.

For more information about the TPC-R, refer to the IBM TPC Information Center website, found at the following address:

<http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v4r1/index.jsp>

## 6.4.5 DS Open application programming interface

The DS Open application programming interface (API) is a non-proprietary storage management client application that supports routine LUN management activities, such as LUN creation, mapping, and masking, and the creation or deletion of RAID 5, RAID 6, and RAID 10 volume spaces. The DS Open API also enables Copy Services functions, such as FlashCopy and Remote Mirror and Copy functions. It supports these activities through the use of the Storage Management Initiative Specification (SMIS), as defined by the Storage Networking Industry Association (SNIA).

The DS Open API helps integrate DS configuration management support into storage resource management (SRM) applications, which allows clients to benefit from existing SRM applications and infrastructures. The DS Open API also enables the automation of configuration management through client-written applications. Either way, the DS Open API presents another option for managing storage units by complementing the use of the IBM System Storage DS Storage Manager web-based interface and the DS Command-Line Interface.

You must implement the DS Open API through the IBM System Storage Common Information Model (CIM) agent, a middleware application that provides a CIM-compliant interface. The DS Open API uses the CIM technology to manage proprietary devices, such as open system devices through storage management applications. The DS Open API allows these storage management applications to communicate with a storage unit.

For information about the DS Open API, refer to the publication *IBM System Storage DS Open Application Programming Interface Reference*, GC35-0516.

## 6.4.6 System z-based I/O interfaces

In addition to using the DS GUI, the DS CLI, or TPC for Replication, System z users also have the following additional interfaces available for Copy Services management:

- ▶ TSO commands
- ▶ ICKDSF utility commands
- ▶ DFSMSdss utility
- ▶ ANTRQST application programming interface
- ▶ Native TPF commands (for z/TPF only)

These interfaces have the advantage of not having to issue their commands to the DS8700 HMC. They can instead directly send as inband commands over a FICON channel connection between the System z and the DS8700. Sending inband commands allows for a quick command transfer that does not depend on any additional software stacks and complex Ethernet network infrastructures.

All the available Copy Services interfaces mentioned above support the Extended Address Volumes (EAV) implemented into the DS8700.

### Operating system-supported interfaces

This is a list of the supported interfaces for the various System z operating systems:

- ▶ z/OS
  - TSO commands
  - ICKDSF utility
  - DFSMSdss utility
  - ANTRQST
- ▶ z/VM and z/VSE™
  - ICKDSF utility

- ▶ z/TPF
  - ICKDSF utility
  - z/TPF itself

## 6.5 Interoperability

Remote mirror and copy pairs can only be established between disk subsystems of the same or similar type and features. For example, a DS8700 can have a remote mirror pair relationship with another DS8700, a DS8300, DS8100, DS6800, ESS 800, or an ESS 750. It cannot have a remote mirror pair relationship with an RVA or an ESS F20. Note that all disk subsystems must have the appropriate features installed. If your DS8700 is mirrored to an ESS disk subsystem, the ESS must be on a PPRC Version 2 level, which supports Fibre Channel links with the appropriate licensed internal code level (LIC). ESCON is not supported as PPRC link(s) on any DS8000 or DS6000.

DS8700 interoperability information can be found in the IBM System Storage Interoperation Center (SSIC) at the following address:

<http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/ssic>

## 6.6 z/OS Global Mirror on zIIP

The IBM z9® Integrated Information Processor (zIIP) is a special engine available on z10™, z9 EC, and z9 BC servers. z/OS now provides the ability to utilize these processors to handle eligible workloads from the System Data Mover (SDM) in an z/OS Global Mirror (zGM) environment.

Given the appropriate hardware and software, a range of zGM workload can be off loaded to zIIP processors. This capability is available with an IBM System z9® or z10 server with one or more zIIP processors, used in conjunction with the DS8700, or any storage controller supporting z/OS GM.

The z/OS software must be at V1.8 and above with APAR OA23174: Specifying zGM PARMLIB parameter zIIPEnable(YES).





# Performance

This chapter discusses the performance characteristics of the IBM System Storage DS8700 regarding physical and logical configuration. The considerations we discuss in this chapter will help you when you plan the physical and logical setup.

For a detailed discussion about performance, refer to *DS8000 Performance Monitoring and Tuning*, SG24-7146.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- ▶ DS8700 hardware: Performance characteristics
- ▶ Software performance enhancements: Synergy items
- ▶ Performance and sizing considerations for open systems
- ▶ Performance and sizing considerations for System z

## 7.1 DS8700 hardware: Performance characteristics

The DS8700 features IBM POWER6 server technology and a PCI Express I/O infrastructure to help support high performance. Compared to the POWER5+ processor in previous models, the POWER6 processor can enable over a 50% performance improvement in I/O operations per second in transaction processing workload environments. Additionally, sequential workloads can receive as much as 150% bandwidth improvement, which is an improvement factor of 2.5 compared to the previous models. The DS8700 offers either a dual 2-way processor complex or a dual 4-way processor complex.

The DS8700 overcomes many of the architectural limits of the predecessor disk subsystems. In this section, we go through the different architectural layers of the DS8000 and discuss the performance characteristics that differentiate the DS8000 from other disk subsystems.

### 7.1.1 Fibre Channel switched disk interconnection at the back end

Fibre Channel-connected disks are used in the DS8000 back end. This technology is commonly used to connect a group of disks in a daisy-chained fashion in a Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop (FC-AL).

FC-AL has some shortcomings. The most obvious ones are:

- ▶ Arbitration, that is, disks compete for loop bandwidth.
- ▶ Failures within the FC-AL loop, particularly with intermittently failing components on the loops and disks.
- ▶ The increased time that it takes to complete a loop operation as the number of loop devices increase.

These shortcomings limit the effective bandwidth of an FC-AL implementation, especially for cases of highly parallel operations with concurrent reads and writes of various transfer sizes.

## The DS8000 series and FC-AL shortcomings

The DS8000 uses the same Fibre Channel drives that are used in conventional FC-AL-based storage systems. To overcome the arbitration issue within FC-AL, the architecture is enhanced by adding a switch-based approach and creating FC-AL switched loops, as shown in Figure 7-1. Actually, it is called a *Fibre Channel switched disk subsystem*.

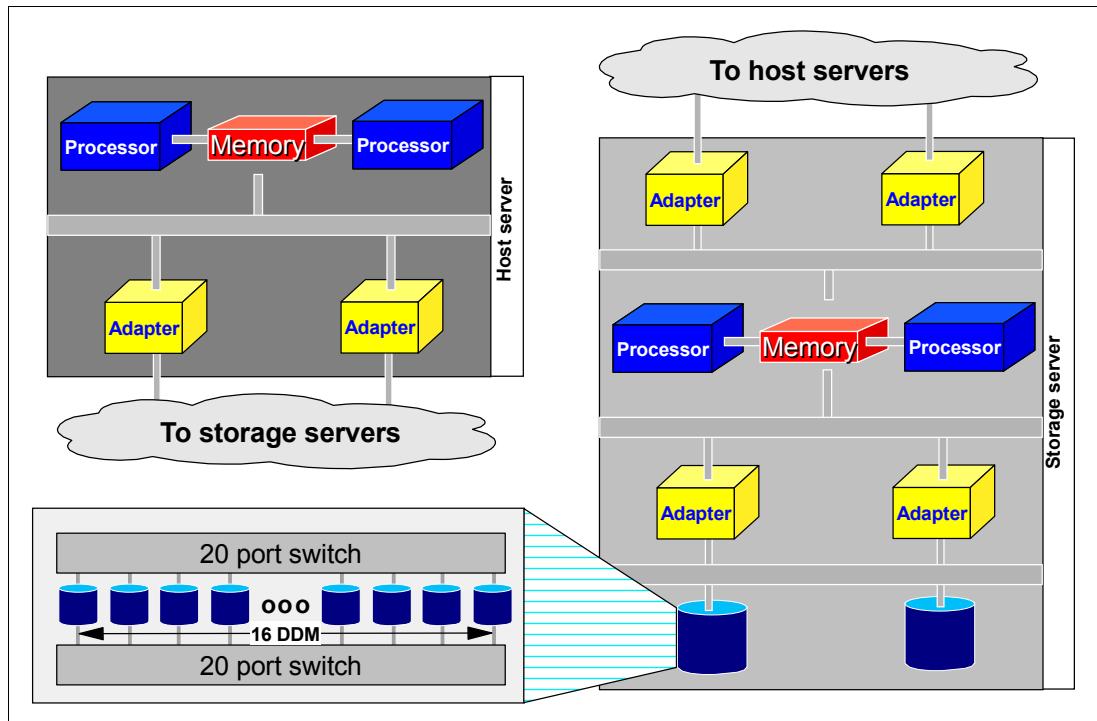


Figure 7-1 Switched FC-AL disk subsystem

These switches use the FC-AL protocol and attach FC-AL drives through a point-to-point connection. The arbitration message of a drive is captured in the switch, processed, and propagated back to the drive, without routing it through all the other drives in the loop.

Performance is enhanced, because both device adapters (DAs) connect to the switched Fibre Channel disk subsystem back end, as shown in Figure 7-2. Note that each DA port can concurrently send and receive data.

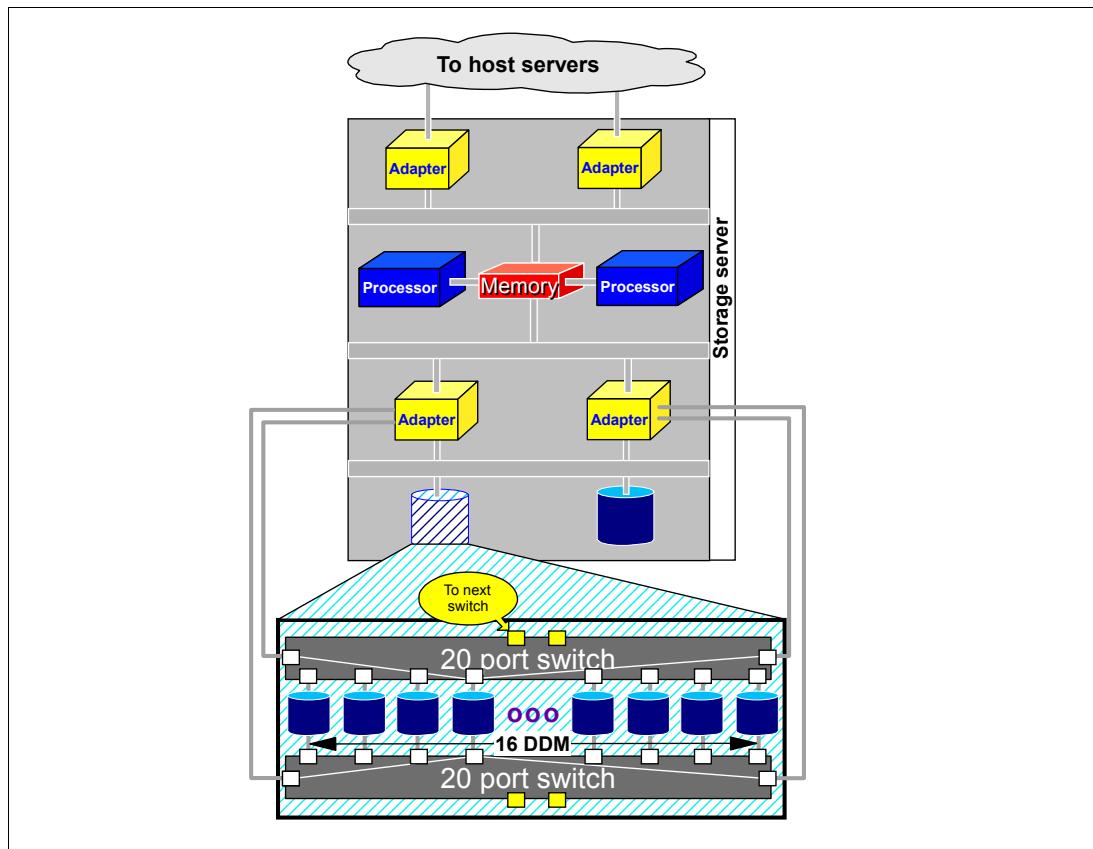


Figure 7-2 High availability and increased bandwidth connect both DAs to two logical loops

These two switched point-to-point connections to each drive, which also connect both DAs to each switch, mean the following:

- ▶ There is no arbitration competition and interference between one drive and all the other drives, because there is no hardware in common for all the drives in the FC-AL loop. This leads to an increased bandwidth, which utilizes the full speed of a Fibre Channel for each individual drive.
- ▶ This architecture doubles the bandwidth over conventional FC-AL implementations due to two simultaneous operations from each DA to allow for two concurrent read operations and two concurrent write operations at the same time.
- ▶ In addition to the superior performance, we must not forget the improved reliability, availability, and serviceability (RAS) that this setup has over conventional FC-AL. The failure of a drive is detected and reported by the switch. The switch ports distinguish between intermittent failures and permanent failures. The ports understand intermittent failures, which are recoverable, and collect data for predictive failure statistics. If one of the switches itself fails, a disk enclosure service processor detects the failing switch and reports the failure using the other loop. All drives can still connect through the remaining switch.

This discussion has just outlined the physical structure. A virtualization approach built on top of the high performance architectural design contributes even further to enhanced performance, as discussed in Chapter 5, “Virtualization concepts” on page 85.

## 7.1.2 Fibre Channel device adapter

The DS8000 relies on eight disk drive modules (DDMs) to form a RAID 5, RAID 6, or a RAID 10 array. These DDMs are actually spread over two Fibre Channel fabrics. With the virtualization approach and the concept of extents, the DS8000 device adapters (DAs) are mapping the virtualization scheme over the disk subsystem back end, as shown in Figure 7-3. For a detailed discussion about disk subsystem virtualization, refer to Chapter 5, “Virtualization concepts” on page 85.

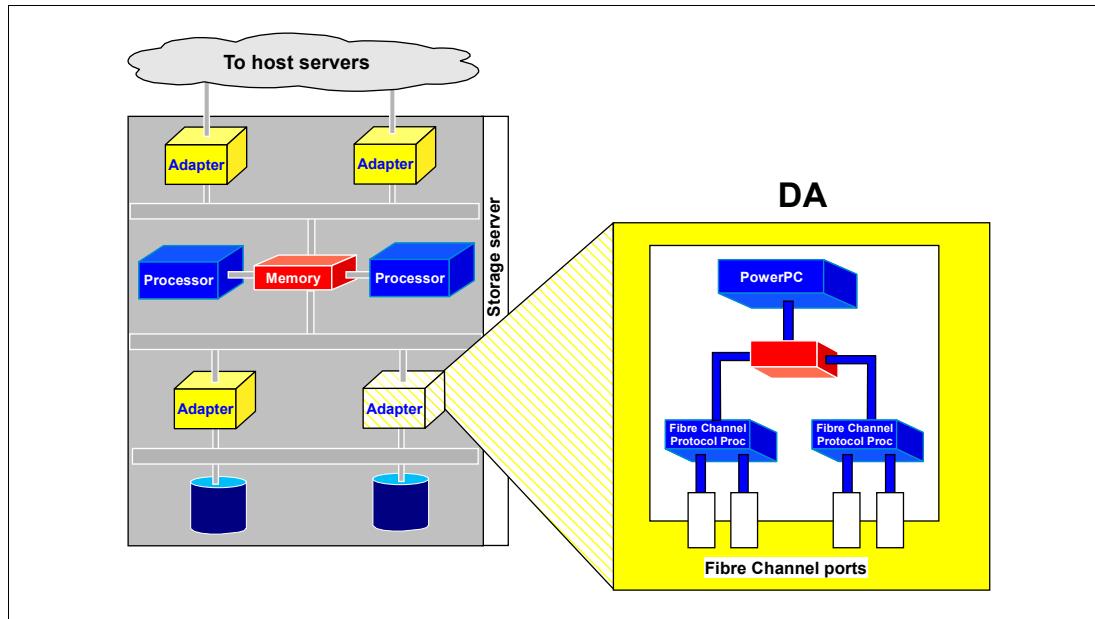


Figure 7-3 Fibre Channel device adapter

The RAID device adapter is built on PowerPC technology with four Fibre Channel ports and high function and high performance ASICs.

Note that each DA performs the RAID logic and frees up the processors from this task. The actual throughput and performance of a DA is not only determined by the port speed and hardware used, but also by the firmware efficiency.

For the DS8700, the device adapters have been upgraded with a twice as fast processor on the adapter card compared to DS8100 and DS8300, providing a much higher throughput on the device adapter.

### 7.1.3 Four-port host adapters

Before looking into the heart of the DS8000 series, we briefly review the host adapters and their enhancements to address performance. Figure 7-4 shows the host adapters. These adapters are designed to hold four Fibre Channel (FC) ports, which can be configured to support either FCP or FICON.

Each port provides industry-leading throughput and I/O rates for FICON and FCP.

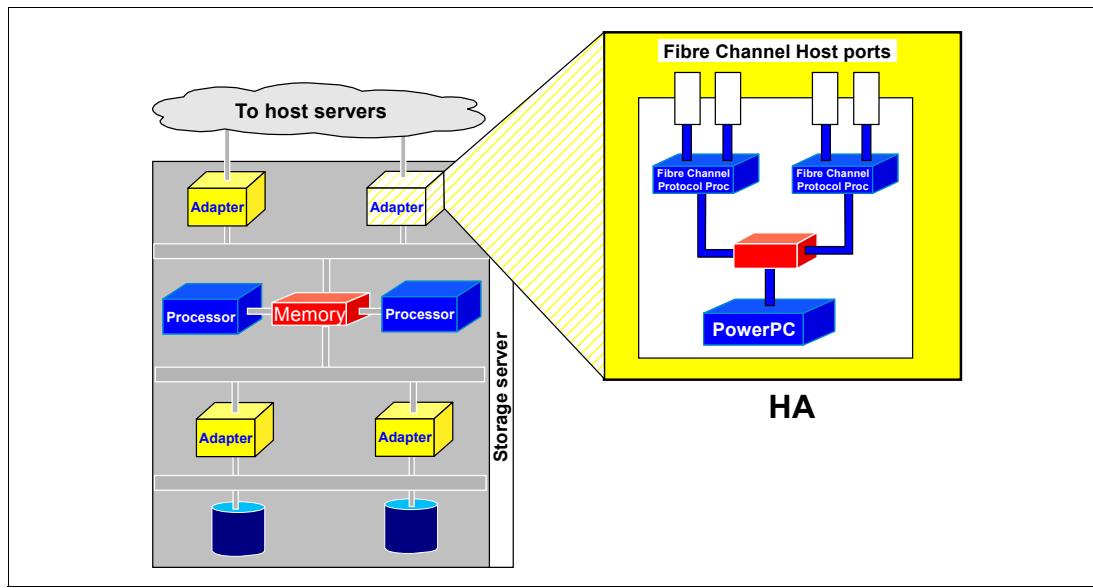


Figure 7-4 Host adapter with four Fibre Channel ports

With FC adapters that are configured for FICON, the DS8000 series provides the following configuration capabilities:

- ▶ Either fabric or point-to-point topologies
- ▶ A maximum of 128 host adapter ports, depending on the DS8700 processor feature
- ▶ A maximum of 509 logins per Fibre Channel port
- ▶ A maximum of 8,192 logins per storage unit
- ▶ A maximum of 1,280 logical paths on each Fibre Channel port
- ▶ Access to all control-unit images over each FICON port
- ▶ A maximum of 512 logical paths per control unit image

FICON host channels limit the number of devices per channel to 16,384. To fully access 65,280 devices on a storage unit, it is necessary to connect a minimum of four FICON host channels to the storage unit. This way, by using a switched configuration, you can expose 64 control-unit images (16,384 devices) to each host channel.

The front end with the 4 Gbps ports scales up to 128 ports for a DS8700. This results in a theoretical aggregated host I/O bandwidth of 128 times 4 Gbps.

### 7.1.4 IBM System p POWER6: Heart of the DS8700 dual cluster design

The new DS8700 model incorporates the System p POWER6 processor technology. The DS8700 model can be equipped with the 2-way processor feature or the 4-way processor feature for highest performance requirements.

While the DS8100 and DS8300 used the RIO-G connection between the clusters as a high bandwidth interconnection to the device adapters, the DS87100 uses dedicated PCI Express connections to the I/O enclosures and the device adapters. This increases the bandwidth to the storage subsystem backend by a factor of up to 16 times to a theoretical bandwidth of 64 GBps.

### High performance and high availability interconnect to the disk subsystem

Figure 7-5 shows how the I/O enclosures connect to the processor complex.

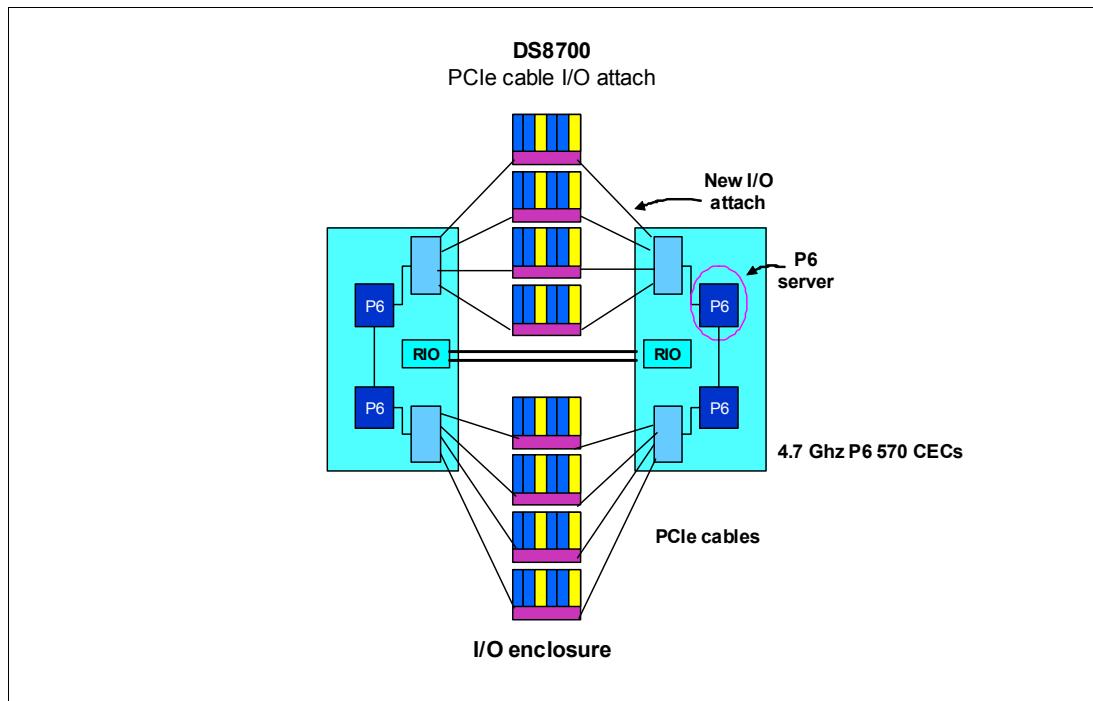


Figure 7-5 PCI Express connections to I/O enclosures

All I/O enclosures are equally served from either processor complex.

Each I/O enclosure contains two DAs. Each DA, with its four ports, connects to four switches to reach out to two sets of 16 drives or disk drive modules (DDMs) each. Note that each 20-port switch has two ports to connect to the next switch pair with 16 DDMs when vertically growing within a DS8000. As outlined before, this dual two-logical loop approach allows for multiple concurrent I/O operations to individual DDMs or sets of DDMs and minimizes arbitration through the DDM/switch port mini-loop communication.

### 7.1.5 Vertical growth and scalability

Figure 7-6 shows a simplified view of the basic DS8700 series structure and how it accounts for scalability.

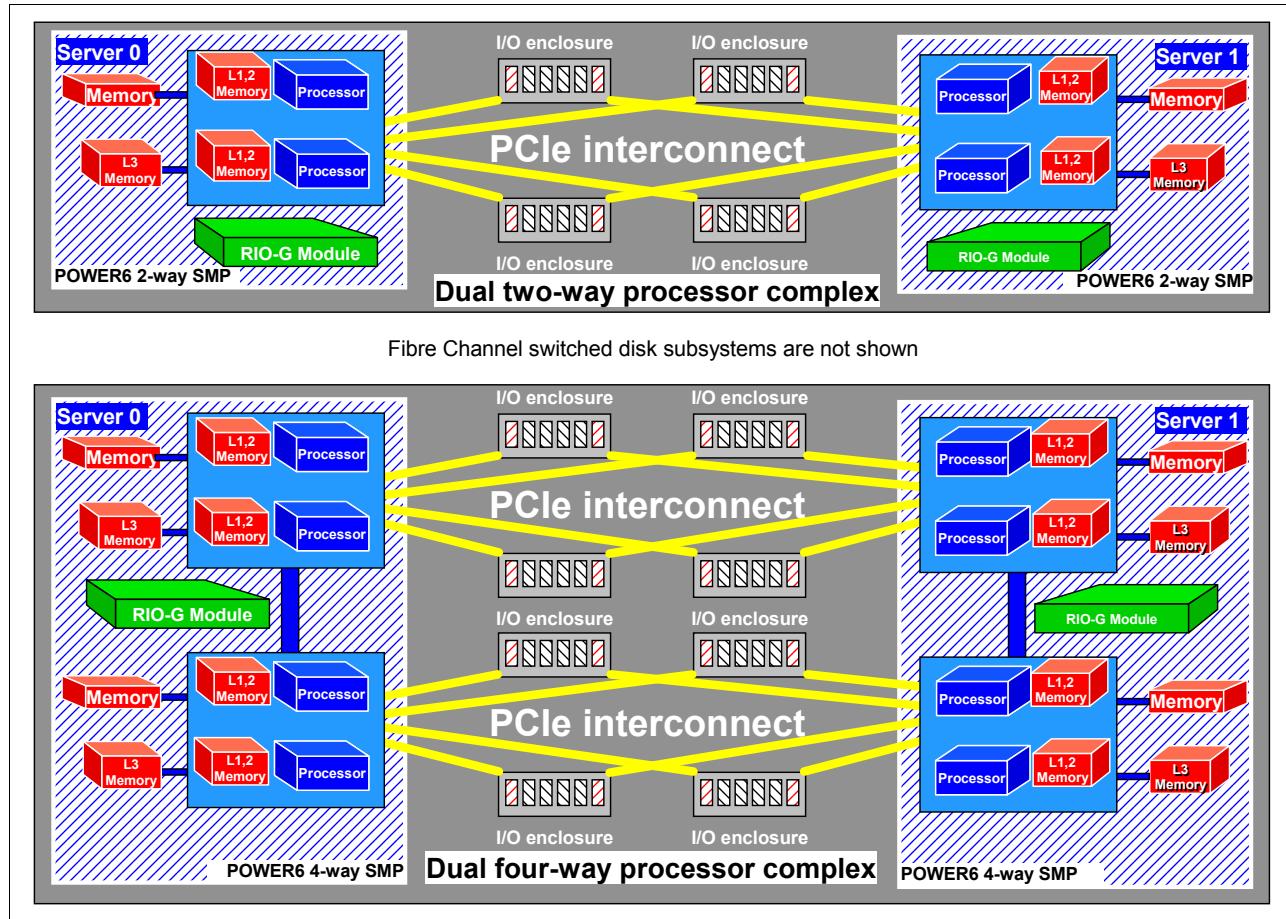


Figure 7-6 DS8700 scale performance linearly: View without disk subsystems

Although Figure 7-6 does not display the back-end part, it can be derived from the number of I/O enclosures, which suggests that the disk subsystem also doubles, as does everything else, when switching from a DS8700 2-way system with four I/O enclosures to an DS8700 4-way system with eight I/O enclosures. Doubling the number of processors and I/O enclosures accounts also for doubling the potential throughput.

Again, note that a virtualization layer on top of this physical layout contributes to additional performance potential.

## 7.2 Software performance enhancements: Synergy items

There are a number of performance features in the DS8000 that work together with the software on the host and are collectively referred to as *synergy items*. These items allow the DS8000 to cooperate with the host systems in manners beneficial to the overall performance of the systems.

### **7.2.1 End to end I/O priority: Synergy with AIX and DB2 on System p**

*End to end I/O priority* is a new addition, requested by IBM, to the SCSI T10 standard. This feature allows trusted applications to override the priority given to each I/O by the operating system. This is only applicable to raw volumes (no file system) and with the 64-bit kernel. Currently, AIX supports this feature in conjunction with DB2. The priority is delivered to storage subsystem in the FCP Transport Header.

The priority of an AIX process can be 0 (no assigned priority) or any integer value from 1 (highest priority) to 15 (lowest priority). All I/O requests associated with a given process inherit its priority value, but with end to end I/O priority, DB2 can change this value for critical data transfers. At the DS8000, the host adapter will give preferential treatment to higher priority I/O, improving performance for specific requests deemed important by the application, such as requests that might be prerequisites for others, for example, DB2 logs.

### **7.2.2 Cooperative caching: Synergy with AIX and DB2 on System p**

Another software-related performance item is *cooperative caching*, a feature which provides a way for the host to send cache management hints to the storage facility. Currently, the host can indicate that the information just accessed is unlikely to be accessed again soon. This decreases the retention period of the cached data, allowing the subsystem to conserve its cache for data that is more likely to be reaccessed, improving the cache hit ratio.

With the implementation of cooperative caching, the AIX operating system allows trusted applications, such as DB2, to provide cache hints to the DS8000. This improves the performance of the subsystem by keeping more of the repeatedly accessed data within the cache. Cooperative caching is supported in System p AIX with the Multipath I/O (MPIO) Path Control Module (PCM) that is provided with the Subsystem Device Driver (SDD). It is only applicable to raw volumes (no file system) and with the 64-bit kernel.

### **7.2.3 Long busy wait host tolerance: Synergy with AIX on System p**

Another new addition to the SCSI T10 standard is SCSI long busy wait, which provides a way for the target system to specify that it is busy and how long the initiator should wait before retrying an I/O.

This information, provided in the Fibre Channel Protocol (FCP) status response, prevents the initiator from retrying too soon. This in turn reduces unnecessary requests and potential I/O failures due to exceeding a set threshold for the number of retries. IBM System p AIX supports SCSI long busy wait with MPIO, and it is also supported by the DS8000.

### **7.2.4 HACMP-extended distance extensions: Synergy with AIX on System p**

HACMP™-Extended Distance (HACMP/XD), which is unrelated to PPRC-XD or Global Copy as it is called now, provides server/LPAR failover capability over extended distances. It can also exploit the Metro Mirror function of the DS8000 as a data replication mechanism between the primary and remote site. HACMP/XD with Metro Mirror supports distances of up to 300 km. The DS8000 requires no changes to be used in this fashion.

## 7.3 Performance considerations for disk drives

You can determine the number and type of ranks required based on the needed capacity and on the workload characteristics in terms of access density, read to write ratio, and hit rates.

You can approach this task from the disk side and look at some basic disk figures. Fibre Channel disks, for example, at 15K RPM provide an average seek time of approximately 3.5 ms and an average latency of 2 ms. For transferring only a small block, the transfer time can be neglected. This is an average 5.5 ms per random disk I/O operation or 180 IOPS. A combined number of eight disks (as is the case for a DS8000 array) will thus potentially sustain 1,440 IOPS when spinning at 15K RPM. Reduce the number by 12.5% when you assume a spare drive in the eight pack.

Back on the host side, consider an example with 1,000 IOPS from the host, a read-to-write ratio of 3 to 1, and 50% read cache hits. This leads to the following IOPS numbers:

- ▶ 750 read IOPS.
- ▶ 375 read I/Os must be read from disk (based on the 50% read cache hit ratio).
- ▶ 250 writes with RAID 5 results in 1,000 disk operations due to the RAID 5 write penalty (read old data and parity, write new data and parity).
- ▶ This totals to 1375 disk I/Os.

With 15K RPM DDMs doing 1000 random IOPS from the server, we actually do 1375 I/O operations on disk compared to a maximum of 1440 operations for 7+P configurations or 1260 operations for 6+P+S configurations. Thus, 1000 random I/Os from a server with a standard read-to-write ratio and a standard cache hit ratio saturate the disk drives. We made the assumption that server I/O is purely random. When there are sequential I/Os, track-to-track seek times are much lower and higher I/O rates are possible. We also assumed that reads have a hit ratio of only 50%. With higher hit ratios, higher workloads are possible. This shows the importance of intelligent caching algorithms as used in the DS8000.

**Important:** When sizing a storage subsystem, you should consider the capacity and the number of disk drives needed to satisfy the performance requirements.

For a single disk drive, various disk vendors provide the disk specifications on their websites. Because the access times for the Fibre Channel disks are the same, but they have different capacities, the I/O density is different. 146 GB 15K RPM disk drives can be used for access densities up 1 I/O GBps. For 300 GB drives, it is 0.5 I/O GBps. While this discussion is theoretical in approach, it provides a first estimate.

Once the speed of the disk has been decided, the capacity can be calculated based on your storage capacity needs and the effective capacity of the RAID configuration you will use. Refer to Table 8-10 on page 202 for information about calculating these needs.

### Solid State Drive (SSD)

From a performance point of view, the best choice for your DS8700 disks would be the new Solid State Drives (SSDs). SSDs have no moving parts (no spinning platters and no actuator arm). The performance advantages are the fast seek time and average access time. They are targeted at applications with heavy IOPS bad cache hit rates and random access workload, which necessitates fast response times. Database applications with their random and intensive IO workloads are prime candidates for deployment on SSDs.

For detailed recommendations about SSD usage and performance, refer to *DS8000: Introducing Solid State Drives*, REDP-4522.

## SATA disk drives

When analyzing disk alternatives, keep in mind that the 2 TB SATA drives are both the largest and slowest of the drives available for the DS8000 series. This, combined with the lower utilization recommendations and the potential for drive protection throttling, means that these drives are definitely *not* recommended for high performance or I/O intensive applications.

## Differences between SATA and FC disk drives

Fibre Channel disk drives provide higher performance, reliability, availability, and serviceability when compared to SATA disk drives. While Fibre Channel disk drives rotate at 15,000 RPM, SATA drives rotate only at 7,200 RPM. If an application requires high performance data throughput and almost continuous, intensive I/O operations, FC disk drives are the recommended option.

**Important:** SATA drives are not the appropriate option for every storage requirement. For many enterprise applications, and certainly mission-critical and production applications, Fibre Channel disks remain the best choice.

SATA disk drives are a cost-efficient storage option for lower intensity storage workloads.

**Note:** The SATA drives offer a cost-effective option for lower priority data, such as various fixed content, data archival, reference data, and near-line applications that require large amounts of storage capacity for lighter workloads. These new drives are meant to complement, not compete with, existing Fibre Channel drives, because they are not intended for use in applications that require drive utilization duty cycles greater than 20 percent.

Without any doubt, the technical characteristics and performance of FC disks remain superior to those of SATA disks. However, not all storage applications require these superior features.

When used for the appropriate enterprise applications, SATA disks offer a tremendous cost advantage over FC. First, SATA drives are cheaper to manufacture, and because of their larger individual capacity, they are cheaper per gigabyte (GB) than FC disks. In large capacity systems, the drives themselves account for the vast majority of the cost of the system. Using SATA disks can substantially reduce the total cost of ownership (TCO) of the storage system.

SATA is not designed for fast access to data or handling large amounts of random I/O. However, they are a good fit for many bandwidth applications, because they can provide comparable throughput for short periods of time.

## RAID level

The DS8000 series offers RAID 5, RAID 6, and RAID 10.

### RAID 5

Normally, RAID 5 is used because it provides good performance for random and sequential workloads and it does not need much additional storage for redundancy (one parity drive). The DS8000 series can detect sequential workload. When a complete stripe is in cache for destage, the DS8000 series switches to a RAID 3-like algorithm. Because a complete stripe has to be destaged, the old data and parity need not be read; instead, the new parity is calculated across the stripe and data and parity are destaged to disk. This provides good sequential performance. A random write causes a cache hit, but the I/O is not complete until a copy of the write data is put in NVS. When data is destaged to disk, a write in RAID 5 causes four disk operations, the so called *write penalty*.

Old data must be read, as well as the old parity information. New parity is calculated in the device adapter and data and parity written to disk. Most of this activity is hidden to the server or host because the I/O is complete when data has entered cache and NVS.

### **RAID 6**

RAID 6 is an option that increases data fault tolerance. It allows additional failure, compared to RAID 5, by using a second independent distributed parity scheme (dual parity). RAID 6 provides a Read Performance similar to RAID 5, but has more write penalty than RAID 5 because it has to write a second parity stripe.

RAID 6 should be considered in situations where you would consider RAID 5, but need increased reliability. RAID 6 was designed for protection during longer rebuild times on larger capacity drives to cope with the risk of having a second drive failure within a rank while the failed drive is being rebuilt. It has the following characteristics:

<b>Sequential Read</b>	About 99% x RAID 5 Rate
<b>Sequential Write</b>	About 65% x RAID 5 Rate
<b>Random 4K 70%R/30%W IOPs</b>	About 55% x RAID 5 Rate

The performance is significantly degraded with two failing disks.

### **RAID 10**

A workload that is dominated by *random writes* will benefit from RAID 10. Here data is striped across several disks and at the same time mirrored to another set of disks. A write causes only two disk operations compared to RAID 5's four operations. However, you need nearly twice as many disk drives for the same capacity when compared to RAID 5. Thus, for twice the number of drives (and probably cost), we can do four times more random writes, so it is worth considering using RAID 10 for high performance random write workloads.

The decision to configure capacity as RAID 5, RAID 6, or RAID 10, as well as the amount of capacity to configure for each type, can be made at any time. RAID 5, RAID 6, and RAID 10 arrays can be intermixed within a single system and the physical capacity can be logically reconfigured at a later date (for example, RAID 6 arrays can be reconfigured into RAID 5 arrays).

## **Disk Magic and Capacity Magic**

Apart from the general guidance we provide in this chapter, the best approach is to use your installation workload as input to the Disk Magic modelling tool (see Appendix A, “Tools and service offerings” on page 579). With your workload data and current configuration of disk subsystem units, Disk Magic can establish a base model. From this base model, Disk Magic can project the DS8000 units (and their configuration) that will be needed to absorb the present workload and also any future growth that you anticipate.

To estimate the number and capacity of disk drive sets needed to fulfill your storage capacity requirements, use the Capacity Magic tool. It is an easy to use tool that will also help you determine the requirements for any growth in capacity that you can foresee.

## 7.4 DS8000 superior caching algorithms

Most, if not all, high-end disk systems have an internal cache integrated into the system design, and some amount of system cache is required for operation. Over time, cache sizes have dramatically increased, but the ratio of cache size to system disk capacity has remained nearly the same. The DS8700 can be equipped with up to 384 GB of cache.

### 7.4.1 Sequential Adaptive Replacement Cache

The DS8000 series uses the Sequential Adaptive Replacement Cache (SARC) algorithm, which was developed by IBM Storage Development in partnership with IBM Research. It is a self-tuning, self-optimizing solution for a wide range of workloads with a varying mix of sequential and random I/O streams. SARC is inspired by the Adaptive Replacement Cache (ARC) algorithm and inherits many features of it. For a detailed description about ARC, see “Outperforming LRU with an adaptive replacement cache algorithm” by N. Megiddo et al. in IEEE Computer, volume 37, number 4, pages 58–65, 2004. For a detailed description about SARC, see “SARC: Sequential Prefetching in Adaptive Replacement Cache” by Binny Gill, et al. in the Proceedings of the USENIX 2005 Annual Technical Conference, pages 293–308.

SARC basically attempts to determine four things:

- ▶ When data is copied into the cache.
- ▶ Which data is copied into the cache.
- ▶ Which data is evicted when the cache becomes full.
- ▶ How the algorithm dynamically adapts to different workloads.

The DS8000 series cache is organized in 4 KB pages called cache pages or slots. This unit of allocation (which is smaller than the values used in other storage systems) ensures that small I/Os do not waste cache memory.

The decision to copy some amount of data into the DS8000 cache can be triggered from two policies: demand paging and prefetching.

- ▶ *Demand paging* means that eight disk blocks (a 4K cache page) are brought in only on a cache miss. Demand paging is always active for all volumes and ensures that I/O patterns with some locality discover at least some recently used data in the cache.
- ▶ *Prefetching* means that data is copied into the cache speculatively even before it is requested. To prefetch, a prediction of likely future data accesses is needed. Because effective, sophisticated prediction schemes need an extensive history of page accesses (which is not feasible in real systems), SARC uses prefetching for sequential workloads. Sequential access patterns naturally arise in video-on-demand, database scans, copy, backup, and recovery. The goal of sequential prefetching is to detect sequential access and effectively preload the cache with data so as to minimize cache misses. Today prefetching is ubiquitously applied in web servers and clients, databases, file servers, on-disk caches, and multimedia servers.

For prefetching, the cache management uses tracks. A track is a set of 128 disk blocks (16 cache pages). To detect a sequential access pattern, counters are maintained with every track to record whether a track has been accessed together with its predecessor. Sequential prefetching becomes active only when these counters suggest a sequential access pattern. In this manner, the DS8000 monitors application read-I/O patterns and dynamically determines whether it is optimal to stage into cache:

- ▶ Just the page requested
- ▶ That page requested plus the remaining data on the disk track
- ▶ An entire disk track (or a set of disk tracks), which has not yet been requested

The decision of when and what to prefetch is made in accordance with the Adaptive Multi-stream Prefetching (AMP) algorithm, which dynamically adapts the amount and timing of prefetches optimally on a per-application basis (rather than a system-wide basis). AMP is described further in 7.4.2, “Adaptive Multi-stream Prefetching” on page 155.

To decide which pages are evicted when the cache is full, sequential and random (non-sequential) data is separated into different lists. Figure 7-7 illustrates the SARC algorithm for random and sequential data.

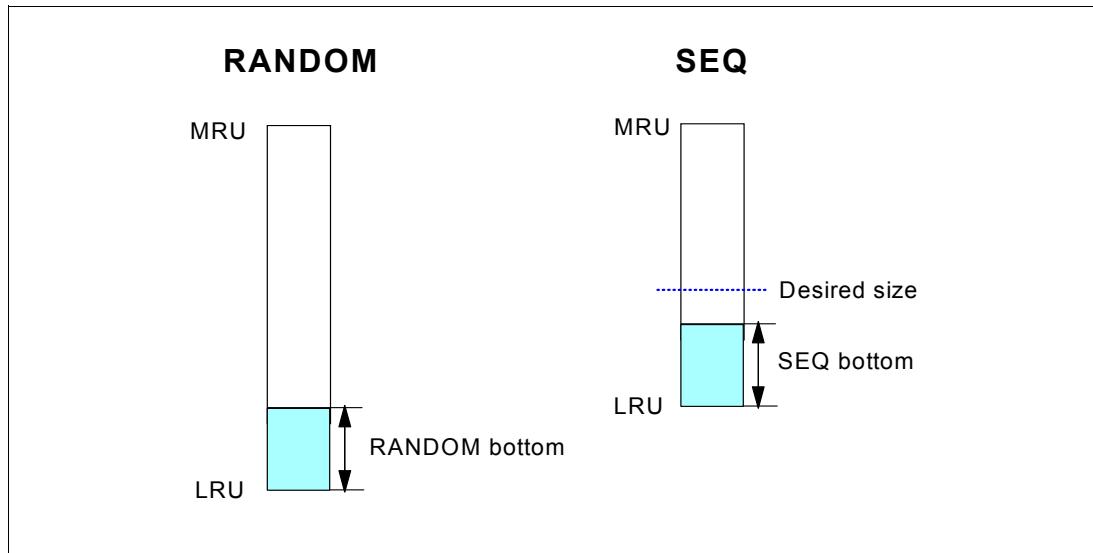


Figure 7-7 Sequential Adaptive Replacement Cache

A page that has been brought into the cache by simple demand paging is added to the head of Most Recently Used (MRU) of the RANDOM list. Without further I/O access, it goes down to the bottom of Least Recently Used (LRU). A page that has been brought into the cache by a sequential access or by sequential prefetching is added to the head of MRU of the SEQ list and then goes in that list. Additional rules control the migration of pages between the lists so as to not keep the same pages in memory twice.

To follow workload changes, the algorithm trades cache space between the RANDOM and SEQ lists dynamically and adaptively. This makes SARC scan-resistant, so that one-time sequential requests do not pollute the whole cache. SARC maintains a desired size parameter for the sequential list. The desired size is continually adapted in response to the workload. Specifically, if the bottom portion of the SEQ list is found to be more valuable than the bottom portion of the RANDOM list, then the desired size is increased; otherwise, the desired size is decreased. The constant adaptation strives to make optimal use of limited cache space and delivers greater throughput and faster response times for a given cache size.

Additionally, the algorithm dynamically modifies the sizes of the two lists and the rate at which the sizes are adapted. In a steady state, pages are evicted from the cache at the rate of cache misses. A larger (respectively, a smaller) rate of misses effects a faster (respectively, a slower) rate of adaptation.

Other implementation details take into account the relationship of read and write (NVS) cache, efficient destaging, and the cooperation with Copy Services. In this manner, the DS8000 cache management goes far beyond the usual variants of the Least Recently Used/Least Frequently Used (LRU/LFU) approaches.

## 7.4.2 Adaptive Multi-stream Prefetching

As described previously, SARC dynamically divides the cache between the RANDOM and SEQ lists, where the SEQ list maintains pages brought into the cache by sequential access or sequential prefetching.

Starting with V5.2.400.327, Adaptive Multi-stream Prefetching (AMP) (a tool from IBM Research) manages the SEQ. AMP is an autonomic, workload-responsive, self-optimizing prefetching technology that adapts both the amount of prefetch and the timing of prefetch on a per-application basis to maximize the performance of the system. The AMP algorithm solves two problems that plague most other prefetching algorithms:

- ▶ *Prefetch wastage* occurs when prefetched data is evicted from the cache before it can be used.
- ▶ *Cache pollution* occurs when less useful data is prefetched instead of more useful data.

By wisely choosing the prefetching parameters, AMP provides optimal sequential read performance and maximizes the aggregate sequential read throughput of the system. The amount prefetched for each stream is dynamically adapted according to the application's needs and the space available in the SEQ list. The timing of the prefetches is also continuously adapted for each stream to avoid misses and at the same time avoid any cache pollution.

SARC and AMP play complementary roles. While SARC is carefully dividing the cache between the RANDOM and the SEQ lists so as to maximize the overall hit ratio, AMP is managing the contents of the SEQ list to maximize the throughput obtained for the sequential workloads. While SARC impacts cases that involve both random and sequential workloads, AMP helps any workload that has a sequential read component, including pure sequential read workloads.

AMP dramatically improves performance for common sequential and batch processing workloads. It also provides excellent performance synergy with DB2 by preventing table scans from being I/O bound and improves performance of index scans and DB2 utilities like Copy and Recover. Furthermore, AMP reduces the potential for array hot spots, which result from extreme sequential workload demands.

For a detailed description about AMP and the theoretical analysis for its optimal usage, see "AMP: Adaptive Multi-stream Prefetching in a Shared Cache" by Binny Gill, et al. in USENIX File and Storage Technologies (FAST), February 13-16, 2007, San Jose, CA. For a more detailed description, see "Optimal Multistream Sequential Prefetching in a Shared Cache" by Binny Gill, et al. in the ACM Journal of Transactions on Storage, October 2007.

## 7.4.3 Intelligent Write Caching

Recently, an additional cache algorithm, referred to as the *Intelligent Write Caching* (ICW), has been implemented in the DS8000 series. IWC improves performance through better write cache management and a better destaging order of writes. This new algorithm is a combination of CLOCK, a predominantly read cache algorithm, and CSCAN, an efficient write cache algorithm. Out of this combination, IBM produced a powerful and widely applicable write cache algorithm.

The CLOCK algorithm exploits *temporal* ordering. It keeps a circular list of pages in memory, with the “hand” pointing to the oldest page in the list. When a page needs to be inserted in the cache, then a R (recency) bit is inspected at the “hand’s” location. If R is zero, the new page is put in place of the page the “hand” points to and R is set to 1; otherwise, the R bit is cleared and set to zero. Then, the clock hand moves one step clockwise forward and the process is repeated until a page is replaced.

The CSCAN algorithm exploit *spatial* ordering. The CSCAN algorithm is the circular variation of the SCAN algorithm. The SCAN algorithm tries to minimize the disk head movement when servicing read and write requests. It maintains a sorted list of pending requests along with the position on the drive of the request. Requests are processed in the current direction of the disk head, until it reaches the edge of the disk. At that point, the direction changes. In the CSCAN algorithm, the requests are always served in the same direction. Once the head has arrived at the outer edge of the disk, it returns to the beginning of the disk and services the new requests in this one direction only. This results in more equal performance for all head positions.

The basic idea of IWC is to maintain a sorted list of write groups, as in the CSCAN algorithm. The smallest and the highest write groups are joined, forming a circular queue. The additional new idea is to maintain a recency bit for each write group, as in the CLOCK algorithm. A write group is always inserted in its correct sorted position and the recency bit is set to zero at the beginning. When a write hit occurs, the recency bit is set to one. The destage operation proceeds, where a destage pointer is maintained that scans the circular list looking for destage victims. Now this algorithm only allows destaging of write groups whose recency bit is zero. The write groups with a recency bit of one are skipped and the recent bit is then turned off and reset to zero, which gives an “extra life” to those write groups that have been hit since the last time the destage pointer visited them.

Figure 7-8 gives an idea how this mechanism works.

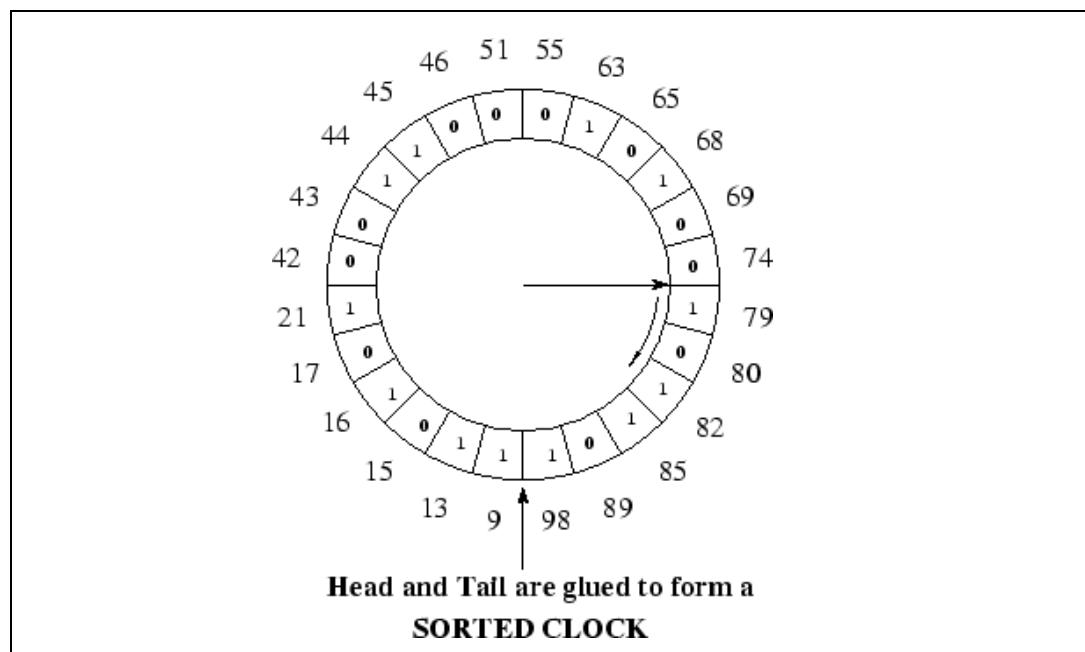


Figure 7-8 Intelligent Write Caching

In the DS8000 implementation, an IWC list is maintained for each rank. The dynamically adapted size of each IWC list is based on workload intensity on each rank. The rate of destage is proportional to the portion of NVS occupied by an IWC list (the NVS is shared across all ranks in a cluster). Furthermore, destages are smoothed out so that write bursts are not translated into destage bursts.

In summary, ICW has better or comparable peak throughput to the best of CSCAN and CLOCK across a wide gamut of write cache sizes and workload configurations. In addition, even at lower throughputs, ICW has lower average response times than CSCAN and CLOCK.

## 7.5 Performance considerations for logical configuration

To determine the optimal DS8000 layout, the I/O performance requirements of the different servers and applications should be defined up front, because they will play a large part in dictating both the physical and logical configuration of the disk subsystem. Prior to designing the disk subsystem, the disk space requirements of the application should be well understood.

### 7.5.1 Workload characteristics

The answers to questions such as “*How many host connections do I need?*” and “*How much cache do I need?*” always depend on the workload requirements, such as how many I/Os per second per server, I/Os per second per gigabyte of storage, and so on.

The information you need to conduct detailed modeling includes:

- ▶ Number of I/Os per second
- ▶ I/O density
- ▶ Megabytes per second
- ▶ Relative percentage of reads and writes
- ▶ Random or sequential access characteristics
- ▶ Cache hit ratio

### 7.5.2 Data placement in the DS8000

Once you have determined the disk subsystem throughput, the disk space, and the number of disks required by your different hosts and applications, you have to make a decision regarding data placement.

As is common for data placement, and to optimize the DS8000 resources utilization, you should:

- ▶ Equally spread the LUNs/volumes across the DS8000 servers. Spreading the volumes equally on rank group 0 and 1 will balance the load across the DS8000 units.
- ▶ Use as many disks as possible. Avoid idle disks, even if all storage capacity will not be initially utilized.
- ▶ Distribute capacity and workload across DA pairs.
- ▶ Use multirank Extent Pools.
- ▶ Stripe your logical volume across several ranks.
- ▶ Consider placing specific database objects (such as logs) on different ranks.
- ▶ For an application, use volumes from both even and odd numbered Extent Pools (even numbered pools are managed by server 0, odd numbers are managed by server 1).

- ▶ For large, performance-sensitive applications, consider two dedicated Extent Pools (one managed by server 0, the other managed by server1).
- ▶ Consider different Extent Pools for 6+P+S arrays and 7+P arrays. If you use Storage Pool Striping, this will ensure that your ranks are equally filled.

**Important:** It is important that you balance your ranks and Extent Pools between the two DS8000 servers. Half of the ranks should be managed by each server (see Figure 7-9).

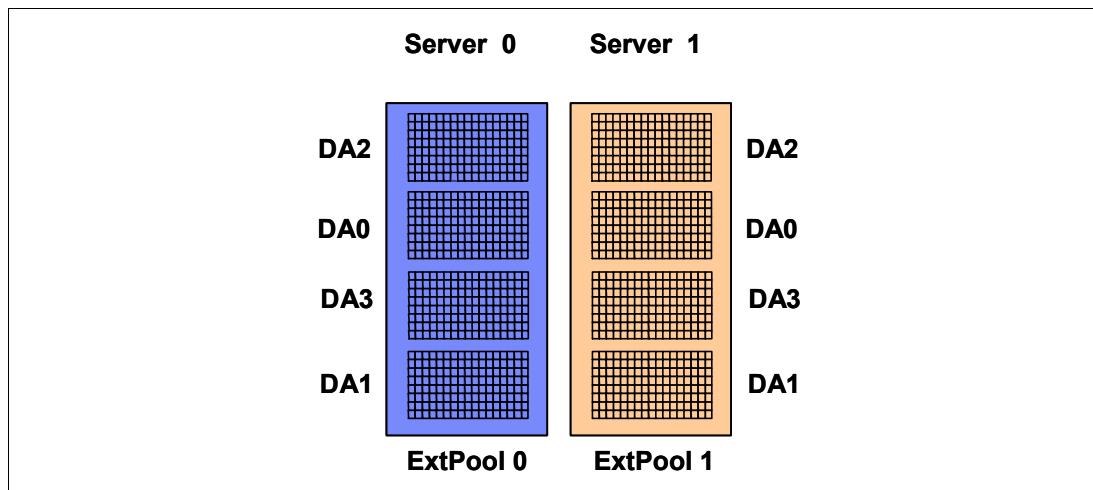


Figure 7-9 Ranks in a multirank Extent Pool configuration balanced across DS8000 servers

**Note:** Database logging usually consists of sequences of synchronous sequential writes. Log archiving functions (copying an active log to an archived space) also tend to consist of simple sequential read and write sequences. You might consider isolating log files on separate arrays.

All disks in the storage disk subsystem should have roughly equivalent utilization. Any disk that is used more than the other disks will become a bottleneck to performance. A practical method is to use Storage Pool Striping or make extensive use of volume-level striping across disk drives.

**Important:** The Easy Tier feature available with the DS8700 can perform relocation to SSD hot extents automatically. A condition for this automatic relocation is that you configure hybrid Extent Pools (combining SSD ranks and HDD ranks). For details about Easy Tier, refer to *IBM System Storage DS8700 Easy Tier*, REDP-4667.

### 7.5.3 Data placement

There are several options for creating logical volumes. You can select an Extent Pool that is owned by one server. There could be just one Extent Pool per server or you could have several. The ranks of Extent Pools can come from arrays on different device adapter pairs.

For optimal performance, your data should be spread across as many hardware resources as possible. RAID 5, RAID 6, or RAID 10 already spreads the data across the drives of an array, but this is not always enough. There are two approaches to spreading your data across even more disk drives:

- ▶ Storage Pool Striping
- ▶ Striping at the host level

## Storage Pool Striping

*Striping* is a technique for spreading the data across several disk drives in such a way that the I/O capacity of the disk drives can be used in parallel to access data on the logical volume.

The easiest way to stripe is to use Extent Pools with more than one rank and use Storage Pool Striping when allocating a new volume (see Figure 7-10). This striping method is independent of the operating system.

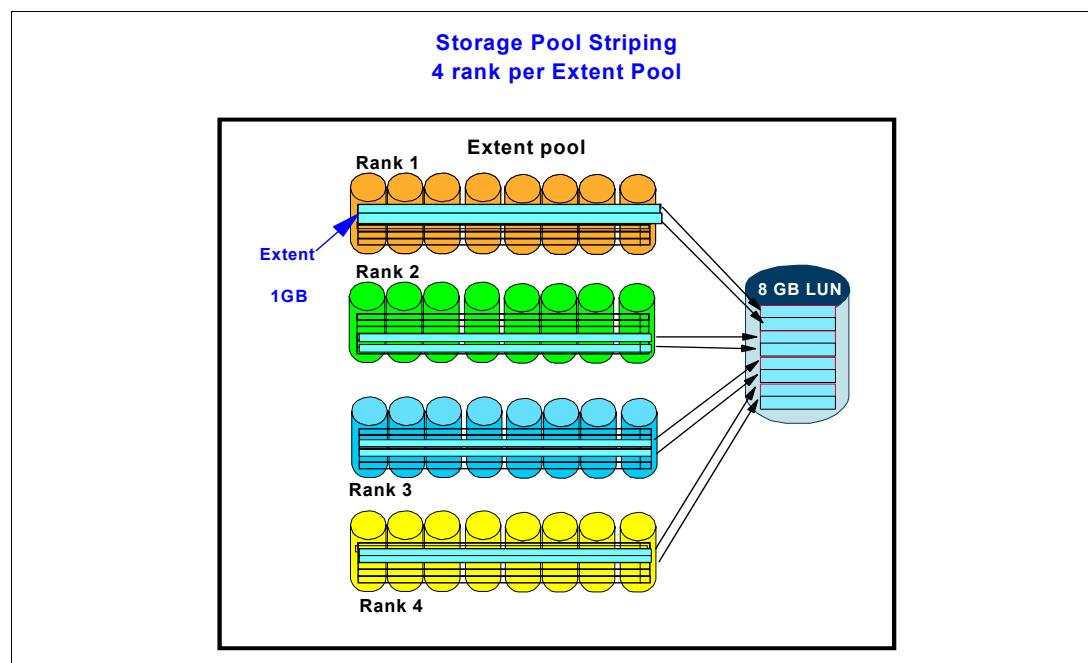


Figure 7-10 Storage Pool Striping

In 7.3, “Performance considerations for disk drives” on page 150, we discuss how many random I/Os can be performed for a standard workload on a rank. If a volume resides on just one rank, this rank’s I/O capability also applies to the volume. However, if this volume is striped across several ranks, the I/O rate to this volume can be much higher.

Of course, the total number of I/Os that can be performed on a given set of ranks does not change with Storage Pool Striping.

On the other hand, if you stripe all your data across all ranks and you lose just one rank, for example, because you lose two drives at the same time in a RAID 5 array, *all* your data is gone. Remember that with RAID 6 you can increase reliability and survive two drive failures, but the better choice is to mirror your data to a remote DS8000.

**Tip:** Use Storage Pool Striping and Extent Pools with four to eight ranks of the same characteristics (RAID type and disk RPM) to avoid hot spots on the disk drives.

Figure 7-11 shows a good configuration. The ranks are attached to DS8000 server 0 and server 1 in a half and half configuration, ranks on different device adapters are used in a multi-rank Extent Pool, and there are separate Extent Pools for 6+P+S and 7+P ranks.

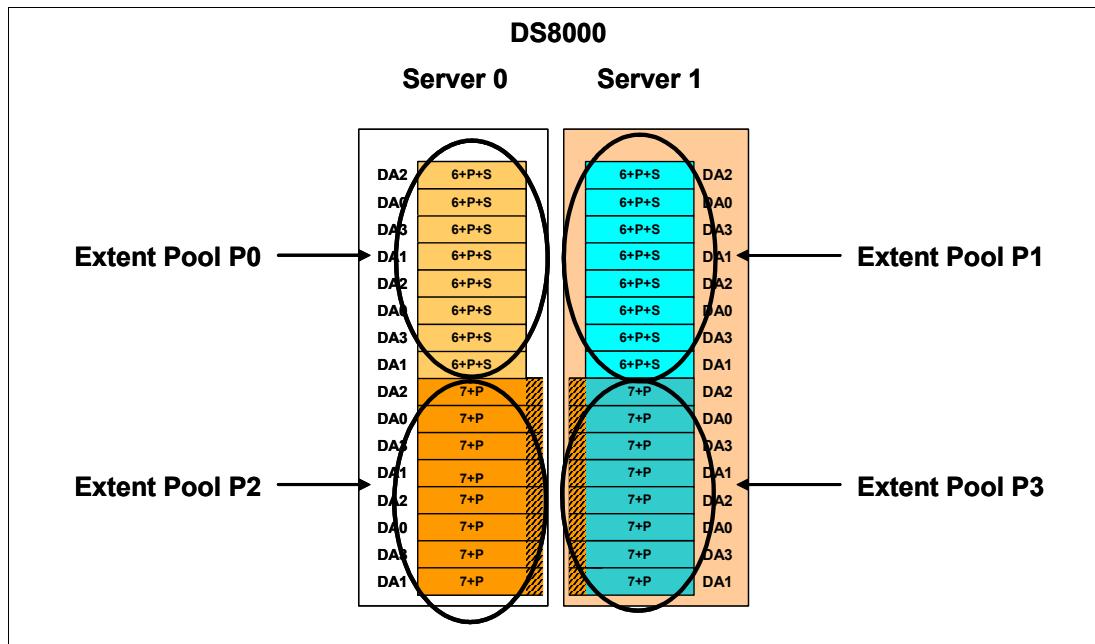


Figure 7-11 Balanced Extent Pool configuration

There is no *reorg* function for Storage Pool Striping. If you have to expand an Extent Pool, the extents are not rearranged.

**Tip:** If you have to expand a nearly full Extent Pool, it is better to add several ranks at once instead of just one rank, to benefit from striping across the newly added ranks.

If you add just one rank to a full Extent Pool, new volumes created afterwards cannot be striped.

**Important:** The Easy Tier feature available with the DS8700 can perform relocation to SSD hot extents automatically. A condition for this automatic relocation is that you configure hybrid Extent Pools (combining SSD ranks and HDD ranks). Used in manual mode, the Easy Tier function allows you to dynamically merge Extent Pools and relocate volumes in Extent Pools. For details about Easy Tier, refer to *IBM System Storage DS8700 Easy Tier*, REDP-4667.

### Striping at the host level

Many operating systems have the option to stripe data across several (logical) volumes. An example is AIX's Logical Volume Manager (LVM).

Other examples for *applications* that stripe data across the volumes include the SAN Volume Controller (SVC) and IBM System Storage N series Gateways.

Do not expect that double striping (at the storage subsystem level and at the host level) will enhance performance any further.

LVM striping is a technique for spreading the data in a logical volume across several disk drives in such a way that the I/O capacity of the disk drives can be used in parallel to access data on the logical volume. The primary objective of striping is high performance reading and writing of large sequential files, but there are also benefits for random access.

If you use a logical volume manager (such as LVM on AIX) on your host, you can create a host logical volume from several DS8000 logical volumes (LUNs). You can select LUNs from different DS8000 servers and device adapter pairs, as shown in Figure 7-12. By striping your host logical volume across the LUNs, you will get the best performance for this LVM volume.

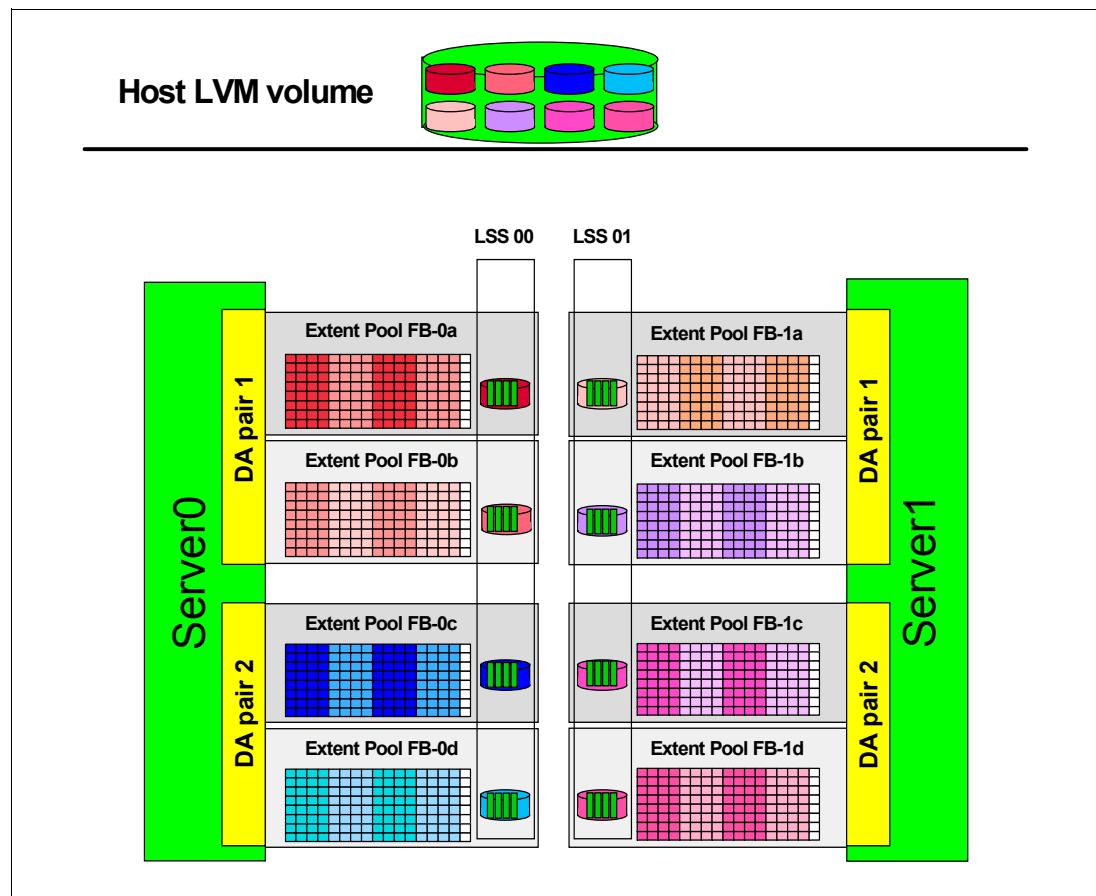


Figure 7-12 Optimal placement of data

Figure 7-12 shows an optimal distribution of eight logical volumes within a DS8000. Of course, you could have more Extent Pools and ranks, but when you want to distribute your data for optimal performance, you should make sure that you spread it across the two servers, across different device adapter pairs, and across several ranks.

To be able to create very large logical volumes or to be able to use Extent Pool striping, you must consider having Extent Pools with more than one rank.

If you use multirank Extent Pools and you do not use Storage Pool Striping, you have to be careful where to put your data, or you can easily unbalance your system (see the right side of Figure 7-13).

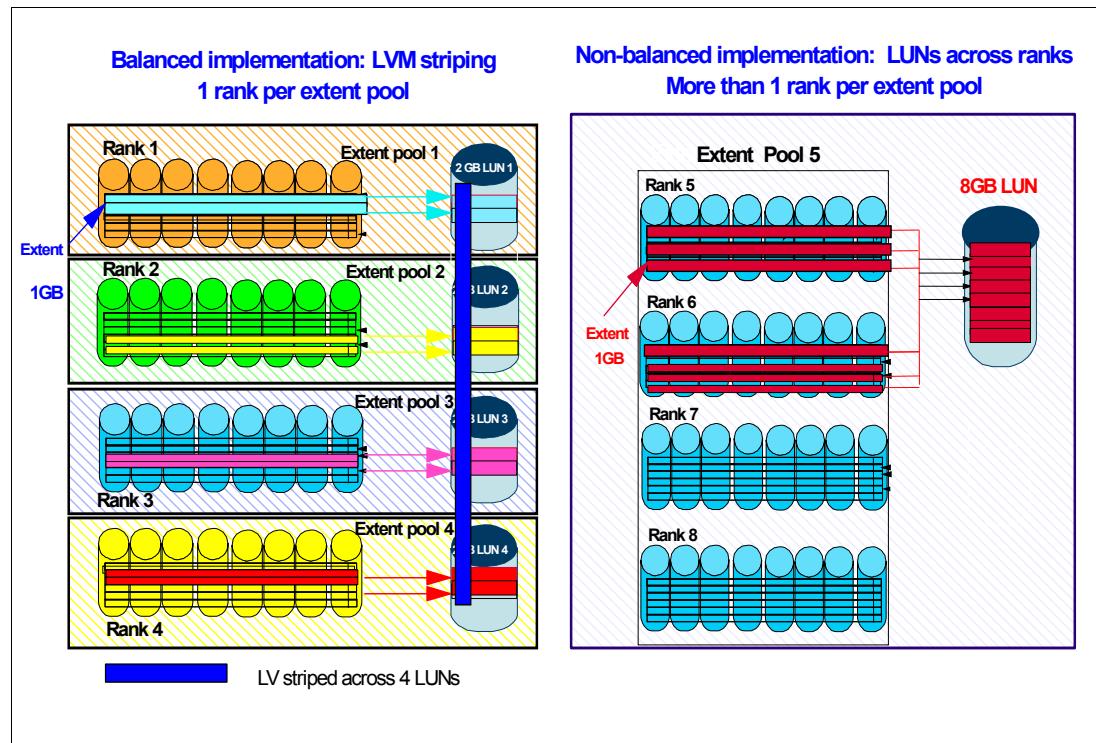


Figure 7-13 Spreading data across ranks

Combining Extent Pools made up of one rank and then LVM striping over LUNs created on each Extent Pool will offer a balanced method to evenly spread data across the DS8000 without using Extent Pool striping, as shown on the left side of Figure 7-13.

### The stripe size

Each striped logical volume that is created by the host's logical volume manager has a stripe size that specifies the fixed amount of data stored on each DS8000 logical volume (LUN) at one time.

The stripe size has to be large enough to keep sequential data relatively close together, but not too large so as to keep the data located on a single array.

We recommend that you define stripe sizes using your host's logical volume manager in the range of 4 MB to 64 MB. You should choose a stripe size close to 4 MB if you have a large number of applications sharing the arrays and a larger size when you have few servers or applications sharing the arrays.

### Combining Extent Pool striping and logical volume manager striping

Striping by a logical volume manager is done on a stripe size in the MB range (about 64 MB). Extent Pool striping is done at a 1 GB stripe size. Both methods could be combined. LVM striping can stripe across Extent Pools and use volumes from Extent Pools that are attached to server 0 and server 1 of the DS8000 series. If you already use LVM Physical Partition (PP) striping, you might want to stay use that striping. Double striping will probably not increase performance.

## 7.5.4 Space Efficient volumes and repositories

Space Efficient volumes are intended to be used exclusively as FlashCopy SE target volumes. You need the IBM FlashCopy SE feature to be able to create a Space Efficient volume. Space Efficient volumes are explained in 5.2.6, “Space Efficient volumes” on page 96.

Space Efficient volumes require a repository in an Extent Pool. A repository itself is a collection of extents striped across all ranks of an Extent Pool. It holds the data tracks of Space Efficient volumes.

Space Efficient volumes cannot provide the same level of performance as regular volumes. This is for two reasons:

- ▶ There is some overhead involved maintaining tables of logical tracks and physical tracks and how they map.
- ▶ The locality of data is gone. This means adjacent data on a regular volume (the FlashCopy source) will no longer be adjacent in the repository (the Space Efficient FlashCopy target volume). Therefore, sequential throughput will be reduced when Space Efficient volumes are involved.

Figure 7-14 shows schematically the steps for an update to a FlashCopy source volume that is in an IBM FlashCopy SE relationship.

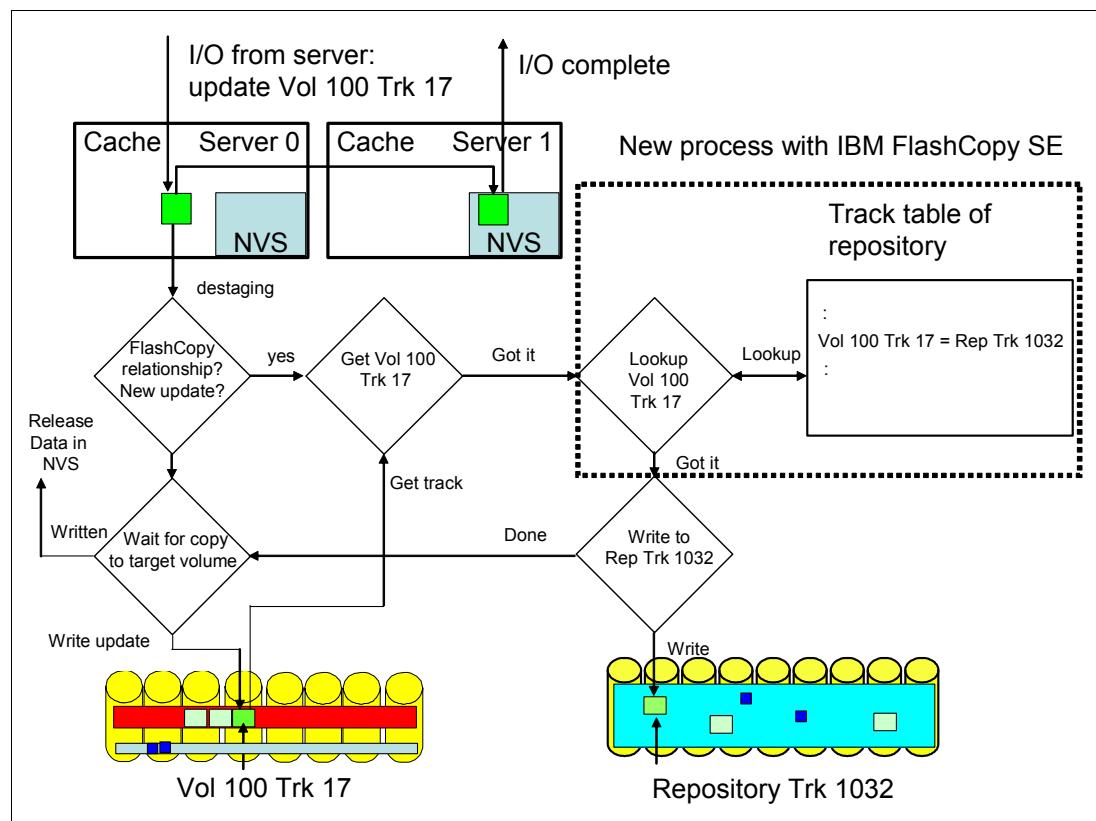


Figure 7-14 Write operation for an IBM FlashCopy SE relation

A FlashCopy onto a Space Efficient volume is established with the *nocopy* option. In normal operation (when we do not run a backup job or other activity on the Space Efficient target volume), only writes go to Space Efficient volumes. Usually a repository will hold more than just one volume and writes will come from different volumes. Thus, the workload to a repository will be purely random writes. This will stress the disk drives given that a random write triggers four disk operations on a RAID 5 array (see “RAID 5” on page 151).

If there are many source volumes that have targets in the same Extent Pool, all updates to these source volumes cause write activity to this one Extent Pool’s repository. We can consider a repository as something similar to a volume. So we have writes to many source volumes being copied to just *one volume*, that is, the repository.

There is less space in the repository than the total capacity (sum) of the source volumes, so you might be tempted to use less disk spindles (DDMs). By definition, fewer spindles mean less performance. You can see how careful planning is needed to achieve the required throughput and response times from the Space Efficient volumes. A good strategy is to keep the number of spindles roughly equivalent but just use smaller and faster drives (but do not use SATA drives). For example, if your source volumes are 300 GB 15K RPM disks, using 146 GB 15K RPM disks on the repository might provide both space efficiency and excellent repository performance.

**Consideration:** Having a repository on SATA drives is not supported.

Another possibility is to consider RAID 10 (see “RAID 10” on page 152) for the repository, although that goes somewhat against space efficiency (you might be better off using standard FlashCopy with RAID 5 than SE with RAID 10). However, there might be cases where trading off some of the space efficiency gains for a performance boost justifies RAID 10. If RAID 10 is used at the source, you should consider it for the repository (note that the repository will always use striping when in a multirank Extent Pool).

Storage Pool Striping has good synergy with the repository (volume) function. With Storage Pool Striping, the repository space is striped across multiple RAID arrays in an Extent Pool and this helps balance the volume skew that might appear on the sources. It is generally best to use four RAID arrays in the multirank Extent Pool intended to hold the repository, and no more than eight.

On a heavily loaded system, the disks in the back end, particularly where the repository resides, might be overloaded. In this case, data will stay for a longer time than usual in NVS. You might consider increasing your cache or NVS when introducing IBM FlashCopy SE.

Finally, try to use at least the same number of disk spindles on the repository as the source volumes. Avoid severe “fan in” configurations, such as 32 ranks of source disk being mapped to an 8 rank repository. This type of configuration will likely have performance problems unless the update rate to the source is modest.

Also, although it is possible to share the repository with production volumes on the same Extent Pool, use caution when doing this action, as contention between the two could impact performance.

To summarize: We can expect a high random write workload for the repository. To prevent the repository from becoming overloaded, you can do the following:

- ▶ Have the repository in an Extent Pool with several ranks (a repository is always striped). Use at least four ranks but not more than eight.
- ▶ Use fast 15K RPM and small capacity disk drives for the repository ranks.
- ▶ Avoid placing repository and high performance standard volumes in the same Extent Pool.

## 7.6 Performance and sizing considerations for open systems

Here we discuss some topics particularly relevant to open systems.

### 7.6.1 Determining the number of paths to a LUN

When configuring an IBM System Storage DS8000 for an open systems host, a decision must be made regarding the number of paths to a particular LUN, because the multipathing software allows (and manages) multiple paths to a LUN. There are two opposing factors to consider when deciding on the number of paths to a LUN:

- ▶ Increasing the number of paths increases availability of the data, protecting against outages.
- ▶ Increasing the number of paths increases the amount of CPU used because the multipathing software must choose among all available paths each time an I/O is issued.

A good compromise is between two and four paths per LUN.

### 7.6.2 Dynamic I/O load-balancing: Subsystem Device Driver (SDD)

The Subsystem Device Driver is a IBM provided pseudo-device driver that is designed to support the multipath configuration environments in the DS8000. It resides in a host system with the native disk device driver.

The dynamic I/O load-balancing option (default) of SDD is recommended to ensure better performance because:

- ▶ SDD automatically adjusts data routing for optimum performance. Multipath load balancing of data flow prevents a single path from becoming overloaded, causing input/output congestion that occurs when many I/O operations are directed to common devices along the same input/output path.
- ▶ The path to use for an I/O operation is chosen by estimating the load on each adapter to which each path is attached. The load is a function of the number of I/O operations currently in process. If multiple paths have the same load, a path is chosen at random from those paths.

For more information about the SDD, see 15.1.4, “Multipathing support: Subsystem Device Driver” on page 402.

### 7.6.3 Automatic port queues

When there is I/O between a server and a DS8700 Fibre Channel port, both the server host adapter and the DS8700 host bus adapter support queuing I/Os. How long this queue can be is called the *queue depth*. Since several servers can and usually do communicate with few DS8700 ports, the queue depth of a storage host bus adapter should be larger than the one on the server side. This is also true for the DS8700, which supports 2048 FC commands queued on a port. However, sometimes the port queue in the DS8700 HBA can be flooded.

When the number of commands sent to the DS8000 port has exceeded the maximum number of commands that the port can queue, the port has to discard these additional commands.

This operation is a *normal* error recovery operation in the Fibre Channel protocol to prevent more damage. The normal recovery is a 30 second timeout for the server, after that time the command is resent. The server has a *command retry* count before it will fail the command. Command Timeout entries will be seen in the server logs.

*Automatic Port Queues* is a mechanism the DS8700 uses to self-adjust the queue based on the workload. This allows higher port queue oversubscription while maintaining a fair share for the servers and the accessed LUNs.

The port that the queue is filling up goes into SCSI Queue Fill mode, where it accepts no additional commands to slow down the I/Os.

By avoiding error recovery and the 30 second blocking SCSI Queue Full recovery interval, the overall performance is better with Automatic Port Queues.

### 7.6.4 Determining where to attach the host

When determining where to attach multiple paths from a single host system to I/O ports on a host adapter to the storage facility image, the following considerations apply:

- ▶ Choose the attached I/O ports on different host adapters.
- ▶ Spread the attached I/O ports evenly between the four I/O enclosure groups.

The DS8000 host adapters have no server affinity, but the device adapters and the rank have server affinity. Figure 7-15 shows a host that is connected through two FC adapters to two DS8000 host adapters located in different I/O enclosures. The host has access to LUN1, which is created in the Extent Pool 1 controlled by the DS8000 server 0. The host system sends read commands to the storage server. When a read command is executed, one or more logical blocks are transferred from the selected logical drive through a host adapter over an I/O interface to a host. In this case, the logical device is managed by server 0, and the data is handled by server 0. The read data to be transferred to the host must first be present in server 0's cache. When the data is in the cache, it is then transferred through the host adapters to the host.

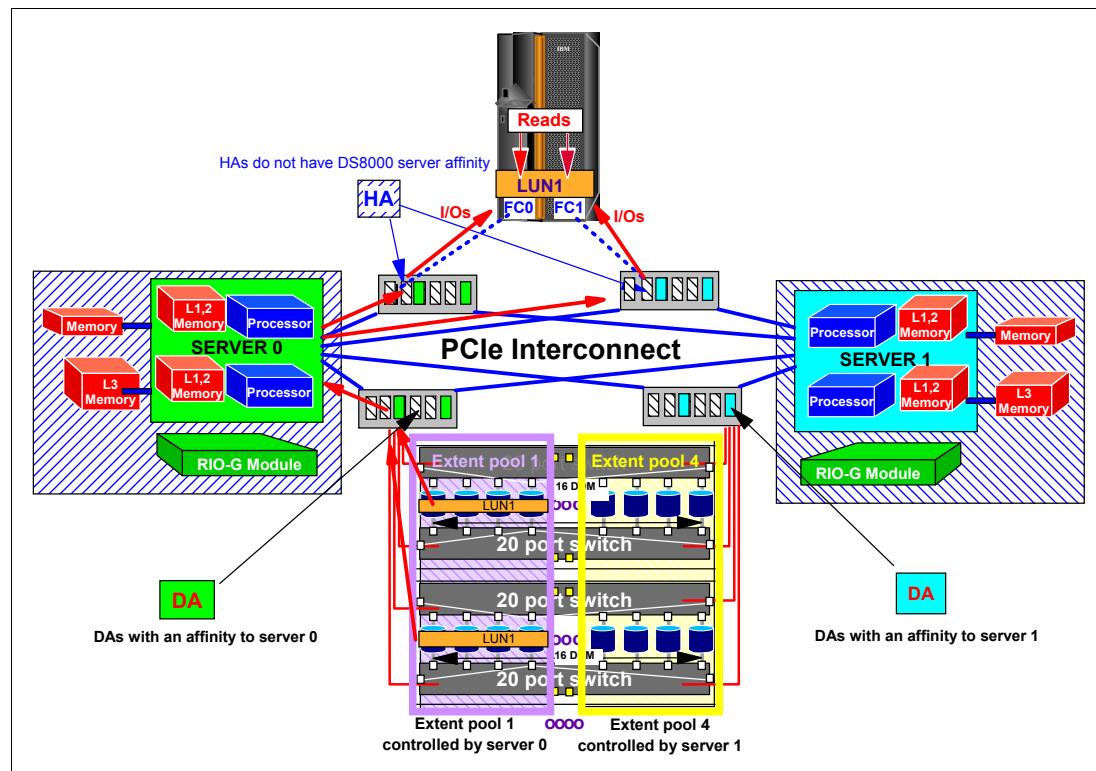


Figure 7-15 Dual port host attachment

## 7.7 Performance and sizing considerations for System z

Here we discuss several System z specific topics regarding the performance potential of the DS8000 series. We also discuss the considerations you must have when you configure and size a DS8000 that replaces older storage hardware in System z environments.

### 7.7.1 Host connections to System z servers

Figure 7-16 partially shows a configuration where a DS8000 connects to FICON hosts. Note that this figure only indicates the connectivity to the Fibre Channel switched disk subsystem through its I/O enclosure, symbolized by the rectangles.

Each I/O enclosure can hold up to four HAs. The example in Figure 7-16 shows only eight FICON channels connected to the first two I/O enclosures. Not shown is a second FICON director, which connects in the same fashion to the remaining two I/O enclosures to provide a total of 16 FICON channels in this particular example. The DS8100 disk storage subsystem provides up to 64 FICON channel ports. Again, note the efficient FICON implementation in the DS8000 FICON ports.

Consider the following performance factors:

- ▶ Do not mix ports connected to a FICON channel with a port connected to a PPRC link in the same Host Adapter.
- ▶ Only use two ports per Host Adapter. The two ports used should be the following ports:
  - Port xxx0 and port xxx2 or xxx3
  - Port xxx1 and port xxx2 or xxx3

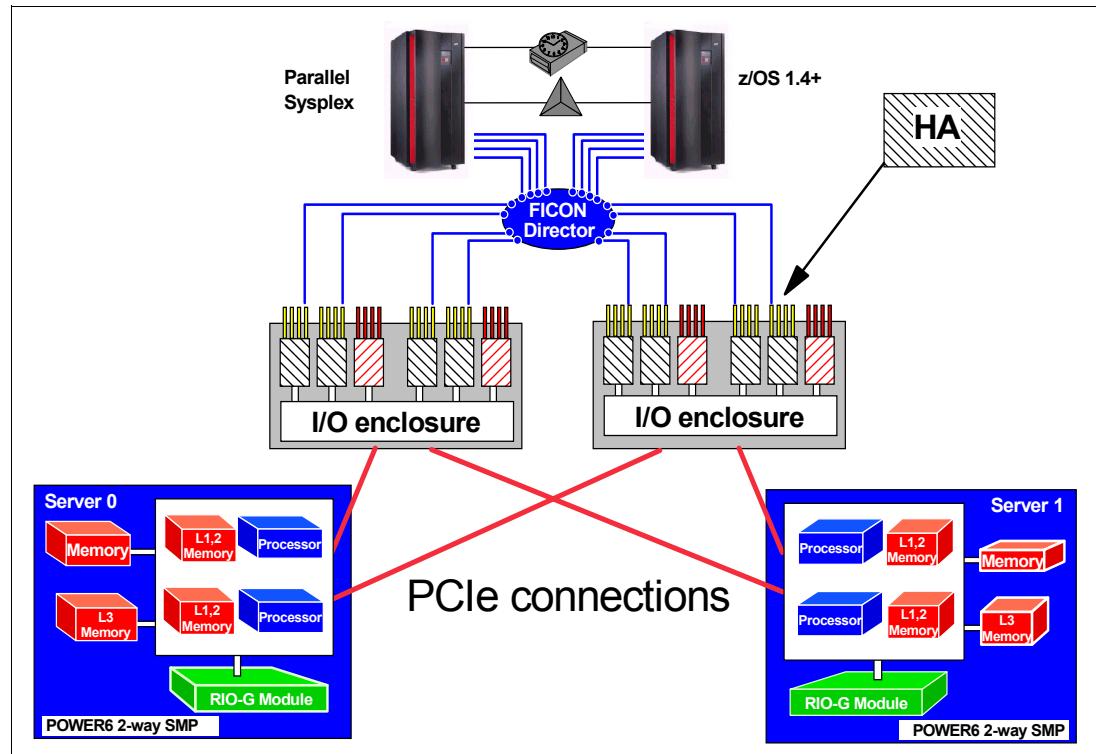


Figure 7-16 DS8100 front end connectivity example: Partial view

## 7.7.2 Parallel Access Volume (PAV)

Parallel Access Volume (PAV) is one of the features that was originally introduced with the IBM TotalStorage Enterprise Storage Server (ESS) and that the DS8000 series has inherited. PAV is an optional licensed function of the DS8000 for the z/OS and z/VM operating systems, helping the System z servers that are running applications to concurrently share the same logical volumes.

The ability to do multiple I/O requests to the same volume nearly eliminates I/O supervisor queue delay (IOSQ) time, one of the major components in z/OS response time. Traditionally, access to highly active volumes has involved manual tuning, splitting data across multiple volumes, and more. With PAV and the Workload Manager (WLM), you can almost forget about manual performance tuning. WLM manages PAVs across all the members of a Sysplex too. This way, the DS8000 in conjunction with z/OS has the ability to meet the performance requirements by its own.

### Traditional z/OS behavior without PAV

Traditional storage disk subsystems have allowed for only one channel program to be active to a volume at a time to ensure that data being accessed by one channel program cannot be altered by the activities of some other channel program.

Figure 7-17 illustrates the traditional z/OS behavior without PAV, where subsequent simultaneous I/Os to volume 100 are queued while volume 100 is still busy with a preceding I/O.

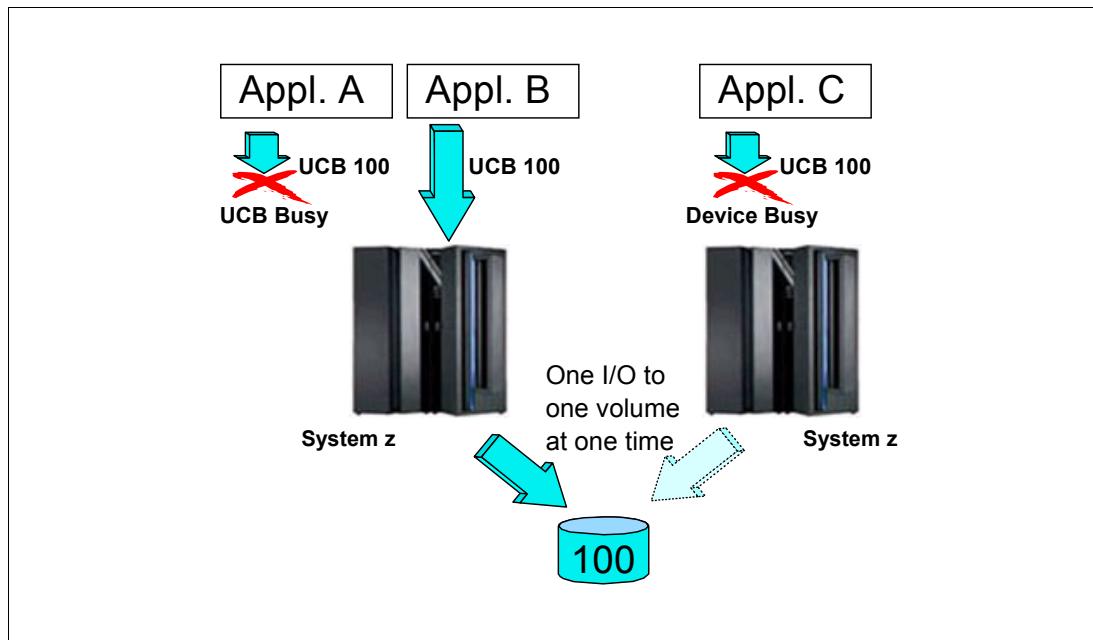


Figure 7-17 Traditional z/OS behavior

From a performance standpoint, it did not make sense to send more than one I/O at a time to the storage disk subsystem, because the hardware could process only one I/O at a time. Knowing this, the z/OS systems did not try to issue another I/O to a volume, which, in z/OS, is represented by a Unit Control Block (UCB), while an I/O was already active for that volume, as indicated by a UCB busy flag; see Figure 7-17 on page 169. Not only were the z/OS systems limited to processing only one I/O at a time, but also the storage subsystems accepted only one I/O at a time from different system images to a shared volume, for the same reasons mentioned above; see Figure 7-17 on page 169.

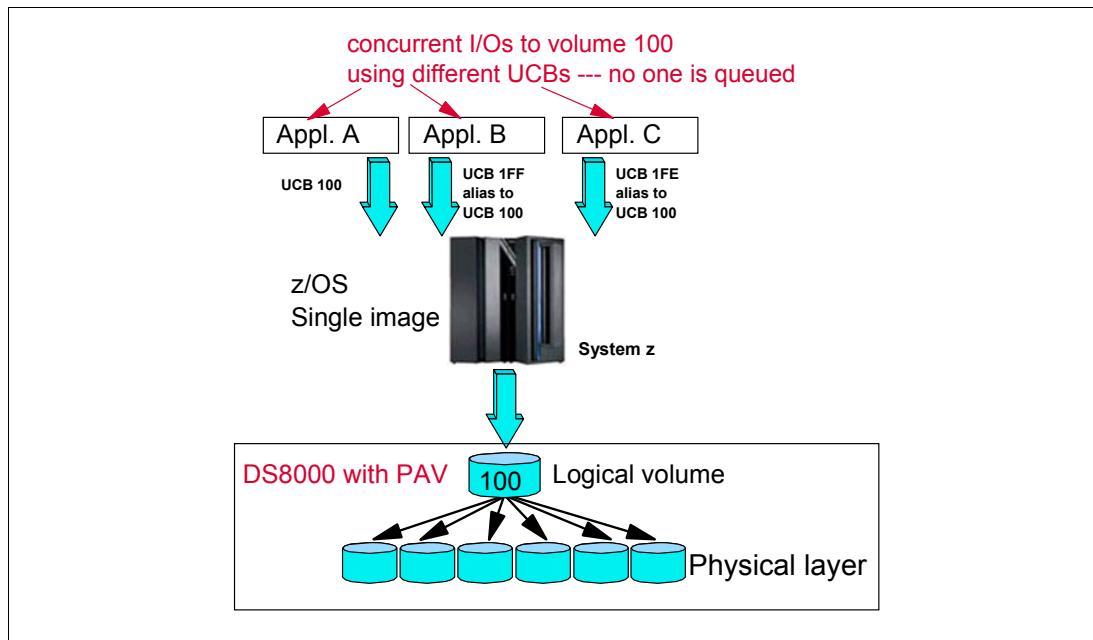


Figure 7-18 z/OS behavior with PAV

### Parallel I/O capability z/OS behavior with PAV

The DS8000 has the ability to perform more than one I/O to a CKD volume. Using the alias address in addition to the conventional base address, a z/OS host can use several UCBs for the same logical volume instead of one UCB per logical volume. For example, base address 100 might have alias addresses 1FF and 1FE, which allow for three parallel I/O operations to the same volume; see Figure 7-18.

This feature that allows parallel I/Os to a volume from one host is called *Parallel Access Volume (PAV)*.

The two concepts that are basic in the PAV functionality are:

- ▶ **Base address:** The base device address is the conventional unit address of a logical volume. There is only one base address associated with any volume.
- ▶ **Alias address:** An alias device address is mapped to a base address. I/O operations to an alias run against the associated base address storage space. There is no physical space associated with an alias address. You can define more than one alias per base.

Alias addresses have to be defined to the DS8000 and to the I/O definition file (IODF). This association is predefined, and you can add new aliases nondisruptively. Still, the association between base and alias is not fixed; the alias address can be assigned to a different base address by the z/OS Workload Manager.

For guidelines about PAV definition and support, see 16.3.2, “Parallel Access Volume definition” on page 485.

PAV is an optional licensed function on the DS8000 series. PAV also requires the purchase of the FICON Attachment feature.

### 7.7.3 z/OS Workload Manager: Dynamic PAV tuning

It is not always easy to predict which volumes should have an alias address assigned, and how many. Your software can automatically manage the aliases according to your goals. z/OS can exploit automatic PAV tuning if you are using the z/OS Workload Manager (WLM) in Goal mode. The WLM can dynamically tune the assignment of alias addresses. The Workload Manager monitors the device performance and is able to dynamically reassign alias addresses from one base to another if predefined goals for a workload are not met.

z/OS recognizes the aliases that are initially assigned to a base during the Nucleus Initialization Program (NIP) phase. If dynamic PAVs are enabled, the WLM can reassign an alias to another base by instructing the IOS to do so when necessary; see Figure 7-19.

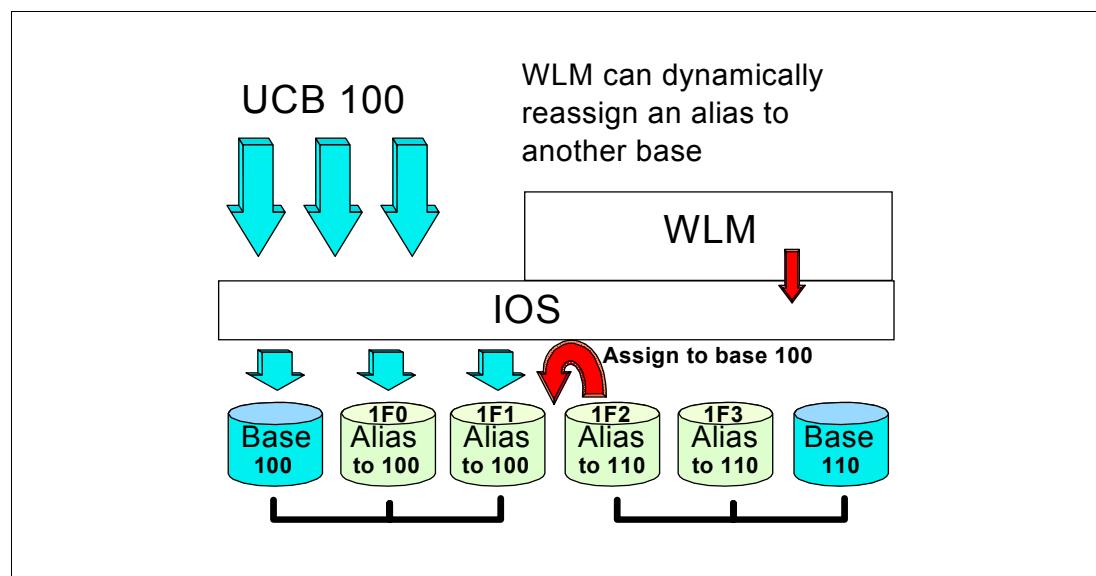


Figure 7-19 WLM assignment of alias addresses

z/OS Workload Manager in Goal mode tracks the system workload and checks if the workloads are meeting their goals established by the installation; see Figure 7-20.

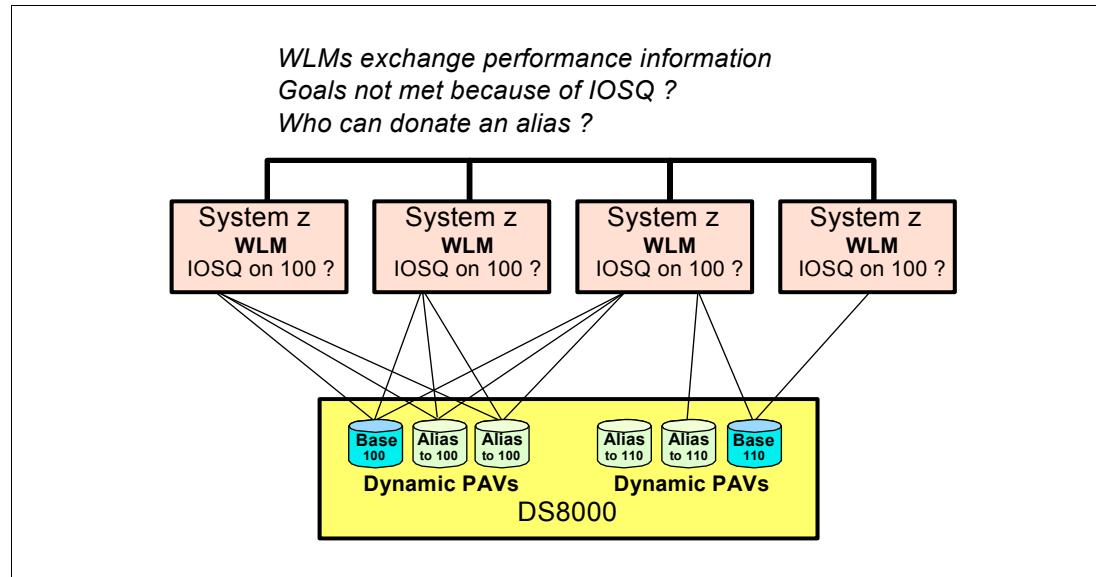


Figure 7-20 Dynamic PAVs in a sysplex

WLM also keeps track of the devices utilized by the different workloads, accumulates this information over time, and broadcasts it to the other systems in the same sysplex. If WLM determines that any workload is not meeting its goal due to IOS queue (IOSQ) time, WLM will attempt to find an alias device that can be reallocated to help this workload achieve its goal; see Figure 7-20.

#### 7.7.4 HyperPAV

Dynamic PAV requires the WLM to monitor the workload and goals. It takes some time until the WLM detects an I/O bottleneck. Then the WLM must coordinate the reassignment of alias addresses within the sysplex and the DS8000. All of this takes time, and if the workload is fluctuating or has a burst character, the job that caused the overload of one volume could have ended before the WLM had reacted. In these cases, the IOSQ time was not eliminated completely.

With HyperPAV, an on demand proactive assignment of aliases is possible, as shown in Figure 7-21.

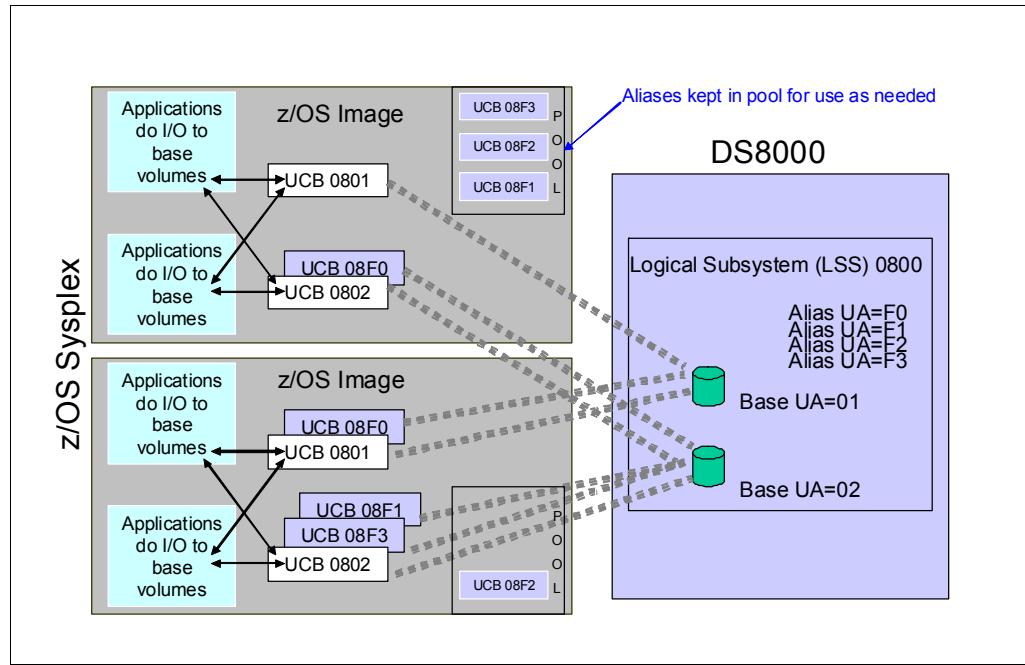


Figure 7-21 HyperPAV: Basic operational characteristics

With HyperPAV, the WLM is no longer involved in managing alias addresses. For each I/O, an alias address can be picked from a pool of alias addresses within the same LCU.

This capability also allows different HyperPAV hosts to use one alias to access different bases, which reduces the number of alias addresses required to support a set of bases in an IBM System z environment, with no latency in assigning an alias to a base. This functionality is also designed to enable applications to achieve better performance than is possible with the original PAV feature alone, while also using the same or fewer operating system resources.

## Benefits of HyperPAV

HyperPAV has been designed to:

- ▶ Provide an even more efficient Parallel Access Volumes (PAV) function
- ▶ Help clients who implement larger volumes to scale I/O rates without the need for additional PAV alias definitions
- ▶ Exploit the FICON architecture to reduce impact, improve addressing efficiencies, and provide storage capacity and performance improvements:
  - More dynamic assignment of PAV aliases improves efficiency
  - Number of PAV aliases needed might be reduced, taking fewer from the 64 K device limitation and leaving more storage for capacity use
- ▶ Enable a more dynamic response to changing workloads
- ▶ Simplified management of aliases
- ▶ Make it easier for users to make a decision to migrate to larger volume sizes

## **Optional licensed function**

HyperPAV is an optional licensed function of the DS8000 series. It is required in addition to the normal PAV license, which is capacity dependent. The HyperPAV license is independent of the capacity.

### **HyperPAV alias consideration on EAV**

HyperPAV provides a far more agile alias management algorithm, as aliases are dynamically bound to a base for the duration of the I/O for the z/OS image that issued the I/O. When I/O completes, the alias is returned to the pool in the LCU. It then becomes available to subsequent I/Os.

Our rule of thumb is that the number of aliases required can be approximated by the peak of the following multiplication: I/O rate multiplied by the average response time. For example, if the peak of the above calculation happened when the I/O rate is 2000 I/O per second and the average response time is 4 ms (which is 0.004 sec), then the result of above calculation will be:

$$2000 \text{ IO/sec} \times 0.004 \text{ sec/IO} = 8$$

This means that the average number of I/O operations executing at one time for that LCU during the peak period is eight. Therefore, eight aliases should be able to handle the peak I/O rate for that LCU. However, because this calculation is based on the average during the RMF™ period, you should multiply the result by two, to accommodate higher peaks within that RMF interval. So in this case, the recommended number of aliases would be:

$$2 \times 8 = 16$$

Depending on the kind of workload, there is a huge reduction in PAV-alias UCBs with HyperPAV. The combination of HyperPAV and EAV allows you to significantly reduce the constraint on the 64 K device address limit and in turn increase the amount of addressable storage available on z/OS. In conjunction with Multiple Subchannel Sets (MSS) on IBM System z9 and z10, you have even more flexibility in device configuration. Keep in mind that the EAV volumes will be supported only on IBM z/OS V1.10 and later. Refer to 16.3.1, “z/OS program enhancements” on page 475 for more details about EAV specifications and considerations.

**Note:** For more details about MSS, refer to *Multiple Subchannel Sets: An Implementation View*, REDP-4387, found at:

<http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/abstracts/redp4387.html?Open>

## **HyperPAV implementation and system requirements**

For support and implementation guidance, refer to 16.3.3, “HyperPAV z/OS support and implementation” on page 486 and 16.4.3, “PAV and HyperPAV z/VM support” on page 490.

## **RMF reporting on PAV**

RMF reports the number of exposures for each device in its Monitor/DASD Activity report and in its Monitor II and Monitor III Device reports. If the device is a HyperPAV base device, the number is followed by an 'H', for example, 5.4H. This value is the average number of HyperPAV volumes (base and alias) in that interval. RMF reports all I/O activity against the base address, not by the individual base and associated aliases. The performance information for the base includes all base and alias I/O activity.

HyperPAV would help minimize the Input/Output Supervisor Queue (IOSQ) Time. If you still see IOSQ Time, then there are two possible reasons:

- ▶ There are more aliases required to handle the I/O load compared to the number of aliases defined in the LCU.
- ▶ There is Device Reserve issued against the volume. A Device Reserve would make the volume unavailable to the next I/O, causing the next I/O to be queued. This delay will be recorded as IOSQ Time.

### 7.7.5 PAV in z/VM environments

z/VM provides PAV support in the following ways:

- ▶ As traditionally supported, for VM guests as dedicated guests through the CP ATTACH command or DEDICATE user directory statement.
- ▶ Starting with z/VM 5.2.0, with APAR VM63952, VM supports PAV minidisks.

Figure 7-22 and Figure 7-23 illustrate PAV in a z/VM environment.

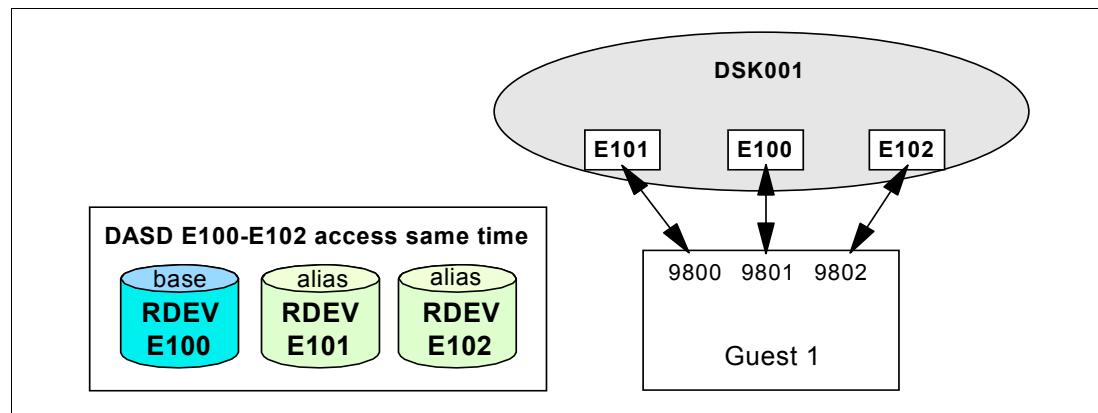


Figure 7-22 z/VM support of PAV volumes dedicated to a single guest virtual machine

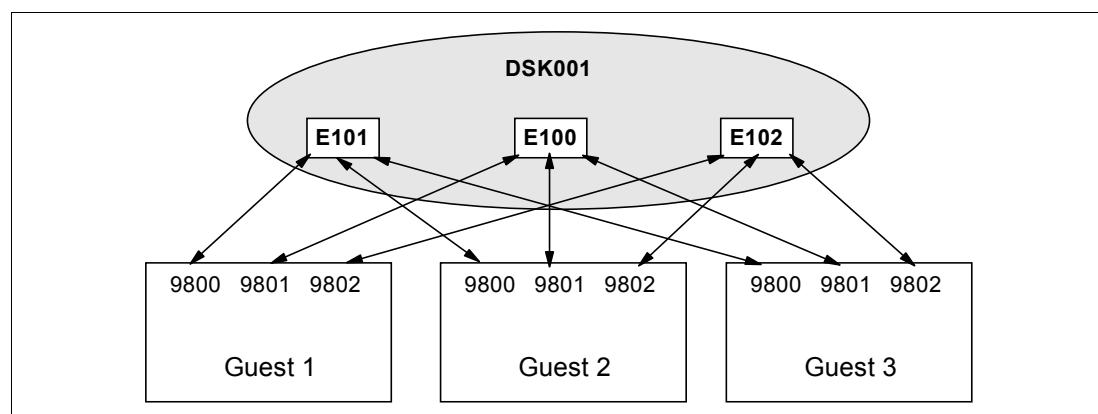


Figure 7-23 Linkable minidisks for guests that exploit PAV

In this way, PAV provides to the z/VM environments the benefits of a greater I/O performance (throughput) by reducing I/O queuing.

With the small programming enhancement (SPE) introduced with z/VM 5.2.0 and APAR VM63952, additional enhancements are available when using PAV with z/VM. For more information, see 16.4, “z/VM considerations” on page 490.

### 7.7.6 Multiple Allegiance

Normally, if any System z host image (server or LPAR) does an I/O request to a device address for which the storage disk subsystem is already processing an I/O that came from another System z host image, then the storage disk subsystem will send back a *device busy* indication, as shown in Figure 7-17 on page 169. This delays the new request and adds to the overall response time of the I/O; this delay is shown in the Device Busy Delay (AVG DB DLY) column in the RMF DASD Activity Report. Device Busy Delay is part of the Pend time.

The DS8000 series accepts multiple I/O requests from different hosts to the same device address, increasing parallelism and reducing channel impact. In older storage disk subsystems, a device had an implicit allegiance, that is, a relationship created in the control unit between the device and a channel path group when an I/O operation is accepted by the device. The allegiance causes the control unit to guarantee access (no busy status presented) to the device for the remainder of the channel program over the set of paths associated with the allegiance.

With Multiple Allegiance, the requests are accepted by the DS8000 and all requests are processed in parallel, unless there is a conflict when writing to the same data portion of the CKD logical volume, as shown in Figure 7-24.

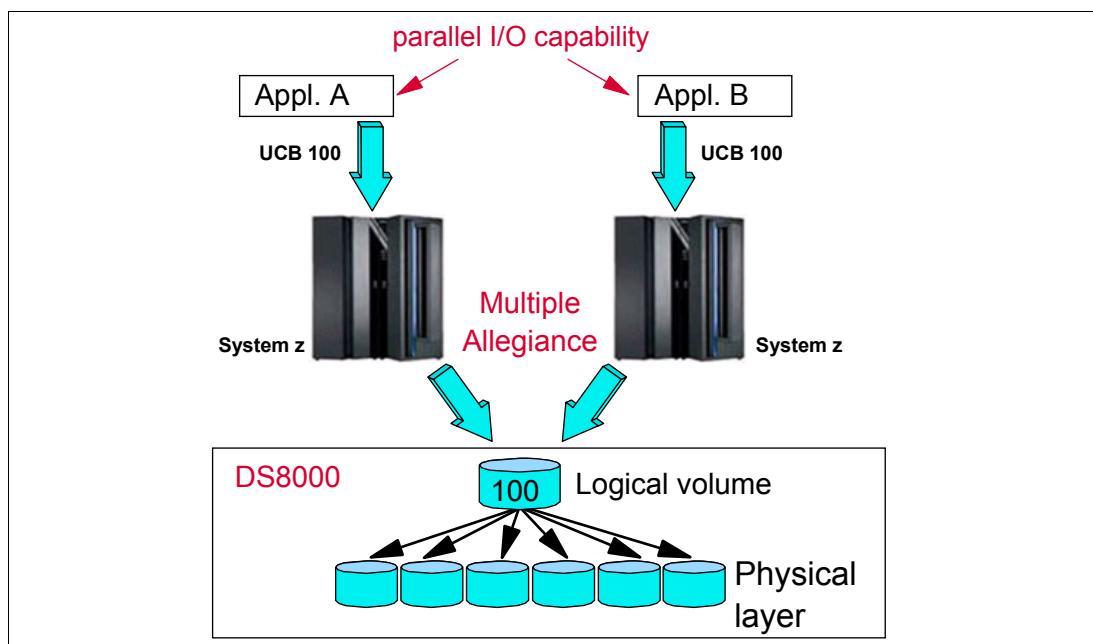


Figure 7-24 Parallel I/O capability with Multiple Allegiance

Still, good application software access patterns can improve the global parallelism by avoiding reserves, limiting the extent scope to a minimum, and setting an appropriate file mask, for example, if no write is intended.

In systems without Multiple Allegiance, all except the first I/O request to a shared volume are rejected, and the I/Os are queued in the System z channel subsystem, showing up in Device Busy Delay and PEND time in the RMF DASD Activity reports. Multiple Allegiance will allow multiple I/Os to a single volume to be serviced concurrently. However, a device busy

condition can still happen. This will occur when an active I/O is writing a certain data portion on the volume and another I/O request comes in and tries to either read or write to that same data. To ensure data integrity, those subsequent I/Os will get a busy condition until that previous I/O is finished with the write operation.

Multiple Allegiance provides significant benefits for environments running a sysplex, or System z systems sharing access to data volumes. Multiple Allegiance and PAV can operate together to handle multiple requests from multiple hosts.

### 7.7.7 I/O priority queuing

The concurrent I/O capability of the DS8000 allows it to execute multiple channel programs concurrently, as long as the data accessed by one channel program is not altered by another channel program.

#### Queuing of channel programs

When the channel programs conflict with each other and must be serialized to ensure data consistency, the DS8000 will internally queue channel programs. This subsystem I/O queuing capability provides significant benefits:

- ▶ Compared to the traditional approach of responding with a *device busy* status to an attempt to start a second I/O operation to a device, I/O queuing in the storage disk subsystem eliminates the impact associated with posting status indicators and redriving the queued channel programs.
- ▶ Contention in a shared environment is eliminated. Channel programs that cannot execute in parallel are processed in the order that they are queued. A fast system cannot monopolize access to a volume also accessed from a slower system. Each system gets a fair share.

#### Priority queuing

I/Os from different z/OS system images can be queued in a priority order. It is the z/OS Workload Manager that makes use of this priority to privilege I/Os from one system against the others. You can activate I/O priority queuing in WLM Service Definition settings. WLM has to run in Goal mode.

When a channel program with a higher priority comes in and is put in front of the queue of channel programs with lower priority, the priority of the low-priority programs will be increased; see Figure 7-25. This prevents high-priority channel programs from dominating lower priority ones and gives each system a fair share.

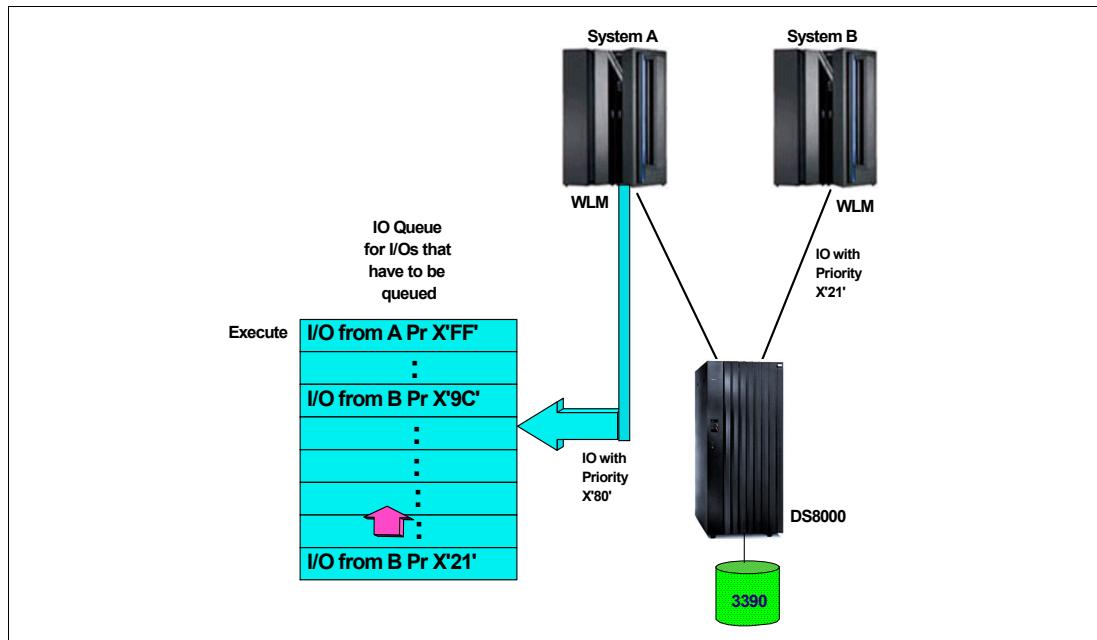


Figure 7-25 I/O priority queuing

### 7.7.8 Performance considerations on Extended Distance FICON

The function known as Extended Distance FICON produces performance results similar to XRC Emulation at long distances. Extended Distance FICON does not really extend the distance supported by FICON, but can provide the same benefits as XRC Emulation. In other words, with Extended Distance FICON, there is no need to have XRC Emulation running on the Channel extender.

For support and implementation discussions, refer to 16.6, “Extended Distance FICON” on page 492.

Figure 7-26 shows Extended Distance FICON (EDF) performance comparisons for a sequential write workload. The workload consists of 64 jobs performing 4 KB sequential writes to 64 data sets with 1113 cylinders each, which all reside on one large disk volume. There is one SDM configured with a single, non-enhanced reader to handle the updates. When turning the XRC Emulation off (Brocade emulation in the diagram), the performance drops significantly, especially at longer distances. However, after the Extended Distance FICON (Persistent IU Pacing) function is installed, the performance returns to where it was with XRC Emulation on.

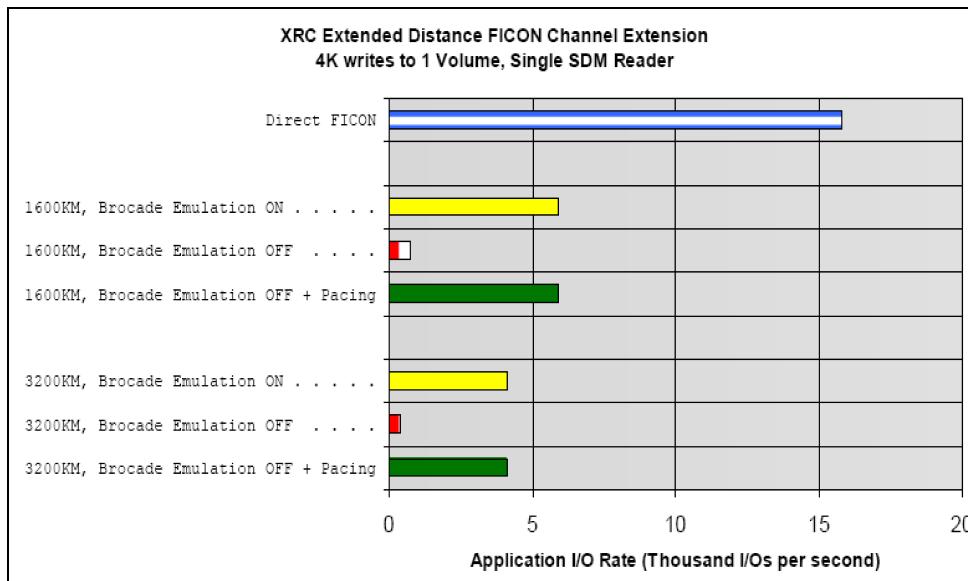


Figure 7-26 Extended Distance FICON with small data blocks sequential writes on one SDM reader

Figure 7-27 shows EDF performance with the same comparison shown in Figure 10-31, only this time used in conjunction with Multiple Reader support. There is one SDM configured with four enhanced readers. These results again show that when the XRC Emulation is turned off, the performance drops significantly at long distances. When the Extended Distance FICON function is installed, the performance again improves significantly.

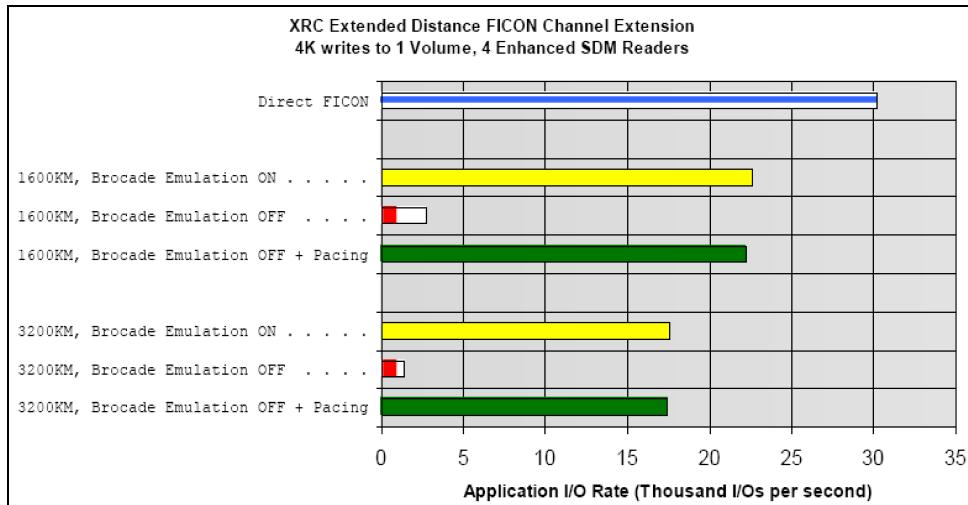


Figure 7-27 Extended Distance FICON with small data blocks sequential writes on four SDM readers

## 7.7.9 High Performance FICON for z

The FICON protocol involved several exchanges between the channel and the control unit. This lead to unnecessary overhead. With High Performance FICON, the protocol has been streamlined and the number of exchanges has been reduced (see Figure 7-28).

High Performance FICON for z (zHPF) is a new FICON protocol and system I/O architecture that results in improvements for small block transfers (a track or less) to disk using the device independent random access method. Instead of Channel Command Word (CCWs), Transport Control Words (TCWs) can be used. I/O that is using the Media Manager, like DB2, PDSE, VSAM, zFS, VTOC Index (CVAF), Catalog BCS/VVDS, or Extended Format SAM, will benefit from zHPF.

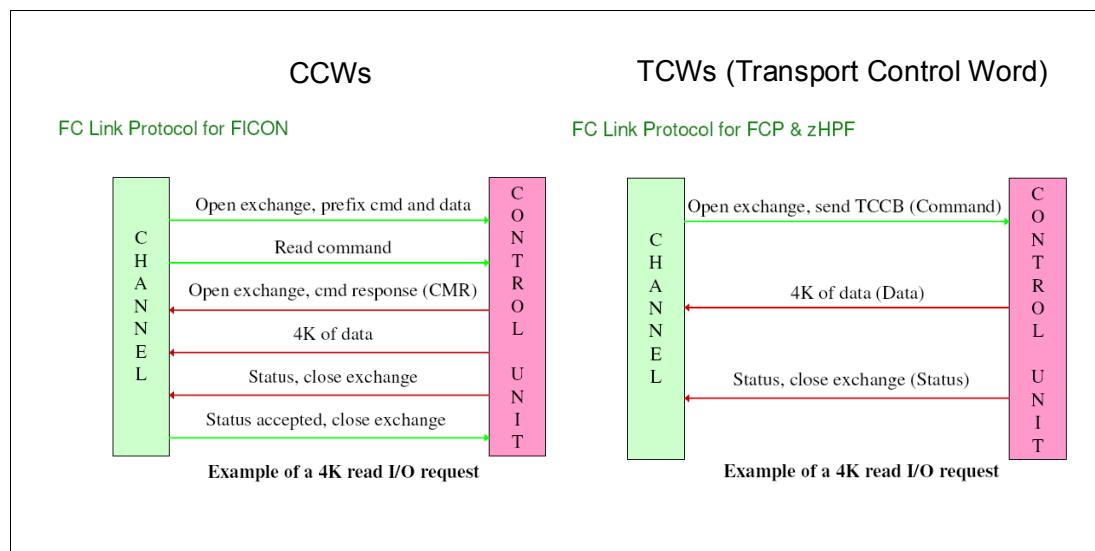


Figure 7-28 zHPF protocol

High Performance FICON for z (zHPF) is an optional licensed feature.

In situations where this is the exclusive access in use, it can improve FICON I/O throughput on a single DS8000 port by 100%. Realistic workloads with a mix of data set transfer sizes can see 30 - 70% of FICON IOs utilizing zHPF, resulting in up to a 10-30% channel utilization savings.

Although customers should see I/Os complete faster as the result of implementing zHPF, the real benefit is expected to be obtained by using fewer channels to support existing disk volumes, or increasing the number of disk volumes supported by existing channels.

Additionally, the changes in architecture offer end-to-end system enhancements to improve reliability, availability, and serviceability (RAS).

Only the System z10® processors support zHPF, and only on the FICON Express8, FICON Express 4, or FICON Express2 adapters. The FICON Express adapters are *not* supported. The required software is z/OS V1.7 with IBM Lifecycle Extension for zOS V1.7 (5637-A01), z/OS V1.8, z/OS V1.9, or z/OS V1.10 with PTFs.

IBM Laboratory testing and measurements are available at the following website:

[http://www.ibm.com/systems/z/hardware/connectivity/ficon\\_performance.html](http://www.ibm.com/systems/z/hardware/connectivity/ficon_performance.html)

zHPF is transparent to applications. However, z/OS configuration changes are required: Hardware Configuration Definition (HCD) must have Channel path ID (CHPID) type FC

defined for all the CHPIIDs that are defined to the 2107 control unit, which also supports zHPF. For the DS8000, installation of the Licensed Feature Key for the zHPF Feature is required. Once these items are addressed, existing FICON port definitions in the DS8000 will function in either FICON or zHPF protocols in response to the type of request being performed. These are nondisruptive changes.

For z/OS, after the PTFs are installed in the LPAR, you must then set ZHPF=YES in IECIOSxx in SYS1.PARMLIB or issue the SETIOS ZHPF=YES command. ZHPF=NO is the default setting.

IBM recommends customers use the ZHPF=YES setting after the required configuration changes and prerequisites are met. For more information about zHPF in general, refer to:

<http://www.ibm.com/systems/z/resources/faq/index.html>

### **zHPF multitrack support**

While the original zHPF implementation supported the new Transport Control Words only for I/O that did not span more than a track, the DS8700 supports TCW also for I/O operations on multiple tracks.

#### **7.7.10 Extended distance High Performance FICON**

This feature allows clients to achieve equivalent FICON write performance at a distance, because some existing customers running multiple sites at long distances (10-100 km) cannot exploit zHPF due to the large impact to the write I/O service time.

Figure 7-29 shows that on the base code, without this feature, going from 0 km to 20 km will increase the service time by 0.4 ms. With the extended distance High Performance FICON, the service time increase will be reduced to 0.2 ms.

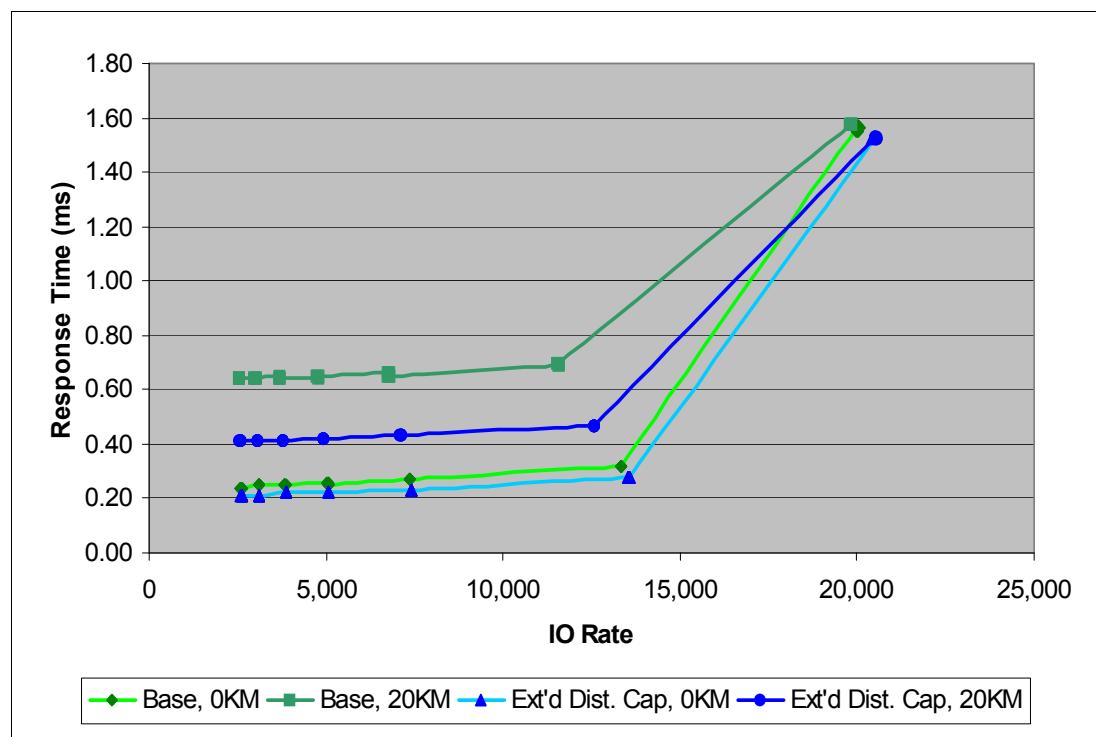


Figure 7-29 Single Port 4K Write Hit



# Planning and installation

In this part, we discuss matters related to the installation planning process for the IBM System Storage DS8000 series. We cover the following subjects:

- ▶ Physical planning and installation
- ▶ Hardware Management Console planning and setup
- ▶ Performance
- ▶ IBM System Storage DS8700 features and license keys





# Physical planning and installation

This chapter discusses the various steps involved in the planning and installation of the IBM System Storage DS8700, including a reference listing of the information required for the setup and where to find detailed technical reference material. The topics covered include:

- ▶ Considerations prior to installation
- ▶ Planning for the physical installation
- ▶ Network connectivity planning
- ▶ Secondary HMC, SSPC, TKLM, LDAP, and Business-to-Business VPN planning
- ▶ Remote mirror and copy connectivity
- ▶ Disk capacity considerations
- ▶ Planning for growth

The publication *IBM System Storage DS8000 Introduction and Planning Guide*, GC35-0515 should be reviewed and contains additional information and details that you will need during the configuration and installation process.

## 8.1 Considerations prior to installation

Start by developing and following a project plan to address the many topics needed for a successful implementation. In general, the following items should be considered for your installation planning checklist:

- ▶ Plan for growth to minimize disruption to operations. Expansion frames can only be placed to the right (from the front) of the DS8700.
- ▶ Location suitability, floor loading, access constraints, elevators, doorways, and so on.
- ▶ Power requirements: Redundancy and use of Uninterrupted Power Supply (UPS).
- ▶ Environmental requirements: Adequate cooling capacity.
- ▶ A place and connection for the secondary HMC.
- ▶ A plan for encryption integration if FDE drives are considered for the configuration.
- ▶ A place and connection for the TKLM server.
- ▶ Integration of LDAP to allow a single user ID / password management.
- ▶ Business to Business VPN for the DS8700 to allow fast data off-load and service connections.
- ▶ A plan detailing the desired logical configuration of the storage.
- ▶ Consider TPC monitoring for your environment.
- ▶ Oversee the available services from IBM to check for microcode compatibility and configuration checks.
- ▶ Available Copy Services and backup technologies.
- ▶ Staff education and availability to implement the storage plan. Alternatively, IBM or IBM Business Partner services.

### Client responsibilities for the installation

The DS8700 series is specified as an IBM or IBM Business Partner installation and setup system. Still, the following activities are some of the required planning and installation activities for which the client is responsible at a high level:

- ▶ Physical configuration planning is a client responsibility. Your disk Marketing Specialist can help you plan and select the DS8700 series physical configuration and features. Introductory information, including required and optional features, can be found in this book and in *IBM System Storage DS8000 Introduction and Planning Guide*, GC35-0515.
- ▶ Installation planning is a client responsibility. Information about planning the installation of your DS8700 series, including equipment, site, and power requirements, can be found in this book and in *IBM System Storage DS8000 Introduction and Planning Guide*, GC35-0515.
- ▶ Integration of LDAP and Business to Business VPN connectivity are customer responsibilities. IBM can provide services to set up and integrate these components. Guidelines about how to set up these components can be found in this book.
- ▶ Integration of TPC and SNMP into the customer environment for monitoring of performance and configuration is a customer responsibility. IBM can provide services to set up and integrate these components. Guidelines about how to set up these components can be found in this book.
- ▶ Configuration and integration of TKLM servers and DS8700 Encryption for extended data security is a customer responsibility. IBM provides services to set up and integrate these components. Guidelines on how to set up these components can be found in this book.

- ▶ Logical configuration planning and application is a client responsibility. *Logical configuration* refers to the creation of RAID ranks, volumes, and LUNs, and the assignment of the configured capacity to servers. Application of the initial logical configuration and all subsequent modifications to the logical configuration are client responsibilities. The logical configuration can be created, applied, and modified using the DS Storage Manager, DS CLI, or DS Open API.

IBM Global Services will also apply or modify your logical configuration (these are fee-based services).

In this chapter, you will find information that will assist you with the planning and installation activities.

### **8.1.1 Who should be involved**

We suggest having a project manager to coordinate the many tasks necessary for a successful installation. Installation will require close cooperation with the user community, the IT support staff, and the technical resources responsible for floor space, power, and cooling.

A Storage Administrator should also coordinate requirements from the user applications and systems to build a storage plan for the installation. This will be needed to configure the storage after the initial hardware installation is complete.

The following people should be briefed and engaged in the planning process for the physical installation:

- ▶ Systems and Storage Administrators
- ▶ Installation Planning Engineer
- ▶ Building Engineer for floor loading and air conditioning and Location Electrical Engineer
- ▶ Security Engineers for Business-to-Business VPN, LDAP, TKLM, and encryption
- ▶ Administrator and Operator for monitoring and handling considerations
- ▶ IBM or Business Partner Installation Engineer

### **8.1.2 What information is required**

A validation list to assist in the installation process should include:

- ▶ Drawings detailing the positioning as specified and agreed upon with a building engineer, ensuring the weight is within limits for the route to the final installation position.
- ▶ Approval to use elevators if the weight and size are acceptable.
- ▶ Connectivity information, servers, and SAN, and mandatory LAN connections.
- ▶ Agreement on the security structure of the installed DS8700 with all security engineers.
- ▶ Ensure that you have a detailed storage plan agreed upon, with the client available to understand how the storage is to be configured. Ensure that the configuration specialist has all the information to configure all the arrays and set up the environment as required.
- ▶ License keys for the Operating Environment License (OEL), which are mandatory, and any optional license keys.

The *IBM System Storage DS8000 Introduction and Planning Guide*, GC35-0515 contains additional information about physical planning. You can download it from the following address:

<http://www-03.ibm.com/systems/storage/disk/ds8000/index.html>

## 8.2 Planning for the physical installation

This section discusses the physical installation planning process and gives some important tips and considerations.

### 8.2.1 Delivery and staging area

The shipping carrier is responsible for delivering and unloading the DS8700 as close to its final destination as possible. Inform your carrier of the weight and size of the packages to be delivered and inspect the site and the areas where the packages will be moved (for example, hallways, floor protection, elevator size and loading, and so on).

Table 8-1 shows the final packaged dimensions and maximum packaged weight of the DS8700 storage unit shipgroup.

*Table 8-1 Packaged dimensions and weight for DS8700 models*

Shipping container	Packaged dimensions (in centimeters and inches)	Maximum packaged weight (in kilograms and pounds)
Model 941 (2-way) pallet or crate	Height 207.5 cm (81.7 in.) Width 101.5 cm (40 in.) Depth 137.5 cm (54.2 in.)	1319 kg (2906 lb)
Model 941 (4-way) pallet or crate	Height 207.5 cm (81.7 in.) Width 101.5 cm (40 in.) Depth 137.5 cm (54.2 in.)	1378 kg (3036 lb)
Model 94E expansion unit pallet or crate	Height 207.5 cm (81.7 in.) Width 101.5 cm (40 in.) Depth 137.5 cm (54.2 in.)	1218 kg (2685 lb)
Shipgroup (height may be lower and weight may be less)	Height 105.0 cm (41.3 in.) Width 65.0 cm (25.6 in.) Depth 105.0 cm (41.3 in.)	up to 90 kg (199 lb)
(if ordered) System Storage Productivity Center (SSPC), PSU	Height 68.0 cm (26.8 in.) Width 65.0 cm (25.6 in.) Depth 105.0 cm (41.3 in.)	47 kg (104 lb)
(if ordered) System Storage Productivity Center (SSPC), PSU, External HMC	Height 68.0 cm (26.8 in.) Width 65.0 cm (25.6 in.) Depth 105.0 cm (41.3 in.)	62 kg (137 lb)
(if ordered as MES) External HMC container	Height 40.0 cm (17.7 in.) Width 65.0 cm (25.6 in.) Depth 105.0 cm (41.3 in.)	32 kg (71 lb)

**Attention:** A fully configured model in the packaging can weight over 1416 kg (3120 lbs). Use of fewer than three persons to move it can result in injury.

### 8.2.2 Floor type and loading

The DS8700 can be installed on a raised or nonraised floor. We recommend that you install the unit on a raised floor, because it allows you to operate the storage unit with better cooling efficiency and cabling layout protection.

The total weight and space requirements of the storage unit will depend on the configuration features that you ordered. You might need to consider calculating the weight of the unit and the expansion box (if ordered) in their maximum capacity to allow for the addition of new features.

Table 8-2 provides the weights of the various DS8700 models.

*Table 8-2 DS8700 weights*

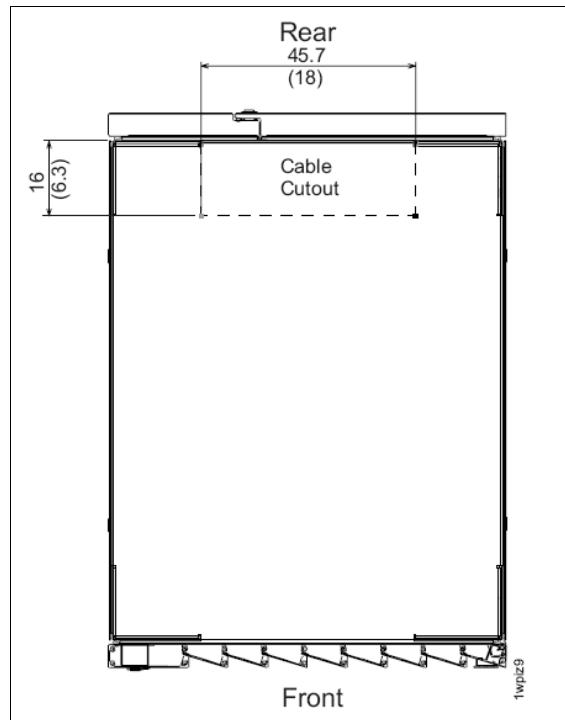
Model	Maximum weight
Model 941 (2-way)	1200 kg (2640 lb)
Model 941 (4-way)	1256 kg (2770 lb)
Model 94E (first expansion unit)	1098 kg (2420 lb)

**Important:** You need to check with the building engineer or other appropriate personnel that the floor loading was properly considered.

Raised floors can better accommodate cabling layout. The power and interface cables enter the storage unit through the rear side.

Figure 8-1 shows the location of the cable cutouts. You may use the following measurements when you cut the floor tile:

- ▶ Width: 45.7 cm (18.0 in.)
- ▶ Depth: 16 cm (6.3 in.)



*Figure 8-1 Floor tile cable cutout for DS8700*

### 8.2.3 Room space and service clearance

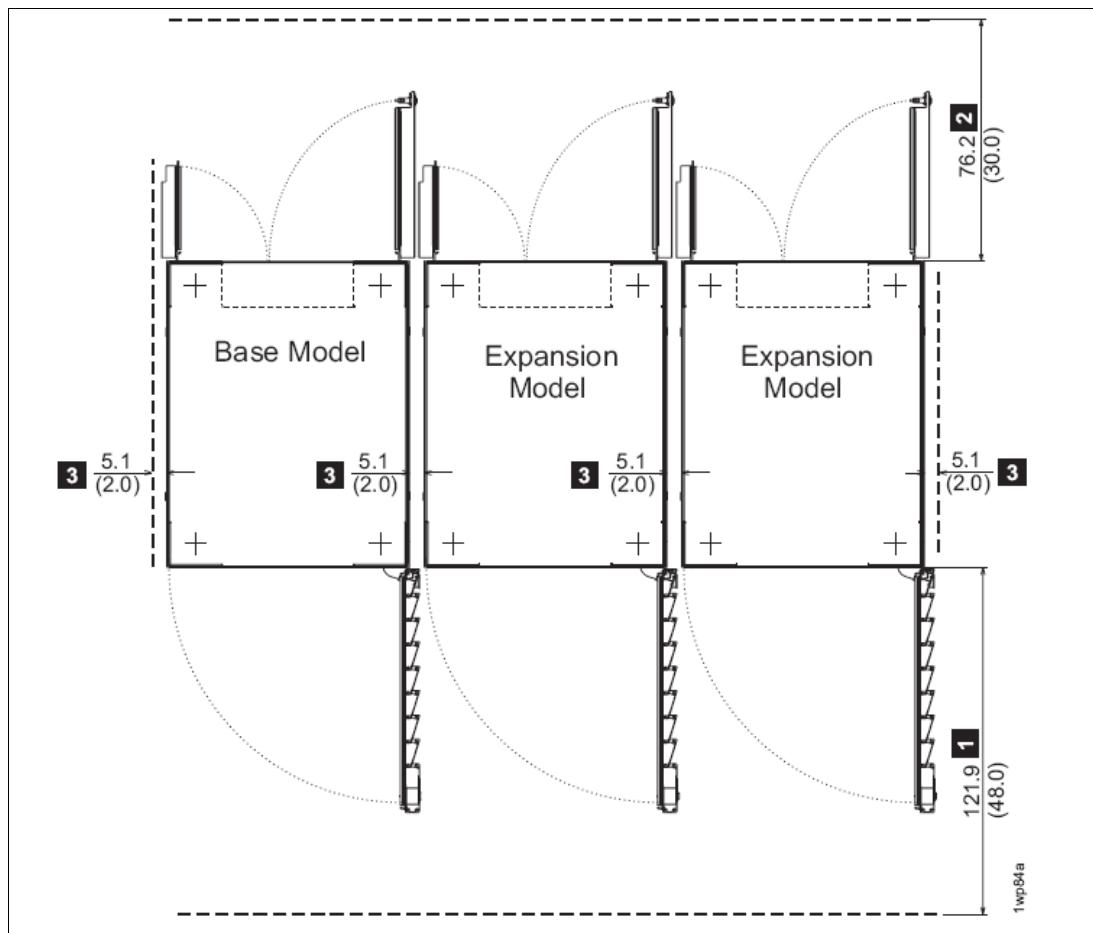
The total amount of space needed by the storage units can be calculated using the dimensions in Table 8-3.

*Table 8-3 DS8700 dimensions*

Dimension with covers	Model 941 (2-way) (base frame only)	Model 941 (4-way) (base frame only)	Model 94E (base frame only)
Height	76 in. 193 cm	76 in. 193 cm	76 in. 193 cm
Width	33.3 in. 84.7 cm	33.3 in. 84.7 cm	33.3 in. 84.7 cm
Depth	46.7 in. 118.3 cm	46.7 in. 118.3 cm	46.7 in. 118.3 cm

The storage unit location area should also cover the service clearance needed by IBM service representatives when accessing the front and rear of the storage unit. You can use the following minimum service clearances; the dimensions are also shown in Figure 8-2:

- ▶ For the front of the unit, allow a minimum of 121.9 cm (48 in.) for the service clearance.
- ▶ For the rear of the unit, allow a minimum of 76.2 cm (30 in.) for the service clearance.
- ▶ For the sides of the unit, allow a minimum of 5.1 cm (2 in.) for the service clearance.



*Figure 8-2 Service clearance requirements*

## 8.2.4 Power requirements and operating environment

Consider the following basic items when planning for the DS8700 power requirements:

- ▶ Power connectors
- ▶ Input voltage
- ▶ Power consumption and environment
- ▶ Power control features
- ▶ Power Line Disturbance (PLD) feature

### Power connectors

Each DS8700 base and expansion unit has redundant power supply systems. The two line cords to each frame should be supplied by separate AC power distribution systems. Table 8-4 lists the standard connectors and receptacles for the DS8700.

*Table 8-4 Connectors and receptacles*

Location	In-line connector	Wall receptacle
US-Chicago	7428-78	7324-78
US/AP/LA/Canada	7428-78	7324-78
EMEA	Not applicable	Hard wire
Japan	460C9W	460R9W

Use a 60 A rating for the low voltage feature and a 25 A rating for the high voltage feature.

For more details regarding power connectors and line cords, refer to the publication *IBM System Storage DS8000 Introduction and Planning Guide*, GC35-0515.

### Input voltage

The DS8700 supports a three-phase input voltage source. Table 8-5 shows the power specifications for each feature code.

*Table 8-5 DS8700 input voltages and frequencies*

Characteristic	Low voltage (Feature 9090)	High voltage (Feature 9091)
Nominal input voltage (3-phase)	200, 208, 220, or 240 RMS Vac	380, 400, 415, or 480 RMS Vac
Minimum input voltage (3-phase)	180 RMS Vac	333 RMS Vac
Maximum input voltage (3-phase)	264 RMS Vac	508 RMS Vac
Steady-state input frequency	50 ± 3 or 60 ± 3.0 Hz	50 ± 3 or 60 ± 3.0 Hz

## Power consumption and environment

Table 8-6 provides the power consumption specifications of the DS8700. The power estimates given here are on the conservative side and assume a high transaction rate workload.

Table 8-6 DS8700 power consumption

Measurement	Model 941	Expansion Models 94E	Expansion Model (94E) no I/O tower
Peak electric power	6.8 kVA	6.5 kVA	5.5 kVA
Thermal load (BTU/hr)	23,000	22,200	18,900

These numbers assume fully configured racks using 15 K RPM technology. For systems not fully configured, subtract 270 W for each disk enclosure not populated with drives in the rack. Also, subtract 25 W for each adapter card not populated. For example, if you install the fourth expansion rack with 128 drives, the peak electric for that rack should be estimated at:

$$5.5 \text{ kVA} - (8 \times 270 \text{ W}) = 3.34 \text{ kVA}$$

Air circulation for the DS8700 is provided by the various fans installed throughout the frame. The power complex and most of the lower part of the machine take air from the front and exhaust air to the rear. The upper disk drive section takes air from the front and rear sides and exhausts air to the top of the machine.

The recommended operating temperature for the DS8700 is between 20 to 25°C (68 to 78°F) at a relative humidity range of 40 to 50 percent.

**Important:** Make sure that air circulation for the DS8700 base unit and expansion units is maintained free from obstruction to keep the unit operating in the specified temperature range.

## Power control features

The DS8700 has remote power control features that allow you to control the power of the storage complex through the DS Storage Manager console. Another power control feature is available for the System z environment.

For more details regarding power control features, refer to the publication *IBM System Storage DS8000 Introduction and Planning Guide*, GC35-0515.

## Power Line Disturbance feature

The Power Line Disturbance (PLD) feature stretches the available uptime of the DS8700 from 30 milliseconds to 30-50 seconds during a PLD event. We recommend that this feature is installed, especially with environments that have no UPS. There is no additional physical connection planning needed for the client with or without the PLD.

## 8.2.5 Host interface and cables

The DS8700 Model 941 supports a maximum of 32 host adapters and four device adapter pairs.

The DS8700 supports one type of fiber adapter, the 4 Gb Fibre Channel/FICON PCI Express adapter, which is offered in shortwave and longwave versions.

### Fibre Channel/FICON

The DS8700 Fibre Channel/FICON adapter has four ports per card. Each port supports FCP or FICON, but not simultaneously. FCP is supported on point-to-point, fabric, and arbitrated loop topologies. FICON is supported on point-to-point and fabric topologies. Fabric components from various vendors, including IBM, CNT, McDATA, Brocade, and Cisco, are supported by both environments.

The Fibre Channel/FICON short wave Host Adapter, feature 3143, when used with 50 micron multi-mode fibre cable, supports point-to-point distances of up to 300 meters. The Fibre Channel/FICON long wave Host Adapter, when used with 9 micron single-mode fibre cable, extends the point-to-point distance to 10 km for feature 3245 (4 Gb 10 km LW Host Adapter). Feature 3243 (4 Gb LW Host Adapter) supports point-to-point distances up to 4 km. Additional distance can be achieved with the use of appropriate SAN fabric components.

A 31 meter fiber optic cable or a 2 meter jumper cable can be ordered for each Fibre Channel adapter port. Table 8-7 lists the various fiber optic cable features for the FCP/FICON adapters.

Table 8-7 FCP/FICON cable features

Feature	Length	Connector	Characteristic
1410	31 m	LC/LC	50 micron, multimode
1411	31 m	LC/SC	50 micron, multimode
1412	2 m	SC to LC adapter	50 micron, multimode
1420	31 m	LC/LC	9 micron, single mode
1421	31 m	LC/SC	9 micron, single mode
1422	2 m	SC to LC adapter	9 micron, single mode

**Note:** The Remote Mirror and Copy functions use FCP as the communication link between DS8700s, DS8000s, DS6000s, and ESS Models 800 and 750.

For more details about IBM-supported attachments, refer to the publication *IBM System Storage DS8000 Host Systems Attachment Guide*, SC26-7917.

For the most up-to-date details about host types, models, adapters, and operating systems supported by the DS8700 unit, refer to the DS8700 System Storage Interoperation Center at the following address:

[http://www-03.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/ssic/displayesssearchwithoutjs.wss?start\\_over=yes](http://www-03.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/ssic/displayesssearchwithoutjs.wss?start_over=yes)

## 8.3 Network connectivity planning

Implementing the DS8700 requires that you consider the physical network connectivity of the storage adapters and the Hardware Management Console (HMC) within your local area network.

Check your local environment for the following DS8700 unit connections:

- ▶ Hardware Management Console and network access
- ▶ System Storage Productivity Center and network access
- ▶ DSCLI console
- ▶ DSCIMCLI console
- ▶ Remote support connection
- ▶ Remote power control
- ▶ Storage area network connection
- ▶ TKLM connection
- ▶ LDAP connection

For more details about physical network connectivity, refer to the publications *IBM System Storage DS8000 User's Guide*, SC26-7915 and *IBM System Storage DS8000 Introduction and Planning Guide*, GC35-0515.

### 8.3.1 Hardware Management Console and network access

Hardware Management Consoles (HMCs) are the focal point for configuration, Copy Services management, and maintenance for a DS8700 unit.

The internal HMC included with every primary rack is mounted in a pull-out tray for convenience and security. The HMC consists of a mobile workstation (Lenovo Thinkpad W500) with adapters for modem and 10/100/1000 Mb Ethernet. Ethernet cables connect the HMC to the storage unit.

A second, redundant external HMC is orderable and highly recommended for environments that use TKLM encryption management and Advanced Copy Services functions. The second HMC is external to the DS8700 rack(s) and consists of a similar mobile workstation as the primary HMC.

**Tip:** To ensure that the IBM service representative can quickly and easily access an external HMC, place the external HMC rack within 15.2 m (50 ft) of the storage units that are connected to it.

The management console can be connected to your network for remote management of your system by using the DS Storage Manager web-based graphical user interface (GUI), the DS Command-Line Interface (CLI), or using storage management software through the DS Open API. In order to use the CLI to manage your storage unit, you need to connect the management console to your LAN because the CLI interface is not available on the HMC. The DS8700 can be managed from the HMC, or remotely using SSPC. Connecting the System Storage Productivity Center (SSPC) to your LAN allows you to access the DS Storage Manager GUI from any location that has network access.

In order to connect the management consoles (internal, and external if present) to your network, you need to provide the following settings to your IBM service representative so that he can configure the management consoles for attachment to your LAN:

- ▶ Management console network IDs, host names, and domain name
- ▶ Domain Name Server (DNS) settings (if you plan to use DNS to resolve network names)
- ▶ Routing information

For additional information regarding the HMC planning, refer to Chapter 9, “Hardware Management Console planning and setup” on page 207.

### **8.3.2 System Storage Productivity Center and network access**

SSPC is a solution consisting of hardware and software elements.

#### **SSPC hardware**

The SSPC (IBM model 2805-MC4) server contains the following hardware components:

- ▶ x86 server 1U rack installed
- ▶ One Intel Xeon® quad-core processor, with a speed of 2.4 GHz, a cache of 8 MB, and power consumption of 80 W
- ▶ 8 GB of RAM (eight 1-inch dual in-line memory modules of double-data-rate three memory, with a data rate of 1333 MHz)
- ▶ Two 146 GB hard disk drives, each with a speed of 15 K
- ▶ One Broadcom 6708 Ethernet card
- ▶ One CD/DVD bay with read and write-read capability

Optional components are:

- ▶ KVM Unit
- ▶ Secondary power supply

#### **SSPC software**

The IBM System Storage Productivity Center includes the following pre-installed (separately purchased) software, running under a licensed Microsoft® Windows Server 2008 32-bit Enterprise Edition (included):

- ▶ IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center V4.1.1 licensed as TPC Basic Edition. A TPC upgrade requires that you purchase and add additional TPC licenses.
- ▶ IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller Console V5.1.0 (CIM Agent and GUI).
- ▶ DS CIM Agent Command-Line Interface (DSCIMCLI) V5.4.3.
- ▶ IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center for Replication (TPC-R) V4.1.1. To run TPC-R on SSPC, you must purchase and add TPC-R licenses.
- ▶ IBM DB2 Enterprise Server Edition 9.5 with Fix Pack 3.
- ▶ IPv6 installed on Windows Server 2008.

Optionally, the following components can be installed on the SSPC:

- ▶ Software components contained in SSPC V1.3 but not on previous SSPC versions (TPC-R, DSCIMCLI, DS3000, DS40000, or DS5000 Storage Manager).
- ▶ DS8700 Command-Line Interface (DSCLI).
- ▶ Antivirus software.

Customers have the option to purchase and install the individual software components to create their own SSPC server.

For details, refer to Chapter 12, “System Storage Productivity Center” on page 263, and *IBM System Storage Productivity Center Deployment Guide*, SG24-7560.

### **Network connectivity**

In order to connect the System Storage Productivity Center (SSPC) to your network, you need to provide the following settings to your IBM service representative:

- ▶ SSPC network IDs, host names, and domain name
- ▶ Domain Name Server (DNS) settings (if you plan to use DNS to resolve network names)

### **Routing information**

There are several networks ports that need to be opened between the SSPC console and the DS8700 and LDAP server if the SSPC is installed behind a firewall.

#### **8.3.3 DSCLI console**

The DSCLI provides a command-line interface for managing and configuring the DS8700 storage system. The DSCLI can be installed on and used from a LAN-connected system, such as the storage administrator’s mobile computer. You might consider installing the DSCLI on a separate workstation connected to the storage unit’s LAN.

For details about the hardware and software requirements for the DSCLI, refer to the *IBM System Storage DS8000: Command-Line Interface User’s Guide*, SC26-7916.

#### **8.3.4 DSCIMCLI**

The DSCIMCLI has to be used to configure the CIM agent running on the HMC. The DS8700 can be managed either by the CIM agent that is bundled with the HMC or with a separately installed CIM agent. The DSCIMCLI utility, which configures the CIM agent, is available from the DS CIM agent website as part of the DS CIM agent installation bundle, and also as a separate installation bundle.

For details about the configuration of the DSCIMCLI, refer to the *IBM DS Open Application Programming Interface Reference*, GC35-0516.

#### **8.3.5 Remote support connection**

Remote support connection is available from the HMC using a modem (dial-up) and the Virtual Private Network (VPN) over the Internet through the customer LAN.

You can take advantage of the DS8700 remote support feature for outbound calls (Call Home function) or inbound calls (remote service access by an IBM technical support representative). You need to provide an analog telephone line for the HMC modem.

Figure 8-3 shows a typical remote support connection.

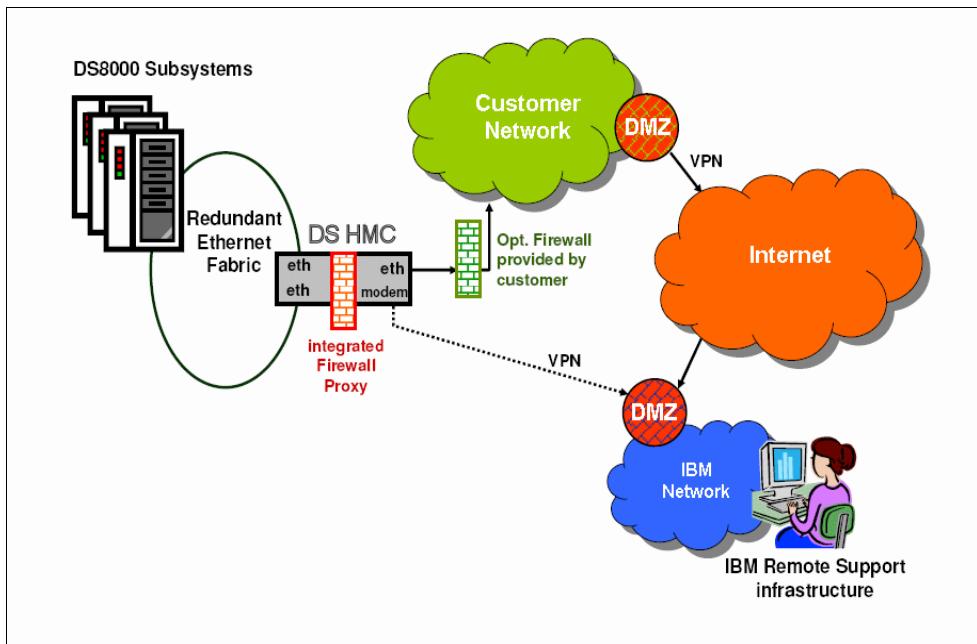


Figure 8-3 DS8700 HMC remote support connection

Take note of the following guidelines to assist in the preparation for attaching the DS8700 to the client's LAN:

1. Assign a TCP/IP address and host name to the HMC in the DS8700.
2. If email notification of service alert is allowed, enable the support on the mail server for the TCP/IP addresses assigned to the DS8700.
3. Use the information that was entered on the installation worksheets during your planning.

We recommend service connection through the high-speed VPN network utilizing a secure Internet connection. You need to provide the network parameters for your HMC through the installation worksheet prior to actual configuration of the console. See Chapter 9, “Hardware Management Console planning and setup” on page 207 for more details.

Your IBM System Support Representative (SSR) will need the configuration worksheet during the configuration of your HMC. A worksheet is available in the *IBM System Storage DS8000 Introduction and Planning Guide*, GC35-0515.

Refer to Chapter 20, “Remote support” on page 551 for further discussion about remote support connection.

### 8.3.6 Business-to-Business VPN connection

The Business-to-Business VPN connection allows faster data communications between IBM support and the customer environment. This is helpful when a new microcode needs to be sent to the DS8700 or problem determination data needs to be off-loaded. The data transfer is secure and traceable by the customer. All activities performed by IBM personnel to the customer environment can be monitored and documented. Refer to Chapter 20, “Remote support” on page 551 for more information.

### 8.3.7 Remote power control

The System z remote power control setting allows you to power on and off the storage unit from a System z interface. If you plan to use the System z power control feature, be sure that you order the System z power control feature. This feature comes with four power control cables.

In a System z environment, the host must have the Power Sequence Controller (PSC) feature installed to have the ability to turn on and off specific control units, such as the DS8700. The control unit is controlled by the host through the power control cable. The power control cable comes with a standard length of 31 meters, so be sure to consider the physical distance between the host and DS8700.

### 8.3.8 Storage area network connection

The DS8700 can be attached to a SAN environment through its Fibre Channel ports. SANs provide the capability to interconnect open systems hosts, S/390 and System z hosts, and other storage systems.

A SAN allows your single Fibre Channel host port to have physical access to multiple Fibre Channel ports on the storage unit. You might need to establish zones to limit the access (and provide access security) of host ports to your storage ports. Take note that shared access to a storage unit Fibre Channel port might come from hosts that support a combination of bus adapter types and operating systems.

### 8.3.9 Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager server for encryption

If the DS8700 is configured with FDE drives and enabled for encryption, an isolated Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM) server is also required.

The isolated TKLM server consists of the following hardware and software:

- ▶ IBM System x3650 with L5420 processor
  - Quad-core Intel Xeon processor L5420 (2.5 GHz, 12 MB L2, 1.0 GHz FSB, 50 W)
  - 6 GB memory
  - 146 GB SAS RAID 1 storage
  - SUSE Linux v10
  - Dual Gigabit Ethernet ports (standard)
  - Power supply
- ▶ Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager V1 (includes DB2 9.1 FB4)

**Note:** No other hardware or software is allowed on this server. An isolated server must only use internal disk for all files necessary to boot and have the TKLM key server become operational.

Table 8-8 lists the general hardware requirements.

*Table 8-8 TKLM hardware requirements*

System components	Minimum values	Suggested values
System memory (RAM)	2 GB	4 GB
Processor speed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ For Linux and Windows systems: 2.66 GHz single processor</li> <li>▶ For AIX and Sun Solaris systems: 1.5 GHz (2-way)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ For Linux and Windows systems: 3.0 GHz dual processors</li> <li>▶ For AIX and Sun Solaris systems: 1.5 GHz (4-way)</li> </ul>
Disk space free for product and prerequisite products, such as DB2 Database and keystore files	15 GB	30 GB

## Operating system requirement and software prerequisites

Table 8-9 identifies the operating systems requirements for installation.

*Table 8-9 TKLM software requirements*

Operating system	Patch and maintenance level at time of initial publication
AIX Version 5.3 64-bit, and Version 6.1	For Version 5.3, use Technology Level 5300-04 and Service Pack 5300-04-02
Sun Server Solaris 10 (SPARC 64-bit) Note: Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager runs in a 32-bit JVM.	None
Windows Server 2003 R2 (32-bit Intel)	None
Red Hat Enterprise Linux AS Version 4.0 on x86 32-bit	None
SUSE Linux Enterprise Server Version 9 on x86 (32-bit) and Version 10 on x86 (32-bit)	None

On Linux platforms, Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager requires the following package:

`compat-libstdc++-33-3.2.3-47.3`

On Red Hat systems, to determine if you have the package, run the following command:

`rpm -qa | grep -i "libstdc"`

For more information regarding the required TKLM server and other requirements and guidelines, refer to *IBM System Storage DS8700 Disk Encryption Implementation and Usage Guidelines*, REDP-4500.

## TKLM connectivity and routing information

In order to connect the Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager to your network, you need to provide the following settings to your IBM service representative:

- ▶ SSPC network IDs, host names, and domain name
- ▶ Domain Name Server (DNS) settings (if you plan to use DNS to resolve network names)

There are two network ports that need to be opened on a firewall to allow DS8700 connection and have an administration management interface to the TKLM server. These ports are defined by the TKLM administrator.

### 8.3.10 Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server for single sign-on

An LDAP Server can be used to provide directory services to the DS8700 via the SSPC TIP (Tivoli Integrated Portal). This can enable a single sign-on interface to all DS8700s in the customer environment.

Typically, there is normally one LDAP server installed in the customer environment to provide directory services. For details, refer to *IBM System Storage DS8000: LDAP Authentication*, REDP-4505.

#### LDAP connectivity and routing information

In order to connect the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server to the System Storage Productivity Center (SSPC), you need to provide the following settings to your IBM service representative:

- ▶ LDAP network IDs, and host names domain name and port
- ▶ User ID and password of the LDAP server

If the LDAP server is isolated from the SSPC by a firewall, the LDAP port need to be opened in that firewall. There might also be a firewall between the SSPC and the DS8700 that needs to be opened to allow LDAP traffic between them.

## 8.4 Remote mirror and copy connectivity

The DS8700 uses the high speed Fibre Channel protocol (FCP) for Remote Mirror and Copy connectivity.

Make sure that you have a sufficient number of FCP paths assigned for your remote mirroring between your source and target sites to address performance and redundancy issues. When you plan to use both Metro Mirror and Global Copy modes between a pair of storage units, we recommend that you use separate logical and physical paths for the Metro Mirror and another set of logical and physical paths for the Global Copy.

Plan the distance between the primary and secondary storage units to properly acquire the necessary length of fiber optic cables that you need or if your Copy Services solution requires separate hardware, such as channel extenders or dense wavelength division multiplexing (DWDM).

For detailed information, refer to the IBM Redbooks publications *IBM System Storage DS8000: Copy Services in Open Environments*, SG24-6788 and *DS8000 Copy Services for IBM System z*, SG24-6787.

## 8.5 Disk capacity considerations

The effective capacity of the DS8700 is determined by several factors:

- ▶ The spares' configuration
- ▶ The size of the installed disk drives
- ▶ The selected RAID configuration: RAID 5, RAID 6, or RAID 10, in two sparing combinations
- ▶ The storage type: Fixed Block (FB) or Count Key Data (CKD)

### 8.5.1 Disk sparing

The DS8700 assigns spare disks automatically. The first four array sites (a set of eight disk drives) on a Device Adapter (DA) pair will normally each contribute one spare to the DA pair. A minimum of one spare is created for each array site defined until the following conditions are met:

- ▶ A minimum of four spares per DA pair
- ▶ A minimum of four spares of the largest capacity array site on the DA pair
- ▶ A minimum of two spares of capacity and RPM greater than or equal to the fastest array site of any given capacity on the DA pair

The DDM sparing policies support the overconfiguration of spares. This possibility might be useful for some installations, because it allows the repair of some DDM failures to be deferred until a later repair action is required.

Refer to *IBM System Storage DS8000 Introduction and Planning Guide*, GC35-0515 and 4.6.8, “Spare creation” on page 77 for more details about the DS8700 sparing concepts.

### 8.5.2 Disk capacity

The DS8700 operates in either a RAID 5, RAID 6, or RAID 10 configuration. The following RAID configurations are possible:

- ▶ 6+P RAID 5 configuration: The array consists of six data drives and one parity drive. The remaining drive on the array site is used as a spare.
- ▶ 7+P RAID 5 configuration: The array consists of seven data drives and one parity drive.
- ▶ 5+P+Q RAID 6 configuration: The array consists of five data drives and two parity drives. The remaining drive on the array site is used as a spare.
- ▶ 6+P+Q RAID 6 configuration: The array consists of six data drives and two parity drives.
- ▶ 3+3 RAID 10 configuration: The array consists of three data drives that are mirrored to three copy drives. Two drives on the array site are used as spares.
- ▶ 4+4 RAID 10 configuration: The array consists of four data drives that are mirrored to four copy drives.

Table 8-10 helps you plan the capacity of your DS8700 system. It shows the effective capacity of one rank in the different possible configurations. A disk drive set contains 16 drives, which form two array sites. Hard Disk Drive capacity is added in increments of one disk drive set. Solid State Drive capacity can be added in increments of a half disk drive set (eight drives). The capacities in the table are expressed in decimal gigabytes and as the number of extents.

*Table 8-10 Disk drive set capacity for open systems and System z environments*

Disk size/ Rank type	Effective capacity of one rank in decimal GB (Number of extents)					
	Rank of RAID 10 arrays		Rank of RAID 6 arrays		Rank of RAID 5 arrays	
	3 + 3	4 + 4	5 + P + Q	6 + P + Q	6 + P	7 + P
73 GB/ FB	207.23 (193)	277.03 (258)	338.27 (315)	407.94 (380)	414.46 (388)	483.18 (452)
73 GB/ CKD	204.34 (216)	273.39 (289)	333.94 (353)	402.95 (425)	410.57 (434)	479.61 (507)
146 GB/ FB	416.61 (388)	557.27 (519)	680.75 (634)	819.27 (763)	836.44 (779)	976.03 (909)
146 GB/ CKD	411.51 (435)	549.63 (581)	671.66 (710)	808.83 (855)	825.86 (873)	963.03 (1018)
300 GB/ FB	848.26 (790)	1131.72 (1054)	1381.90 (1287)	1663.24 (1549)	1698.66 (1582)	1979.98 (1844)
300 GB/ CKD	836.27 (884)	1116.28 (1180)	1364.13 (1442)	1641.32 (1735)	1675.38 (1771)	1954.45 (2066)
450 GB/ FB	1273.46 (1186)	1699.73 (1583)	2074.47 (1932)	2496.45 (2325)	2549.06 (2374)	2972.12 (2768)
450 GB/ CKD	1256.29 (1328)	1676.31 (1772)	2048.09 (2165)	2464.32 (2605)	2515.41 (2659)	2933.55 (3101)
600 GB/ FB	1726.58 (1608)	2304.25 (2146)	2812.13 (2619)	3384.43 (3152)	3456.38 (3219)	4028.68 (3752)
600 GB/ CKD	1703.76 (1801)	2273.25 (2403)	2777.47 (2936)	3341.29 (3532)	3410.35 (3605)	3977.01 (4204)
1 TB/ FB	2622.08 (2442)	3498.26 (3258)	4269.19 (3976)	5136.80 (4784)	See Note 3	See Note 3
1 TB/ CKD	2587.31 (2735)	3450.05 (3647)	4215.38 (4456)	5071.50 (5361)	See Note 3	See Note 3
2 TB/ FB	5247.38 (4887)	7000.80 (6520)	8541.62 (7955)	10278.93 (9573)	See Note 3	See Note 3
2 TB/ CKD	5177.49 (5473)	6904.89 (7299)	8434.59 (8916)	10146.86 (10726)	See Note 3	See Note 3

**Notes:**

1. Effective capacities are in decimal gigabytes (GB). One GB is 1,000,000,000 bytes.
2. 1 TB drives have a usable capacity of 900 GB. 2 TB drives have a usable capacity of 1800 GB.
3. RAID 5 implementations are not compatible with the use of 1 TB and 2 TB SATA drives.

An updated version of Capacity Magic (see “Capacity Magic” on page 580) will aid you in determining the raw and net storage capacities and the numbers regarding the required extents for each available type of RAID.

### 8.5.3 Solid State Drive (SSD) considerations

SSSD drives follow special rules for their physical installation. An RPQ is needed to change these rules. These rules are as follows:

- ▶ SSD drives can be now be ordered in eight drive install groups (half disk drive set). This provides additional capacity and price/performance options to address specific application and business requirements. It is possible to order 16 drive install groups (a disk drive set) for SSDs.  
Note also that an eight drive install increment means that the SSD rank added is assigned to only one DS8700 server (CEC).
- ▶ SSD disks are installed in their preferred locations, these being the first disk enclosure pair on each device adapter (DA) pair. This is done to spread SSD disks over as many DA pairs as possible for improved performance. The preferred locations are split among eight locations in the first three frames, two in the first, four in the second, and two in the third. See Figure 8-4 on page 204.
- ▶ An eight drive SSD half drive set is always upgraded to a full 16 drive set when SSD capacity is added. A system can contain at most one SSD half drive set.
- ▶ A SSD feature (drive set or half drive set) is first installed in the first enclosure of a preferred enclosure pair. A second SSD feature can be installed in the same DA pair only after the system contains at least eight SSD features, that is, after each of the eight DA pairs contains at least one SSD disk drive set. This means that you can have more than 16 SSD disks in a DA pair only if the system has three or more frames. The second SSD feature in the DA pair must be a full drive set.
- ▶ A DA pair can contain at most two SSD drive sets (32 drives). With the maximum of eight DA pairs, a DS8700 system can contain up to 16 SSD drive sets (256 disks in 32 arrays).
- ▶ Limiting the number of SSD drives to 16 per DA pair is preferred. This configuration maintains adequate performance without saturating the DA. The SSDs supported in the DS8700 are so fast that the DA can become the performance bottleneck on some random workloads.
- ▶ SSD disks are available in 73 GB and 146 GB capacities. All disks on a disk enclosure pair must be of the same capacity. Feature conversions are available to exchange existing disk drive sets when purchasing new disk drive sets with higher capacity.
- ▶ SSDs can be intermixed with HDDs within the same DA pair, but not on the same disk enclosure pair.
- ▶ The DS8300 was limited to a total of 512 drives if it had both SSD and HDD drives installed, limiting the system to three frames. The DS8700 does not have this limitation.

- ▶ RPQ 8S1027 is no longer required to order SSD drives on a new DS8700 (plant order). An RPQ process is still required to order SSD feature(s) on an existing DS8700 (field upgrade). The RPQ is needed to ensure that SSDs can be placed in proper locations.
- ▶ RAID 6 and RAID 10 implementations are not supported for SSD arrays, only RAID 5. SSD drives follow normal sparing rules. The array configuration is either 6+P+S or 7+P.

Figure 8-4 shows a sample DS8700 configuration with SSD drives installed in all the eight preferred locations. The figure shows the standard locations of SSD and HDD disk drive sets.

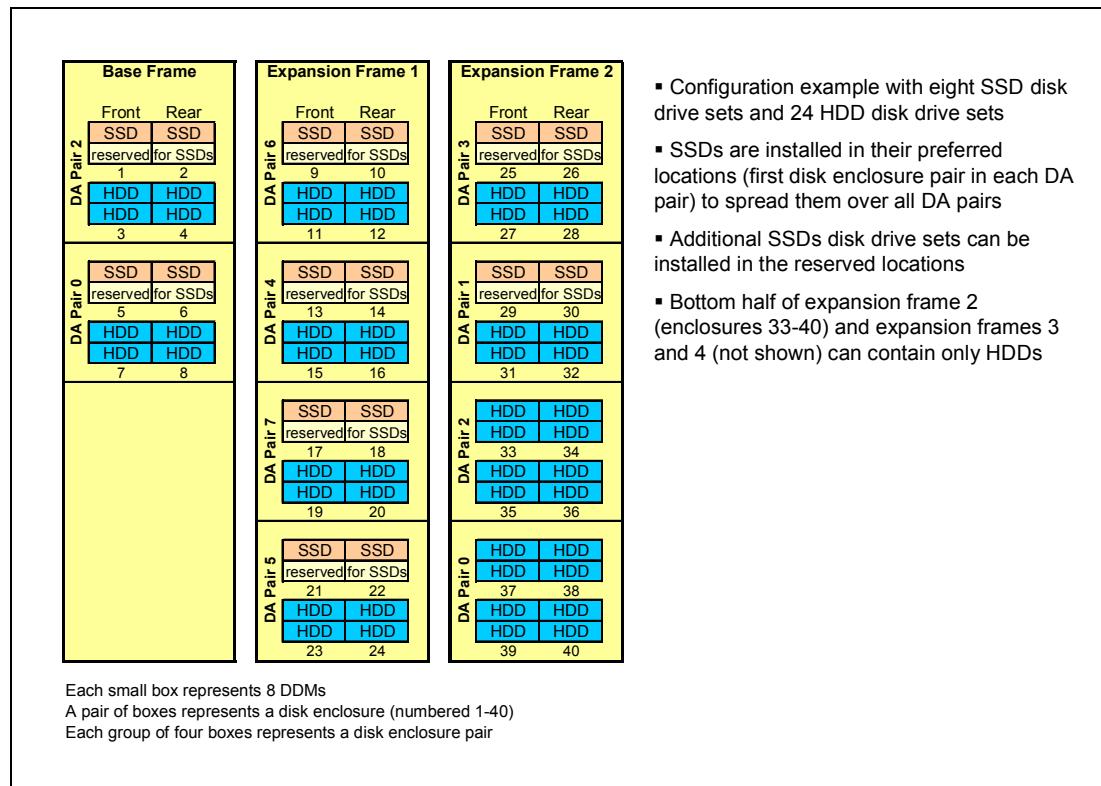


Figure 8-4 Standard configuration with SSD and HDD drives

For more information about Solid State Drives, refer to *DS8000: Introducing Solid State Drives*, REDP-4522.

#### 8.5.4 Full Disk Encryption (FDE) disk considerations

New systems can be ordered equipped with FDE drive sets. An RPQ process is required (RPQ 8S1028), a waiver must be signed by the customer, and there are also specific technical requirements, such as an isolated TKLM server. FDE drives cannot be intermixed with other drive types within the same storage facility image.

For more information about encrypted drives and inherent restrictions, refer to *IBM System Storage DS8700 Disk Encryption Implementation and Usage Guidelines*, REDP-4500.

## 8.6 Planning for growth

The DS8700 storage unit is a highly scalable storage solution. Features, such as total storage capacity, cache size, and host adapters, can be easily increased by physically adding the necessary hardware or by changing the needed licensed keys for Advanced Copy Services features (as ordered).

Planning for future growth normally suggests an increase in physical requirements, in your installation area (including floor loading), electrical power, and environmental cooling.

A key feature that you can order for your dynamic storage requirement is the Standby Capacity on Demand (CoD). This offering is designed to provide you with the ability to tap into additional storage and is particularly attractive if you have rapid or unpredictable growth, or if you simply want the knowledge that the extra storage will be there when you need it. Standby CoD allows you to access the extra storage capacity when you need it through a nondisruptive activity. For more information about Capacity on Demand, see 21.2, “Using Capacity on Demand” on page 573.





# Hardware Management Console planning and setup

This chapter discusses the planning activities needed for the setup of the required DS Hardware Management Console (HMC). This chapter covers the following topics:

- ▶ Hardware Management Console overview
- ▶ Hardware Management Console software
- ▶ HMC activities
- ▶ HMC and IPv6
- ▶ HMC user management
- ▶ External HMC

## 9.1 Hardware Management Console overview

The HMC is the focal point for DS8700 management with multiple functions, including:

- ▶ DS8700 power control
- ▶ Storage provisioning
- ▶ Advanced Copy Services management
- ▶ Interface for onsite service personnel
- ▶ Call Home and problem management
- ▶ Remote support
- ▶ Connection to TKLM for encryption functions

The HMC is the point where the DS8700 is connected to the customer network. It provides the services that the customer needs to configure and manage the storage, and it also provides the interface where service personnel will perform diagnostics and repair actions. The HMC is the contact point for remote support, both modem and VPN.

### 9.1.1 Storage Hardware Management Console hardware

The HMC consists of a mobile workstation (Lenovo Thinkpad W500) with adapters for modem and 10/100/1000 Mb Ethernet. The internal HMC included with every Primary Rack is mounted in a pull-out tray for convenience and security. A second, redundant mobile workstation HMC is orderable and highly recommended for environments that use TKLM encryption management and Advanced Copy Services functions. A second HMC is external to the DS8700 rack(s). Section 9.6, “External HMC” on page 232 includes more information regarding adding an external HMC. Figure 9-1 shows a sketch of the mobile computer HMC and the network connections. This drawing also applies to an external HMC.

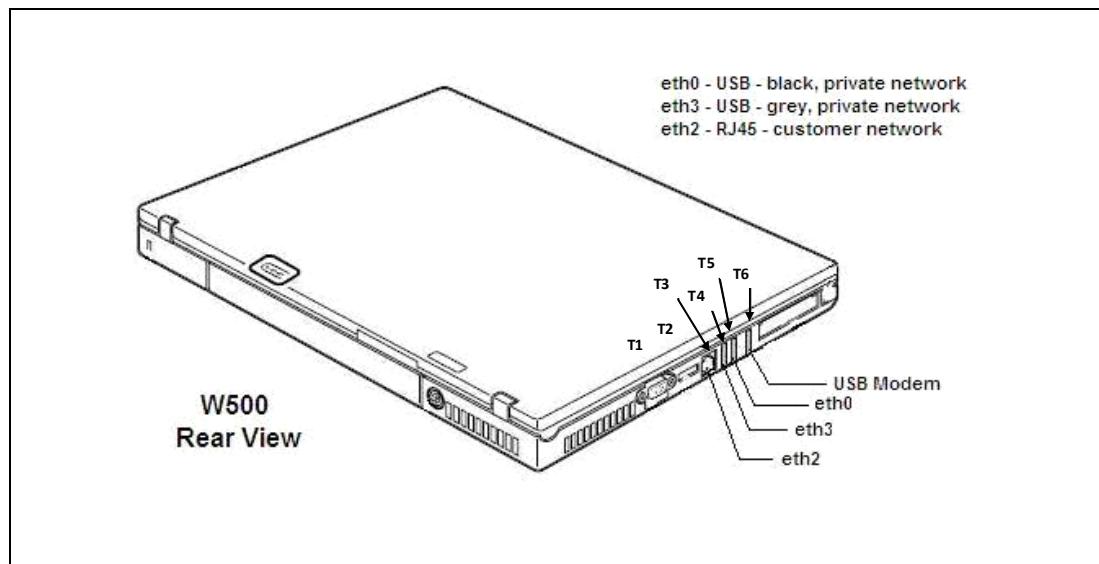


Figure 9-1 DS8700 mobile workstation HMC and connections

### 9.1.2 Private Ethernet networks

The HMC is connected to the storage facility by way of redundant private Ethernet networks. Figure 9-2 shows the pair of Ethernet switches internal to the DS8700.

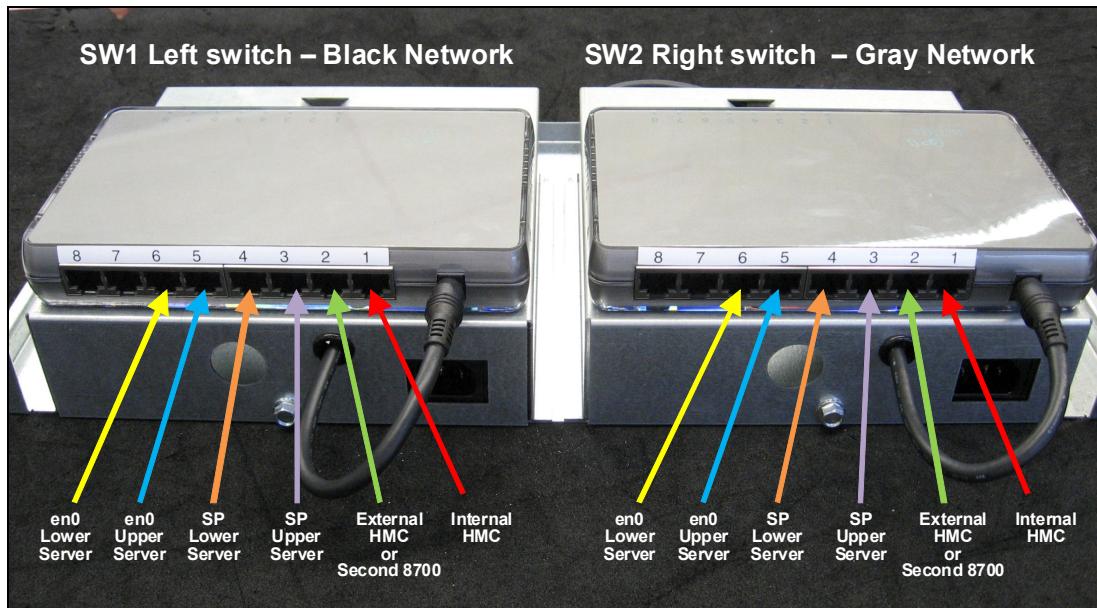


Figure 9-2 Rear view of DS8700 Ethernet switches

The HMC's public Ethernet port, shown as eth2 in Figure 9-1 on page 208, is where the customer connects to their network. The HMC's private Ethernet ports, eth0 and eth3, are configured into port 1 of each Ethernet switch to form the private DS8700 network. To interconnect two DS8700 primary frames, FC1190 provides a pair of 31 m Ethernet cables to connect each switch in the second base frame into port 2 of switches in the first frame. Depending on the machine configuration, one or more ports might be unused on each switch.

**Important:** The internal Ethernet switches pictured in Figure 9-2 are for the DS8700 private network only. No customer network connection should ever be made to the internal switches. Customer networks are connected to the HMC(s) directly.

## 9.2 Hardware Management Console software

The Linux-based HMC includes two application servers that run within a WebSphere® environment: DS Storage Management server and Enterprise Storage Server Network Interface server:

- ▶ DS Storage Management server

The DS Storage Management server is the logical server that communicates with the outside world to perform DS8700-specific tasks.

- ▶ Enterprise Storage Server Network Interface server (ESSNI)

ESSNI is the logical server that communicates with the DS Storage Management server and interacts with the two CECs of the DS8700.

The DS8700 HMC provides several management interfaces. These include:

- ▶ DS Storage Manager graphical user interface (GUI)
- ▶ DS Command-Line Interface (DS CLI)
- ▶ DS Open Application Programming Interface (DS Open API)
- ▶ Web-based user interface (WebUI), specifically for use by support personnel

The GUI and the CLI are comprehensive, easy-to-use interfaces for a storage administrator to perform DS8700 management tasks to provision the storage arrays, manage application users, and change some HMC options. The two can be used interchangeably, depending on the particular task.

The DS Open API provides an interface for external storage management programs, such as Tivoli Productivity Center (TPC), to communicate with the DS8700. It channels traffic through the IBM System Storage Common Information Model (CIM) agent, a middleware application that provides a CIM-compliant interface.

Older DS8000 family products used a service interface called WebSM. The DS8700 uses a newer, faster interface called WebUI that can be used remotely over a VPN by support personnel to check the health status or to perform service tasks.

### **9.2.1 DS Storage Manager GUI**

DS Storage Manager can be accessed via the TPC Element Manager of the SSPC from any network-connected workstation with a supported browser. It can also be accessed directly from the DS8700 management console by using the browser on the HMC. Login procedures are explained in the following sections.

#### **SSPC login to DS Storage Manager GUI**

The DS Storage Manager graphical user interface (GUI) can be launched via the TPC Element Manager of the SSPC from any supported network-connected workstation.

To access the DS Storage Manager GUI through the SSPC, open a new browser window or tab and type the following address:

`http://<SSPC_ipaddress>:9550/ITSRM/app/welcome.html`

A more thorough description of setting up and logging into SSPC can be found in 12.2.1, “Configuring SSPC for DS8700 remote GUI access” on page 267.

#### **Console login to DS Storage Manager GUI**

The following procedure can be used to log in to the management console and access the DS Storage Manager GUI using the browser that is preinstalled on the HMC:

1. Open and turn on the management console. The Hardware Management Console login window displays.

2. Move the mouse pointer to an empty area of the desktop background. Right-click with the mouse to open a Fluxbox, as shown in Figure 9-3. Select **Net** → **HMC Browser**.

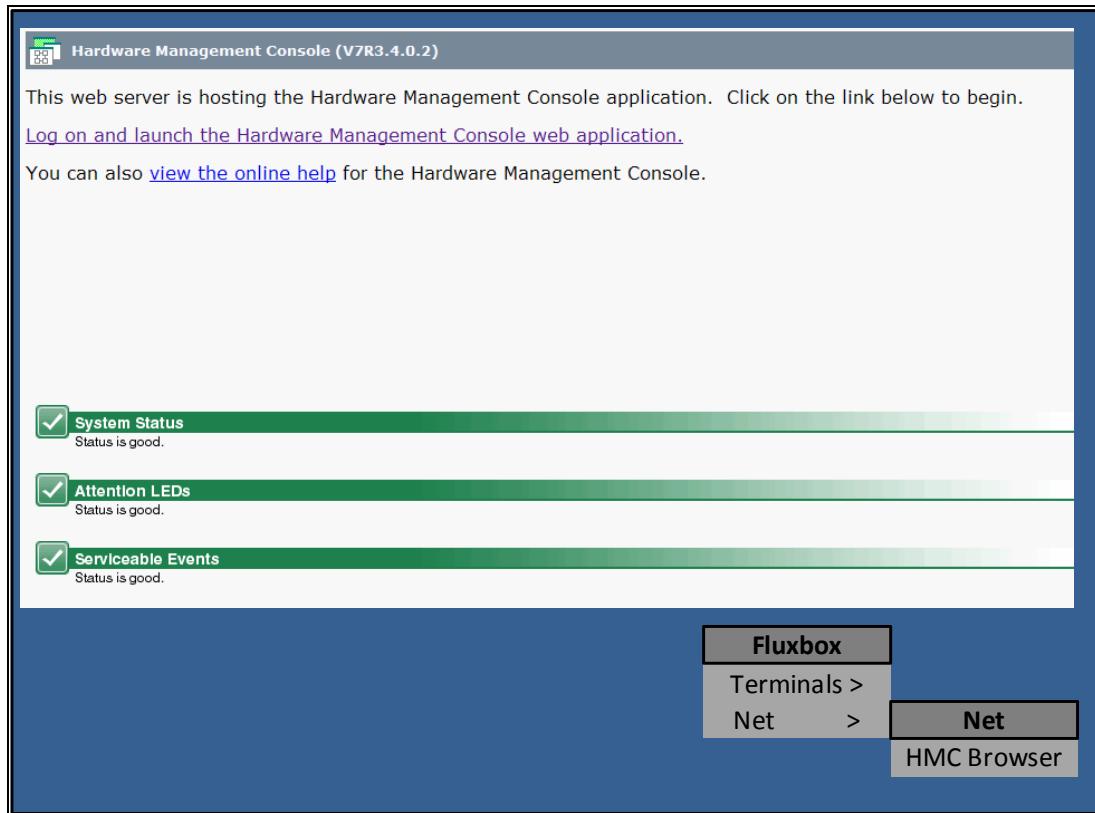


Figure 9-3 DS8700 console welcome window

3. The web browser starts with no address bar and a web page titled WELCOME TO THE DS8000 MANAGEMENT CONSOLE appears, as shown in Figure 9-4.

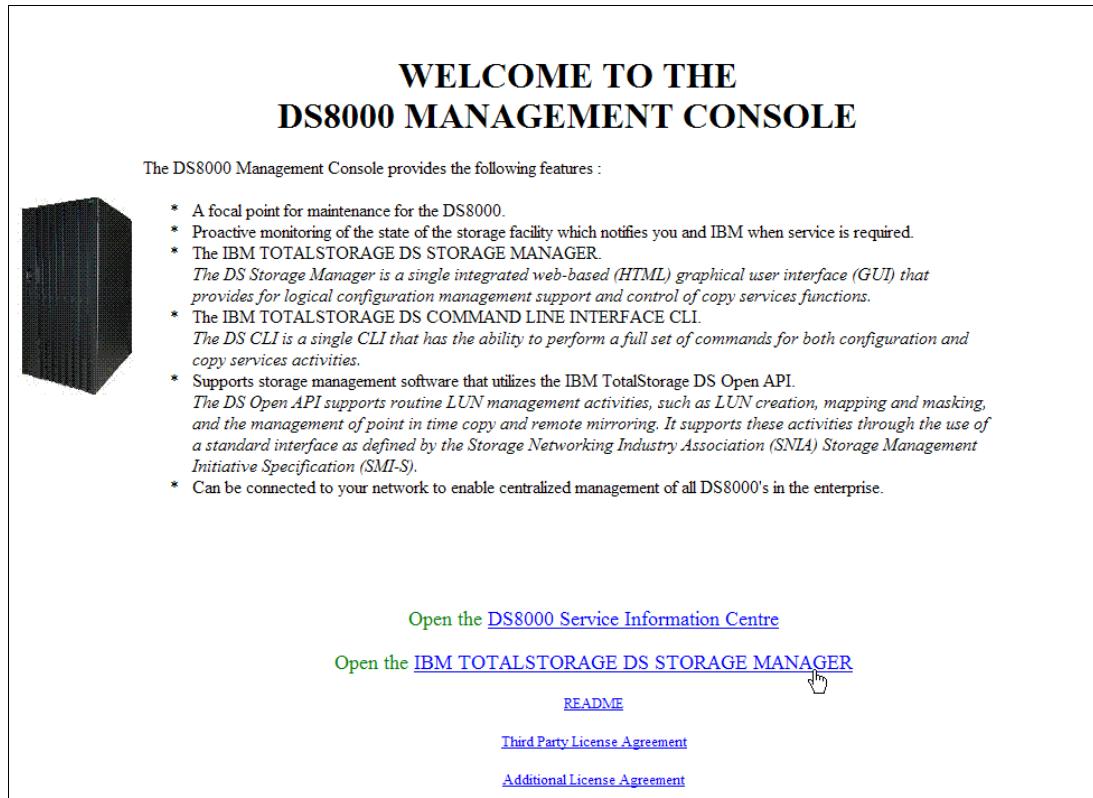


Figure 9-4 Management Console welcome window

4. On the Welcome window, click **IBM TOTALSTORAGE DS STORAGE MANAGER**.
5. A certificate window opens. Click **Accept**.
6. The IBM System Storage DS8000 SignOn window opens. Proceed by entering a user ID and password. The predefined user ID and password are:
  - User ID: admin
  - Password: adminThe user will be required to change the password at first login. If someone has already logged on, check with that person to obtain the new password.
7. A Wand (password manager) window opens. Select **OK**.

### 9.2.2 Command-line interface

The DS Command-Line Interface (DS CLI), which must be executed in the command environment of an external workstation, is a second option to communicate with the HMC. The DS CLI might be a good choice for configuration tasks when there are many updates to be done. This avoids the web page load time for each window in the DS Storage Manager GUI.

See Chapter 14, “Configuration with the DS Command-Line Interface” on page 359 for more information about using DS CLI, as only a few commands are covered in this section. See *IBM System Storage DS8000: Command-Line Interface User’s Guide*, SC26-7916 for a complete list of DS CLI commands.

**Note:** The DS CLI cannot be used locally at the DS8700 Hardware Management Console.

Once the DS CLI has been installed on a workstation, it can be used by just typing **dscli** in a command prompt window. The DS CLI provides three command modes:

- ▶ Interactive command mode
- ▶ Script command mode
- ▶ Single-shot command mode

### Interactive mode

To enter the interactive mode of the DS CLI, just type **dscli** in a command prompt window and follow the prompts to log in, as shown in Example 9-1. Once logged on, DS CLI commands can be entered one at a time.

*Example 9-1 DS CLI interactive mode*

```
C:\Program Files\IBM\dscli>dscli
Enter the primary management console IP address: 10.0.0.1
Enter the secondary management console IP address: 10.0.0.1
Enter your username: StevenJ
Enter your password:
Date/Time: October 12, 2009 9:47:13 AM MST IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.30.253 DS:
IBM.2107-7502241
dscli> lssi
Date/Time: October 12, 2009 9:47:23 AM MST IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.30.253 DS: -
Name ID           Storage Unit      Model WWNN          State ESSNet
=====
-   IBM.2107-7502241 IBM.2107-7502240 941   5005076303FFC076 Online Enabled
dscli> exit
```

**Tip:** Commands in the DS CLI are not case sensitive. **lssi** is the same as **Lssi**. However, user names for logging in to the DS8700 are case sensitive.

The information required to connect to a DS8700 by DS CLI can be predefined as a *profile*. Example 9-2 shows editing the lines for “hmc1” and “devid” in a profile file using HMC IP Address 9.155.62.102 and for the SFI of serial number 7520280. For the DS8700, there is only one SFI, so it will be the DS8700 serial number with a ‘1’ at the end instead of a ‘0’. The file **dscli.profile** is the default profile used if a profile is not specified on the command line.

*Example 9-2 Modifying dscli.profile*

```
# hmc1 and hmc2 are equivalent to -hmc1 and -hmc2 command options.
hmc1:9.155.62.102
# Default target Storage Image ID
devid:IBM.2107-7520281
```

To prepare a custom DS CLI profile, the file `dscli.profile` can be copied and then modified, as shown in Example 9-2 on page 213. On a Windows workstation, save the file in the directory `C:\Program Files\IBM\dscli` with the name `lab8700.profile`. The `-cfg` flag is used at the `dscli` prompt to call this profile. Example 9-3 shows how to connect DS CLI to the DS8700 HMC using this custom profile.

*Example 9-3 DS CLI command to use a saved profile*

```
C:\Program Files\IBM\dscli>dscli -cfg lab8700.profile
Date/Time: October 12, 2009 2:47:26 PM CEST IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.30.253 DS:
IBM.2107-75ABTV1
dscli>
```

### Script mode

If you know already exactly what commands you want to issue on the DS8700, multiple DS CLI commands can be integrated into a *script* that can be executed by launching `dscli` with the `-script` parameter. To call a script with DS CLI commands, use the following syntax in a command prompt window of a Windows workstation:

```
dscli -script <script_filename> -hmc1 <ip-address> -user <userid> -passwd
<password>
```

In Example 9-4, the script file `lssi.cli` contains just one CLI command, that is, the `lssi` command.

*Example 9-4 CLI script mode*

```
C:\Program Files\IBM\dscli>dscli -script c:\DS8700\lssi.cli -hmc1 10.0.0.1 -user
StevenJ -passwd temp4now
Date/Time: October 12, 2009 9:33:25 AM MST IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.30.253
IBM.2107-75ABTV1
Name ID          Storage Unit      Model WWNN          State ESSNet
=====
-    IBM.2107-75ABTV1 IBM.2107-75ABTV0 941    5005076303FFC663 Online Enabled
```

**Note:** A *script* contains commands to run against a DS8700. A *profile* contains instructions on which HMC to connect to and what settings to use.

### Single-shot mode

A *single-shot* is a single command that is executed upon successful login to the DS8700 HMC. Example 9-5 shows how to run a single-shot command from a workstation prompt.

*Example 9-5 CLI single-shot mode*

```
C:\Program Files\IBM\dscli>dscli -cfg 75abtv1.profile lssi
Date/Time: October 12, 2009 3:31:02 PM MST IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.30.253 DS:
Name ID          Storage Unit      Model WWNN          State ESSNet
=====
-    IBM.2107-75ABTV1 IBM.2107-75ABTV0 941    5005076303FFC663 Online Enabled
C:\ProgramFiles\ibm\dscli>
```

### 9.2.3 DS Open Application Programming Interface

Calling DS Open Application Programming Interfaces (DS Open APIs) from within a program is a third option to implement communication with the HMC. Both DS CLI and DS Open API communicate directly with the ESSNI server software running on the HMC.

The Common Information Model (CIM) Agent for the DS8700 is Storage Management Initiative Specification (SMI-S) 1.1 compliant. This agent is used by storage management applications, such as Tivoli Productivity Center (TPC), Tivoli Storage Manager, and VSS/VDS. Also, to comply with more open standards, the agent can be accessed by software from third-party vendors, including VERITAS/Symantec, HP/AppIQ, EMC, and many other applications at the SNIA Interoperability Lab. For more information, visit the following address:

[http://www.snia.org/forums/smi/tech\\_programs/lab\\_program/](http://www.snia.org/forums/smi/tech_programs/lab_program/)

For the DS8700 the CIM agent is preloaded with the HMC code and is started when the HMC boots. An active CIM agent only allows access to the DS8700s managed by the HMC on which it is running. Configuration of the CIM agent must be performed by an IBM Service representative using the DS CIM Command Line Interface (DSCIMCLI).

### 9.2.4 Web-based user interface

The Web User Interface (WebUI) is a Internet browser based interface used for remote access to system utilities. If a VPN connection has been set up, then WebUI can be used by support personnel for DS8700 diagnostic tasks, data off loading, and many service actions. The connection is over port 443 over SSL, providing a secure and full interface to utilities running at the HMC.

**Recommendation:** IBM advises using a secure Virtual Private Network (VPN) or Business-to-Business VPN, which allows service personnel to quickly respond to customer needs using the WebUI.

The following procedure can be used to log in to the Hardware Management Console:

1. Open your browser and connect to the HMC using the URL `https://<HMC ipaddress>/preloginmonitor/index.jsp`. The browser might need your approval regarding the HMC security certificate upon first connection; each browser is different in how it handles security exceptions. The Hardware Management Console login window displays, as shown in Figure 9-5.

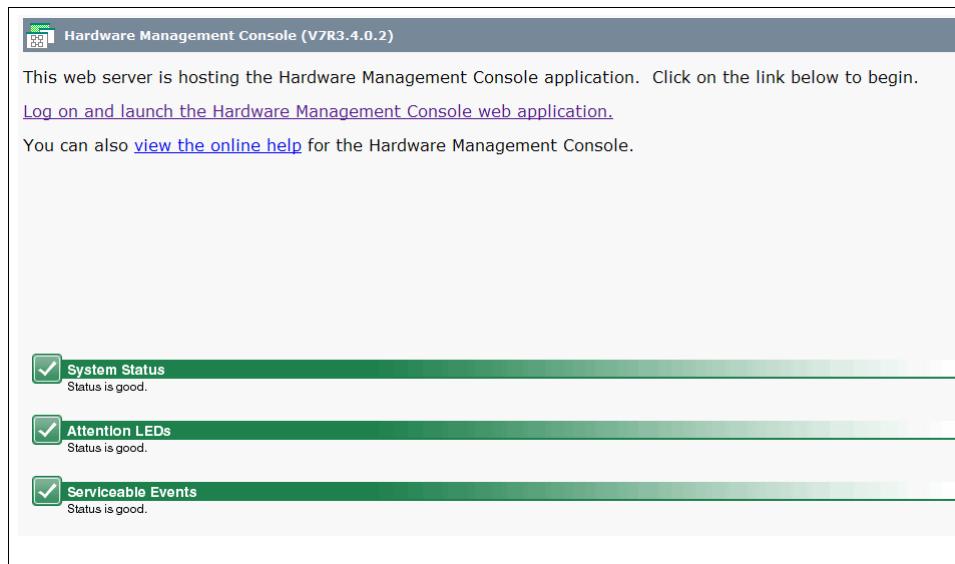


Figure 9-5 HMC WebUI launch page

2. Click **Log on and launch the Hardware Management Console web application** to open the login window and log in. The default user ID is *customer* and the default password is *passw0rd*.

3. If you are successfully logged in, you will see the Hardware Management console window, where you can select **Status Overview** to see the status of the DS8700. Other areas of interest are illustrated in Figure 9-6.



Figure 9-6 WebUI main window

As the HMC WebUI is mainly a services interface, it will not be covered here. Further information can be obtained through the Help menu.

## 9.3 HMC activities

This section covers some of the planning and maintenance activities for the DS8700 HMC. Refer to Chapter 8, “Physical planning and installation” on page 185 as well, which contains overall planning information.

### 9.3.1 HMC planning tasks

The following activities are needed to plan the installation or configuration:

- ▶ The installation activities for the optional external HMC need to be identified as part of the overall project plan and agreed upon with the responsible IBM personnel.
- ▶ A connection to the customer network will be needed at the primary frame for the internal HMC. Another connection will also be needed at the location of the second, external HMC. The connections should be standard CAT5/6 Ethernet cabling with RJ45 connectors.
- ▶ IP addresses for the internal and external HMCs will be needed. The DS8700 can work with both IPv4 and IPv6 networks. Refer to 9.4, “HMC and IPv6” on page 220 for procedures to configure the DS8700 HMC for IPv6.

- ▶ A phone line will be needed at the primary frame for the internal HMC. Another line will also be needed at the location of the second, external HMC. The connections should be standard phone cabling with RJ11 connectors.
- ▶ The SSPC (machine type 2805-MC4) is an integrated hardware and software solution for centralized management of IBM storage products with IBM storage management software. Alternatively, you can use an existing TPC server in your environment to access the DS GUI on the HMC. SSPC is described in detail in Chapter 12, “System Storage Productivity Center” on page 263.
- ▶ The web browser to be used on any administration workstation should be a supported one, as mentioned in *DS8000 Introduction and Planning Guide*, GC35-0515 or in the Information Center for the DS8700, which can be found at the following address:

<http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/dsicelp/ds8000ic/index.jsp>

A decision should be made as to which web browser should be used. The web browser is the only software that is needed on workstations that will do configuration tasks online using the DS Storage Manager GUI (through the SSPC).

- ▶ The IP addresses of SNMP recipients need to be identified if the customer wants the DS8700 HMC to send SNMP traps to a network station.
- ▶ Email accounts need to be identified if the customer wants the DS8700 HMC to send email messages for problem conditions.
- ▶ The IP addresses of NTP servers need to be identified if the customer wants the DS8700 HMC to utilize Network Time Protocol for time synchronization.
- ▶ When ordering a DS8700, the license and some optional features need activation as part of the customization of the DS8700. Refer to Chapter 10, “IBM System Storage DS8700 features and license keys” on page 235 for details.

**Note:** Applying increased feature activation codes is a concurrent action, but a license reduction or deactivation is a disruptive action.

### 9.3.2 Planning for microcode upgrades

The following activities need to be considered in regard to the microcode upgrades on the DS8700:

- ▶ Microcode changes

IBM might release changes to the DS8700 series Licensed Machine Code. IBM plans to make most DS8700 series Licensed Machine Code changes available for download by the HMC from the IBM System Storage technical support website. Note that not all Licensed Machine Code changes might be available through the support website.

- ▶ Microcode install

An IBM service representative can install the changes that IBM does not make available for you to download. If the machine does not function as warranted and your problem can be resolved through your application of downloadable Licensed Machine Code, you are responsible for downloading and installing these designated Licensed Machine Code changes as IBM specifies. Check whether the new microcode requires new levels of DS Storage Manager, DS CLI and DS Open API and plan on upgrading them on the relevant workstations if necessary.

- ▶ Host prerequisites

When planning for initial installation or for microcode updates, make sure that all prerequisites for the hosts are identified correctly. Sometimes a new level is required for

the SDD as well. The Interoperability Matrix should be the primary source to identify supported operating systems, HBAs, and hardware of hosts. View this online at:

<http://www-03.ibm.com/systems/storage/product/interop.html>

To prepare for the download of drivers, refer to the HBA Support Matrix referenced in the Interoperability Matrix and make sure that drivers are downloaded from the IBM Internet site. This is to make sure that drivers are used with the settings corresponding to the DS8700, not some other IBM storage subsystem.

DS8700 interoperability information can also be found at the IBM System Storage Interoperability Center (SSIC) at the following website:

<http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/ssic>

**Important:** The Interoperability Center reflects information regarding the latest supported code levels. This does not necessarily mean that former levels of HBA firmware or drivers are no longer supported. If in doubt about any supported levels, contact your IBM representative.

- ▶ Maintenance windows

Even though the microcode update of the DS8700 is a nondisruptive action, any prerequisites identified for the hosts (for example, patches, new maintenance levels, or new drivers) could make it necessary to schedule a maintenance window. The host environments can then be upgraded to the level needed in parallel to the microcode update of the DS8700 taking place.

For more information about microcode upgrades, see Chapter 18, “Licensed machine code” on page 531.

### 9.3.3 Time synchronization

For proper error analysis, it is important to have the date and time information synchronized as much as possible on all components in the DS8700 environment. This includes the DS8700 HMC(s), the SSPC, and the DS Storage Manager and DS CLI workstations.

With the DS8700, the HMC has the ability to utilize the Network Time Protocol (NTP) service. Customers can specify NTP servers on their internal network to provide the time to the HMC. It is a customer responsibility to ensure that the NTP servers are working, stable, and accurate. An IBM service representative will enable the HMC to use NTP servers. Ideally, this should be done at the time of initial DS8700 installation.

**Note:** Because of the many components and operating systems within the DS8700, time and date setting is a maintenance activity that can only be done by the IBM service representative.

### 9.3.4 Monitoring with the HMC

A customer can receive notifications from the HMC through SNMP traps and email messages. Notifications contain information about your storage complex, such as open serviceable events. You can choose one or both notification methods:

- ▶ Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) traps

For monitoring purposes, the DS8700 uses SNMP traps. An SNMP trap can be sent to a server in the client’s environment, perhaps with System Management Software, which handles the trap based on the MIB delivered with the DS8700 software. A MIB containing

all traps can be used for integration purposes into System Management Software. The supported traps are described in more detail in the documentation that comes with the microcode on the CDs provided by the IBM service representative. The IP address to which the traps should be sent needs to be configured during initial installation of the DS8700. For more information about the DS8700 and SNMP, see Chapter 19, “Monitoring with Simple Network Management Protocol” on page 537.

- ▶ Email

When you choose to enable email notifications, email messages are sent to all the addresses that are defined on the HMC whenever the storage complex encounters a serviceable event or must alert you to other information.

During the planning process, a list of who needs to be notified needs should be created.

SIM notification is only applicable for System z servers. It allows you to receive a notification on the system console in case of a serviceable event. SNMP and email are the only notification options for the DS8700.

### 9.3.5 Call Home and remote support

The HMC uses both outbound (Call Home) and inbound (remote service) support.

Call Home is the capability of the HMC to contact IBM support to report a serviceable event. Remote Services is the capability of IBM service representatives to connect to the HMC to perform service tasks remotely. If allowed to do so by the setup of the client’s environment, an IBM service support representative could connect to the HMC to perform detailed problem analysis. The IBM service support representative can view error logs and problem logs, and initiate trace or dump retrievals.

Remote support can be configured for dial-up connection through a modem or high-speed virtual private network (VPN) Internet connection. Setup of the remote support environment is done by the IBM service representative during initial installation. For more complete information, see Chapter 20, “Remote support” on page 551.

## 9.4 HMC and IPv6

The DS8700 Hardware Management Console (HMC) can be configured for an IPv6 customer network. Note that IPv4 is still also supported.

### IPv6 overview

Internet Protocol version 6 (IPv6) is the designated successor of IPv4, the current version of the Internet Protocol, for general use on the Internet.

The IPv6 standard was adopted to overcome the shortcomings of IPv4 in terms of the number of unique addresses it can provide. The primary change from IPv4 to IPv6 is the length of network addresses. IPv6 addresses are 128 bits long, while IPv4 addresses are 32 bits.

An IPv6 address can have two formats:

- ▶ Normal: Pure IPv6 format

An IPv6 (Normal) address has the following format:  $y:y:y:y:y:y:y:y$  where  $y$  is called a segment and can be any hexadecimal value between 0 and FFFF. The segments are separated by colons, not with periods as they are in IPv4.

An IPv6 normal address must have eight segments; however, a short form notation can be used for segments that are zero, or those that have leading zeros.

Examples of valid IPv6 (Normal) addresses:

- FF01: db8: 3333 : 4444 : 5555 : 6666 : 7777 : 8888
- FF01: db8: : (Implies that the last six segments are zero.)
- :: 1234 : 5678 (Implies that the first six segments are zero.)
- FF01 : db8: : 1234 : 5678 (Implies that the middle four segments are zero.)

► Dual: IPv6 plus IPv4 formats

An IPv6 (Dual) address combines an IPv6 and an IPv4 address and has the following format: y : y : y : y : y : x . x . x . x. The IPv6 portion of the address (indicated with Ys) is always at the beginning, followed by the IPv4 portion (indicated with Xs).

The IPv6 portion of the address must have six segments, but there is a short form notation for segments that are zero, as in the normal IPv6 address.

In the IPv4 portion of the address, x is called an octet and must be a decimal value between 0 and 255. The octets are separated by periods. The IPv4 portion of the address must contain three periods and four octets.

Examples of valid IPv6 (Dual) addresses:

- FF01 : db8: 3333 : 4444 : 5555 : 6666 : 1 . 2 . 3 . 4
- :: 11 . 22 . 33 . 44 (Implies all six IPv6 segments are zero.)
- FF01 : db8: : 123 . 123 . 123 . 123 (Implies that the last four IPv6 segments are zero.)
- :: 1234 : 5678 : 91 . 123 . 4 . 56 (Implies that the first four IPv6 segments are zero.)
- :: 1234 : 5678 : 1 . 2 . 3 . 4 (Implies that the first four IPv6 segments are zero.)
- FF01 : db8: : 1234 : 5678 : 5 . 6 . 7 . 8 (Implies that the middle two IPv6 segments are zero.)

### ***Subnet masks (IPv4) and prefix lengths (IPv6)***

All IP addresses are divided into portions. One part identifies the network (the network number) and the other part identifies the specific machine or host within the network (the host number). Subnet masks (IPv4) and prefixes (IPv6) identify the range of IP addresses that make up a subnet, or group of IP addresses on the same network. For example, a subnet can be used to identify all the machines in a building, department, geographic location, or on the same local area network (LAN).

- In IPv4, the subnet mask 255.255.255.0 is 24 bits and consists of four 8-bit octets. The address 10.10.10.0 subnet mask 255.255.255.0 means that the subnet is a range of IP addresses from 10.10.10.0 - 10.10.10.255.
- The prefix-length in IPv6 is the equivalent of the subnet mask in IPv4. However, rather than being expressed in 4 octets like it is in IPv4, it is expressed as an integer between 1-128. For example, FF01:db8:abcd:0012::0/64 specifies a subnet with a range of IP addresses from FF01:db8:abcd:0012:0000:0000:0000:0000 - FF01:db8:abcd:0012:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff. The emphasized portion is called the network portion of the IP address, or the prefix. The non-emphasized portion is called the host portion of the IP address, because it identifies an individual host in the network.

### **Configuring the HMC in an IPv6 environment**

Usually, the configuration will be done by the IBM service representative during the DS8700 initial installation. See 8.3.2, “System Storage Productivity Center and network access” on page 195 for a thorough discussion about the formatting of IPv6 addresses and subnet masks.

In the remainder of this section, we illustrate the steps required to configure the DS8700 HMC eth2 port for IPv6:

1. Launch and log in to WebUI; refer to 9.2.4, “Web-based user interface” on page 215 for the procedure.
2. In the HMC welcome window, select **HMC Management**, as shown in Figure 9-7.

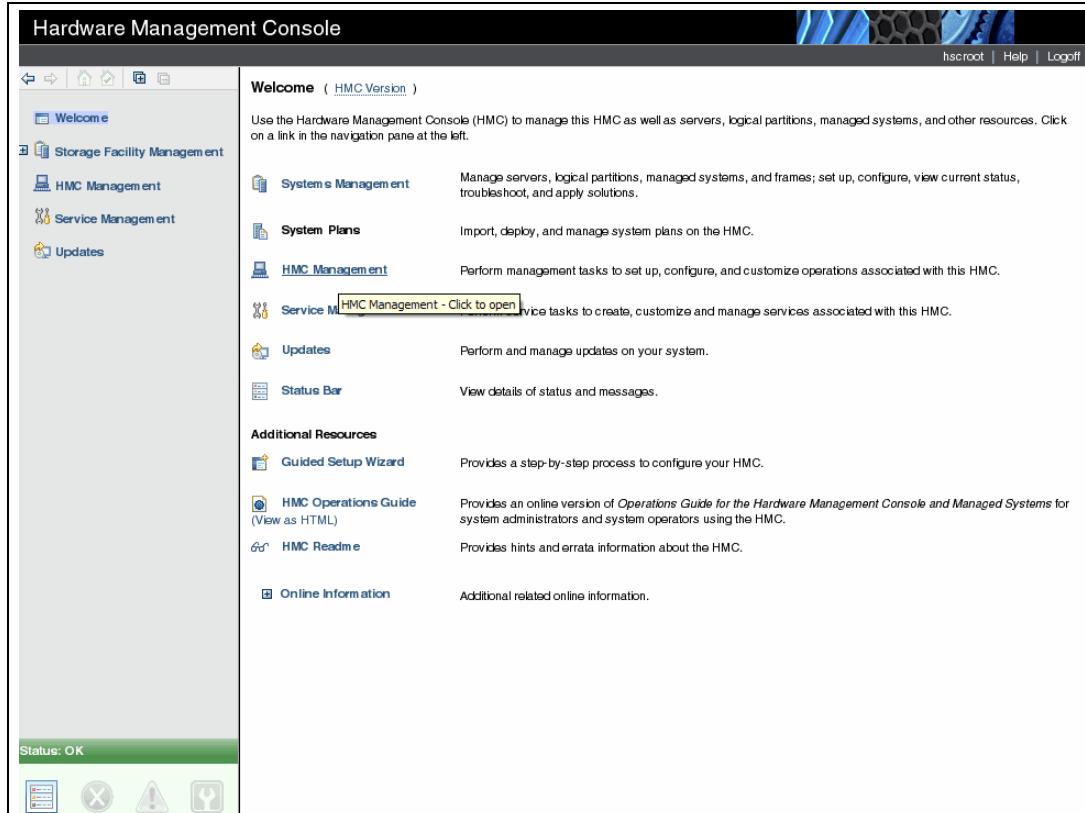


Figure 9-7 WebUI welcome window

- In the HMC Management window, select **Change Network Settings**, as shown in Figure 9-8.

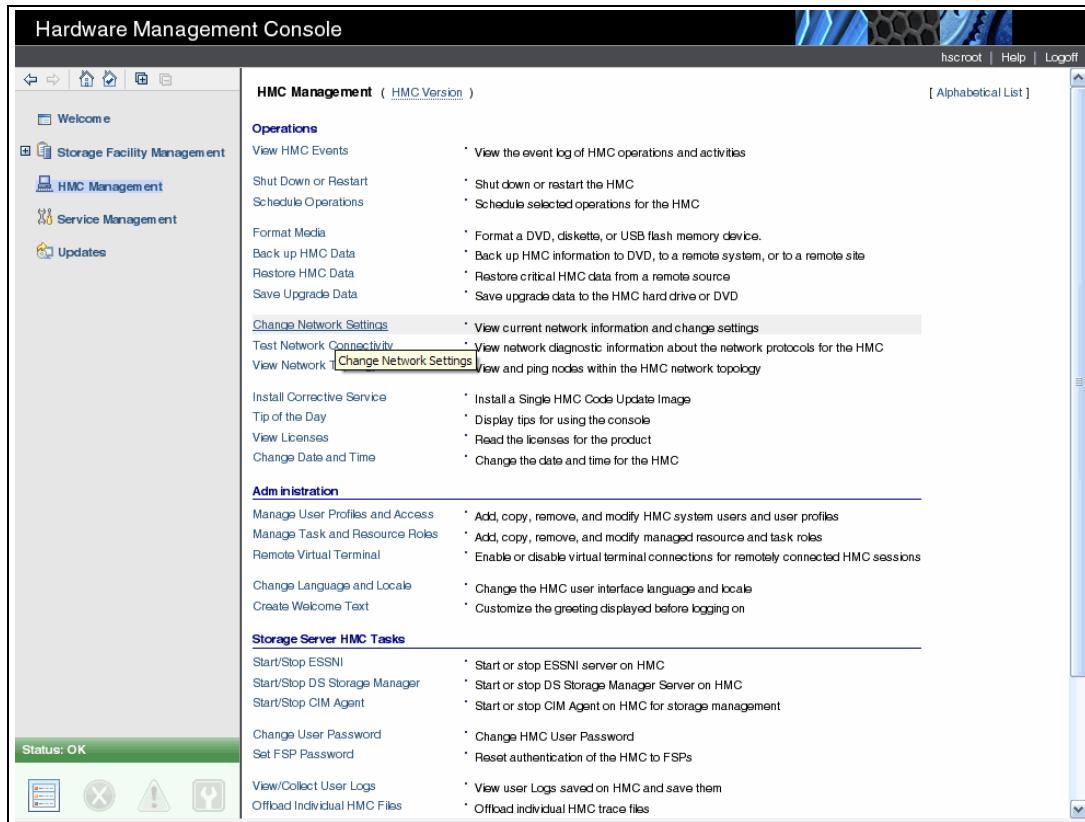


Figure 9-8 WebUI HMC management window

- Select the **LAN Adapters** tab.
- Only eth2 is shown; the private network ports are not editable. Click the **Details...** button.
- Select the **IPv6 Settings** tab.
- Click the **Add...** button to add a static IP address to this adapter. Figure 9-9 shows the LAN Adapter Details window where you can configure the IPv6 values.

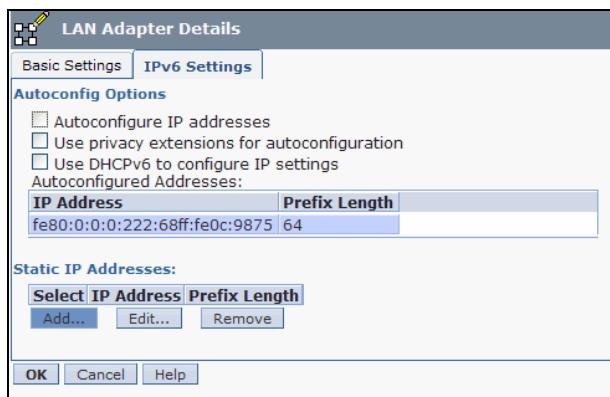


Figure 9-9 WebUI IPv6 settings window

## 9.5 HMC user management

User management can be done using the DS CLI or the DS GUI. An administrator user ID is preconfigured during the installation of the DS8700, using the following defaults:

<b>User ID</b>	admin
<b>Password</b>	admin

The password of the admin user ID will need to be changed before it can be used. The GUI will force you to change the password when you first log in. The DS CLI will allow you to log in but will not allow you to issue any other commands until you have changed the password. As an example, to change the admin user's password to passw0rd, use the following DS CLI command:

```
chuser-pw passw0rd admin
```

Once you have issued that command, you can then issue other commands.

**Note:** The DS8700 supports the capability to use a Single Point of Authentication function for the GUI and CLI through a centralized LDAP server. This capability requires a TPC Version 4.1 server. For detailed information about LDAP based authentication, refer to *IBM System Storage DS8000: LDAP Authentication*, REDP-4505.

### User roles

During the planning phase of the project, a worksheet or a script file was established with a list of all people who need access to the DS GUI or DS CLI. Note that a user can be assigned to more than one group. At least one person should be assigned to each of the following roles (user\_id):

- ▶ The *Administrator* (admin) has access to all HMC service methods and all storage image resources, except for encryption functionality. This user authorizes the actions of the *Security Administrator* during the encryption deadlock prevention and resolution process.
- ▶ The *Security Administrator* (secadmin) has access to all encryption functions. secadmin requires an Administrator user to confirm the actions taken during the encryption deadlock prevention and resolution process.
- ▶ The *Physical operator* (op\_storage) has access to physical configuration service methods and resources, such as managing storage complex, storage image, Rank, array, and Extent Pool objects.
- ▶ The *Logical operator* (op\_volume) has access to all service methods and resources that relate to logical volumes, hosts, host ports, logical subsystems, and Volume Groups, excluding security methods.
- ▶ The *Monitor* group has access to all read-only, nonsecurity HMC service methods, such as `list` and `show` commands.
- ▶ The *Service* group has access to all HMC service methods and resources, such as performing code loads and retrieving problem logs, plus the privileges of the Monitor group, excluding security methods.
- ▶ The *Copy Services operator* has access to all Copy Services methods and resources, plus the privileges of the Monitor group, excluding security methods.
- ▶ *No access* prevents access to any service method or storage image resources. This group is used by an administrator to temporarily deactivate a user ID. By default, this user group is assigned to any user account in the security repository that is not associated with any other user group.

## Password policies

Whenever a user is added, a password is entered by the administrator. During the first login, this password must be changed. Password settings include the time period in days after which passwords expire and a number that identifies how many failed logins are allowed. The user ID is deactivated if an invalid password is entered more times than the limit. Only a user with administrator rights can then reset the user ID with a new initial password.

**Best practice:** Do not set the values of **chpass** to 0, as this indicates that passwords never expire and unlimited login attempts are allowed.

If access is denied for the administrator due to the number of invalid login attempts, a procedure can be obtained from your IBM representative to reset the administrator's password. The password for each user account is forced to adhere to the following rules:

- ▶ The length of the password must be between 6 and 16 characters.
- ▶ It must begin and end with a letter.
- ▶ It must have at least five letters.
- ▶ It must contain at least one number.
- ▶ It cannot be identical to the user ID.
- ▶ It cannot be a previous password.

**Note:** User names and passwords are case sensitive. If you create a user name called *Anthony*, you cannot log in using the user name *anthony*.

### 9.5.1 User management using the DS CLI

The exact syntax for any DS CLI command can be found in the *IBM System Storage DS8000: Command-Line Interface User's Guide*, SC26-7916. You can also use the DS CLI **help** command to get further assistance.

The commands to manage user IDs using the DS CLI are:

- ▶ **mkuser**

This command creates a user account that can be used with both DS CLI and the DS GUI. In Example 9-6, we create a user called RolandW, who is in the op\_storage group. His temporary password is tempw0rd. He will have to use the **chpass** command when he logs in for the first time.

*Example 9-6 Using the mkuser command to create a new user*

---

```
dscli> mkuser -pw tempw0rd -group op_storage RolandW
Date/Time: October 12, 2009 9:47:13 AM MST IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.30.253
CMUC00133I mkuser: User RolandW successfully created.
```

---

► **rmuser**

This command removes an existing user ID. In Example 9-7, we remove a user called JaneSmith.

*Example 9-7 Removing a user*

---

```
dscli> rmuser JaneSmith
Date/Time: October 12, 2009 9:47:13 AM MST IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.30.253
CMUC00135W rmuser: Are you sure you want to delete user JaneSmith? [y/n]:y
CMUC00136I rmuser: User JaneSmith successfully deleted.
```

---

► **chuser**

This command changes the password or group (or both) of an existing user ID. It is also used to unlock a user ID that has been locked by exceeding the allowable login retry count. The administrator could also use this command to lock a user ID. In Example 9-8, we unlock the user, change the password, and change the group membership for a user called JensW. He must use the **chpass** command when he logs in the next time.

*Example 9-8 Changing a user with chuser*

---

```
dscli> chuser -unlock -pw passw0rd -group monitor JensW
Date/Time: October 12, 2009 9:47:13 AM MST IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.30.253
CMUC00134I chuser: User JensW successfully modified.
```

---

► **lsuser**

With this command, a list of all user IDs can be generated. In Example 9-9, we can see three users and the admin account.

*Example 9-9 Using the lsuser command to list users*

---

```
dscli> lsuser
Date/Time: October 12, 2009 9:47:13 AM MST IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.30.253
Name      Group      State
=====
StevenJ   op_storage active
admin     admin      active
JensW    op_volume  active
RolandW  monitor    active
```

---

► **showuser**

The account details of a user ID can be displayed with this command. In Example 9-10, we list the details of the user Robert.

*Example 9-10 Using the showuser command to list user information*

---

```
dscli> showuser Robert
Date/Time: October 12, 2009 9:47:13 AM MST IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.30.253
Name      Robert
Group    op_volume
State    active
FailedLogin 0
```

---

► **managepwfile**

This command creates or adds to an encrypted password file that will be placed onto the local machine. This file can be referred to in a DS CLI profile. This allows you to run scripts without specifying a DS CLI user password in clear text. If manually starting DS CLI, you can also refer to a password file with the -pwfile parameter. By default, the file is located in the following locations:

Windows	C:\Documents and Settings\<User>\DSCLI\security.dat
Non-Windows	\$HOME/dscli/security.dat

In Example 9-11, we manage our password file by adding the user ID SJoseph. The password is now saved in an encrypted file called security.dat.

*Example 9-11 Using the managepwfile command*

---

```
dscli> managepwfile -action add -name SJoseph -pw passw0rd
Date/Time: October 12, 2009 9:47:13 AM MST IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.30.253
CMUC00206I managepwfile: Record 10.0.0.1/SJoseph successfully added to password
file C:\Documents and Settings\StevenJ\DSCLI\security.dat.
```

---

► **chpass**

This command lets you change two password policies: password expiration (days) and failed logins allowed. In Example 9-12, we change the expiration to 365 days and five failed login attempts.

*Example 9-12 Changing rules using the chpass command*

---

```
dscli> chpass -expire 365 -fail 5
Date/Time: October 12, 2009 9:47:13 AM MST IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.30.253
CMUC00195I chpass: Security properties successfully set.
```

---

► **showpass**

This command lists the properties for passwords (Password Expiration days and Failed Logins Allowed). In Example 9-13, we can see that passwords have been set to expire in 90 days and that four login attempts are allowed before a user ID is locked.

*Example 9-13 Using the showpass command*

---

```
dscli> showpass
Date/Time: October 12, 2009 9:47:13 AM MST IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.30.253
Password Expiration 90 days
Failed Logins Allowed 4
```

---

## 9.5.2 User management using the DS GUI

To work with user administration, sign on to the DS GUI. See 12.2.1, “Configuring SSPC for DS8700 remote GUI access” on page 267 for procedures about using the SSPC to launch the DS Storage Manager GUI. From the categories in the left sidebar, select **User Administration** under the section Monitor System, as shown in Figure 9-10.

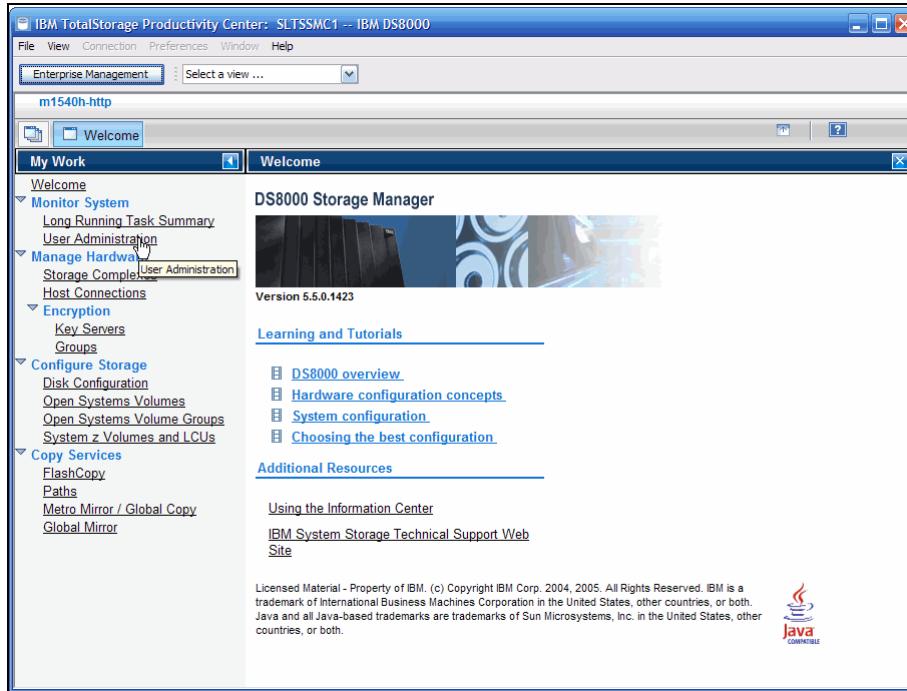


Figure 9-10 DS Storage Manager GUI main window

You are presented with a list of the storage complexes and their active security policies. Select the complex that you want to modify by checking the check box under the Select column. You can choose to either create a new security policy or manage one of the existing policies. Do this by selecting **Create Storage Authentication Service Policy** or **Manage Authentication Policy** from the Select action drop-down menu, as shown in Figure 9-11.

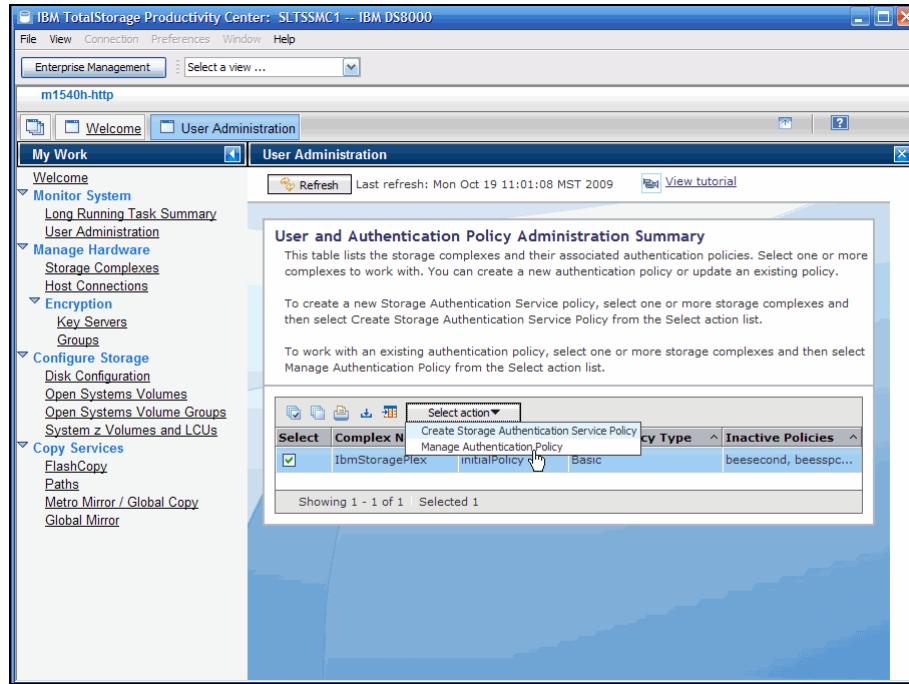


Figure 9-11 Selecting a storage complex

The next window displays all of the security policies on the HMC for the storage complex you chose. Note that you can create many policies, but only one at a time can be active. Select a policy by checking the check box under the Select column. Then select **Properties** from the Select action drop-down menu, as shown in Figure 9-12.

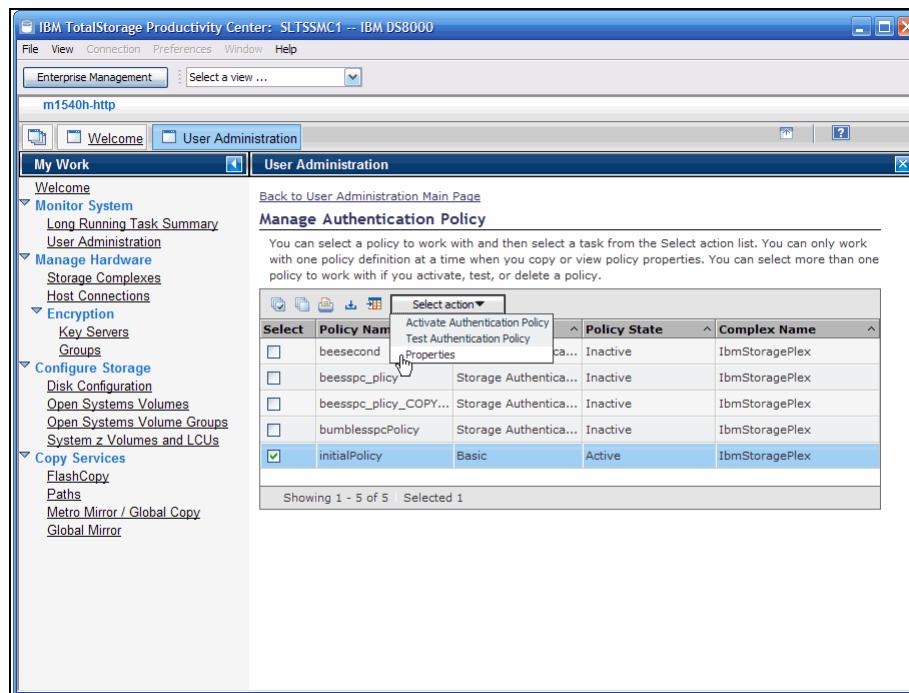


Figure 9-12 Selecting a security policy

The next window shows you the users defined on the HMC. You can choose to add a new user (select **Select action** → **Add user**) or modify the properties of an existing user. The administrator can perform several tasks from this window:

- ▶ Add User (The DS CLI equivalent is **mkuser**.)
- ▶ Modify User (The DS CLI equivalent is **chuser**.)
- ▶ Lock or Unlock User: Choice will toggle (The DS CLI equivalent is **chuser**.)
- ▶ Delete User (The DS CLI equivalent is **rmuser**.)
- ▶ Password Settings (The DS CLI equivalent is **chpass**.)

The Password Settings window is where you can modify the number of days before a password expires, as well as the number of login retries that a user gets before the account becomes locked, as shown in Figure 9-13.

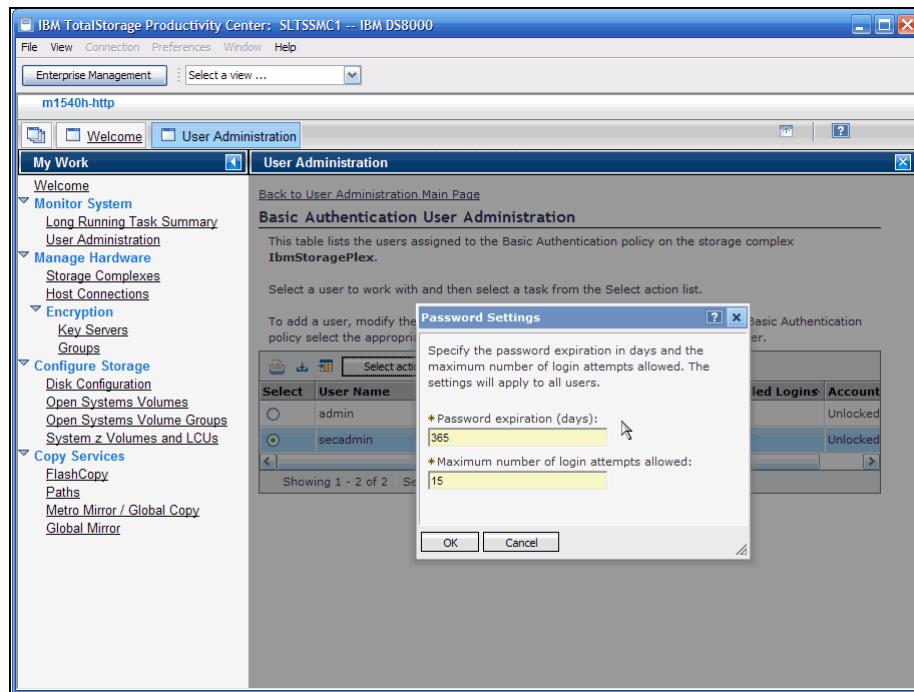


Figure 9-13 Password Settings window

**Note:** If a user who is not in the *Administrator* group logs on to the DS GUI and goes to the User Administration window, the user will only be able to see their own user ID in the list. The only action they will be able to perform is to change their password.

Selecting **Add user** displays a window in which a user can be added by entering the user ID, the temporary password, and the role. See Figure 9-14 for an example. The role will decide what type of activities can be performed by this user. In this window, the user ID can also be temporarily deactivated by selecting only the **No access** option.

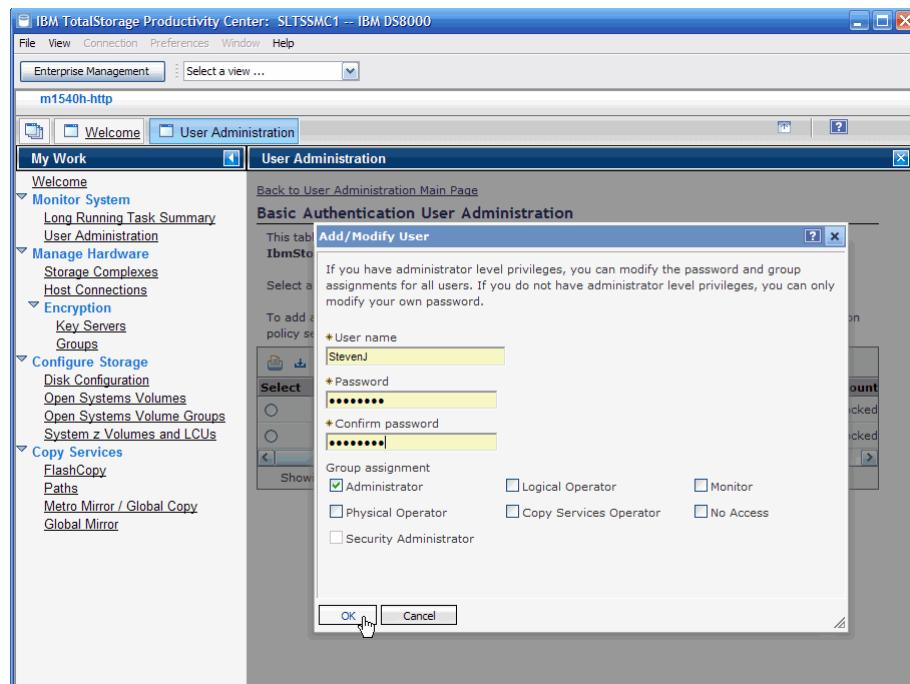


Figure 9-14 Adding a new user to the HMC

Take special note of the new role of the Security Administrator (secadmin). This role was created to separate the duties of managing the storage from managing the encryption for DS8700 units that are shipped with Full Disk Encryption storage drives.

If you are logged in to the GUI as a Storage Administrator, you cannot create, modify, or delete users of the Security Administrator role. Notice how the Security Administrator option is disabled in the Add/Modify User window in Figure 9-14. Similarly, Security Administrators cannot create, modify, or delete Storage Administrators. This is a new feature of the microcode for the DS8700.

## 9.6 External HMC

An external, redundant HMC can be ordered for the DS8700. The external HMC is an optional purchase, but one that IBM highly recommends. The two HMCs run in a dual-active configuration, so either HMC can be used at any time. For this book, the distinction between the internal and external HMC is only for the purposes of clarity and explanation, because they are identical in functionality.

The DS8700 is capable of performing all storage duties while the HMC is down, but configuration, error reporting, and maintenance capabilities become severely restricted. Any organization with extremely high availability requirements should consider deploying an external HMC.

**Note:** To help preserve Data Storage functionality, the internal and external HMCs are not available to be used as general purpose computing resources.

### 9.6.1 External HMC benefits

Having an external HMC provides a number of advantages. Among these are:

- ▶ Enhanced maintenance capability

Because the HMC is the only interface available for service personnel, an external HMC will provide maintenance operational capabilities if the internal HMC fails.

- ▶ Greater availability for power management

Using the HMC is the only way to safely power on or off the DS8700. An external HMC is necessary to shut down the DS8700 in the event of a failure with the internal HMC.

- ▶ Greater availability for remote support over modem

A second HMC with a phone line on the modem provides IBM a way to perform remote support should an error occur that prevents access to the first HMC. If network offload (FTP) is not allowed, one HMC can be used to offload data over the modem line while the other HMC is used for troubleshooting. See Chapter 20, “Remote support” on page 551 for more information regarding HMC modems.

- ▶ Greater availability of encryption deadlock recovery

If the DS8700 is configured for full disk encryption and an encryption deadlock scenario should happen, the HMC is the only way to input a Recovery Key to allow the DS8700 to become operational. See 4.8.1, “Deadlock recovery” on page 82 for more information regarding encryption deadlock.

- ▶ Greater availability for Advanced Copy Services

Since all Copy Services functions are driven by the HMC, any environment using Advanced Copy Services should have dual HMCs for operations continuance.

- ▶ Greater availability for configuration operations

All configuration commands must go through the HMC. This is true regardless of whether access is via the SSPC, DS CLI, the DS Storage Manager, or DS Open API with another management program. An external HMC will allow these operations to continue in the event of a failure with the internal HMC.

When a configuration or Copy Services command is issued, the DS CLI or DS Storage Manager will send the command to the first HMC. If the first HMC is not available, it will automatically send the command to the second HMC instead. Typically, you do not have to reissue the command.

Any changes made using one HMC are instantly reflected in the other HMC. There is no caching of host data done within the HMC, so there are no cache coherency issues.

### 9.6.2 Configuring DS CLI to use a second HMC

The second HMC can either be specified on the command line or in the profile file used by the DS CLI. To specify the second HMC in a command, use the -hmc2 parameter, as shown in Example 9-14.

*Example 9-14 Using the -hmc2 parameter*

---

```
C:\Program Files\IBM\dscli>dscli -hmc1 hmcalpha.ibm.com -hmc2 hmcbraivo.ibm.com
Enter your username: stevenj
Enter your password:
Date/Time: October 12, 2009 9:47:13 AM MST IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.30.253 DS:
IBM.2107-7503461
```

---

Alternatively, you can modify the following lines in the `dscli.profile` (or any profile) file:

```
# Management Console/Node IP Address(es)
#   hmc1 and hmc2 are equivalent to -hmc1 and -hmc2 command options.
hmc1:hmcalpha.ibm.com
hmc2:hmcbravo.ibm.com
```

After you make these changes and save the profile, the DS CLI will be able to automatically communicate through HMC2 in the event that HMC1 becomes unreachable. This change will allow you to perform both configuration and Copy Services commands with full redundancy.



# IBM System Storage DS8700 features and license keys

This chapter discusses the activation of licensed functions and the following topics:

- ▶ IBM System Storage DS8700 licensed functions
- ▶ Activation of licensed functions
- ▶ Licensed scope considerations

## 10.1 IBM System Storage DS8700 licensed functions

Many of the functions of the DS8700 that we have discussed so far are optional licensed functions that must be *enabled* to use them. The licensed functions are enabled through a 242x licensed function *indicator* feature, plus a 239x licensed function *authorization* feature number, in the following way:

- The licensed functions for DS8700 are enabled through a pair of 242x-941 licensed function indicator feature numbers (FC07xx and FC7xxx), plus a Licensed Function Authorization (239x-LFA), feature number (FC7xxx). These functions and numbers are shown in Table 10-1.

Table 10-1 DS8700 model 941 licensed functions

Licensed function for DS8700 model 941 with Enterprise Choice warranty	IBM 242x indicator feature numbers	IBM 239x function authorization model and feature numbers
Operating Environment License	0700 and 70xx	239x Model LFA, 703x/706x
Thin Provisioning	0707 and 7071	239x Model LFA, 7071
FICON Attachment	0703 and 7091	239x Model LFA, 7091
Database Protection	0708 and 7080	239x Model LFA, 7080
High Performance FICON	0709 and 7092	239x Model LFA, 7092
FlashCopy	0720 and 72xx	239x Model LFA, 725x-726x
Space Efficient FlashCopy	0730 and 73xx	239x Model LFA, 735x-736x
Metro/Global Mirror	0742 and 74xx	239x Model LFA, 748x-749x
Metro Mirror	0744 and 75xx	239x Model LFA, 750x-751x
Global Mirror	0746 and 75xx	239x Model LFA, 752x-753x
z/OS Global Mirror	0760 and 76xx	239x Model LFA, 765x-766x
z/OS Metro/Global Mirror Incremental Resync	0763 and 76xx	239x Model LFA, 768x-769x
Parallel Access Volumes	0780 and 78xx	239x Model LFA, 782x-783x
HyperPAV	0782 and 7899	239x Model LFA, 7899
IBM System Storage Easy Tier	0713 and 7083	239x Model LFA, 7083

- The DS8700 provides Enterprise Choice warranty options associated with a specific machine type. The *x* in 242*x* designates the machine type according to its warranty period, where *x* can be either 1, 2, 3, or 4. For example, a 2424-941 machine type designates a DS8700 storage system with a four year warranty period.
- The *x* in 239*x* can either be 6, 7, 8, or 9, according to the associated 242*x* base unit model. 2396 function authorizations apply to 2421 base units, 2397 to 2422, and so on. For example, a 2399-LFA machine type designates a DS8700 Licensed Function Authorization for a 2424 machine with a four year warranty period.
- The 242*x* licensed function indicator feature numbers enable the technical activation of the function, subject to the client applying a feature activation code made available by IBM. The 239*x* licensed function authorization feature numbers establish the extent of authorization for that function on the 242*x* machine for which it was acquired.

With the DS8700 storage system, IBM introduced the new Value based licensing: Operating Environment License. It is priced based on the disk drive performance, capacity, speed, and other characteristics that provide more flexible and optimal price/performance configurations. As shown in Table 10-2, each feature indicates a certain number of value units.

*Table 10-2 Operating Environment License (OEL): Value unit indicators*

Feature number	Description
7050	OEL - inactive indicator
7051	OEL- 1 Value Unit indicator
7052	OEL- 5 Value Unit indicator
7053	OEL- 10 Value Unit indicator
7054	OEL- 25 Value Unit indicator
7055	OEL- 50 Value Unit indicator
7060	OEL- 100 Value Unit indicator
7065	OEL- 200 Value Unit indicator

These features are required in addition to the per TB OEL features (#703x-704x). For each disk drive set, the corresponding number of value units must be configured, as shown in Table 10-3.

*Table 10-3 Value unit requirements based on drive size, type, and speed*

Drive set feature number	Drive size	Drive type	Drive speed	Encryption drive	Value units required
6016	73 GB	SSD	N/A	No	12
6014	73 GB	SSD half set	N/A	No	6
6116	146 GB	SSD	N/A	No	18
6114	146 GB	SDD half set	N/A	No	9
2216	146 GB	FC	15K RPM	No	4.8
2416	300 GB	FC	15K RPM	No	6.8
2616	450 GB	FC	15K RPM	No	9
2716	600 GB	FC	15K RPM	Yes	11.5
5016	146 GB	FC	15K RPM	Yes	4.8
5116	300 GB	FC	15K RPM	Yes	6.8
5216	450 GB	FC	15K RPM	Yes	9
2816	1 TB	SATA	7.2K RPM	No	11
2916	2 TB	SATA	7.2K RPM	No	20

Note that the 146 GB FC drives and 1 TB SATA drives have been withdrawn from marketing.

The HyperPAV license is a flat-fee, add-on license that requires the Parallel Access Volumes (PAV) license to be installed.

The license for Space Efficient FlashCopy does not require the ordinary FlashCopy (PTC) license. As with the ordinary FlashCopy, the FlashCopy SE is licensed in tiers by gross amount of TB installed. FlashCopy (PTC) and FlashCopy SE can be complementary licenses.

Metro Mirror (MM license) and Global Mirror (GM) can be complementary features as well.

IBM Systems Storage Easy Tier is a licensed function that is available with Release 5.1 at no charge (R5.1 is only available on the DS8700). This feature has license options available for FC, CKD, and ALL.

**Note:** For a detailed explanation of the features involved and the considerations you must have when ordering DS8700 licensed functions, refer to these announcement letters:

- ▶ IBM System Storage DS8700 Series (IBM 242x)
- ▶ IBM System Storage DS8700 series (M/T 239x) high performance flagship - Function Authorizations.

IBM announcement letters can be found at the following address:

<http://www-01.ibm.com/common/ssi/index.wss>

Use the *DS8700* keyword as a search criteria in the Contents field.

## 10.2 Activation of licensed functions

Activating the license keys of the DS8700 can be done after the IBM service representative has completed the storage complex installation. Based on your 239x licensed function order, you need to obtain the necessary keys from the IBM Disk Storage Feature Activation (DSFA) website at the following address:

<http://www.ibm.com/storage/dsfa>

**Important:** There is a special procedure to obtain the license key for the Full Disk Encryption feature. It *cannot* be obtained from the DSFA website. Refer to *IBM System Storage DS8700: Disk Encryption Implementation and Usage Guidelines*, REDP-4500 for more information.

You can activate all license keys at the same time (for example, on initial activation of the storage unit) or they can be activated individually (for example, additional ordered keys).

Before connecting to the IBM DSFA website to obtain your feature activation codes, ensure that you have the following items:

- ▶ The IBM License Function Authorization documents. If you are activating codes for a new storage unit, these documents are included in the shipment of the storage unit. If you are activating codes for an existing storage unit, IBM will send the documents to you in an envelope.
- ▶ A USB memory device can be used for downloading your activation codes if you cannot access the DS Storage Manager from the system that you are using to access the DSFA website. Instead of downloading the activation codes in softcopy format, you can also print the activation codes and manually enter them using the DS Storage Manager GUI. However, this is slow and error prone, because the activation keys are 32-character long strings.

## 10.2.1 Obtaining DS8700 machine information

In order to obtain license activation keys from the DFSA website, you need to know the serial number and machine signature of your DS8700 unit.

To obtain the required information, perform the following steps:

1. Start the DS Storage Manager application. Log in using a user ID with administrator access. If this is the first time you are accessing the machine, contact your IBM service representative for the user ID and password. After a successful login, the DS8700 Storage Manager Welcome window opens. In the My Work navigation window on the left side, select **Manage Hardware** (Figure 10-1).

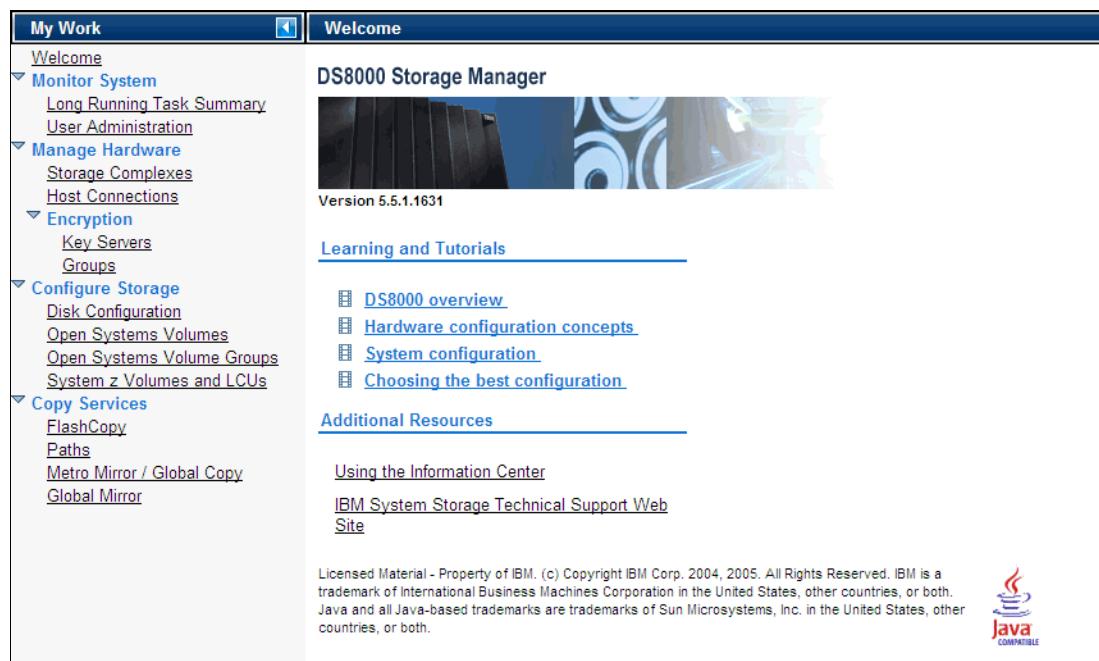


Figure 10-1 DS8700 Storage Manager GUI: Welcome window

2. Select **Storage Complexes** to open the Storage Complexes Summary window, as shown in Figure 10-2. From here, you can obtain the serial number of your DS8700 storage image.

Storage Complexes							
Storage Complexes Summary							
Select a storage image from the table to perform an action.							
Select	Storage Image	Serial Number	Emulated Type-Model	Status	Storage Unit	Storage Complex	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Sofa-King	75NA901	2107-941	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	<75NA900>	IbmStoragePlex	

Figure 10-2 DS8700 Storage Manager: Storage Complexes summary

- In the Storage Complexes Summary window, select the storage image by checking the box to the left of it, and select **Properties** from the drop-down Select action menu in the Storage Unit section. (Figure 10-3).

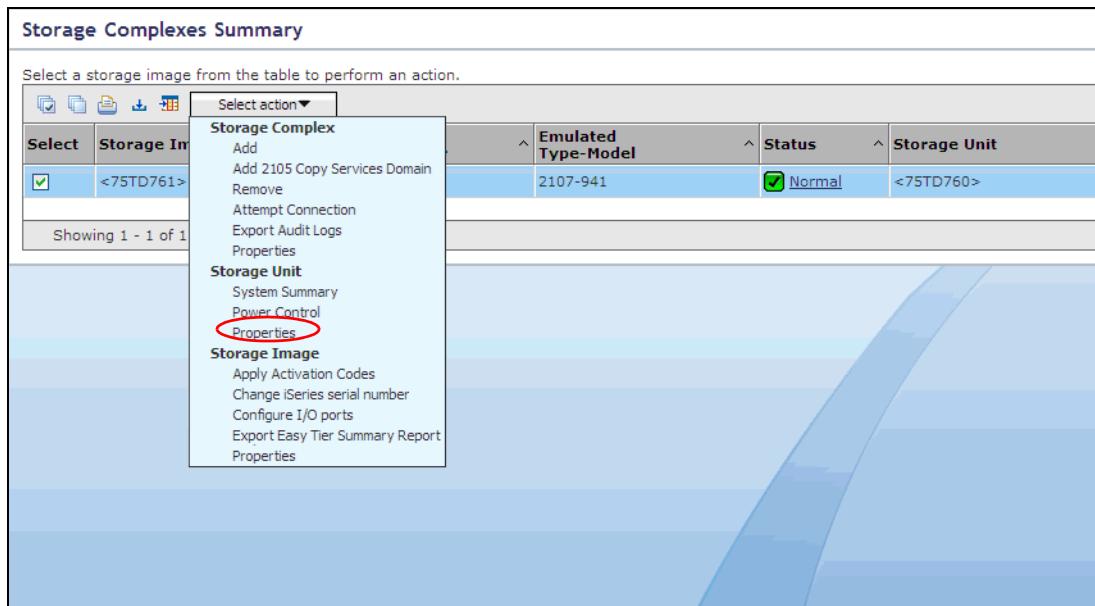


Figure 10-3 Select Storage Unit Properties

- The Storage Unit Properties window opens. Click the **Advanced** tab to display more detailed information about the DS8700 storage image, as shown in Figure 10-4.

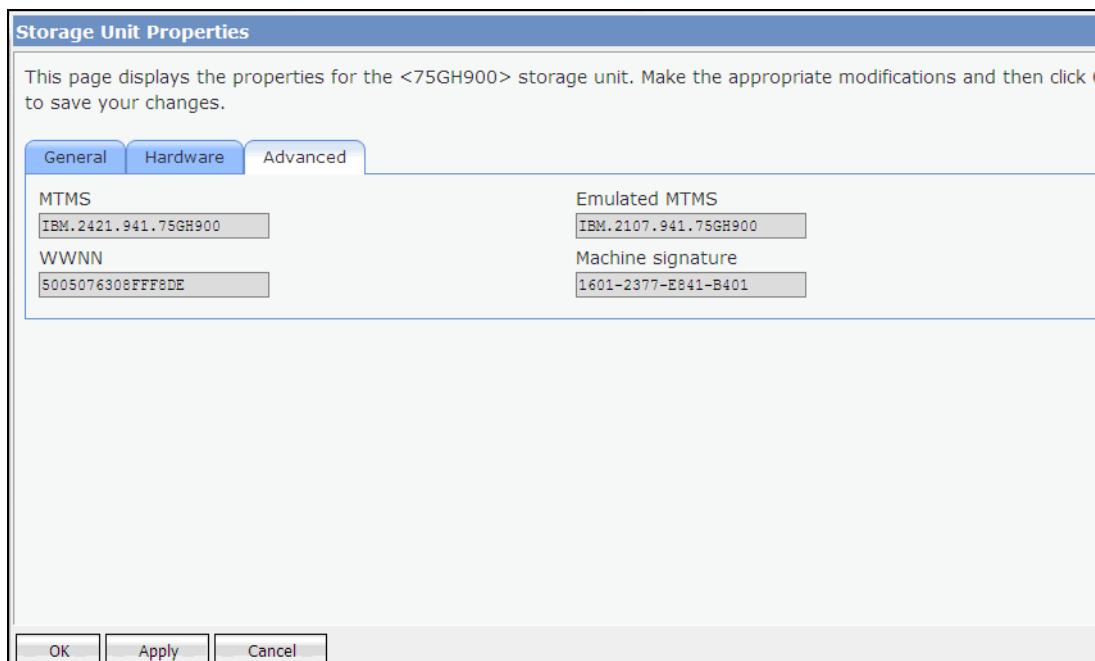


Figure 10-4 Storage Unit Properties window

Gather the following information about your storage unit:

- The MTMS (Machine Type - Model Number - Serial Number) is a string that contains the machine type, model number, and serial number. The machine type is 242x and the machine mode is 941. The last seven characters of the string are the machine's serial number (XYABCDE).
- From the Machine signature field, note the machine signature (ABCD-EFGH-IJKL-MNOP).

Use Table 10-4 to document this information, which will be entered in the IBM DSFA website to retrieve the activation codes.

*Table 10-4 DS8700 machine information*

Property	Your storage unit's information
Machine type and model	
Machine's serial number	
Machine signature	

## 10.2.2 Obtaining activation codes

Perform the following steps to obtain the activation codes:

1. Connect to the IBM Disk Storage Feature Activation (DSFA) website at the following address:

<http://www.ibm.com/storage/dsfa>

Figure 10-5 shows the DSFA website.

The screenshot shows the IBM Data storage feature activation page. At the top, there is a navigation bar with links for Home, Solutions, Services, Products, Support & downloads, and My IBM. A dropdown menu for 'Country/region [select]' is also present. The main content area has a title 'Data storage feature activation'. On the left, there is a sidebar with a list of options under 'Data storage feature activation': 'Select DS6000 series machine', 'Select DS8000 series machine', 'Select TS series LTO machine', and 'Help'. The 'Select DS8000 series machine' option is highlighted with a blue background. Below the sidebar, there is a section titled 'Related links' with links to 'IBM System Storage support feedback' and 'Electronic service call'. The main content area also contains descriptive text about the DSFA application and a list of machine types.

*Figure 10-5 IBM DSFA website*

2. Click **IBM System Storage DS8000 series**. This brings you to the Select DS8000 series machine window (Figure 10-6). Select the appropriate 242x Machine Type.

The screenshot shows a web-based interface for selecting a DS8000 series machine. At the top, there's a navigation bar with links for Home, Solutions, Services, Products, Support & downloads, My IBM, and a search bar. A 'Country/region [select]' dropdown is also present. The main content area has a title 'Select DS8000 series machine'. On the left, a sidebar lists options like 'Data storage feature activation', 'Select DS6000 series machine', 'Select DS8000 series machine' (which is selected), 'View machine summary', 'Manage activations', 'Retrieve activation codes', 'Assign function authorization', 'View authorization details', 'Select TS series LTO machine', and 'Help'. Below the sidebar, there's a section for 'Related links' with items like 'IBM System Storage support feedback' and 'Electronic service call'. The main form area contains instructions: 'Enter your machine information. You can find this information in the DS Storage Manager application under storage unit properties.', 'You must complete all fields marked with an asterisk (\*).', and 'Click Submit when you are finished.' It includes three input fields: 'Machine type: \*' (a dropdown menu showing 'Select one' at the top, followed by options 2107, 2421, 2422, 2423, and 2424, with 2424 currently selected), 'Serial number: \*' (an empty text field), and 'Machine signature: \*' (another empty text field). A 'Submit' button is located at the bottom left of the form area.

Figure 10-6 DS8700 DSFA machine information entry window

3. Enter the machine information collected in Table 10-4 on page 241 and click **Submit**. The View machine summary window opens (Figure 10-7).

The screenshot shows a Microsoft Internet Explorer window with the title bar "IBM Disk storage feature activation: View machine summary - DS8000 series - Microsoft Internet Explorer". The address bar contains the URL "https://www-03.ibm.com/storage/dsfa/userSubmitMachine2107.wss?machineType=2107". The page header includes the IBM logo, a search bar, and navigation links for Home, Products, Services & solutions, Support & downloads, and My account. A dropdown menu on the left is set to "Disk storage feature activation". The main content area is titled "View machine summary" and "IBM TotalStorage DS8300". It provides instructions for verifying machine functions and activating features. Below this, there are four tables listing feature codes, descriptions, total licenses, assigned licenses, and unassigned licenses for different models:

IBM 2107 Model 9A2 Serial number 75-ABTV0			
Feature code	Description		
0700	OEL indicator		
0720	PTC indicator		
0740	RMC indicator		
0760	RMZ indicator		
0780	PAV indicator		

IBM 2244 Model OEL Serial number 75-0DF11			
Description	Total license	Assigned	Unassigned
Operating environment	25.0 TB	25.0 TB	0.0 TB

IBM 2244 Model PAV Serial number 75-0DF21			
Description	Total license	Assigned	Unassigned
Parallel access volumes	25.0 TB	25.0 TB	0.0 TB

IBM 2244 Model PTC Serial number 75-0DF31			
Description	Total license	Assigned	Unassigned
Point in time copy	25.0 TB	25.0 TB	0.0 TB

IBM 2244 Model RMC Serial number 75-0DF41			
Description	Total license	Assigned	Unassigned
Remote mirror and copy	25.0 TB	25.0 TB	0.0 TB

IBM 2244 Model RMZ Serial number 75-0DF51			
Description	Total license	Assigned	Unassigned
Remote mirror for z/OS	25.0 TB	25.0 TB	0.0 TB

Figure 10-7 DSFA View machine summary window

The View machine summary window shows the total purchased licenses and how many of them are currently assigned. The example in Figure 10-7 shows a storage unit where all licenses have already been assigned. When assigning licenses for the first time, the Assigned field shows 0.0 TB.

4. Click **Manage activations**. The Manage activations window opens. Figure 10-8 shows the Manage activations window for your storage images. For each license type and storage image, enter the license scope (fixed block data (FB), count key data (CKD), or All) and a capacity value (in TB) to assign to the storage image. The capacity values are expressed in decimal terabytes with 0.1 TB increments. The sum of the storage image capacity values for a license cannot exceed the total license value.

The screenshot shows the 'Manage activations' page for an IBM 2107 Model 9A2 storage system. The left sidebar lists navigation options for disk storage feature activation, including selecting a machine (DS6000 or DS8000 series) and viewing machine summary, activation codes, function authorization, and authorization details. It also includes a 'Help' section and related links for support feedback and electronic service calls.

**Disk storage feature activation**

IBM 2107 Model 9A2  
Serial number 75-ABTV0

Use this page to select the license scope and specify the assigned value for your functions. Both of these functions are performed on a storage image basis.

The [license scope](#) defines the type of storage, and therefore the type of servers, the function will be technically enabled for. You must select a license scope for those functions that have a license scope option.

The [assigned value](#) defines the authorization level the function will be technically enabled to. You must initially specify an assigned value for each storage image. You must also update these values in a future session if your total license value has increased or decreased.

Click Submit when you are finished.

**Operating environment**

Storage image	Scope	Assigned value
Image 1	All	16.0 TB
Image 2	All	9.0 TB
Total license:	25.0 TB	
Available for assignment:	0.0 TB	

**Parallel access volumes**

Storage image	Scope	Assigned value
Image 1	CKD	16.0 TB
Image 2	CKD	9.0 TB
Total license:	25.0 TB	
Available for assignment:	0.0 TB	

**Point in time copy**

Storage image	Scope	Assigned value
Image 1	All	16.0 TB
Image 2	All	9.0 TB
Total license:	25.0 TB	
Available for assignment:	0.0 TB	

**Remote mirror and copy**

Storage image	Scope	Assigned value
Image 1	All	16.0 TB
Image 2	All	9.0 TB
Total license:	25.0 TB	
Available for assignment:	0.0 TB	

**Remote mirror for z/OS**

Storage image	Scope	Assigned value
Image 1	CKD	16.0 TB
Image 2	CKD	9.0 TB
Total license:	25.0 TB	
Available for assignment:	0.0 TB	

**Submit**

Figure 10-8 DSFA Manage activations window

- When you have entered the values, click **Submit**. The View activation codes window opens, showing the license activation codes for the storage images (Figure 10-9). Print the activation codes or click **Download** to save the activation codes in a file that you can later import in the DS8700. The file contains the activation codes for both storage images.

Storage image 1	
Description	Feature activation code
Operating environment	9BBE-0EE4-741F-9607-8A77-A856-5E02-7F8D
Parallel access volumes	8654-2A78-5704-0935-8A77-A856-5E02-7F8D
Point in time copy	D0AA-E9CD-4F1D-25AD-8A77-A856-5E02-7F8D
Remote mirror and copy	B5D7-5FF1-121A-445E-8A77-A856-5E02-7F8D
Remote mirror for z/OS	A401-79A1-7722-BCDB-8A77-A856-5E02-7F8D

Storage image 2	
Description	Feature activation code
Operating environment	9CD1-7A33-7A47-C44B-8A77-A856-5E02-7F8D
Parallel access volumes	65B0-C66A-494F-7F63-8A77-A856-5E02-7F8D
Point in time copy	8DD5-284D-CF4A-D562-8A77-A856-5E02-7F8D
Remote mirror and copy	5346-3A0E-490C-B531-8A77-A856-5E02-7F8D
Remote mirror for z/OS	A6CB-5874-6B4F-12FA-8A77-A856-5E02-7F8D

[Download now](#)

Figure 10-9 DSFA View activation codes window

**Note:** In most situations, the DSFA application can locate your 239x licensed function authorization record when you enter the DS8700 (242x) serial number and signature. However, if the 239x licensed function authorization record is not attached to the 242x record, you must assign it to the 242x record using the Assign function authorization link on the DSFA application. In this case, you need the 239x serial number (which you can find on the License Function Authorization document).

### 10.2.3 Applying activation codes using the GUI

Use this process to apply the activation codes on your DS8700 storage images using the DS Storage Manager GUI. Once applied, the codes enable you to begin configuring storage on a storage image.

**Important:** The initial enablement of any optional DS8700 licensed function is a concurrent activity (assuming the appropriate level of microcode is installed on the machine for the given function).

The following activation activities are disruptive and require a machine IML or reboot of the affected image:

- ▶ Removal of a DS8700 licensed function to deactivate the function.
- ▶ A lateral change or reduction in the license scope. A *lateral change* is defined as changing the license scope from fixed block (FB) to count key data (CKD) or from CKD to FB. A *reduction* is defined as changing the license scope from all physical capacity (ALL) to only FB or only CKD capacity.

**Attention:** Before you begin this task, you must resolve any current DS8700 problems. Contact IBM support for assistance in resolving these problems.

The easiest way to apply the feature activation codes is to download the activation codes from the IBM Disk Storage Feature Activation (DSFA) website to your local computer and import the file into the DS Storage Manager. If you can access the DS Storage Manager from the same computer that you use to access the DSFA website, you can copy the activation codes from the DSFA window and paste them into the DS Storage Manager window. The third option is to manually enter the activation codes in the DS Storage Manager from a printed copy of the codes.

Perform the following steps to apply the activation codes:

1. In the My Work navigation pane on the DS Storage Manager Welcome window, select **Manage hardware** → **Storage Complexes**, and from the drop-down Select action menu, click **Apply Activation Codes** in the Storage Image section, as shown in Figure 10-10.

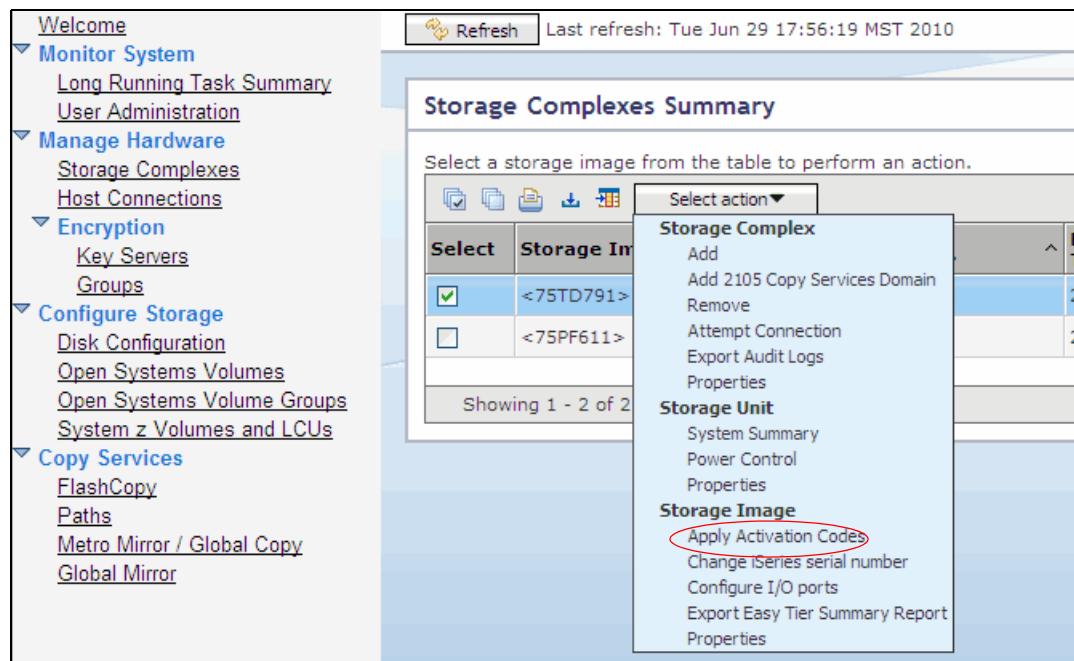


Figure 10-10 DS8700 Storage Manager GUI: Select Apply Activation Codes

2. The Apply Activation Codes window opens (Figure 10-11). If this is the first time that you are applying the activation codes, the fields in the window are empty. In our example, there is only a 19 TB Operating Environment License (OEL) for FB volumes. You have an option to manually add an activation key by selecting **Add Activation Key** from the drop-down Select action menu. The other option is to select **Import Key File**, which you use when you downloaded a file with the activation key from the IBM DSFA site, as explained in 10.2.2, “Obtaining activation codes” on page 241.

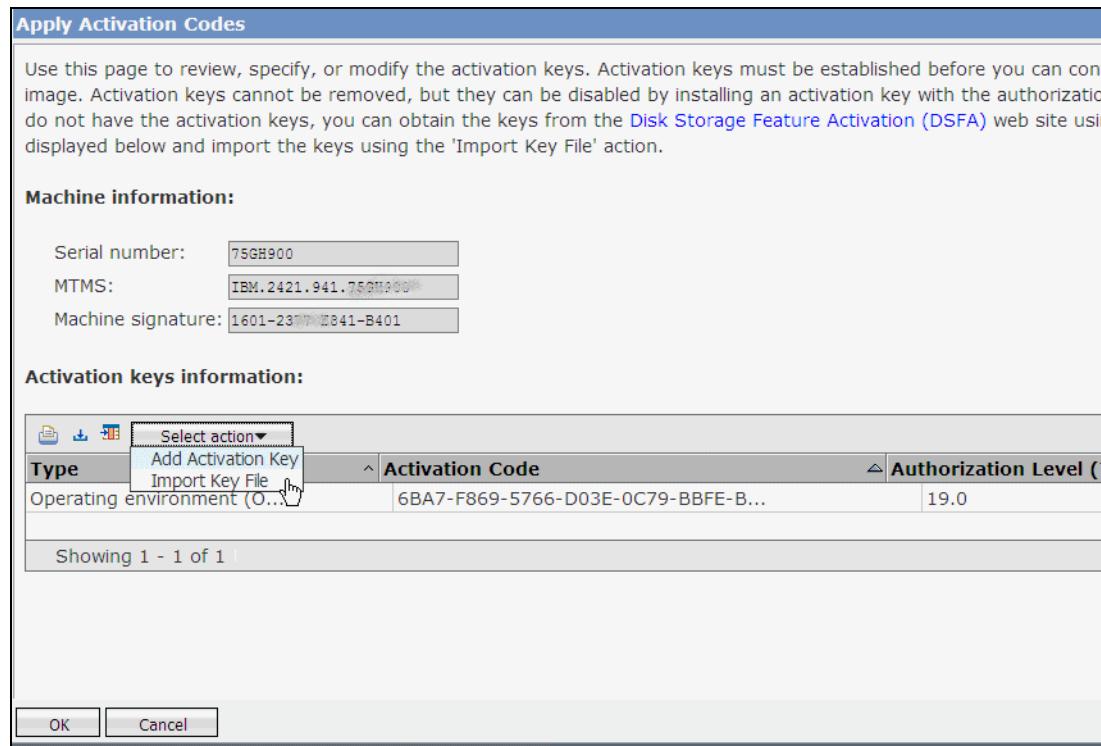


Figure 10-11 Apply Activation Codes window

3. The easiest way is to import the activation key from the file, as shown in Figure 10-12.

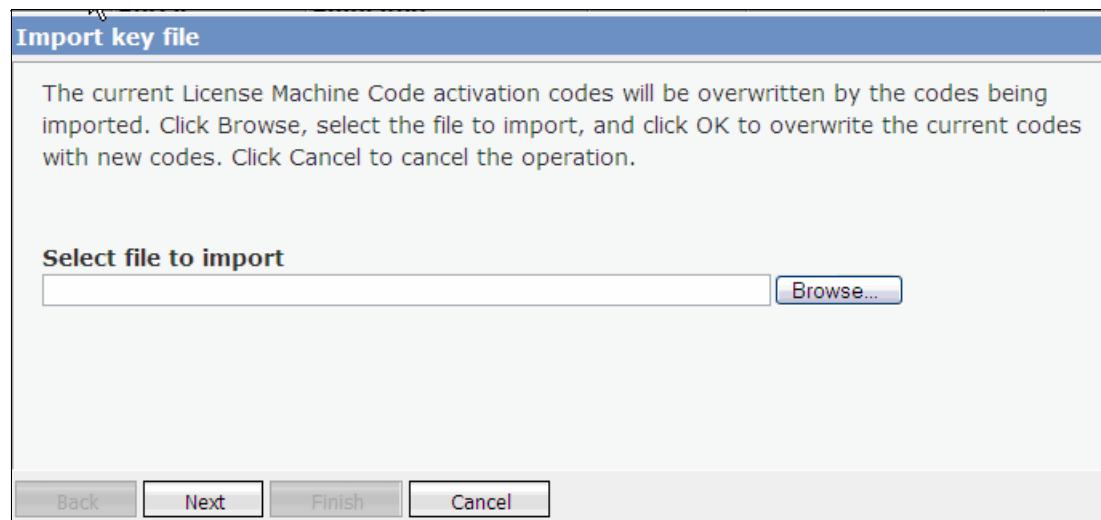


Figure 10-12 Apply Activation Codes by importing the key from the file

- Once the file has been selected, click **Next** to continue. The Confirmation window displays the key name. Click **Finish** to complete the new key activation procedure (Figure 10-13).

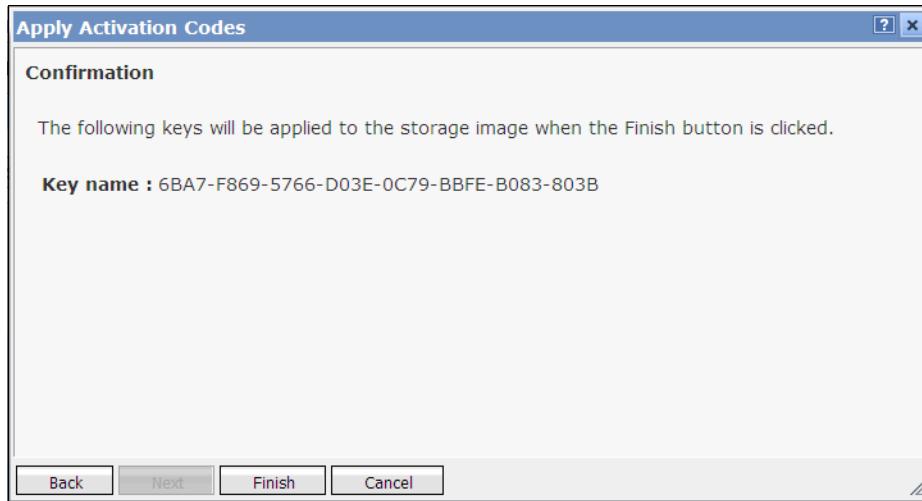


Figure 10-13 Apply Activation Codes: Confirmation window

- Your license is now listed in the table. In our example, there is one OEL license active, as shown in Figure 10-14.

The screenshot shows the 'Apply Activation Codes' window. The main area is titled 'Machine information:' and includes fields for Serial number (75GH900), MTMS (IBM.2421.941.76), and Machine signature (1601-2377-1-B401). Below this is the 'Activation keys information:' section, which contains a table:

Type	Activation Code	Authorization Level
Operating environment (O...)	6BA7-F869-5766-D03E-0C79-BBFE-B...	19.0

At the bottom of the window are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Figure 10-14 Apply Activation Codes window

- Click **OK** to exit Apply Activation Codes wizard.

- To view all the activation codes that have been applied, from My Work navigation pane on the DS Storage Manager Welcome window, select **Manage hardware** → **Storage Complexes**, and from the drop-down Select action menu, click **Apply Activation Codes**. The activation codes are displayed, as shown in Figure 10-15.

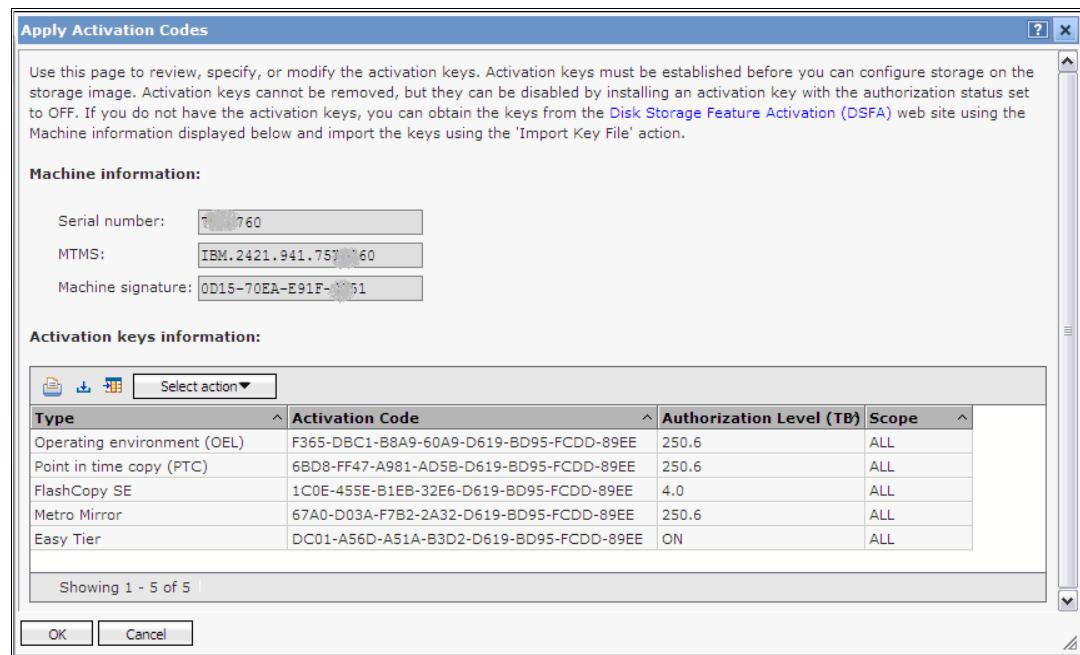


Figure 10-15 Activation codes applied

#### 10.2.4 Applying activation codes using the DS CLI

The license keys can also be activated using the DS CLI. This is available only if the machine Operating Environment License (OEL) has previously been activated and you have a console with a compatible DS CLI program installed.

Perform the following steps:

- Use the **showsi** command to display the DS8700 machine signature, as shown in Example 10-1.

*Example 10-1 DS CLI showsi command*

---

```
dscli> showsi ibm.2107-75abtv1
Date/Time: 05 October 2009 14:19:17 CET IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS:
ibm.2107-75abtv1
Name          DS8k_TIC06v1_ATS
desc          -
ID            IBM.2107-75ABTV1
Storage Unit  IBM.2107-75ABTV0
Model         9A2
WWNN          5005076303FED663
Signature      1234-5678-9c0a-c456
State          Online
ESSNet        Enabled
Volume Group  V0
os400Serial   001
NVS Memory    2.0 GB
```

---

Cache Memory	54.4 GB
Processor Memory	62.7 GB
MTS	IBM.2107-75ABTV0

---

2. Obtain your license activation codes from the IBM DSFA website, as discussed in 10.2.2, “Obtaining activation codes” on page 241.
3. Use the **applykey** command to activate the codes and the **lskey** command to verify which type of licensed features are activated for your storage unit.
  - c. Enter an **applykey** command at the dscli command prompt as follows. The **-file** parameter specifies the key file. The second parameter specifies the storage image.  

```
dscli> applykey -file c:\2107_7520780.xml IBM.2107-7520781
```
  - d. Verify that the keys have been activated for your storage unit by issuing the DS CLI **lskey** command, as shown in Example 10-2.

*Example 10-2 Using lskey to list installed licenses*

---

```
dscli> lskey ibm.2107-7520781
Date/Time: 05 October 2009 14:19:17 CET IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS:
ibm.2107-7520781
Activation Key                                         Authorization Level (TB) Scope
=====
Global mirror (GM)                                 70                         FB
High Performance FICON for System z (zHPF) on                         CKD
IBM FlashCopy SE                                 100                         A11
IBM HyperPAV                                     on                         CKD
IBM database protection                         on                         FB
Metro mirror (MM)                                 70                         FB
Metro/Global mirror (MGM)                     70                         FB
Operating environment (OEL)                 100                         A11
Parallel access volumes (PAV)                 30                         CKD
Point in time copy (PTC)                     100                         A11
RMZ Resync                                     30                         CKD
Remote mirror for z/OS (RMZ)                 30                         CKD
```

---

For more details about the DS CLI, refer to *IBM System Storage DS: Command-Line Interface User’s Guide*, GC53-1127.

## 10.3 Licensed scope considerations

For the Point-in-Time Copy (PTC) function and the Remote Mirror and Copy functions, you have the ability to set the scope of these functions to be FB, CKD, or All. You need to decide what scope to set, as shown in Figure 10-8 on page 244. In that example, Image One has 16 TB of RMC, and the user has currently decided to set the scope to All. If the scope was set to FB instead, then you cannot use RMC with any CKD volumes that are later configured. However, it is possible to return to the DSFA website at a later time and change the scope from CKD or FB to All, or from All to either CKD or FB. In every case, a new activation code is generated, which you can download and apply.

### 10.3.1 Why you get a choice

Let us imagine a simple scenario where a machine has 20 TB of capacity. Of this capacity, 15 TB is configured as FB and 5 TB is configured as CKD. If we only want to use Point-in-Time Copy for the CKD volumes, then we can purchase just 5 TB of Point-in-Time Copy and set the scope of the Point-in-Time Copy activation code to CKD. There is no need to buy a new PTC license in case you do not need Point-in-Time Copy for CKD anymore, but you would like to use it for FB only. Simply obtain a new activation code from DSFA website by changing the scope to FB.

When deciding which scope to set, there are several scenarios to consider. Use Table 10-5 to guide you in your choice. This table applies to both Point-in-Time Copy and Remote Mirror and Copy functions.

Table 10-5 Deciding which scope to use

Scenario	Point-in-Time Copy or Remote Mirror and Copy function usage consideration	Suggested scope setting
1	This function is only used by open systems hosts.	Select FB.
2	This function is only used by System z hosts.	Select CKD.
3	This function is used by both open systems and System z hosts.	Select All.
4	This function is currently only needed by open systems hosts, but we might use it for System z at some point in the future.	Select FB and change to scope All if and when the System z requirement occurs.
5	This function is currently only needed by System z hosts, but we might use it for open systems hosts at some point in the future.	Select CKD and change to scope All if and when the open systems requirement occurs.
6	This function has already been set to All.	Leave the scope set to All. Changing the scope to CKD or FB at this point requires a disruptive outage.

Any scenario that changes from FB or CKD to All does not require an outage. If you choose to change from All to either CKD or FB, then you must have a disruptive outage. If you are absolutely certain that your machine will only ever be used for one storage type (for example, only CKD or only FB), then you can also quite safely just use the All scope.

### 10.3.2 Using a feature for which you are not licensed

In Example 10-3, we have a machine where the scope of the Point-in-Time Copy license is set to FB. This means we cannot use Point-in-Time Copy to create CKD FlashCopies. When we try, the command fails. We can, however, create CKD volumes, because the Operating Environment License (OEL) key scope is All.

Example 10-3 Trying to use a feature for which you are not licensed

```
dscli> lskey IBM.2107-7520391
Date/Time: 05 October 2009 14:19:17 CET IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS: IBM.2107-7520391
Activation Key          Authorization Level (TB) Scope
=====
Operating environment (OEL) 5          A11
Remote mirror and copy (RMC) 5          A11
Point in time copy (PTC)    5          FB
```

The FlashCopy scope is currently set to FB

```
dscli> lsckdvol
Date/Time: 05 October 2009 14:19:17 CET IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS: IBM.2107-7520391
Name   ID   accstate datastate configstate deviceMTM voltype   orgbvals extpool cap (cyl)
=====
-     0000 Online  Normal   Normal    3390-3   CKD Base -      P2       3339
-     0001 Online  Normal   Normal    3390-3   CKD Base -      P2       3339

dscli> mkflash 0000:0001      We are not able to create CKD FlashCopies
Date/Time: 05 October 2009 14:19:17 CET IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS: IBM.2107-7520391
CMUN03035E mkflash: 0000:0001: Copy Services operation failure: feature not installed
```

---

### 10.3.3 Changing the scope to All

As a follow-on to the previous example, in Example 10-4 we have logged onto DSFA and changed the scope for the PTC license to All. We then apply this new activation code. We are now able to perform a CKD FlashCopy.

*Example 10-4 Changing the scope from FB to All*

```
dscli> lskey IBM.2107-7520391
Date/Time: 05 October 2009 14:19:17 CET IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS: IBM.2107-7520391
Activation Key           Authorization Level (TB) Scope
=====
Operating environment (OEL) 5          A11
Remote mirror and copy (RMC) 5          A11
Point in time copy (PTC) 5          FB
The FlashCopy scope is currently set to FB

dscli> applykey -key 1234-5678-9FEF-C232-51A7-429C-1234-5678 IBM.2107-7520391
Date/Time: 05 October 2009 14:19:17 CET IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS: IBM.2107-7520391
CMUC00199I applykey: Licensed Machine Code successfully applied to storage image
IBM.2107-7520391.

dscli> lskey IBM.2107-7520391
Date/Time: 05 October 2009 14:19:17 CET IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS: IBM.2107-7520391
Activation Key           Authorization Level (TB) Scope
=====
Operating environment (OEL) 5          A11
Remote mirror and copy (RMC) 5          A11
Point in time copy (PTC) 5          A11
The FlashCopy scope is now set to All

dscli> lsckdvol
Date/Time: 05 November 2007 15:51:53 CET IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.991 DS: IBM.2107-7520391
Name   ID   accstate datastate configstate deviceMTM voltype   orgbvals extpool cap (cyl)
=====
-     0000 Online  Normal   Normal    3390-3   CKD Base -      P2       3339
-     0001 Online  Normal   Normal    3390-3   CKD Base -      P2       3339

dscli> mkflash 0000:0001      We are now able to create CKD FlashCopies
Date/Time: 05 October 2009 14:19:17 CET IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS: IBM.2107-7520391
CMUC00137I mkflash: FlashCopy pair 0000:0001 successfully created.
```

---

### 10.3.4 Changing the scope from All to FB

In Example 10-5, we decide to increase storage capacity for the entire machine. However, we do not want to purchase any more PTC licenses, because PTC is only used by open systems hosts and this new capacity is only to be used for CKD storage. We therefore decide to change the scope to FB, so we log on to the DSFA website and create a new activation code. We then apply it, but discover that because this is effectively a downward change (decreasing the scope) that it does not apply until we have a disruptive outage on the DS8700.

*Example 10-5 Changing the scope from All to FB*

```
dscli> lskey IBM.2107-7520391
Date/Time: 05 October 2009 14:19:17 CET IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS: IBM.2107-7520391
Activation Key          Authorization Level (TB) Scope
=====
Operating environment (OEL) 5          A11
Remote mirror and copy (RMC) 5          A11
Point in time copy (PTC) 5          A11
The FlashCopy scope is currently set to A11

dscli> applykey -key ABCD-EFAB-EF9E-6B30-51A7-429C-1234-5678 IBM.2107-7520391
Date/Time: 05 October 2009 14:19:17 CET IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS: IBM.2107-7520391
CMUC00199I applykey: Licensed Machine Code successfully applied to storage image
IBM.2107-7520391.

dscli> lskey IBM.2107-7520391
Date/Time: 05 October 2009 14:19:17 CET IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS: IBM.2107-7520391
Activation Key          Authorization Level (TB) Scope
=====
Operating environment (OEL) 5          A11
Remote mirror and copy (RMC) 5          A11
Point in time copy (PTC) 5          FB
The FlashCopy scope is now set to FB

dscli> lsckdvol
Date/Time: 05 October 2009 14:19:17 CET IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS: IBM.2107-7520391
Name   ID   accstate datastate configstate deviceMTM voltype  orgbvol extpool cap (cyl)
=====
-     0000 Online  Normal    Normal    3390-3   CKD Base -      P2       3339
-     0001 Online  Normal    Normal    3390-3   CKD Base -      P2       3339

dscli> mkflash 0000:0001      But we are still able to create CKD FlashCopies
Date/Time: 05 October 2009 14:19:17 CET IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS: IBM.2107-7520391
CMUC00137I mkflash: FlashCopy pair 0000:0001 successfully created.
```

In this scenario, we have made a downward license feature key change. We must schedule an outage of the storage image. We should in fact only make the downward license key change immediately before taking this outage.

**Consideration:** Making a downward license change and then not immediately performing a reboot of the storage image is not supported. Do not allow your machine to be in a position where the applied key is different than the reported key.

### 10.3.5 Applying an insufficient license feature key

In this example, we have a scenario where a DS8700 has a 5 TB Operating Environment License (OEL), FlashCopy, and Remote Mirror and Copy (RMC) license. We increased storage capacity and therefore increased the license key for OEL and RMC. However, we forgot to increase the license key for FlashCopy (PTC). In Example 10-6, we can see the FlashCopy license is only 5 TB. However, we are still able to create FlashCopies.

*Example 10-6 Insufficient FlashCopy license*

---

```
dscli> lskey IBM.2107-7520391
Date/Time: 05 October 2009 14:19:17 CET IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS:
IBM.2107-7520391
Activation Key          Authorization Level (TB) Scope
=====
Operating environment (OEL) 10          A11
Remote mirror and copy (RMC) 10          A11
Point in time copy (PTC)    5           A11

dscli> mkflash 1800:1801
Date/Time: 05 November 2007 17:46:14 CET IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.991 DS:
IBM.2107-7520391
CMUC00137I mkflash: FlashCopy pair 1800:1801 successfully created.
```

---

At this point, this is still a valid configuration, because the configured ranks on the machine total less than 5 TB of storage. In Example 10-7, we then try to create a new rank that brings the total rank capacity above 5 TB. This command fails.

*Example 10-7 Creating a rank when we are exceeding a license key*

---

```
dscli> mkrank -array A1 -stgtype CKD
Date/Time: 05 October 2009 14:19:17 CET IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS:
IBM.2107-7520391
CMUN02403E mkrank: Unable to create rank: licensed storage amount has been
exceeded
```

---

To configure the additional ranks, we must first increase the license key capacity of every installed license. In this example, that is the FlashCopy license.

### 10.3.6 Calculating how much capacity is used for CKD or FB

To calculate how much disk space is currently used for CKD or FB storage, we need to combine the output of two commands. There are some simple rules:

- ▶ License key values are decimal numbers. So, 5 TB of license is 5,000 GB.
- ▶ License calculations use the disk size number shown by the **lsarray** command.
- ▶ License calculations include the capacity of all DDMs in each array site.
- ▶ Each array site is eight DDMs.

To make the calculation, we use the **lsrank** command to determine how many arrays the rank contains, and whether those ranks are used for FB or CKD storage. We use the **lsarray** command to obtain the disk size used by each array. Then, we multiply the disk size (73, 146, or 300) by eight (for eight DDMs in each array site).

In Example 10-8 on page 255, **lsrank** tells us that rank R0 uses array A0 for CKD storage. Then, **lsarray** tells us that array A0 uses 300 GB DDMs. So we multiple 300 (the DDM size) by 8, giving us  $300 \times 8 = 2,400$  GB. This means we are using 2,400 GB for CKD storage.

Now, rank R4 in Example 10-8 is based on array A6. Array A6 uses 146 GB DDMs, so we multiply 146 by 8, giving us  $146 \times 8 = 1,168$  GB. This means we are using 1,168 GB for FB storage.

*Example 10-8 Displaying array site and rank usage*

---

```
dscli> lsrank
Date/Time: 05 October 2009 14:19:17 CET IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS:
IBM.2107-75ABTV1
ID Group State datastate Array RAIDtype extpoolID stgtype
=====
R0      0 Normal Normal     A0          5 P0          ckd
R4      0 Normal Normal     A6          5 P4          fb

dscli> lsarray
Date/Time: 05 October 2009 14:19:17 CET IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS:
IBM.2107-75ABTV1
Array State      Data   RAIDtype arsite Rank DA Pair DDMcap (10^9B)
=====
A0    Assigned    Normal 5 (6+P+S) S1     R0  0           300.0
A1    Unassigned Normal 5 (6+P+S) S2     -   0           300.0
A2    Unassigned Normal 5 (6+P+S) S3     -   0           300.0
A3    Unassigned Normal 5 (6+P+S) S4     -   0           300.0
A4    Unassigned Normal 5 (7+P)   S5     -   0           146.0
A5    Unassigned Normal 5 (7+P)   S6     -   0           146.0
A6    Assigned    Normal 5 (7+P)   S7     R4  0           146.0
A7    Assigned    Normal 5 (7+P)   S8     R5  0           146.0
```

---

So for CKD scope licenses, we currently use 2,400 GB. For FB scope licenses, we currently use 1,168 GB. For licenses with a scope of All, we currently use 3,568 GB. Using the limits shown in Example 10-6 on page 254, we are within scope for all licenses.

If we combine Example 10-6 on page 254, Example 10-7 on page 254, and Example 10-8, we can also see why the **mkrank** command in Example 10-7 on page 254 failed. In Example 10-7 on page 254, we tried to create a rank using array A1. Now, array A1 uses 300 GB DDMs. This means that for FB scope and All scope licenses, we use  $300 \times 8 = 2,400$  GB more license keys. In Example 10-6 on page 254, we had only 5 TB of FlashCopy license with a scope of All. This means that we cannot have total configured capacity that exceeds 5,000 TB. Because we already use 3,568 GB, the attempt to use 2,400 more GB will fail, because 3,568 plus 2,400 equals 5,968 GB, which is clearly more than 5,000 GB. If we increase the size of the FlashCopy license to 10 TB, then we can have 10,000 GB of total configured capacity, so the rank creation will then succeed.



# Storage configuration

In this part, we discuss the configuration tasks required on your IBM System Storage DS8000 storage subsystem. We cover the following topics:

- ▶ System Storage Productivity Center (SSPC)
- ▶ Configuration using the DS Storage Manager GUI
- ▶ Configuration with the DS Command-Line Interface





# Configuration flow

This chapter gives a brief overview of the tasks required to configure the storage in a IBM System Storage DS8700 storage subsystem.

## 11.1 Configuration worksheets

During the installation of the DS8700, your IBM service representative customizes the setup of your storage complex based on information that you provide in a set of customization worksheets. Each time that you install a new storage unit or management console, you must complete the customization worksheets before the IBM service representatives can perform the installation.

The customization worksheets are important and need to be completed before the installation. It is important that this information is entered into the machine so that preventive maintenance and high availability of the machine are maintained. You can find the customization worksheets in *IBM System Storage DS8000 Introduction and Planning Guide*, GC35-0515.

The customization worksheets allow you to specify the initial setup for the following items:

- ▶ Company information: This information allows IBM service representatives to contact you as quickly as possible when they need to access your storage complex.
- ▶ Management console network settings: Allows you to specify the IP address and LAN settings for your management console (MC).
- ▶ Remote support (includes Call Home and remote service settings): Allows you to specify whether you want outbound (Call Home) or inbound (remote services) remote support.
- ▶ Notifications (include SNMP trap and email notification settings): Allows you to specify the types of notifications that you want and that others might want to receive.
- ▶ Power control: Allows you to select and control the various power modes for the storage complex.
- ▶ Control Switch settings: Allows you to specify certain DS8700 settings that affect host connectivity. You need to enter these choices on the control switch settings worksheet so that the service representative can set them during the installation of the DS8700.

**Important:** IBM service representatives cannot install a storage unit or management console until you provide them with the completed customization worksheets.

## 11.2 Configuration flow

The following list shows the tasks that need to be done when configuring storage in the DS8700. The order of the tasks does not have to be exactly as shown here, and some of the individual tasks can be done in a different order:

**Important:** The configuration flow changes when you use the Full Disk Encryption Feature for the DS8700. For details, refer to *IBM System Storage DS8700 Architecture and Implementation/IBM System Storage DS8700 Disk Encryption Implementation and Usage Guidelines*, REDP-4500.

1. Install license keys: Activate the license keys for the storage unit.
2. Create arrays: Configure the installed disk drives as either RAID 5, RAID 6, or RAID 10 arrays.
3. Create ranks: Assign each array to either a fixed block (FB) rank or a count key data (CKD) rank.

4. Create Extent Pools: Define Extent Pools, associate each one with either Server 0 or Server 1, and assign at least one rank to each Extent Pool. If you want to take advantage of Storage Pool Striping, you must assign multiple ranks to an Extent Pool. Note that with current versions of the DS GUI, you can start directly with the creation of Extent Pools (arrays and ranks will be automatically and implicitly defined).
5. Create a repository for Space Efficient volumes.
6. Configure I/O ports: Define the type of the Fibre Channel/FICON ports. The port type can be either Switched Fabric, Arbitrated Loop, or FICON.
7. Create host connections for open systems: Define open systems hosts and their Fibre Channel (FC) host bus adapter (HBA) worldwide port names.
8. Create volume groups for open systems: Create volume groups where FB volumes will be assigned and select the host attachments for the volume groups.
9. Create open systems volumes: Create striped open systems FB volumes and assign them to one or more volume groups.
10. Create System z logical control units (LCUs): Define their type and other attributes, such as subsystem identifiers (SSIDs).
11. Create striped System z volumes: Create System z CKD base volumes and Parallel Access Volume (PAV) aliases for them.

The actual configuration can be done using either the DS Storage Manager GUI or DS Command-Line Interface, or a mixture of both. A novice user might prefer to use the GUI, while a more experienced user might use the CLI, particularly for some of the more repetitive tasks, such as creating large numbers of volumes.

For a more detailed discussion about how to perform the specific tasks, refer to:

- ▶ Chapter 10, “IBM System Storage DS8700 features and license keys” on page 235
- ▶ Chapter 13, “Configuration using the DS Storage Manager GUI” on page 295
- ▶ Chapter 14, “Configuration with the DS Command-Line Interface” on page 359

## **General guidelines when configuring storage**

Remember the following general guidelines when configuring storage on the DS8700:

- ▶ To get a well-balanced load distribution, we recommend using at least two Extent Pools, each assigned to one DS8700 internal server (Extent Pool 0 and Extent Pool 1). If CKD and FB volumes are required, at least four Extent Pools should be used.
- ▶ Address groups (16 LCUs/logical subsystems (LSSs)) are all for CKD or all for FB.
- ▶ Volumes of one LCU/LSS can be allocated on multiple Extent Pools.
- ▶ An Extent Pool cannot contain all three RAID 5, RAID 6, and RAID 10 ranks. Each Extent Pool pair should have the same characteristics in terms of RAID type, RPM, and DDM size.
- ▶ Ranks in one Extent Pool should belong to different Device Adapters.
- ▶ Assign multiple ranks to Extent Pools to take advantage of Storage Pool Striping.
- ▶ Create hybrid pools (SSD +HDD) to take advantage of Easy Tier automatic mode.
- ▶ CKD:
  - 3380 and 3390 type volumes can be intermixed in an LCU and an Extent Pool.

- ▶ FB:
  - Create a volume group for each server unless LUN sharing is required.
  - Place all ports for a single server in one volume group.
  - If LUN sharing is required, there are two options:
    - Use separate volumes for servers and place LUNs in multiple volume groups.
    - Place servers (clusters) and volumes to be shared in a single volume group.
- ▶ I/O ports:
  - Distribute host connections of each type (FICON and FCP) evenly across the I/O enclosure.
  - Typically, access *any* is used for I/O ports with access to ports controlled by SAN zoning.



# System Storage Productivity Center

This chapter discusses how to set up and manage the System Storage Productivity Center (SSPC) to work with the IBM System Storage DS8700 series.

The chapter covers the following topics:

- ▶ System Storage Productivity Center overview
- ▶ System Storage Productivity Center components
- ▶ System Storage Productivity Center setup and configuration
- ▶ Working with a DS8700 system and Tivoli Storage Productivity Center Basic Edition

## 12.1 System Storage Productivity Center (SSPC) overview

The SSPC (machine type 2805-MC4) is an integrated hardware and software solution for centralized management of IBM storage products with IBM storage management software. It is designed to reduce the number of management servers. Through the integration of software and hardware on a single platform, the customer can start to consolidate the storage management infrastructure and manage the storage network, hosts, and physical disks in context rather than by device.

IBM System Storage Productivity Center simplifies storage management by:

- ▶ Centralizing the management of storage network resources with IBM storage management software.
- ▶ Providing greater synergy between storage management software and IBM storage devices.
- ▶ Reducing the number of servers that are required to manage the storage infrastructure. The goal is to have one SSPC per data center.
- ▶ Providing a simple migration path from basic device management to using storage management applications that provide higher-level functions.

Taking full advantage of the available and optional functions usable with SSPC can result in:

- ▶ Fewer resources required to manage the growing storage infrastructure
- ▶ Reduced configuration errors
- ▶ Decreased troubleshooting time and improved accuracy

### 12.1.1 SSPC components

SSPC is a solution consisting of hardware and software elements.

#### SSPC hardware

The SSPC (IBM model 2805-MC4) server contains the following hardware components:

- ▶ x86 server 1U rack installed
- ▶ One Intel Xeon quad-core processor, with a speed of 2.4 GHz, a cache of 8 MB, and power consumption of 80 W
- ▶ 8 GB of RAM (eight 1-in. dual in-line memory modules of double-data-rate three memory, with a data rate of 1333 MHz)
- ▶ Two 146 GB hard disk drives, each with a speed of 15 K
- ▶ One Broadcom 6708 Ethernet card
- ▶ One CD/DVD bay with read and write-read capability

Optional components are:

- ▶ KVM Unit
- ▶ Secondary power supply

#### SSPC software

The IBM System Storage Productivity Center includes the following preinstalled (separately purchased) software, running under a licensed Microsoft Windows Server 2008 32-bit Enterprise Edition (included):

- ▶ IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center V4.1.1 licensed as TPC Basic Edition. A TPC upgrade requires that you purchase and add additional TPC licenses.

- ▶ IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller Console V5.1.0 (CIM Agent and GUI).
- ▶ DS CIM Agent Command-Line Interface (DSCIMCLI) V5.4.3.
- ▶ IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center for Replication (TPC-R) V4.1.1. To run TPC-R on SSPC, you must purchase and add TPC-R licenses.
- ▶ IBM DB2 Enterprise Server Edition 9.5 with Fix Pack 3.
- ▶ IPv6 installed on Windows Server 2008.

Optionally, the following components can be installed on the SSPC:

- ▶ Software components contained in SSPC V1.3 but not on previous SSPC versions (TPC-R, DSCIMCLI, DS3000, DS40000, or DS5000 Storage Manager).
- ▶ DS8700 Command-Line Interface (DSCLI).
- ▶ Antivirus software.

Customers have the option to purchase and install the individual software components to create their own SSPC server.

### **12.1.2 SSPC capabilities**

SSPC, as shipped to the customer, offers the following capabilities:

- ▶ Pre-installed and tested console: IBM has designed and tested SSPC to support interoperability between server, software, and supported storage devices.
- ▶ IBM System Storage SAN Volume Controller Console and CIM agent.
- ▶ IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center Basic Edition is the core software that drives SSPC and brings together the ability to manage the SAN, storage devices, and host resources from a single control point by providing the following features:
  - Remote access to the IBM System Storage DS8700 Storage Manager GUI. The DS8700 Storage Manager GUI itself resides and is usable on the DS8700 HMC.
  - Ability to discover, monitor, alert, report, and provision storage, including:
    - Automated discovery of supported storage systems in the environment.
    - Asset and capacity reporting from storage devices in the SAN.
    - Monitor status change of the storage devices.
    - Alert for storage device status change.
    - Report and display findings.
    - Basic end-to-end storage provisioning.
  - Advanced topology viewer showing a graphical and detailed view of the overall SAN, including device relationships and visual notifications.
  - A status dashboard.

### **12.1.3 SSPC upgrade options**

You can upgrade some of the software included with the standard SSPC.

#### **Tivoli Storage Productivity Center Standard Edition**

Tivoli Storage Productivity Center Basic Edition can be easily upgraded with one or all of the advanced capabilities found in IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center Standard Edition. IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center Standard Edition (TPC-SE) includes IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center for Disk, IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center for Data, and IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center for Fabric. In addition to the capabilities provided by TPC Basic

Edition, the Standard Edition can monitor performance and connectivity from the host file system to the physical disk, including in-depth performance monitoring and analysis of SAN fabric performance. This provides you with a main storage management application to monitor, plan, configure, report, and do problem determination on a heterogeneous storage infrastructure.

TPC-SE offers the following capabilities:

- ▶ Device configuration and management of SAN-attached devices from a single console. It also allows users to gather and analyze historical and real-time performance metrics.
- ▶ Management of file systems and databases, thus enabling enterprise-wide reports, monitoring and alerts, policy-based action, and file system capacity automation in heterogeneous environments.
- ▶ Management, monitoring, and control of SAN fabric to help automate device discovery, topology rendering, error detection fault isolation, SAN error predictor, zone control, real-time monitoring and alerts, and event management for heterogeneous enterprise SAN environments. In addition, it allows collection of performance statistics from IBM Tivoli Storage, Brocade, Cisco, and McDATA fabric switches and directors that implement the SNIA SMI-S specification.

### **Tivoli Storage Productivity Center for Replication**

Optionally on SSPC V1.1, Tivoli Storage Productivity Center for Replication (TPC-R) can be installed. SSPC V1.2 and above come with TPC-R preinstalled. To use the preinstalled TPC-R, licences need to be applied first to TPC-R on the SSPC. IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center for Replication provides management of IBM copy services capabilities (see *IBM System Storage DS8000: Copy Services in Open Environments*, SG24-6788 for more details).

IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center for Replication is designed to:

- ▶ Simplify and improve the configuration and management of replication on your network storage devices by performing advanced copy operations in a single action.
- ▶ Manage advanced storage replication services, such as Metro Mirror, Global Mirror, Metro/Global Mirror, FlashCopy, and FlashCopy SE. TPC-R can also monitor copy services.
- ▶ Enable multiple pairing options for source and target volumes.
- ▶ Define session pairs using target and source volume groups, confirm path definitions, and create consistency sets for replication operations.
- ▶ IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center for Replication Three Site BC is an addition to the Tivoli Storage Productivity Center for Replication V4.1 family. Three Site BC provides:
  - Support for three-site IBM DS8000 family Metro Global Mirror configurations.
  - Disaster recovery configurations that can be set up to indicate copy service type (FlashCopy, Metro Mirror, Global Mirror) and the number of separate copies and sites to be set.

## 12.2 SSPC setup and configuration

This section summarizes the tasks and sequence of steps required to set up and configure the DS8700 system and the SSPC used to manage DS8700 system.

For detailed information, and additional considerations, refer to the TPC / SSPC Information Center at the following address:

<http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v4r1/index.jsp>

### 12.2.1 Configuring SSPC for DS8700 remote GUI access

The steps to configure the SSPC can be found in *System Storage Productivity Center User's Guide*, SC27-2336, which is shipped with the SSPC. The document is also available at the following address:

<http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v4r1/index.jsp>

After IBM Support physically installs the 2805-MC4 and tests IP connectivity with the DS8700, SSPC is ready for configuration by either the customer or IBM Services.

Once the initial configuration of SSPC is done, the SSPC user is able to configure the remote GUI access to all DS8700 systems in the TPC Element Manager, as described in "Configuring TPC to access the DS8700 GUI" on page 269.

#### Accessing the TPC on SSPC

The following methods can be used to access the TPC on SSPC console:

- ▶ Access the complete SSPC:
  - Launch TPC directly at the SSPC Terminal.
  - Launch TPC by Remote Desktop to the SSPC.
- ▶ Install the TPC V4.1 GUI by using the TPC installation procedure. The GUI will then connect to the TPC running on the SSPC.
- ▶ Launch the TPC GUI front end as a Java™ Webstart session.
  - In a browser, enter `http://<SSPC ipaddress>:9550/ITSRM/app/welcome.html`.
  - Download the correct Java version if it is not installed yet.
  - Select **TPC GUI** and open it with the Java Webstart executable.

For the initial setup, a Java Webstart session will be opened and the TSRMGUI.jar file will be offloaded to the workstation on which the browser was started. Once the user agrees to unrestricted access to the workstation for the TPC-GUI, the system will ask if a shortcut should be created.

Figure 12-1 shows the entry window for installing TPC GUI access through a browser.

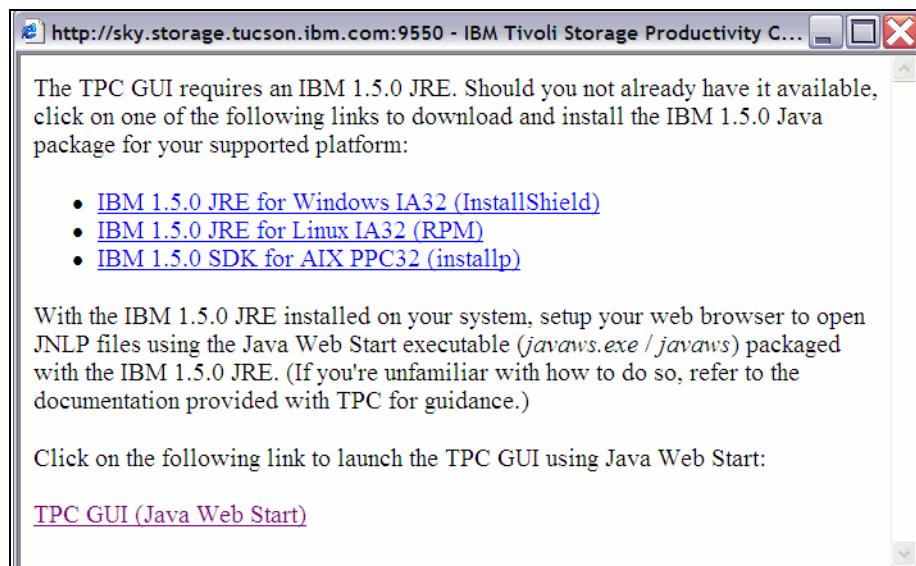


Figure 12-1 Entry window for installing TPC-GUI access through a browser

Once you click **TPC GUI (Java Web Start)**, a login window appears, as shown in Figure 12-2.

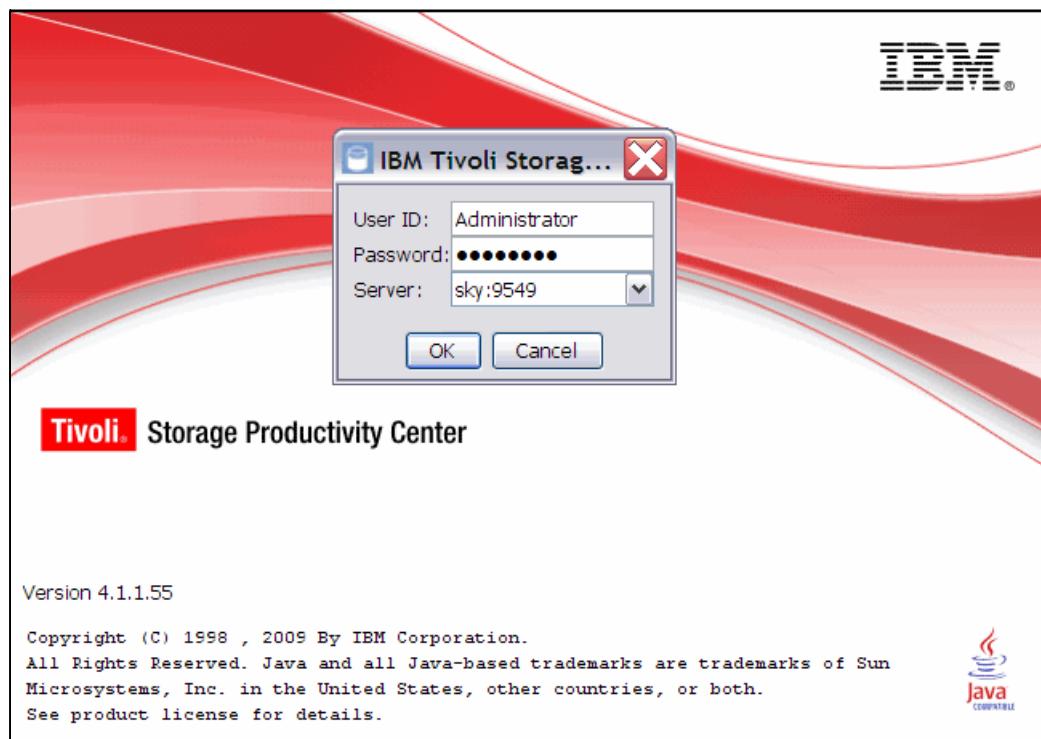


Figure 12-2 TPC GUI login window

If “Change password at first login” was specified by the SSPC administrator for the Windows user account, the user must first log on to the SSPC to change the password. The logon can be done at the SSPC terminal itself or by Windows Remote Desktop authentication to SSPC.

Change the field Server to <SSPC ipaddress>:9549 if there is no nameserver resolution between User Terminal and SSPC.

**Tip:** Set the SSPC IP address in the TPC-GUI entry window. At the workstation where you launched the browser to TPC GUI, go to:

- ▶ C:\Documents and Settings\<UserID>\ApplicationData\IBM\Java\Deployment\javaws\cache\http\<SSP\_C\_IP\_address>\P9550\DMITSRM\DMapp.
- ▶ Open the file AMtpcgui.jnlp and change the setting from <argument>SSPC\_Name:9549</argument> to <argument><SSPC\_ipaddress>:9549</argument>.

## Configuring TPC to access the DS8700 GUI

The TPC Element Manager is a single point of access to the GUI for all the DS8700 systems in your environment. Using the TPC Element Manager for DS8700 remote GUI access allows you to:

- ▶ View a list of Elements (DS8700 GUIs within your environment).
- ▶ Access all DS8700 GUIs by launching an Element with a single action.
- ▶ Add and remove DS8700 Elements. The DS8700 GUI front end can be accessed by http or https.
- ▶ Save the user and password to access the DS8700 GUI. This option to access the DS8700 GUI without reentering the password allows you to configure SSPC as a single password logon to all DS8700s in the customer environment.

With DS8700 LIC Release 5, remote access to the DS8700 GUI is bundled with SSPC.

To access the DS8700 GUI in TPC, complete the following steps:

1. Launch Internet Explorer.
2. Select **Tools** and then **Internet options** on the Internet Explorer toolbar.
3. Click the **Security** tab.
4. Click the Trusted sites icon and then the **Sites** button.
5. Type the URL with HTTP or HTTPS, whichever you intend to use in the Add Element Manager window. For example, type https://<hmc\_ip\_address>, where <hmc\_ip\_address> is the HMC IP address that will be entered into the Add this website to the zone field.
6. Click **Add**.
7. Click **Close**.
8. Click **OK**.
9. Close Internet Explorer.
10. Launch TPC. You can double-click the Productivity Center icon on the desktop or select **Start → Programs → IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center → Productivity Center**.

11. Log onto the TPC GUI with the default user ID and password. The default user ID is db2admin. The default password is passw0rd. If you login for the first time, the TPC welcome window opens, as shown in Figure 12-3.

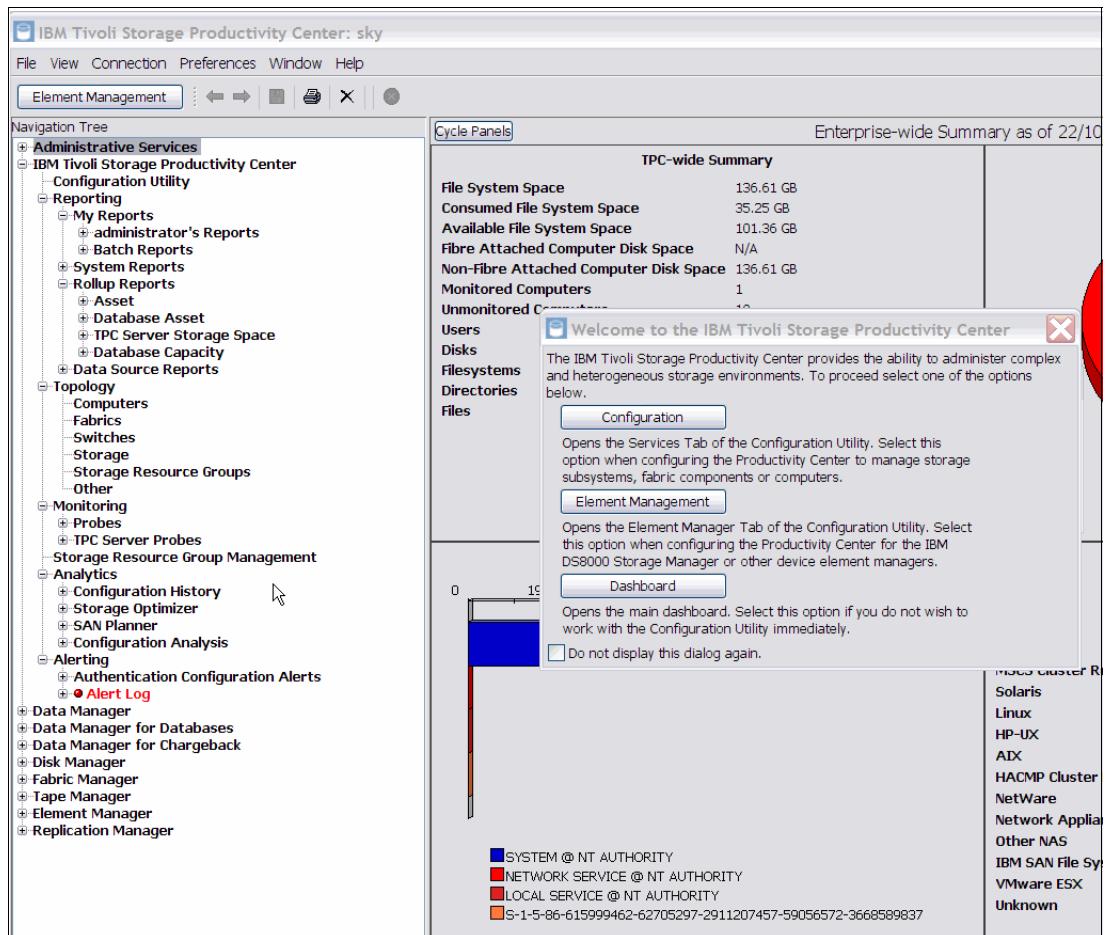


Figure 12-3 TPC welcome window

12. Click the **Element Management** button in the Welcome window. If this is not the first login to the TPC and you removed the Welcome window, then click the **Element Management** button above the Navigation Tree section. The new window displays all storage systems (Element Managers) already defined to TPC. From the Select action drop-down menu, select **Add Element Manager**, as shown in Figure 12-4.

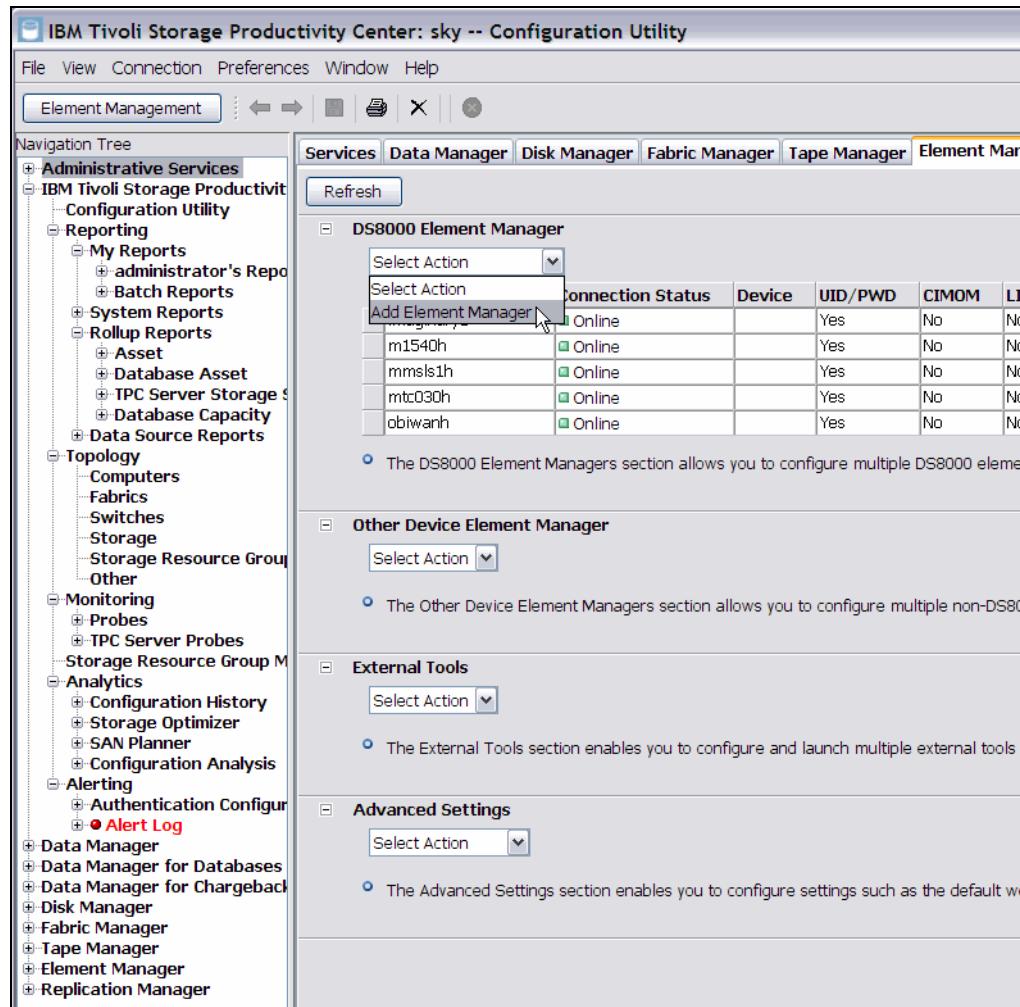


Figure 12-4 TPC Element Manager view: Options to add and launch Elements

13. In the Add Element Manager window (Figure 12-5), you have to provide the following information:

- a. Host: Enter the Domain Name System (DNS) name or IP address of the DS8700 HMC.
- b. Port: The port number on which the DS8700 HMC listens for requests.
- c. User name and associated Password already defined on DS8700: The default DS8700 user name is *admin* and password is *password*. If this is the first time you try to log on into DS8700 with the admin user name, you are prompted to change the password. Be prepared to enter a new password and record it in a safe place.
- d. Protocol: HTTPS or HTTP
- e. Display Name: We recommend specifying a meaningful name of each Element Manager to identify each DS8700 system in the Element Manager table. It is useful, particularly when you have more than one DS8700 system managed by a single SSPC console.

Click **Save** to add the Element Manager.

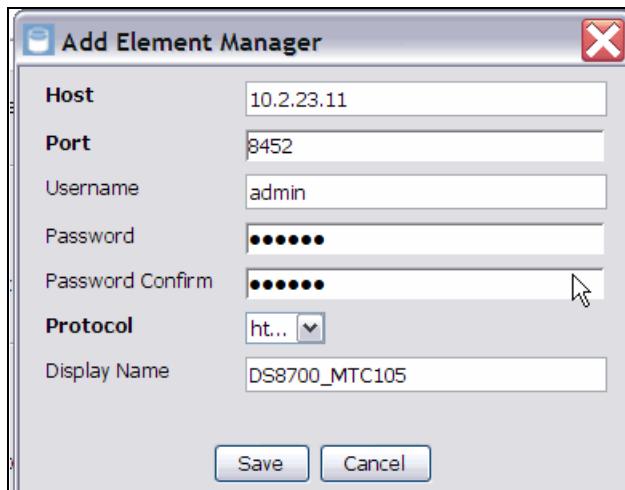


Figure 12-5 Configure a new DS8700 Element in the TPC Element Manager view

TPC tests the connection to the DS8700 Element Manager. If the connection was successful, the new DS8700 Element Manager is displayed in the Element Manager table.

14. Once the DS8700 GUI had been added to the Element Manager, select the Element Manager you want to work with and, from the Select Action drop-down menu, click **Launch Default Element Manager**, as shown in Figure 12-6.

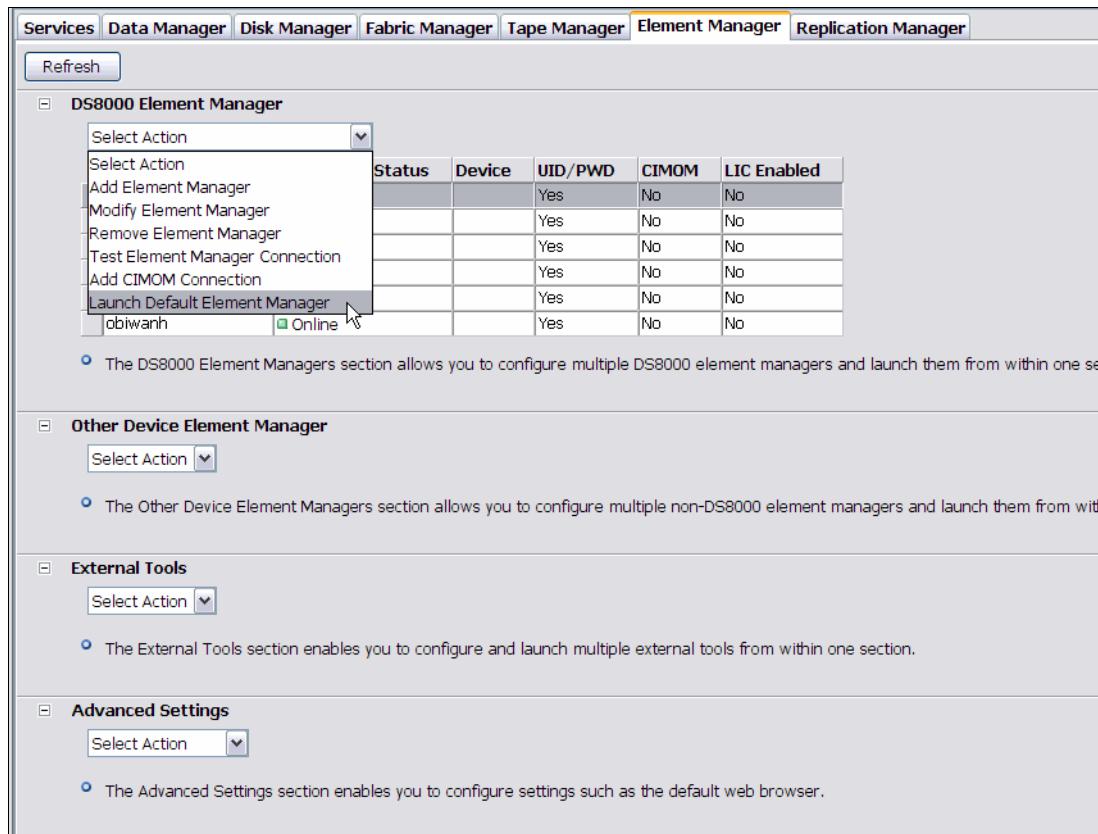


Figure 12-6 Launch the Element Manager

15. If the user credentials used in step 13 on page 272 need to be changed, you need to modify the DS8700 Element Manager accordingly. Otherwise, you will not be able to access the DS8700 GUI via the TPC Element Manager for this DS8700 system.

To modify the password and re-enable remote GUI access through TPC:

1. Launch the TPC.

2. Select the DS8700 system for which the password needs to be modified and, from the Select action drop-down menu, click **Modify Element Manager**, as shown in Figure 12-7.

The screenshot shows the DS8000 Element Manager interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with tabs: Services, Data Manager, Disk Manager, Fabric Manager, Tape Manager, Element Manager (which is highlighted in yellow), and Replication Manager. Below the navigation bar is a toolbar with a Refresh button. The main content area is divided into sections:

- DS8000 Element Manager:** This section contains a dropdown menu labeled "Select Action" with the following options: Select Action, Add Element Manager, Modify Element Manager (which is currently selected and highlighted in blue), Remove Element Manager, Test Element Manager Connection, Add CIMOM Connection, Launch Default Element Manager, and obiwanh. To the right of this dropdown is a table with columns: Status, Device, UID/PWD, CIMOM, and LIC Enabled. One row in the table is visible, showing "Yes" for Status, Device, UID/PWD, and CIMOM, and "No" for LIC Enabled. The status of the device is listed as "Online".
- Other Device Element Manager:** This section has a dropdown menu labeled "Select Action" with the same options as the DS8000 section. A note below it states: "The Other Device Element Managers section allows you to configure multiple non-DS8000 element managers and launch them from one section."
- External Tools:** This section also has a dropdown menu labeled "Select Action" with the same options. A note below it states: "The External Tools section enables you to configure and launch multiple external tools from within one section."
- Advanced Settings:** This section is currently collapsed.

Figure 12-7 Modify Element Manager

3. Enter a modified password in the Modify Element Manager window matching the DS8700 system security rules, as documented in the DS8700 Information Center (go to <http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/dsichelp/ds8000ic/index.jsp>, search for User administration, and select **Defining password rules**). The password and its use must meet the following criteria:

- Be six to 16 characters long.
- Must contain five or more letters, and it must begin and end with a letter.
- Must contain one or more numbers.
- Cannot contain the user's user ID.
- Is case-sensitive.
- Four unique new passwords must be issued before an old password can be reused.
- Allowable characters are a-z, A-Z, and 0-9.

Once the password has been changed, the access to the DS8700 GUI is reenabled.

If SSPC will be used for access to the DS8700 Storage Manager only, the configuration of SSPC in regards to DS8700 system administration and monitoring is completed.

If the SSPC user wants to use the advanced function of TPC-BE, further configuration will be required, as described in the next sections.

## 12.2.2 Manage embedded CIMOM on DS8700

With DS8700 and LIC Release 5, the embedded CIMOM on DS8700 HMC is enabled by default after the HMC is started.

There is an option to enable or disable the embedded CIMOM manually via the DS8700 HMC Web User Interface (WUI).

To enable / disable the embedded CIMOM:

1. Log into the DS8700 Web User Interface (WUI) by directing your browser to <https://<DS8700 HMC IP address>>. The HMC WUI window appears (see Figure 12-8).

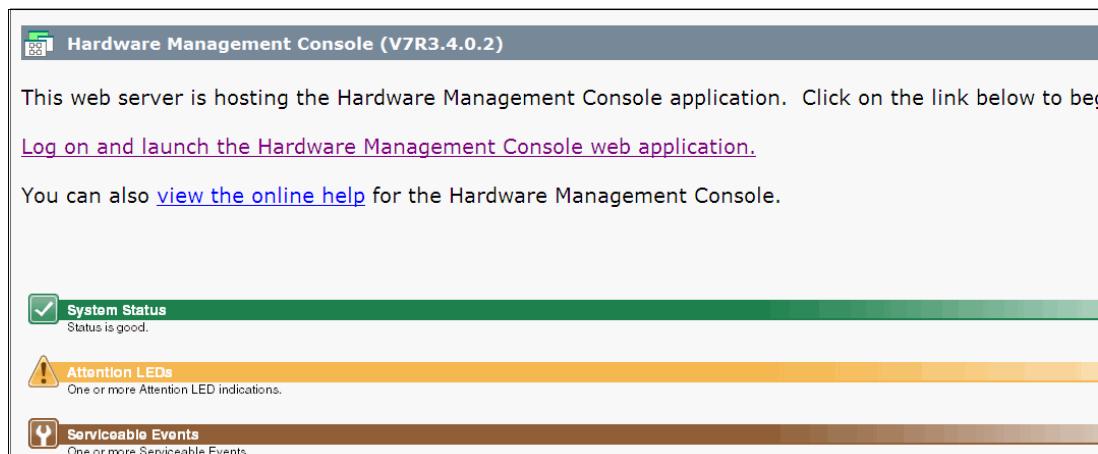


Figure 12-8 HMC Web User Interface

2. Click **Log on and Launch the Hardware Management Console Web application**. The HMC welcome window opens, as shown in Figure 12-9.

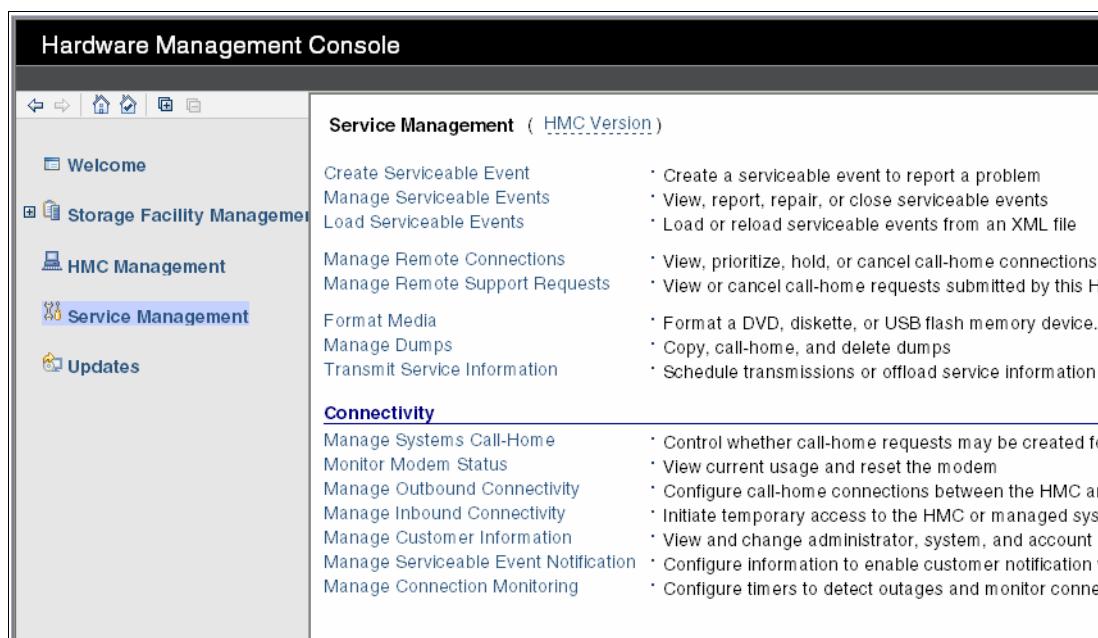


Figure 12-9 HMC WUI welcome window

3. Select **HMC Management** and under the Storage Server HMC Tasks section, click **Start/Stop CIM Agent** (Figure 12-10).

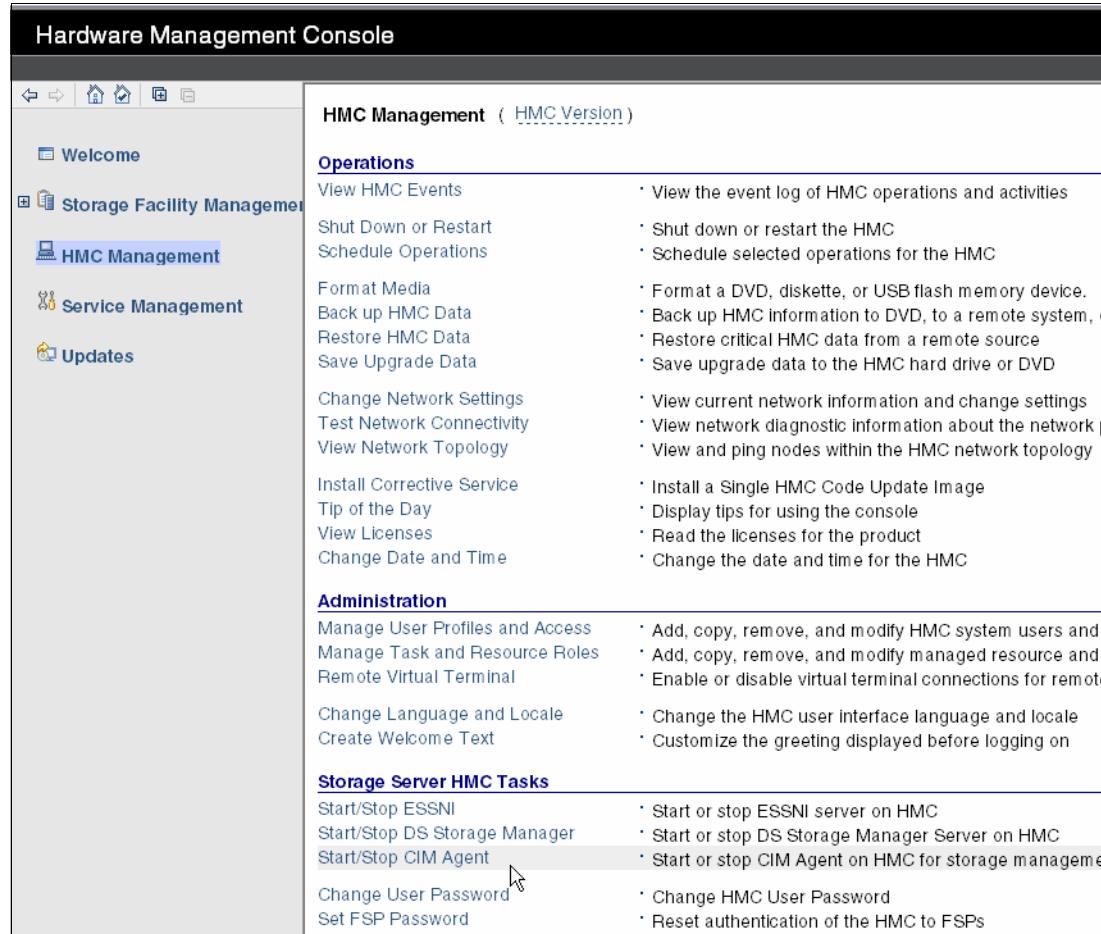


Figure 12-10 HMC WUI: Start/Stop CIM Agent

### Test connectivity to DS8700 Embedded CIMOM using DSCIMCLI

On the SSPC desktop, double-click the Launch DSCIMCLI icon. A DSCIMCLI command prompt window opens. At the prompt, enter the DS8700 HMC IP address and then the DS8700 Element Manager user name and password. Use the `1sdev` command shown in Example 12-1 to verify connectivity between the CIMOM agent and the primary and secondary DS8700 HMCs. Specify the correct HMC IP address/port and HMC credentials. The status of the `1sdev` command output indicates successful connection.

*Example 12-1 DSCIMCLI commands to check CIMOM connectivity to primary and secondary HMC*

---

```
> dscimcli 1sdev -l -s https://9.155.70.27:6989 -u <ESSNI user> -p <ESSNI password>
Type   IP          IP2        Username    Storage Image    Status      Code Level Min Codelevel
===== ===== ===== ===== ===== ===== ===== ===== ===== ===== ===== ===== ===== ===== =====
DS    9.155.70.27 -          *           IBM.2107-1305081 successful 5.4.2.540      5.1.0.309

> dscimcli 1sdev -l -s https://9.155.70.28:6989 -u <ESSNI user> -p <ESSNI password>
Type   IP          IP2        Username    Storage Image    Status      Code Level Min Codelevel
===== ===== ===== ===== ===== ===== ===== ===== ===== ===== ===== ===== ===== =====
DS    9.155.70.28 -          *           IBM.2107-1305081 successful 5.4.2.540      5.1.0.309
```

---

## Offload embedded CIMOM logs through DSCIMCLI

For problem determination purposes, there is an option to offload the embedded CIMOM logs to the SSPC console using DSCIMCLI commands, as shown in Example 12-2. The file will be offloaded as a compressed file to the SSPC.

*Example 12-2 DSCIMCLI commands to offload DSCIMCLI logs from DS8700 HMC onto SSPC*

```
C:\Program Files\IBM\DSCIMCLI\Windows> dscimcli collectlog -s  
https://<<DS8700_HMC_IP_addr.>:6989 -u <valid ESSNI user> -p <associated ESSNI  
password>  
Old remote log files were successfully listed.  
No one old log file on the DS Agent side.  
New remote log file was successfully created.  
getting log file dscim-logs-2009.3.1-16.57.17.zip from DS Agent: complete 100%  
Local log file was successfully created and saved as C:\Program  
Files\IBM\DSCIMCLI\WINDOWS\dscim-logs-2009.3.1-16.57.17.zip.  
The new created log file dscim-logs-2009.3.1-16.57.17.zip was successfully got  
from DS Agent side.  
The new created log file dscim-logs-2009.3.1-16.57.17.zip was successfully deleted  
on DS Agent  
side
```

### 12.2.3 Set up SSPC user management

If the HMC CIM agent is configured from TPC-BE, the administrator can configure and change many aspects of the storage environment. If configured by the user, SSPC supports password cascading, which allows you to change the logical configuration of the DS8700 system and input the Windows user credentials onto SSPC. Therefore, we recommend that the SSPC administrator ensures that in multiple user environments that all users have the appropriate access permissions configured.

Figure 12-11 shows the cascade of authentication from SSPC (on the Windows operating system) to the DS8700 storage configuration.

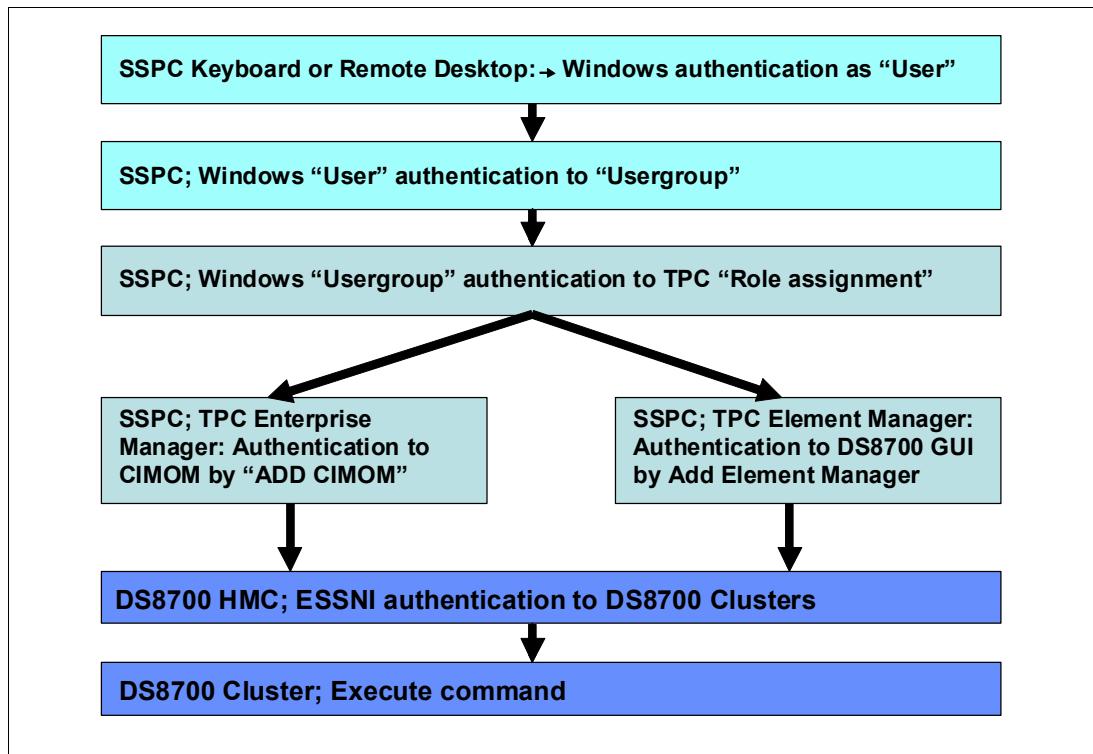


Figure 12-11 Cascade of authentication from SSPC (on the Windows operating system) to the DS8700 storage configuration

The procedure to add users to the SSPC requires TPC Administrator credentials and can be split into two parts:

- ▶ Set up a user at the operating system level and then add this user to a group.
- ▶ Set up TPC-BE to map the operating system group to a TPC Role.

Tivoli Storage Productivity Center (TPC) supports mainly two types of users: the *operator* and the *administrator* users. For the DS8700 system, the following roles are used:

- ▶ Disk Administrator
- ▶ Disk Operator (Physical, Logical, or Copy Services)
- ▶ Security Administrator

## Set up users at the OS level

To set up a new SSPC user, the SSPC administrator needs to first grant appropriate user permissions at the operating system level, using the following steps, which are also illustrated in Figure 12-12.

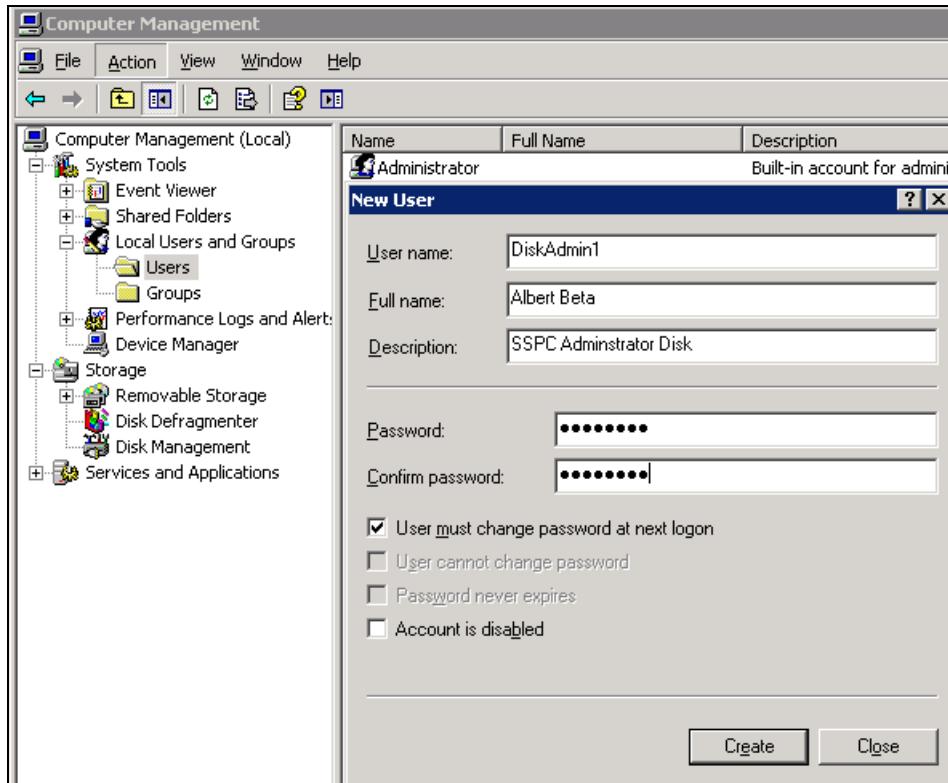


Figure 12-12 Set up a new user on the SSPC

1. From the SSPC Desktop, select **My Computer** → **Manage** → **Local Users and Groups** → **Users**.
2. Select **Action** → **New User** and:
  - Set the user name and password.
  - If appropriate, check **User must change password at next logon**. Note that if this box is checked, further actions are required for the new user to log on.
  - If appropriate, check **Password never expires**.
3. Click **Create** to add the new user.
4. Go back to **Local Users and Groups** → **Groups**.
  - Right-click **Groups** to add a new group or select an existing group.
  - Select **Add** → **Advanced** → **Find Now** and select the user to be added to the group.
5. Click **OK** to add the user to the group, then click **OK** again to exit user management.

**Tip:** To simplify user administration, use the same name for the Windows user group and the user groups role in TPC. For example, create the Windows user group "Disk Administrator" and assign this group to the TPC role "Disk Administrator".

## Set up user roles in TPC

The group defined at the OS level now needs to be mapped to a role defined in TPC. To do this, perform these steps:

1. Log into TPC with Administrator permissions and select **Administrative Services** → **Configuration** → **Role-to-Group Mapping**.
  2. Add the Group you created in Windows to a Role, as shown in Figure 12-13. For DS8700 system management, the recommended roles are Disk Operator, Disk Administrator, and Security Administrator.
- Once the SSPC administrator has defined the user role, the operator is able to access the TPC GUI.
3. The authorization level in TPC depends on the role assigned to a user group. Table 12-1 shows the association between job roles and authorization levels.

Table 12-1 TPC roles and TCP administration levels

TCP Role	TCP administration level
Superuser	Has full access to all TPC functions
TPC Administrator	Has full access to all operations in the TPC GUI
Disk Administrator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Has full access to TPC GUI disk functions, including tape devices</li><li>Can launch DS8700 GUI by using stored passwords in TPC Element Manager</li><li>Can add/delete volumes by TPC</li></ul>
Disk Operator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Has access to reports of disk functions and tape devices</li><li>Has to enter user name/password to launch the DS8700 GUI</li><li>Cannot start CIMOM discoveries or probes</li><li>Cannot take actions in TPC, for example, delete/add volumes</li></ul>

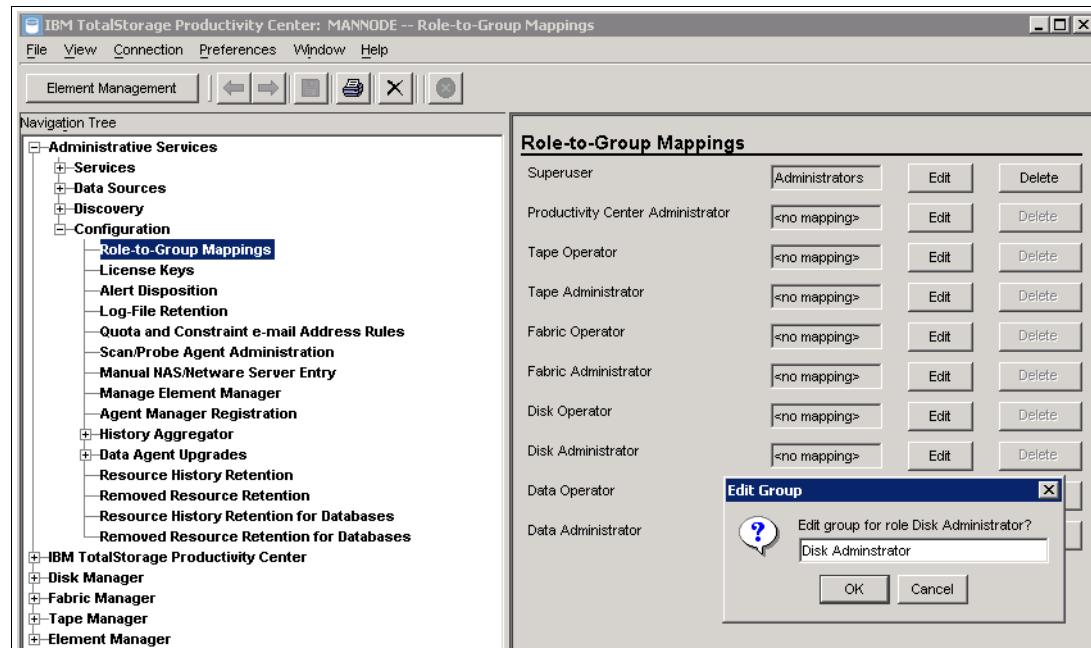


Figure 12-13 Assigning the Windows user group Disk Administrator to the TPC Role Disk Administrator

## 12.2.4 Set up and discover DS8700 CIMOM from TPC

IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center manages and monitors a DS8700 system through the CIMOMs residing on the DS8700 HMC or on a separate server.

The purpose of CIMOM discovery is to make TPC aware of the CIMOM available to be managed. The discovery process can automatically scan the local subnet to find available CIMOMs. If dedicated devices should be monitored by TPC, we recommend disabling the automatic discovery. This is done by clearing **Scan local subnet**, as shown in Figure 12-14.

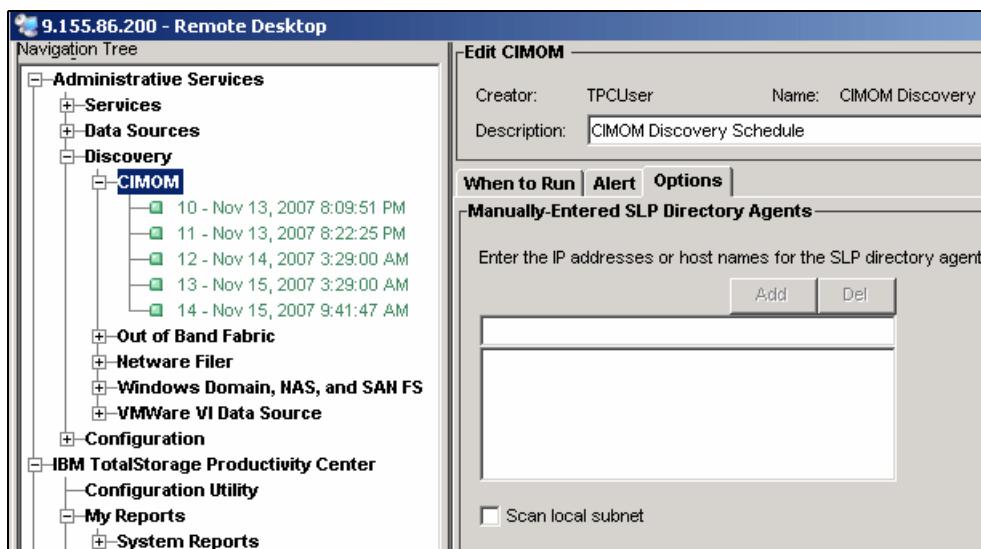


Figure 12-14 Clearing autodiscovery of the CIM agents

Once the DS8700's CIMOMs have been discovered, CIMOM login authentication to these subsystems is required. The CIMOM discovery usually takes some minutes. The CIMOM discovery can be run on a schedule. How often you run it depends on how dynamic your environment is. It must be run to detect a new subsystem. The CIMOM discovery also performs basic health checks of the CIMOM and subsystem.

Perform the following steps to set up the CIMOM discovery from TPC:

1. From the Navigation Tree section, expand **Administrative Services** → **Data Sources** → **CIMOM Agents** and select **Add CIMOM** (see Figure 12-15).

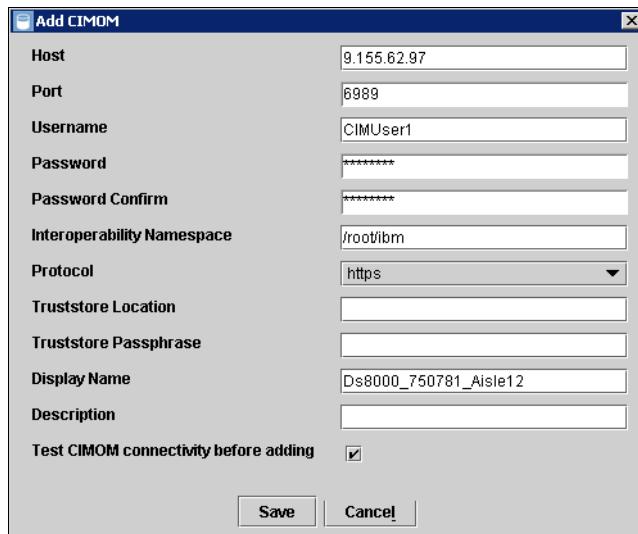


Figure 12-15 Adding a DS8700 CIMOM to TPC

2. Enter the required information and modify the Port from 5989 to 6989.
3. Click **Save** to add the CIMOM to the list and test availability of the connection. In a dual DS8700 HMC setup, the same procedure should be done for the second HMC as well.

Once the CIMOM has been added to the list of devices, the initial CIMOM discovery can be executed by performing these steps:

1. Select **Administrative Services** → **Discovery**.
2. Clear **Scan Local Subnet** in the Options folder.
3. Select **When to Run** → **Run Now**.
4. Save this setting to start the CIMOM discovery.

The initial CIMOM discovery will be listed in the Navigation Tree. Selecting this entry allows you to verify the progress of the discovery and the details about actions done while probing the systems. Once the discovery has completed, the entry in the navigation tree will change from blue to green or red depending on the success (or not) of the discovery.

After the initial setup action, future discoveries should be scheduled. As shown in Figure 12-16, this can be set up by the following actions:

1. Specify the start time and frequency on the When to Run tab.
2. Select **Run Repeatedly**.
3. Save the configuration.

The CIMOM discoveries will now run in the time increments configured.

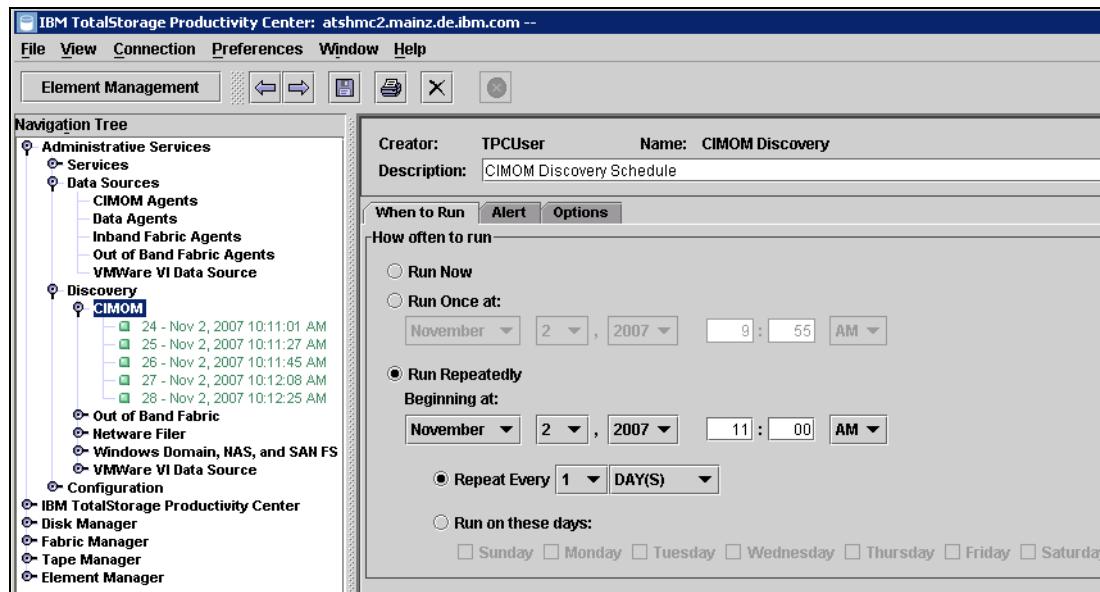


Figure 12-16 Set up repeatable CIMOM discoveries

## Probe the DS8700 system

After TPC has been made aware of a DS8700's CIMOM, the storage subsystem must be probed to collect detailed information. Probes use agents to collect statistics, including data about hard disks, LSS/LCU, Extent Pools, and volumes. Probe jobs can also discover information about new or removed disks. The results of probe jobs are stored in the repository and are used in TPC to supply the data necessary for generating a number of reports, including Asset, Capacity, and Storage Subsystem reports. The duration of a probe depends on various parameter including but not limited to:

- ▶ Changes to the logical configuration while the probe is in progress
- ▶ The number of host connections multiplied by the number of volumes connected to each of the host paths

To configure a probe, from TPC, perform the following steps:

1. Select **IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center → Monitoring**.
2. Right-click **Probes** and select **Create Probe**.

3. In the next window (Figure 12-17), specify the systems to probe in the What to Probe tab. To add a system to a probe, double-click the subsystem name to add it to the Current Selection list.
4. Select when to probe the system, assign a name to the probe, and save the session.

**Tip:** Configure individual probes for every DS8700 system, but set them to run at different times.

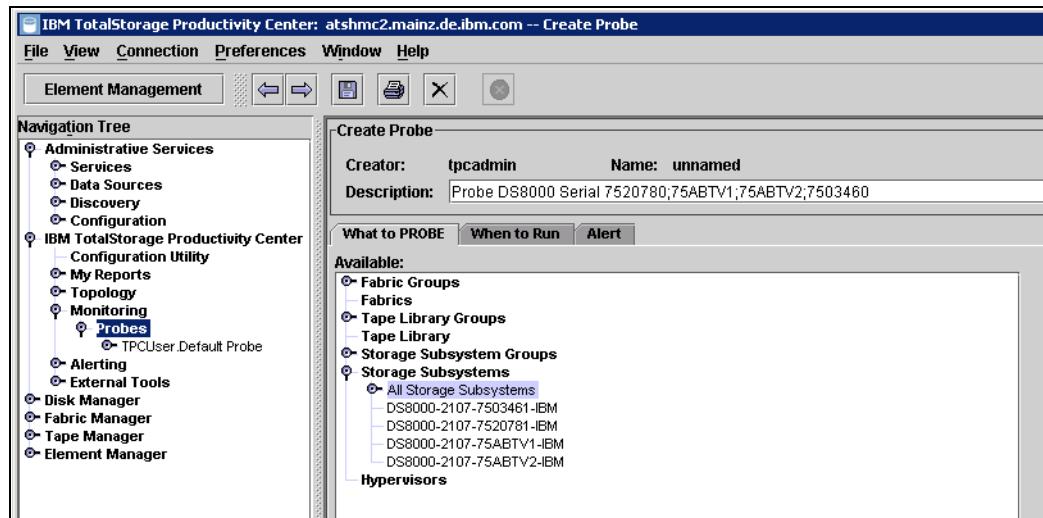


Figure 12-17 Configuring a new probe

## 12.3 Maintaining TPC-BE for a DS8700 system

A number of tasks should be performed regularly to ensure that operational performance is maintained. In this section, actions to maintain the relationship between TPC and the DS8700 system are described. Most of the tasks are also described in *DS8000 Introduction and Planning Guide*, GC35-0515 and the TPC Information Center, which can be found at the following address:

<http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/tivihelp/v4r1/index.jsp>

Other tasks, such as backing up TPC on a regular basis, should also be considered.

### 12.3.1 Schedule and monitor TPC tasks

Most of the information that TPC processes is gathered by scheduled tasks. These tasks perform queries about assets and their components, availability, health, and capacity.

#### Schedule CIMOM discovery and probes

The queries to gather device information are done by CIMOM discoveries and subsequent probes. For details about the setup and frequency of these queries, see 12.2.4, “Set up and discover DS8700 CIMOM from TPC” on page 281.

#### Schedule Historic Data Retention

In TPC, you can specify how long the history of statistical elements, such as DS8700 Disk Drive Modules, should be kept. To set the retention periods, select **Administrative**

**Services → Configuration → Resource History Retention.** The history data will never be discarded if a Parameter check box is left checked or is specified as 0 for the days to keep.

The Removed Resource Retention setting can be set to a low value, such as 0 or 1 day. This removes the missing entities from the display the next time the Removed Resource Retention process runs. As long as the replaced DDM is not removed from the history database, it will be displayed in the topology view as “Missing.”

### **Monitor scheduled tasks**

TPC-BE can be set up to ensure that TPC provides continuous monitoring and management of a storage environment. A failure or error in this part of the storage management infrastructure will impact the ability of TPC to monitor the environment. To make sure TPC provides continuous monitoring and management, a process should be put in place to regularly monitor the health of TPC itself. The options in TPC-BE to provide or support this service are:

- ▶ Login Notification
  - Within TPC, configure the alert logs to come up first when TPC is launched.
  - On the TPC menu bar, select **Preferences → Edit General** and set “On login, show” to **All Active Alerts**.
- ▶ E-mail
- ▶ SNMP events
- ▶ SMS alerts
- ▶ Tivoli Enterprise Console® events

For TPC-BE, we recommend that, at a minimum, the following tasks be set for failure reporting:

- ▶ CIMOM discoveries
- ▶ Subsystem probes

### **12.3.2 Auditing TPC actions against the DS8700 system**

To provide auditors with the information required to validate security policy enforcement and proper segregation of duties, TPC has the ability to record configuration changes initiated by TPC users against the DS8700 system. To enable and configure audit logging in TPC:

1. In the Navigation Tree of the Enterprise Manager, expand **Administrative Services → Services → Data Server**.
2. Right-click the Server node and click **Configure Audit Logging**.

3. In the Server Audit Logging Configuration window (Figure 12-18), check the **Enable Trace** check box to enable tracing for the server component.

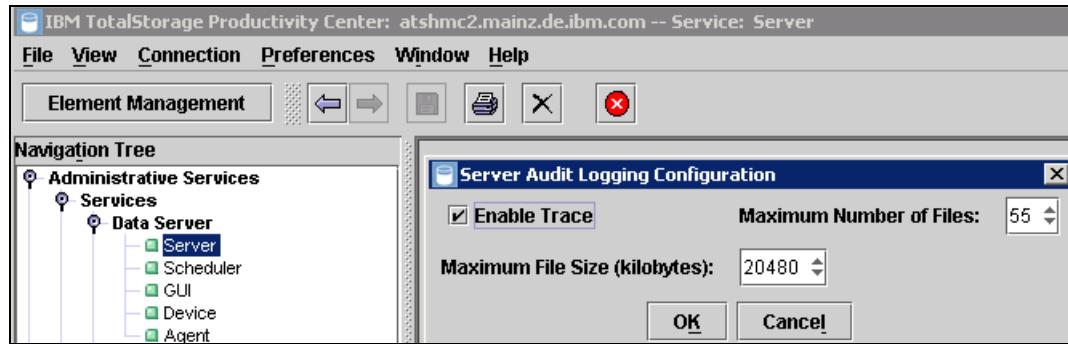


Figure 12-18 Configuring TPC Audit Logging

The value in the Audit Logging Configuration field also applies to the other services for which tracing is enabled. If the Enable Trace check box is cleared, tracing will not be performed. The Audittrace.log files documenting the user actions done by the GUI will be written to the directory <TPC\_HOME>/data/log/. When the user-defined maximum number of files has been reached, tracing will roll over and start writing to the first file.

### 12.3.3 Manually recover CIM Agent connectivity after HMC shutdown

If a CIMOM discovery or probe fails because none of the HMCs are available, the device will be flagged as “unavailable” in the topology view and “failed” in the CIMOM discovery and probe. The unavailability of the HMC can be caused by various factors, such as IP network problems, the CIM Agent being stopped, an HMC hardware error in a single HMC setup, or a DS8700 codeload in a single HMC setup.

In cases where CIMOM discovery and probes are not scheduled to run continuously or the time frame until the next scheduled run is not as desired, the TPC user can manually run the CIMOM discovery and probe to re-enable TPC ahead of the next scheduled probe to display the health status and to continue the optional performance monitoring. To do this task, the TPC user must have an Administrator role. The steps to perform are:

1. In the TPC Enterprise Manager view, select **Administrative Services** → **Data Sources** → **CIMOM Agents**. Then select the CIMOM connections reported as failed and execute **Test CIMOM Connection**. If the connection status of one or more CIMOM connections changes to **SUCCESS**, continue with step 2.
2. Perform a CIMOM Discovery, as described in “Set up and discover DS8700 CIMOM from TPC” on page 281.
3. Perform a probe, as described in “Probe the DS8700 system” on page 283.

## 12.4 Working with a DS8700 system in TPC-BE

This section describes functions of TPC-BE that can be used with the DS8700 system.

### 12.4.1 Display and analyze the overall storage environment

The TPC topology viewer provides a linked graphical and detailed view of the overall configuration. It is the primary interface for recognizing issues, understanding the impact, and identifying the root cause of a problem. Users of TPC-BE are able to easily see the storage

configuration and can easily drill down into switches and storage devices for more detailed information about configuration and storage healthiness of their entire environment. Selected TPC-BE functions and capabilities are described in this section.

The topology viewer can be launched from the navigation tree by selecting **IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center → Topology**. The viewer has two sections:

- ▶ The upper section contains the graphical view. This view can be navigated by double-clicking objects to see increasingly detailed views. To move the focus within the graphic section, there are three options:
  - Hold the left mouse button while using the mini map, which is the navigation object in the upper right corner.
  - Move the mouse while selecting all objects + holding the left mouse button inside the topology view.
  - Use the third mouse button or mouse wheel inside the topology view.

For a convenient overview, the topology viewer offers these options:

- To highlight the health status of dedicated Storage Devices in the graphical view. Highlighting a device might be indicated during maintenance activities or shift turnovers. To pin a Storage Device to the Topology overview, right-click any storage displayed in a view and select **pin**.
- To only display the systems that are not in a normal state, set the topology viewer by performing these steps:
  - Right-click in the Topology View window.
  - Select **Global Settings** in the next window.
  - Under Filtering, check the box **Hide normal entities**, as shown in Figure 12-19.

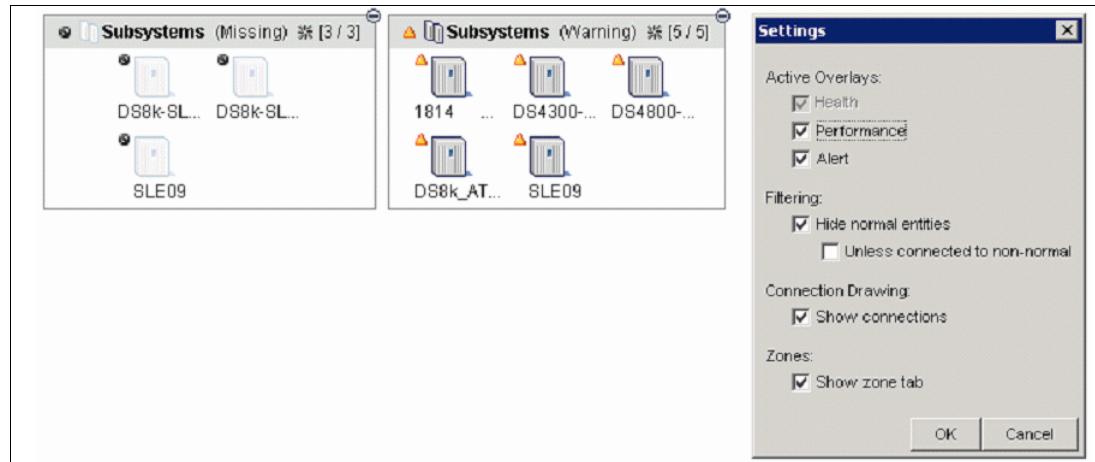


Figure 12-19 Configure the TPC topology view to hide normal entities for better overview of devices requiring further attention

- ▶ The lower view is a tabular view that displays details about the selected graphical view. This view displays basic capacity information about the environment, such as:
  - Environment-wide view of DS8700 system model, types, serial numbers, and firmware versions
  - Allocated and available storage capacity by storage subsystem for the complete customer environment
  - Size of disks, volumes, and Extent Pools by storage subsystem

- DDM location code, serial number, operational status, error conditions, and enclosure location
- Available capacity by Extent Pool
- DS8700 Host Adapter Location Code, port status, and WWPN
- Physical paths of the SAN to DS8700 system, status of the switch ports to DS8700 system, Switch WWNN to DS8700 system Domain ID, Switch IP address, and Switch Name

## Device status in the topology view

As shown in Figure 12-20, the devices and elements can have five different colors reflecting their status in the graphical and tabular view.



Figure 12-20 The TPC status of several systems in the topology view

The status indicators have the following meanings:

- ▶ Element is missing (black label)

TPC cannot connect to the DS800 CIM agent. Some of the things that can cause this status are:

- The HMC is powered off, there is no backup HMC, or there is no backup HMC integrated into TPC.
- The CIM Agent had been switched off.
- There is a TCP/IP network problem for all HMCs of this DS8700 system.
- The HMC does not exist anymore or the IP address has been changed. Depending on the setup for history retention, the device is still displayed. The default history retention is set to 14 days for missing devices.

- ▶ Element or device is in warning (yellow label)

TPC identified a change in the Storage Subsystem status that should be the subject of further investigation. For details about checking the health of a DS8700 system through TPC, see 12.4.2, “Storage health management” on page 294.

- ▶ Element or device in status unknown (blue label)

Elements about which TPC-BE topology viewer does not have detailed information are labeled as unknown and grouped by default in the topology group “Other”. These devices can be manually categorized to another group, for example, “Computer”, as described in “Assign systems to another group” on page 289. Upgrading TPC-BE (requires additional licenses) enables TPC for automatic host discovery, display of host details, and the ability to configure the host.

- ▶ Element or device in status Error (red label)

Storage subsystems or devices that failed are displayed with a red label. Further investigation at the device level should be done.

Navigating the Topology view of a DS8700 system, a storage system flagged as being in *warning* or *error* status, as shown in Figure 12-20 on page 288, can be investigated for further details, down to the failing device level. In the table of the Topology viewer, as shown in the disk view in Figure 12-22 on page 290, the operational status of Disk Drives is displayed. Failed Disk Drive Modules (DDM) can have the following statuses:

- ▶ Error: Further investigation of the DS8700 system might be indicated.
- ▶ Predictive Failure: A DDM failed and was set to deferred maintenance.
- ▶ Starting: A DDM is initializing. This status should be temporary.
- ▶ In Service: DDM Service actions are in progress. This status should be temporary.
- ▶ Dormant: The DDM is a member of the DS8700 system, but not yet configured.
- ▶ Unknown: Further investigation into the DS8700 system might be indicated.

### Assign systems to another group

Any device in the Topology viewer is grouped into one of the following categories:

- ▶ Computers
- ▶ Fabrics
- ▶ Switches
- ▶ Storage
- ▶ Other

By right-clicking the elements displayed in the Topology Viewer Launch Detail window, the category for the element can be changed, as shown in Figure 12-21. This is helpful in manually moving known elements from the group “Other” to the group “Computer.” TPC-BE displays every host adapter of a computer as a separate device. Upgrading TPC with additional TPC for Data license allows you to have all host adapters (of a host) displayed as one computer.

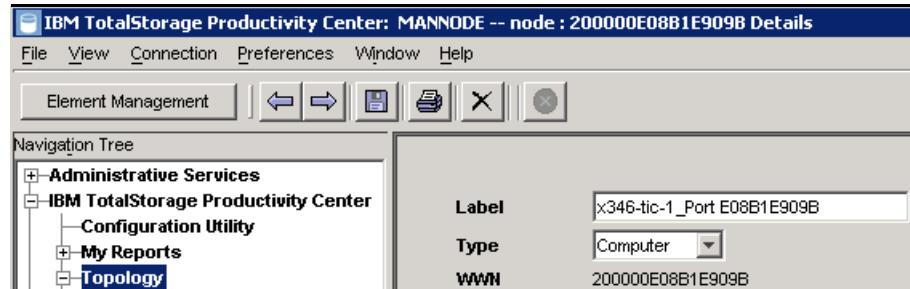


Figure 12-21 Categorize a known computer from the category Other to the category Computer

## Display disks and volumes of DS8700 Extent Pools

To display the volumes and Disk Drive Modules (DDMs) used by an Extent Pool, double-click that Extent Pool in the Topology viewer. Underneath this topology image, a table view provides further information about the DS8700 devices, as shown in Figure 12-22, Figure 12-23, Figure 12-24 on page 291, and Figure 12-25 on page 291. Details about the displayed health status are discussed in 12.4.2, “Storage health management” on page 294.

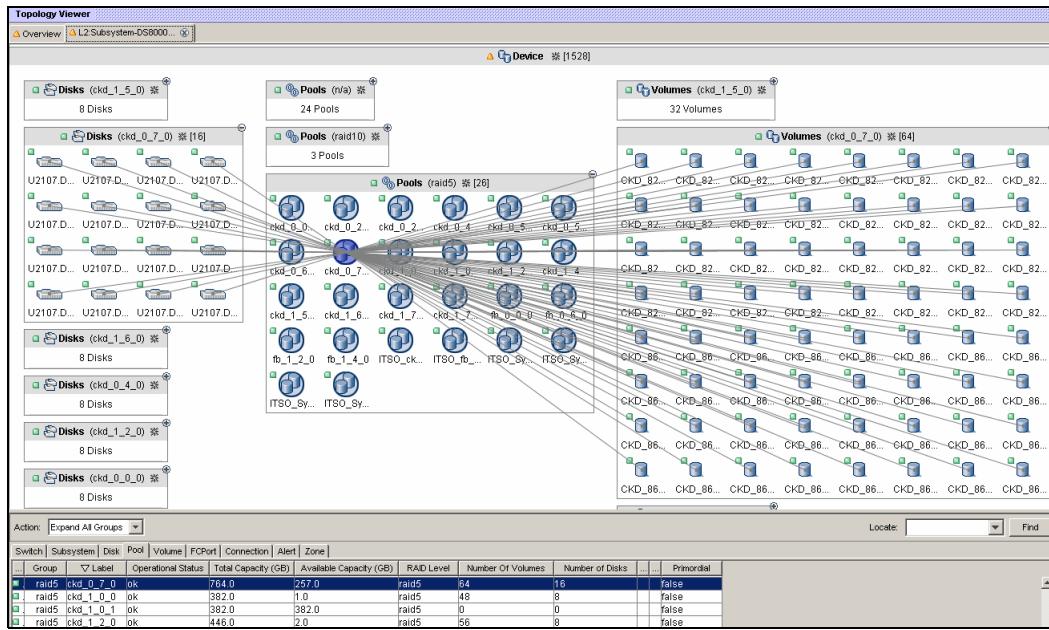


Figure 12-22 Drill-down of the topology viewer for a DS8700 Extent Pool

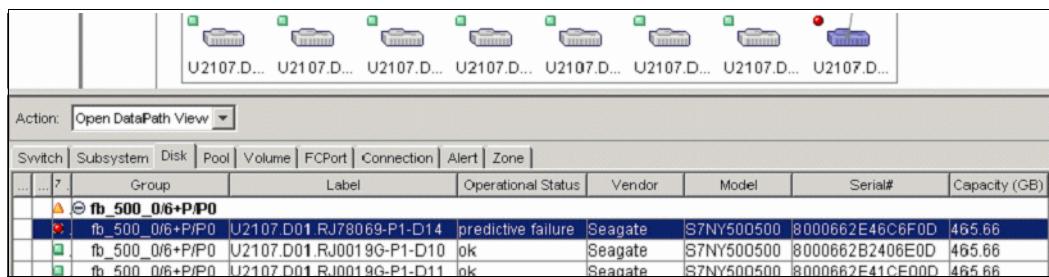


Figure 12-23 Graphical and tabular view of a broken DS8700 DDM set to deferred maintenance

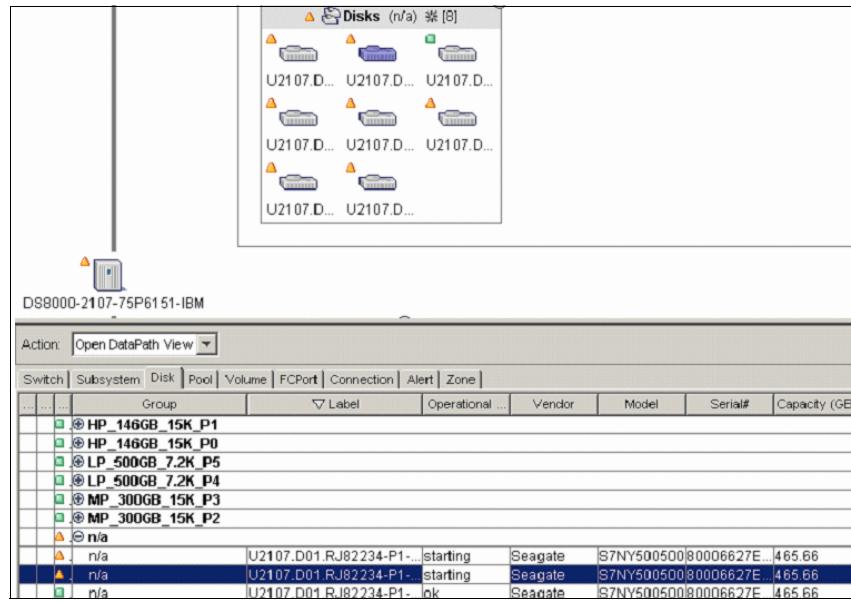


Figure 12-24 TPC graphical and tabular view to an Extent Pool configured out of one rank

The DDM displayed as green in Figure 12-24 is a spare DDM, and is not part of the RAID 5 configuration process that is currently in progress.

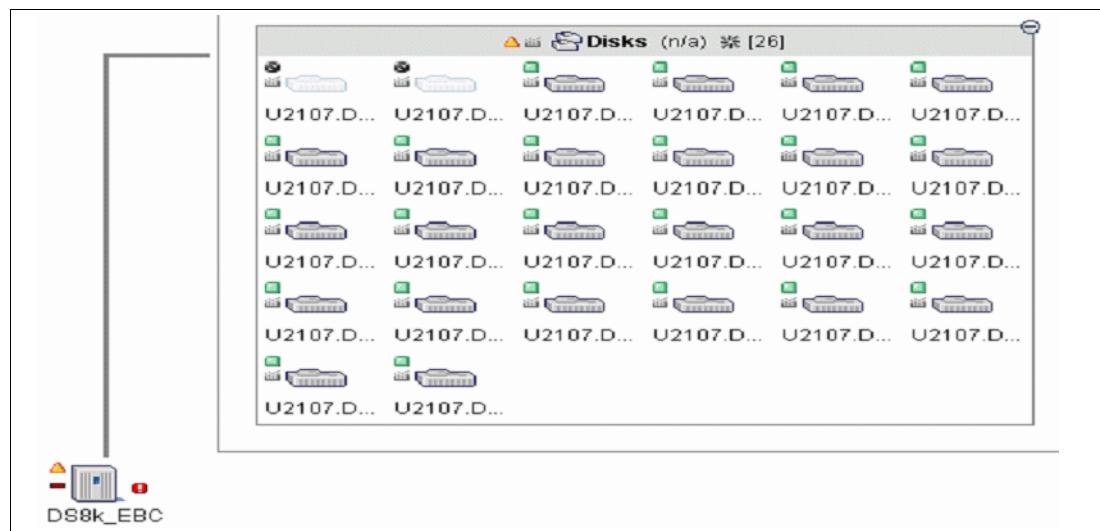


Figure 12-25 TPC graphical view to an Extent Pool configured out of three ranks (3x8=24 DDMs)

The two additional DDMs displayed in Figure 12-25 in the missing state have been replaced, but are still displayed due to the settings configured in historic data retention, as discussed in 12.3.1, “Schedule and monitor TPC tasks” on page 284.

## Display the physical paths between systems

If Out of Band Fabric agents are configured, TPC-BE can display physical paths between SAN components. The view consists of four windows (computer information, switch information, subsystem information, and other systems) that show the physical paths through a fabric or set of fabrics (host-to-subsystem or subsystem-to-subsystem). To display the path information shown in Figure 12-26 and Figure 12-27, perform the following steps:

1. In the topology view, select **Overview** → **Fabrics** → **Fabric**.
2. Expand the Connectivity view of the devices for which you would like to see the physical connectivity.
3. Click the first device.
4. Press Ctrl and click any additional devices to which you would like to display the physical path (Figure 12-26).
5. To get more details about the connectivity of dedicated systems, as shown in Figure 12-27, double-click the system of interest and expand the details of the system view.

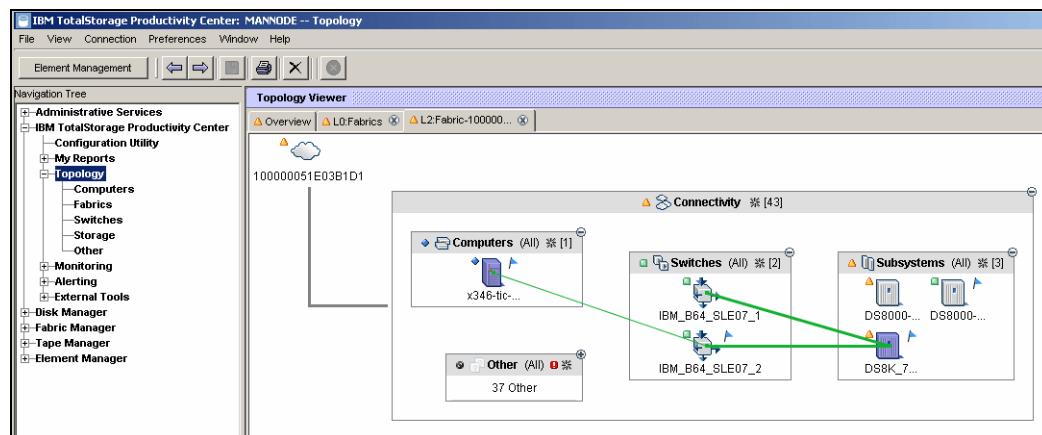


Figure 12-26 Topology view of physical paths between one host and one DS8700 system

In Figure 12-26, the display of the Topology view points out non-redundant physical paths between the host and its volumes located on the DS8700 system. Upgrading TPC-BE with additional TPC licenses will enable TPC to assess and warn you about this lack of redundancy.

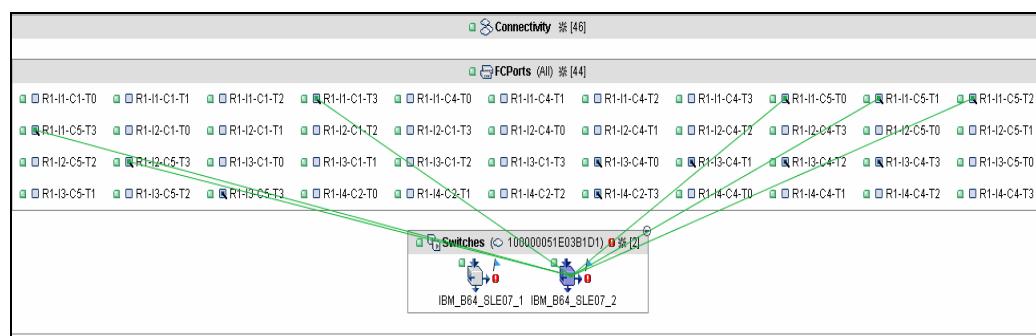


Figure 12-27 Topology view: Detailed view of the DS8700 host ports assigned to one of its two switches

In Figure 12-27 on page 292, the display of the Topology viewer points out that the switch connectivity does not match one of the recommendations given by the DS8700 Information Center on host attachment path considerations for a storage image. In this example, we have two I/O enclosures in each I/O enclosure pair (I1/I2 or I3/I4) located on different RIO loop halves (the DS8700 Information Center<sup>1</sup> mentions that “you can place two host attachments, one in each of the two I/O enclosures of any I/O enclosure pair”). In the example, all switch connections are assigned to one DS8700 RIO loop only (R1-I1 and R1-I2).

As shown in Figure 12-28, the health status function of TPC-BE Topology Viewer allows you to display the individual FC port health inside a DS8700 system.

The screenshot shows the TPC-BE Topology Viewer interface. At the top, there is a legend for FC Ports, followed by a table of FC Port details. Below this is a tabular view of FC Port health and configuration.

**FC Ports (All) [84]**

R1-I1-C4-T3	R1-I1-C5-T0	R1-I1-C5-T1	R1-I1-C5-T2	R1-I1-C5-T3	R1-I2-C1-T0
R1-I3-C4-T0	R1-I3-C4-T1	R1-I3-C4-T2	R1-I3-C4-T3	R1-I3-C5-T0	R1-I3-C5-T1
R1-I5-C1-T1	R1-I5-C1-T2	R1-I5-C1-T3	R1-I5-C4-T0	R1-I5-C4-T1	R1-I5-C4-T2
R1-I7-C4-T2	R1-I7-C4-T3	R1-I7-C5-T0	R1-I7-C5-T1	R1-I7-C5-T2	R1-I7-C5-T3

Action: Expand All Groups

**FCPort**

Switch	Subsystem	Disk	Pool	Volume	FCPort	Connection	Alert	Zone		
...	...	...	...	...	Group	Label	Operational ...	WWN	Type	Port Spec
...	...	...	...	...	All	R1-I1-C4-T1	ok	50050763060344CD	Other	0.0
...	...	...	...	...	All	R1-I1-C4-T2	ok	50050763060384CD	Other	0.0
...	...	...	...	...	All	R1-I1-C4-T3	ok	500507630603C4CD	Other	0.0
...	...	...	...	...	All	R1-I1-C5-T0	stopped	50050763060404CD	Other	0.0
...	...	...	...	...	All	R1-I1-C5-T1	stopped	50050763060444CD	Other	0.0

Figure 12-28 TPC graphical view of a broken DS8700 host adapter Card R1-I1-C5 and the associated WWNN as displayed in the tabular view of the topology viewer

As shown in Figure 12-29, the TPC-BE Topology viewer allows you to display the connectivity and path health status of one DS8700 system into the SAN by providing a view that can be broken down to the switch ports and their WWPNs.

The screenshot shows the TPC-BE Topology Viewer interface. It displays a network diagram with nodes for Host (All), Switches (All), and Subsystems (All). A specific connection is highlighted between a host and a SAN switch (SLE7). Below the diagram is a table of switch port details.

**FCPorts (0-15) [16]**

Action: Expand All Groups

**Switch**

Computer	Switch	Subsystem	Tape Library	Other/Unknown	Switch FCPort	Connection	Alert	
...	...	...	...	...	Group	Label	Operational ...	Port Number
...	...	...	...	...	All	0-15	ok	0
...	...	...	...	...	0-15	200000051E031124	ok	1
...	...	...	...	...	0-15	200100051E031124	ok	2
...	...	...	...	...	0-15	200200051E031124	ok	3

Figure 12-29 Connectivity of a DS8700 system drilled down to the ports of a SAN switch

<sup>1</sup> <http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/dsichelp/ds8000ic/index.jsp>

## 12.4.2 Storage health management

As discussed in 12.4.1, “Display and analyze the overall storage environment” on page 286, TPC provides a graphical storage health overlay function. This function allows the user to easily spot unhealthy areas through color coding. If the SSPC is monitored on a regular basis, TPC can be configured to show new alerts when the GUI is launched. This can be done by selecting **Preferences → Edit General → On Login Show → All Active Alerts**.

However, if the TPC console is not regularly monitored for health status changes, we advise that you configure alerts to avoid health issues going unrecognized for a significant amount of time. To configure alerts for the DS8700 system, in the navigation tree, select **Disk Manager → Alerting** and right-click **Storage Subsystem Alerts**. In the window displayed, the predefined alert trigger conditions and the Storage Subsystems can be selected.

Regarding the DS8700 system, the predefined alert triggers can be categorized into:

- ▶ Capacity changes applied to cache, volumes, and Extent Pools
- ▶ Status changes to online/offline of storage subsystems, volumes Extent Pools, and disks
- ▶ Device not found for storage subsystems, volumes Extent Pools, and disks
- ▶ Device newly discovered for storage subsystem, volume Extent Pool, and disk
- ▶ Version of storage subsystems changed

The methods to deliver alert notifications to the administrator are identical to the methods described in “Monitor scheduled tasks” on page 285.

## 12.4.3 Display host volumes through SVC to the assigned DS8700 volume

With SSPC’s TPC-BE, you can create a table to display the name of host volumes assigned to an SVC vDisk and the DS8700 volume ID associated to this vDisk. For a fast view, select **SVC VDisks → MDisk → DS8700 Volume ID**. To populate this host, select **Volume name → SVC → DS8700 Volume ID view** (TPC-BE SVC and DS8700 probe setup is required). To display the table, as demonstrated in Figure 12-30, select **TPC → Disk Manager → Reporting → Storage Sun systems → Volume to Backend Volume Assignment → By Volume** and select **Generate Report**.

Storage Subsystem	Juser-Defined Volume Name	Volume Name	Volume Capacity	Storage Pool	Disk	Disk Capacity
SVC_Gondor	Jerry_SG1log	14	1.00 GB	DS8k_group	mdisk_DS8k2	3.00 GB
SVC_Gondor	Jerry_SG1log	14	1.00 GB	DS8k_group	mdisk_DS8k1	3.00 GB
SVC_Gondor	Jerry_SG1log	14	1.00 GB	DS8k_group	mdisk_DS8k4	8.00 GB

Disk Unallocated Space	Backend Storage Subsystem	Backend Storage Subsystem Type	Backend Volume Name
272.00 MB	DS8k_EBC	DS8000	SVC_Gondor_4103 (ID:1007)
272.00 MB	DS8k_EBC	DS8000	SVC_Gondor_4102 (ID:1006)
0	DS8k_EBC	DS8000	SVC_Gondor_4139 (ID:102b)

Figure 12-30 Example of three DS8700 volumes assigned to one vDisk and the name associated to this vDisk (tabular view split into two pieces for better overview of the columns)



# Configuration using the DS Storage Manager GUI

The DS Storage Manager provides a graphical user interface (GUI) to configure the IBM System Storage DS8700 series and manage DS8700 Copy Services. The DS Storage Manager GUI (DS GUI) is invoked from SSPC. In this chapter, we explain the possible ways to access the DS GUI, and how to use it to configure the storage on the DS8700.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- ▶ DS Storage Manager GUI overview
- ▶ Logical configuration process
- ▶ Examples of configuring DS8700 storage
- ▶ Examples of exploring DS8700 storage status and hardware

For information about Copy Services configuration in the DS8000 family using the DS GUI, refer to the following IBM Redbooks publications:

- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8000: Copy Services in Open Environments*, SG24-6788
- ▶ *DS8000 Copy Services for IBM System z*, SG24-6787

For information about DS GUI changes related to disk encryption, refer to *IBM System Storage DS8700: Disk Encryption Implementation and Usage Guidelines*, REDP-4500.

For information about DS GUI changes related to LDAP authentication, refer to *IBM System Storage DS8000: LDAP Authentication*, REDP-4505.

For information about GUI changes related to the Easy Tier function, including dynamic volume relocation (DVR) and Extent Pool merge, refer to the *IBM System Storage DS8700 Easy Tier*, REDP-4667.

**Note:** Some of the screen captures in this chapter might not reflect the latest version of the DS GUI code.

## 13.1 DS Storage Manager GUI overview

In this section, we describe the DS Storage Manager GUI (DS GUI) access method design. The DS GUI code resides on the DS8700 Hardware Management Console (HMC) and we discuss different access methodologies.

### 13.1.1 Accessing the DS GUI

The DS GUI code at the DS8700 HMC is invoked at the SSPC from the Tivoli Storage Productivity Center (TPC) GUI. The DS Storage Manager communicates with the DS Network Interface Server, which is responsible for communication with the two controllers of the DS8700.

The new Internet protocol IPv6 supports access to the DS8700 HMC.

You can access the DS GUI in any of the following ways:

- ▶ Through the System Storage Productivity Center (SSPC)
- ▶ From TPC on a workstation connected to the HMC
- ▶ From a browser connected to SSPC or TPC on any server
- ▶ Using Microsoft Windows Remote Desktop through the SSPC
- ▶ Directly at the HMC

These different access capabilities, using *Basic* authentication, are shown in Figure 13-1. In our illustration, SSPC connects to two HMCs managing two DS8700 storage complexes. Although you have different options to access DS GUI, SSPC is the preferred access method.

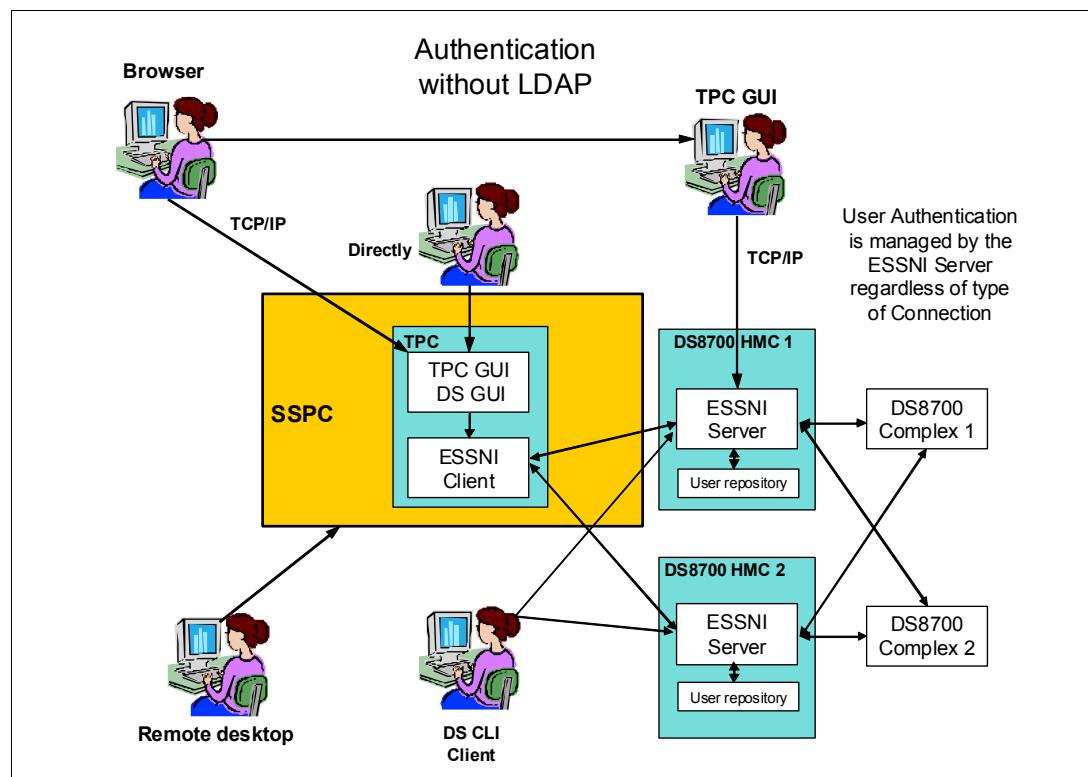


Figure 13-1 Accessing the DS8700 GUI

The DS8700 supports the ability to use a Single Point of Authentication function for the GUI and CLI through a centralized LDAP server. This capability is supported only with SSPC

running on 2805-MC4 hardware that has TPC Version 4.1.1 (or later) preloaded. If you have an older SSPC hardware version with a lower TPC version, you have to upgrade TPC to V4.1.1 in order to exploit the Single Point of Authentication function for the GUI and CLI through an centralized LDAP server.

The different access capabilities of the LDAP authentication are shown in Figure 13-2. In this illustration, TPC connects to two HMCs managing two DS8700 storage complexes.

**Note:** For detailed information about LDAP based authentication, refer to *IBM System Storage DS8000: LDAP Authentication*, REDP-4505.

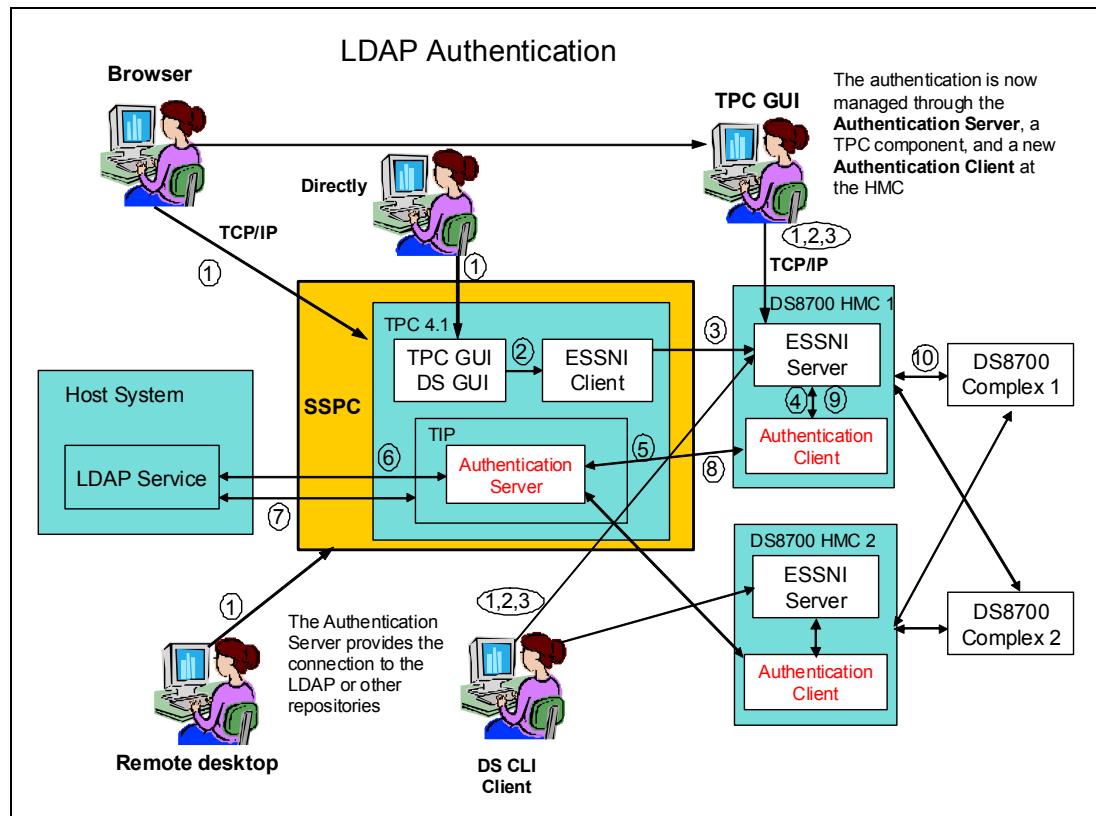


Figure 13-2 LDAP authentication to access the DS 8700 GUI and CLI

## Accessing the DS GUI through SSPC

As previously stated, the recommended method for accessing the DS GUI is through SSPC.

To access the DS GUI through SSPC, perform the following steps:

1. Log in to your SSPC server and launch the IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center.
2. Type in your Tivoli Storage Productivity Center user ID and password, as shown in Figure 13-3.



Figure 13-3 SSPC: TPC user ID and password

3. In the Tivoli Storage Productivity Center window shown in Figure 13-4, click **Element Management** (above the Navigation Tree) to launch the Element Manager.

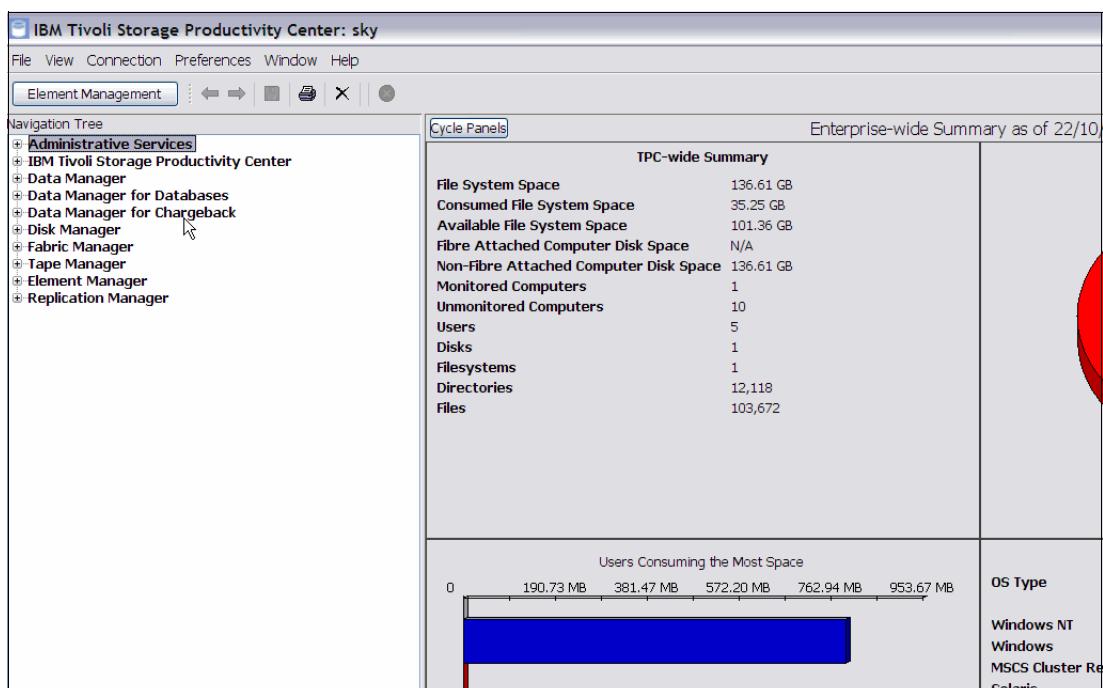


Figure 13-4 SSPC: Launch Element Manager

**Note:** Here we assume that the DS8700 storage subsystem (Element Manager) is already configured in TPC, as described in 12.2, "SSPC setup and configuration" on page 267.

4. Once the Element Manager is launched, click the disk system you want to access, as shown in Figure 13-5.

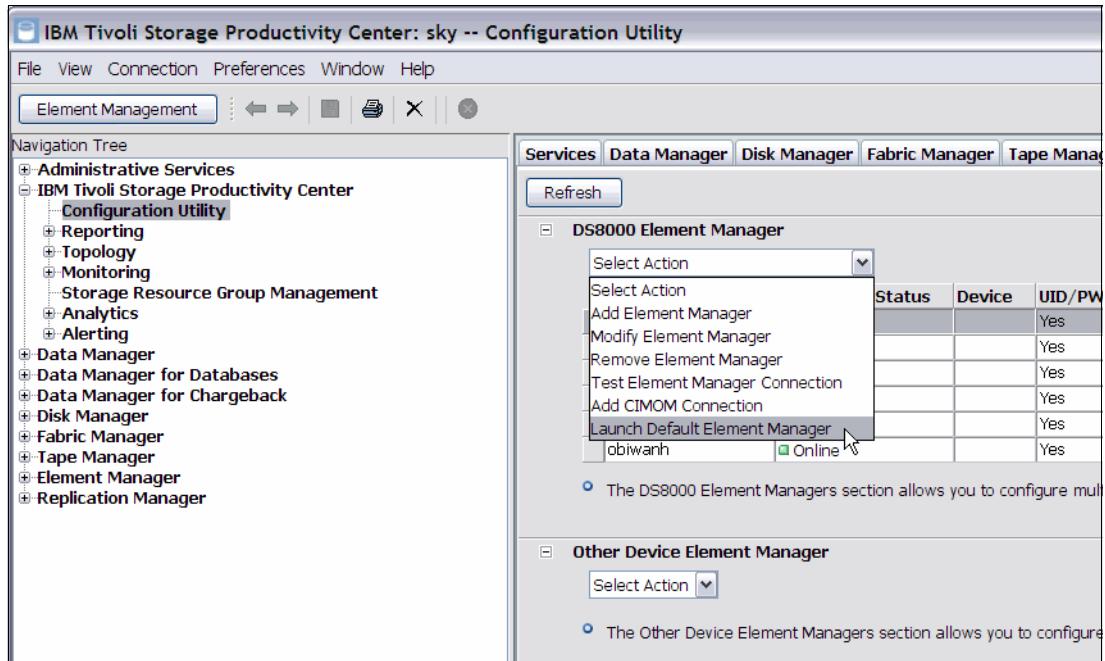


Figure 13-5 SSPC: Select DS8700

5. You are presented with the DS GUI Welcome window for the selected disk system, as shown in Figure 13-6.

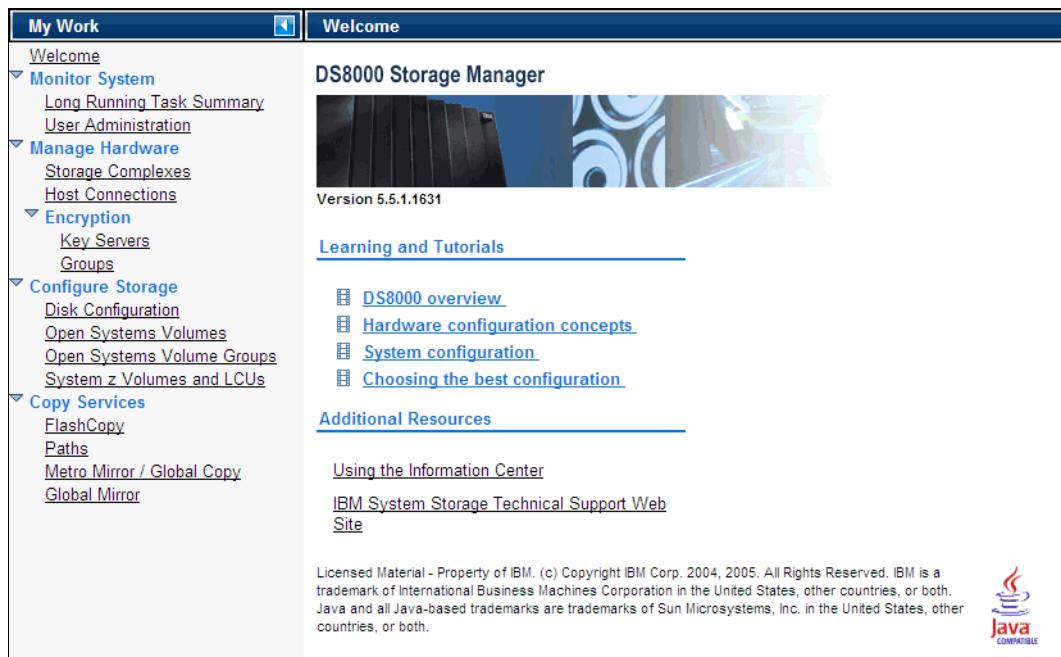


Figure 13-6 SSPC: DS GUI Welcome window

## **Accessing the DS GUI from a TPC workstation connected to the HMC**

You can also access the DS8700 GUI from any workstation on which TPC version V4.1.1 is installed, and which is connected to a DS8700 HMC. Once you are connected to TPC, follow the instructions in “Accessing the DS GUI through SSPC” on page 298 to get to the DS GUI.

## **Accessing the DS GUI from a browser connected to SSPC**

To access the DS GUI, you can connect to SSPC via a Web browser, and then use the instructions given in “Accessing the DS GUI through SSPC” on page 298.

## **Accessing the DS GUI from a browser connected to a TPC workstation**

To access the DS GUI, you can connect to a TPC workstation via a Web browser, and then use the instructions in “Accessing the DS GUI through SSPC” on page 298. For information about how to access a TPC workstation through a Web browser, refer to “Accessing the TPC on SSPC” on page 267.

## **Accessing the DS GUI through a remote desktop connection to SSPC**

You can use remote desktop connection to SSPC. Once connected to SSPC, follow the instructions in “Accessing the DS GUI through SSPC” on page 298 to access the DS GUI. For information how to connect to SSPC via remote desktop refer to “Accessing the TPC on SSPC” on page 267.

## **Accessing the DS GUI through the HMC**

The following procedure can be used to work directly at the HMC and access the DS Storage Manager using the Web browser that is preinstalled on the HMC.

1. Open and turn on the management console. The Hardware Management Console login window displays.
2. Right-click an empty area of the desktop to open a Fluxbox. Place the mouse cursor over the Net selection in the Fluxbox. Another box opens and shows the choices Net and Browser. See Figure 13-7.

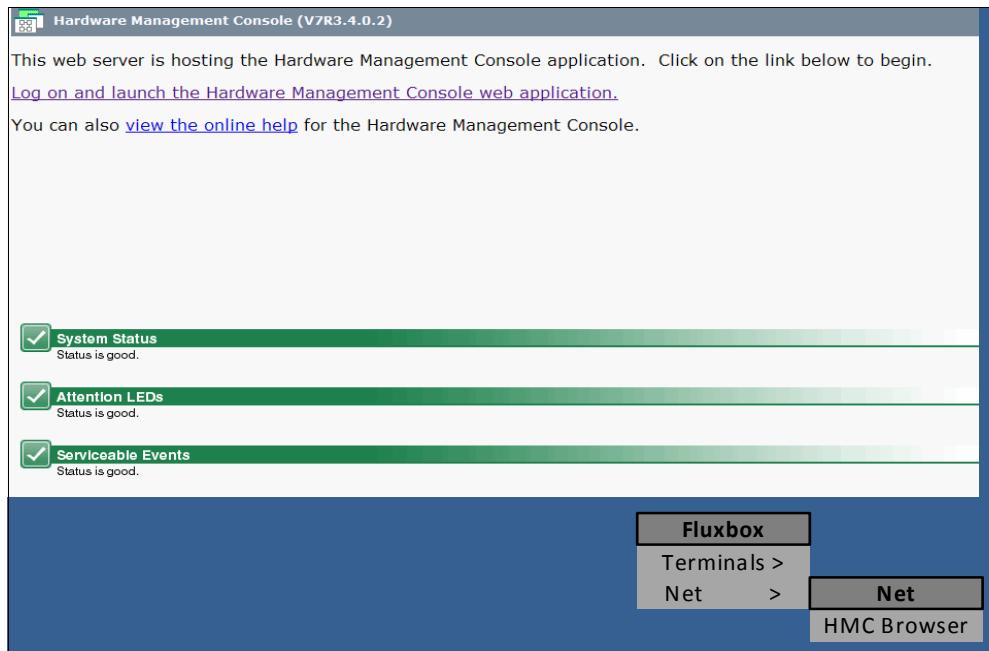


Figure 13-7 HMC Fluxbox

3. Click **Browser**. The Web browser is started without address bar and a Web page titled WELCOME TO THE DS8000 MANAGEMENT CONSOLE opens, as shown in Figure 13-8.

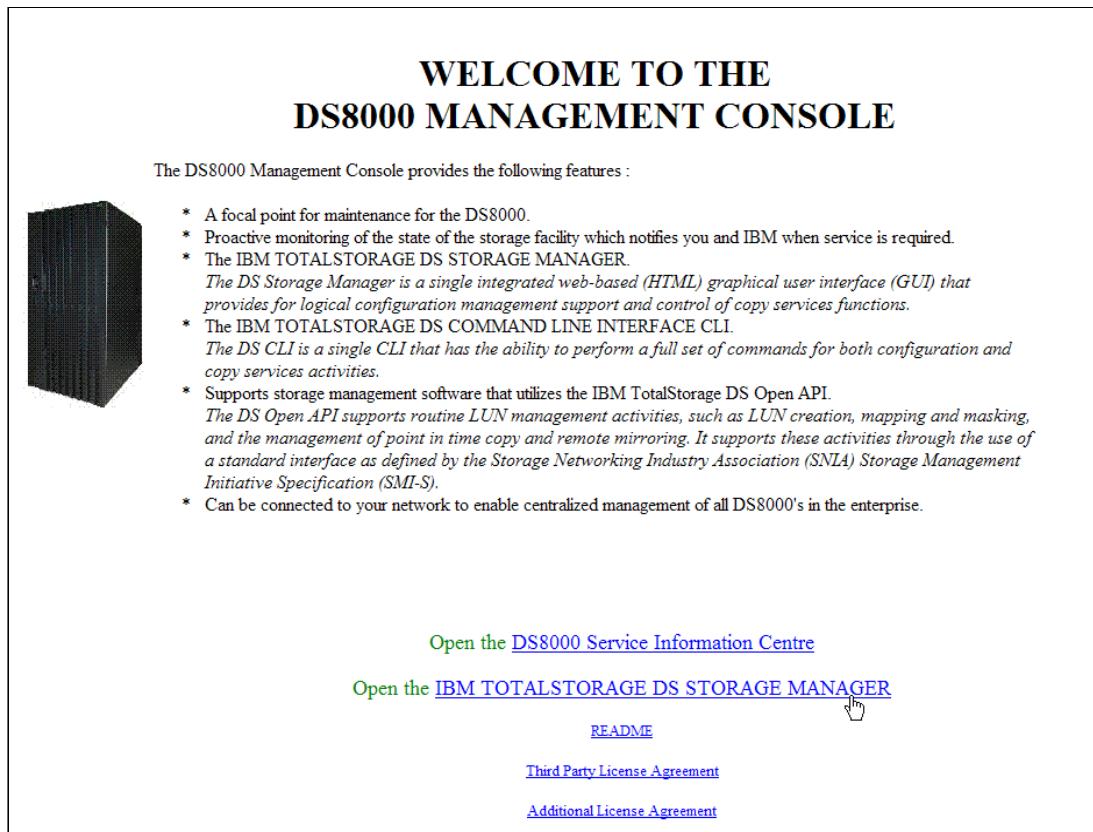


Figure 13-8 Management Console Welcome window

4. In the Welcome window, click **IBM Tivoli Storage DS STORAGE MANAGER**.
5. A certificate window opens. Click **Accept**.
6. The IBM System Storage DS8700 SignOn window opens. Enter a user ID and password.  
The predefined user ID and password are:
  - User ID: admin
  - Password: adminThe password must be changed at first login. If someone had already logged on, check with that person to obtain the new password.
7. A password manager window opens. Select **OK**.
8. This launches the DS GUI in the browser on HMC.

### 13.1.2 DS GUI Welcome window

After you log on, you see the DS Storage Manager Welcome window, as shown in Figure 13-9.

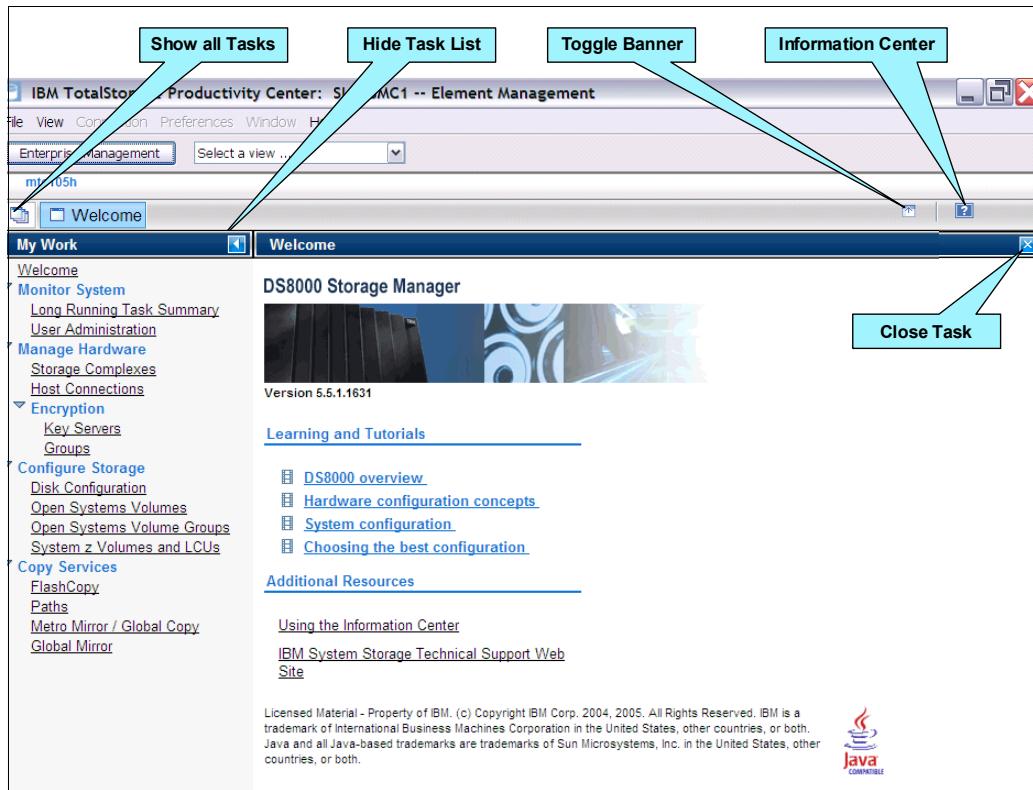


Figure 13-9 DS GUI Welcome window

In the Welcome window of the DS8700 Storage Manager GUI, you see buttons for accessing the following options:

- ▶ Show all tasks: Opens the Task Manager window, where you can end a task or switch to another task.
- ▶ Hide Task List: Hides the Task list and expands your work area.
- ▶ Toggle Banner: Removes the banner with the IBM System Storage name and expands the working space.
- ▶ Information Center: Launches the Information Center. The Information Center is the online help for the DS8700. The Information Center provides contextual help for each window, but also is independently accessible from the Internet.
- ▶ Close Task: Closes the active task.

The left side of the window is the navigation pane.

## DS GUI window options

Figure 13-10 shows an example of the Disk Configuration - Arrays window. Several important options available on this page are also on many of the other windows of DS Storage Manager. We explain several of these options (refer to Figure 13-10 for an overview).

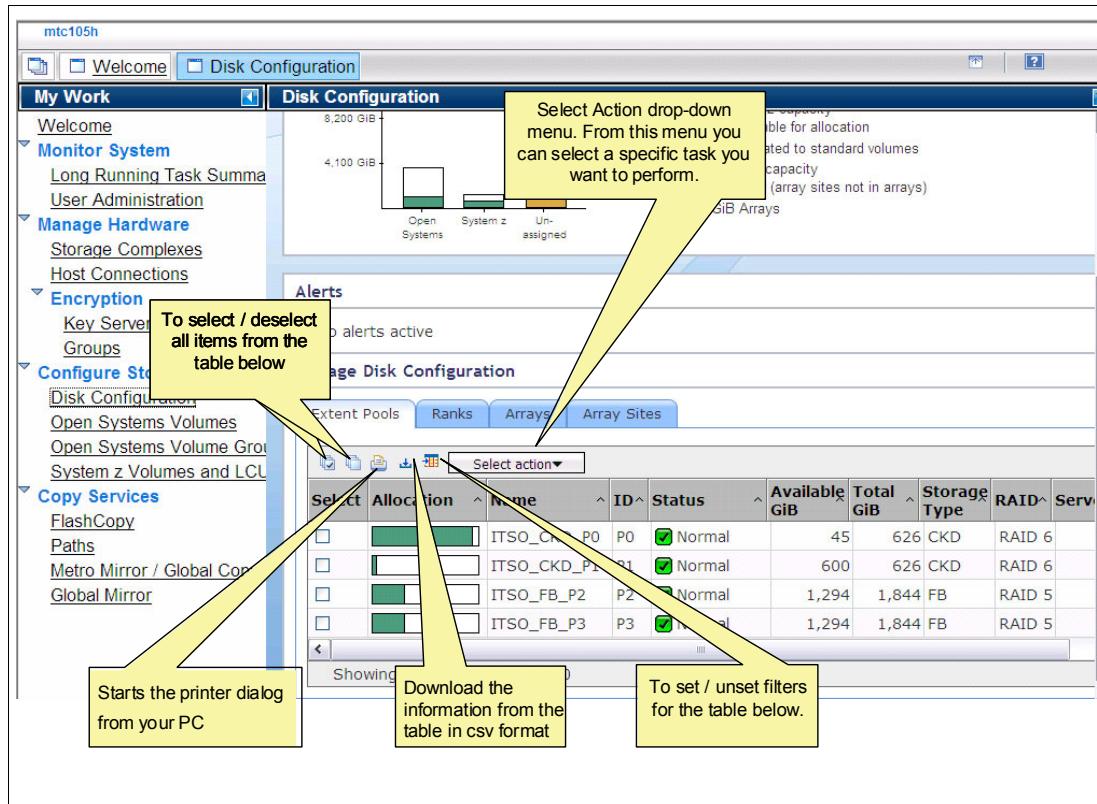


Figure 13-10 Example of the Arrays window

The DS GUI displays the configuration of your DS8700 in tables. There are several options you can use:

- ▶ To download the information from the table, click **Download**. This can be useful if you want to document your configuration. The file is in comma-separated value (.csv) format and you can open the file with a spreadsheet program. This function is also useful if the table on the DS8700 Manager consists of several pages; the .csv file includes all pages.
- ▶ The Print report option opens a new window with the table in HTML format and starts the printer dialog box if you want to print the table.
- ▶ The Select Action drop-down menu provides you with specific actions that you can perform. Select the object you want to access and then the appropriate action (for example, Create or Delete).
- ▶ There are also buttons to set and clear filters so that only specific items are displayed in the table (for example, show only FB ranks in the table). This can be useful if you have tables with a large number of items.

## 13.2 Logical configuration process

When performing the initial logical configuration, the first step is to create the storage complex (processor complex) along with the definition of the hardware of the storage unit. The storage unit can have one or more storage images (storage facility images).

When performing the logical configuration, the following approach is likely to be the most straightforward:

1. Start by defining the storage complex.
2. Create arrays, ranks, and Extent Pools.
3. Create open system volumes.
4. Create count key data (CKD) LSSs and volumes.
5. Create host connections and volume groups.

### Long Running Tasks Summary window

Some logical configuration tasks have dependencies on the successful completion of other tasks, for example, you cannot create ranks on arrays until the array creation is complete. The Long Running Tasks Summary window assists you in this process by reporting the progress and status of these long-running tasks.

Figure 13-11 shows the successful completion of the different tasks (adding capacity and creating new volumes). Click the specific task link to get more information about the task.

The screenshot shows a software interface titled "Long Running Task Summary". At the top, there is a dropdown menu set to "Storage image All" and a "Refresh" button. The main area is titled "Long Running Task Summary" and contains a message: "Select a long running task from the table to perform an action." Below this is a table with the following data:

Select	User	Task	Resource	State	Start
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	<a href="#">Creating Volumes</a>	<75LA511>	Finished	09/07/06 23:46:..
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	<a href="#">Creating Volumes</a>	<75LA511>	Finished	09/07/06 23:42:..
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	<a href="#">Creating Volumes</a>	<75LA511>	Finished	09/07/06 23:38:..
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	<a href="#">Adding capacity</a>	<75LA511>	Finished	09/07/06 23:35:..
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	<a href="#">Creating Volumes</a>	<75LA511>	Finished	09/07/06 23:33:..
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	<a href="#">Adding capacity</a>	<75LA511>	Finished	09/07/06 23:30:..
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	<a href="#">Creating Volumes</a>	<75LA511>	Finished	09/07/06 23:29:..
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	<a href="#">Adding capacity</a>	<75LA511>	Finished	09/07/06 23:26:..
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	<a href="#">Creating Volumes</a>	<75LA511>	Finished	09/07/06 23:25:..
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	<a href="#">Adding capacity</a>	<75LA511>	Finished	09/07/06 23:22:..

At the bottom of the table, it says "Showing 3 - 12 of 40 Selected 0".

Figure 13-11 Long Running Tasks Summary window

## 13.3 Examples of configuring DS8700 storage

In the following sections, we show an example of a DS8700 configuration made through the DS GUI.

For each configuration task (for example, creating an array), the process guides you through windows where you enter the necessary information. During this process, you have the ability to go back to make modifications or cancel the process. At the end of each process, you get a verification window where you can verify the information that you entered before you submit the task.

### 13.3.1 Define storage complex

During the DS8700 installation, your IBM service representative customizes the setup of your storage complex based on information that you provide in the customization worksheets. Once you log into the DS GUI and before you start the logical configuration, check the status of your storage system.

In the My Work section of the DS GUI welcome window, navigate to **Manage Hardware → Storage Complexes**. The Storage Complexes Summary window opens, as shown in Figure 13-12.

Select	Storage Image	Serial Number	Emulated Type-Model	Status	Storage Unit	St
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<75LA511>	75LA511	2107-941	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	<75LA510>	Ibm

Figure 13-12 Storage Complexes Summary window

You should have at least one storage complex listed in the table. If you have more than one DS8700 system or any other DS8000 family model in your environment connected to the same network, you can define it here by adding a new storage complex. Select **Add** from the Select action drop-down menu in order to add a new storage complex (see Figure 13-13).

Select	Storage Image	Emulated Type-Model	Status	Storage Unit
<input type="checkbox"/>	<75LA511>	75LA511	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	<75LA510>

Figure 13-13 Select Storage Complex Add window

The Add Storage Complex window opens, as shown in Figure 13-14.

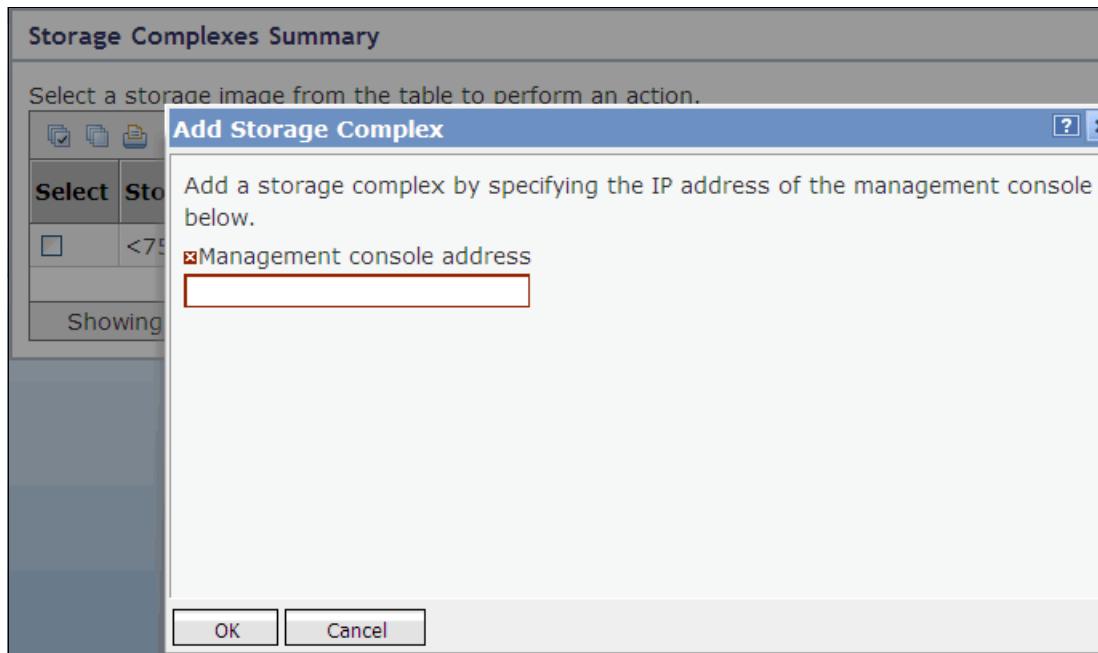


Figure 13-14 Add Storage Complex window

Provide the IP address of the Hardware Management Console (HMC) connected to the new storage complex that you wish to add and click **OK** to continue. A new storage complex is added to the table, as shown in Figure 13-15.

Storage Complexes Summary						
Select a storage image from the table to perform an action.						
Select	Storage Image	Serial Number	Emulated Type-Model	Status	Storage Unit	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<75LA511>	75LA511	2107-941	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	<75LA510>	
<input type="checkbox"/>	mtc105h	75LY981	2107-941	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	<75LY980>	

Figure 13-15 New storage complex is added

Having all the DS8700 storage complexes defined together provides flexible control and management. The status information indicates the healthiness of each storage complex. By clicking the status description link of any storage complex, you can get more detailed health check information for some vital DS8700 components (see Figure 13-16).

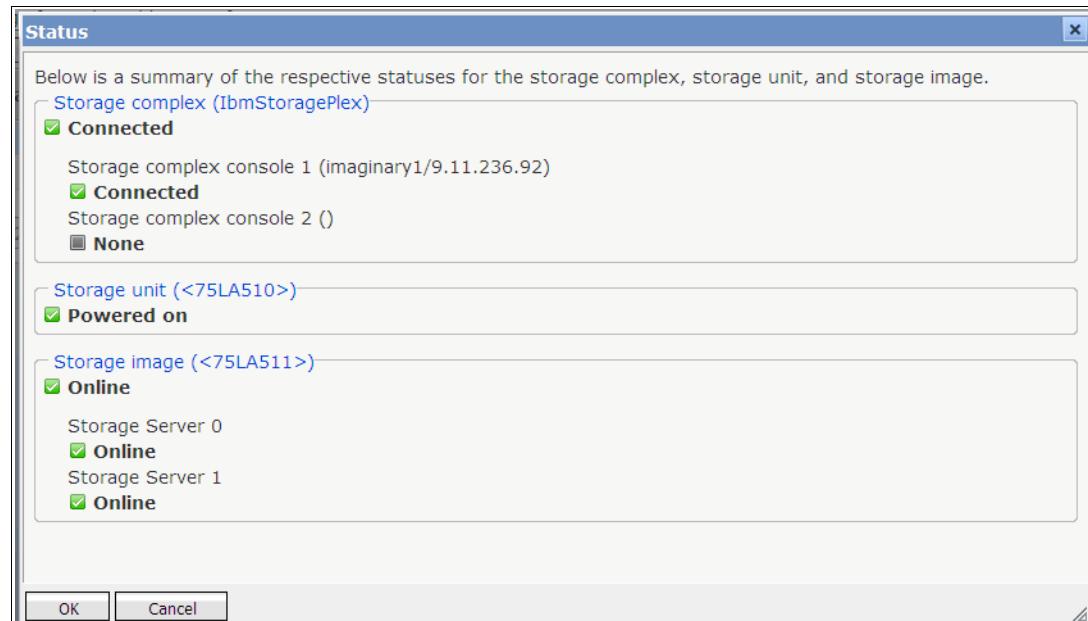


Figure 13-16 Check the status details

Different status descriptions may be reported for your storage complexes. These descriptions depend on the availability of the vital storage complexes components. In Figure 13-17, we show an example of different status states.

Storage Complexes Summary							
Select a storage image from the table to perform an action.							
Select	Storage Image	Serial Number	Emulated Type-Model	Status	Storage Unit	Storage Complex	
<input type="checkbox"/>	mtc033SI	1301111	2107-922	<span style="color: green;">✓ Normal</span>	<1301110>	mtc33hSC	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<75FW821>	75FW821	2107-941	<span style="color: yellow;">⚠ Attention</span>	<75FW820>	ESSNetworkInterce	
<input type="checkbox"/>	N/A			<span style="color: red;">✗ Critical</span>	<Unavailable>	mtc105h.storage.tucson	
<input type="checkbox"/>	mtc002SI	1300391	2107-921	<span style="color: yellow;">⚠ Attention</span>	The Storage Unit	mtc002hSC	
<input type="checkbox"/>	het8	75MZ041	2107-941	<span style="color: green;">✓ Normal</span>	<75MZ040>	het8StoragePlex	
<input type="checkbox"/>	gem001SI	75NH431	2107-941	<span style="color: green;">✓ Normal</span>	gem001SU	gem001SC	

Figure 13-17 Different Storage Complex Status states

A Critical status indicates unavailable vital storage complex resources. An Attention status may be triggered by some resources being unavailable. Because they are redundant, the storage complex is still operational. One example is when only one storage server inside a storage image is offline, as shown in Figure 13-18.

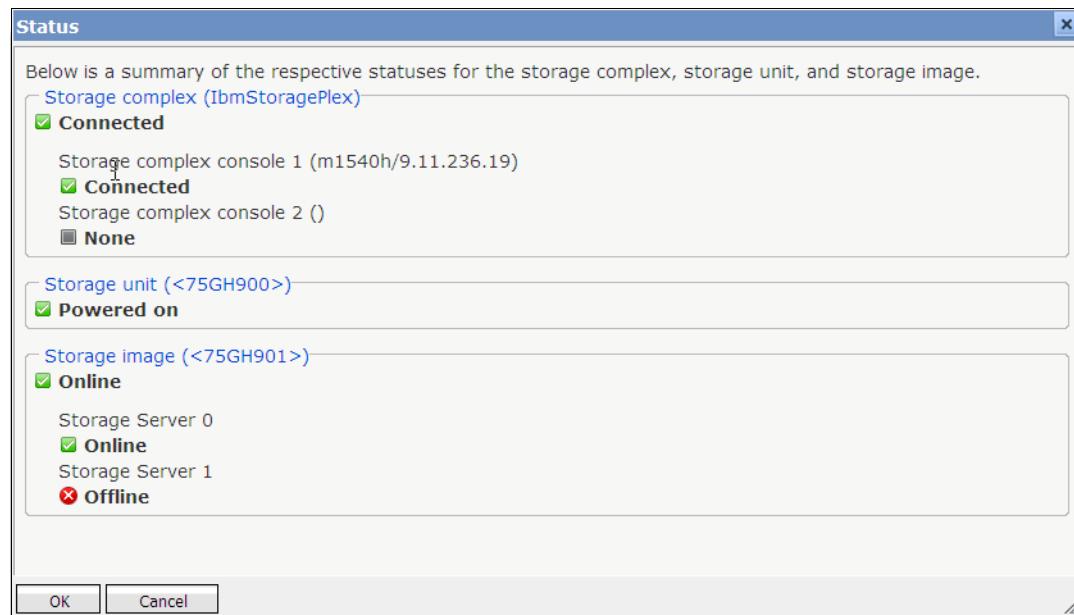


Figure 13-18 One storage server is offline

We recommend checking the status of your storage complex and proceeding with logical configuration (create arrays, ranks, Extent Pools, or volumes) only when your HMC consoles are connected to the storage complex and both storage servers inside the storage image are online and operational.

### 13.3.2 Create arrays

**Tip:** You do not necessarily need to create arrays first and then ranks. You can proceed directly with the creation of Extent Pools, as explained in 13.3.4, “Create Extent Pools” on page 322.

To create an array, perform the following steps in the DS GUI:

1. In the DS GUI welcome window, from the My Work section, expand **Configure Storage** and click **Disk Configuration**. This brings up the Disk Configuration window (Figure 13-19).

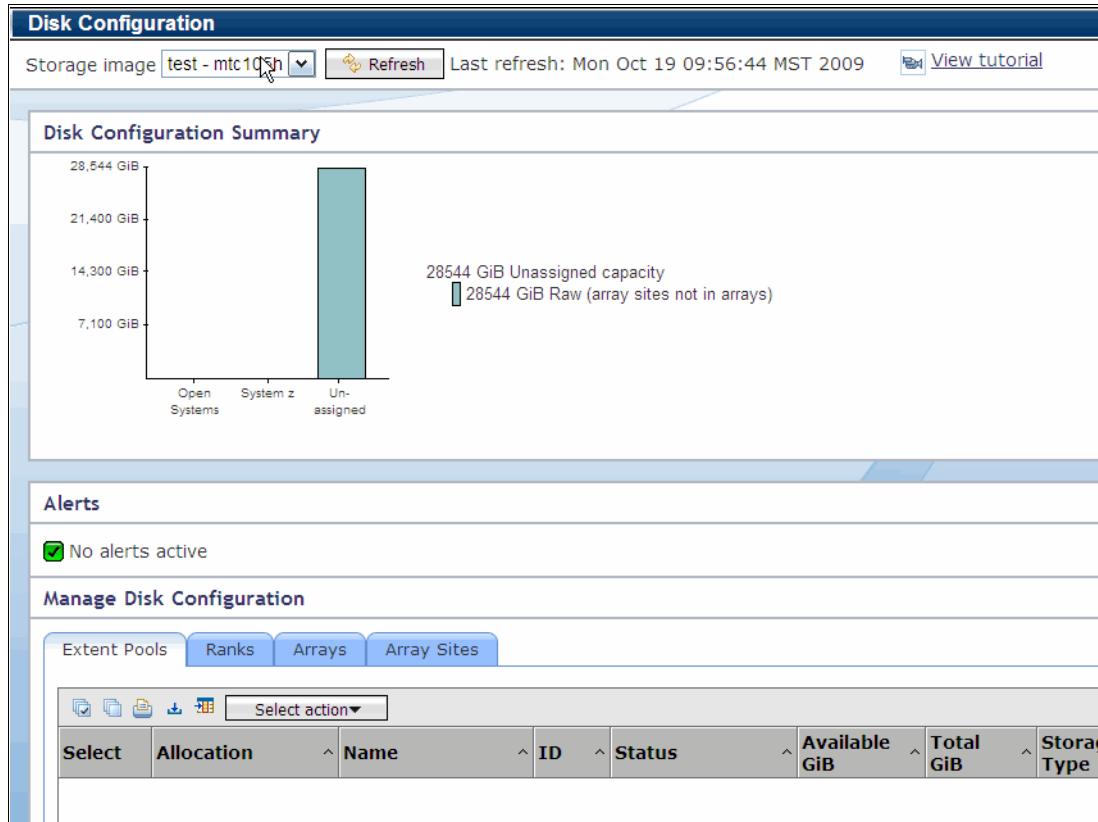


Figure 13-19 Disk Configuration window

**Note:** If you have defined more storage complexes/storage images, be sure to select the right storage image before you start creating arrays. From the Storage image drop-down menu, select the desired storage image you want to access.

In our example, the DS8700 capacity is still not assigned to open systems or System z.

- Click the **Array Sites** tab to check the available storage that is required to create the array (see Figure 13-20).

Select	Array Site	State	Array	DA Pair	Drive Type	Drive Class
<input type="checkbox"/>	S1	Unassigned	None	2	146 GB 15K	Enterprise
<input type="checkbox"/>	S2	Unassigned	None	2	146 GB 15K	Enterprise
<input type="checkbox"/>	S3	Unassigned	None	2	146 GB 15K	Enterprise
<input type="checkbox"/>	S4	Unassigned	None	2	146 GB 15K	Enterprise
<input type="checkbox"/>	S5	Unassigned	None	2	146 GB 15K	Enterprise
<input type="checkbox"/>	S6	Unassigned	None	2	146 GB 15K	Enterprise

Figure 13-20 Array sites

- In our example, all array sites are unassigned and therefore eligible to be used for array creation. Each array site has eight physical disk drives. In order to discover more details about each array site, select the desired array site and click **Properties** in the Select Action drop-down menu. The Single Array Site Properties window opens. It provides general array site characteristics, as shown in Figure 13-21.

General	
Array Site ID	S1
DA Pair	2
Drive Type	146 GB 15K
Drive Class	Enterprise
Encryption Supported	No

Figure 13-21 Select Array Site Properties

4. Click the **Status** tab to get more information about the Disk Drive Modules (DDMs) and the state of each DDM, as shown in Figure 13-22.

The screenshot shows the 'Single Array Site Properties' dialog box. The 'Status' tab is selected. At the top, it displays 'Array Site Status: Unassigned'. Below this, a message states: 'The table lists the DDMs that are associated with the array and their state and DDM usage status.' A table follows, showing eight entries. The columns are: DDM Serial Number, DDM Location, DDM State, and DDM Usage. The data is as follows:

DDM Serial Number	DDM Location	DDM State	DDM Usage
80004S607E37...	U2107.D01.RJ05P9J-P...	Normal	Unconfigured
80004S607E40...	U2107.D01.RJ05P9J-P...	Normal	Unconfigured
80004S607E3E...	U2107.D01.RJ05P9J-P...	Normal	Unconfigured
80004S607E3C...	U2107.D01.RJ05P9J-P...	Normal	Unconfigured
80004S607E37...	U2107.D01.RJ06DR2-P...	Normal	Spare - Required
80004S607E69...	U2107.D01.RJ06DR2-P...	Normal	Unconfigured
80004S607E45...	U2107.D01.RJ06DR2-P...	Normal	Unconfigured
80004S607E77...	U2107.D01.RJ06DR2-P...	Normal	Unconfigured

At the bottom left is a message 'Showing 1 - 8 of 8'. At the bottom right is an 'OK' button.

Figure 13-22 Single Array Site Properties: Status

5. All DDMs in this array site are in the Normal state. Click **OK** to close the Single Array Site Properties window and go back to the Disk Configuration main window.

6. Once we identify the unassigned and available storage, we can create an array. Click the **Array** tab in the Manage Disk Configuration section and select **Create Arrays** in the Select action drop-down menu, as shown in Figure 13-23.

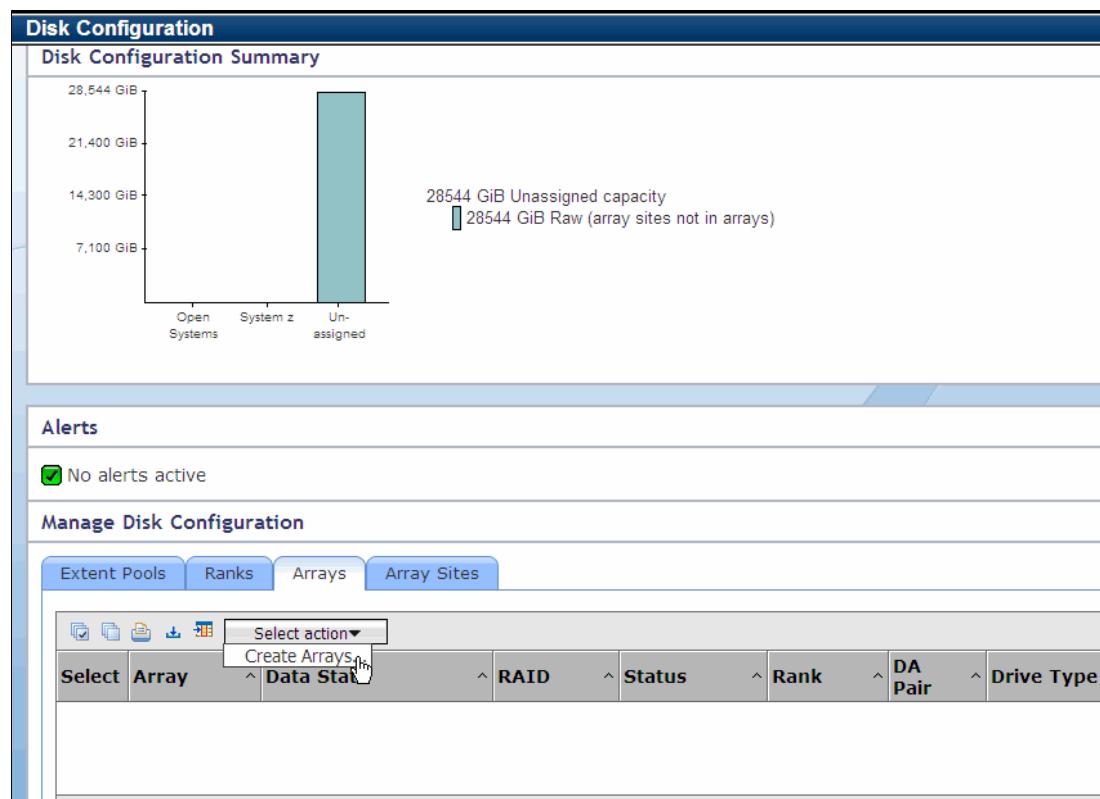


Figure 13-23 Select Create Arrays

7. The Create New Arrays window opens, as shown in Figure 13-24.

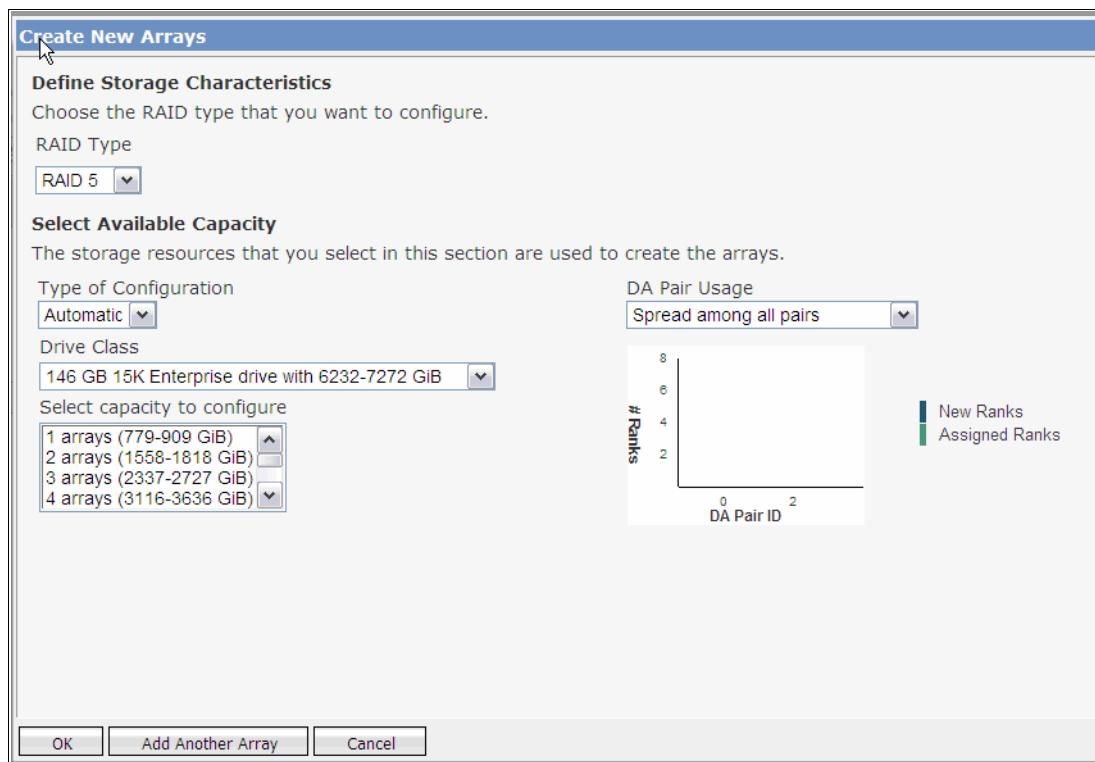


Figure 13-24 Create New Arrays window

You need to provide the following information:

- RAID Type: The supported or available RAID types are RAID 5, RAID 6, and RAID 10.
- Type of configuration: There are two options available:
  - Automatic is the default, and it allows the system to choose the best array sites configuration based on your capacity and DDM type selection.
  - The Manual option can be used if you want to have more control over the resources. When you select this option, a table of available array sites is displayed. You have to manually select array sites from the table.
- If you select the **Automatic** configuration type, you need to provide additional information:
  - From the DA Pair Usage drop-down menu, select the appropriate action. The Spread among all pairs option balances arrays evenly across all available Device Adapter (DA) pairs. There are another two options available: Spread among least used pairs and Sequentially fill all pairs. The bar graph displays, in real-time, the effect of your choice.
  - From the Drive Class drop-down menu, select the DDM type you wish to use for the new array.
  - From the Select capacity to configure drop-down menu, click the desired total capacity.

If you want to create many arrays with different characteristics (RAID and DDM type) in one task, select **Add Another Array** as many times as required.

In our example (see Figure 13-25), we created two RAID 6 arrays on 146 GB 15K DDMs and two arrays on 300 GB 15K DDMs and RAID 5.

Click **OK** to continue.

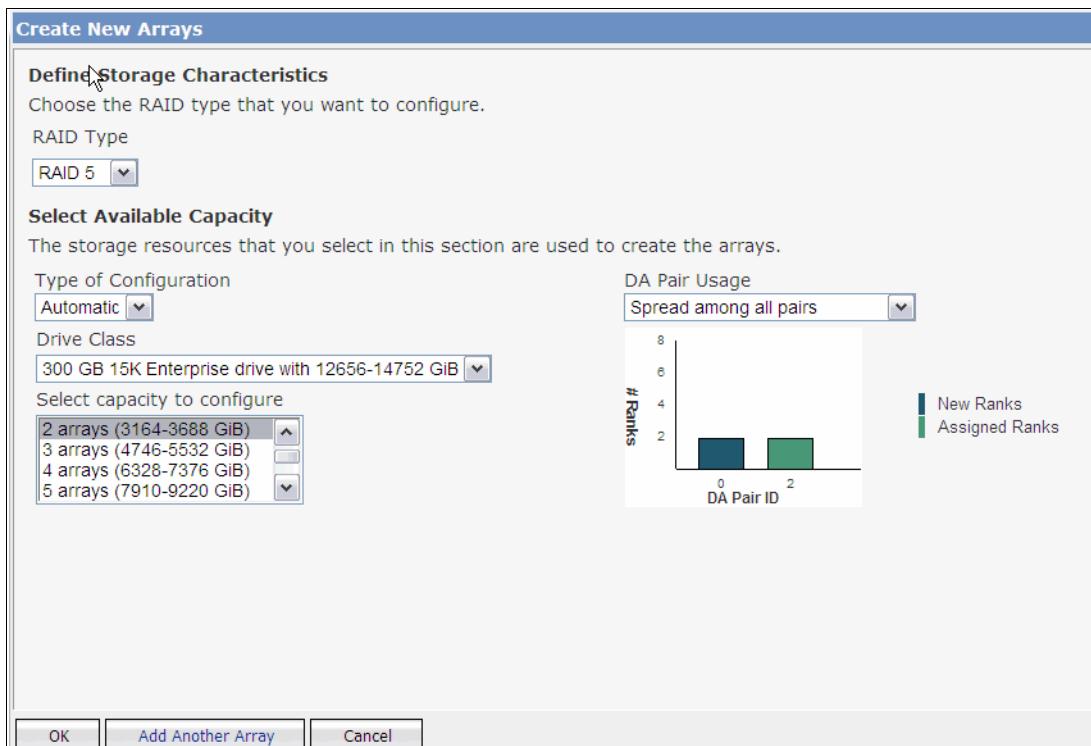


Figure 13-25 Creating new arrays

8. The Create array verification window is displayed (Figure 13-26). It lists all array sites chosen for the new arrays we want to create. At this stage, you can still change your configuration by deleting the array sites from the lists and adding new array sites if required. Click **Create All** once you decide to continue with the proposed configuration.

Disk Configuration				
Create array verification				
Storage image:				
Review the arrays and verify that they provide the configuration that you need. If the table is blank or if you want to create arrays, click the Add Arrays action in the table drop-down list. You may also delete an array by selecting it and clicking the Delete action. Once you have reviewed the configurations for the arrays listed in this table, click Create All to initiate the creation process for all arrays that are selected.				
Select	Array Site	Total GiB	Drive Type	Drive Class
<input type="checkbox"/>	S1	634-763 GiB	146 GB 15K	Enterprise
<input type="checkbox"/>	S2	634-763 GiB	146 GB 15K	Enterprise
<input type="checkbox"/>	S9	1582-1844 GiB	300 GB 15K	Enterprise
<input type="checkbox"/>	S10	1582-1844 GiB	300 GB 15K	Enterprise
Showing 1 - 4 of 4   Selected 0				
<b>Create All</b>		<b>Cancel</b>		

Figure 13-26 Create array verification window

9. Wait for the message in Figure 13-27 to appear and then click **Close**.

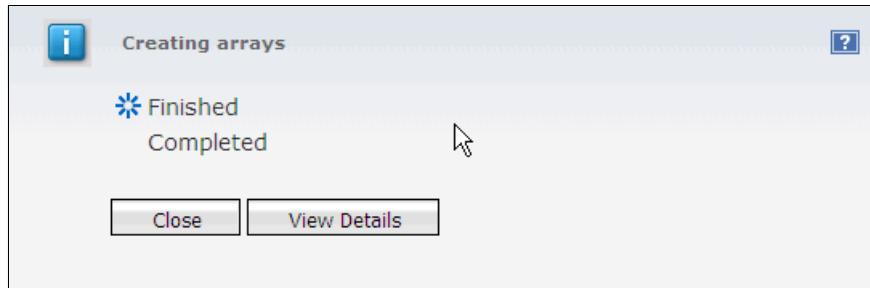


Figure 13-27 Creating arrays completed

10. The window in Figure 13-28 shows the newly created arrays. You can see that the graph in the Disk Configuration Summary section has changed accordingly and now includes the new capacity we used for creating arrays.

Manage Disk Configuration								
		Extent Pools	Ranks	Arrays	Array Sites			
		Select action▼						
Select	Array	Data State	RAID	Status	Rank	DA Pair	Drive Type	
<input type="checkbox"/>	A0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	6 (5+P+Q...)	Unassigned	None	2	146 GB 15K	
<input type="checkbox"/>	A1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	6 (5+P+Q...)	Unassigned	None	2	146 GB 15K	
<input type="checkbox"/>	A2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	5 (6+P+S)	Unassigned	None	0	300 GB 15K	
<input type="checkbox"/>	A3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	5 (6+P+S)	Unassigned	None	0	300 GB 15K	

Figure 13-28 List of all created arrays

### 13.3.3 Create ranks

**Tip:** You do not necessarily need to create arrays first and then ranks. You can proceed directly with the creation of Extent Pools (see 13.3.4, “Create Extent Pools” on page 322).

To create a rank, perform the following steps in the DS GUI:

1. In the DS GUI welcome window, from the My Work section, expand **Configure Storage** and click **Disk Configuration**. This brings up the Disk Configuration window shown in Figure 13-28 on page 315. Click the **Ranks** tab to start working with ranks. Select **Create Rank** from the Select action drop-down menu, as shown in Figure 13-29.

**Note:** If you have defined more storage complexes/storage images, be sure to select the right storage image before you start creating ranks. From the **Storage image** drop-down menu, select the desired storage image you want to access.

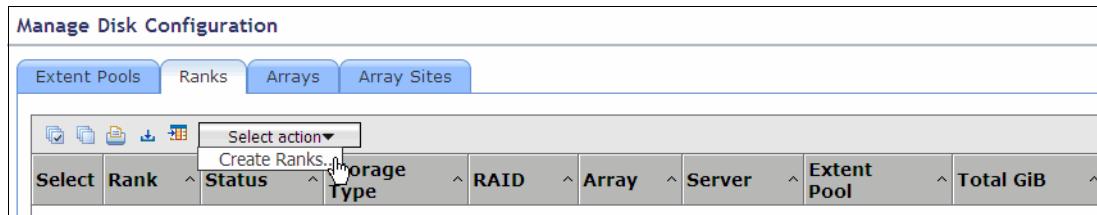


Figure 13-29 Select Create Ranks

2. The Create New Ranks window opens (see Figure 13-30).

A screenshot of the 'Create New Ranks' window. The title bar says 'Create New Ranks'. The main area is divided into sections: 'Define Storage Characteristics' (Storage Type: FB, RAID Type: RAID 5), 'Select Available Capacity' (Type of Configuration: Automatic, Encryption Group: None, Drive Class: 146 GB 15K Enterprise drive with 4674-5454 GiB, Select capacity to configure dropdown with options: 1 ranks (779-909 GiB), 2 ranks (1558-1818 GiB), 3 ranks (2337-2727 GiB), 4 ranks (3116-3636 GiB)), and a 'DA Pair Usage' chart. The chart shows 'Spread among all pairs' with 8 DA Pairs and 2 ranks assigned. A legend indicates 'New Ranks' (blue line) and 'Assigned Ranks' (green line). At the bottom are 'OK', 'Add Another Rank', and 'Cancel' buttons.

Figure 13-30 Create New Rank window

In order to create a rank, you have to provide the following information:

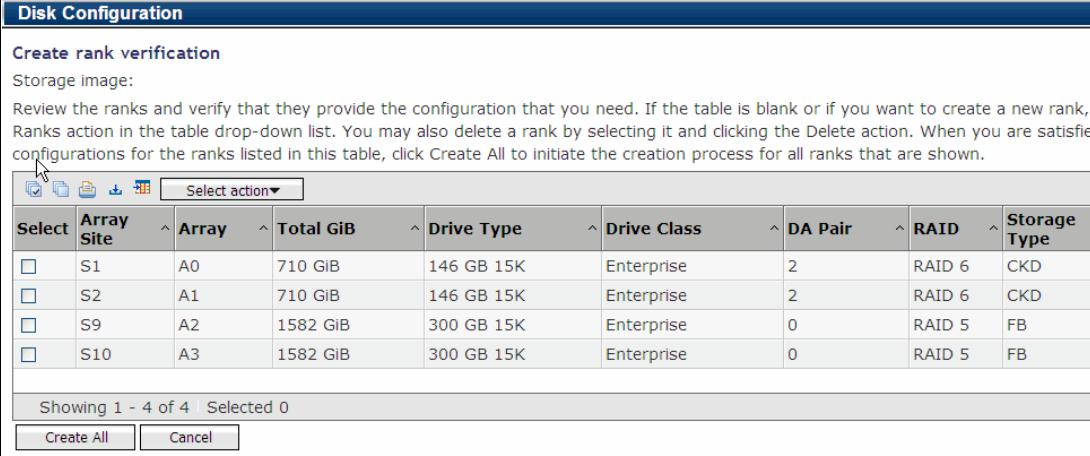
- Storage Type: The type of extent for which the rank is to be configured. The storage type can be set to one of the following values:
  - Fixed block (FB) extents =1 GB. In fixed block architecture, the data (the logical volumes) is mapped over fixed-size blocks or sectors.
  - Count key data (CKD) extents = CKD Mod 1. In count-key-data architecture, the data field stores the user data.
- RAID Type: The supported or available RAID types are RAID 5, RAID 6, and RAID 10.
- Type of configuration: There are two options available:
  - Automatic is the default and it allows the system to choose the best configuration of the physical resources based on your capacity and DDM type selection.
  - The Manual option can be used if you want have more control over the resources. When you select this option, a table of available array sites is displayed. You have to manually select resources from the table.
- Encryption Group indicates if encryption is enabled or disabled for ranks. Select **1** from the Encryption Group drop-down menu if the encryption feature is enabled on this machine. Otherwise, select **None**.
- If you select the Automatic configuration type, you need to provide additional information:
  - From the DA Pair Usage drop-down menu, select the appropriate action. The Spread among all pairs option balances ranks evenly across all available Device Adapter (DA) pairs. There are another two options available: Spread among least used pairs and Sequentially fill all pairs. The bar graph displays, in real-time, the effect of your choice.
  - From the Drive Class drop-down menu, select the DDM type you wish to use for the new array.
  - From the Select capacity to configure drop-down menu, click the desired total capacity.

If you want to create many ranks with different characteristics (Storage, RAID, and DDM type) in one task, select **Add Another Rank** as many times as required.

In our example, we create two CKD with RAID 6 using 146 GB 15K DDMs and two FB ranks on 300 GB 15K DDMs with RAID 5.

Click **OK** to continue.

3. The Create rank verification window is displayed (Figure 13-31). Each array site listed in the table is assigned to the corresponding array we created in 13.3.2, “Create arrays” on page 308. At this stage, you can still change your configuration by deleting the ranks from the lists and adding new ranks if required. Click **Create All** once you decide to continue with the proposed configuration.



Select	Array Site	Array	Total GiB	Drive Type	Drive Class	DA Pair	RAID	Storage Type
<input type="checkbox"/>	S1	A0	710 GiB	146 GB 15K	Enterprise	2	RAID 6	CKD
<input type="checkbox"/>	S2	A1	710 GiB	146 GB 15K	Enterprise	2	RAID 6	CKD
<input type="checkbox"/>	S9	A2	1582 GiB	300 GB 15K	Enterprise	0	RAID 5	FB
<input type="checkbox"/>	S10	A3	1582 GiB	300 GB 15K	Enterprise	0	RAID 5	FB

Showing 1 - 4 of 4 Selected 0

**Create All**   **Cancel**

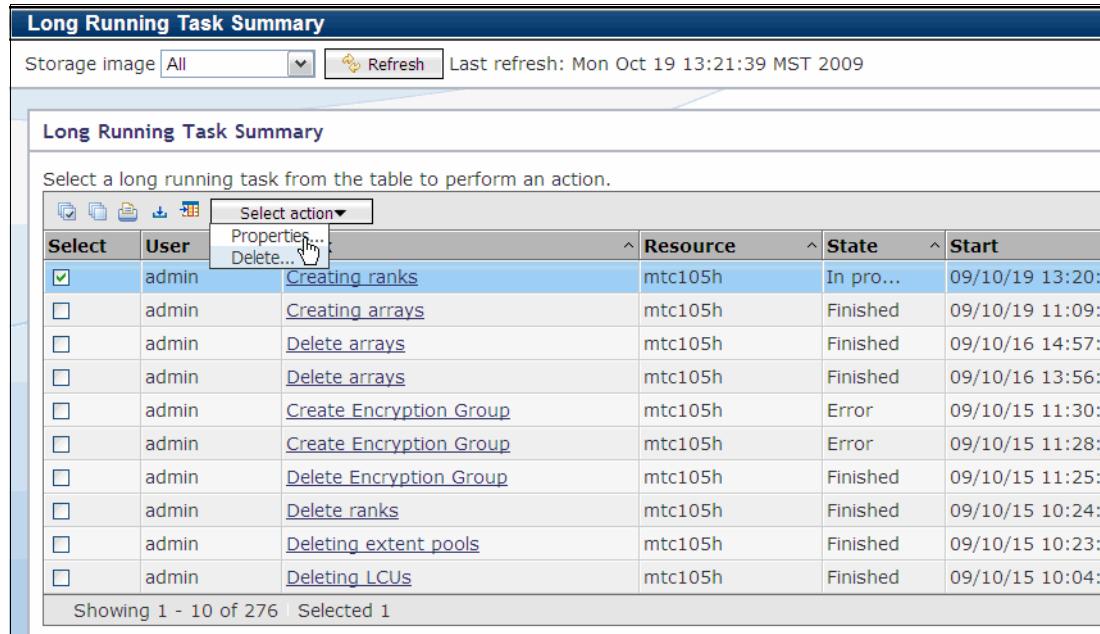
Figure 13-31 Create rank verification window

4. The message in Figure 13-32 appears.



Figure 13-32 Creating ranks: In progress message

The duration of the Create rank task is longer than the Create array task. Click the **View Details** button in order to check the overall progress. It takes you to the Long Running Task Summary window, which shows all tasks executed on this DS8700 storage subsystem. Click the task link name (which has an In progress state) or select it and click **Properties** from the Select action drop-down menu, as shown in Figure 13-33.



The screenshot shows the 'Long Running Task Summary' window. At the top, there is a toolbar with icons for search, refresh, and other functions. Below the toolbar, a message says 'Select a long running task from the table to perform an action.' A table lists various tasks. The first task, 'Creating ranks' by user 'admin', is selected, indicated by a checked checkbox in the 'Select' column. A context menu is open over this row, with the 'Properties...' option highlighted. Other options in the menu include 'Select', 'Copy', 'Delete...', and 'Details...'. The table columns are: Select, User, Task Name, Resource, State, and Start Date/Time. The data in the table is as follows:

Select	User	Task Name	Resource	State	Start
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	admin	<a href="#">Creating ranks</a>	mtc105h	In pro...	09/10/19 13:20:
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	<a href="#">Creating arrays</a>	mtc105h	Finished	09/10/19 11:09:
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	<a href="#">Delete arrays</a>	mtc105h	Finished	09/10/16 14:57:
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	<a href="#">Delete arrays</a>	mtc105h	Finished	09/10/16 13:56:
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	<a href="#">Create Encryption Group</a>	mtc105h	Error	09/10/15 11:30:
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	<a href="#">Create Encryption Group</a>	mtc105h	Error	09/10/15 11:28:
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	<a href="#">Delete Encryption Group</a>	mtc105h	Finished	09/10/15 11:25:
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	<a href="#">Delete ranks</a>	mtc105h	Finished	09/10/15 10:24:
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	<a href="#">Deleting extent pools</a>	mtc105h	Finished	09/10/15 10:23:
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	<a href="#">Deleting LCUs</a>	mtc105h	Finished	09/10/15 10:04:

Showing 1 - 10 of 276 | Selected 1

Figure 13-33 Long Running Task Summary: Select task properties

In the task properties window, you can see the progress and task details, as shown in Figure 13-34.

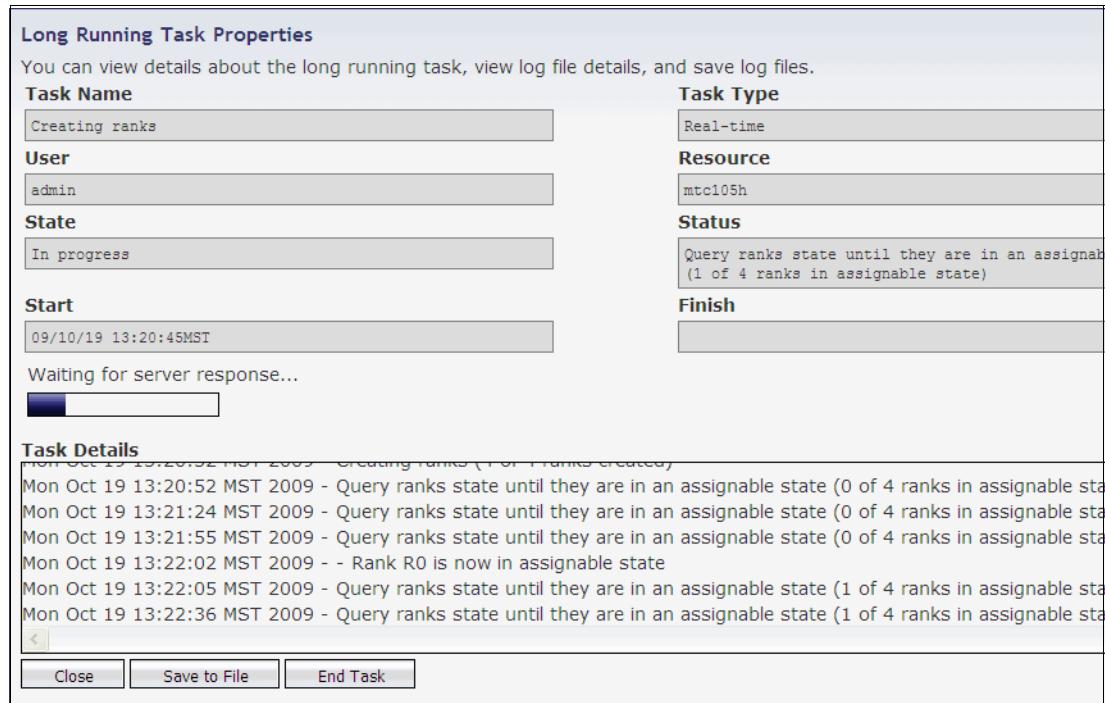


Figure 13-34 Long Running Task Summary: Task properties

- Once the task is completed, go back to Disk Configuration and, under the Rank tab, check the list of newly created ranks (see Figure 13-35).

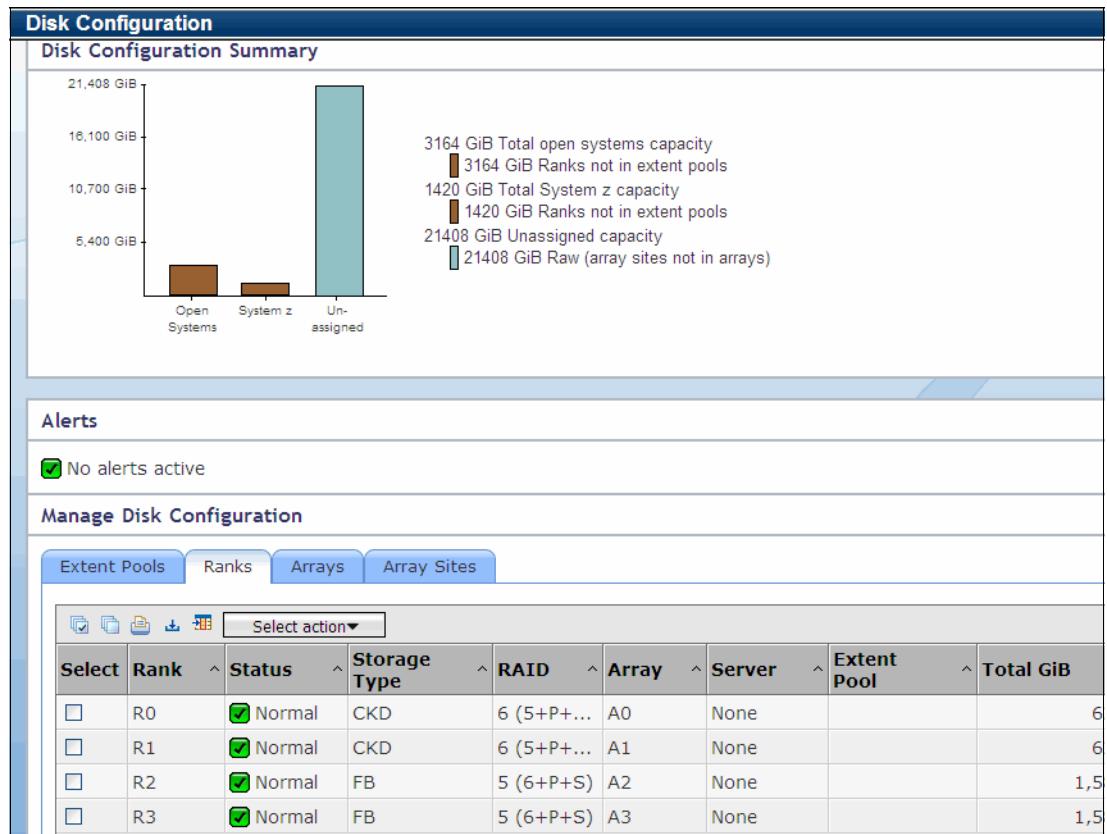


Figure 13-35 List of all created ranks

The bar graph in the Disk Configuration Summary section has changed. There are ranks for both CKD and FB, but they are not assigned to Extent Pools.

### 13.3.4 Create Extent Pools

To create an Extent Pool, perform the following steps in the DS GUI:

1. In the DS GUI welcome window, from the My Work section, expand **Configure Storage** and click **Disk Configuration**. This opens the Disk Configuration window and the Extent Pool information (see Figure 13-36).

The bar graph in the Disk Configuration Summary section provides information about unassigned and assigned capacity. In our example, there are ranks defined, but still not assigned to any Extent Pool.

Select **Create Extent Pools** from the Select action drop-down menu, as shown in Figure 13-36.

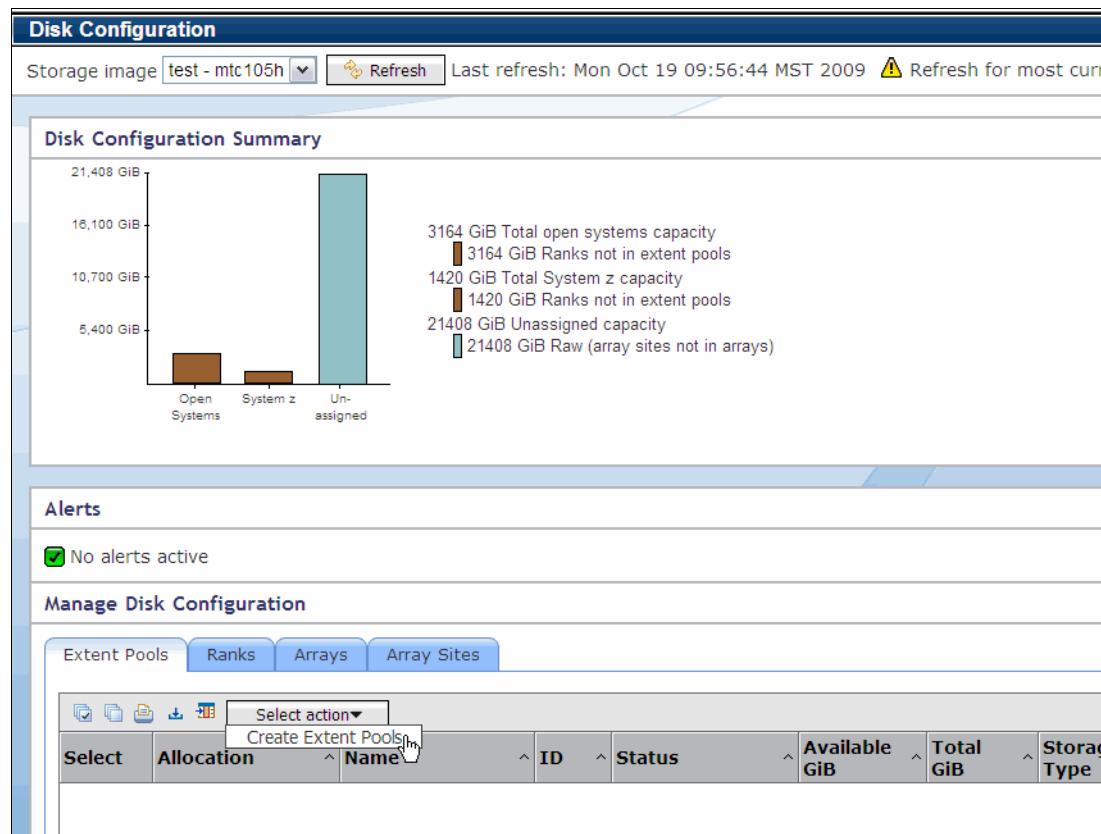


Figure 13-36 Select Create Extent Pool

**Note:** If you have defined more storage complexes/storage images, be sure to select the right storage image before you create Extent Pools. From the Storage image drop-down menu, select the desired storage image you want to access.

2. The Create New Extent Pools window opens, as shown in Figure 13-37. Scroll down to see the rest of the window and provide input for all the fields, as shown in Figure 13-38.

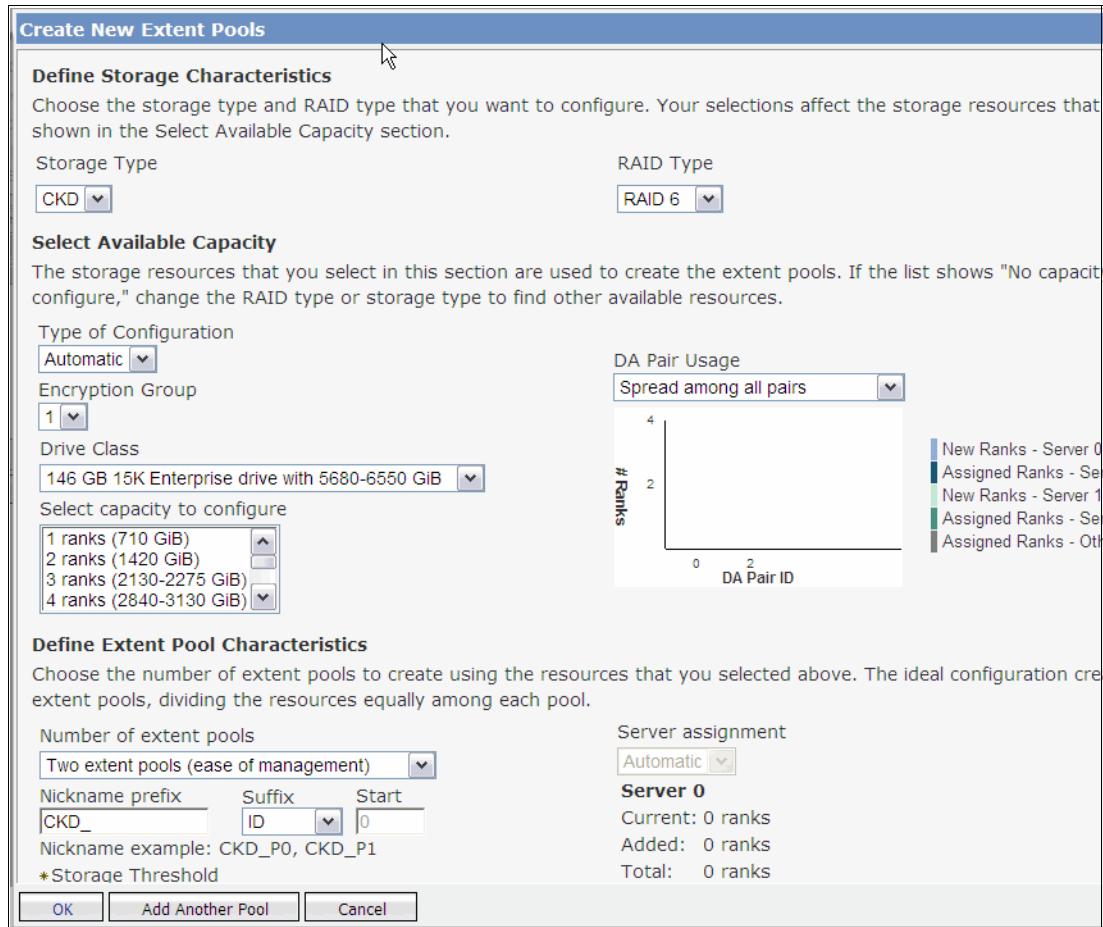


Figure 13-37 Create New Extent Pools window: Part 1

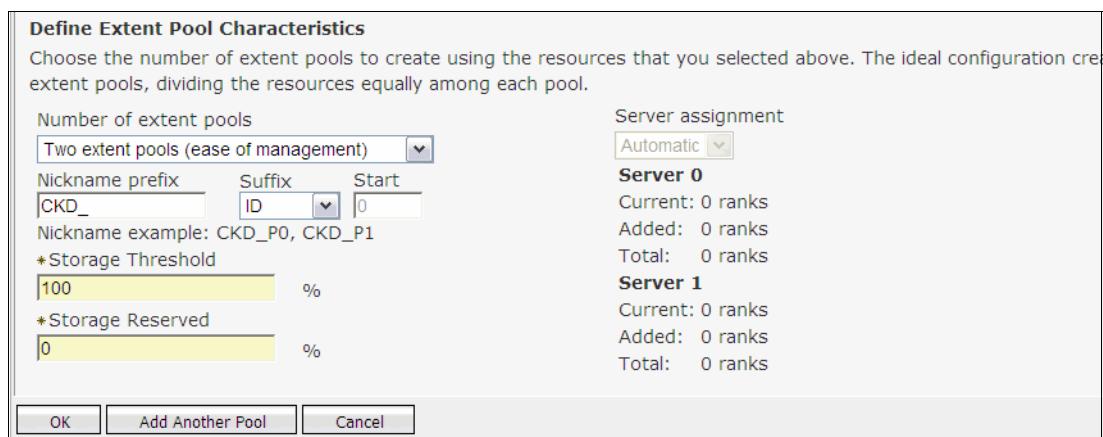


Figure 13-38 Create New Extent Pools window: Part 2

In order to create an Extent Pool, you have to provide the following information:

- Storage Type: The type of extent for which the rank is to be configured. The storage type can be set to one of the following values:
  - Fixed block (FB) extents = 1 GB. In the fixed block architecture, the data (the logical volumes) is mapped over fixed-size blocks or sectors.
  - Count key data (CKD) extents = CKD Mod 1. In the count-key-data architecture, the data field stores the user data.
- RAID Type: The supported or available RAID types are RAID 5, RAID 6, and RAID 10.
- Type of configuration: There are two options available:
  - Automatic is the default and it allows the system to choose the best configuration of physical resources based on your capacity and DDM type selection.
  - The Manual option can be used if you want have more control over the resources. When you select this option, a table of available array sites is displayed. You have to manually select resources from the table.
- Encryption Group indicates if encryption is enabled or disabled for ranks. Select **1** from the Encryption Group drop-down menu if the encryption feature is enabled on this machine. Otherwise, select **None**.
- If you select the **Automatic** configuration type, you need to provide additional information:
  - From the DA Pair Usage drop-down menu, select the appropriate action. The Spread among all pairs option balances ranks evenly across all available Device Adapter (DA) pairs. For example, no more than half of the ranks attached to a DA pair is assigned to each server, so that each server's DA within the DA pair has the same number of ranks. There are another two options available: Spread among least used pairs and Sequentially fill all pairs. The bar graph displays, in real-time, the effect of your choice.
  - From Drive Class drop-down menu, select the DDM type you wish to use for the new array.
  - From the Select capacity to configure drop-down menu, click the desired total capacity.
- Number of Extent Pools: Choose the number of Extent Pools using previously selected ranks. The ideal configuration creates two Extent Pools per storage type, dividing all ranks equally among each pool. There are three available options:
  - Two Extent Pools (ease of management)
  - Single Extent Pool
  - Extent Pool for each rank (physical isolation)
- Nickname Prefix and Suffix: Provides an unique name for each Extent Pool. This setup is very useful if you have many Extent Pools, each assigned to different hosts and platforms.
- Server assignment: The Automatic option allows the system to determine the best server for each Extent Pool. It is the only choice when you select the **Two Extent Pool** option as the number of Extent Pools.
- Storage Threshold: Specify the maximum percentage of the storage threshold to generate an alert. This allows you to make adjustments before a storage full condition occurs.

- Storage reserved: Specifies the percentage of the total Extent Pool capacity that is reserved. This percentage is prevented from being allocated to volumes or space-efficient storage.
3. If you have both the FB and CKD storage type, or you have different types of DDMs installed, you need to create more Extent Pools accordingly. In order to create all the required Extent Pools in one task, select **Add Another Pool** as many times as required.
- In our example (Figure 13-39), we create, for each storage type, two Extent Pools. Click **OK** to continue.

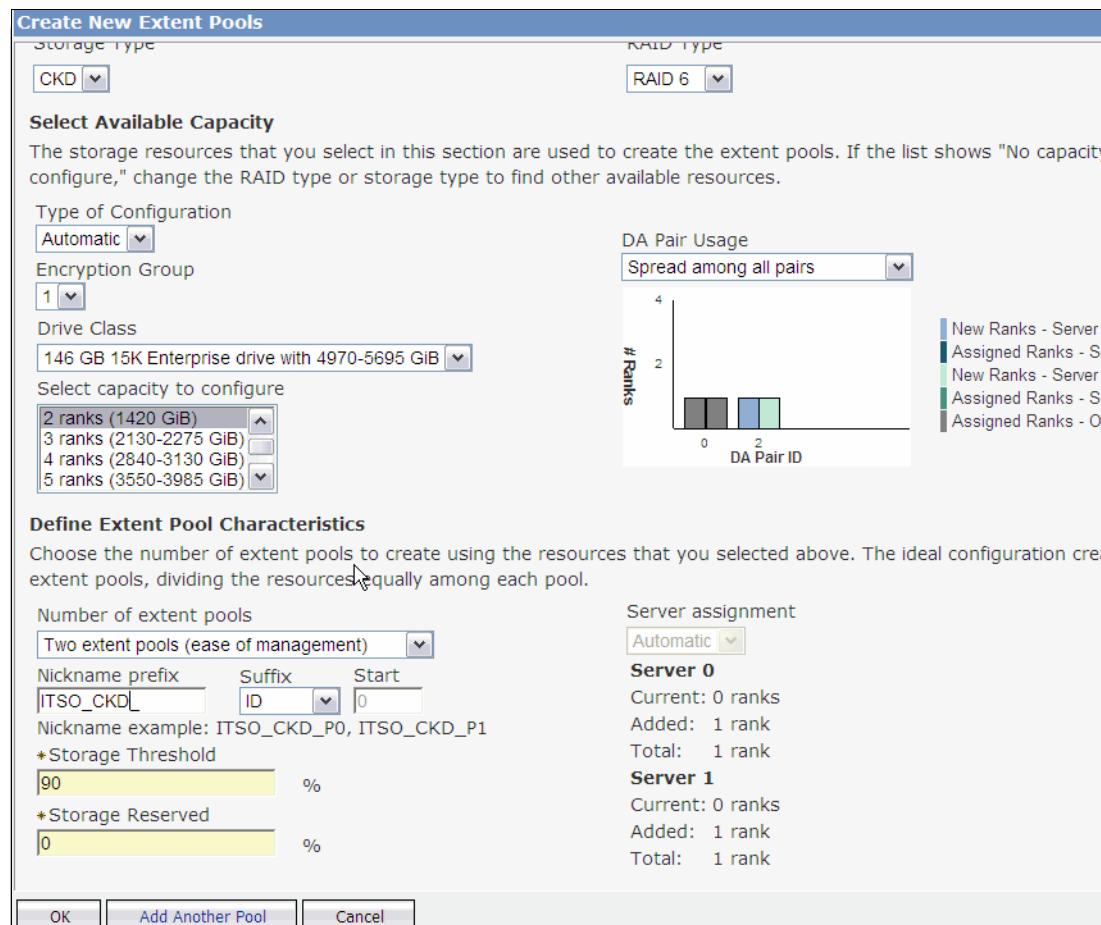


Figure 13-39 Create New Extent Pools for FB and CKD

**Note:** To support Easy Tier in automatic mode in a system equipped with SSDs, you must create hybrid Extent Pools. These are Extent Pools contain both SSD and HDD ranks. For more information about this topic, refer to the *IBM System Storage DS8700 Easy Tier*, REDP-4667.

- The Create Extent Pool verification window opens (Figure 13-40), where you check the names of the Extent Pools that are going to be created, their capacity, server assignments, RAID protection and other information. If you want to add capacity to the Extent Pools or add another Extent Pool, you can do so by selecting the appropriate action from the Select action drop-down list. Once you are satisfied with the specified values, click **Create all** to create the Extent Pools.

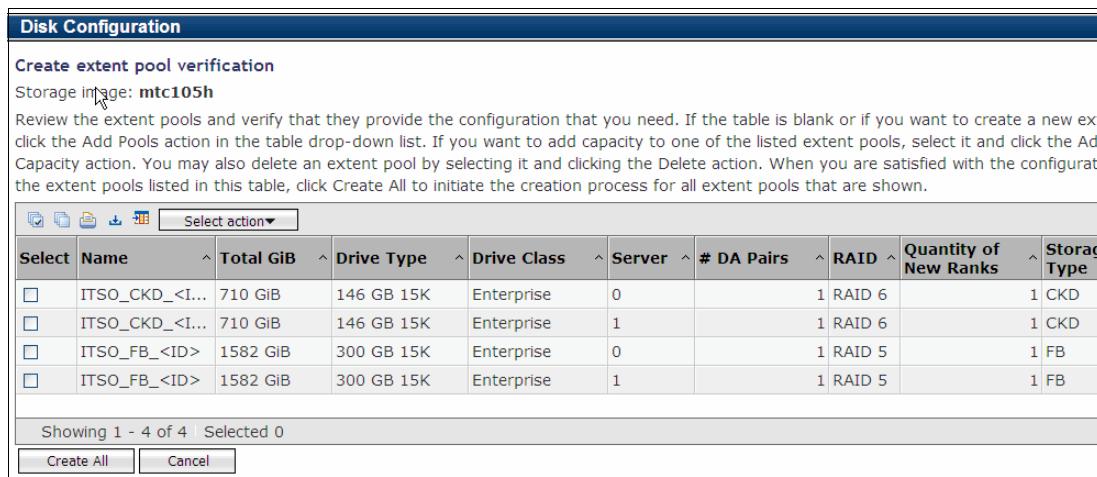


Figure 13-40 Create Extent Pool verification window

- The message shown in Figure 13-41 appears.



Figure 13-41 Creating Extent Pools: In progress message

Click the **View Details** button in order to check the overall progress. It takes you to the Long Running Task Summary window, where you can see all tasks executed on this DS8700 storage subsystem. Click your task link name (which has the In progress state) in order to see the task progress, as shown in Figure 13-42.

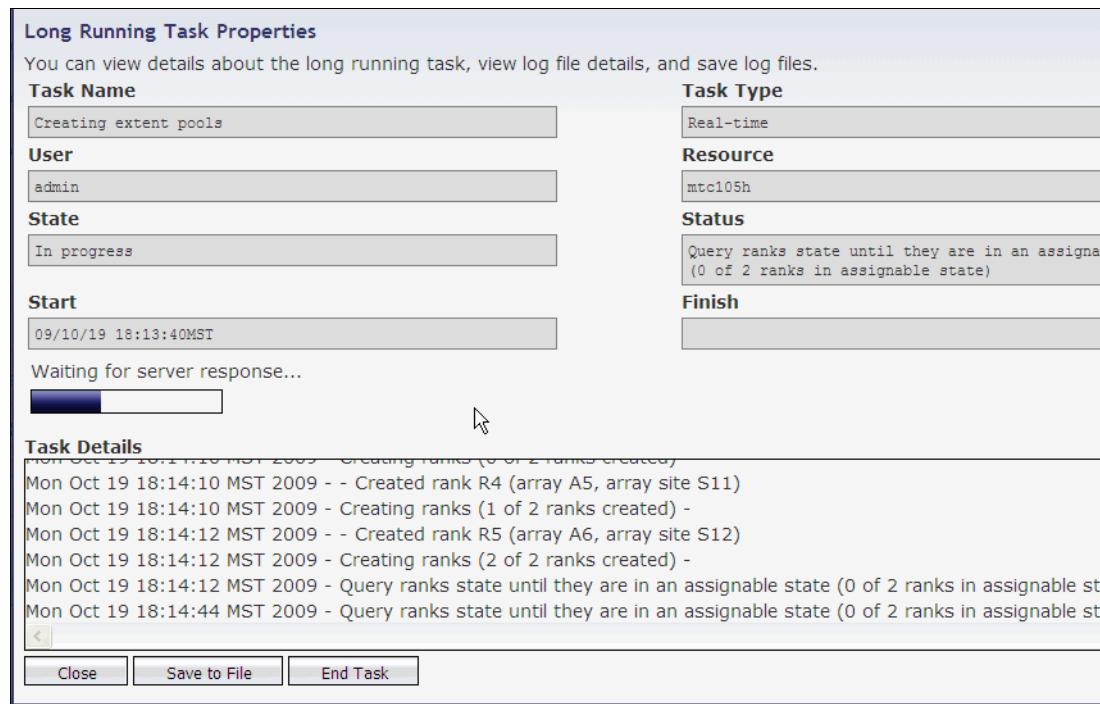


Figure 13-42 Long Running Task Summary: Task properties

- Once the task is completed, go back to Disk Configuration and, under the Extent Pools tab, check the list of newly created ranks (see Figure 13-43).

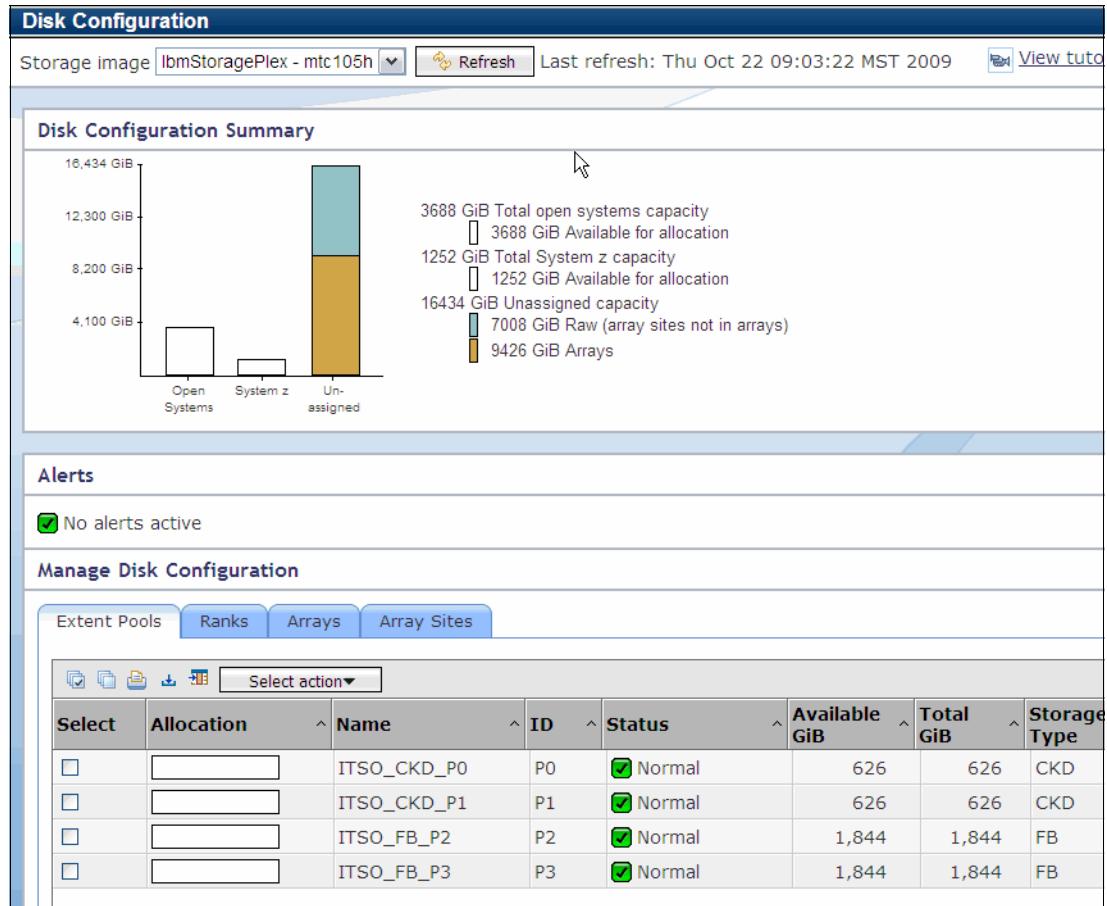


Figure 13-43 List of all created Extent Pools

The bar graph in the Disk Configuration Summary section has changed. There are ranks assigned to Extent Pools and you can create new volumes from each Extent Pool capacity.

7. Before you start allocating space on each Extent Pool, you can check its definitions and verify if all the settings match the ones for your planned logical configuration design. There are many options available from the Select action drop-down menu, such as add or remove capacity to the pool, view Extent Pool or DDM properties, or dynamically merge two Extent Pools, as shown in Figure 13-44. In order to check the Extent Pool properties, select the desired Extent Pool and, from the Select action drop-down menu, click **Properties**.

Select	Allocation	Status	Available GiB	Total GiB	Storage Type	RAID	Server	# Ranks
<input type="checkbox"/>	[Green Bar]	Normal	749	1,549	FB	RAID 6	1	1
<input type="checkbox"/>	[Green Bar]	Normal	254	1,054	FB	RAID 10	0	1
<input type="checkbox"/>	[Green Bar]	Normal	254	1,054	FB	RAID 10	1	1
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	[White Bar]	Normal	4,211	4,461	FB	RAID 5	0	4
<input type="checkbox"/>	[Green Bar]	Normal	4,211	4,461	FB	RAID 5	1	4

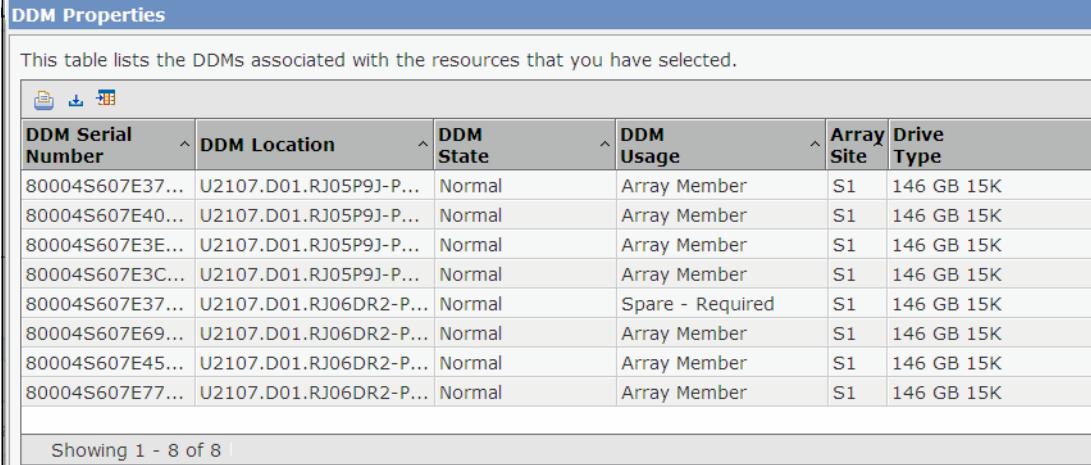
Figure 13-44 Select Extent Pools properties

8. The Single Pool properties window opens (Figure 13-45). Basic Extent Pool information is provided here as well as volume relocation related information. You can, if necessary, change the Extent Pool Name, Storage Threshold, and Storage Reserved values and select **Apply** to commit all the changes.

* Extent Pool Name	ID Number
ITSO_EP08	P8
Total GiB	Server
4,461	0
# Source GiB migrating	# Target GiB migrating
0.0	0.0
Threshold Exceeded	
None	
For the following fields enter a number that represents a percentage of 0 - 100. For the storage threshold, a system message is generated when the specified percentage is reached. System processing is not interrupted.	
* Storage Threshold	* Storage Reserved
85	0

Figure 13-45 Single Pool Properties: General tab

9. For more information about drive types or ranks included in the Extent Pool, select the appropriate tab. Click **OK** to return to the Disk Configuration window.
10. In order to discover more details about the DDMs, select the desired Extent Pool from the Disk Configuration window and, from the Select action drop-down menu, click **DDM Properties**, as shown in Figure 13-46.



The screenshot shows a table titled 'DDM Properties' with the following columns: DDM Serial Number, DDM Location, DDM State, DDM Usage, Array Site, and Drive Type. The table lists 8 entries, all of which are 'Normal' and 'Array Member'. The 'Drive Type' column shows '146 GB 15K' for all entries. The table has a header row with icons for print, download, and refresh. Below the table, a message says 'Showing 1 - 8 of 8'.

DDM Properties						
This table lists the DDMs associated with the resources that you have selected.						
DDM Serial Number	DDM Location	DDM State	DDM Usage	Array Site	Drive Type	
80004S607E37...	U2107.D01.RJ05P9J-P...	Normal	Array Member	S1	146 GB 15K	
80004S607E40...	U2107.D01.RJ05P9J-P...	Normal	Array Member	S1	146 GB 15K	
80004S607E3E...	U2107.D01.RJ05P9J-P...	Normal	Array Member	S1	146 GB 15K	
80004S607E3C...	U2107.D01.RJ05P9J-P...	Normal	Array Member	S1	146 GB 15K	
80004S607E37...	U2107.D01.RJ06DR2-P...	Normal	Spare - Required	S1	146 GB 15K	
80004S607E69...	U2107.D01.RJ06DR2-P...	Normal	Array Member	S1	146 GB 15K	
80004S607E45...	U2107.D01.RJ06DR2-P...	Normal	Array Member	S1	146 GB 15K	
80004S607E77...	U2107.D01.RJ06DR2-P...	Normal	Array Member	S1	146 GB 15K	

Showing 1 - 8 of 8

Figure 13-46 Extent Pool: DDM Properties

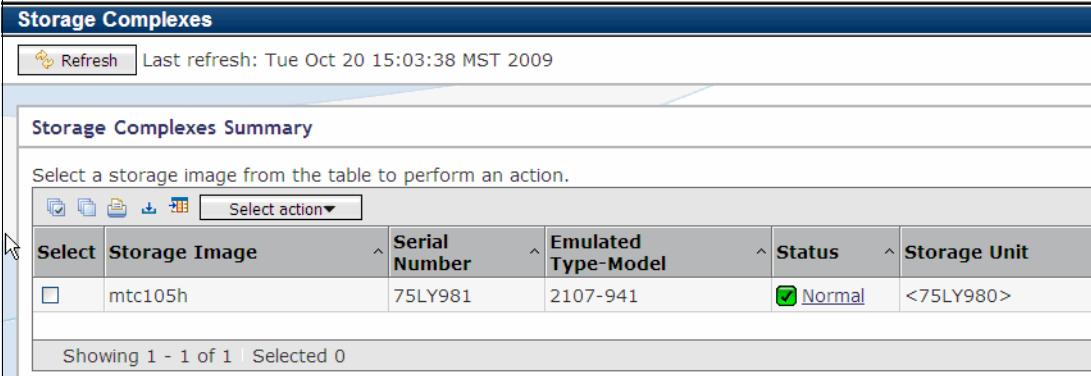
Use the DDM Properties window to view all the DDMs that are associated with the selected Extent Pool and to determine the DDMs state. You can print the table, download it in .csv format, and modify the table view by selecting the appropriate icon at the top of the table.

Click **OK** to return to the Disk Configuration window.

### 13.3.5 Configure I/O ports

Before you can assign host attachments to I/O ports, you must define the format of the I/O ports. There are four FCP/FICON ports on each card, and each port is independently configurable using the following steps:

1. Expand **Manage hardware**.
2. Select **Storage Complexes**. The Storage Complexes Summary window opens, as shown in see Figure 13-47.



The screenshot shows a table titled 'Storage Complexes Summary' with the following columns: Select, Storage Image, Serial Number, Emulated Type-Model, Status, and Storage Unit. The table lists 1 entry, 'mtc105h', with serial number '75LY981', emulated type-model '2107-941', status 'Normal', and storage unit '<75LY980>'. The table has a header row with icons for print, download, and refresh. Below the table, a message says 'Showing 1 - 1 of 1 Selected 0'.

Storage Complexes						
Storage Complexes Summary						
Select a storage image from the table to perform an action.						
Select	Storage Image	Serial Number	Emulated Type-Model	Status	Storage Unit	
<input type="checkbox"/>	mtc105h	75LY981	2107-941	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	<75LY980>	

Showing 1 - 1 of 1 Selected 0

Figure 13-47 Storage Complexes Summary window

3. Select the storage image for which you want to configure the ports and, from the Select action drop-down menu, click **Configure I/O Ports** (under the Storage Image section of the menu).
4. The Configure I/O Port window opens, as shown in Figure 13-48.

Here you select the ports that you want to format and then click the desired port format (FcSF, FC-AL, or FICON) from the Select action drop-down menu.

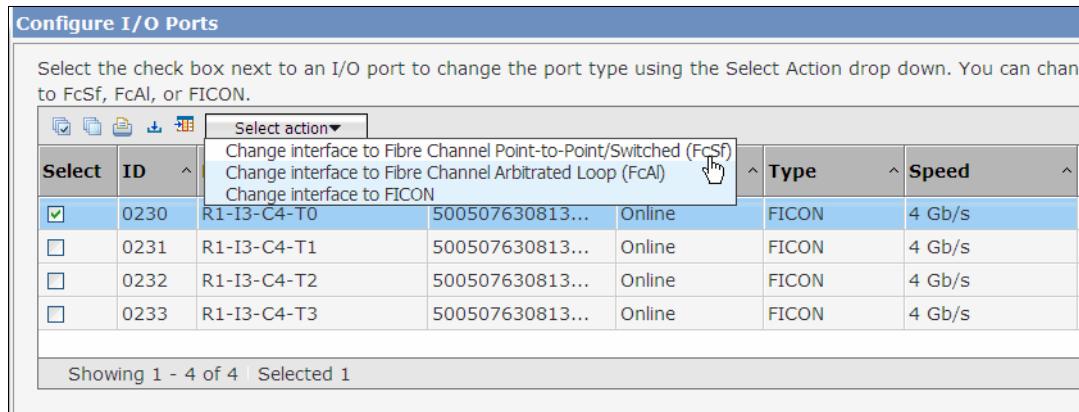


Figure 13-48 Select I/O port format

You get a warning message that the ports might become unusable by the hosts that are currently connected to them.

5. You can repeat this step to format all ports to their required function. Multiple port selection is supported.

### 13.3.6 Configure logical host systems

In this section, we show you how to configure host systems. This applies only for open systems hosts. A default FICON host definition is automatically created after you define an I/O port to be a FICON port.

To create a new host system, do the following:

1. Expand **Manage hardware**.

2. Select **Host Connections**. The Host systems window displays, as shown in Figure 13-49.

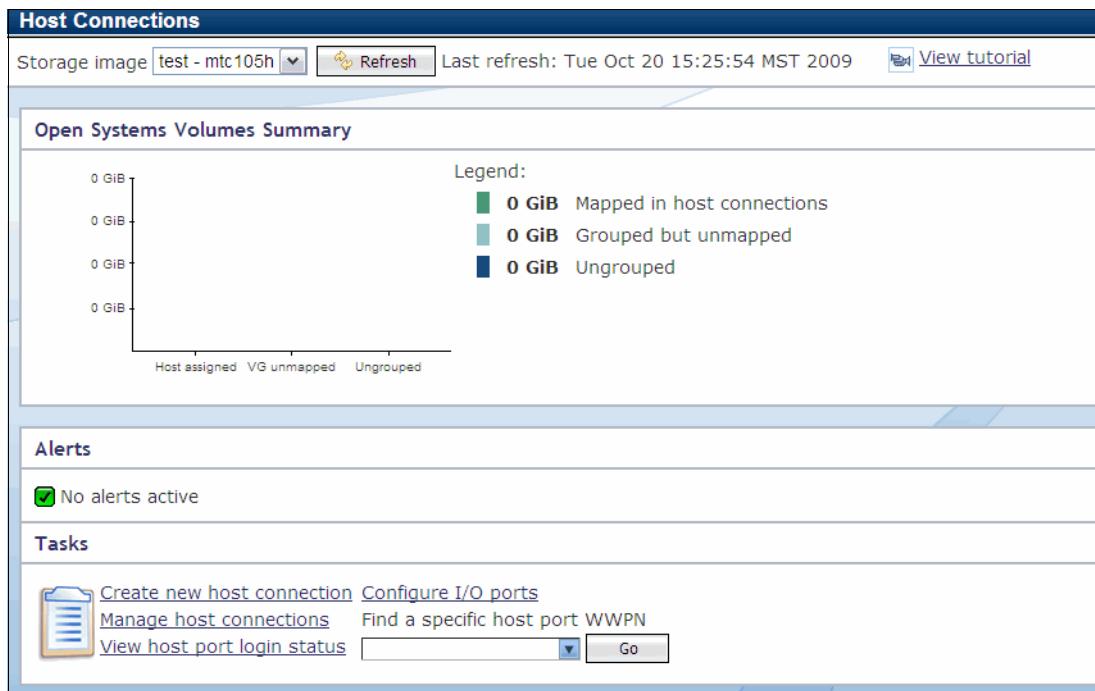


Figure 13-49 Host Connections summary

In our example, we do not have any host connections defined yet. Under the Tasks section, there are shortcut links for different actions. If you want to modify the I/O port configuration previously defined, you can click the **Configure I/O ports** link.

**Tip:** You can use the **View host port login status** link to query the host that is logged into the system or use this window to debug host access and switch configuration issues.

If you have more than one storage image, you have to select the right one and then, to create a new host, select the **Create new host connection** link in the Tasks section.

- The resulting windows guide you through the host configuration, beginning with the window in Figure 13-50.

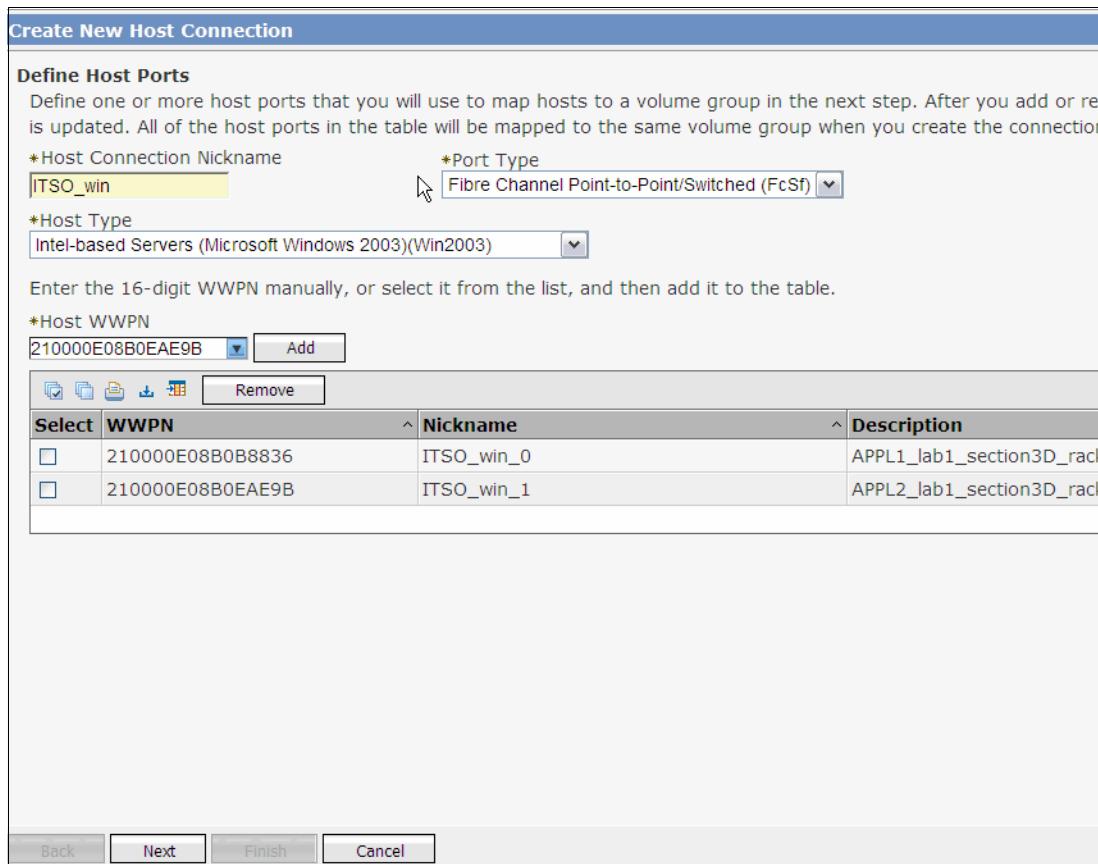


Figure 13-50 Define Host Ports window

In the General host information window, enter the following information:

- Host Connection Nickname: Name of the host.
- Port Type: You must specify whether the host is attached over an *FC Switch fabric (P-P)* or direct *FC arbitrated loop* to the DS8700.
- Host Type: In our example, we create a Windows host. The drop-down menu gives you a list of host types from which to select.
- Enter the Host WWPN numbers of the host or select the WWPN from the drop-down menu and click the **Add** button next to it.

Once the host entry is added into the table, you can manually add a description of each host. When you have entered the necessary information, click **Next**.

- The Map Host Ports to a Volume Group window appears, as shown in Figure 13-51 on page 334. In this window, you can choose the following options:
  - Select the option **Map at a later time** to create a host connection without mapping host ports to a volume group.
  - Select the option **Map to a new volume group** to create a new volume group to use in this host connection.

- Select the option **Map to an existing volume group** to map to a volume group that is already defined. Choose an existing volume group from the menu. Only volume groups that are compatible with the host type that you selected from the previous window are displayed.

In our example, we have only first two options available, because we have not created any volume groups on this machine. Therefore, we will map to a new volume group.

Click **Next** once you select the appropriate option.

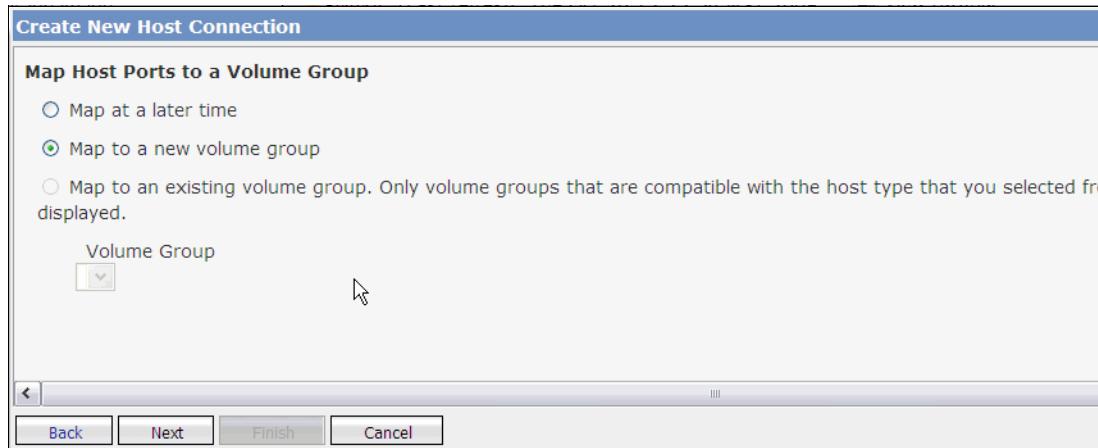


Figure 13-51 Map Host Ports to a Volume Group window

The Define I/O Ports window opens, as shown in Figure 13-52.

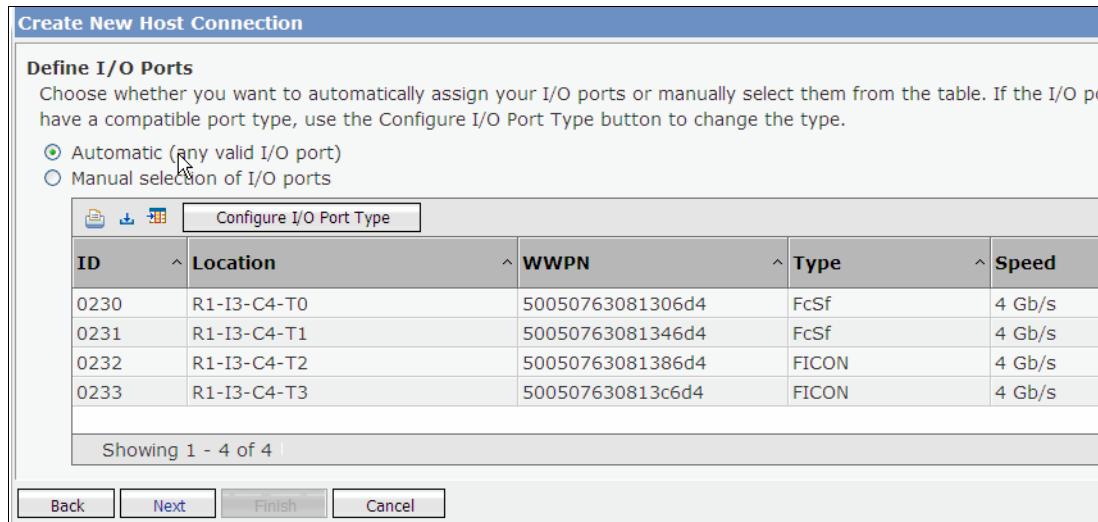


Figure 13-52 Define I/O Ports window

- From the Define I/O ports window, you can choose if you want to automatically assign your I/O ports or manually select them from the table. Defining I/O ports determines which I/O ports can be used by the host ports in this host connection. If specific I/O ports are chosen, then the host ports are only able to access the volume group on those specific I/O ports. After defining I/O ports, selecting the **Next** button directs you to the verification window where you can approve your choices before you commit them.

The Verification window opens, as shown in Figure 13-53.

Nickname	WWPN
ITSO_win_0	210000E08B0B8836
ITSO_win_1	210000E08B0EA9B

Nickname	# Volumes	Capacity
ITSO_win(VG)	0	0.0

Figure 13-53 Verification window

- In the Verification window, check the information that you entered during the process. If you want to make modifications, select **Back**, or you can cancel the process. After you have verified the information, click **Finish** to create the host system. This action takes you back to the Host Connection window and Manage Host Connections table, where you can see the list of all created host connections.

If you need to make changes to a host system definition, select your host in the Manage Host Connections table and choose appropriate the action from the drop-down menu, as shown in Figure 13-54.

**Note:** Be aware that you have other selection possibilities. We show only one way here.

Select	Nickname	Host Type	# Host Ports	Volume Groups
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ITSO_win	in	Win2003	2 ITSO_win(VG)

Showing 1 - 1 of 1 | Selected 1

Host Ports defined   Volume Groups accessed   I/O Ports used

The following volume groups can be accessed by all the host ports in the selected host connection. This host connected 1 volume groups through <Any> I/O ports. Select a volume group to perform an action.

Select	Nickname	ID	Status	# Volumes	C
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO_win(VG)	0	Normal	0	0

Showing 1 - 1 of 1 | Selected 0

Figure 13-54 Modify host connections

### 13.3.7 Create fixed block volumes

This section explains the creation of fixed block (FB) volumes:

1. Expand **Configure Storage**.

2. Select **Open Systems Volumes** to open the Open Systems Storage Summary window shown in Figure 13-55.

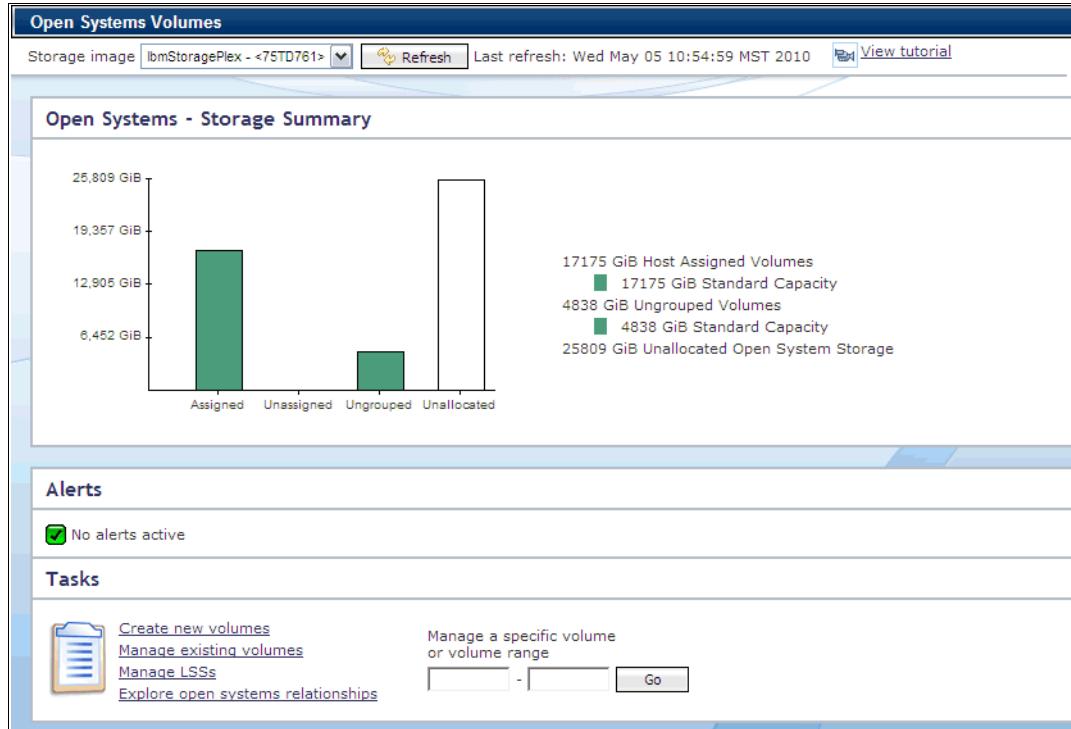


Figure 13-55 Open Systems Volumes window

3. If you have more than one storage image, you have to select the appropriate one.

In the Tasks pane at the bottom of the window, click **Create new volumes**. The Create Volumes window shown in Figure 13-56 appears.

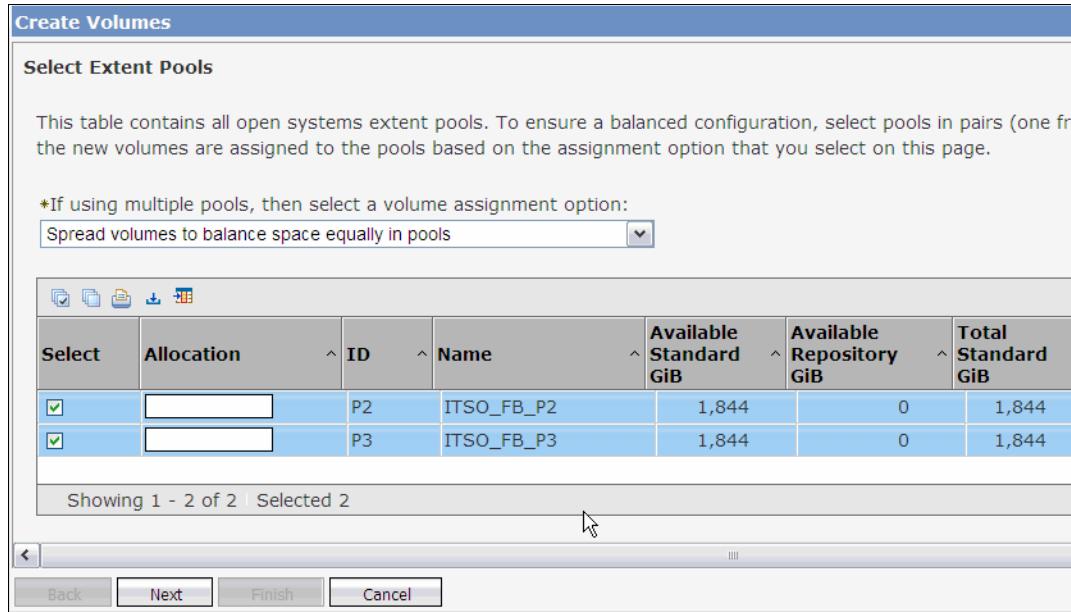


Figure 13-56 Create Volumes: Select Extent Pools

- The table in Create Volumes window contains all the Extent Pools that were previously created for the FB storage type. To ensure a balanced configuration, select Extent Pools in pairs (one from each server). If you select multiple pools, the new volumes are assigned to the pools based on the assignment option that you select on this window.

Click **Next** to continue. The Define Volume Characteristics window appears, as shown in Figure 13-57.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Volumes' dialog box with the following details:

- Define Volume Characteristics** section:
  - Available capacity: 3,688 GiB Projected remaining capacity: 2,688 GiB
  - \*Volume type: Open Systems - DS (selected)
  - \*Size (GiB=2^30): 100
  - \*Volume quantity: 10
  - \*Storage allocation method: Standard
  - \*Extent allocation method: Rotate Extents
- Optionally Choose Nickname** section:
  - Nickname prefix: ITSO
  - Nickname suffix: Volume ID
  - Start: (empty field)
  - Hexadecimal sequence: checked
- Nickname example:** ITSO01AB, ITSO01AC
- Optionally Assign Volume Groups** section:
  - To assign the new volume to a volume group, select one or more volume groups and click OK. To add another volume to the table, select the Create Volume Group action from the drop down.

Select	Nickname	ID	Status	# Volumes	# Host Connections
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ITSO_win(VG)	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	0	1
- Buttons at the bottom: OK, Add Another, Cancel.

Figure 13-57 Add Volumes: Define Volume Characteristics

- Select the Volume type, Size, Volume quantity, Storage allocation method, Extent allocation method, Nickname prefix, Nickname suffix, and one or more volume groups (if you want to add this new volume to a previously created volume group).

When your selections are complete, click **Add Another** if you want to create more volumes with different characteristics or click **OK** to continue. The Create Volumes window opens, as shown in Figure 13-58 on page 339.

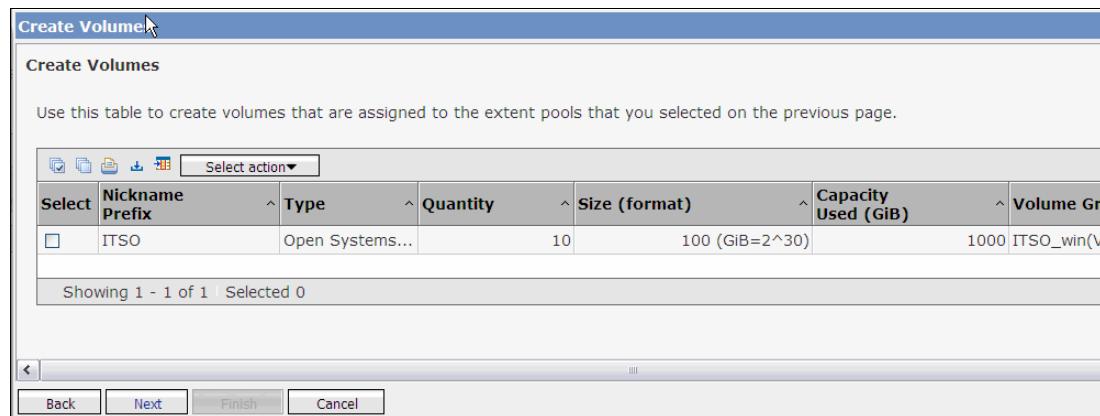


Figure 13-58 Create Volumes window

6. If you need to make any further modifications to the volumes in the table, select the volumes you are about to modify and choose the appropriate action from the Select action drop-down menu. Otherwise, click **Next** to continue the process.
7. We need to select LSS for all created volumes. In our example, we select the **Automatic** assignment method, where the system assigns five volumes addresses to LSS 00 and five volumes addresses to LSS 01 (see Figure 13-59).

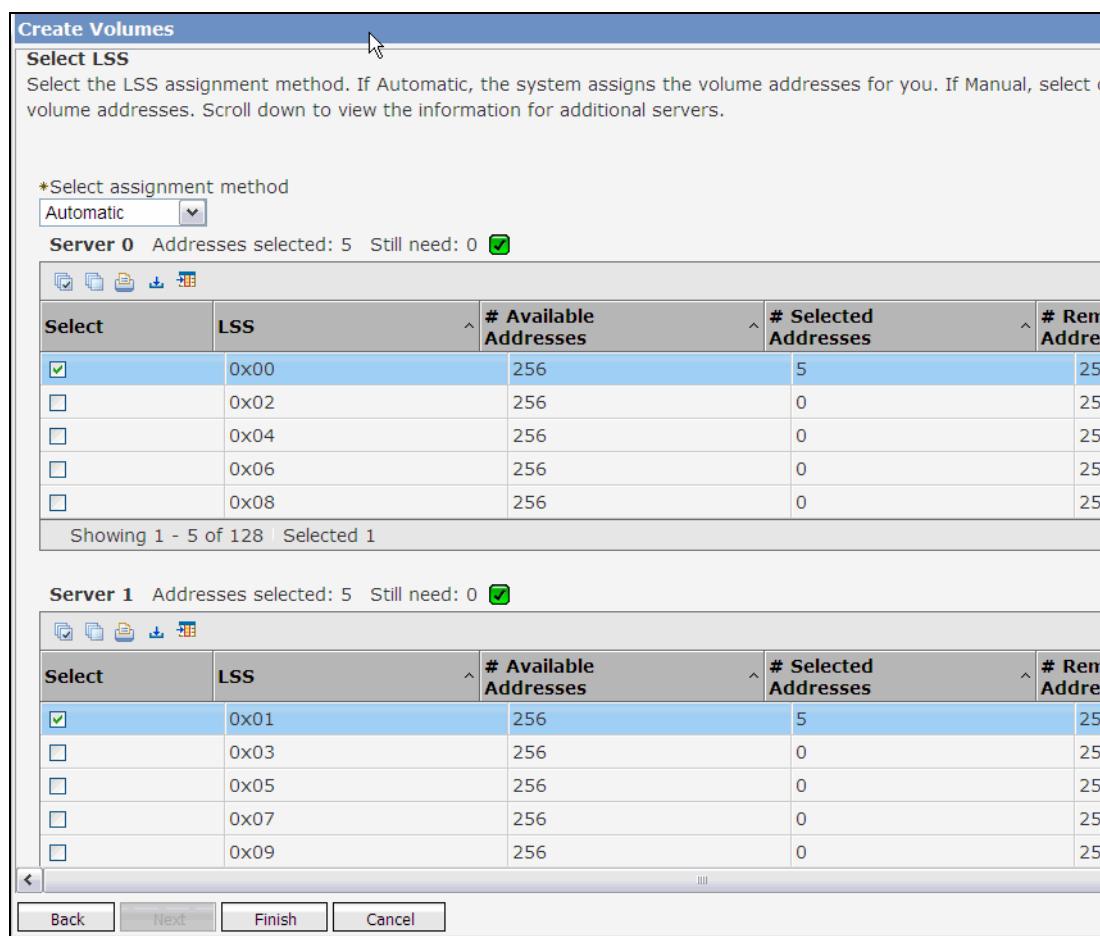


Figure 13-59 Select LSS

- Click **Finish** to continue.
- The Create Volumes Verification window shown in Figure 13-60 opens, listing all the volumes that are going to be created. If you want to add more volumes or modify the existing volumes, you can do so by selecting the appropriate action from the Select action drop-down list. Once you are satisfied with the specified values, click **Create all** to create the volumes.

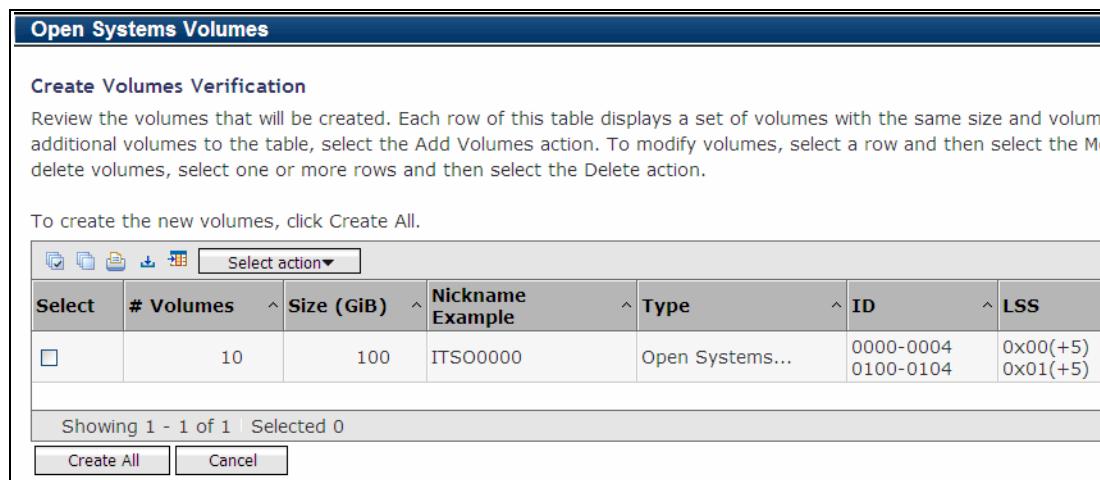


Figure 13-60 Create Volumes Verification window

- The Creating Volumes information window opens. Depending on the number of volumes, the process can take a while to complete. Optionally, click the **View Details** button in order to check the overall progress. It takes you to the Long Running Task Properties window, where you can see the task progress.
- Once the creation is complete, a final window opens. You can select **View detail** or **Close**. If you click **Close**, you return to the main Open system Volumes window, as shown in Figure 13-61.

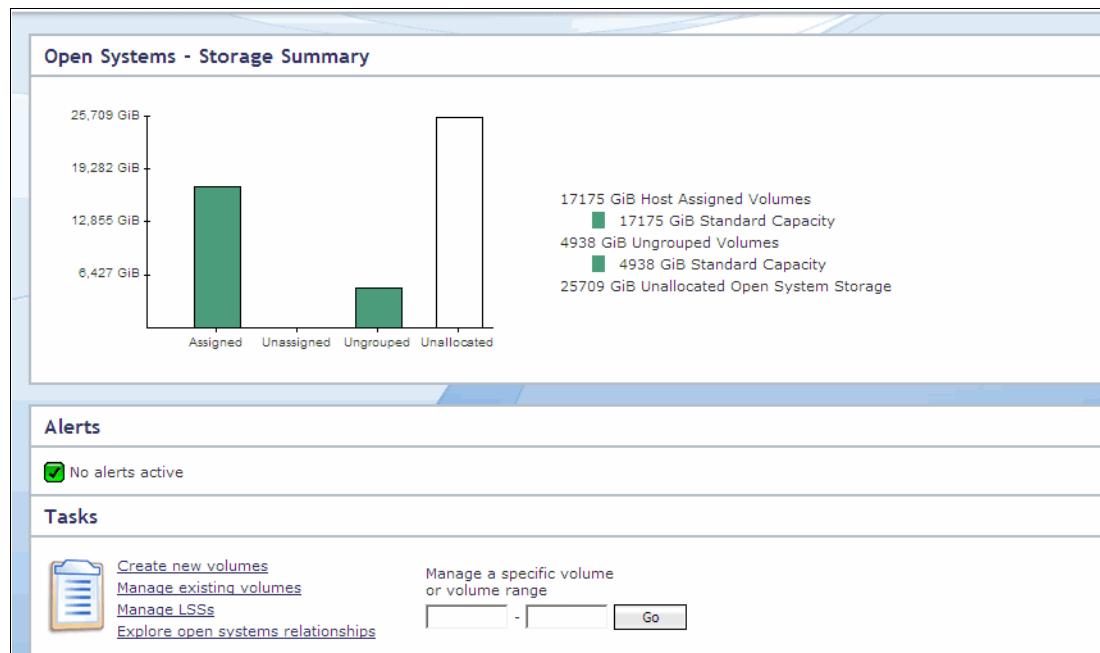
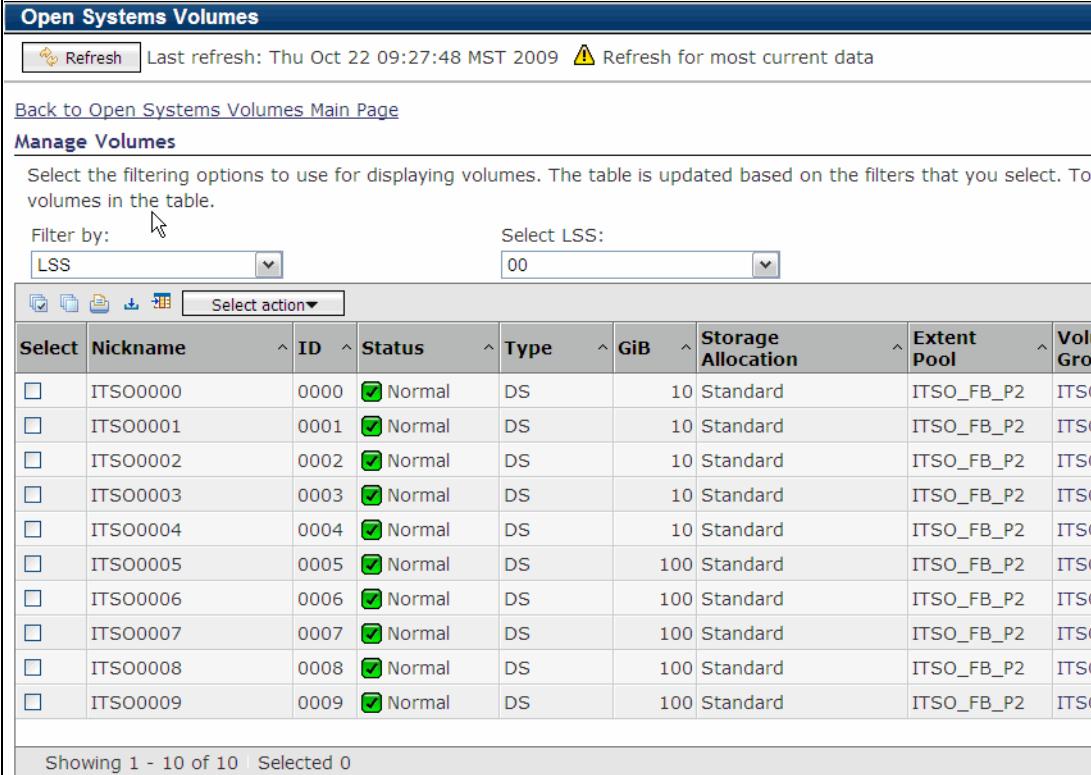


Figure 13-61 Open Systems Volumes: Summary

12. The bar graph in the Open Systems - Storage Summary section has changed. From there, you can now select other actions, such as **Manage existing Volumes**. The Manage Volumes window is shown in Figure 13-62.



The screenshot shows the 'Open Systems Volumes: Manage Volumes' window. At the top, there are refresh buttons and a message about the last refresh. Below that is a link to the main page and a 'Manage Volumes' section with a note about filtering options. A cursor points to the 'Filter by:' dropdown menu, which is currently set to 'LSS'. To its right is a 'Select LSS:' dropdown menu set to '00'. Below these are two rows of icons: a row with checkboxes and a row with a 'Select action▼' dropdown menu containing 'Select', 'Create', 'Edit', 'Delete', and 'Details'. The main area is a table listing 10 volumes, each with columns for Select, Nickname, ID, Status, Type, GiB, Storage Allocation, Extent Pool, and Volume Group. All volumes listed are 'Normal' type, DS, with 10 GiB allocation and Standard extent pool. The table footer indicates 'Showing 1 - 10 of 10 | Selected 0'.

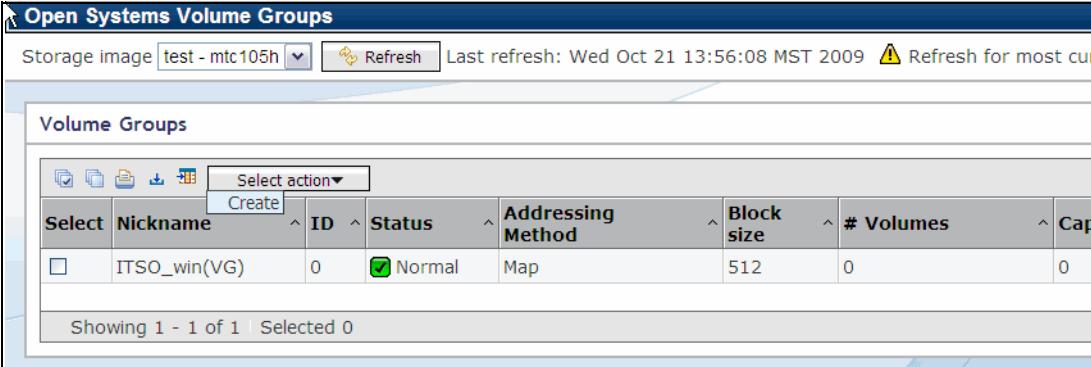
Select	Nickname	ID	Status	Type	GiB	Storage Allocation	Extent Pool	Volume Group
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO0000	0000	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	DS	10	Standard	ITSO_FB_P2	ITSO
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO0001	0001	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	DS	10	Standard	ITSO_FB_P2	ITSO
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO0002	0002	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	DS	10	Standard	ITSO_FB_P2	ITSO
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO0003	0003	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	DS	10	Standard	ITSO_FB_P2	ITSO
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO0004	0004	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	DS	10	Standard	ITSO_FB_P2	ITSO
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO0005	0005	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	DS	100	Standard	ITSO_FB_P2	ITSO
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO0006	0006	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	DS	100	Standard	ITSO_FB_P2	ITSO
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO0007	0007	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	DS	100	Standard	ITSO_FB_P2	ITSO
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO0008	0008	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	DS	100	Standard	ITSO_FB_P2	ITSO
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO0009	0009	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	DS	100	Standard	ITSO_FB_P2	ITSO

Figure 13-62 Open Systems Volumes: Manage Volumes

### 13.3.8 Create volume groups

To create a volume group, perform this procedure:

1. Expand **Configure Storage**.
2. Select **Open Systems Volume Groups**.
3. To create a new volume group, select **Create** from the Select action drop-down menu, as shown in Figure 13-63.



The screenshot shows the 'Open Systems Volume Groups' window. At the top, there are storage image and refresh buttons, along with a message about the last refresh. Below that is a 'Volume Groups' section with a 'Select action▼' dropdown menu where 'Create' is highlighted. The main area is a table listing one volume group, with columns for Select, Nickname, ID, Status, Addressing Method, Block size, # Volumes, and Capacity. The volume group 'ITSO\_win(VG)' is listed with ID 0, Normal status, Map addressing method, 512 block size, 0 volumes, and 0 capacity. The table footer indicates 'Showing 1 - 1 of 1 | Selected 0'.

Select	Nickname	ID	Status	Addressing Method	Block size	# Volumes	Capacity
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO_win(VG)	0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	Map	512	0	0

Figure 13-63 Open Systems Volume Groups window: Select Create

The Define Volume Group Properties window shown in Figure 13-64 opens.

Select	Nickname	ID	Storage Allocation	GiB	GB	Extent Pool
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ITSO_0000	0000	Standard	10.0	10.7	ITSO_FB_P2
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ITSO_0001	0001	Standard	10.0	10.7	ITSO_FB_P2
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO_0002	0002	Standard	10.0	10.7	ITSO_FB_P2
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO_0003	0003	Standard	10.0	10.7	ITSO_FB_P2
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO_0004	0004	Standard	10.0	10.7	ITSO_FB_P2
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO_0005	0005	Standard	100.0	107.4	ITSO_FB_P2
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO_0006	0006	Standard	100.0	107.4	ITSO_FB_P2
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO_0007	0007	Standard	100.0	107.4	ITSO_FB_P2
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO_0008	0008	Standard	100.0	107.4	ITSO_FB_P2
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO_0009	0009	Standard	100.0	107.4	ITSO_FB_P2

Showing 1 - 10 of 20 | Selected 2

Back Next Finish Cancel

Figure 13-64 Create Volume Group Properties window

- In the Define Volume Group Properties window, enter the nickname for the volume group and select the host type from which you want to access the volume group. If you select one host (for example, IBM System p), all other host types with the same addressing method are automatically selected. This does not affect the functionality of the volume group; it supports the host type selected.
- Select the volumes to include in the volume group. If you have to select a large number of volumes, you can specify the LSS so that only these volumes display in the list, and then you can select all.
- Click **Next** to open the Verification window shown in Figure 13-65.

Attribute	Value
Nickname	ITSO_VG
Accessed by host types	IBM pSeries, RS/6000 and RS/6000 SP Servers (AIX)
Volume quantity	2
Selected capacity (GiB/GB)	20.0 GiB/ 21.5 GB

Showing 1 - 4 of 4

Figure 13-65 Create New Volume Group Verification window

- In the Verification window, check the information you entered during the process. If you want to make modifications, select **Back**, or you can cancel the process altogether. After you verify the information, click **Finish** to create the host system attachment. After the creation completes, a last window appears, where you can select **View detail** or **Close**.
- After you select **Close**, you will see the new volume group in the Volume Group window.

### 13.3.9 Create LCUs and CKD volumes

In this section, we show how to create logical control units (LCUs) and CKD volumes. This is only necessary for IBM System z.

**Important:** The LCUs you create must match the logical control unit definitions on the host I/O configuration. More precisely, each LCU ID number you select during the create process must correspond to a CNTLUNIT definition in the HCD/IOCP with the same CUADD number. It is vital that the two configurations match each other.

Perform the following steps:

- Select **Configure Storage → System z Volumes and LCUs** in the My Work task list. The System z Storage Summary window shown in Figure 13-66 opens.

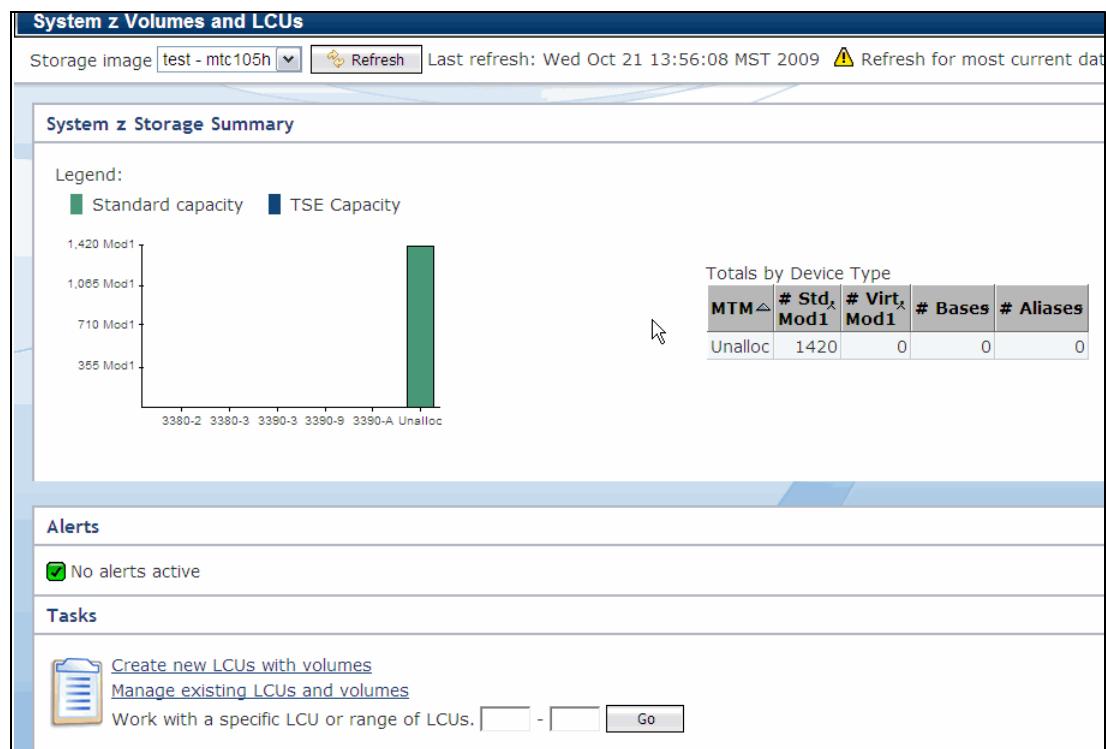


Figure 13-66 System z Volumes and LCUs window

- Select a storage image from the Select storage image drop-down menu if you have more than one. The window is refreshed to show the LCUs in the storage image.

3. To create new LCUs, select **Create new LCUs with volumes** from the tasks list.

The Define LCUs (Figure 13-67) window opens.

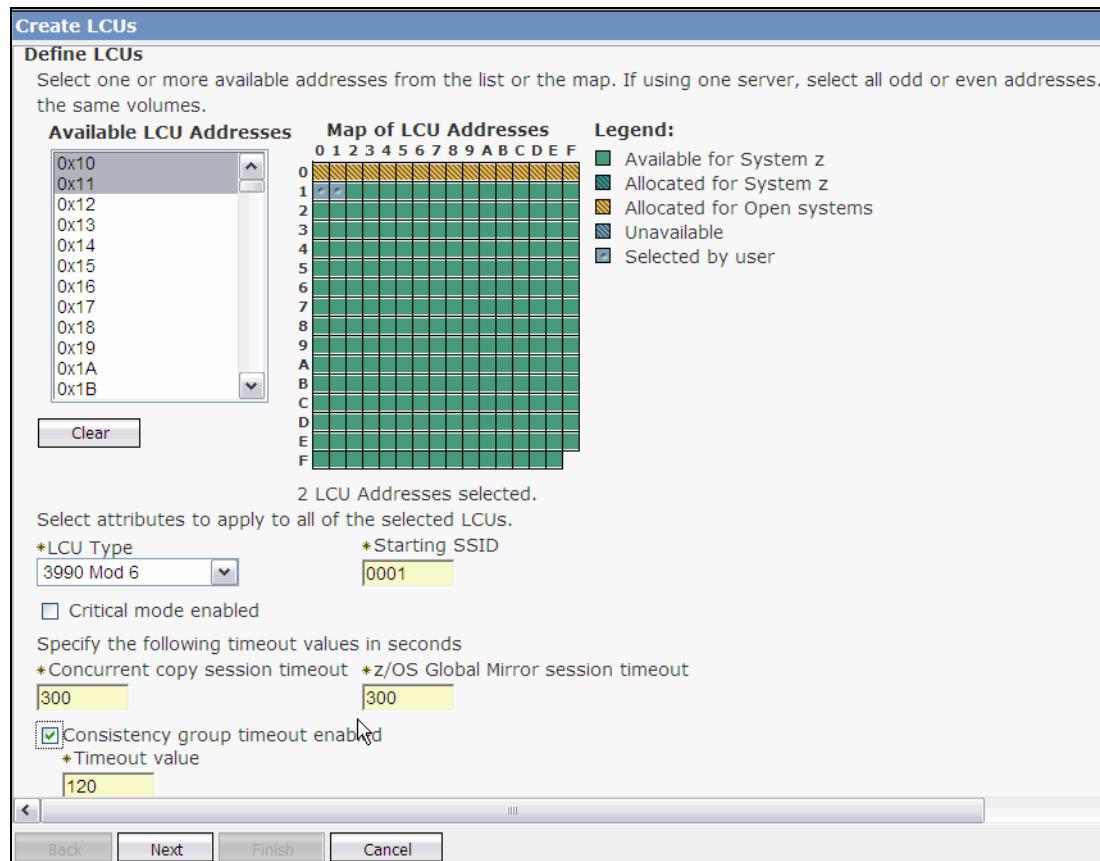


Figure 13-67 Create LCUs window

4. Select the LCUs you want to create. You can select them from the list displayed on the left by clicking the number, or you can use the map. When using the map, click the available LCU square. You have to enter all the other necessary parameters for the selected LCUs.

- Starting SSID: Enter a Subsystem ID (SSID) for the LCU. The SSID is a four character hexadecimal number. If you create multiple LCUs at one time, the SSID number is incremented by one for each LCU. The LCUs attached to the same operating system image must have different SSIDs. We recommend that you use unique SSID numbers across your whole environment.
- LCU type: Select the LCU type you want to create. Select 3990 Mod 6 unless your operating system does not support Mod 6. The options are:
  - 3990 Mod 3
  - 3990 Mod 3 for TPF
  - 3990 Mod 6

The following parameters affect the operation of certain Copy Services functions:

- Concurrent copy session timeout: The time in seconds that any logical device on this LCU in a concurrent copy session stays in a long busy state before suspending a concurrent copy session.

- z/OS Global Mirror Session timeout: The time in seconds that any logical device in a z/OS Global Mirror session (XRC session) stays in long busy before suspending the XRC session. The long busy occurs because the data mover has not offloaded data when the logical device (or XRC session) is no longer able to accept additional data.
- With recent enhancements to z/OS Global Mirror, there is now an option to suspend the z/OS Global Mirror session instead of presenting the long busy status to the applications.
- Consistency group timeout: The time in seconds that remote mirror and copy consistency group volumes on this LCU stay extended long busy after an error that causes a consistency group volume to suspend. While in the extended long busy state, I/O is prevented from updating the volume.
  - Consistency group timeout enabled: Check the box to enable remote mirror and copy consistency group timeout option on the LCU.
  - Critical mode enabled: Check the box to enable critical heavy mode. Critical heavy mode controls the behavior of the remote copy and mirror pairs that have a primary logical volume on this LCU.

When all necessary selections have been made, click **Next** to proceed to the next window.

5. In the next window (Figure 13-68), you must configure your base volumes and, optionally, assign alias volumes. The Parallel Access Volume (PAV) license function should be activated in order to use alias volumes.

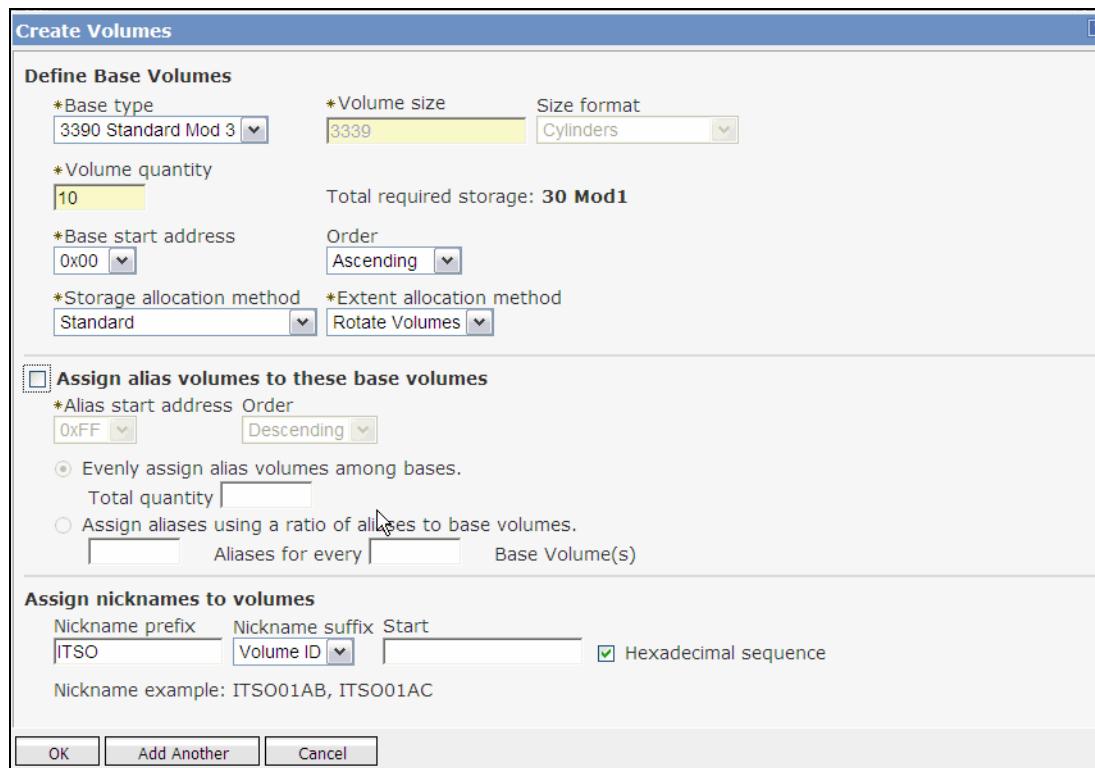


Figure 13-68 Create Volumes window

Define the base volume characteristics in the first third of this window with the following information:

- Base type:
  - 3380 Mod 2
  - 3380 Mod 3
  - 3390 Custom
  - 3390 Standard Mod 3
  - 3390 Standard Mod 9
  - 3390 Mod A (used for Extended Address Volumes - EAV)
- Volume size: This field must be changed if you use the volume type 3390 Custom or 3390 Mode A.
- Size format: This format only has to be changed if you want to enter a special number of cylinders. This can also only be used by 3390 Custom or 3390 Mode A volume types.
- Volume quantity: Here you must enter the number of volumes you want to create.
- Base start address: The starting address of volumes you are about to create. Specify a decimal number in the range of 0 - 255. This defaults to the value specified in the Address Allocation Policy definition.
- Order: Select the address allocation order for the base volumes. The volume addresses are allocated sequentially, starting from the base start address in the selected order. If an address is already allocated, the next free address is used.
- Storage allocation method: This field only appear on boxes that have the FlashCopy SE function activated. The options are:
  - Standard: Allocate standard volumes.
  - Track Space Efficient (TSE): Allocate Space Efficient volumes to be used as FlashCopy SE target volumes.
- Extent allocation method: Defines how volume extents are allocated on the ranks in the Extent Pool. This field is not applicable for TSE volumes. The options are:
  - Rotate volumes: All extents of a volume are allocated on the rank that contains most free extents. If the volume does not fit on any one rank, it can span multiple ranks in the Extent Pool.
  - Rotate extents: The extents of a volume are allocated on all ranks in the Extent Pool in a round-robin fashion. This function is called Storage Pool Striping. This allocation method can improve performance because the volume is allocated on multiple ranks. It also helps to avoid hotspots by spreading the workload more evenly on the ranks. This is the preferred allocation method.

Select **Assign the alias volume to these base volumes** if you us PAV or Hyper PAV and provide the following information:

- Alias start address: Enter the first alias address as a decimal number between 0 - 255.
- Order: Select the address allocation order for the alias volumes. The volume addresses are allocated sequentially starting from the alias start address in the selected order.
- Evenly assign alias volumes among bases: When you select this option, you have to enter the number of alias you want to assign to each base volume.

- Assign aliases using a ratio of aliases to base volume: This option gives you the ability to assign alias volumes using a ratio of alias volumes to base volumes. The first value gives the number you assign to each alias volume and the second value selects to which alias volume you want to assign an alias. If you select 1, each base volume will get a alias volume. If you select 2, every second base volume gets an alias volume. If you select 3, every third base volume gets an alias volume. The selection starts always with the first volume.

**Note:** You can assign all aliases in the LCU to just one base volume if you have implemented HyperPAV or Dynamic alias management. With HyperPAV, the alias devices are not permanently assigned to any base volume even though you initially assign each to a certain base volume. Rather, they reside in a common pool and are assigned to base volumes as needed on a per I/O basis. With Dynamic alias management, WLM will eventually move the aliases from the initial base volume to other volumes as needed.

If your host system is using Static alias management, you need to assign aliases to all base volumes on this window, because the alias assignments made here are permanent in nature. To change the assignments later, you have to delete and re-create aliases.

In the last section of this window, you can optionally assign the alias nicknames for your volumes:

- Nickname prefix: If you select a nickname suffix of **None**, you must enter a nickname prefix in this field. Blanks are not allowed. If you select a nickname suffix of **Volume ID** or **Custom**, you can leave this field blank.
- Nickname suffix: You can select **None** as described above. If you select **Volume ID**, you have to enter a four character volume ID for the suffix, and if you select **Custom**, you have to enter four digit hexadecimal number or a five digit decimal number for the suffix.
- Start: If you select Hexadecimal sequence, you have to enter a number in this field.

**Note:** The nickname is not the System z VOLSER of the volume. The VOLSER is created later when the volume is initialized by the ICKDSF INIT command.

Click **OK** to proceed. The Create Volumes window shown in Figure 13-69 appears.

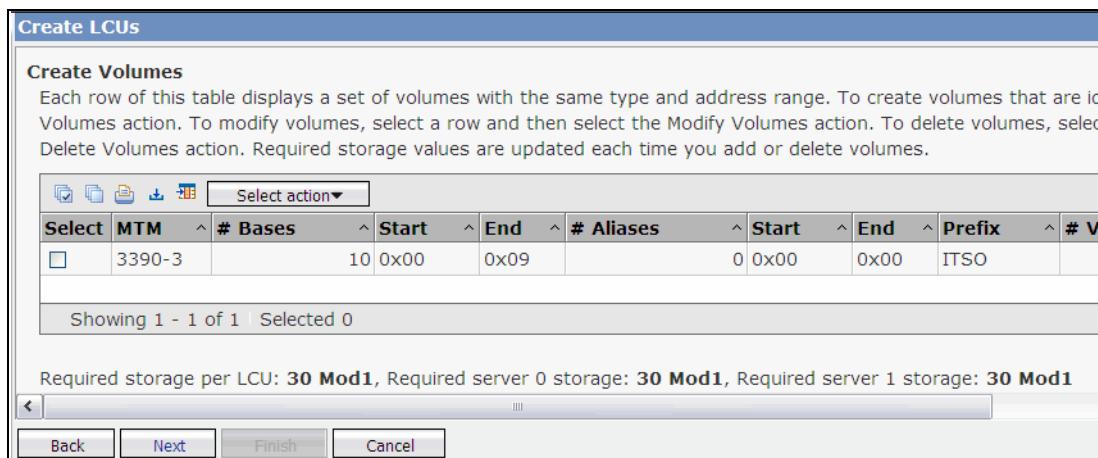


Figure 13-69 Create Volumes window

- In the Create Volumes window (Figure 13-69 on page 347), you can select the just created volumes in order to modify or delete them. You also can create more volumes if this is necessary at the time. Select **Next** if you do not need to create more volumes at this time.
- In the next window (Figure 13-70), you can change the Extent Pool assignment to your LCU. Select **Finish** if you do not want to make any changes here.

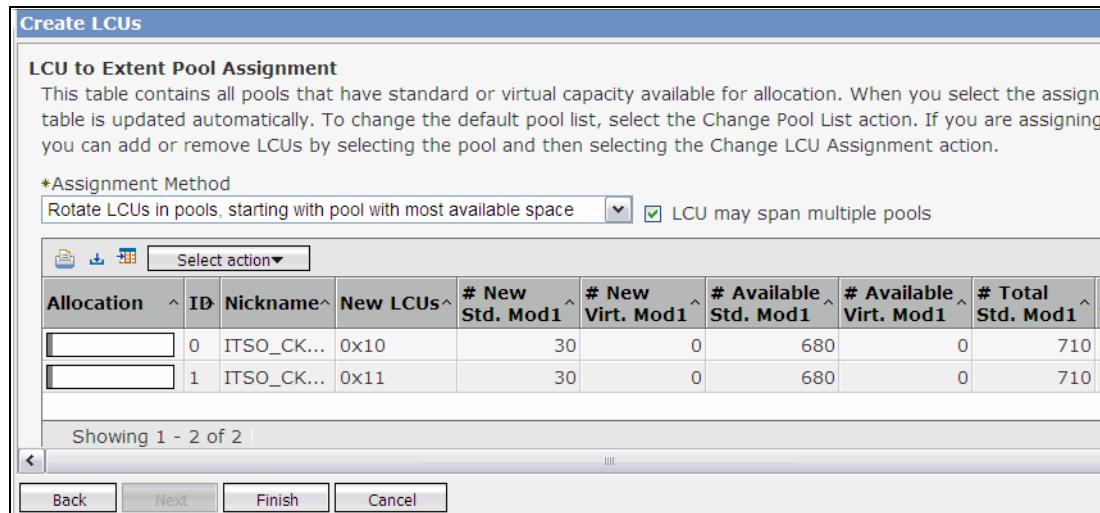


Figure 13-70 LCU to Extent Pool Assignment window

- The Create LCUs Verification window appears, as shown in Figure 13-71, where you can see list of all the volumes that are going to be created. If you want to add more volumes or modify the existing ones, you can do so by selecting the appropriate action from the Select action drop-down list. Once you are satisfied with the specified values, click **Create all** to create the volumes.

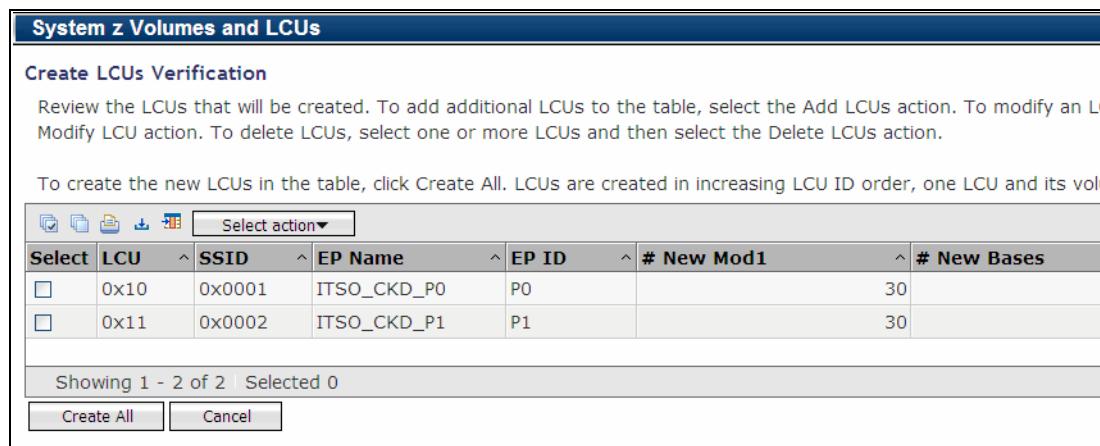


Figure 13-71 Create LCUs Verification window

- The Creating Volumes information window opens. Depending on the number of volumes, the process can take a while to complete. Optionally, click the **View Details** button in order to check the overall progress. This action takes you to the Long Running Task Properties window, where you can see the task progress.

10. Once the creation is complete, a final window is displayed. You can select **View detail** or **Close**. If you click **Close**, you are returned to the main Open system Volumes window, as shown in Figure 13-72.

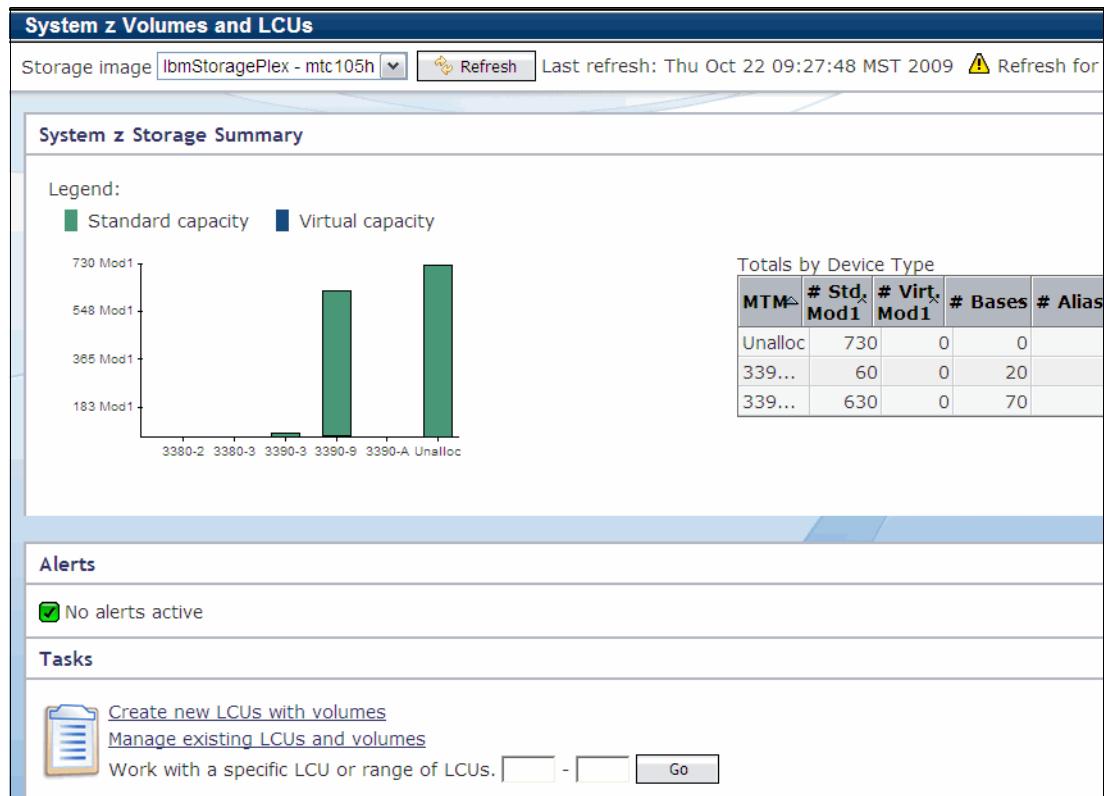


Figure 13-72 System z Volumes and LCUs: Summary

The bar graph in the System z Storage Summary section has changed.

### 13.3.10 Additional actions on LCUs and CKD volumes

When you select **Manage existing LCUs and Volumes** (Figure 13-72), you can perform additional actions at the LCU or volume level.

As shown in Figure 13-73, you have the following options:

- ▶ Create: Refer to 13.3.9, “Create LCUs and CKD volumes” on page 343 for information about this option.
- ▶ Clone LCU: Refer to 13.3.9, “Create LCUs and CKD volumes” on page 343 for more information about this option. Here all properties from the selected LCU will be cloned.
- ▶ Add Volumes: Here you can add base volumes to the selected LCU. Refer to 13.3.9, “Create LCUs and CKD volumes” on page 343 for more information about this option.
- ▶ Add Aliases: Here you can add alias volumes without creating additional base volumes.
- ▶ Properties: Here you display the additional properties. You can also change some of them, such as the timeout value.
- ▶ Delete: Here you can delete the selected LCU. This must be confirmed, because you will also delete all volumes that will contain data.

The screenshot shows the 'System z Volumes and LCUs' window with two main sections:

### Manage LCUs and Volumes

**LCU Table:**

Select	LCU	SSID	# Bases	Start	End	# Aliases	# Poo
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	10	0001		80 00	5E	0	
<input type="checkbox"/>	11	0002		10 00	09	0	

Showing 1 - 2 of 2 | Selected 1

Select one or more LCUs in the table to view the volumes in the LCU or to perform an action.

**Volume Table:**

Select	Nickname	ID	VOLSER	Status	MTM	# Mod1	# Cylinders
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO1000	1000		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	3390-3	3	3
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO1001	1001		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	3390-3	3	3
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO1002	1002		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	3390-3	3	3
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO1003	1003		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	3390-3	3	3
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO1004	1004		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	3390-3	3	3
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO1005	1005		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	3390-3	3	3

Showing 1 - 6 of 80 | Selected 0

Figure 13-73 Manage LCUs and Volumes window 1

The next window (Figure 13-74) shows that you can take actions at the volume level once you have selected an LCU:

- ▶ Increase capacity: Use this action to increase the size of a volume. The capacity of a 3380 volume cannot be increased. After the operation completes, you need to use the ICKDSF REFORMAT REFVTOC command to adjust the volume VTOC to reflect the additional cylinders. Note that the capacity of a volume cannot be decreased.
- ▶ Add Aliases: Use this action when you want to define additional aliases without creating new base volumes.
- ▶ View properties: Here you can view the volumes properties. The only value you change is the nickname. You can also see if the volume is online from the DS8700 side.
- ▶ Delete: Here you can delete the selected volume. This must be confirmed, because you will also delete all alias volumes and data on this volume.

The screenshot displays the 'Manage LCUs and Volumes' interface. It consists of two main sections: 'Manage LCUs' and 'Manage Volumes'.

**Manage LCUs:** This section shows a table of Logical Control Units (LCUs). The columns include Select, LCU, Status, SSID, # Bases, Start, End, # Aliases, and # Pools. Two rows are listed:

Select	LCU	Status	SSID	# Bases	Start	End	# Aliases	# Pools
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	10	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	0001		80 00	5E	0	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	11	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	0002		10 00	09	0	0

Below the table, it says "Showing 1 - 2 of 2 | Selected 1".

**Manage Volumes:** This section shows a table of volumes. The columns include Select, Nickname, Status, MTM, # Mod1, and # Cylinders. One row is selected (ITSO1000), and a context menu is open over it, listing actions: Increase Capacity..., Add Aliases..., Properties..., and Delete... .

Select	Nickname	R	Status	MTM	# Mod1	# Cylinders
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ITSO1000		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	3390-3	3	3
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO1001	1001	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	3390-3	3	3
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO1002	1002	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	3390-3	3	3
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO1003	1003	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	3390-3	3	3
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO1004	1004	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	3390-3	3	3
<input type="checkbox"/>	ITSO1005	1005	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Normal	3390-3	3	3

Below the table, it says "Showing 1 - 6 of 80 | Selected 1".

Figure 13-74 Manage LCUs and Volumes window 2

**Tip:** After initializing the volumes using the ICKDSF INIT command, you also will see the VOLSERs in this window. This is not done in this example.

The Increase capacity action can be used to dynamically expand volume capacity without needing to bring the volume offline in z/OS. It is good practice to start using 3390 Mod A once you can expand the capacity and change the device type of your existing 3390 Mod 3, 3390 Mod 9, and 3390 Custom volumes. Keep in mind that 3390 Mod A volumes can only be used on z/OS V1.10 or later and that after the capacity has been increased on DS8700, you need to run a ICKDSF to rebuild the VTOC Index, allowing it to recognize the new volume size.

## 13.4 Other DS GUI functions

In this section, we discuss additional DS GUI functions introduced with the DS8700 series.

### 13.4.1 Check the status of the DS8700

Perform these steps in order to display and explore the overall status of your DS8700 system:

1. In the My Work section in the DS GUI welcome window, navigate to **Manage Hardware** → **Storage Complexes**. The Storage Complexes Summary window opens. Select your storage complex and, from the Select action drop-down menu, click **System Summary**, as shown in Figure 13-75.

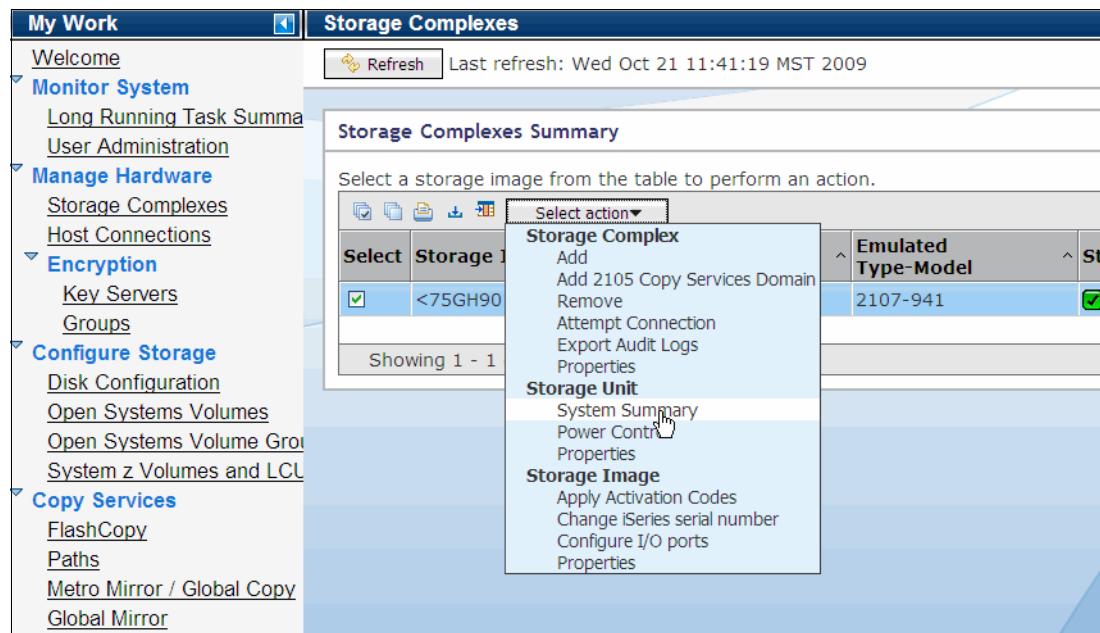


Figure 13-75 Select Storage Unit System Summary

2. The new Storage Complex window provides general DS8700 system information. It is divided into four sections (see Figure 13-76):
  - a. System Summary: You can quickly identify the percentage of capacity that is currently used, and the available and used capacity for opens systems and System z. In addition, you can check the system state and obtain more information by clicking the state link.
  - b. Management Console information.
  - c. Performance: Provides performance graphs for host MBps, host KIOps, rank MBps, and rank KIOps. This information is periodically updated every 60 seconds.
  - d. Racks: Represents the physical configuration.

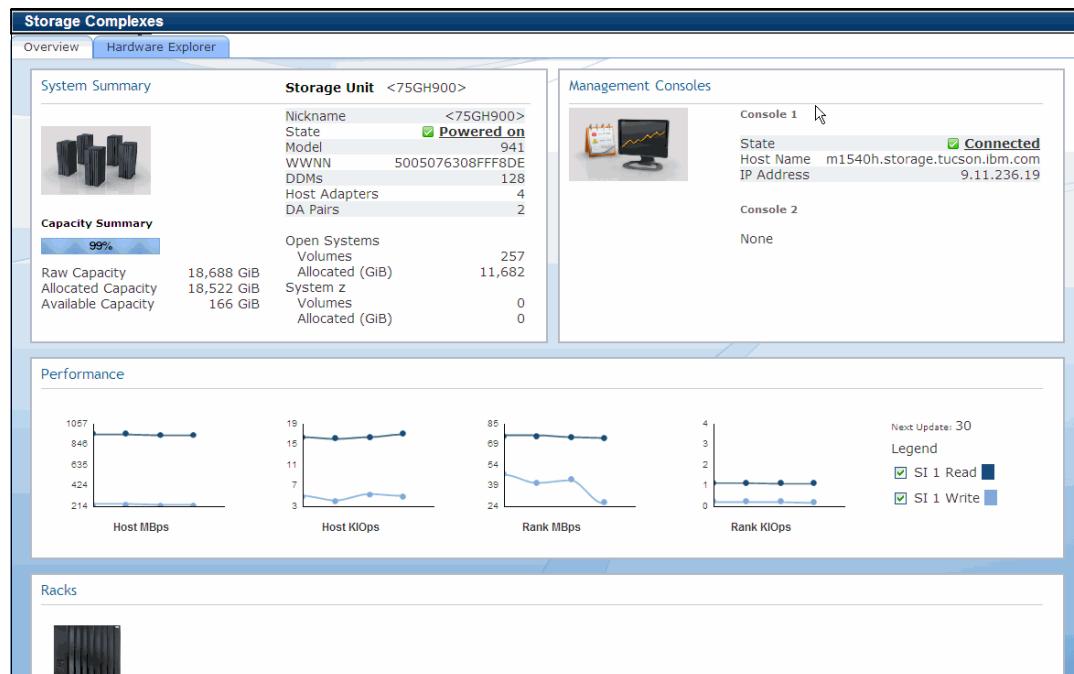


Figure 13-76 System Summary overview

- In the Rack section, the number of racks shown matches the racks physically installed in the storage unit. If you position the mouse pointer over the rack, additional rack information is displayed, such as the rack number, the number of DDMs, and the number of host adapters (see Figure 13-77).

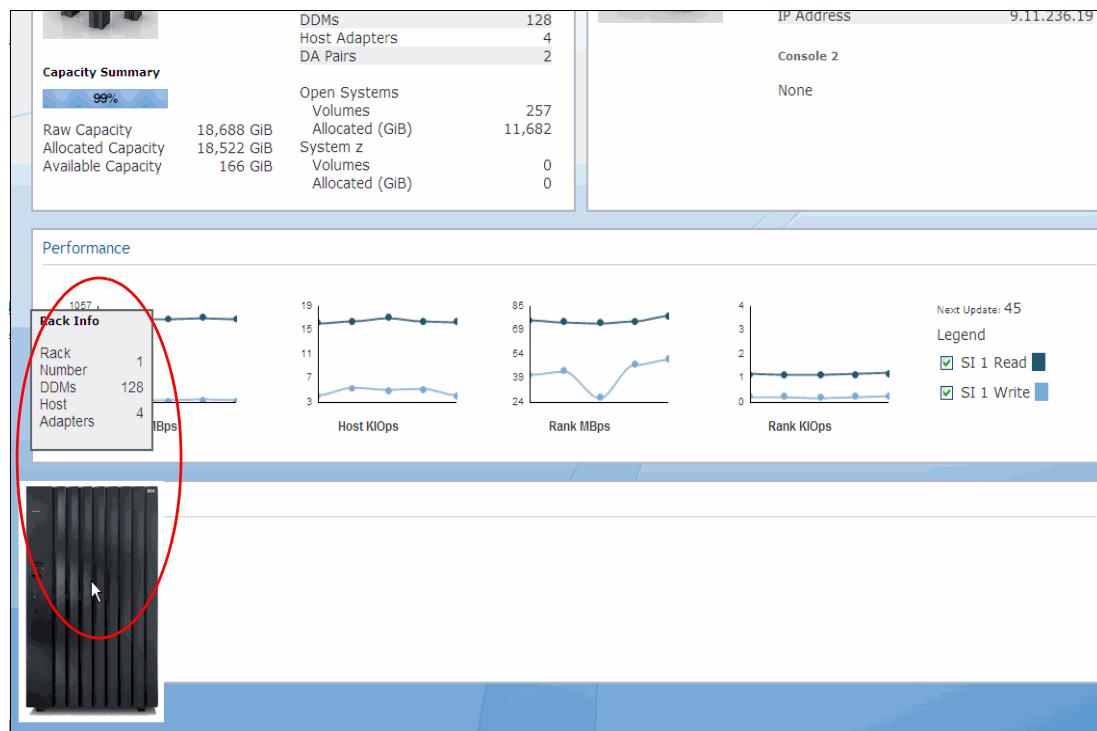


Figure 13-77 System Summary: Rack information

### 13.4.2 Explore the DS8700 hardware

DS8700 GUI allows you to explore hardware installed in your DS8700 system by locating specific physical and logical resources (arrays, ranks, Extent Pools, and others). Hardware Explorer shows system hardware and a mapping between logical configuration objects and DDMs.

You can explore the DS8700 hardware components and discover the correlation between logical and physical configuration by performing the following steps:

- In the My Work section in the DS GUI welcome window, navigate to **Manage Hardware** → **Storage Complexes**.
- The Storage Complexes Summary window opens. Select your storage complex and, from the Select action drop-down menu, click **System Summary**.

3. Select the **Hardware Explorer** tab to switch to the Hardware Explorer window (see Figure 13-78).

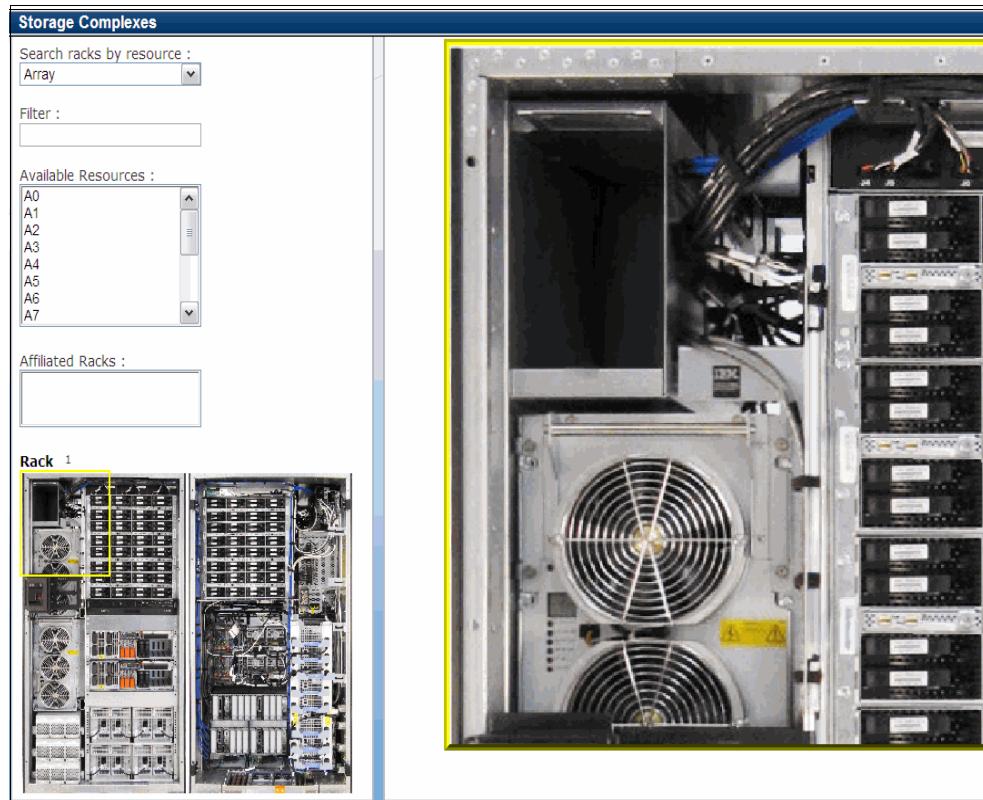


Figure 13-78 Hardware Explorer window

4. In this window, you can explore the specific hardware resources installed by selecting the appropriate component under the Search rack criteria by resources drop-down menu. In the Rack section of the window, there is a front and rear view of the DS8700 rack. You can interact with the rack image to locate resources. To view a larger image of a specific location (displayed in the right pane of the window), use your mouse to move the yellow box to the desired location across the DS8700 front and rear view.

5. In order to check where the physical disks of arrays are located, change the search criteria to **Array** and from the Available Resources section, click one or more array IDs that you want to explore. After you click the array ID, the location of each DDM is highlighted in the rack image. Each disk has an appropriate array ID label. Use your mouse to move the yellow box in the rack image on the left to the desired location across the DS8700 front and rear view to view the magnified view of this section, as shown in Figure 13-79.

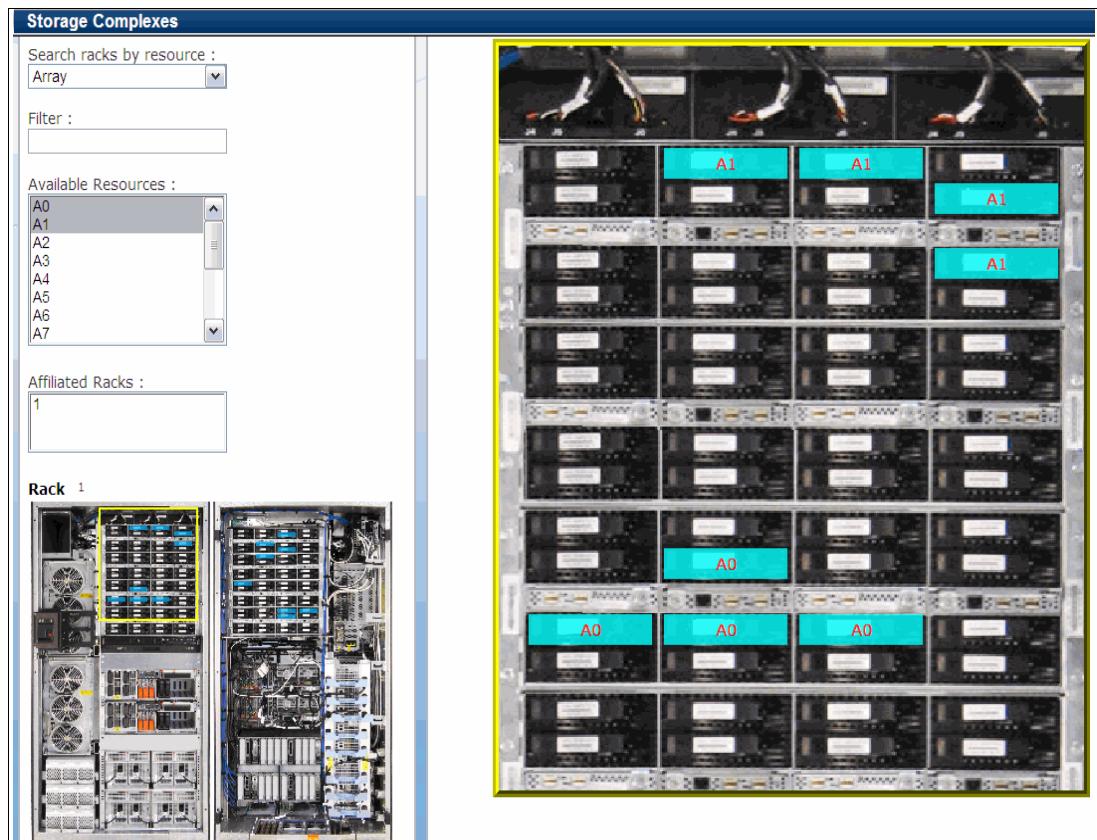


Figure 13-79 View arrays

- Once you have identified the location of array DDMs, you can position the mouse pointer over the specific DDM to display more information, as shown in Figure 13-80.

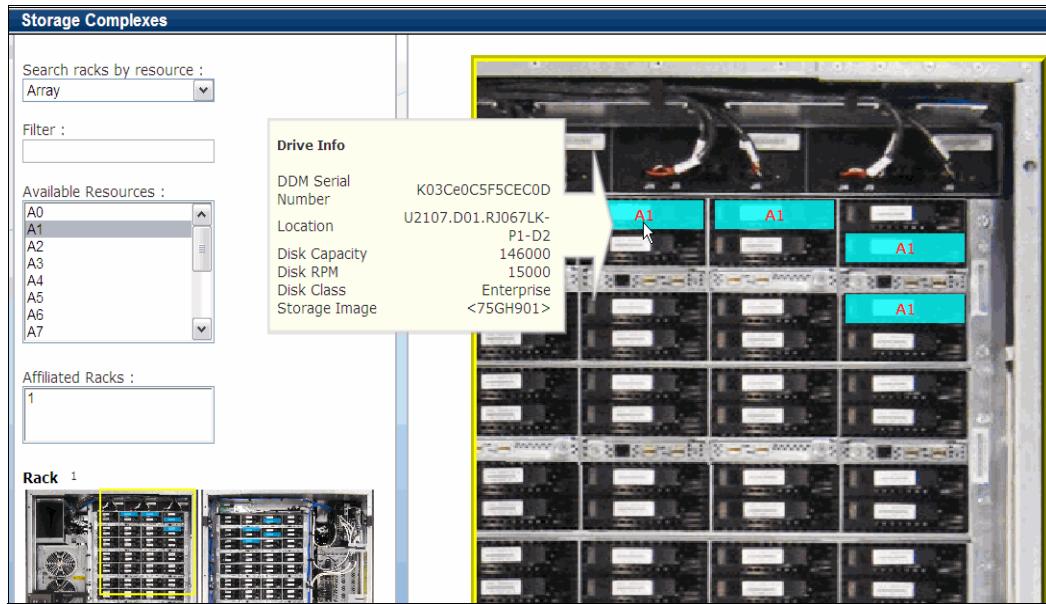


Figure 13-80 DDM information

- Change the search criteria to **Extent Pool** to discover more about each Extent Pool location. Select as many Extent Pools as you need in the Available Resources section and find the physical location of each one, as shown in Figure 13-81.

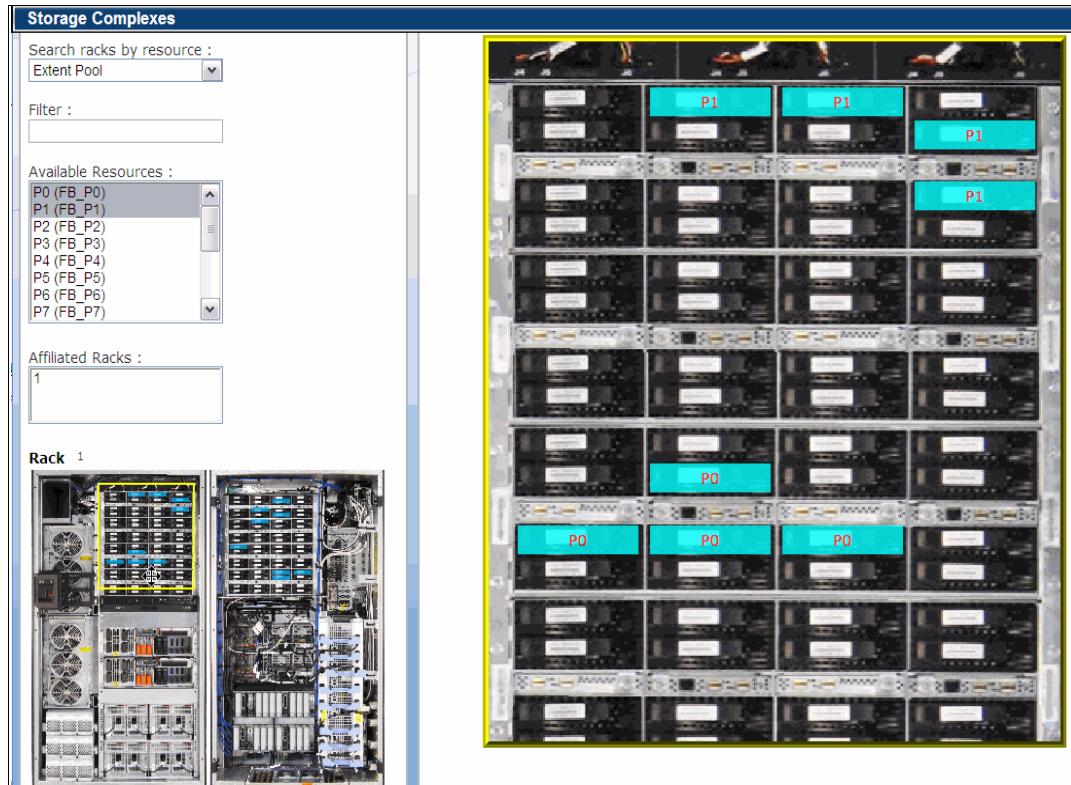


Figure 13-81 View Extent Pools

8. Another very useful function in the Hardware Explorer GUI section is the ability to identify the physical location of each FCP or FICON port. Change the search criteria to **I/O Ports** and select one or more ports in the Available Resources section. Use your mouse to move the yellow box in the rack image to the rear DS8700 view (bottom pane), where the I/O ports are located (see Figure 13-82).

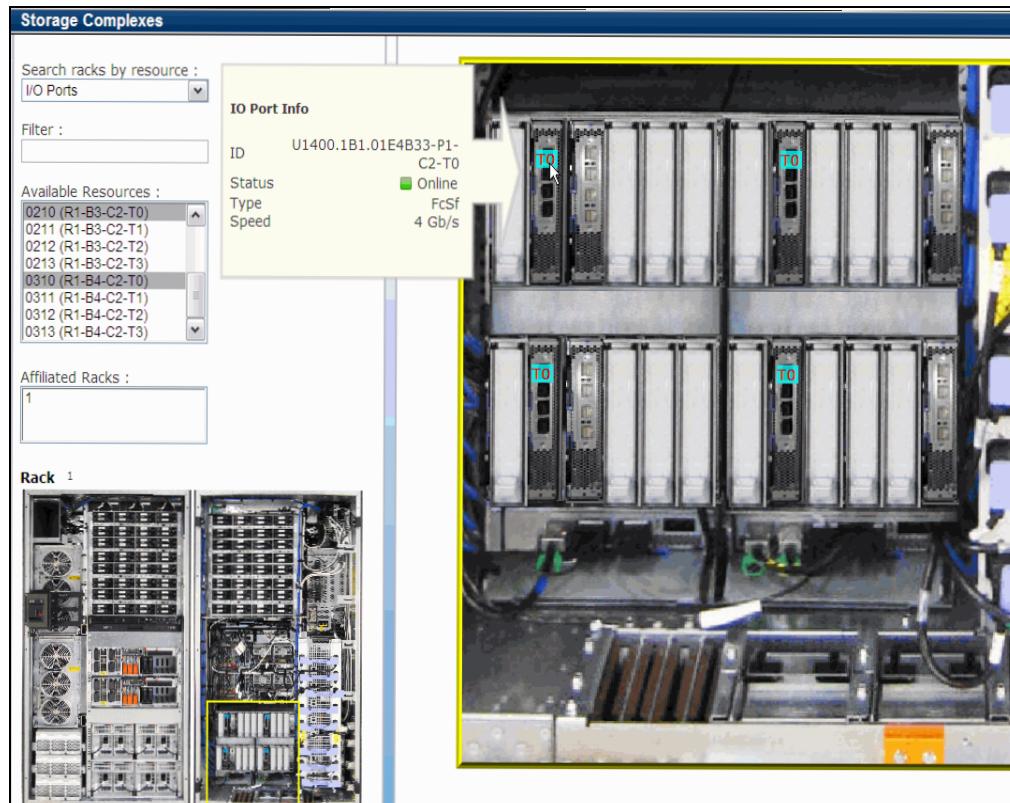


Figure 13-82 View I/O ports

Click the highlighted port to discover its basic properties and status.



# Configuration with the DS Command-Line Interface

In this chapter, we explain how to configure the storage on the IBM System Storage DS8700 storage subsystem using the DS Command-Line Interface (DS CLI). We include the following sections:

- ▶ DS Command-Line Interface overview
- ▶ Configuring the I/O ports
- ▶ Configuring the DS8000 storage for FB volumes
- ▶ Configuring DS8000 Storage for Count Key Data Volumes

In this chapter, we discuss the use of the DS CLI for storage configuration of the DS8000, not for Copy Services configuration, encryption handling, or LDAP usage.

For Copy Services configuration in the DS8000 using the DS CLI, refer to the following books:

- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS: Command-Line Interface User's Guide*, GC53-1127
- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8000: Copy Services in Open Environments*, SG24-6788
- ▶ *DS8000 Copy Services for IBM System z*, SG24-6787
- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8000 Series: IBM FlashCopy SE*, REDP-4368
- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8000: Remote Pair FlashCopy (Preserve Mirror)*, REDP-4504

For DS CLI commands related to disk encryption, refer to *IBM System Storage DS8700 Disk Encryption Implementation and Usage Guidelines*, REDP-4500.

For DS CLI commands related to LDAP authentication, refer to the *IBM System Storage DS8000: LDAP Authentication*, REDP-4505.

For information about DS CLI changes related to the Easy Tier function, including dynamic volume relocation (DVR) and Extent Pool merge, refer to the *IBM System Storage DS8700 Easy Tier*, REDP-4667.

## 14.1 DS Command-Line Interface overview

The command-line interface provides a full-function command set that allows you to check your Storage Unit configuration and perform specific application functions when necessary. For detailed information about DS CLI use and setup, refer to *IBM System Storage DS: Command-Line Interface User's Guide*, GC53-1127.

The following list highlights a few of the functions that you can perform with the DS CLI:

- ▶ Create user IDs that can be used with the GUI and the DS CLI.
- ▶ Manage user ID passwords.
- ▶ Install activation keys for licensed features.
- ▶ Manage storage complexes and units.
- ▶ Configure and manage Storage Facility Images.
- ▶ Create and delete RAID arrays, ranks, and Extent Pools.
- ▶ Create and delete logical volumes.
- ▶ Manage host access to volumes.
- ▶ Check the current Copy Services configuration that is used by the Storage Unit.
- ▶ Create, modify, or delete Copy Services configuration settings.
- ▶ Integrate LDAP policy usage and configuration.
- ▶ Implement encryption functionality.

**Note:** The DSCLI version must correspond to the LMC level installed on your system.

### 14.1.1 Supported operating systems for the DS CLI

The DS Command-Line Interface can be installed on these operating systems:

- ▶ AIX 5L V5.1, V5.2, V5.3, and V6.1
- ▶ HP-UX 11i, 11iV2, and 11iV3
- ▶ HP Tru64 5.1and 5.1A
- ▶ Red Hat Linux: Advanced Server (AS) 3.0, and Enterprise Server (ES) RHEL 2.1, 3, 4, and 5
- ▶ SUSE Linux SLES 8, SLES 9, SLES10, SUSE 8, and SUSE 9
- ▶ Novell NetWare 6.5
- ▶ IBM System i i5/OS V5.3
- ▶ Sun Solaris 7, 8, and 9
- ▶ HP OpenVMS 7.3-1 (or newer)
- ▶ VMware ESX V3.0.1 Console
- ▶ Windows 2000, Windows Datacenter, Windows 2003, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, and Windows XP (all 32-bit)

**Note:** The DS CLI cannot be installed on a Windows 64-bit operating system.

**Important:** For the most recent information about currently supported operating systems, refer to the IBM System Storage DS8000 Information Center website at:

<http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/ds8000ic/index.jsp>

The DS CLI is supplied and installed via a CD that ships with the machine. The installation does not require a reboot of the open systems host. The DS CLI requires Java 1.4.1 or later. Java 1.4.2 is the preferred JRE on Windows, AIX, and Linux, and is supplied on the CD. Many hosts might already have a suitable level of Java installed. The installation program checks for this requirement during the installation process and does not install the DS CLI if you do not have the correct version of Java.

The installation process can be performed through a shell, such as the bash or korn shell, or the Windows command prompt, or through a GUI interface. If performed via a shell, it can be performed silently using a profile file. The installation process also installs software that allows the DS CLI to be completely uninstalled should it no longer be required.

## 14.1.2 User accounts

DS CLI communicates with the DS8000 system through the HMC console. Either the primary or secondary HMC console may be used. DS CLI access is authenticated using HMC user accounts. Same user IDs can be used for both DS CLI and DS GUI access. See 9.5, “HMC user management” on page 224 for more details on user accounts.

## 14.1.3 DS CLI profile

In order to access a DS8000 system with the DS CLI, you need to provide certain information with the `dscli` command. At a minimum, the IP address or host name of the DS8000 HMC, a user name, and a password are required. You can also provide information such as the output format for list commands, the number of rows per page in the command-line output, and whether a banner is included with the command-line output.

If you create one or more profiles to contain your preferred settings, you do not have to specify this information each time you use DS CLI. When you launch DS CLI, all you need to do is to specify a profile name with the `dscli` command. You can override the profile's values by specifying a different parameter value with the `dscli` command.

When you install the command-line interface software, a default profile is installed in the profile directory with the software. The file name is `dscli.profile`, for example, `c:\Program Files\IBM\DSCLI\profile\dscli.profile` for the Windows platform and `opt/ibm/dscli/profile/dscli.profile` for UNIX and Linux platforms.

You have several options for using profile files:

- ▶ You can modify the system default profile `dscli.profile`.
- ▶ You can make a personal default profile by making a copy of the system default profile as `<user_home>/dscli/profile/dscli.profile`. The home directory `<user_home>` is designated as follows:
  - Windows system: `C:\Documents and Settings\<user_name>`
  - UNIX/Linux system: `/home/<user_name>`
- ▶ You can create specific profiles for different Storage Units and operations. Save the profile in the user profile directory. For example:
  - `c:\Program Files\IBM\DSCLI\profile\operation_name1`
  - `c:\Program Files\IBM\DSCLI\profile\operation_name2`

**Attention:** The default profile file created when you install the DS CLI will potentially be replaced every time you install a new version of the DS CLI. It is a good practice to open the default profile and then save it as a new file. You can then create multiple profiles and reference the relevant profile file using the -cfg parameter.

These profile files can be specified using the DS CLI command parameter -cfg <profile\_name>. If the -cfg file is not specified, the user's default profile is used. If a user's profile does not exist, the system default profile is used.

### **Profile change illustration**

A simple way to edit the profile is to do the following:

1. From the Windows desktop, double-click the DS CLI icon.
2. In the command window that opens, enter the command **cd profile**.
3. In the profile directory, enter the command **notepad dscli.profile**, as shown in Example 14-1.

---

#### *Example 14-1 Command prompt operation*

---

```
C:\Program Files\ibm\dscli>cd profile
C:\Program Files\IBM\dscli\profile>notepad dscli.profile
```

---

4. The notepad opens with the DS CLI profile in it. There are four lines you can consider adding. Examples of these lines are shown in bold in Example 14-2.

---

#### *Example 14-2 DS CLI profile example*

---

```
# DS CLI Profile
#
# Management Console/Node IP Address(es)
#   hmc1 and hmc2 are equivalent to -hmc1 and -hmc2 command options.
#hmc1:127.0.0.1
#hmc2:127.0.0.1

# Default target Storage Image ID
#   "devid" and "remotedevid" are equivalent to
#   "-dev storage_image_ID" and "-remotedev storage_image_ID" command options,
#   respectively.
#devid: IBM.2107-AZ12341
#remotedevid:IBM.2107-AZ12341

devid: IBM.2107-75ABCDE
hmc1: 10.0.0.250
username: admin
password: passw0rd
```

---

Adding the serial number using the devid parameter, and the HMC IP address using the hmc1 parameter, is highly recommended. Adding the user name and password parameters will simplify the DS CLI startup, but is not recommended, because a password is saved in clear text in the profile file. It is better to create an encrypted password file with the **managepwfile** CLI command.

**Note:** A password file generated using the **managepwfile** command is located in the directory user\_home\_directory/dscli/profile/security/security.dat.

**Important:** Take care if adding multiple devid and HMC entries. Only one should be uncommented (or more literally, unhashed) at any one time. If you have multiple hmc1 or devid entries, the DS CLI uses the one closest to the bottom of the profile.

#### 14.1.4 Command structure

This is a description of the components and structure of a command-line interface command.

A command-line interface command consists of one to four types of components, arranged in the following order:

1. The command name: Specifies the task that the command-line interface is to perform.
2. Flags: Modify the command. They provide additional information that directs the command-line interface to perform the command task in a specific way.
3. Flags parameter: Provides information that is required to implement the command modification that is specified by a flag.
4. Command parameters: Provide basic information that is necessary to perform the command task. When a command parameter is required, it is always the last component of the command, and it is not preceded by a flag.

#### 14.1.5 Using the DS CLI application

You have to log into the DS CLI application to use the command modes. There are three command modes for the DS CLI:

- ▶ Single-shot command mode
- ▶ Interactive command mode
- ▶ Script command mode

##### Single-shot command mode

Use the DS CLI single-shot command mode if you want to issue an occasional command but do not want to keep a history of the commands that you have issued.

You must supply the login information and the command that you want to process at the same time. Follow these steps to use the single-shot mode:

1. Enter:  
`dscli -hmc1 <hostname or ip address> -user <adm user> -passwd <pwd> <command>`
2. Wait for the command to process and display the end results.

Example 14-3 shows the use of the single-shot command mode.

*Example 14-3 Single-shot command mode*

---

```
C:\Program Files\ibm\dscli>dscli -hmc1 10.10.10.1 -user admin -passwd pwd lsuser
Date/Time: 7. November 2007 14:38:27 CET IBM DSCLI Version: X.X.X.X
Name      Group State
=====
admin    admin locked
admin    admin active
exit status of dscli = 0
```

---

**Note:** When typing the command, you can use the host name or the IP address of the HMC. It is also important to understand that every time a command is executed in single shut mode, the user must be authenticated. The authentication process can take a considerable amount of time.

## Interactive command mode

Use the DS CLI interactive command mode when you have multiple transactions to process that cannot be incorporated into a script. The interactive command mode provides a history function that makes repeating or checking prior command usage easy to do.

Perform the following steps:

1. Log on to the DS CLI application at the directory where it is installed.
2. Provide the information that is requested by the information prompts. The information prompts might not appear if you have provided this information in your profile file. The command prompt switches to a **dscli** command prompt.
3. Begin using the DS CLI commands and parameters. You are not required to begin each command with **dscli** because this prefix is provided by the **dscli** command prompt.
4. Use **quit** or **exit** command to end interactive mode

Example 14-4 shows the use of interactive command mode.

---

### *Example 14-4 Interactive command mode*

---

```
C:\Program Files\ibm\dscli>dscli
Enter your username: admin
Enter your password:
Date/Time: 03 November 2008 15:17:52 CET IBM DSCLI Version: X.X.X.X DS:
IBM.2107-1312345
dscli>
dscli> lsarrayssite
Date/Time: 03 November 2008 15:18:25 CET IBM DSCLI Version: X.X.X.X DS: IBM.2107-1312345
arsite DA Pair dkcap (Decimal GB) State      Array
=====
S1    0           146.0 Assigned A0
S2    0           146.0 Assigned A1
S3    0           146.0 Assigned A2
S4    0           146.0 Assigned A3
dscli>
dscli> lssi
Date/Time: 03 November 2008 15:20:52 CET IBM DSCLI Version: X.X.X.X DS: -
Name ID          Storage Unit     Model WWNN          State ESSNet
=====
-   IBM.2107-1312345 IBM.2107-1312345 932  500507630EFFF06F Online Enabled
dscli> quit
```

---

**Note:** When typing the command, you can use the host name or the IP address of the HMC. In this case, only a single authentication need to take place.

## Script command mode

Use the DS CLI script command mode if you want to use a sequence of DS CLI commands. If you want to run a script that only contains DS CLI commands, then you can start DS CLI in script mode. The script that DS CLI executes can only contain DS CLI commands.

In Example 14-5, we show the contents of a DS CLI script file. Note that it only contains DS CLI commands, although comments can be placed in the file using a hash symbol (#). Empty lines are also allowed. One advantage of using this method is that scripts written in this format can be used by the DS CLI on any operating system into which you can install DS CLI.

*Example 14-5 Example of a DS CLI script file*

---

```
# Sample ds cli script file
# Comments can appear if hashed
lsarraysite
lsarray
lsrank
```

---

In Example 14-6, we start the DS CLI using the -script parameter and specifying a profile and the name of the script that contains the commands from Example 14-5.

*Example 14-6 Executing DS CLI with a script file*

---

```
C:\Program Files\ibm\dscli>dscli -cfg ds8000a.profile -script sample.script
Date/Time: 28 October 2005 23:06:47 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
arsite DA Pair dkcap (10^9B) State      Array
=====
S1    0          73.0 Unassigned -
S2    0          73.0 Unassigned -
S3    0          73.0 Unassigned -
S4    0          73.0 Unassigned -
S5    0          73.0 Unassigned -
S6    0          73.0 Unassigned -
Date/Time: 28 October 2005 23:06:52 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00234I lsarray: No Array found.
Date/Time: 28 October 2005 23:06:53 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00234I lsrank: No Rank found.

C:\Program Files\ibm\dscli>
```

---

**Note:** The DS CLI script can contain only DS CLI commands. Using shell commands results in process failure. You can add comments in the scripts prefixed by the hash symbol (#). It must be the first non-blank character on the line. Empty lines are allowed in the script file.

Only one single authentication process is needed to execute all the script commands.

### 14.1.6 Return codes

When the DS CLI exits, the exit status code is provided. This is effectively a return code. If DS CLI commands are issued as separate commands (rather than using script mode), then a return code will be presented for every command. If a DS CLI command fails (for example, due to a syntax error or the use of an incorrect password), then a failure reason and a return code will be presented. Standard techniques to collect and analyze return codes can be used.

The return codes used by the DS CLI are shown in Table 14-1.

Table 14-1 Return code table

Return code	Category	Description
0	Success	The command was successful.
2	Syntax error	There is a syntax error in the command.
3	Connection error	There was a connection problem to the server.
4	Server error	The DS CLI server had an error.
5	Authentication error	The password or user ID details are incorrect.
6	Application error	The DS CLI application had an error.

#### 14.1.7 User assistance

The DS CLI is designed to include several forms of user assistance. The main form of user assistance is via the **help** command. Examples of usage include:

- ▶ **help** lists all the available DS CLI commands.
- ▶ **help -s** lists all the DS CLI commands with brief descriptions of each one.
- ▶ **help -l** lists all the DS CLI commands with their syntax information.

To obtain information about a specific DS CLI command, enter the command name as a parameter of the **help** command. Examples of usage include:

- ▶ **help <command name>** gives a detailed description of the specified command.
- ▶ **help -s <command name>** gives a brief description of the specified command.
- ▶ **help -l <command name>** gives syntax information about the specified command.

Example 14-7 shows the output of the **help** command.

Example 14-7 Displaying a list of all commands in DS CLI using the help command

```
dscli> help
applydbcheck      lshba          mkkeygrp      setauthpol
applykey         lshostconnect   mkkeymgr      setcontactinfo
chauthpol        lshosttype     mklcu         setdbcheck
chckdvol         lshostvol     mkpe          setdialhome
chextpool        lsioport       mkpprc        setenv
chfbvol          lskey          mkpprcpath    setflashrevertible
chhostconnect    lskeygrp      mkrank        setioport
chkeymgr         lskeymgr      mkrkey        setnetworkport
chlcu            lslcu          mkrremoteflash setoutput
chlss            lsllss         mksession     setplex
chpass           lsnetworkport mksestg       setremoteflashrevertible
chrank           lspe           mkuser        setrmw
chsession        lsperfgrp     mkvolgrp     setsim
chsestg          lsperfgrprpt offloadauditlog setsmt
chsri            lsperfrescript offloaddbcheck setsnmp
chsp             lsportprof    offloadfile   setvpn
chsru            lspprc        offloadss     showarray
chuser           lspprcpath    pausegmir    showarraysite
chvolgrp         lsproblem     pausepprc    showauthpol
clearvol         lsrank        quit          showckdvol
closeproblem    lsremoteflash resumegmir   showcontactinfo
commitflash      lsserver      resumepprc   showenv
commitremoteflash lssession    resyncflash   showextpool
cpauthpol        lssestg      resyncremoteflash showfbvol
```

diagsi	lssi	reverseflash	showgmir
dscli	lsss	revertflash	showgmircg
echo	lsstgencl	revertremoteflash	showgmiros
exit	lssu	rmarray	showhostconnect
fallbackpprc	lsuser	rmauthpol	showioport
failoverpprc	lsvolgrp	rmckdvol	showkeygrp
freezepprc	lsvolinit	rmextpool	showlcu
help	lsvpn	rmfbvol	showlss
helpmsg	manageckdvol	rmflash	shownetworkport
initckdvol	managedbcheck	rmgmir	showpass
initfbvol	managefbvol	rmhostconnect	showplex
lsaddressgrp	managehostconnect	rmkeygrp	showrank
lsarray	managekeygrp	rmkeymgr	showsestg
lsarraysite	managepwfile	rmlcu	showsi
lsauthpol	managereckey	rmpprc	showsp
lsavailpprcport	mkaliasvol	rmpprcpath	showsu
lsckdvol	mkarray	rmrank	showuser
lsda	mkauthpol	rmreckey	showvolgrp
lsdbcheck	mkckdvol	rmremoteflash	testauthpol
lsddm	mkesconpprcpath	rmsession	testcallhome
lsextpool	mkextpool	rmsestg	unfreezeflash
lsfbvol	mkfbvol	rmuser	unfreezepprc
lflash	mkflash	rmvolgrp	ver
lsframe	mkgmir	sendpe	whoami
lsgmir	mkhostconnect	sendss	

---

### Man pages

A *man page* is available for every DS CLI command. Man pages are most commonly seen in UNIX-based operating systems and give information about command capabilities. This information can be displayed by issuing the relevant command followed by the -h, -help, or -? flags.

## 14.2 Configuring the I/O ports

Set the I/O ports to the desired topology. In Example 14-8, we list the I/O ports by using the **lsioport** command. Note that I0000-I0003 are on one adapter card, while I0100-I0103 are on another card.

*Example 14-8 Listing the I/O ports*

---

```
dscli> lsioport -dev IBM.2107-7503461
Date/Time: 29 October 2005 2:30:31 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
ID      WWPN          State   Type        topo    portgrp
=====
I0000  500507630300008F Online  Fibre Channel-SW SCSI-FCP 0
I0001  500507630300408F Online  Fibre Channel-SW SCSI-FCP 0
I0002  500507630300808F Online  Fibre Channel-SW SCSI-FCP 0
I0003  500507630300C08F Online  Fibre Channel-SW SCSI-FCP 0
I0100  500507630308008F Online  Fibre Channel-LW FICON    0
I0101  500507630308408F Online  Fibre Channel-LW SCSI-FCP 0
I0102  500507630308808F Online  Fibre Channel-LW FICON    0
I0103  500507630308C08F Online  Fibre Channel-LW FICON    0
```

---

There are three possible topologies for each I/O port:

<b>SCSI-FCP</b>	Fibre Channel switched fabric (also called point to point)
<b>FC-AL</b>	Fibre Channel arbitrated loop
<b>FICON</b>	FICON (for System z hosts only)

In Example 14-9, we set two I/O ports to the FICON topology and then check the results.

*Example 14-9 Changing topology using setioport*

---

```
dscli> setioport -topology ficon I0001
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 23:04:43 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00011I setioport: I/O Port I0001 successfully configured.

dscli> setioport -topology ficon I0101
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 23:06:13 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00011I setioport: I/O Port I0101 successfully configured.

dscli> lsioport
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 23:06:32 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
ID    WWPN          State   Type      topo      portgrp
=====
I0000 500507630300008F Online  Fibre Channel-SW SCSI-FCP 0
I0001 500507630300408F Online  Fibre Channel-SW FICON    0
I0002 500507630300808F Online  Fibre Channel-SW SCSI-FCP 0
I0003 500507630300C08F Online  Fibre Channel-SW SCSI-FCP 0
I0100 500507630308008F Online  Fibre Channel-LW FICON    0
I0101 500507630308408F Online  Fibre Channel-LW FICON    0
I0102 500507630308808F Online  Fibre Channel-LW FICON    0
I0103 500507630308C08F Online  Fibre Channel-LW FICON    0
```

---

## 14.3 Monitoring the I/O ports

Monitoring of the I/O ports is one of the most important tasks of the system administrator. Here is the point where the HBAs, SAN, and DS8700 exchange information. If one of these components has problems due to hardware or configuration issues, all the others will be affected as well.

Example 14-10 on page 369 shows the output of the **showioport -metrics** command, which illustrates the many important metrics returned by the command. It provides the performance counter of the port and the FCLink error counter. The FCLink error counter is used to determine the health of the overall communication.

There are groups of errors that point to specific problem areas:

- ▶ Any non-zero figure in the counters LinkFailErr, LossSyncErr, LossSigErr, and PrimSeqErr indicates that the SAN probably has HBAs attached to it that are unstable. These HBAs log in and log out to the SAN and create name server congestion and performance degradation.
- ▶ If the InvTxWordErr counter increases by more than 100 per day, the port is receiving light from a source that is not an SFP. The cable connected to the port is not covered at the end or the I/O port is not covered by a cap.
- ▶ The CRCerr counter shows the errors that arise between the last sending SFP in the SAN and the receiving port of the DS8700. These errors do not appear in any other place in the data center. You must replace the cable that is connected to the port or the SFP in the SAN.

- ▶ The link reset counters LRSent and LRRec also suggest that there are hardware defects in the SAN; these errors need to be investigated.
- ▶ The counters IllegalFrame, OutOrdData, OutOrdACK, DupFrame, InvRelOffset, SeqTimeout, and BitErrRate point to congestions in the SAN and can only be influenced by configuration changes in the SAN.

*Example 14-10 Listing the I/O ports with showioport -metrics*

---

```
dscli> showioport -dev IBM.2107-7503461 -metrics I0041
Date/Time: 30. September 2009 16:24:06 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.30.248 DS:
IBM.2107-7503461
ID          I0041
Date        09/30/2009 16:24:12 MST
byteread (FICON/ESCON) 0
bytewrit (FICON/ESCON) 0
Reads (FICON/ESCON) 0
Writes (FICON/ESCON) 0
timeread (FICON/ESCON) 0
timewrite (FICON/ESCON) 0
bytewrit (PPRC) 0
byteread (PPRC) 0
Writes (PPRC) 0
Reads (PPRC) 0
timewrite (PPRC) 0
timeread (PPRC) 0
byteread (SCSI) 0
bytewrit (SCSI) 0
Reads (SCSI) 0
Writes (SCSI) 0
timeread (SCSI) 0
timewrite (SCSI) 0
LinkFailErr (FC) 0
LossSyncErr (FC) 0
LossSigErr (FC) 0
PrimSeqErr (FC) 0
InvTxWordErr (FC) 0
CRCErr (FC) 0
LRSent (FC) 0
LRRec (FC) 0
IllegalFrame (FC) 0
OutOrdData (FC) 0
OutOrdACK (FC) 0
DupFrame (FC) 0
InvRelOffset (FC) 0
SeqTimeout (FC) 0
BitErrRate (FC) 0
```

---

## 14.4 Configuring the DS8000 storage for FB volumes

This section goes through examples of a typical DS8000 storage configuration when attaching to open systems hosts. We perform the DS8000 storage configuration by going through the following steps:

1. Create arrays.
2. Create ranks.
3. Create Extent Pools.
4. Optionally, create repositories for track space efficient volumes.
5. Create volumes.
6. Create volume groups.
7. Create host connections.

### 14.4.1 Create arrays

In this step, we create the arrays. Before creating the arrays, it is a best practice to first list the arrays sites. Use the **1sarraysite** to list the array sites, as shown in Example 14-11.

**Important:** Remember that an array for a DS8000 can only contain one array site, and a DS8000 array site contains eight disk drive modules (DDMs).

*Example 14-11 Listing array sites*

---

```
dscli> 1sarraysite
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 20:54:31 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
arsite DA Pair dkcap (10^9B) State      Array
=====
S1    0          146.0 Unassigned -
S2    0          146.0 Unassigned -
S3    0          146.0 Unassigned -
S4    0          146.0 Unassigned -
```

---

In Example 14-11, we can see that there are four array sites and that we can therefore create four arrays.

We can now issue the **mkarray** command to create arrays, as shown in Example 14-12. You will notice that in this case we have used one array site (in the first array, S1) to create a single RAID 5 array. If we wished to create a RAID 10 array, we would have to change the **-raidtype** parameter to 10, and if we wished to create a RAID 6 array, we would have to change the **-raidtype** parameter to 6 (instead of 5).

*Example 14-12 Creating arrays with mkarray*

---

```
dscli> mkarray -raidtype 5 -arsite S1
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 21:57:59 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00004I mkarray: Array A0 successfully created.
dscli> mkarray -raidtype 5 -arsite S2
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 21:58:24 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00004I mkarray: Array A1 successfully created.
```

---

We can now see what arrays have been created by using the **lsarray** command, as shown in Example 14-13.

*Example 14-13 Listing the arrays with lsarray*

```
dscli> lsarray
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 21:58:27 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
Array State      Data   RAIDtype  arsite Rank DA Pair DDMcap (10^9B)
=====
A0  Unassigned  Normal 5 (6+P+S) S1      -    0        146.0
A1  Unassigned  Normal 5 (6+P+S) S2      -    0        146.0
```

We can see in this example the type of RAID array and the number of disks that are allocated to the array (in this example 6+P+S, which means the usable space of the array is 6 times the DDM size), as well as the capacity of the DDMs that are used and which array sites were used to create the arrays.

#### 14.4.2 Create ranks

Once we have created all the arrays that are required, we then create the ranks using the **mkrank** command. The format of the command is **mkrank -array Ax -stgtype xxx**, where **xxx** is either fixed block (FB) or count key data (CKD), depending on whether you are configuring for open systems or System z hosts.

Once we have created all the ranks, we run the **lsrank** command. This command displays all the ranks that have been created, to which server the rank is attached, the RAID type, and the format of the rank, whether it is Fixed Block (FB) or Count Key Data (CKD).

Example 14-14 shows the **mkrank** commands and the result of a successful **lsrank -1** command.

*Example 14-14 Creating and listing ranks with mkrank and lsrank*

```
dscli> mkrank -array A0 -stgtype fb
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 21:31:16 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-7503461
CMUC00007I mkrank: Rank R0 successfully created.
dscli> mkrank -array A1 -stgtype fb
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 21:31:16 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-7503461
CMUC00007I mkrank: Rank R1 successfully created.
dscli> lsrank -1
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 21:32:31 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-7503461
ID Group State      datastate Array RAIDtype extpoolID extpoolnam stgtype exts usedexts
=====
R0  - Unassigned Normal  A0      5 -      -        fb     773      -
R1  - Unassigned Normal  A1      5 -      -        fb     773      -
```

#### 14.4.3 Create Extent Pools

The next step is to create Extent Pools. Here are some points that should be remembered when creating the Extent Pools:

- ▶ Each Extent Pool has an associated rank group that is specified by the **-rankgrp** parameter, which defines the Extent Pools' server affinity (either 0 or 1, for server0 or server1).
- ▶ The Extent Pool type is either FB or CKD and is specified by the **-stgtype** parameter.

- ▶ The number of Extent Pools can range from one to as many as there are existing ranks. However, to associate ranks with both servers, you need at least two Extent Pools.
- ▶ We recommend that all ranks in an Extent Pool have the same characteristics, that is, the same DDM type, size, and RAID type. An exception to this are hybrid pools (as required by Easy Tier automatic mode), which must contain both HDD and SSD drives. Even then, the HDD drives in a hybrid pool should preferably have the same characteristics.

For easier management, we create empty Extent Pools related to the type of storage that is in the pool. For example, create an Extent Pool for high capacity disk, create another for high performance, and, if needed, Extent Pools for the CKD environment.

When an Extent Pool is created, the system automatically assigns it an Extent Pool ID, which is a decimal number starting from 0, preceded by the letter P. The ID that was assigned to an Extent Pool is shown in the CMUC00000I message, which is displayed in response to a successful **mkextpool** command. Extent Pools associated with rank group 0 get an even ID number, while pools associated with rank group 1 get an odd ID number. The Extent Pool ID is used when referring to the Extent Pool in subsequent CLI commands. It is therefore a good idea to note the ID.

Example 14-15 shows one example of Extent Pools you could define on your machine. This setup would require a system with at least six ranks.

*Example 14-15 An Extent Pool layout plan*

---

```
FB Extent Pool high capacity 300gb disks assigned to server 0 (FB_Low_0)
FB Extent Pool high capacity 300gb disks assigned to server 1 (FB_Low_1)
FB Extent Pool high performance 146gb disks assigned to server 0 (FB_High_0)
FB Extent Pool high performance 146gb disks assigned to server 0 (FB_High_1)
CKD Extent Pool High performance 146gb disks assigned to server 0 (CKD_High_0)
CKD Extent Pool High performance 146gb disks assigned to server 1 (CKD_High_1)
```

---

Note that the **mkextpool** command forces you to name the Extent Pools. In Example 14-16, we first create empty Extent Pools using the **mkextpool** command. We then list the Extent Pools to get their IDs. Then we attach a rank to an empty Extent Pool using the **chrank** command. Finally, we list the Extent Pools again using **lsextpool** and note the change in the capacity of the Extent Pool.

*Example 14-16 Extent Pool creation using mkextpool, lsextpool, and chrank*

---

```
dscli> mkextpool -rankgrp 0 -stgtype fb FB_high_0
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 21:42:04 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-7503461
CMUC00000I mkextpool: Extent Pool P0 successfully created.
dscli> mkextpool -rankgrp 1 -stgtype fb FB_high_1
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 21:42:12 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-7503461
CMUC00000I mkextpool: Extent Pool P1 successfully created.
dscli> lsextpool
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 21:49:33 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-7503461
Name      ID stgtype rankgrp status availstor (2^30B) %allocated available reserved numvols
=====
FB_high_0 P0 fb          0 below           0     0     0     0     0
FB_high_1 P1 fb          1 below           0     0     0     0     0
dscli> chrank -extpool P0 R0
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 21:43:23 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-7503461
CMUC00008I chrank: Rank R0 successfully modified.
dscli> chrank -extpool P1 R1
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 21:43:23 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-7503461
CMUC00008I chrank: Rank R1 successfully modified.
dscli> lsextpool
```

---

```

Date/Time: 27 October 2005 21:50:10 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-7503461
Name      ID stgtype rankgrp status availstor (2^30B) %allocated available reserved numvols
=====
FB_high_0 P0 fb          0 below           773     0    773     0     0
FB_high_1 P1 fb          1 below           773     0    773     0     0
=====
```

After having assigned a rank to an Extent Pool, we should be able to see this change when we display the ranks. In Example 14-17, we can see that rank R0 is assigned to extpool P0.

*Example 14-17 Displaying the ranks after assigning a rank to an Extent Pool*

```

dscli> lsrank -1
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 22:08:42 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-7503461
ID Group State  datastate Array RAIDtype extpoolID extpoolnam stgtype exts usedexts
=====
R0      0 Normal Normal   A0          5 P0        FB_high_0  fb      773     0
R1      1 Normal Normal   A1          5 P1        FB_high_1  fb      773     0
=====
```

## Creating a repository for Track Space Efficient volumes

If the DS8000 has the IBM FlashCopy SE feature, you can create Track Space Efficient (TSE) volumes that can be used as FlashCopy targets. Before you can create TSE volumes, you must create a space efficient repository in the Extent Pool. The repository provides space to store the data associated with TSE logical volumes. Only one repository is allowed per Extent Pool. A repository has a physical capacity that is available for storage allocations by TSE volumes and a virtual capacity that is the sum of LUN/volume sizes of all space efficient volumes. The physical repository capacity is allocated when the repository is created. If there are several ranks in the Extent Pool, the repository's extents are striped across the ranks (Storage Pool Striping).

Example 14-18 shows the creation of a repository. The unit type of the real capacity (-repcap) and virtual capacity (-vircap) sizes can be specified with the -capttype parameter. For FB Extent Pools, the unit type can be either GB (default) or blocks.

*Example 14-18 Creating a repository for Space Efficient volumes*

```

dscli> mksestg -repcap 100 -vircap 200 -extpool p9
Date/Time: 06 May 2010 11:14:22 PDT IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.1.193 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00342I mksestg: The space-efficient storage for the Extent Pool P9 has been
created successfully.
```

You can obtain information about the repository with the **showsestg** command. Example 14-19 shows the output of the **showsestg** command. You might particularly be interested in how much capacity is used within the repository by checking the *repccapalloc* value.

*Example 14-19 Getting information about a Space Efficient repository*

```

dscli> showsestg p9
Date/Time: 06 May 2010 11:14:57 PDT IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.1.193 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
extpool          P9
stgtype          fb
datastate        Normal
configstate     Normal
repccapstatus   below
%repccapthreshold 0
repccap(GiB)    100.0
repccap(Mod1)   -
repccap(blocks) 209715200
```

```

repcap(cyl)           -
repcapalloc(GiB/Mod1) 0.0
%repcapalloc          0
vircap(GiB)           200.0
vircap(Mod1)          -
vircap(blocks)         419430400
vircap(cyl)           -
vircapalloc(GiB/Mod1) 0.0
%vircapalloc          0
overhead(GiB/Mod1)    3.0
reqrepcap(GiB/Mod1)   100.0
reqvircap(GiB/Mod1)   200.0

```

---

Note that some more storage is allocated for the repository in addition to repcap size. In Example 14-19 on page 373, the line that starts with overhead indicates that 3 GB had been allocated in addition to the repcap size.

A repository can be deleted with the `rmsestg` command.

**Note:** In the current implementation, it is not possible to expand a Space Efficient repository. The physical size or the virtual size of the repository cannot be changed. Therefore, careful planning is required. If you have to expand a repository, you must delete all TSE logical volumes and the repository itself, then recreate a new repository.

#### 14.4.4 Creating FB volumes

We are now able to create volumes and volume groups. When we create them, we should try to distribute them evenly across the two rank groups in the storage unit.

##### Creating standard volumes

The format of the command that we use to create a volume is:

```
mkfbvol -extpool pX -cap xx -name high_fb_0#h 1000-1003
```

In Example 14-20, we have created eight volumes, each with a capacity of 10 GB. The first four volumes are assigned to rank group 0 and the second four are assigned to rank group 1.

*Example 14-20 Creating fixed block volumes using mkfbvol*

---

```

dscli> lsextpool
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 21:50:10 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-7503461
Name      ID stgttype rankgrp status availstor (2^30B) %allocated available reserved numvols
=====
FB_high_0 P0 fb        0 below            773     0    773     0    0
FB_high_1 P1 fb        1 below            773     0    773     0    0
dscli> mkfbvol -extpool p0 -cap 10 -name high_fb_0#h 1000-1003
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 22:24:15 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-7503461
CMUC00025I mkfbvol: FB volume 1000 successfully created.
CMUC00025I mkfbvol: FB volume 1001 successfully created.
CMUC00025I mkfbvol: FB volume 1002 successfully created.
CMUC00025I mkfbvol: FB volume 1003 successfully created.
dscli> mkfbvol -extpool p1 -cap 10 -name high_fb_1#h 1100-1103
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 22:26:18 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-7503461
CMUC00025I mkfbvol: FB volume 1100 successfully created.
CMUC00025I mkfbvol: FB volume 1101 successfully created.
CMUC00025I mkfbvol: FB volume 1102 successfully created.

```

CMUC00025I mkfbvol: FB volume 1103 successfully created.

---

Looking closely at the **mkfbvol** command used in Example 14-20 on page 374, we see that volumes 1000–1003 are in extpool P0. That Extent Pool is attached to rank group 0, which means server 0. Now rank group 0 can only contain even numbered LSSs, so that means volumes in that Extent Pool must belong to an even numbered LSS. The first two digits of the volume serial number are the LSS number, so in this case, volumes 1000–1003 are in LSS 10.

For volumes 1100–1003 in Example 14-20 on page 374, the first two digits of the volume serial number are 11, which is an odd number, which signifies they belong to rank group 1. Also note that the -cap parameter determines size, but because the -type parameter was not used, the default size is a binary size. So these volumes are 10 GB binary, which equates to 10,737,418,240 bytes. If we used the parameter -type ess, then the volumes would be decimally sized and would be a minimum of 10,000,000,000 bytes in size.

In Example 14-20 on page 374 we named the volumes using naming scheme `high_fb_0_#h`, where #h means you are using the hexadecimal volume number as part of the volume name. This can be seen in Example 14-21, where we list the volumes that we have created using the **lsfbvol** command. We then list the Extent Pools to see how much space we have left after the volume creation.

*Example 14-21 Checking the machine after creating volumes by using lsextentpool and lsfbvol*

---

```
dscli> lsfbvol
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 22:28:01 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-7503461
Name          ID   accstate datastate configstate deviceMTM datatype extpool cap (2^30B)
=====
high_fb_0_1000 1000 Online    Normal    Normal    2107-922 FB 512   P0        10.0
high_fb_0_1001 1001 Online    Normal    Normal    2107-922 FB 512   P0        10.0
high_fb_0_1002 1002 Online    Normal    Normal    2107-922 FB 512   P0        10.0
high_fb_0_1003 1003 Online    Normal    Normal    2107-922 FB 512   P0        10.0
high_fb_1_1100 1100 Online    Normal    Normal    2107-922 FB 512   P1        10.0
high_fb_1_1101 1101 Online    Normal    Normal    2107-922 FB 512   P1        10.0
high_fb_1_1102 1102 Online    Normal    Normal    2107-922 FB 512   P1        10.0
high_fb_1_1103 1103 Online    Normal    Normal    2107-922 FB 512   P1        10.0
dscli> lsextentpool
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 22:27:50 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-7503461
Name      ID stgttype rankgrp status availstor (2^30B) %allocated available reserved numvols
=====
FB_high_0 P0 fb           0 below            733      5     733      0       4
FB_high_1 P1 fb           1 below            733      5     733      0       4
```

---

**Important:** For the DS8000, the LSSs can be ID 00 to ID FE. The LSSs are in address groups. Address group 0 is LSS 00 to 0F, address group 1 is LSS 10 to 1F, and so on. The moment you create an FB volume in an address group, then that entire address group can only be used for FB volumes. Be aware of this fact when planning your volume layout in a mixed FB/CKD DS8000.

## Storage Pool Striping

When creating a volume, you have a choice of how the volume is allocated in an Extent Pool with several ranks. The extents of a volume can be kept together in one rank (as long as there is enough free space on that rank). The next rank is used when the next volume is created. This allocation method is called *rotate volumes*.

You can also specify that you want the extents of the volume you are creating to be evenly distributed across all ranks within the Extent Pool. This allocation method is called *rotate extents*.

The extent allocation method is specified with the -eam rotateexts or -eam rotatevols option of the **mkfbvol** command (see Example 14-22).

*Example 14-22 Creating a volume with Storage Pool Striping*

---

```
dscli> mkfbvol -extpool p53 -cap 15 -name ITSO-XPSTR -eam rotateexts 1720
Date/Time: October 17, 2007 1:53:55 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.977 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00025I mkfbvol: FB volume 1720 successfully created.
```

---

The **showfbvol** command with the -rank option (see Example 14-23) shows that the volume we created is distributed across 12 ranks and how many extents on each rank were allocated for this volume.

*Example 14-23 Getting information about a striped volume*

---

```
dscli> showfbvol -rank 1720
Date/Time: October 17, 2007 1:56:52 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.977 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
Name          ITSO-XPSTR
ID            1720
accstate      Online
datastate     Normal
configstate   Normal
deviceMTM    2107-900
datatype      FB 512
addrgrp       1
extpool       P53
exts          15
cotype        DS
cap (2^30B)   15.0
cap (10^9B)   -
cap (blocks)  31457280
volgrp        -
ranks         12
dbexts        0
sam           Standard
repcapalloc   -
eam           rotateexts
reqcap (blocks) 31457280
=====Rank extents=====
rank extents
=====
R24          2
R25          1
R28          1
R29          1
R32          1
R33          1
R34          1
R36          1
R37          1
R38          1
R40          2
R41          2
```

---

## Track Space Efficient volumes

When your DS8000 has the IBM FlashCopy SE feature, you can create Track Space Efficient (TSE) volumes to be used as FlashCopy target volumes. A repository must exist in the Extent Pool where you plan to allocate TSE volumes (see “Creating a repository for Track Space Efficient volumes” on page 373).

A Track Space Efficient volume is created by specifying the **-sam tse** parameter with the **mkfbvol** command (Example 14-24).

*Example 14-24 Creating a Space Efficient volume*

```
dscli> mkfbvol -extpool p53 -cap 40 -name ITSO-1721-SE -sam tse 1721
Date/Time: October 17, 2007 3:10:13 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.977 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00025I mkfbvol: FB volume 1721 successfully created.
```

When listing Space Efficient repositories with the **lssestg** command (see Example 14-25), we can see that in Extent Pool P53 we have a virtual allocation of 40 extents (GB), but that the allocated (used) capacity repcapalloc is still zero.

*Example 14-25 Getting information about Space Efficient repositories*

```
dscli> lssestg -1
Date/Time: October 17, 2007 3:12:11 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.977 DS: IBM.2107-7520781
extentpoolID stgttype datastate configstate repcapstatus %repcapthreshold repcap (2^30B) vircap repcapalloc vircapalloc
=====
P4      ckd    Normal   Normal   below          0       64.0   1.0    0.0    0.0
P47     fb     Normal   Normal   below          0       70.0   282.0   0.0   264.0
P53     fb     Normal   Normal   below          0       100.0  200.0   0.0   40.0
```

This allocation comes from the volume just created. To see the allocated space in the repository for just this volume, we can use the **showfbvol** command (see Example 14-26).

*Example 14-26 Checking the repository usage for a volume*

```
dscli> showfbvol 1721
Date/Time: October 17, 2007 3:29:30 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.977 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
Name          ITSO-1721-SE
ID            1721
accstate      Online
datastate     Normal
configstate   Normal
deviceMTM    2107-900
datatype      FB 512
addrgrp       1
extpool       P53
exts          40
capttype     DS
cap (2^30B)  40.0
cap (10^9B)   -
cap (blocks) 83886080
volgrp        -
ranks         0
dbexts        0
sam           TSE
repcapalloc   0
eam           -
reqcap (blocks) 83886080
```

## Dynamic Volume Expansion

A volume can be expanded without having to remove the data within the volume. You can specify a new capacity by using the **chfbvol** command (see Example 14-27). The new capacity must be larger than the previous one; you *cannot* shrink the volume.

*Example 14-27 Expanding a striped volume*

---

```
dscli> chfbvol -cap 20 1720
Date/Time: October 17, 2007 2:51:54 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.977 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00332W chfbvol: Some host operating systems do not support changing the volume
size. Are you sure that you want to resize the volume? [y/n]: y
CMUC00026I chfbvol: FB volume 1720 successfully modified.
```

---

Because the original volume had the `rotateexts` attribute, the additional extents are also striped (see Example 14-28).

*Example 14-28 Checking the status of an expanded volume*

---

```
dscli> showfbvol -rank 1720
Date/Time: October 17, 2007 2:52:04 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.977 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
Name          ITSO-XPSTR
ID            1720
accstate      Online
datastate     Normal
configstate   Normal
deviceMTM    2107-900
datatype      FB 512
addrgrp       1
extpool       P53
exts          20
captpe        DS
cap (2^30B)   20.0
cap (10^9B)   -
cap (blocks)  41943040
volgrp        -
ranks         12
dbexts        0
sam           Standard
repcapalloc   -
eam           rotateexts
reqcap (blocks) 41943040
=====Rank extents=====
rank extents
=====
R24          2
R25          2
R28          2
R29          2
R32          2
R33          2
R34          1
R36          1
R37          1
R38          1
R40          2
R41          2
```

---

**Important:** Before you can expand a volume, you first have to delete all Copy Services relationships for that volume.

## Deleting volumes

FB volumes can be deleted by using the **rmfbvol** command.

Starting with R5.1, the command includes new options to prevent the accidental deletion of volumes that are in use. A FB volume is considered to be “in use”, if it is participating in a Copy Services relationship or if the volume has received any I/O operation in the previous 5 minutes.

Volume deletion is controlled by the -safe and -force parameters (they cannot be specified at the same time) as follows:

- ▶ If neither of the parameters is specified, the system performs checks to see whether or not the specified volumes are in use. Volumes that are not in use will be deleted and the ones in use will not be deleted.
- ▶ If the -safe parameter is specified, and if any of the specified volumes are assigned to a user-defined volume group, the command fails without deleting any volumes.
- ▶ The -force parameter deletes the specified volumes without checking to see whether or not they are in use.

In Example 14-29, we create volumes 2100 and 2101. We then assign 2100 to a volume group. We then try to delete both volumes with the -safe option, but the attempt fails without deleting either of the volumes. We are able to delete volume 2101 with the -safe option because it is not assigned to a volume group. Volume 2100 is not in use, so we can delete it by not specifying either parameter.

*Example 14-29 Deleting a FB volume*

```
dscli> mkfbvol -extpool p1 -cap 12 -eam rotateexts 2100-2101
Date/Time: 14 May 2010 14:31:23 PDT IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.1.193 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00025I mkfbvol: FB volume 2100 successfully created.
CMUC00025I mkfbvol: FB volume 2101 successfully created.
dscli> chvolgrp -action add -volume 2100 v0
Date/Time: 14 May 2010 14:33:46 PDT IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.1.193 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00031I chvolgrp: Volume group V0 successfully modified.
dscli> rmfbvol -quiet -safe 2100-2101
Date/Time: 14 May 2010 14:34:15 PDT IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.1.193 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00253E rmfbvol: Volume IBM.2107-75NA901/2100 is assigned to a user-defined
volume group. No volumes were deleted.
dscli> rmfbvol -quiet -safe 2101
Date/Time: 14 May 2010 14:35:09 PDT IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.1.193 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00028I rmfbvol: FB volume 2101 successfully deleted.
dscli> rmfbvol 2100
Date/Time: 14 May 2010 14:35:32 PDT IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.1.193 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00027W rmfbvol: Are you sure you want to delete FB volume 2100? [y/n]: y
CMUC00028I rmfbvol: FB volume 2100 successfully deleted.
```

### 14.4.5 Creating volume groups

Fixed block volumes are assigned to open systems hosts using volume groups, which is not to be confused with the term *volume groups* used in AIX. A fixed block volume can be a member of multiple volume groups. Volumes can be added or removed from volume groups

as required. Each volume group must be either SCSI MAP256 or SCSI MASK, depending on the SCSI LUN address discovery method used by the operating system to which the volume group will be attached.

## Determining if an open systems host is SCSI MAP256 or SCSI MASK

First, we determine what sort of SCSI host with which we are working. Then we use the **lshosttype** command with the -type parameter of scsimask and then scsimap256.

In Example 14-30, we can see the results of each command.

*Example 14-30 Listing host types with the lshosttype command*

---

```
dscli> lshosttype -type scsimask
Date/Time: 03 November 2008 15:31:52 CET IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.2.321 DS: -
HostType Profile AddrDiscovery LBS
=====
Hp      HP - HP/UX      reportLUN    512
SVC     San Volume Controller reportLUN    512
SanFsAIX IBM pSeries - AIX/SanFS reportLUN    512
pSeries IBM pSeries - AIX      reportLUN    512
zLinux  IBM zSeries - zLinux   reportLUN    512
dscli> lshosttype -type scsimap256
Date/Time: 03 November 2008 15:32:25 CET IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.2.321 DS: -
HostType Profile AddrDiscovery LBS
=====
AMDLinuxRHEL AMD - Linux RHEL      LUNPolling  512
AMDLinuxSuse AMD - Linux Suse     LUNPolling  512
AppleOSX   Apple - OSX          LUNPolling  512
Fujitsu    Fujitsu - Solaris    LUNPolling  512
HpTru64    HP - Tru64          LUNPolling  512
HpVms     HP - Open VMS        LUNPolling  512
LinuxDT    Intel - Linux Desktop LUNPolling  512
LinuxRF    Intel - Linux Red Flag LUNPolling  512
LinuxRHEL  Intel - Linux RHEL    LUNPolling  512
LinuxSuse   Intel - Linux Suse    LUNPolling  512
Novell     Novell             LUNPolling  512
SGI        SGI - IRIX          LUNPolling  512
SanFsLinux - Linux/SanFS       LUNPolling  512
Sun         SUN - Solaris       LUNPolling  512
VMWare     VMWare             LUNPolling  512
Win2000    Intel - Windows 2000  LUNPolling  512
Win2003    Intel - Windows 2003  LUNPolling  512
Win2008    Intel - Windows 2008  LUNPolling  512
iLinux     IBM iSeries - iLinux  LUNPolling  512
nSeries    IBM N series Gateway LUNPolling  512
pLinux     IBM pSeries - pLinux  LUNPolling  512
```

---

Having determined the host type, we can now make a volume group. In Example 14-31, the example host type we chose is AIX, and in Example 14-30, we can see the address discovery method for AIX is *scsimask*.

*Example 14-31 Creating a volume group with mkvolgrp and displaying it*

---

```
dscli> mkvolgrp -type scsimask -volume 1000-1002,1100-1102 AIX_VG_01
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 23:18:07 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00030I mkvolgrp: Volume group V11 successfully created.
```

```

dscli> lsvolgrp
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 23:18:21 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
Name ID Type
=====
ALL CKD V10 FICON/ESCON A11
AIX_VG_01 V11 SCSI Mask
ALL Fixed Block-512 V20 SCSI A11
ALL Fixed Block-520 V30 OS400 A11
dscli> showvolgrp V11
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 23:18:15 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
Name AIX_VG_01
ID V11
Type SCSI Mask
Vols 1000 1001 1002 1100 1101 1102

```

---

In this example, we added volumes 1000 to 1002 and 1100 to 1102 to the new volume group. We did this task to spread the workload evenly across the two rank groups. We then listed all available volume groups using **lsvolgrp**. Finally, we listed the contents of volume group V11, because this was the volume group we created.

We might also want to add or remove volumes to this volume group at a later time. To achieve this goal, we use **chvolgrp** with the -action parameter. In Example 14-32, we add volume 1003 to volume group V11. We display the results, and then remove the volume.

*Example 14-32 Changing a volume group with chvolgrp*

---

```

dscli> chvolgrp -action add -volume 1003 V11
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 23:22:50 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00031I chvolgrp: Volume group V11 successfully modified.
dscli> showvolgrp V11
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 23:22:58 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
Name AIX_VG_01
ID V11
Type SCSI Mask
Vols 1000 1001 1002 1003 1100 1101 1102
dscli> chvolgrp -action remove -volume 1003 V11
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 23:23:08 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00031I chvolgrp: Volume group V11 successfully modified.
dscli> showvolgrp V11
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 23:23:13 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
Name AIX_VG_01
ID V11
Type SCSI Mask
Vols 1000 1001 1002 1100 1101 1102

```

---

**Important:** Not all operating systems can deal with the removal of a volume. Consult your operating system documentation to determine the safest way to remove a volume from a host.

All operations with volumes and volume groups described previously can also be used with Space Efficient volumes as well.

## 14.4.6 Creating host connections

The final step in the logical configuration process is to create host connections for your attached hosts. You will need to assign volume groups to those connections. Each host HBA can only be defined once, and each host connection (hostconnect) can only have one volume group assigned to it. Remember that a volume can be assigned to multiple volume groups.

In Example 14-33, we create a single host connection that represents one HBA in our example AIX host. We use the -hosttype parameter using the hosttype we have in Example 14-30 on page 380. We allocated it to volume group V11. At this point, provided that the SAN zoning is correct, the host should be able to see the logical unit numbers (LUNs) in volume group V11.

*Example 14-33 Creating host connections using mkhostconnect and lshostconnect*

```
dscli> mkhostconnect -wwname 100000C912345678 -hosttype pSeries -volgrp V11 AIX_Server_01
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 23:28:03 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-7503461
CMUC00012I mkhostconnect: Host connection 0000 successfully created.
dscli> lshostconnect
Date/Time: 27 October 2005 23:28:12 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-7503461
Name          ID    WWPN           HostType Profile      portgrp volgrpID ESSIOport
=====
AIX_Server_01 0000 100000C912345678 pSeries  IBM pSeries - AIX      0 V11      a11
dscli>
```

Note that you can also use just -profile instead of -hosttype. However, we do not recommend that you do this action. If you use the -hosttype parameter, it actually invokes both parameters (-profile and -hosttype), while using just -profile leaves the -hosttype column unpopulated.

There is also the option in the **mkhostconnect** command to restrict access to only certain I/O ports. This is done with the -ioport parameter. Restricting access in this way is usually unnecessary. If you want to restrict access for certain hosts to certain I/O ports on the DS8000, do this by way of zoning on your SAN switch.

## Managing hosts with multiple HBAs

If you have a host with multiple HBAs, you have two considerations:

- ▶ For the GUI to consider multiple host connects to be used by the same server, the host connects must have the same name. In Example 14-34 on page 383, host connects 0010 and 0011 appear in the GUI as a single server with two HBAs. However, host connects 000E and 000F appear as two separate hosts even though in reality they are used by the same server. If you do not plan to use the GUI to manage host connections, then this is not a major consideration. Using more verbose hostconnect naming might make management easier.
- ▶ If you want to use a single command to change the assigned volume group of several hostconnects at the same time, then you need to assign these hostconnects to a unique port group and then use the **managehostconnect** command. This command changes the assigned volume group for all hostconnects assigned to a particular port group.

When creating hosts, you can specify the -portgrp parameter. By using a unique port group number for each attached server, you can easily detect servers with multiple HBAs.

In Example 14-34, we have six host connections. By using the port group number, we see that there are three separate hosts, each with two HBAs. Port group 0 is used for all hosts that do not have a port group number set.

*Example 14-34 Using the portgrp number to separate attached hosts*

---

dscli> lhostconnect						
Name	ID	WWPN	HostType	Profile	portgrp	volgrpID
bench_tic17_fc0	0008	210000E08B1234B1	LinuxSuse	Intel - Linux Suse	8 V1	a11
bench_tic17_fc1	0009	210000E08B12A3A2	LinuxSuse	Intel - Linux Suse	8 V1	a11
p630_fcs0	000E	10000000C9318C7A	pSeries	IBM pSeries - AIX	9 V2	a11
p630_fcs1	000F	10000000C9359D36	pSeries	IBM pSeries - AIX	9 V2	a11
p615_7	0010	10000000C93E007C	pSeries	IBM pSeries - AIX	10 V3	a11
p615_7	0011	10000000C93E0059	pSeries	IBM pSeries - AIX	10 V3	a11

---

### Changing host connections

If we want to change a host connection, we can use the **chhostconnect** command. This command can be used to change nearly all parameters of the host connection except for the worldwide port name (WWPN). If you need to change the WWPN, you need to create a whole new host connection. To change the assigned volume group, use either **chhostconnect** to change one hostconnect at a time, or use the **managehostconnect** command to simultaneously reassign all the hostconnects in one port group.

#### 14.4.7 Mapping open systems host disks to storage unit volumes

When you have assigned volumes to an open systems host, and you have then installed the DS CLI on this host, you can run the DS CLI command **lhostvol** on this host. This command maps assigned LUNs to open systems host volume names.

In this section, we give examples for several operating systems. In each example, we assign several logical volumes to an open systems host. We install DS CLI on this host. We log on to this host and start DS CLI. It does not matter which HMC we connect to with the DS CLI. We then issue the **lhostvol** command.

**Important:** The **lhostvol** command communicates only with the operating system of the host on which the DS CLI is installed. You cannot run this command on one host to see the attached disks of another host.

#### AIX: Mapping disks when using Multipath I/O (MPIO)

In Example 14-35, we have an AIX server that uses MPIO. We have two volumes assigned to this host, 1800 and 1801. Because MPIO is used, we do not see the number of paths. In fact, from this display, it is not possible to tell if MPIO is even installed. You need to run the **pcmpath query device** command to confirm the path count.

*Example 14-35 lhostvol on an AIX host using MPIO*

---

dscli> lhostvol			
Disk Name	Volume Id	Vpath	Name
hdisk3	IBM.2107-1300819/1800	---	
hdisk4	IBM.2107-1300819/1801	---	

---

### **AIX: Mapping disks when Subsystem Device Driver (SDD) is used**

In Example 14-36, we have an AIX server that uses SDD. We have two volumes assigned to this host, 1000 and 1100. Each volume has four paths.

*Example 14-36 lshostvol on an AIX host using SDD*

---

```
dscli> lshostvol
Date/Time: November 10, 2005 3:06:26 PM CET IBM DSCLI Version: 5.0.6.142
Disk Name           Volume Id          Vpath Name
=====
hdisk1,hdisk3,hdisk5,hdisk7 IBM.2107-1300247/1000 vpath0
hdisk2,hdisk4,hdisk6,hdisk8 IBM.2107-1300247/1100 vpath1
```

---

### **Hewlett-Packard UNIX (HP-UX): mapping disks when not using SDD**

In Example 14-37, we have an HP-UX host that does not have SDD. We have two volumes assigned to this host, 1105 and 1106.

*Example 14-37 lshostvol on an HP-UX host that does not use SDD*

---

```
dscli> lshostvol
Date/Time: November 16, 2005 4:03:25 AM GMT IBM DSCLI Version: 5.0.4.140
Disk Name Volume Id          Vpath Name
=====
c38t0d5   IBM.2107-7503461/1105 ---
c38t0d6   IBM.2107-7503461/1106
```

---

### **HP-UX or Solaris: Mapping disks when using SDD**

In Example 14-38, we have a Solaris host that has SDD installed. We have two volumes assigned to this host, 4205 and 4206. Each volume has two paths. The Solaris command **iostat -En** can also produce similar information. The output of **lshostvol** on an HP-UX host looks exactly the same, with each vpath made up of disks with controller, target, and disk (c-t-d) numbers. However, the addresses used in the example for the Solaris host would not work in an HP-UX system.

**Attention:** Current releases of HP-UX only support addresses up to 3FFF.

*Example 14-38 lshostvol on a Solaris host that has SDD*

---

```
dscli> lshostvol
Date/Time: November 10, 2005 3:54:27 PM MET IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204
Disk Name           Volume Id          Vpath Name
=====
c2t1d0s0,c3t1d0s0 IBM.2107-7520781/4205 vpath2
c2t1d1s0,c3t1d1s0 IBM.2107-7520781/4206 vpath1
```

---

### **Solaris: Mapping disks when not using SDD**

In Example 14-39, we have a Solaris host that does not have SDD installed. It instead uses an alternative multipathing product. We have two volumes assigned to this host, 4200 and 4201. Each volume has two paths. The Solaris command **iostat -En** can also produce similar information.

*Example 14-39 lshostvol on a Solaris host that does not have SDD*

---

```
dscli> lshostvol
Date/Time: November 10, 2005 3:58:29 PM MET IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204
Disk Name Volume Id          Vpath Name
=====
c6t1d0   IBM-2107.7520781/4200 ---
c6t1d1   IBM-2107.7520781/4201 ---
c7t2d0   IBM-2107.7520781/4200 ---
c7t2d1   IBM-2107.7520781/4201 ---
```

---

### **Windows: Mapping disks when not using SDD or using SDDDSM**

In Example 14-40, we run **lshostvol** on a Windows host that does not use SDD or uses SDDDSM. The disks are listed by Windows Disk number. If you want to know which disk is associated with which drive letter, you need to look at the Windows Disk manager.

*Example 14-40 lshostvol on a Windows host that does not use SDD or uses SDDDSM*

---

```
dscli> lshostvol
Date/Time: October 18, 2007 10:53:45 AM CEST IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.991
Disk Name Volume Id          Vpath Name
=====
Disk2    IBM.2107-7520781/4702 ---
Disk3    IBM.2107-75ABTV1/4702 ---
Disk4    IBM.2107-7520781/1710 ---
Disk5    IBM.2107-75ABTV1/1004 ---
Disk6    IBM.2107-75ABTV1/1009 ---
Disk7    IBM.2107-75ABTV1/100A ---
Disk8    IBM.2107-7503461/4702 ---
```

---

### **Windows: Mapping disks when using SDD**

In Example 14-41, we run **lshostvol** on a Windows host that uses SDD. The disks are listed by Windows Disk number. If you want to know which disk is associated with which drive letter, you need to look at the Windows Disk manager.

*Example 14-41 lshostvol on a Windows host that does not use SDD*

---

```
dscli> lshostvol
Date/Time: October 18, 2007 11:03:27 AM CEST IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.991
Disk Name Volume Id          Vpath Name
=====
Disk2,Disk2 IBM.2107-7503461/4703 Disk2
Disk3,Disk3 IBM.2107-7520781/4703 Disk3
Disk4,Disk4 IBM.2107-75ABTV1/4703 Disk4
```

---

## 14.5 Configuring DS8000 Storage for Count Key Data Volumes

To configure the DS8000 storage for count key data (CKD) volumes, you follow almost exactly the same steps as for fixed block (FB) volumes. There is one additional step, which is to create Logical Control Units (LCUs):

1. Create arrays.
2. Create CKD ranks.
3. Create CKD Extent Pools.
4. Optionally, create repositories for Track Space Efficient volumes.
5. Create LCUs.
6. Create CKD volumes.

You do not have to create volume groups or host connects for CKD volumes. If there are I/O ports in Fibre Channel connection (FICON) mode, access to CKD volumes by FICON hosts is granted automatically.

### 14.5.1 Create arrays

Array creation for CKD is exactly the same as for fixed block (FB). See 14.4.1, “Create arrays” on page 370.

### 14.5.2 Ranks and Extent Pool creation

When creating ranks and Extent Pools, you need to specify -stgtype ckd, as shown in Example 14-42.

*Example 14-42 Rank and Extent Pool creation for CKD*

---

```
dscli> mkrank -array A0 -stgtype ckd
Date/Time: 28 October 2005 0:05:31 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-7503461
CMUC00007I mkrank: Rank R0 successfully created.

dscli> lsrank
Date/Time: 28 October 2005 0:07:51 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-7503461
ID Group State      datastate Array RAIDtype extpoolID stgtype
=====
R0   - Unassigned Normal    A0          6 -       ckd

dscli> mkextpool -rankgrp 0 -stgtype ckd CKD_High_0
Date/Time: 28 October 2005 0:13:53 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-7503461
CMUC00000I mkextpool: Extent Pool P0 successfully created.

dscli> chrank -extpool P2 R0
Date/Time: 28 October 2005 0:14:19 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-7503461
CMUC00008I chrank: Rank R0 successfully modified.

dscli> lsextpool
Date/Time: 28 October 2005 0:14:28 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204 DS: IBM.2107-7503461
Name      ID stgtype rankgrp status availstor (2^30B) %allocated available reserved numvol
=====
CKD_High_0 2 ckd           0 below        252      0     287      0      0
```

---

### Creating a Space Efficient repository for CKD Extent Pools

If the DS8000 has the IBM FlashCopy SE feature, you can create Track Space Efficient (TSE) volumes that can be used as FlashCopy targets. Before you can create TSE volumes, you must create a Space Efficient repository in the Extent Pool. The repository provides space to store the data associated with TSE logical volumes. Only one repository is allowed per Extent Pool. A repository has a physical capacity that is available for storage allocations

by TSE volumes and a virtual capacity that is the sum of LUN/volume sizes of all Space Efficient volumes. The physical repository capacity is allocated when the repository is created. If there are several ranks in the Extent Pool, the repository's extents are striped across the ranks (Storage Pool Striping).

Space Efficient repository creation for CKD Extent Pools is identical to that of FB Extent Pools, with the exception that the size of the repository's real capacity and virtual capacity are expressed either in cylinders or as multiples of 3390 model 1 disks (the default for CKD Extent Pools), instead of in GB or blocks, which apply to FB Extent Pools only.

Example 14-43 shows the creation of a repository.

---

*Example 14-43 Creating a Space Efficient repository for CKD volumes*

---

```
dscli> mksestg -repcap 100 -vircap 200 -extpool p1
Date/Time: 06 May 2010 10:30:19 PDT IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.1.193 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00342I mksestg: The space-efficient storage for the Extent Pool P1 has been
created successfully.
```

---

You can obtain information about the repository with the **showsestg** command. Example 14-44 shows the output of the **showsestg** command. You might particularly be interested in how much capacity is used in the repository; to obtain this information, check the repcapalloc value.

---

*Example 14-44 Getting information about a Space Efficient CKD repository*

---

```
dscli> showsestg p1
Date/Time: 06 May 2010 11:00:00 PDT IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.1.193 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
extpool          P1
stgtype         ckd
datastate       Normal
configstate    Normal
repcapstatus   below
%repcapthreshold 0
repcap(GiB)    88.1
repcap(Mod1)   100.0
repcap(blocks) -
repcap(cyl)    111300
repcapalloc(GiB/Mod1) 0.0
%repcapalloc   0
vircap(GiB)    176.2
vircap(Mod1)   200.0
vircap(blocks) -
vircap(cyl)    222600
vircapalloc(GiB/Mod1) 0.0
%vircapalloc   0
overhead(GiB/Mod1) 4.0
reqrepcap(GiB/Mod1) 100.0
reqvircap(GiB/Mod1) 200.0
```

---

Note that some storage is allocated for the repository in addition to repcap size. In Example 14-44, the line that starts with overhead indicates that 4 GB had been allocated in addition to the repcap size.

A repository can be deleted by using the **rmsestg** command.

**Important:** In the current implementation, it is not possible to expand a repository. The physical size or the virtual size of the repository cannot be changed. Therefore, careful planning is required. If you have to expand a repository, you must delete all TSE volumes and the repository itself and then create a new repository.

### 14.5.3 Logical control unit creation

When creating volumes for a CKD environment, you must create Logical Control Units (LCUs) before creating the volumes. In Example 14-45, you can see what happens if you try to create a CKD volume without creating an LCU first.

*Example 14-45 Trying to create CKD volumes without an LCU*

```
dscli> mkckdvol -extpool p2 -cap 262668 -name ITSO_EAV1_#h C200
Date/Time: 8 May 2008 18h:49min:13s DSCLI Version: 5.4.0.520 DS: IBM.2107-75BA082
CMUN02282E mkckdvol: C200: Unable to create CKD logical volume: CKD volumes
require a CKD logical subsystem.
```

We must use the **mklcu** command first. The format of the command is:

```
mklcu -qty XX -id XX -ssXX
```

To display the LCUs that we have created, we use the **lslcu** command.

In Example 14-46, we create two LCUs using the **mklcu** command, and then list the created LCUs using the **lslcu** command. Note that by default the LCUs that were created are 3990-6.

*Example 14-46 Creating a logical control unit with mklcu*

```
dscli> mklcu -qty 2 -id BC -ss BC00
Date/Time: 8 May 2008 18h:54min:42s IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.0.520 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00017I mklcu: LCU BC successfully created.
CMUC00017I mklcu: LCU BD successfully created.
dscli> lslcu
Date/Time: 8 May 2008 18h:55min:44s IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.0.520 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
ID Group addrrgrp configvols subsys convbasetype
=====
BC      0 C          0 0xBC00 3990-6
BD      1 C          0 0xBC01 3990-6
```

Also note that because we created two LCUs (using the parameter -qty 2), the first LCU, ID BC (an even number), is in address group 0, which equates to rank group 0, while the second LCU, ID BD (an odd number), is in address group 1, which equates to rank group 1. By placing the LCUs into both address groups, we maximize performance by spreading workload across both rank groups of the DS8000.

**Note:** For the DS8000, the CKD LCUs can be ID 00 to ID FE. The LCUs fit into one of 16 address groups. Address group 0 is LCUs 00 to 0F, address group 1 is LCUs 10 to 1F, and so on. If you create a CKD LCU in an address group, then that address group cannot be used for FB volumes. Likewise, if there were, for example, FB volumes in LSS 40 to 4F (address group 4), then that address group cannot be used for CKD. Be aware of this limitation when planning the volume layout in a mixed FB/CKD DS8000.

#### 14.5.4 Create CKD volumes

Having created an LCU, we can now create CKD volumes by using the `mkckdvol` command. The format of the `mkckdvol` command is:

```
mkckdvol -extpool P2 -cap 262668 -datatype 3390-A -eam rotatevols -name  
ITSO_EAV1_#h BC06
```

The major difference to note here is that the capacity is expressed in either cylinders or as CKD extents (1,113 cylinders). In order to not waste space, use volume capacities that are a multiple of 1,113 cylinders. Also new is the support of DS8000 Licensed Machine Code 5.4.xx.xx for Extended Address Volumes (EAV). This support expands the maximum size of a CKD volume to 262,668 cylinders and creates a new device type, 3390 Model A. This new volume can only be used by IBM z/OS systems running V1.10 or later versions.

**Note:** For 3390-A volumes, the size can be specified from 1 to 65,520 in increments of 1 and from 65,667 (next multiple of 1113) to 262,668 in increments of 1113.

In Example 14-47, we create a single 3390-A volume using 262,668 cylinders.

*Example 14-47 Creating CKD volumes using mkckdvol*

```
dscli> mkckdvol -extpool P2 -cap 262668 -datatype 3390-A -eam rotatevols -name ITSO_EAV1_#h BC06  
Date/Time: 8 May 2008 13h38min13s IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.0.520 DS: IBM.2107-75BA082  
CMUC00021I mkckdvol: CKD Volume BC06 successfully created.  
dscli> lsckdvol  
Date/Time: 8 May 2008 13h38min34s IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.0.520 DS: IBM.2107-75BA082  
Name ID accstate datastate configstate deviceMTM voltype orgbvals extpool cap (cyl)  
=====  
ITSO_BC00 BC00 Online Normal Normal 3390-9 CKD Base - P2 10017  
ITSO_BC01 BC01 Online Normal Normal 3390-9 CKD Base - P2 10017  
ITSO_BC02 BC02 Online Normal Normal 3390-9 CKD Base - P2 10017  
ITSO_BC03 BC03 Online Normal Normal 3390-9 CKD Base - P2 10017  
ITSO_BC04 BC04 Online Normal Normal 3390-9 CKD Base - P2 10017  
ITSO_BC05 BC05 Online Normal Normal 3390-9 CKD Base - P2 10017  
ITSO_EAV1_BC06 BC06 Online Normal Normal 3390-A CKD Base - P2 262668  
ITSO_BD00 BD00 Online Normal Normal 3390-9 CKD Base - P3 10017  
ITSO_BD01 BD01 Online Normal Normal 3390-9 CKD Base - P3 10017  
ITSO_BD02 BD02 Online Normal Normal 3390-9 CKD Base - P3 10017  
ITSO_BD03 BD03 Online Normal Normal 3390-9 CKD Base - P3 10017  
ITSO_BD04 BD04 Online Normal Normal 3390-9 CKD Base - P3 10017  
ITSO_BD05 BD05 Online Normal Normal 3390-9 CKD Base - P3 10017
```

Remember, we can only create CKD volumes in LCUs that we have already created.

You also need to be aware that volumes in even numbered LCUs must be created from an Extent Pool that belongs to rank group 0, while volumes in odd numbered LCUs must be created from an Extent Pool in rank group 1.

#### Storage pool striping

When creating a volume, you have a choice about how the volume is allocated in an Extent Pool with several ranks. The extents of a volume can be kept together in one rank (as long as there is enough free space on that rank). The next rank is used when the next volume is created. This allocation method is called *rotate volumes*.

You can also specify that you want the extents of the volume to be evenly distributed across all ranks within the Extent Pool. This allocation method is called *rotate extents*.

The extent allocation method is specified with the -eam rotateexts or -eam rotatevols option of the **mkckdvol** command (see Example 14-48).

*Example 14-48 Creating a CKD volume with Extent Pool striping*

```
dscli> mkckdvol -extpool p4 -cap 10017 -name ITSO-CKD-STRP -eam rotateexts 0080
Date/Time: October 17, 2007 4:26:29 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.977 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00021I mkckdvol: CKD Volume 0080 successfully created.
```

The **showckdvol** command with the -rank option (see Example 14-49) shows that the volume we created is distributed across two ranks and how many extents on each rank were allocated for this volume.

*Example 14-49 Getting information about a striped CKD volume*

```
dscli> showckdvol -rank 0080
Date/Time: October 17, 2007 4:28:47 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.977 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
Name          ITSO-CKD-STRP
ID            0080
accstate      Online
datastate     Normal
configstate   Normal
deviceMTM    3390-9
volser        -
datatype     CKD Base
orgbvois     -
addrgrp      0
extpool      P4
exts         9
cap (cyl)    10017
cap (10^9B)  8.5
cap (2^30B)   7.9
ranks        2
sam          Standard
repcapalloc  -
eam          rotateexts
reqcap (cyl) 10017
=====Rank extents=====
rank extents
=====
R4          4
R30         5
```

## Track Space Efficient volumes

When your DS8000 has the IBM FlashCopy SE feature, you can create Track Space Efficient (TSE) volumes to be used as FlashCopy target volumes. A repository must exist in the Extent Pool where you plan to allocate TSE volumes (see “Creating a Space Efficient repository for CKD Extent Pools” on page 386).

A Track Space Efficient volume is created by specifying the -sam tse parameter with the **mkckdvol** command (see Example 14-50).

*Example 14-50 Creating a Space Efficient CKD volume*

```
dscli> mkckdvol -extpool p4 -cap 10017 -name ITSO-CKD-SE -sam tse 0081
Date/Time: October 17, 2007 4:34:10 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.977 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00021I mkckdvol: CKD Volume 0081 successfully created.
```

When listing Space Efficient repositories with the **lssesstg** command (see Example 14-51), we can see that in Extent Pool P4 we have a virtual allocation of 7.9 GB, but that the allocated (used) capacity repcapalloc is still zero.

*Example 14-51 Getting information about Space Efficient CKD repositories*

```
dscli> lssesstg -1
Date/Time: October 17, 2007 4:37:34 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.977 DS: IBM.2107-7520781
extentpoolID stgttype datastate configstate repcapstatus %repcapthreshold repcap (2^30B) vircap repcapalloc vircapalloc
=====
P4      ckd    Normal   Normal     below          0    100.0  200.0    0.0    7.9
```

This allocation comes from the volume just created. To see the allocated space in the repository for just this volume, we can use the **showckdvol** command (see Example 14-52).

*Example 14-52 Checking the repository usage for a CKD volume*

```
dscli> showckdvol 0081
Date/Time: October 17, 2007 4:49:18 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.977 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
Name      ITSO-CKD-SE
ID        0081
accstate  Online
datastate Normal
configstate Normal
deviceMTM 3390-9
volser    -
datatype  3390
voltype   CKD Base
orgbvol   -
addrgrp   0
extpool   P4
exts      9
cap (cyl) 10017
cap (10^9B) 8.5
cap (2^30B) 7.9
ranks     0
sam       TSE
repcapalloc 0
eam      -
reqcap (cyl) 10017
```

## Dynamic Volume Expansion

A volume can be expanded without having to remove the data within the volume. You can specify a new capacity by using the **chckdvol** command (see Example 14-53). The new capacity must be larger than the previous one; you *cannot* shrink the volume.

### Example 14-53 Expanding a striped CKD volume

```
dscli> chckdvol -cap 30051 0080
Date/Time: October 17, 2007 4:54:09 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.977 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00332W chckdvol: Some host operating systems do not support changing the
volume size. Are you sure that you want to resize the volume? [y/n]: y
CMUC00022I chckdvol: CKD Volume 0080 successfully modified.
```

Because the original volume had the `rotateexts` attribute, the additional extents are also striped (see Example 14-54).

### Example 14-54 Checking the status of an expanded CKD volume

```
dscli> showckdvol -rank 0080
Date/Time: October 17, 2007 4:56:01 IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.977 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
Name      ITSO-CKD-STRP
ID        0080
accstate  Online
datastate Normal
configstate Normal
deviceMTM 3390-9
volser    -
datatype  3390
voltype   CKD Base
orgbvol  -
addrgrp   0
extpool   P4
exts      27
cap (cyl) 30051
cap (10^9B) 25.5
cap (2^30B) 23.8
ranks     2
sam       Standard
repcaalloc -
eam      rotateexts
reqcap (cyl) 30051
=====
rank extents
=====
R4        13
R30      14
```

**Note:** Before you can expand a volume, you first have to delete all Copy Services relationships for that volume, and you may not specify both `-cap` and `-datatype` for the **chckdvol** command.

It is possible to expand a 3390 Model 9 volume to a 3390 Model A. You can do that just by specifying a new capacity for an existing Model 9 volume. When you increase the size of a 3390-9 volume beyond 65,520 cylinders, its device type automatically changes to 3390-A.

However, keep in mind that a 3390 Model A can only be used in z/OS V1.10 and later (see Example 14-55).

*Example 14-55 Expanding a 3390 to a 3390-A*

---

\*\*\* Command to show CKD volume definition before expansion:

```
dscli> showckdvol BC07
Date/Time: 8 May 2008 19h46min45s IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.0.520 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
Name      ITSO_EAV2_BC07
ID       BC07
accstate   Online
datastate  Normal
configstate Normal
deviceMTM  3390-9
volser     -
datatype   3390
voltype    CKD Base
orgbvol    -
addrgrp   B
extpool   P2
exts      9
cap (cyl) 10017
cap (10^9B) 8.5
cap (2^30B) 7.9
ranks     1
sam       Standard
repcapalloc -
eam       rotatevols
reqcap (cyl) 10017
```

\*\*\* Command to expand CKD volume from 3390-9 to 3390-A:

```
dscli> chckdvol -cap 262668 BC07
Date/Time: 8 May 2008 19h51min47s IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.0.520 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
CMUC00332W chckdvol: Some host operating systems do not support changing the
volume size. Are you sure that you want to resize the volume? [y/n]: y
CMUC00022I chckdvol: CKD Volume BC07 successfully modified.
```

\*\*\* Command to show CKD volume definition after expansion:

```
dscli> showckdvol BC07
Date/Time: 8 May 2008 19h52min34s IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.0.520 DS: IBM.2107-xxx
Name      ITSO_EAV2_BC07
ID       BC07
accstate   Online
datastate  Normal
configstate Normal
deviceMTM  3390-A
volser     -
datatype   3390-A
voltype    CKD Base
orgbvol    -
addrgrp   B
extpool   P2
```

---

```
exts      236
cap (cyl) 262668
cap (10^9B) 223.3
cap (2^30B) 207.9
ranks     1
sam       Standard
repcapalloc -
eam       rotatevols
reqcap (cyl) 262668
```

---

You cannot reduce the size of a volume. If you try, an error message is displayed, as shown in Example 14-56.

*Example 14-56 Reducing a volume size*

---

```
dscli> chckdvol -cap 10017 BC07
Date/Time: 8 May 2008 20h8min40s IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.0.520 DS: IBM.2107-75BA082
CMUC00332W chckdvol: Some host operating systems do not support changing the
volume size. Are you sure that you want to resize the volume? [y/n]: y
CMUN02541E chckdvol: BC07: The expand logical volume task was not initiated
because the logical volume capacity that you have requested is less than the
current logical volume capacity.
```

---

## Deleting volumes

CKD volumes can be deleted by using the **rmckdvol** command. FB volumes can be deleted by using the **rmfbvol** command.

Starting with Licensed Machine Code (LMC) level 6.5.1.xx, the command includes a new capability to prevent the accidental deletion of volumes that are in use. A CKD volume is considered to be in use if it is participating in a Copy Services relationship, or if the IBM System z path mask indicates that the volume is in a “grouped state” or online to any host system. A CKD volume is considered to be in use if it is participating in a Copy Services relationship, or if the volume has had any I/O in the last five minutes.

If the **-force** parameter is not specified with the command, volumes that are in use are not deleted. If multiple volumes are specified and some are in use and some are not, the ones not in use will be deleted. If the **-force** parameter is specified on the command, the volumes will be deleted without checking to see whether or not they are in use.

In Example 14-57, we try to delete two volumes, 0900 and 0901. Volume 0900 is online to a host, while 0901 is not online to any host and not in a Copy Services relationship. The **rmckdvol 0900-0901** command deletes just volume 0901, which is offline. To delete volume 0900, we use the **-force** parameter.

*Example 14-57 Deleting CKD volumes*

---

```
dscli> lsckdvol 0900-0901
Date/Time: 20 May 2010 15:16:13 PDT IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.1.193 DS: IBM.2107-75LH311
Name   ID   accstate datastate configstate deviceMTM voltype orgbvol extpool cap (cyl)
=====
ITSO_J 0900 Online    Normal    Normal    3390-9    CKD Base -      P1      10017
ITSO_J 0901 Online    Normal    Normal    3390-9    CKD Base -      P1      10017

dscli> rmckdvol -quiet 0900-0901
Date/Time: 20 May 2010 15:16:30 PDT IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.1.193 DS: IBM.2107-75LH311
```

```
CMUN02948E rmckdvol: 0900: The Delete logical volume task cannot be initiated because the  
Allow Host Pre-check Control Switch is set to true and the volume that you have specified  
is online to a host.
```

```
CMUC00024I rmckdvol: CKD volume 0901 successfully deleted.
```

```
dscli> lsckdvol 0900-0901  
Date/Time: 20 May 2010 15:16:57 PDT IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.1.193 DS: IBM.2107-75LH311  
Name ID accstate datastate configstate deviceMTM voltype orgbvals extpool cap (cyl)  
=====
```

```
ITSO_J 0900 Online Normal Normal 3390-9 CKD Base - P1 10017
```

```
dscli> rmckdvol -force 0900  
Date/Time: 20 May 2010 15:18:13 PDT IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.1.193 DS: IBM.2107-75LH311  
CMUC00023W rmckdvol: Are you sure you want to delete CKD volume 0900? [y/n]: y  
CMUC00024I rmckdvol: CKD volume 0900 successfully deleted.
```

```
dscli> lsckdvol 0900-0901  
Date/Time: 20 May 2010 15:18:26 PDT IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.1.193 DS: IBM.2107-75LH311  
CMUC00234I lsckdvol: No CKD Volume found.
```

---



# Host considerations

In this part, we discuss the specific host considerations that you might need for implementing the IBM System Storage DS8000 series with your chosen platform. We cover the following host platforms:

- ▶ Open systems considerations
- ▶ IBM System z considerations
- ▶ IBM System i considerations

**Note:** This part was taken from *IBM System Storage DS8000: Architecture and Implementation*, SG24-6786, and has *not* been updated specifically for the DS8700.





# Open systems considerations

This chapter discusses the specifics for attaching IBM System Storage DS8000 series systems to host systems running the following operating system platforms:

- ▶ Windows
- ▶ AIX
- ▶ Linux
- ▶ OpenVMS
- ▶ Sun Solaris
- ▶ Hewlett-Packard UNIX (HP-UX)

Also, several general considerations are discussed at the beginning of this chapter.

**Note:** The information presented here was taken from *IBM System Storage DS8000: Architecture and Implementation*, SG24-6786, and has not been updated specifically for the DS8700.

## 15.1 General considerations

In this section, we cover several topics that are not specific to a single operating system. This includes available documentation, links to additional information, and considerations common to all platforms.

### 15.1.1 Getting up-to-date information

This section provides a list of online resources where you can find detailed and up-to-date information about supported configurations, recommended settings, device driver versions, and so on. Due to the high innovation rate in the IT industry, the support information is updated frequently. Therefore, we advise that you visit these resources regularly and check for updates.

#### IBM System Storage Interoperability Center

For information about supported Fibre Channel HBAs and the recommended or required firmware and device driver levels for all IBM storage systems, you can visit the *IBM System Storage Interoperation Center (SSIC)* at the following address:

[http://www-03.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/ssic/displayesssearchwithoutjs.wss?start\\_over=yes](http://www-03.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/ssic/displayesssearchwithoutjs.wss?start_over=yes)

For each query, select a storage system, a server model, an operating system, and an HBA type. Each query shows a list of all supported HBAs together with the required firmware and device driver levels for your combination. Furthermore, a list of supported SAN switches and directors is displayed.

#### DS8000 Host Systems Attachment Guide

The *IBM System Storage DS8000 Host Systems Attachment Guide*, SC26-7917 guides you in detail through all the required steps to attach an open systems host to your DS8000 storage system. It is available at the following website (click **Documentation** on that site):

<http://www-304.ibm.com/jct01004c/systems/support/supportsite.wss/supportresources?taskkind=3&brandind=5000028&familyind=5329633>

#### General link to installation documentation

Sometimes links change. Good starting points to find documentation and troubleshooting information are available at the following address:

<http://www.ibm.com/support/us/en/>

#### HBA vendor resources

All of the Fibre Channel HBA vendors have websites that provide information about their products, facts, and features, as well as support information. These sites are useful when you need details that cannot be supplied by IBM resources, for example, when troubleshooting an HBA driver. Be aware that IBM cannot be held responsible for the content of these sites.

#### QLogic Corporation

The Qlogic website can be found at the following address:

<http://www.qlogic.com>

QLogic maintains a page that lists all the HBAs, drivers, and firmware versions that are supported for attachment to IBM storage systems, which can be found at the following address:

[http://support.qlogic.com/support/oem\\_ibm.asp](http://support.qlogic.com/support/oem_ibm.asp)

### ***Emulex Corporation***

The Emulex home page is at the following address:

<http://www.emulex.com>

They also have a page with content specific to IBM storage systems at the following address:

<http://www.emulex.com/products/host-bus-adapters/ibm-branded.html>

### ***JNI/AMCC***

AMCC took over JNI, but still markets Fibre Channel (FC) HBAs under the JNI brand name. JNI HBAs are supported for DS8000 attachment to SUN systems. The home page is at the following address:

<http://www.appliedmicro.com/>

Their IBM storage specific support page is at the following address:

<http://www.appliedmicro.com/drivers/IBM.html>

### ***Atto***

Atto supplies HBAs, which IBM supports for Apple Macintosh attachment to the DS8000. Their home page is at the following address:

<http://www.attotech.com>

They have no IBM storage specific page. Their support page is at the following address:

<http://www.attotech.com/solutions/ibm.html>

You must register to download drivers and utilities for their HBAs.

## **Platform and operating system vendor pages**

The platform and operating system vendors also provide much support information for their clients. Refer to this information for general guidance about connecting their systems to SAN-attached storage. However, be aware that in some cases you cannot find information to help you with third-party vendors. You should always check with IBM about interoperability and support from IBM in regard to these products. It is beyond the scope of this book to list all the vendors' websites.

### **15.1.2 Boot support**

For most of the supported platforms and operating systems, you can use the DS8000 as a boot device. The *DS8000 Interoperability Matrix* provides detailed information about boot support.

The *IBM System Storage DS8000 Host Systems Attachment Guide*, SC26-7917 helps you with the procedures necessary to set up your host to boot from the DS8000.

The *IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver User's Guide*, SC30-4131 also helps you identify the optimal configuration and lists the steps required to boot from multipathing devices.

### 15.1.3 Additional supported configurations

There is a process for cases where the configuration that you want is not represented in the support matrix. This process is called *Request for Price Quotation* (RPQ). Clients should contact their IBM storage sales specialist or IBM Business Partner for submission of an RPQ. Initiating the process does not guarantee that the configuration that you want will be supported. This depends on the technical feasibility and the required test effort. A configuration that equals or is similar to one of the already approved configurations is more likely to become approved than a completely different configuration.

### 15.1.4 Multipathing support: Subsystem Device Driver

To ensure maximum availability, most clients choose to connect their open systems hosts through more than one Fibre Channel path to their storage systems. With an intelligent SAN layout, this protects you from failures of FC HBAs, SAN components, and host ports in the storage subsystem.

Most operating systems, however, cannot deal natively with multiple paths to a single disk. This puts the data's integrity at risk, because multiple write requests can be issued to the same data and nothing takes care of the correct order of writes.

To utilize the redundancy and increased I/O bandwidth that you get with multiple paths, you need an additional layer in the operating system's disk subsystem to recombine the multiple disks seen by the HBAs into one logical disk. This layer manages path failover in case a path becomes unusable and balances I/O requests across the available paths.

#### Subsystem Device Driver

For most operating systems that are supported for DS8000 attachment, IBM makes available the IBM Subsystem Device Driver (SDD) at no cost to provide the following functionality:

- ▶ Enhanced data availability through automatic path failover and fallback
- ▶ Increased performance through dynamic I/O load balancing across multiple paths
- ▶ The ability for concurrent download of licensed internal code
- ▶ User configurable path selection policies for the host system

IBM Multipath Subsystem Device Driver (SDD) provides load balancing and enhanced data availability capability in configurations with more than one I/O path between the host server and the DS8000. SDD performs dynamic load balancing across all available preferred paths to ensure full utilization of the SAN and HBA resources.

SDD can be downloaded from the following address:

<http://www.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/software/sdd/downloading.html>

When you click the **Subsystem Device Driver downloads** link, a list of all the operating systems for which SDD is available appears. Selecting an operating system leads you to the download packages, the user's guide, and additional support information.

The user's guide, the *IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver User's Guide*, SC30-4131, contains all the information that is needed to install, configure, and use SDD for all supported operating systems.

**Note:** SDD and RDAC, the multipathing solution for the IBM System Storage DS4000® series, can coexist on most operating systems, as long as they manage separate HBA pairs. Refer to the DS4000 series documentation for detailed information.

## Other multipathing solutions

Some operating systems come with native multipathing software, for example:

- ▶ SUN StorEdge Traffic Manager for SUN Solaris
- ▶ HP PVLinks for HP-UX
- ▶ IBM AIX native multipathing I/O support (MPIO)
- ▶ IBM i5/OS V5R3 multipath support

In addition, there are third-party multipathing solutions, such as Veritas DMP, which is part of Veritas Volume Manager.

Most of these solutions are also supported for DS8000 attachment, although the scope can vary. There might be limitations for certain host bus adapters or operating system versions. Always consult the DS8000 Interoperability Matrix for the latest information.

## 15.2 Windows

DS8000 supports Fibre Channel attachment to Microsoft Windows 2000 Server, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Server 2008 servers. For details regarding operating system versions and HBA types, see the System Storage Interoperation Center (SSIC), available at the following address:

<http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/ssic/displayessearchwithoutjs.wss>

This support includes cluster service, and acts as a boot device. Booting is supported currently with host adapters QLA23xx (32-bit or 64-bit) and LP9xxx (32-bit only). For a detailed discussion about SAN booting (advantages, disadvantages, potential difficulties, and troubleshooting), we highly recommend the Microsoft document *Boot from SAN in Windows Server 2003 and Windows 2000 Server*, found at the following address:

<http://www.microsoft.com/windowsserversystem/wss2003/techinfo/plandeploy/BootfromSANinWindows.mspx>

### 15.2.1 HBA and operating system settings

Depending on the host bus adapter type, several HBA and driver settings might be required. Refer to the *IBM System Storage DS8000 Host Systems Attachment Guide*, SC26-7917 for the complete description of these settings. Although the volumes can be accessed with other settings, the values recommended there have been tested for robustness.

To ensure optimum availability and recoverability when you attach a storage unit to a Microsoft Windows 2000 Server, Windows Server 2003, or Windows 2008 host system, we recommend setting the value of the Time Out Value associated with the host adapters to 60 seconds. The operating system uses the Time Out Value parameter to bind its recovery actions and responses to the disk subsystem. The value is stored in the Windows registry in HKEY\_LOCAL\_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Services\Disk\TimeOutValue.

The value has the data type REG-DWORD and should be set to 0x0000003c hexadecimal (60 decimal).

## 15.2.2 SSD for Windows

An important task with a Windows host is the installation of the SDD multipath driver. Ensure that SDD is installed before adding additional paths to a device; otherwise, the operating system can lose the ability to access existing data on that device. For details, refer to the *IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver User's Guide*, SC30-4131.

Figure 15-1 shows an example of two disks connected by four paths to the server. You see two IBM 2107900 SSD Disk Devices as real disks on Windows. The IBM 2107900 SCSI Disk Device is hidden by SDD. The Disk Management view is shown in Figure 15-2.

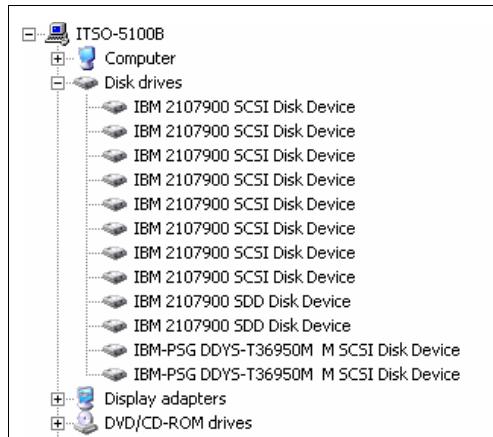


Figure 15-1 SSD devices on Windows Disk Management

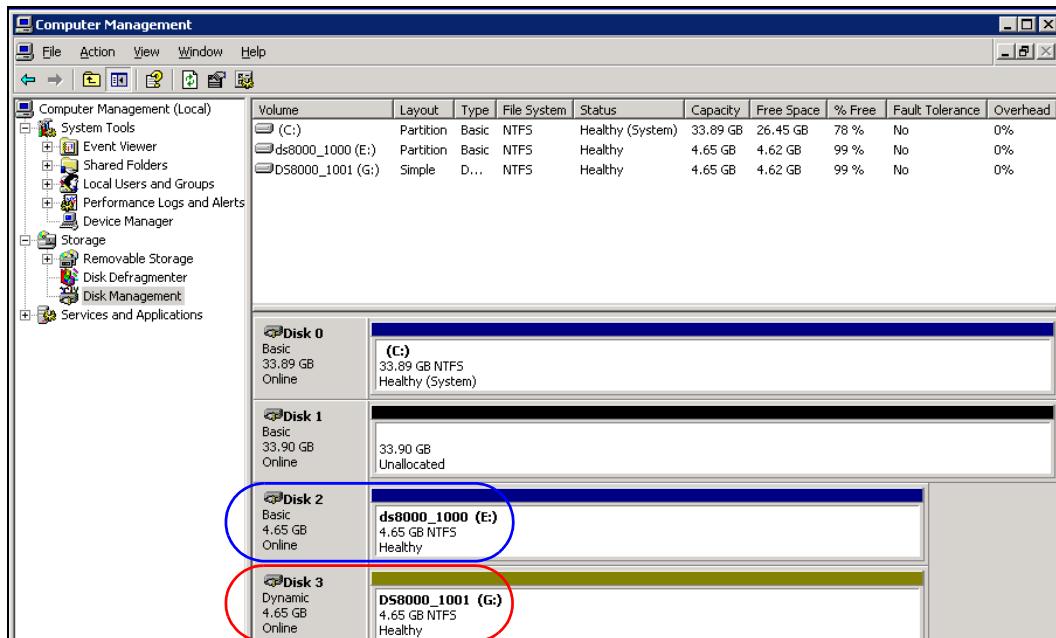


Figure 15-2 Disk Management view

**Note:** Newly assigned disks will be discovered; if not, go to Disk Manager and rescan the disks or go to the Device Manager and scan for hardware changes.

## SDD datapath query

When using the **datapath query device** command, the option -l is added to mark the nonpreferred paths with an asterisk.

Example 15-1 is a sample output of the command **datapath query device -l**. You see that all paths of the DS8000 will be used, because the DS8000 does not implement the concept of preferred path, as the DS6000 does.

*Example 15-1 Sample output of datapath query device -l*

---

```
Microsoft Windows [Version 5.2.3790]
(C) Copyright 1985-2003 Microsoft Corp.

C:\Program Files\IBM\Subsystem Device Driver>datapath query device -l

Total Devices : 2

DEV#: 0 DEVICE NAME: Disk2 Part0 TYPE: 2107900 POLICY: OPTIMIZED
SERIAL: 75065711000
LUN IDENTIFIER: 6005076303FFC0B600000000000000001000
=====
Path#          Adapter/Hard Disk  State   Mode    Select  Errors
  0   Scsi Port2 Bus0/Disk2 Part0  OPEN    NORMAL   22      0
  1   Scsi Port2 Bus0/Disk2 Part0  OPEN    NORMAL   32      0
  2   Scsi Port3 Bus0/Disk2 Part0  OPEN    NORMAL   40      0
  3   Scsi Port3 Bus0/Disk2 Part0  OPEN    NORMAL   32      0

DEV#: 1 DEVICE NAME: Disk3 Part0 TYPE: 2107900 POLICY: OPTIMIZED
SERIAL: 75065711001
LUN IDENTIFIER: 6005076303FFC0B60000000000000001001
=====
Path#          Adapter/Hard Disk  State   Mode    Select  Errors
  0   Scsi Port2 Bus0/Disk3 Part0  OPEN    NORMAL   6       0
  1   Scsi Port2 Bus0/Disk3 Part0  OPEN    NORMAL   4       0
  2   Scsi Port3 Bus0/Disk3 Part0  OPEN    NORMAL   4       0
  3   Scsi Port3 Bus0/Disk3 Part0  OPEN    NORMAL   2       0
```

---

Another helpful command is **datapath query wwpn**, which is in Example 15-2. It helps you obtain the Worldwide Port Name (WWPN) of your Fibre Channel adapter.

*Example 15-2 datapath query wwpn*

---

```
C:\Program Files\IBM\Subsystem Device Driver>datapath query wwpn
          Adapter Name      PortWWN
          Scsi Port2:     210000E08B037575
          Scsi Port3:     210000E08B033D76
```

---

The commands **datapath query essmap** and **datapath query portmap** are not available.

## Mapping SDD devices to Windows drive letters

When assigning DS8000 LUNs to a Windows host, it might be advantageous to understand which Windows drive letter is using which DS8000 LUN. To do this task, you need to use the information displayed by the **datapath query device** command, plus the information displayed in the Windows Disk Management window, and combine them.

In Example 15-1 on page 405, if we listed the vpaths, we can see that SDD DEV#: 0 has DEVICE NAME: Disk2. We can also see the serial number of the disk is 75065711000, which breaks out as LUN ID 1000 on DS8000 serial 7506571. We then need to look at the Windows Disk Management window, an example of which is shown in Figure 15-2 on page 404.

In this example, we can see that Disk 2 is Windows drive letter E; this entry is circled in blue in Figure 15-2 on page 404. SDD DEV#: 1 corresponds to the red circle around Windows drive letter G.

Now that we have mapped the LUN ID to a Windows drive letter, if drive letter E was no longer required on this Windows server, we can safely unassign LUN ID 1000 on the DS8000 with serial number 7506571, knowing that we have removed the correct drive.

### **Support for Windows 2000 Server and Windows Server 2003 clustering**

SDD 1.6.0.0 (or later) is required to support load balancing in Windows clustering. When running Windows clustering, clustering failover might not occur when the last path is being removed from the shared resources. For additional information, refer to Microsoft article Q294173 at the following address:

<http://support.microsoft.com/default.aspx?scid=kb;en-us;Q294173>

Windows does not support dynamic disks in the Microsoft Cluster Server (MSCS) environment.

### **Windows 2000 Server/Windows Server 2003 clustering environments**

There are subtle differences in the way that SDD handles path reclamation in a Windows clustering environment compared to a non-clustering environment. When the Windows server loses a path in a non-clustering environment, the path condition changes from open to dead and the adapter condition changes from active to degraded. The adapter and path condition will not change until the path is made operational again. When the Windows server loses a path in a clustering environment, the path condition changes from open to dead and the adapter condition changes from active to degraded. However, after a period of time, the path condition changes back to open and the adapter condition changes back to normal, even if the path has not been made operational again.

**Note:** The adapter goes to the DEGRAD state when there are active paths left on the adapter. It goes to FAILED state when there are no active paths.

The **datapath set adapter # offline** command operates differently in a clustering environment as compared to a non-clustering environment. In a clustering environment, the **datapath set adapter offline** command does not change the condition of the path if the path is active or being reserved. If you issue the command, the following message displays:  
to preserve access some paths left online

#### **15.2.3 Windows 2003 and Multi Path Input Output**

Microsoft Multi Path Input Output (MPIO) solutions are designed to work in conjunction with device-specific modules (DSMs) written by vendors, but the MPIO driver package does not, by itself, form a complete solution. This joint solution allows the storage vendors to design device-specific solutions that are tightly integrated with the Windows operating system.

**MPIO drivers:** MPIO is not shipped with the Windows operating system; storage vendors must pack the MPIO drivers with their own DSM. IBM Subsystem Device Driver Device Specific Module (SDDDSM) is the IBM multipath IO solution based on Microsoft MPIO technology. It is a device-specific module specifically designed to support IBM storage devices on Windows 2003 servers.

The intention of MPIO is to better integrate a multipath storage solution with the operating system, and allows the use of multipathing in the SAN infrastructure during the boot process for SAN boot hosts.

#### 15.2.4 SDD Device Specific Module for Windows 2003 and 2008

The Subsystem Device Driver Device Specific Module (SDDDSM) installation is a package for DS8000 devices on the Windows Server 2003 and Windows Server 2008.

Together with MPIO, it is designed to support the multipath configuration environments in the IBM System Storage DS8000. It resides in a host system with the native disk device driver and provides the following functions:

- ▶ Enhanced data availability
- ▶ Dynamic I/O load-balancing across multiple paths
- ▶ Automatic path failover protection
- ▶ Concurrent download of licensed internal code
- ▶ Path selection policies for the host system

Also be aware of the following limitations:

- ▶ SDDDSM does not support Windows 2000
- ▶ SDD is *not* supported on Windows 2008
- ▶ For an HBA driver, SDDDSM requires the storport version of the HBA miniport driver

SDDDSM can be downloaded from the following address:

[http://www-1.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?rs=540&context=ST52G7&dc=D430&uid=ssg1S4000350&lo=en\\_US&cs=utf-8&lang=en](http://www-1.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?rs=540&context=ST52G7&dc=D430&uid=ssg1S4000350&lo=en_US&cs=utf-8&lang=en)

#### SDDDSM for DS8000

Ensure that SDDDSM is installed before adding additional paths to a device; otherwise, the operating system can lose the ability to access existing data on that device. For details, refer to the *IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver User's Guide*, SC30-4131.

In Figure 15-3, you see an example of three disks connected by two paths to the server. You see three IBM 2107900 Multi-Path Disk Devices as real disks on Windows. The IBM 2107900 SCSI Disk Device is hidden by SDDDSM. The Disk Manager view with the initialized disks is shown in Figure 15-4.

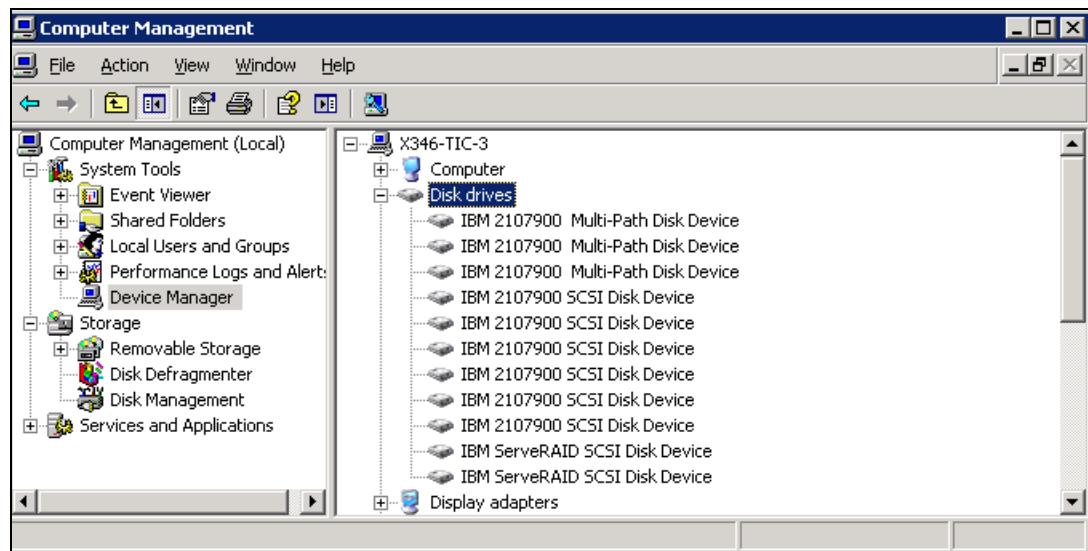


Figure 15-3 SDDDSM devices on Windows Device Manager

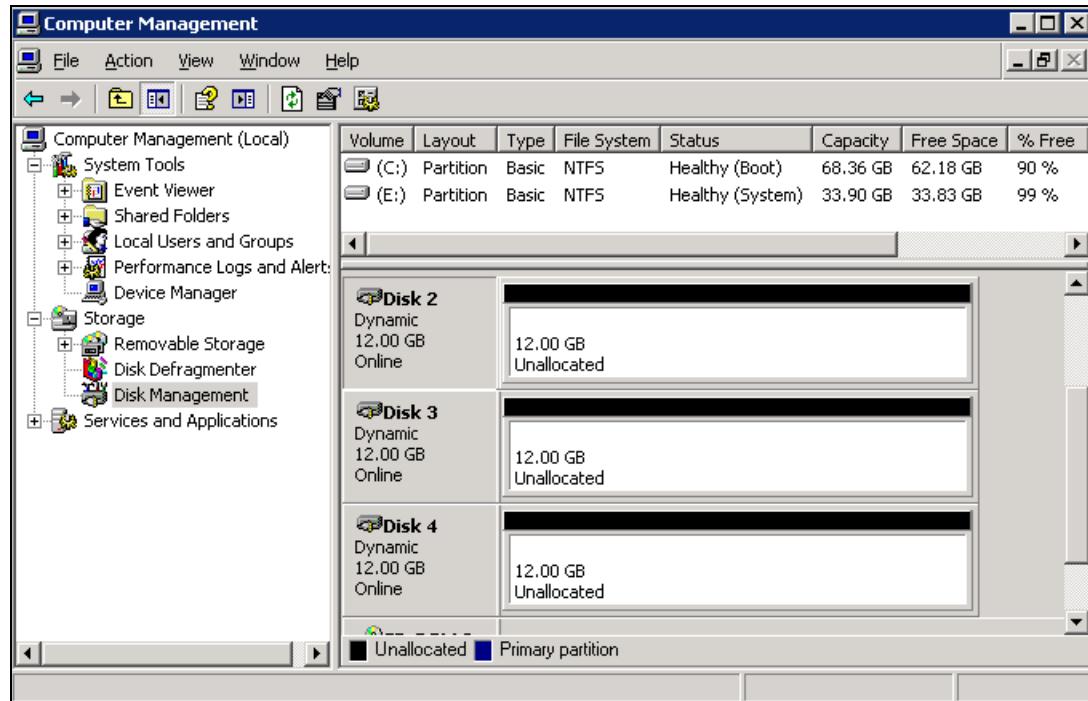


Figure 15-4 Disk manager view

**Note:** Newly assigned disks will be discovered; if not, go to the Disk Manager and rescan disks or go to the Device Manager and scan for hardware changes.

## SDDDSM datapath query

Example 15-3 shows a sample output of the command **datapath query device**. Note that all paths of the DS8000 will be used because the DS8000 does not implement the concept of a preferred path.

*Example 15-3 datapath query device with SDDDSM*

---

```
C:\Program Files\IBM\SDDDSM>datapath query device
```

```
Total Devices : 3
```

```
DEV#: 0 DEVICE NAME: Disk2 Part0 TYPE: 2107900 POLICY: OPTIMIZED  
SERIAL: 75207814703
```

```
=====
```

Path#	Adapter/Hard Disk	State	Mode	Select	Errors
0	Scsi Port1 Bus0/Disk2 Part0	OPEN	NORMAL	203	4
1	Scsi Port2 Bus0/Disk2 Part0	OPEN	NORMAL	173	1

```
DEV#: 1 DEVICE NAME: Disk3 Part0 TYPE: 2107900 POLICY: OPTIMIZED  
SERIAL: 75ABTV14703
```

```
=====
```

Path#	Adapter/Hard Disk	State	Mode	Select	Errors
0	Scsi Port1 Bus0/Disk3 Part0	OPEN	NORMAL	180	0
1	Scsi Port2 Bus0/Disk3 Part0	OPEN	NORMAL	158	0

```
DEV#: 2 DEVICE NAME: Disk4 Part0 TYPE: 2107900 POLICY: OPTIMIZED  
SERIAL: 75034614703
```

```
=====
```

Path#	Adapter/Hard Disk	State	Mode	Select	Errors
0	Scsi Port1 Bus0/Disk4 Part0	OPEN	NORMAL	221	0
1	Scsi Port2 Bus0/Disk4 Part0	OPEN	NORMAL	159	0

---

Another helpful command is **datapath query wwpn**, which is shown in Example 15-4. It helps you obtain the Worldwide Port Name (WWPN) of your Fibre Channel adapter.

*Example 15-4 datapath query WWPN with SDDDSM*

---

```
C:\Program Files\IBM\SDDDSM>datapath query wwpn
```

Adapter Name	PortWWN
Scsi Port1:	210000E08B1EAE9B
Scsi Port2:	210000E08B0B8836

---

The command **datapath query portmap** is shown in Example 15-5. It shows you a map of the DS8000 I/O ports and on which I/O ports your HBAs are connected.

*Example 15-5 datapath query portmap*

---

```
C:\Program Files\IBM\SDDDSM>datapath query portmap
```

ESSID	DISK	BAY-1(B1)				BAY-2(B2)				BAY-3(B3)				BAY-4(B4)			
		H1	H2	H3	H4	H1	H2	H3	H4	H1	H2	H3	H4	H1	H2	H3	H4
7520781	Disk2	ABCD	ABCD	ABCD	ABCD	ABCD	ABCD	ABCD	ABCD	ABCD	ABCD	ABCD	ABCD	ABCD	ABCD	ABCD	
	Disk3	Y-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	Y-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	
	Disk4	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	Y-----	
	75ABTV1																

---

```

Y = online/open           y = (alternate path) online/open
O = online/closed         o = (alternate path) online/close
N = offline               n = (alternate path) offline
- = path not configured
? = path information not available
PD = path down

```

Note: 2105 devices' essid has 5 digits, while 1750/2107 device's essid has 7 digits.

Another helpful command is **datapath query essmap**, which is shown in Example 15-6. It gives you additional information about your LUNs and also the I/O port numbers.

#### *Example 15-6 datapath query essmap*

C:\Program Files\IBM\SDDDSM>datapath query essmap															
Disk	Path	P	Location	LUN SN	Type	Size	LSS	Vol	Rank	C/A	S	Connection	Port	RaidMode	
Disk2	Path0	Port1	Bus0	75207814703	IBM	2107900	12.0GB	47	03	0000	2c	Y	R1-B2-H4-ZD	143	RAID5
Disk2	Path1	Port2	Bus0	75207814703	IBM	2107900	12.0GB	47	03	0000	2c	Y	R1-B4-H4-ZD	343	RAID5
Disk3	Path0	Port1	Bus0	75ABTV14703	IBM	2107900	12.0GB	47	03	0000	0b	Y	R1-B1-H1-ZA	0	RAID5
Disk3	Path1	Port2	Bus0	75ABTV14703	IBM	2107900	12.0GB	47	03	0000	0b	Y	R1-B2-H3-ZA	130	RAID5
Disk4	Path0	Port1	Bus0	75034614703	IBM	2107900	12.0GB	47	03	0000	0e	Y	R1-B2-H4-ZD	143	RAID5
Disk4	Path1	Port2	Bus0	75034614703	IBM	2107900	12.0GB	47	03	0000	0e	Y	R1-B4-H2-ZD	313	RAID5

## 15.2.5 Windows 2008 and SDDDSM

At the time of writing, Windows 2008 only supports SDDDSM. The datapath query commands on Windows 2008 have not been changed in comparison to Windows 2003. The Computer Manager window has changed slightly on Windows 2008 servers, as shown in Figure 15-5.

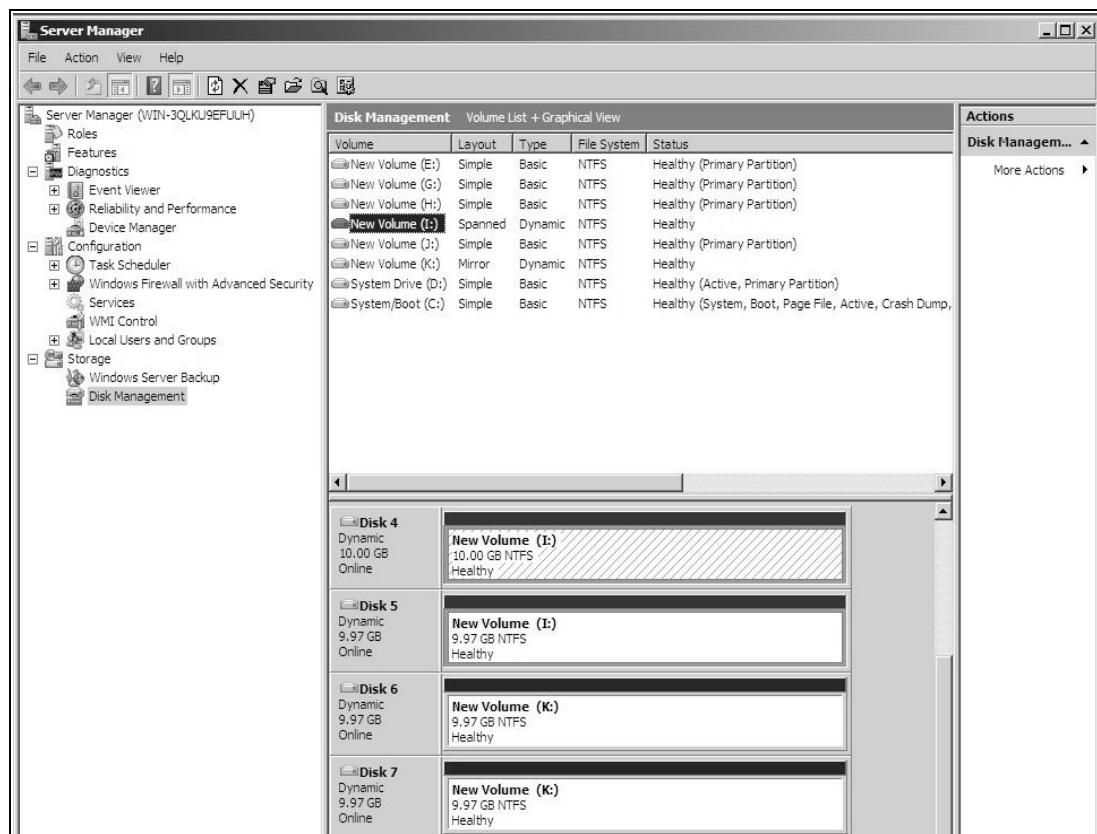


Figure 15-5 Disk Manager view

## 15.2.6 Dynamic Volume Expansion of a Windows 2000/2003/2008 volume

It is possible to expand a volume in the DS8000, even if it is mapped to a host. Some operating systems, such as Windows 2000/2003 and Windows 2008, can handle the volumes being expanded even if the host has applications running. A volume that is in a FlashCopy, Metro Mirror, or Global Mirror relationship cannot be expanded unless the relation is removed, which means the FlashCopy, Metro Mirror, or Global Mirror on that volume has to be removed before you can expand the volume.

If the volume is part of a Microsoft Cluster (MSCS), Microsoft recommends that you shut down all nodes except one, and that applications in the resource that use the volume that is going to be expanded are stopped before expanding the volume. Applications running in other resources can continue. After expanding the volume, start the application and the resource, and then restart the other nodes in the MSCS.

To expand a volume while it is in use on Windows 2000/2003 and Windows 2008, you can use either *Diskpart* for basic disks or *disk manager* for dynamic disks. The Diskpart tool is part of Windows 2003; for other Windows versions, you can download it at no cost from Microsoft. Diskpart is a tool developed to ease administration of storage. It is a command-line interface where you can manage disks, partitions, and volumes using scripts or direct input on the command line. You can list disks and volumes, select them, and, after selecting them, obtain more detailed information, create partitions, extend volumes, and more. For more information, see the Microsoft website at the following addresses:

<http://www.microsoft.com>

<http://support.microsoft.com/default.aspx?scid=kb;en-us;304736&sd=tech>

An example of how to expand a (DS8000) volume on a Windows 2003 host is shown in the following discussion.

To list the volume size, use the command **1sfbvol**, as shown in Example 15-7.

Example 15-7 *1sfbvol -fullid before volume expansion*

```
dscli> 1sfbvol -fullid 4703
Date/Time: October 18, 2007 12:02:07 PM CEST IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.991 DS: IBM.2107-7520781
Name          ID      accstate datastate configstate deviceMTM datatype extpool      cap(2^30B) cap(10^9B) cap(blocks)
=====
ITSO_x346_3_4703 IBM.2107-7520781/4703 Online  Normal   Normal    2107-900  FB 512  IBM.2107-7520781/P53   12.0   -   25165824
```

Here we can see that the capacity is 12 GB, and also what the volume ID is. To discover what disk this volume is on the Windows 2003 host, we use the SDDDSM command **datapath query device** on the Windows host, as shown in Example 15-8. To open a command window for SDDDSM, from your desktop, select **Start → Programs → Subsystem Device Driver DSM → Subsystem Device Driver DSM**.

Example 15-8 *datapath query device command before expansion*

```
C:\Program Files\IBM\SDDDSM>datapath query device

Total Devices : 3

DEV#: 0 DEVICE NAME: Disk2 Part0 TYPE: 2107900 POLICY: OPTIMIZED
SERIAL: 75034614703
=====
Path#          Adapter/Hard Disk      State Mode      Select Errors
  0      Scsi Port1 Bus0/Disk2 Part0  OPEN  NORMAL     42      0
  1      Scsi Port2 Bus0/Disk2 Part0  OPEN  NORMAL     40      0

DEV#: 1 DEVICE NAME: Disk3 Part0 TYPE: 2107900 POLICY: OPTIMIZED
```

```

SERIAL: 75207814703
=====
Path#          Adapter/Hard Disk      State Mode Select Errors
  0    Scsi Port1 Bus0/Disk3 Part0  OPEN  NORMAL   259   0
  1    Scsi Port2 Bus0/Disk3 Part0  OPEN  NORMAL   243   0

DEV#: 2 DEVICE NAME: Disk4 Part0 TYPE: 2107900 POLICY: OPTIMIZED
SERIAL: 75ABTV14703
=====
Path#          Adapter/Hard Disk      State Mode Select Errors
  0    Scsi Port1 Bus0/Disk4 Part0  OPEN  NORMAL   48    0
  1    Scsi Port2 Bus0/Disk4 Part0  OPEN  NORMAL   34    0

```

---

Here we can see that the volume with ID 75207814703 is Disk3 on the Windows host because the volume ID matches the SERIAL on the Windows host. To see the size of the volume on the Windows host, we use Disk Manager, as shown in Figure 15-6 and Figure 15-7 on page 413.

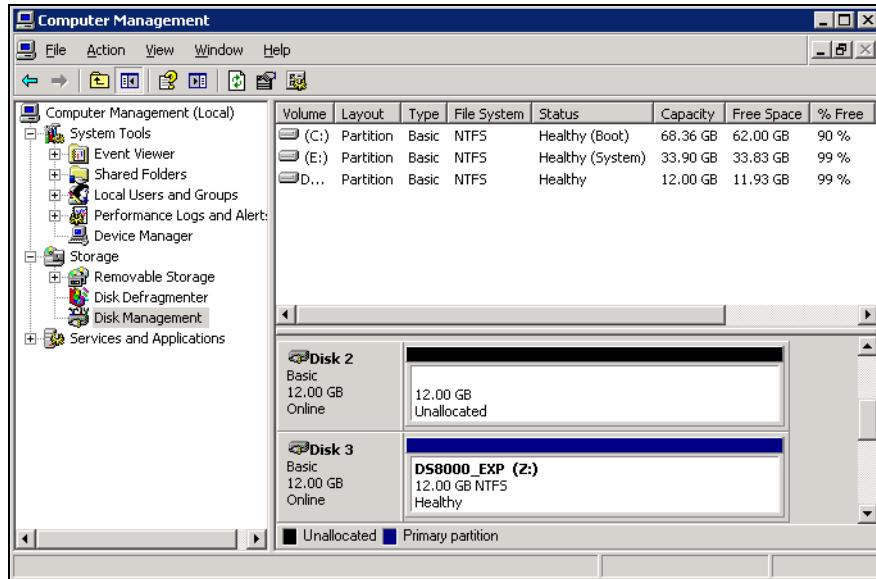


Figure 15-6 Volume size before expansion on Windows 2003: Disk Manager view

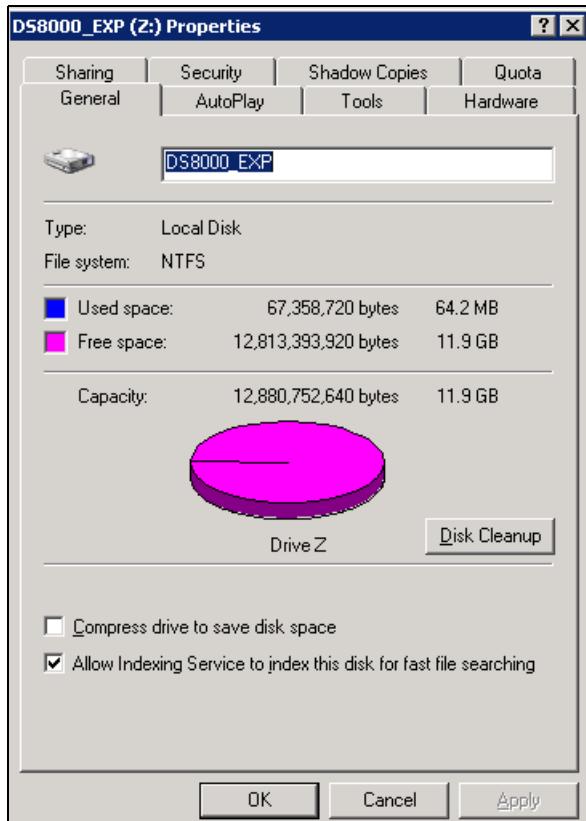


Figure 15-7 Volume size before expansion on Windows 2003: Disk Properties view

Our example shows that the volume size is 11.99 GB, equal to 12 GB. To expand the volume on the DS8000, we use the command **chfbvol** (Example 15-9). The new capacity must be larger than the previous one; you *cannot* shrink the volume.

#### Example 15-9 Expanding a volume

```
dscli> chfbvol -cap 18 4703
Date/Time: October 18, 2007 1:10:52 PM CEST IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.991 DS:
IBM.2107-7520781
CMUC00332W chfbvol: Some host operating systems do not support changing the volume
size. Are you sure that you want to resize the volume? [y/n]: y
CMUC00026I chfbvol: FB volume 4703 successfully modified.
```

To check that the volume has been expanded, we use the **lsfbvol** command, as shown in Example 15-10. Here you can see that the volume 4703 has been expanded to 18 GB in capacity.

#### Example 15-10 lsfbvol after expansion

```
dscli> lsfbvol 4703
Date/Time: October 18, 2007 1:18:38 PM CEST IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.991 DS: IBM.2107-7520781
Name          ID   accstate datastate configstate deviceMTM datatype extpool cap (2^30B) cap (10^9B) cap (blocks)
=====
ITSO_x346_3_4703 4703 Online    Normal    Normal    2107-900  FB 512    P53        18.0      -      37748736
```

In Disk Management on the Windows host, we have to perform a rescan for the disks, after which the new capacity is shown for disk1, as shown in Figure 15-8.

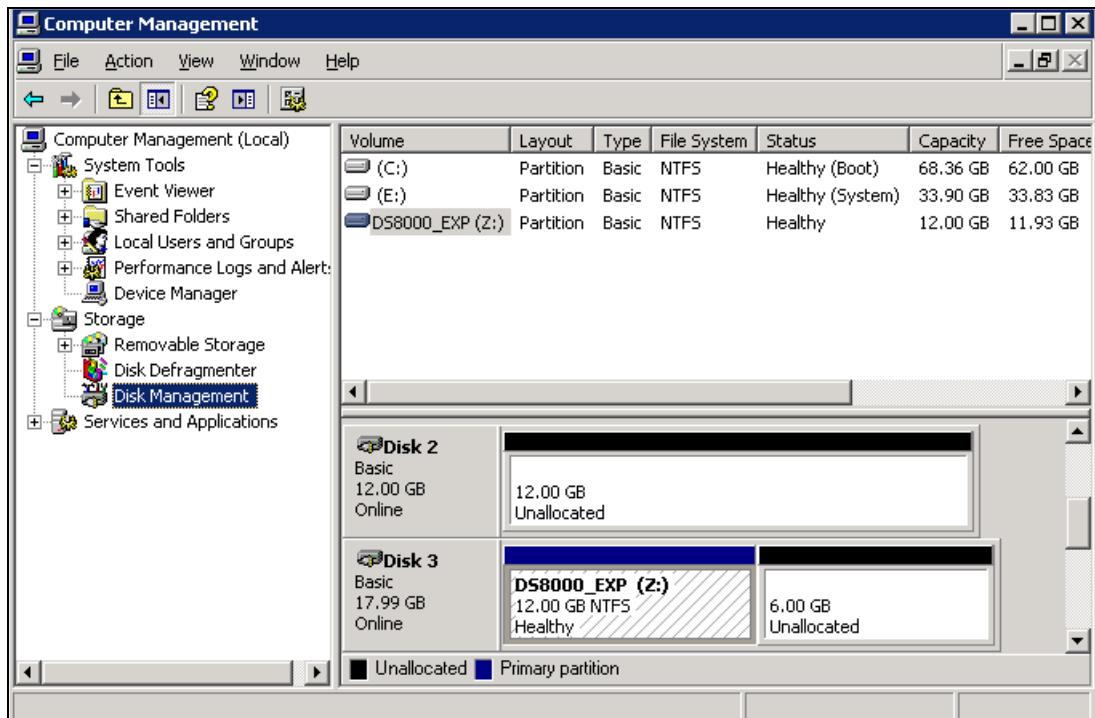


Figure 15-8 Expanded volume in Disk Manager

This shows that Disk3 now has 6 GB of unallocated new capacity. To make this capacity available for the file system, use the **diskpart** command at a DOS prompt. In **diskpart**, list the volumes, select the pertinent volume, check the size of the volume, extend the volume, and check the size again, as shown in Example 15-11.

#### *Example 15-11 diskpart command*

---

```
C:\Documents and Settings\Administrator>diskpart
```

```
Microsoft DiskPart version 5.2.3790.3959
Copyright (C) 1999-2001 Microsoft Corporation.
On computer: X346-TIC-3
```

```
DISKPART> list volume
```

Volume #	Ltr	Label	Fs	Type	Size	Status	Info
Volume 0	Z	DS8000_EXP	NTFS	Partition	12 GB	Healthy	
Volume 1	E		NTFS	Partition	34 GB	Healthy	System
Volume 2	D			DVD-ROM	0 B	Healthy	
Volume 3	C		NTFS	Partition	68 GB	Healthy	Boot

```
DISKPART> select volume 0
```

```
Volume 0 is the selected volume.
```

```
DISKPART> detail volume
```

```

Disk ###  Status     Size      Free      Dyn  Gpt
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----
* Disk 3  Online    18 GB   6142 MB

 Readonly          : No
 Hidden           : No
 No Default Drive Letter: No
 Shadow Copy       : No

DISKPART> extend

DiskPart successfully extended the volume.

DISKPART> detail volume

Disk ###  Status     Size      Free      Dyn  Gpt
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----
* Disk 3  Online    18 GB    0 B

```

Readonly : No  
 Hidden : No  
 No Default Drive Letter: No  
 Shadow Copy : No

---

The result of the expansion of the Disk Manager is shown in Figure 15-9.

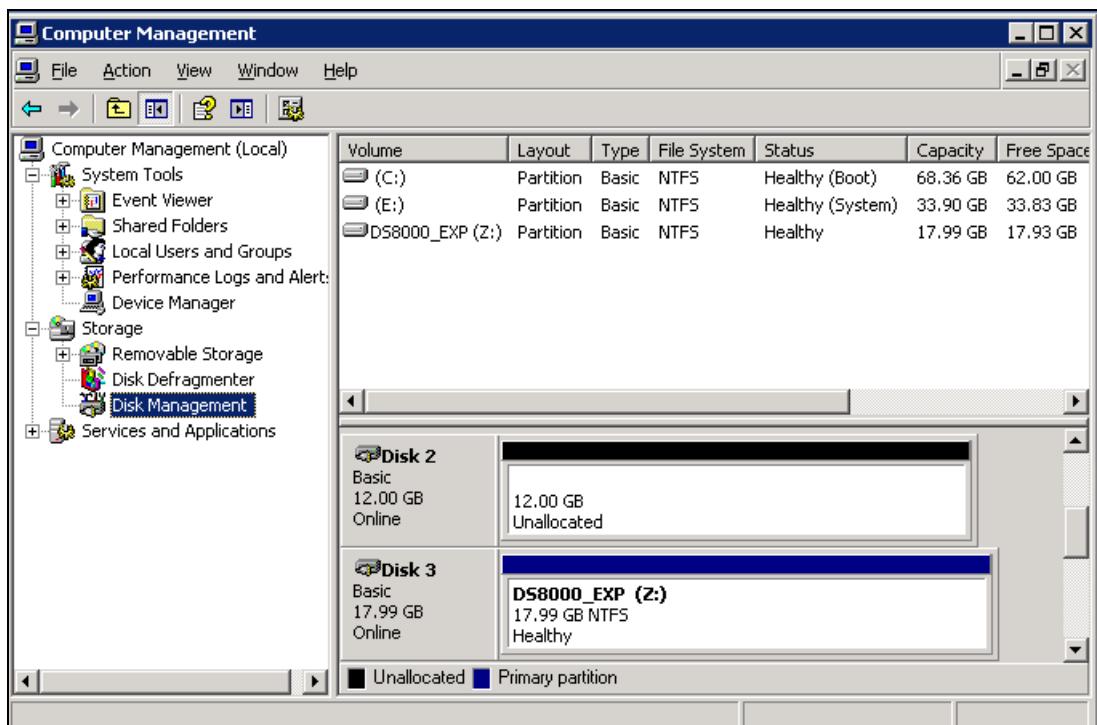


Figure 15-9 Disk Manager after expansion in diskpart

The example here is referred to as a Windows Basic Disk. Dynamic Disks can be expanded by expanding the underlying DS8000 volume. The new space will appear as unallocated space at the end of the disk.

In this case, you do not need to use the Diskpart tool, but just Windows Disk Management functions, to allocate the new space. Expansion works irrespective of the volume type (simple, spanned, mirrored, and so on) on the disk. Dynamic disks can be expanded without stopping I/O in most cases. The Windows 2000 operating system might require a hotfix, as documented by the Microsoft knowledge base article Q327020, which can be found at the following address:

<http://support.microsoft.com/default.aspx?scid=kb;en-us;Q327020>

**Important:** Never try to upgrade your Basic Disk to Dynamic Disk or vice versa without backing up your data. This operation is disruptive to the data due to the different position of the LBA in the disks.

### 15.2.7 Boot support

When booting from the FC storage systems, special restrictions apply:

- ▶ With Windows 2000 Server, do not use the same HBA as both the FC boot device and the clustering adapter, because the usage of SCSI bus resets MSCS and breaks up disk reservations during quorum arbitration. Because a bus reset cancels all pending I/O operations to all FC disks visible to the host through that port, an MSCS-initiated bus reset can cause operations on the C:\ drive to fail.
- ▶ With Windows Server 2003 and 2008, MSCS uses target resets. Refer to the Microsoft technical article *Microsoft Windows Clustering: Storage Area Networks*, found at the following address:  
<http://www.microsoft.com/windowsserver2003/techinfo/overview/san.mspx>
- ▶ Windows Server 2003 and 2008 allow boot disk and the cluster server disks to be hosted on the same bus. However, you need to use Storport miniport HBA drivers for this functionality to work. This is *not* a supported configuration in combination with drivers of other types (for example, SCSI port miniport or Full port drivers).
- ▶ If you reboot a system with adapters while the primary path is in a failed state, you must manually disable the BIOS on the first adapter and manually enable the BIOS on the second adapter. You cannot enable the BIOS for both adapters at the same time. If the BIOS for both adapters is enabled at the same time and there is a path failure on the primary adapter, the system stops with an INACCESSIBLE\_BOOT\_DEVICE error upon reboot.

### 15.2.8 Windows Server 2003 Virtual Disk Service support

With Windows Server 2003, Microsoft introduced the *Virtual Disk Service (VDS)*. It unifies storage management and provides a single interface for managing block storage virtualization. This interface is vendor and technology transparent, and is independent of the layer where virtualization is done, of the operating system software, of the RAID storage hardware, and of other storage virtualization engines.

VDS is a set of APIs that uses two sets of providers to manage storage devices. The built-in *VDS software providers* enable you to manage disks and volumes at the operating system level. *VDS hardware providers* supplied by the hardware vendor enable you to manage hardware RAID arrays. Windows Server 2003 and 2008 components that work with VDS include the Disk Management Microsoft management console (MMC) snap-in, the DiskPart command-line tool, and the DiskRAID command-line tool, which is available in the Windows Server 2003 and 2008 Deployment Kit.

Figure 15-10 shows the VDS architecture.

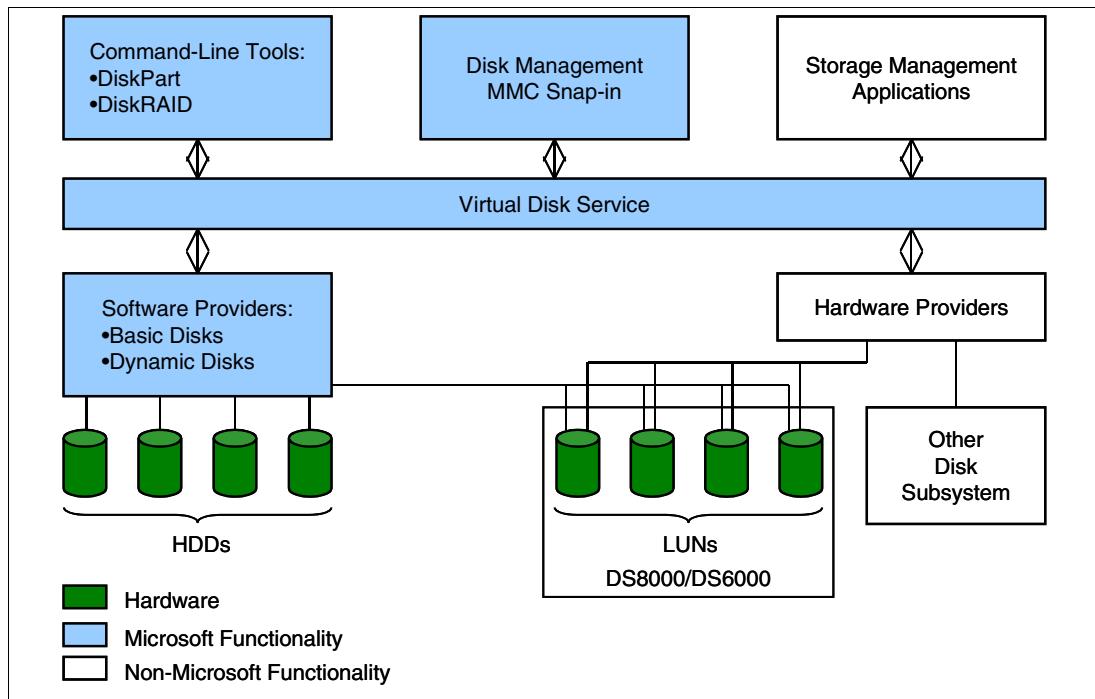


Figure 15-10 Microsoft VDS architecture

For a detailed description of VDS, refer to the *Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Virtual Disk Service Technical Reference*, found at the following address:

[http://www.microsoft.com/Resources/Documentation/windowsserv/2003/all/techref/en-us/W2K3TR\\_vds\\_intro.asp](http://www.microsoft.com/Resources/Documentation/windowsserv/2003/all/techref/en-us/W2K3TR_vds_intro.asp)

For detailed description of VDS, refer to the *Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Virtual Disk Service Technical Reference*, found at the following address:

<http://technet.microsoft.com/en-us/windowsserver/2008/default.aspx>

The DS8000 can act as a VDS hardware provider. The implementation is based on the DS Common Information Model (CIM) agent, a middleware application that provides a CIM-compliant interface. The Microsoft Virtual Disk Service uses the CIM technology to list information and manage LUNs. See the *IBM System Storage DS Open Application Programming Interface Reference*, GC35-0516 for information about how to install and configure VDS support.

The following sections present examples of VDS integration with advanced functions of the DS8000 storage subsystems that became possible with the implementation of the DS CIM agent.

## Volume Shadow Copy Service

The Volume Shadow Copy Service provides a mechanism for creating consistent point-in-time copies of data, known as *shadow copies*. It integrates IBM System Storage FlashCopy to produce consistent shadow copies, while also coordinating with business applications, file system services, backup applications, and fast recovery solutions.

For more information, refer to the following address:

<http://technet2.microsoft.com/WindowsServer/en/library/2b0d2457-b7d8-42c3-b6c9-59c145b7765f1033.mspx?mfr=true>

## What is necessary to use these functions

To use these functions, you need an installed CIM client. This CIM client requires a DS CLI Client to communicate with the DS8000 or the DS6000, or an ESS CLI client if you are going to communicate with an ESS. On each server, you need the IBM API support for Microsoft Volume Shadow Copy Service, as shown in Figure 15-11.

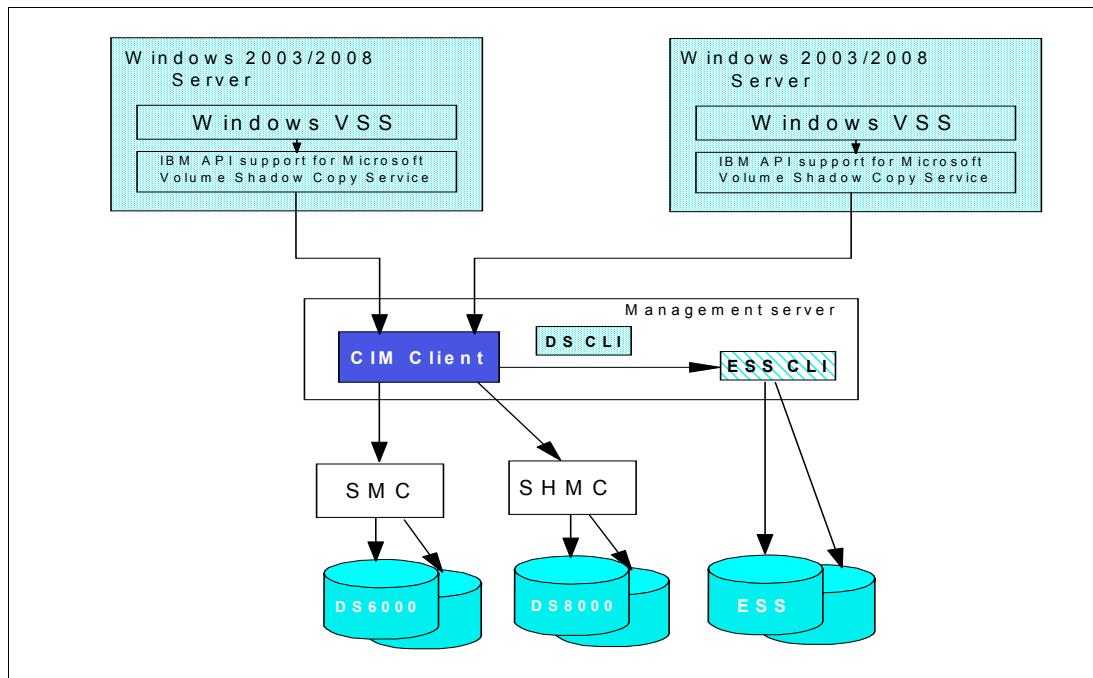


Figure 15-11 VSS installation infrastructure

After the installation of these components, which is described in *IBM System Storage DS Open Application Programming Interface Reference*, GC35-0516, you have to:

- ▶ Define a VSS\_FREE volume group and virtual server.
- ▶ Define a VSS\_RESERVED volume group and virtual server.
- ▶ Assign volumes to the VSS\_FREE volume group.

The WWPN default for the VSS\_FREE virtual server is 5000000000000000; the WWPN default for the VSS\_RESERVED virtual server is 5000000000000001. These disks are available for the server as a pool of free available disks. If you want to have different pools of free disks, you can define your own WWPN for another pool, as shown in Example 15-12.

### Example 15-12 ESS Provider Configuration Tool Commands Help

```
C:\Program Files\IBM\ESS Hardware Provider for VSS>ibmvssconfig.exe /?
```

```
ESS Provider Configuration Tool Commands
```

```
-----
```

```
ibmvssconfig.exe <command> <command arguments>
```

```
Commands:
```

```
/h | /help | -? | /?
```

```

showcfg
listvols <all|free|vss|unassigned>
add <volumeID list> (separated by spaces)
rem <volumeID list> (separated by spaces)

Configuration:
set targetESS <5-digit ESS Id>
set user <CMOM user name>
set password <CMOM password>
set trace [0-7]
set trustpassword <trustpassword>
set truststore <truststore location>
set usingSSL <YES | NO>
set vssFreeInitiator <WWPN>
set vssReservedInitiator <WWPN>
set FlashCopyVer <1 | 2>
set cimomPort <PORTNUM>
set cimomHost <Hostname>
set namespace <Namespace>

```

---

With the **ibmvssconfig.exe listvols** command, you can also verify what volumes are available for VSS in the VSS\_FREE pool, as shown in Example 15-13.

*Example 15-13 VSS list volumes at free pool*

---

```
C:\Program Files\IBM\ESS Hardware Provider for VSS>ibmvssconfig.exe listvols free
Listing Volumes...
```

LSS	Volume	Size	Assigned to
<hr/>			
10	003AAGXA	5.3687091E9 Bytes	50000000000000000000
11	103AAGXA	2.14748365E10 Bytes	50000000000000000000

---

Also, disks that are unassigned in your disk subsystem can be assigned with the **add** command to the VSS\_FREE pool. In Example 15-14, we verify the volumes available for VSS.

*Example 15-14 VSS list volumes available for VSS*

---

```
C:\Program Files\IBM\ESS Hardware Provider for VSS>ibmvssconfig.exe listvols vss
Listing Volumes...
```

LSS	Volume	Size	Assigned to
<hr/>			
10	001AAGXA	1.00000072E10 Bytes	Unassigned
10	003AAGXA	5.3687091E9 Bytes	50000000000000000000
11	103AAGXA	2.14748365E10 Bytes	50000000000000000000

---

## How to use VSS and VDS for backup

A scenario that uses VSS and VDS for backup is shown in Figure 15-12. More detailed information can be found in *IBM System Storage Business Continuity: Part 1 Planning Guide*, SG24-6547.

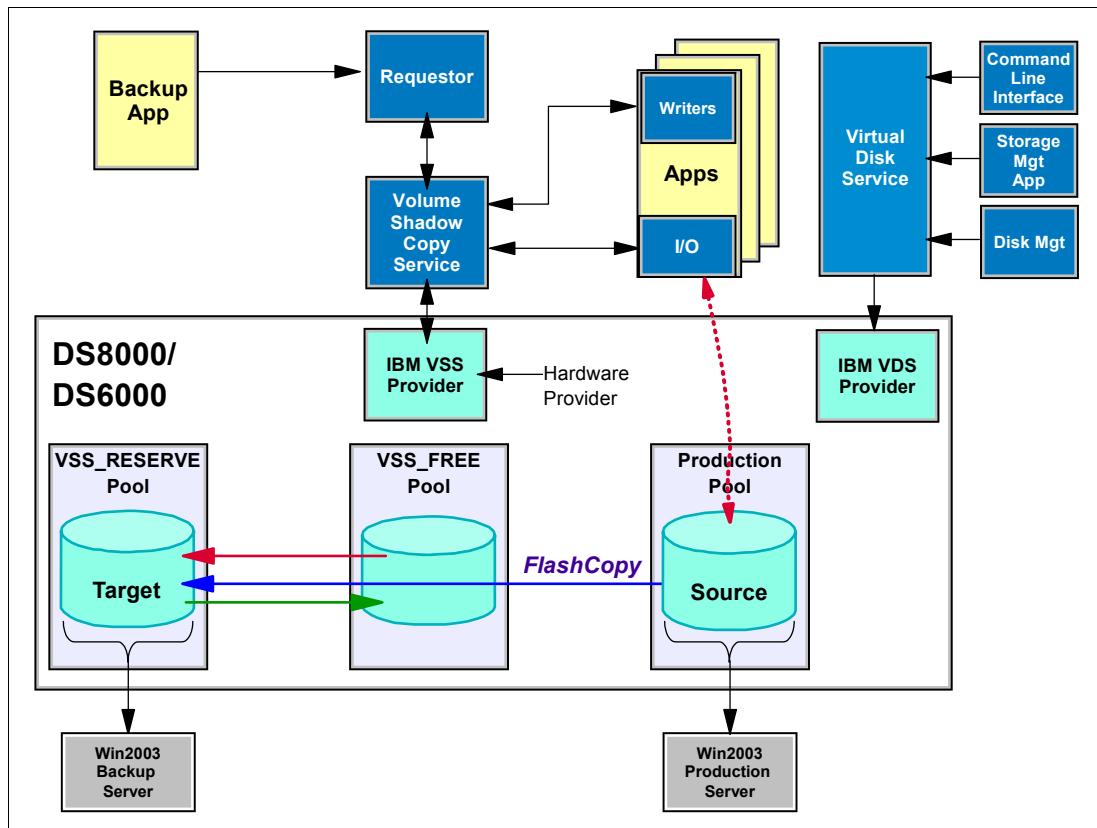


Figure 15-12 VSS VDS example

## Geographically Dispersed Open Clusters

Geographically Dispersed Open Clusters (GDOC) is an open, multivendor solution designed to protect the availability of business critical applications that run on UNIX, Windows, or Linux, as well as protecting the integrity of the associated data. GDOC is based on an Open Systems Cluster architecture spread across two or more sites with data mirrored between sites to provide high availability and disaster recovery.

For more information, refer to *IBM System Storage DS8000: Copy Services in Open Environments*, SG24-6788.

## 15.3 AIX

This section covers items specific to the IBM AIX operating system. It is not intended to repeat the information that is contained in other publications. We focus on topics that are not covered in the well-known literature or are important enough to be repeated here.

For complete information, refer to *IBM System Storage DS8000 Host Systems Attachment Guide*, SC26-7917.

### 15.3.1 Finding the Worldwide Port Names

In order to allocate DS8000 disks to a System p server, the Worldwide Port Name (WWPN) of each of the System p Fibre Channel adapters has to be registered in the DS8000. You can use the `lscfg` command to obtain these names, as shown in Example 15-15.

*Example 15-15 Finding Fibre Channel adapter WWPN*

---

```
lscfg -vl fcs0
fcs0           U1.13-P1-I1/Q1  FC Adapter

Part Number.....00P4494
EC Level.....A
Serial Number....1A31005059
Manufacturer.....001A
Feature Code/Marketing ID...2765
FRU Number.....00P4495
Network Address.....10000000C93318D6
ROS Level and ID.....02C03951
Device Specific.(Z0).....2002606D
Device Specific.(Z1).....00000000
Device Specific.(Z2).....00000000
Device Specific.(Z3).....03000909
Device Specific.(Z4).....FF401210
Device Specific.(Z5).....02C03951
Device Specific.(Z6).....06433951
Device Specific.(Z7).....07433951
Device Specific.(Z8).....20000000C93318D6
Device Specific.(Z9).....CS3.91A1
Device Specific.(ZA).....C1D3.91A1
Device Specific.(ZB).....C2D3.91A1
Device Specific.(YL).....U1.13-P1-I1/Q1
```

---

You can also print the WWPN of an HBA directly by running the following command:

```
lscfg -vl <fc> | grep Network
```

The # stands for the instance of each FC HBA you want to query.

### 15.3.2 AIX multipath support

The DS8000 supports two methods of attaching AIX hosts:

- ▶ Subsystem Device Driver (SDD)
- ▶ AIX multipath I/O (MPIO) with a DS8000-specific Path Control Module (SDDPCM)

SDD and SDDPCM cannot coexist on the same server. See the following sections for a detailed discussion and considerations.

### 15.3.3 SDD for AIX

The following file sets are needed for SDD:

- ▶ `devices.sdd.5x.rte` or `devices.sdd.6x.rte`, or `devices.sdd.433.rte`, depending on the OS version
- ▶ `devices.fcp.disk.ibm.rte`

The following file sets should not be installed and *must* be removed:

- ▶ devices.fcp.disk.ibm.mpio.rte
  - ▶ devices.sddpcm.52.rte or devices.sddpcm.53.rte, or devices.sddpcm.61.rte

Adding the **-l** option to the **datapath query device** command marks the non-preferred paths in a storage unit. This option can be used in addition to the existing **datapath query device** commands. In Example 15-16, DS8000 disks are mixed with DS6000 devices. Because the DS8000 does not implement the concept of preferred data path, you see non-preferred paths marked with an asterisk (\*) only for the DS6000 volumes. On the DS8000, all paths are used.

*Example 15-16 datapath query device -l on AIX*

```
root@sanh70:/ > datapath query device -1
```

Total Devices : 4

DEV#: 0 DEVICE NAME: vpath0 TYPE: 2107900 POLICY: Optimized  
SERIAL: 75065711002

LUN IDENTIFIER: 6005076303FFC0B60000000000001002

Path#	Adapter/Hard Disk	State	Mode	Select	Errors
0	fscsi0/hdisk1	OPEN	NORMAL	843	0
1	fscsi0/hdisk3	OPEN	NORMAL	906	0
2	fscsi1/hdisk5	OPEN	NORMAL	900	0
3	fscsi1/hdisk8	OPEN	NORMAL	867	0

DEV#: 1 DEVICE NAME: vpath1 TYPE: 2107900 POLICY: Optimized  
SERIAL: 75065711003

LUN IDENTIFIER: 6005076303FFC0B60000000000001003

Path#	Adapter/Hard Disk	State	Mode	Select	Errors
0	fcscsi0/hdisk2	CLOSE	NORMAL	0	0
1	fcscsi0/hdisk4	CLOSE	NORMAL	0	0
2	fcscsi1/hdisk6	CLOSE	NORMAL	0	0
3	fcscsi1/hdisk9	CLOSE	NORMAL	0	0

DEV#: 2 DEVICE NAME: vpath2 TYPE: 1750500 POLICY: Optimized  
SERIAL: 13AAGXA1000

LUN IDENTIFIER: 600507630EFFF0F0000000000001000

Path#	Adapter/Hard Disk	State	Mode	Select	Errors
0	fscsi0/hdisk10	OPEN	NORMAL	2686	0
1*	fscsi0/hdisk12	OPEN	NORMAL	0	0
2	fscsil0/hdisk14	OPEN	NORMAL	2677	0
3*	fscsil0/hdisk16	OPEN	NORMAL	0	0

DEV#: 3 DEVICE NAME: vpath3 TYPE: 1750500 POLICY: Optimized  
SERIAL: 13AAGXA1100

LUN IDENTIFIER: 600507630EFFC6F0000000000001100

Path#	Adapter/Hard Disk	State	Mode	Select	Errors
0*	fscsi0/hdisk11	CLOSE	NORMAL	0	0
1	fscsi0/hdisk13	CLOSE	NORMAL	0	0
2*	fscsi1/hdisk15	CLOSE	NORMAL	0	0
3	fscsi1/hdisk17	CLOSE	NORMAL	0	0

The **datapath query portmap** command shows the usage of the ports. In Example 15-17, you see the mixed DS8000 and DS6000 disk configuration seen by the server. For the DS6000, the **datapath query portmap** command uses capital letters for the preferred paths and lower case letters for non-preferred paths; this does not apply to the DS8000.

#### *Example 15-17 Datapath query portmap on AIX*

```
root@sanh70:/ > datapath query portmap
          BAY-1(B1)           BAY-2(B2)           BAY-3(B3)           BAY-4(B4)
ESSID   DISK    H1  H2  H3  H4    H1  H2  H3  H4    H1  H2  H3  H4    H1  H2  H3  H4
      ABCD ABCD ABCD ABCD    ABCD ABCD ABCD ABCD    ABCD ABCD ABCD ABCD    ABCD ABCD ABCD ABCD
          BAY-5(B5)           BAY-6(B6)           BAY-7(B7)           BAY-8(B8)
      H1  H2  H3  H4    H1  H2  H3  H4    H1  H2  H3  H4    H1  H2  H3  H4
      ABCD ABCD ABCD ABCD    ABCD ABCD ABCD ABCD    ABCD ABCD ABCD ABCD    ABCD ABCD ABCD ABCD
13AAGXA  vpath2  Y--- -----    y----- -----    ----- -----    -----
13AAGXA  vpath3  o--- -----    o----- -----    ----- -----    -----
7506571   vpath0  -Y-- -----    --- --- -Y---    ----- -----    -----
7506571   vpath1  -O-- -----    --- --- -O---    ----- -----    -----
Y = online/open          y = (alternate path) online/open
O = online/closed        o = (alternate path) online/closed
N = offline              n = (alternate path) offline
- = path not configured
PD = path down
```

Note: 2105 devices' essid has 5 digits, while 1750/2107 device's essid has 7 digits.

Sometimes the **1svpcfg** command helps you get an overview of your configuration. You can easily count how many physical disks there are, with which serial number, and how many paths, as shown in Example 15-18.

#### *Example 15-18 1svpcfg command*

```
root@sanh70:/ > 1svpcfg
vpath0 (Avail pv sdd_testvg) 75065711002 = hdisk1 (Avail ) hdisk3 (Avail ) hdisk5 (Avail ) hdisk8 (Avail )
vpath1 (Avail ) 75065711003 = hdisk2 (Avail ) hdisk4 (Avail ) hdisk6 (Avail ) hdisk9 (Avail )
```

There are also some other valuable features in SDD for AIX:

- ▶ Enhanced SDD configuration methods and migration
 

SDD has a feature in the configuration method to read the pvid from the physical disks and convert the pvid from hdisks to vpaths during the SDD vpath configuration. With this feature, you can skip the process of converting the pvid from hdisks to vpaths after configuring SDD devices. Furthermore, SDD migration can skip the pvid conversion process. This tremendously reduces the SDD migration time, especially with a large number of SDD devices and LVM configuration environment.
- ▶ Mixed volume groups with non-SDD devices in hd2vp, vp2hd, and dpovgfix
 

Mixed volume group is supported by three SDD LVM conversion scripts: hd2vp, vp2hd, and dpovgfix. These three SDD LVM conversion script files allow pvid conversion even if the volume group consists of SDD-supported devices and non-SDD-supported devices. Non-SDD-supported devices allowed are IBM RDAC, EMC Powerpath, NEC MPO, and Hitachi Dynamic Link Manager devices.
- ▶ Migration option for large device configuration
 

SDD offers an environment variable, **SKIP\_SDD\_MIGRATION**, for you to customize the SDD migration or upgrade to maximize performance. The **SKIP\_SDD\_MIGRATION** environment variable is an option available to permit the bypass of the SDD automated migration process backup, restoration, and recovery of LVM configurations and SDD

device configurations. This variable can help decrease the SDD upgrade time if you choose to reboot the system after upgrading SDD.

For details about these features, see the *IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver User's Guide*, SC30-4131.

#### 15.3.4 AIX Multipath I/O

AIX Multipath I/O (MPIO) is an enhancement to the base OS environment that provides native support for multipath Fibre Channel storage attachment. MPIO automatically discovers, configures, and makes available every storage device path. The storage device paths are managed to provide high availability and load balancing of storage I/O. MPIO is part of the base kernel and is available for AIX 5L V5.2 and V5.3.

The base functionality of MPIO is limited. It provides an interface for vendor-specific Path Control Modules (PCMs) that allow for implementation of advanced algorithms.

IBM provides a PCM for DS8000 that enhances MPIO with all the features of the original SDD. It is called SDDPCM and is available from the SDD download site.

For basic information about MPIO, see the online guide *AIX 5L System Management Concepts: Operating System and Devices* from the AIX documentation website at the following address:

[http://publib16.boulder.ibm.com/pseries/en\\_US/aixbman/admnconc/hotplug\\_mgmt.htm#mpioconcepts](http://publib16.boulder.ibm.com/pseries/en_US/aixbman/admnconc/hotplug_mgmt.htm#mpioconcepts)

The management of MPIO devices is described in the online guide *System Management Guide: Operating System and Devices for AIX 5L* from the AIX documentation website at the following address:

[http://publib16.boulder.ibm.com/pseries/en\\_US/aixbman/baseadm/Manage\\_mpio.htm](http://publib16.boulder.ibm.com/pseries/en_US/aixbman/baseadm/Manage_mpio.htm)

For information about SDDPCM commands, refer to the *IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver User's Guide*, SC30-4131. The SDDPCM website is located at the following address:

<http://www.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/software/sdd/index.html>

#### Benefits of MPIO

There are several reasons to prefer MPIO with SDDPCM to traditional SDD:

- ▶ Performance improvements due to direct integration with AIX
- ▶ Better integration if different storage systems are attached
- ▶ Easier administration through native AIX commands

#### Restrictions and considerations

The following considerations apply:

- ▶ Default MPIO is not supported on DS8000.
- ▶ AIX HACMP/XD is currently not supported with SDDPCM.
- ▶ SDDPCM and SDD cannot coexist on an AIX server. If a server connects to both ESS storage devices and DS family storage devices, all devices must be configured either as non-MPIO-capable devices or as MPIO-capable devices.
- ▶ If you choose to use MPIO with SDDPCM instead of SDD, you have to remove the regular DS8000 Host Attachment Script and install the MPIO version of it. This script identifies the

DS8000 volumes to the operating system as MPIO manageable. Of course, you cannot have SDD and MPIO/SDDPCM on a given server at the same time.

## Setup and use

The following filesets are needed for MPIO on AIX:

- ▶ devices.common.IBM.mpio.rte
- ▶ devices.fcp.disk.ibm.mpio.rte
- ▶ devices.sddpcm.52.rte and devices.sddpcm.53.rte, depending on the OS level

The following filesets are not needed and *must* be removed:

- ▶ devices.sdd.52.rte
- ▶ devices.fcp.disk.ibm.rte

Other than with SDD, each disk is only presented one time, and you can use normal AIX commands, as shown in Example 15-19. The DS8000 disk is only seen one time as IBM MPIO FC2107.

---

### Example 15-19 MPIO lsdev

---

```
root@san5198b:/ > lsdev -Cc disk
hdisk0 Available 1S-08-00-8,0 16 Bit LVD SCSI Disk Drive
hdisk1 Available 1S-08-00-9,0 16 Bit LVD SCSI Disk Drive
hdisk2 Available 1p-20-02      IBM MPIO FC 2107
hdisk3 Available 1p-20-02      IBM MPIO FC 2107
```

---

Like SDD, MPIO with PCM supports the preferred path of DS6000. In the DS8000, there are no preferred paths. The algorithm of load leveling can be changed like SDD.

Example 15-20 shows a **pcmpath query device** command for a mixed environment, with two DS8000s and one DS6000 disk.

---

### Example 15-20 MPIO pcmpath query device

---

```
root@san5198b:/ > pcmpath query device

DEV#:  2  DEVICE NAME: hdisk2  TYPE: 2107900  ALGORITHM:  Load Balance
SERIAL: 75065711100
=====
Path#    Adapter/Path Name        State   Mode   Select   Errors
  0        fscsi0/path0          OPEN    NORMAL  1240     0
  1        fscsi0/path1          OPEN    NORMAL  1313     0
  2        fscsi0/path2          OPEN    NORMAL  1297     0
  3        fscsi0/path3          OPEN    NORMAL  1294     0

DEV#:  3  DEVICE NAME: hdisk3  TYPE: 2107900  ALGORITHM:  Load Balance
SERIAL: 75065711101
=====
Path#    Adapter/Path Name        State   Mode   Select   Errors
  0        fscsi0/path0          CLOSE   NORMAL  0        0
  1        fscsi0/path1          CLOSE   NORMAL  0        0
  2        fscsi0/path2          CLOSE   NORMAL  0        0
  3        fscsi0/path3          CLOSE   NORMAL  0        0

DEV#:  4  DEVICE NAME: hdisk4  TYPE: 1750500  ALGORITHM:  Load Balance
SERIAL: 13AAGXA1101
```

Path#	Adapter/Path Name	State	Mode	Select	Errors
0*	fscsi0/path0	OPEN	NORMAL	12	0
1	fscsi0/path1	OPEN	NORMAL	3787	0
2*	fscsi1/path2	OPEN	NORMAL	17	0
3	fscsi1/path3	OPEN	NORMAL	3822	0

All other commands are similar to SDD, such as **pcmpath query essmap** or **pcmpath query portmap**. In Example 15-21, you see these commands in a mixed environment with two DS8000 disks and one DS6000 disk.

#### Example 15-21 MPIO pcmpath queries in a mixed DS8000 and DS6000 environment

```
root@san5198b:/ > pcmpath query essmap
Disk Path P Location adapter LUN SN Type Size LSS Vol Rank C/A S Connection port RaidMod
e
-----
hdisk2 path0 1p-20-02[FC] fscsi0 75065711100 IBM 2107-900 5.0 17 0 0000 17 Y R1-B1-H1-ZB 1 RAID5
hdisk2 path1 1p-20-02[FC] fscsi0 75065711100 IBM 2107-900 5.0 17 0 0000 17 Y R1-B2-H3-ZB 131 RAID5
hdisk2 path2 1p-20-02[FC] fscsi0 75065711100 IBM 2107-900 5.0 17 0 0000 17 Y R1-B3-H4-ZB 241 RAID5
hdisk2 path3 1p-20-02[FC] fscsi0 75065711100 IBM 2107-900 5.0 17 0 0000 17 Y R1-B4-H2-ZB 311 RAID5
hdisk3 path0 1p-20-02[FC] fscsi0 75065711101 IBM 2107-900 5.0 17 1 0000 17 Y R1-B1-H1-ZB 1 RAID5
hdisk3 path1 1p-20-02[FC] fscsi0 75065711101 IBM 2107-900 5.0 17 1 0000 17 Y R1-B2-H3-ZB 131 RAID5
hdisk3 path2 1p-20-02[FC] fscsi0 75065711101 IBM 2107-900 5.0 17 1 0000 17 Y R1-B3-H4-ZB 241 RAID5
hdisk3 path3 1p-20-02[FC] fscsi0 75065711101 IBM 2107-900 5.0 17 1 0000 17 Y R1-B4-H2-ZB 311 RAID5
hdisk4 path0 * 1p-20-02[FC] fscsi0 13AAGXA1101 IBM 1750-500 10.0 17 1 0000 07 Y R1-B1-H1-ZA 0 RAID5
hdisk4 path1 1p-20-02[FC] fscsi0 13AAGXA1101 IBM 1750-500 10.0 17 1 0000 07 Y R1-B2-H1-ZA 100 RAID5
hdisk4 path2 * 1p-28-02[FC] fscsil 13AAGXA1101 IBM 1750-500 10.0 17 1 0000 07 Y R1-B1-H1-ZA 0 RAID5
hdisk4 path3 1p-28-02[FC] fscsil 13AAGXA1101 IBM 1750-500 10.0 17 1 0000 07 Y R1-B2-H1-ZA 100 RAID5

root@san5198b:/ > pcmpath query portmap
          BAY-1(B1)           BAY-2(B2)           BAY-3(B3)           BAY-4(B4)
ESSID   DISK   H1 H2 H3 H4   H1 H2 H3 H4   H1 H2 H3 H4   H1 H2 H3 H4
      ABCD ABCD ABCD ABCD   ABCD ABCD ABCD ABCD   ABCD ABCD ABCD ABCD   ABCD ABCD ABCD ABCD
          BAY-5(B5)           BAY-6(B6)           BAY-7(B7)           BAY-8(B8)
ESSID   DISK   H1 H2 H3 H4   H1 H2 H3 H4   H1 H2 H3 H4   H1 H2 H3 H4
      ABCD ABCD ABCD ABCD   ABCD ABCD ABCD ABCD   ABCD ABCD ABCD ABCD   ABCD ABCD ABCD ABCD
7506571 hdisk2 -Y----- -Y----- -Y----- -Y----- -Y----- -Y----- -Y----- -Y----- -
7506571 hdisk3 -O----- -O----- -O----- -O----- -O----- -O----- -O----- -O----- -
13AAGXA hdisk4 y----- Y----- Y----- Y----- Y----- Y----- Y----- Y-----
```

Y = online/open      y = (alternate path) online/open  
 O = online/closed    o = (alternate path) online/closed  
 N = offline          n = (alternate path) offline  
 - = path not configured  
 ? = path information not available  
 PD = path down

Note: 2105 devices' essid has 5 digits, while 1750/2107 device's essid has 7 digits.

Note that the non-preferred path asterisk is only for the DS6000.

### Determine the installed SDDPCM level

You use the same command that you use for SDD, **1s1pp -1 “\*sdd\*”**, to determine the installed level of SDDPCM. It also tells you whether you have SDD or SDDPCM installed.

SDDPCM software provides useful commands, such as:

- ▶ **pcmpath query device** to check the configuration status of the devices
- ▶ **pcmpath query adapter** to display information about adapters
- ▶ **pcmpath query essmap** to display each device, each path, each location, and attributes

## Useful MPIO commands

The **lspath** command displays the operational status for the paths to the devices, as shown in Example 15-22. It can also be used to read the attributes of a given path to an MPIO-capable device.

Example 15-22 lspath command result

---

```
{part1:root}/ -> lspath |pg
Enabled hdisk0 scsi0
Enabled hdisk1 scsi0
Enabled hdisk2 scsi0
Enabled hdisk3 scsi7
Enabled hdisk4 scsi7
...
Missing hdisk9 fscsi0
Missing hdisk10 fscsi0
Missing hdisk11 fscsi0
Missing hdisk12 fscsi0
Missing hdisk13 fscsi0
...
Enabled hdisk96 fscsi2
Enabled hdisk97 fscsi6
Enabled hdisk98 fscsi6
Enabled hdisk99 fscsi6
Enabled hdisk100 fscsi6
```

---

The **chpath** command is used to perform change operations on a specific path. It can either change the operational status or tunable attributes associated with a path. It cannot perform both types of operations in a single invocation.

The **rmpath** command unconfigures or undefines, or both, one or more paths to a target device. It is not possible to unconfigure (undefine) the last path to a target device using the **rmpath** command. The only way to do this is to unconfigure the device itself (for example, use the **rmdev** command).

Refer to the man pages of the MPIO commands for more information.

### 15.3.5 LVM configuration

In AIX, all storage is managed by the *AIX Logical Volume Manager* (LVM). It virtualizes physical disks to be able to dynamically create, delete, resize, and move logical volumes for application use. To AIX, our DS8000 logical volumes appear as physical SCSI disks. There are some considerations to take into account when configuring LVM.

#### LVM striping

Striping is a technique for spreading the data in a logical volume across several physical disks in such a way that all disks are used in parallel to access data on one logical volume. The primary objective of striping is to increase the performance of a logical volume beyond that of a single physical disk.

In the case of a DS8000, LVM striping can be used to distribute data across more than one array (rank).

### **Inter-physical volume allocation policy**

This is one of the simplest and most recommended methods to spread the workload accesses across physical resources. Most Logical Volume Managers offer inter-disk allocation policies for Logical Volumes. Other terms are “physical partition spreading” or “poor man’s striping”.

With AIX LVM, one or more Volume Groups can be created using the physical disks (which are Logical Volumes on the DS8000). LVM organizes Volume Group space in so-called physical partitions (PP). We recommend physical partition allocation for the Logical Volumes in round-robin order. The first free extent is allocated from the first available physical volume. The next free extent is allocated from the next available physical volume and so on. If the physical volumes have the same size, optimal I/O load distribution among the available physical volumes will be achieved.

### **LVM mirroring**

LVM has the capability to mirror logical volumes across several physical disks. This improves availability, because in case a disk fails, there is another disk with the same data. When creating mirrored copies of logical volumes, make sure that the copies are indeed distributed across separate disks.

With the introduction of SAN technology, LVM mirroring can even provide protection against a site failure. Using longwave Fibre Channel connections, a mirror can be stretched up to a 10 km distance.

### **Impact of DS8000 Storage Pool Striping**

Starting with DS8000 Licensed Machine Code 5.3.xx.xx, it is possible to stripe the extents of a DS8000 Logical Volume across multiple RAID arrays. DS8000 Storage Pool Striping will improve throughput for some workloads. It is performed on a 1 GB granularity, so it will generally benefit random workloads more than sequential ones.

If you are already using a host-based striping method (for example, LVM Striping or DB2 database container striping), there is no need to use Storage Pool Striping. However, it is possible. You should then combine the wide stripes on DS8000 with small granularity stripes on the host. The recommended size for these is usually between 8 and 64 MB. If large stripes on both DS8000 and attached host interfere with each other, I/O performance may be affected.

Refer to Chapter 7, “Performance” on page 141 for a more detailed discussion of methods to optimize performance.

## **15.3.6 AIX access methods for I/O**

AIX provides several modes to access data in a file system. It can be important for performance to choose the right access method.

### **Synchronous I/O**

Synchronous I/O occurs while you wait. An application’s processing cannot continue until the I/O operation is complete. This is a secure and traditional way to handle data. It ensures consistency at all times, but can be a major performance inhibitor. It also does not allow the operating system to take full advantage of functions of modern storage devices, such as queuing, command reordering, and so on.

## Asynchronous I/O

Asynchronous I/O operations run in the background and do not block user applications. This improves performance, because I/O and application processing run simultaneously. Many applications, such as databases and file servers, take advantage of the ability to overlap processing and I/O. They have to take measures to ensure data consistency, though. You can configure, remove, and change asynchronous I/O for each device by using the `chdev` command or SMIT.

**Tip:** If the number of asynchronous I/O (AIO) requests is high, then we recommend that you increase `maxservers` to approximately the number of simultaneous I/Os that there might be. In most cases, it is better to leave the `minservers` parameter at the default value, because the AIO kernel extension will generate additional servers if needed. By looking at the CPU utilization of the AIO servers, if the utilization is even across all of them, that means that they are all being used; you might want to try increasing their number in this case. Running `pstat -a` allows you to see the AIO servers by name, and running `ps -k` shows them to you as the name `kproc`.

## Direct I/O

An alternative I/O technique called *Direct I/O* bypasses the Virtual Memory Manager (VMM) altogether and transfers data directly from the user's buffer to the disk and from the disk to the user's buffer. The concept behind this is similar to raw I/O in the sense that they both bypass caching at the file system level. This reduces the CPU's processing impact and makes more memory available to the database instance, which can make more efficient use of it for its own purposes.

Direct I/O is provided as a file system option in JFS2. It can be used either by mounting the corresponding file system with the `mount -o dio` command, or by opening a file with the `O_DIRECT` flag specified in the `open()` system call. When a file system is mounted with the `-o dio` option, all files in the file system use Direct I/O by default.

Direct I/O benefits applications that have their own caching algorithms by eliminating the impact of copying data twice, first between the disk and the OS buffer cache, and then from the buffer cache to the application's memory.

For applications that benefit from the operating system cache, do not use Direct I/O, because all I/O operations are synchronous. Direct I/O also bypasses the JFS2 read-ahead. Read-ahead can provide a significant performance boost for sequentially accessed files.

## Concurrent I/O

In 2003, IBM introduced a new file system feature called *Concurrent I/O* (CIO) for JFS2. It includes all the advantages of Direct I/O and also relieves the serialization of write accesses. It improves performance for many environments, particularly commercial relational databases. In many cases, the database performance achieved using Concurrent I/O with JFS2 is comparable to that obtained by using raw logical volumes.

A method for enabling the concurrent I/O mode is to use the `mount -o cio` command when mounting a file system.

### 15.3.7 Dynamic Volume Expansion

Starting with IBM DS8000 Licensed Machine Code 5.3.xx.xx, it is possible to expand a logical volume in size without taking the volume offline. Additional actions are required on the attached host to make use of the extra space. This section describes the required AIX Logical Volume Manager (LVM) tasks.

After the DS8000 logical volume has been expanded, use the **chvg** command with the -g option to examine all the disks in the volume group to see if they have grown in size. If some disks have grown in size, the **chvg** command attempts to add additional physical partitions (PPs) to the AIX physical volume (PV) that corresponds to the expanded DS8000 logical volume.

Example 15-23 shows an AIX file system that was created on a single DS8000 logical volume. The DSCLI is used to display the characteristics of the DS8000 logical volumes; AIX LVM commands show the definitions of volume group, logical volume, and file systems. Note that the available space for the file system is almost gone.

*Example 15-23 DS8000 Logical Volume and AIX file system before Dynamic Volume Expansion*

---

```
dscli> lsfbvol 4700
Date/Time: November 6, 2007 9:13:37 AM CET IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.794 DS:
IBM.2107-7520781
Name           ID   accstate datastate configstate deviceMTM datatype extpool
cap (2^30B) cap (10^9B) cap (blocks)
=====
=====
ITSO_p550_1_4700 4700 Online    Normal    Normal      2107-900 FB 512 P53
18.0          -     37748736

# lsvg -p dvevg
dvevg:
PV_NAME        PV STATE          TOTAL PPs  FREE PPs  FREE DISTRIBUTION
hdisk0         active            286       5          00..00..00..00..05

# lsvg -l dvevg
dvevg:
LV NAME        TYPE    LPs  PPs  PVs  LV STATE    MOUNT POINT
dvelv          jfs2    280  280  1    open/syncd  /dvefs
log1v00        jfs2log 1    1    1    open/syncd  N/A

# lsfs /dvefs
Name        Nodename  Mount Pt          VFS  Size    Options  Auto
Accounting
/dev/dvelv   --        /dvefs          jfs2  36700160  rw      yes
no
```

---

If more space is required in this file system, two options are available with the AIX operating system: either add another DS8000 logical volume (which is a physical volume on AIX) to the AIX volume group or extend the DS8000 logical volume and subsequently adjust the AIX LVM definitions. The second option is demonstrated in Example 15-24. The DSCLI is used to extend the DS8000 logical volume. On the attached AIX host, the configuration change is read out with the AIX commands **cfgmgr** and **chvg**. Afterwards, the file system is expanded online and the results are displayed.

*Example 15-24 Dynamic Volume Expansion of DS8000 logical volume and AIX file system*

---

```
dscli> chfbvol -cap 24 4700
Date/Time: November 6, 2007 9:15:33 AM CET IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.794 DS: IBM.
2107-7520781
CMUC00332W chfbvol: Some host operating systems do not support changing the volume
size. Are you sure that you want to resize the volume? [y/n]: y
CMUC00026I chfbvol: FB volume 4700 successfully modified.
```

```

# cfgmgr

# chvg -g dvevg

# lsvg -p dvevg
dvevg:
PV_NAME          PV STATE          TOTAL PPs   FREE PPs   FREE DISTRIBUTION
hdisk0           active            382          101          00..00..00..24..77

# chfs -a size=45000000 /dvefs
Filesystem size changed to 45088768

# lsvg -p dvevg
dvevg:
PV_NAME          PV STATE          TOTAL PPs   FREE PPs   FREE DISTRIBUTION
hdisk0           active            382          37          00..00..00..00..37
# lsvg -l dvevg
dvevg:
LV NAME          TYPE      LPs    PPs    PVs   LV STATE          MOUNT POINT
dvelv            jfs2     344    344    1    open/syncd        /dvefs
log1v00          jfs2log   1      1      1    open/syncd        N/A
# lsfs /dvefs
Name       Nodename  Mount Pt          VFS  Size   Options  Auto
Accounting
/dev/dvelv   --        /dvefs          jfs2  45088768  rw      yes
no

```

---

There are some limitations regarding the online size extension of the AIX volume group. You might have to deactivate and then reactivate the AIX volume group for LVM to see the size change on the disks. If necessary, check the appropriate AIX documentation.

### 15.3.8 Boot device support

The DS8100 and DS8300 are supported as boot devices on System p servers that have Fibre Channel boot capability. Boot support is not available for SDD with IBM BladeCenter® JS20. Refer to *IBM System Storage DS8000 Host Systems Attachment Guide*, SC26-7917 for additional information.

## 15.4 Linux

Linux is an open source, UNIX-like kernel, originally created by Linus Torvalds. The term *Linux* is often used to mean the whole operating system of GNU/Linux. The Linux kernel, along with the tools and software needed to run an operating system, are maintained by a loosely organized community of thousands of (mostly) volunteer programmers.

There are several organizations (distributors) that bundle the Linux kernel, tools, and applications to form a *distribution*, a package that can be downloaded or purchased and installed on a computer. Some of these distributions are commercial; others are not.

### **15.4.1 Support issues that distinguish Linux from other operating systems**

Linux is different from the other proprietary operating systems in many ways:

- ▶ There is no one person or organization that can be held responsible or called for support.
- ▶ Depending on the target group, the distributions differ largely in the kind of support that is available.
- ▶ Linux is available for almost all computer architectures.
- ▶ Linux is rapidly changing.

All these factors make it difficult to promise and provide generic support for Linux. As a consequence, IBM has decided on a support strategy that limits the uncertainty and the amount of testing.

IBM only supports these Linux distributions that are targeted at enterprise clients:

- ▶ Red Hat Enterprise Linux
- ▶ SUSE Linux Enterprise Server
- ▶ Asianux (Red Flag Linux)

These distributions have release cycles of about one year, are maintained for five years, and require you to sign a support contract with the distributor. They also have a schedule for regular updates. These factors mitigate the issues listed previously. The limited number of supported distributions also allows IBM to work closely with the vendors to ensure interoperability and support. Details about the supported Linux distributions can be found in the System Storage Interoperation Center (SSIC) at the following address:

[http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/ssic/displayesssearchwithoutjs.wss?start\\_over=yes](http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/ssic/displayesssearchwithoutjs.wss?start_over=yes)

There are exceptions to this strategy when the market demand justifies the test and support effort.

### **15.4.2 Reference material**

There is a wealth of information available that helps you set up your Linux server to attach it to a DS8000 storage subsystem.

#### ***The DS8000 Host Systems Attachment Guide***

The *IBM System Storage DS8000 Host Systems Attachment Guide*, SC26-7917 provides instructions to prepare an Intel IA-32-based machine for DS8000 attachment, including:

- ▶ How to install and configure the FC HBA
- ▶ Peculiarities of the Linux SCSI subsystem
- ▶ How to prepare a system that boots from the DS8000

This guide is not detailed with respect to the configuration and installation of the FC HBA drivers.

### ***Implementing Linux with IBM disk storage***

*Implementing Linux with IBM Disk Storage*, SG24-6261 covers several hardware platforms and storage systems. It is not yet updated with information about the DS8000. The details provided for the attachment to the IBM Enterprise Storage Server (ESS 2105) are *mostly* valid for the DS8000 as well. Read it for information regarding storage attachment:

- ▶ Through FCP to an IBM System z system running Linux
- ▶ To an IBM System p running Linux
- ▶ To an IBM BladeCenter running Linux

You can download this book from the following address:

<http://publib-b.boulder.ibm.com/abstracts/sg246261.html>

### ***Linux with System z and ESS: Essentials***

*Linux with zSeries and ESS: Essentials*, SG24-7025 provides detailed information about Linux on System z and the ESS. It also describes in detail how the Fibre Channel (FCP) attachment of a storage system to Linux on System z works. It does not, however, describe the actual implementation. You can download this book from the following address:

<http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/redbooks/pdfs/sg247025.pdf>

### ***Getting Started with zSeries Fibre Channel Protocol***

The IBM Redpapers publication *Getting Started with zSeries Fibre Channel Protocol*, REDP-0205 is an older publication (last updated in 2003) that provides an overview of Fibre Channel (FC) topologies and terminology, and instructions to attach open systems (Fixed Block) storage devices using FCP to an IBM System z running Linux. It can be found at the following address:

<http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/redpapers/pdfs/redp0205.pdf>

### **Other sources of information**

Numerous hints and tips, especially for Linux on System z, are available on the IBM Redbooks Technotes page at the following address:

<http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/redbooks.nsf/tips/>

IBM System z dedicates its own web page to storage attachment using FCP at the following address:

<http://www-03.ibm.com/systems/z/connectivity/products/>

The *IBM System z Connectivity Handbook*, SG24-5444 discusses the connectivity options available for use within and beyond the data center for IBM System z9 and zSeries® servers. There is an extra section for FC attachment. You can download this book at the following address:

<http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/redbooks.nsf/RedbookAbstracts/sg245444.html?Open>

The white paper *ESS Attachment to United Linux 1 (IA-32)* is available at the following address:

<http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=tssltd101235>

This paper was written to help users attach a server running an enterprise-level Linux distribution based on United Linux 1 (IA-32) to the IBM 2105 Enterprise Storage Server. It provides detailed step-by-step instructions and background information about Linux and SAN storage attachment.

Another white paper, *Linux on IBM eServer pSeries SAN - Overview for Customers*, describes in detail how to attach SAN storage (ESS 2105 and DS4000) to a System p server running Linux. It can be downloaded at the following address:

[http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/pseries/linux/whitepapers/linux\\_san.pdf](http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/pseries/linux/whitepapers/linux_san.pdf)

Most of the information provided in these publications is valid for DS8000 attachment, although much of it was originally written for the ESS 2105.

### 15.4.3 Important Linux issues

Linux treats SAN-attached storage devices like conventional SCSI disks. The Linux SCSI I/O subsystem has some peculiarities that are important enough to be described here, even if they show up in some of the publications listed in the previous section.

#### Some Linux SCSI basics

Within the Linux kernel, device types are defined by *major numbers*. The instances of a given device type are distinguished by their *minor number*. They are accessed through special device files. For SCSI disks, the device files /dev/sdX are used, where X is a letter from a through z for the first 26 SCSI disks discovered by the system, and continues with aa, ab, ac, and so on, for subsequent disks. Due to the mapping scheme of SCSI disks and their partitions to major and minor numbers, each major number allows for only 16 SCSI disk devices. Therefore, we need more than one major number for the SCSI disk device type. Table 15-1 shows the assignment of special device files to major numbers.

Table 15-1 Major numbers and special device files

Major number	First special device file	Last special device file
8	/dev/sda	/dev/sdp
65	/dev/sdq	/dev/sdaf
66	/dev/sdag	/dev/sdav
71	/dev/sddi	/dev/sddx
128	/dev/sddy	/dev/sden
129	/dev/sdeo	/dev/sdfd
135	/dev/sdig	/dev/sdiv

Each SCSI device can have up to 15 partitions, which are represented by the special device files /dev/sda1, /dev/sda2, and so on. Mapping partitions to special device files and major and minor numbers is shown in Table 15-2.

Table 15-2 Minor numbers, partitions, and special device files

Major number	Minor number	Special device file	Partition
8	0	/dev/sda	All of the first disk
8	1	/dev/sda1	The first partition of the first disk
	...		
8	15	/dev/sda15	The 15th partition of the first disk
8	16	/dev/sdb	All of the second disk

Major number	Minor number	Special device file	Partition
8	17	/dev/sdb1	The first partition of the second disk
	...		
8	31	/dev/sdb15	The 15th partition of the second disk
8	32	/dev/sdc	All of the third disk
	...		
8	255	/dev/sdp15	The 15th partition of the 16th disk
65	0	/dev/sdq	All of the 16th disk
65	1	/dev/sdq1	The first partition of the 16th disk
...	...		

## Missing device files

The Linux distributors do not always create all the possible special device files for SCSI disks. If you attach more disks than there are special device files available, Linux is not able to address them. You can create missing device files with the **mknod** command.

The **mknod** command requires four parameters in a fixed order:

- ▶ The name of the special device file to create
- ▶ The type of the device: b stands for a block device, c for a character device
- ▶ The major number of the device
- ▶ The minor number of the device

Refer to the man page of the **mknod** command for more details. Example 15-25 shows the creation of special device files for the seventeenth SCSI disk and its first three partitions.

*Example 15-25 Create new special device files for SCSI disks*

---

```
mknod /dev/sdq b 65 0
mknod /dev/sdq1 b 65 1
mknod /dev/sdq2 b 65 2
mknod /dev/sdq3 b 65 3
```

---

After creating the device files, you might need to change their owner, group, and file permission settings to be able to use them. Often, the easiest way to do this is by duplicating the settings of existing device files, as shown in Example 15-26. Be aware that after this sequence of commands, all special device files for SCSI disks have the same permissions. If an application requires different settings for certain disks, you have to correct them afterwards.

*Example 15-26 Duplicating the permissions of special device files*

---

```
knox:~ # ls -l /dev/sda /dev/sda1
rw-rw---- 1 root      disk      8,   0 2003-03-14 14:07 /dev/sda
rw-rw---- 1 root      disk      8,   1 2003-03-14 14:07 /dev/sda1
knox:~ # chmod 660 /dev/sd*
knox:~ # chown root:disk /dev/sda*
```

---

## Managing multiple paths

If you assign a DS8000 volume to a Linux system through more than one path, it sees the same volume more than once. It also assigns more than one special device file to it. To utilize the path redundancy and increased I/O bandwidth, you need an additional layer in the Linux disk subsystem to recombine the multiple disks seen by the system into one, to manage the paths, and to balance the load across them.

The IBM multipathing solution for DS8000 attachment to Linux on Intel IA-32 and IA-64 architectures, IBM System p, and System i is the IBM Subsystem Device Driver (SDD). SDD for Linux is available in the Linux RPM package format for all supported distributions from the SDD download site. It is proprietary and binary only. It only works with certain kernel versions with which it was tested. The readme file on the SDD for Linux download page contains a list of the supported kernels.

Another multipathing solution is the Device Mapper for multipath I/O (DM-MPIO), which is part of the Enterprise Volume Management System (EVMS) management tool for Linux. EVMS is Part of the SLES 10 and RHEL 5 Linux distributions. More details about EVMS and DM-MPIO can be found in the *SLES 10 Storage Administration Guide*, which can be found at the following address:

[http://www.novell.com/documentation/sles10/stor\\_evms/index.html?page=/documentation/sles10/stor\\_evms/data/bookinfo.html](http://www.novell.com/documentation/sles10/stor_evms/index.html?page=/documentation/sles10/stor_evms/data/bookinfo.html)

The version of the Linux Logical Volume Manager that comes with all current Linux distributions does not support its physical volumes when placed on SDD vpath devices.

### **What is new with SDD 1.6**

The following items are new:

- ▶ Red Hat and Red Flag: They do not allow RPM upgrade or removal while SDD is in use. This can be overridden by using the --nopre and --nopreun flags with `rpm`. However, because SUSE does not support these flags, the feature is not available in SUSE (--noscripts prevents required post conditions from running as well, so it is not an option).
- ▶ Tracing is now turned on by default for SDD. The SDD driver logs are saved to `/var/log/sdd.log` and the `sddsrv` daemon logs are saved to `/var/log/sddsrv.log`.
- ▶ As part of the new performance improvement, we separate an *optimized sequential policy* from the optimized policy. We have added a *round-robin sequential policy*. The optimized sequential policy is now the default policy of Linux. Both sequential policies base the path selection on whether the I/O is sequential, and if not, fall through to use the existing optimized (load-balanced) or round-robin policies. Highly sequential I/O can have a significant performance improvement, and nonsequential I/O should perform as though there were no sequential policy in place.
- ▶ Non-root users can now open a vpath device. Before, only root users had this privilege, but with the new capabilities in the OS, non-root users can now open a vpath device.

**Note:** SDD is not available for Linux on System z. SUSE Linux Enterprise Server 8 for System z comes with built-in multipathing provided by a patched Logical Volume Manager. Today, there is no multipathing support for Red Hat Enterprise Linux for System z.

### **Device Mapper for multipath I/O (DM-MPIO)**

To get started with DM-MPIO, download the multipath.conf file for the DS8000 at the following address:

[http://www-1.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?rs=540&context=ST52G7&dc=D430&uid=ssg1S4000107&loc=en\\_US&cs=utf-8&lang=en#DM](http://www-1.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?rs=540&context=ST52G7&dc=D430&uid=ssg1S4000107&loc=en_US&cs=utf-8&lang=en#DM)

The multipath.conf file is required to create friendly names for the multipath devices that are managed by the Linux device mapper multipath module. This file describes the different parameters and also how to make use of other features, such as how to blacklist devices and create aliases. Copy this file into the /etc directory.

Add the multipath daemon multipathd to the boot sequence and start the multipath I/O services, as shown in Example 15-27.

*Example 15-27 Start of the multipath I/O services*

---

```
x346-tic-4:/ # insserv boot.multipath multipathd

x346-tic-4:/ # /etc/init.d/boot.multipath start
Creating multipath targeterror calling out /sbin/scsi_id -g -u -s /block/sda
error calling out /sbin/scsi_id -g -u -s /block/sdb
                                         done

x346-tic-4:/ # /etc/init.d/multipathd start
Starting multipathd
                                         done
```

---

You can display the DM-MPIO devices by issuing `ls -l /dev/disk/by-name/` or by listing the partitions. The partitions with the name dm-<x> are DM-MPIO partitions (see Example 15-28).

*Example 15-28 Display the DM-MPIO devices*

---

```
x346-tic-4:/ # ls -l /dev/disk/by-name/
total 0, the
1rwxrwxrwx 1 root root 10 Nov  8 14:14 mpath0 -> ../../dm-0
1rwxrwxrwx 1 root root 10 Nov  8 14:14 mpath1 -> ../../dm-1
1rwxrwxrwx 1 root root 10 Nov  8 14:14 mpath2 -> ../../dm-2
x346-tic-4:/ # cat /proc/partitions
major minor #blocks  name

      8      0    35548160  sda
      8      1    35543781  sda1
      8     16    71686144  sdb
      8     17   2104483  sdb1
      8     18   69577515  sdb2
      8     32   12582912  sdc
      8     48   12582912  sdd
      8     64   12582912  sde
      8     80   12582912  sdf
      8     96   12582912  sdg
      8    112   12582912  sdh
      8    128   12582912  sdi
      8    144   12582912  sdj
      8    160   12582912  sdk
253      0  12582912  dm-0
253      1  12582912  dm-1
253      2  12582912  dm-2
```

---

To determine the mapping between the DM-MPIO device and the volume on the DS8000, use the **multipath** command, as shown in Example 15-29. The DM-MPIO device dm-0 is the volume 4707 on the DS8000 with the WWNN 5005076303FFC1A5.

*Example 15-29 DM-MPIO device to DS8000 volume mapping*

---

```
x346-tic-4:/cd_image # multipath -l
mpath2 (36005076303ffc66300000000000004707) dm-2 IBM,2107900
[size=12G][features=1 queue_if_no_path][hwandler=0]
\_ round-robin 0 [prio=0][active]
  \_ 1:0:5:0 sdh 8:112 [active][undef]
  \_ 2:0:5:0 sdk 8:160 [active][undef]
mpath1 (36005076303ffc1a500000000000004707) dm-1 IBM,2107900
[size=12G][features=1 queue_if_no_path][hwandler=0]
\_ round-robin 0 [prio=0][active]
  \_ 1:0:4:0 sdg 8:96 [active][undef]
  \_ 2:0:4:0 sdj 8:144 [active][undef]
mpath0 (36005076303ffc08f0000000000004707) dm-0 IBM,2107900
[size=12G][features=1 queue_if_no_path][hwandler=0]
\_ round-robin 0 [prio=0][active]
  \_ 1:0:0:0 sdc 8:32 [active][undef]
  \_ 1:0:1:0 sdd 8:48 [active][undef]
  \_ 1:0:2:0 sde 8:64 [active][undef]
  \_ 1:0:3:0 sdf 8:80 [active][undef]
  \_ 2:0:3:0 sdi 8:128 [active][undef]
```

---

## Limited number of SCSI devices

Due to the design of the Linux SCSI I/O subsystem in the Linux Kernel Version 2.4, the number of SCSI disk devices is limited to 256. Attaching devices through more than one path reduces this number. If, for example, all disks were attached through four paths, only a maximum of 64 disks could be used.

For the Linux 2.6 kernels, the number of major and minor bits has been increased to 12 and 20 bits, respectively, so Linux 2.6 kernels can support thousands of disks. There is still a limitation of only up to 15 partitions per disk.

## SCSI device assignment changes

Linux assigns special device files to SCSI disks in the order they are discovered by the system. Adding or removing disks can change this assignment. This can cause serious problems if the system configuration is based on special device names (for example, a file system that is mounted using the /dev/sda1 device name). You can avoid some of these problems by using:

- ▶ Disk labels instead of device names in /etc/fstab
- ▶ LVM logical volumes instead of /dev/sdxx devices for file systems
- ▶ SDD, which creates a persistent relationship between a DS8000 volume and a vpath device regardless of the /dev/sdxx devices

## Red Hat Enterprise Linux multiple LUN support

RHEL by default is not configured for multiple LUN support. It only discovers SCSI disks addressed as LUN 0. The DS8000 provides the volumes to the host with a fixed Fibre Channel address and varying LUN. Therefore, RHEL 3 sees only one DS8000 volume (LUN 0), even if more are assigned to it.

Multiple LUN support can be added with an option to the SCSI midlayer kernel module `scsi_mod`. To have multiple LUN support added permanently at boot time of the system, add the following line to the file `/etc/modules.conf`:

```
options scsi_mod max_scsi_luns=128
```

After saving the file, rebuild the module dependencies by running `depmod -a`.

Now you have to rebuild the Initial RAM Disk using the command `mkinitrd <initrd-image> <kernel-version>`.

Issue `mkinitrd -h` for more help information. A reboot is required to make the changes effective.

### Fibre Channel disks discovered before internal SCSI disks

In certain cases, when the Fibre Channel HBAs are added to a Red Hat Enterprise Linux system, they are automatically configured in a way that activates them at boot time, before the built-in parallel SCSI controller that drives the system disks. This leads to shifted special device file names of the system disk and can result in the system being unable to boot properly.

To prevent the FC HBA driver from being loaded before the driver for the internal SCSI HBA, you have to change the `/etc/modules.conf` file:

- ▶ Locate the lines containing `scsi_hostadapterx` entries, where `x` is a number.
- ▶ Reorder these lines: List the lines containing the name of the internal HBA driver module first, and then the lines with the FC HBA module entry.
- ▶ Renumber these lines: No number for the first entry, 1 for the second, 2 for the third, and so on.

After saving the file, rebuild the module dependencies by running `depmod -a`.

Now you have to rebuild the Initial RAM Disk using the command `mkinitrd <initrd-image> <kernel-version>`.

Issue `mkinitrd -h` for more help information. If you reboot now, the SCSI and FC HBA drivers are loaded in the correct order.

Example 15-30 shows how the `/etc/modules.conf` file should look with two Adaptec SCSI controllers and two QLogic 2340 FC HBAs installed. It also contains the line that enables multiple LUN support. Note that the module names are different with different SCSI and Fibre Channel adapters.

*Example 15-30 Sample /etc/modules.conf*

---

```
scsi_hostadapter aic7xxx
scsi_hostadapter1 aic7xxx
scsi_hostadapter2 qla2300
scsi_hostadapter3 qla2300
options scsi_mod max_scsi_luns=128
```

---

### Adding FC disks dynamically

Unloading and reloading the Fibre Channel HBA Adapter is the typical way to discover newly attached DS8000 volumes. However, this action is disruptive to all applications that use Fibre Channel-attached disks on this particular host.

A Linux system can recognize newly attached LUNs without unloading the FC HBA driver. The procedure slightly differs depending on the installed FC HBAs.

In the case of QLogic HBAs, issue the command `echo "scsi-qlascan" > /proc/scsi/q1a2300/<adapter-instance>`.

With Emulex HBAs, issue the command `sh force_1pfc_scan.sh "1pfc<adapter-instance>"`.

This script is not part of the regular device driver package, and you must download it separately from the Emulex website. It requires you to install the tool dfc under `/usr/sbin/1pfc`.

In both cases, you must issue the command for each installed HBA with the `<adapter-instance>` for the SCSI instance number of the HBA.

After the FC HBAs rescan the fabric, you can make the new devices available to the system by running the command `echo "scsi add-single-device s c t l" > /proc/scsi/scsi`.

The quadruple `s c t l` is the physical address of the device:

- ▶ `s` is the SCSI instance of the FC HBA.
- ▶ `c` is the channel (in our case, always 0).
- ▶ `t` is the target address (usually 0, except if a volume is seen by a HBA more than once).
- ▶ `l` is the LUN.

The new volumes are added after the already existing volumes. The following examples illustrate this. Example 15-31 shows the original disk assignment as it existed since the last system start.

---

*Example 15-31 SCSI disks attached at system start time*

---

```
/dev/sda - internal SCSI disk  
/dev/sdb - 1st DS8000 volume, seen by HBA 0  
/dev/sdc - 2nd DS8000 volume, seen by HBA 0  
/dev/sdd - 1st DS8000 volume, seen by HBA 1  
/dev/sde - 2nd DS8000 volume, seen by HBA 1
```

---

Example 15-32 shows the SCSI disk assignment after one more DS8000 volume is added.

---

*Example 15-32 SCSI disks after dynamic addition of another DS8000 volume*

---

```
/dev/sda - internal SCSI disk  
/dev/sdb - 1st DS8000 volume, seen by HBA 0  
/dev/sdc - 2nd DS8000 volume, seen by HBA 0  
/dev/sdd - 1st DS8000 volume, seen by HBA 1  
/dev/sde - 2nd DS8000 volume, seen by HBA 1  
/dev/sdf - new DS8000 volume, seen by HBA 0  
/dev/sdg - new DS8000 volume, seen by HBA 1
```

---

Mapping special device files is now different than it is if all three DS8000 volumes had already been present when the HBA driver was loaded. In other words, if the system is now restarted, the device ordering changes to what is shown in Example 15-33.

---

*Example 15-33 SCSI disks after dynamic addition of another DS8000 volume and reboot*

---

```
/dev/sda - internal SCSI disk  
/dev/sdb - 1st DS8000 volume, seen by HBA 0  
/dev/sdc - 2nd DS8000 volume, seen by HBA 0
```

```
/dev/sdd - new DS8000 volume, seen by HBA 0  
/dev/sde - 1st DS8000 volume, seen by HBA 1  
/dev/sdf - 2nd DS8000 volume, seen by HBA 1  
/dev/sdg - new DS8000 volume, seen by HBA 1
```

---

### Gaps in the LUN sequence

The Qlogic HBA driver cannot deal with gaps in the LUN sequence. When it tries to discover the attached volumes, it probes for the different LUNs, starting at LUN 0 and continuing until it reaches the first LUN without a device behind it.

When assigning volumes to a Linux host with QLogic FC HBAs, make sure LUNs start at 0 and are in consecutive order. Otherwise, the LUNs after a gap will not be discovered by the host. Gaps in the sequence can occur when you assign volumes to a Linux host that are already assigned to another server.

The Emulex HBA driver behaves differently; it always scans all LUNs up to 127.

#### 15.4.4 Troubleshooting and monitoring

In this section, we discuss topics related to troubleshooting and monitoring.

##### The /proc pseudo-file system

The /proc pseudo-file system is maintained by the Linux kernel and provides dynamic information about the system. The directory /proc/scsi contains information about the installed and attached SCSI devices.

The file /proc/scsi/scsi contains a list of all attached SCSI devices, including disk, tapes, processors, and so on. Example 15-34 shows a sample /proc/scsi/scsi file.

*Example 15-34 Sample /proc/scsi/scsi file*

---

```
knox:~ # cat /proc/scsi/scsi
Attached devices:
Host: scsi0 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 00
      Vendor: IBM-ESXS Model: DTN036C1UCDY10F Rev: S25J
      Type: Direct-Access                         ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi0 Channel: 00 Id: 08 Lun: 00
      Vendor: IBM      Model: 32P0032a S320  1 Rev: 1
      Type: Processor                           ANSI SCSI revision: 02
Host: scsi2 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 00
      Vendor: IBM      Model: 2107900          Rev: .545
      Type: Direct-Access                         ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi2 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 01
      Vendor: IBM      Model: 2107900          Rev: .545
      Type: Direct-Access                         ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi2 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 02
      Vendor: IBM      Model: 2107900          Rev: .545
      Type: Direct-Access                         ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi3 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 00
      Vendor: IBM      Model: 2107900          Rev: .545
      Type: Direct-Access                         ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi3 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 01
      Vendor: IBM      Model: 2107900          Rev: .545
      Type: Direct-Access                         ANSI SCSI revision: 03
Host: scsi3 Channel: 00 Id: 00 Lun: 02
```

---

Vendor: IBM	Model: 2107900	Rev: .545
Type: Direct-Access	ANSI SCSI revision: 03	

---

There is also an entry in /proc for each HBA, with driver and firmware levels, error counters, and information about the attached devices. Example 15-35 shows the condensed content of the entry for a QLogic Fibre Channel HBA.

---

*Example 15-35 Sample /proc/scsi/qla2300/x*

---

```
knox:~ # cat /proc/scsi/qla2300/2
QLogic PCI to Fibre Channel Host Adapter for ISP23xx:
    Firmware version: 3.01.18, Driver version 6.05.00b9
Entry address = c1e00060
HBA: QLA2312 , Serial# H28468
Request Queue = 0x21f8000, Response Queue = 0x21e0000
Request Queue count= 128, Response Queue count= 512
.
.
Login retry count = 012
Commands retried with dropped frame(s) = 0

SCSI Device Information:
scsi-q1a0-adapter-node=200000e08b0b941d;
scsi-q1a0-adapter-port=210000e08b0b941d;
scsi-q1a0-target-0=5005076300c39103;

SCSI LUN Information:
(Id:Lun)
( 0: 0): Total reqs 99545, Pending reqs 0, flags 0x0, 0:0:81,
( 0: 1): Total reqs 9673, Pending reqs 0, flags 0x0, 0:0:81,
( 0: 2): Total reqs 100914, Pending reqs 0, flags 0x0, 0:0:81,
```

---

## Performance monitoring with iostat

You can use the **iostat** command to monitor the performance of all attached disks. It ships with every major Linux distribution, but it does not necessarily install by default. The **iostat** command reads data provided by the kernel in /proc/stats and prints it in human readable format. See the man page of **iostat** for more details.

## The generic SCSI tools

The SUSE Linux Enterprise Server comes with a set of tools that allow low-level access to SCSI devices. They are called the *sg tools*. They talk to the SCSI devices through the generic SCSI layer, which is represented by special device files /dev/sg0, /dev/sg0, and so on.

By default, SLES 8 provides sg device files for up to 16 SCSI devices (/dev/sg0 through /dev/sg15). You can create additional sg device files using the command **mknod**. After creating new sg devices, you should change their group setting from root to disk. Example 15-36 shows the creation of /dev/sg16, which would be the first one to create.

---

*Example 15-36 Creation of new device files for generic SCSI devices*

---

```
mknod /dev/sg16 c 21 16
chgrp disk /dev/sg16
```

---

Useful sg tools are:

- ▶ **sg\_inq** /dev/sgx prints SCSI Inquiry data, such as the volume serial number.
- ▶ **sg\_scan** prints the /dev/sg → scsihost, channel, target, LUN mapping.
- ▶ **sg\_map** prints the /dev/sd → /dev/sg mapping.
- ▶ **sg\_readcap** prints the block size and capacity (in blocks) of the device.
- ▶ **sginfo** prints SCSI inquiry and mode page data; it also allows you to manipulate the mode pages.

## 15.5 OpenVMS

DS8000 supports FC attachment of OpenVMS Alpha systems with operating system Version 7.3 or later. For details regarding operating system versions and HBA types, see the System Storage Interoperation Center (SSIC), available at the following address:

[http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/ssic/displayessearchwithoutjs.wss?start\\_over=yes](http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/ssic/displayessearchwithoutjs.wss?start_over=yes)

The support includes clustering and multiple paths (exploiting the OpenVMS built-in multipathing). Boot support is available through Request for Price Quotations (RPQ).

### 15.5.1 FC port configuration

**Note:** The restrictions listed in this section apply only if your DS8000 licensed machine code is earlier than Version 5.0.4. After this version, the restrictions are removed. You can display the versions of the DS CLI, the DS Storage Manager, and the licensed machine code by using the DS CLI command **ver -1**.

In early DS8000 microcode, the OpenVMS FC driver had some limitations in handling FC error recovery. The operating system can react to some situations with MountVerify conditions, which are unrecoverable. Affected processes might hang and eventually stop.

Instead of writing a special OpenVMS driver, the decision was made to rectify this situation in the DS8000 host adapter microcode. As a result, it became a general rule not to share DS8000 FC ports between OpenVMS and non-OpenVMS hosts.

**Important:** The DS8000 FC ports used by OpenVMS hosts must not be accessed by any other operating system, not even accidentally. The OpenVMS hosts have to be defined for access to these ports only, and you must ensure that no foreign HBA (without definition as an OpenVMS host) is seen by these ports. Conversely, an OpenVMS host must have access only to the DS8000 ports configured for OpenVMS compatibility.

You must dedicate storage ports for only the OpenVMS host type. Multiple OpenVMS systems can access the same port. Appropriate zoning must be enforced from the beginning. The wrong access to storage ports used by OpenVMS hosts can clear the OpenVMS-specific settings for these ports. This might remain undetected for a long time, until a failure happens, and by then, I/Os might be lost. It is worth mentioning that OpenVMS is the only platform with this type of restriction (usually, different open systems platforms can share the same DS8000 FC adapters).

## 15.5.2 Volume configuration

OpenVMS Fibre Channel devices have device names according to the following schema:

\$1\$DGA<n>

Where:

- ▶ The first portion of the device name (\$1\$) is the allocation class (a decimal number in the range 1-255). FC devices always have the allocation class 1.
- ▶ The following two letters encode the drivers, where the first letter denotes the device class (D = disks, M = magnetic tapes) and the second letter the device type (K = SCSI, G = Fibre Channel). So, all Fibre Channel disk names contain the code DG.
- ▶ The third letter denotes the adapter channel (from range A to Z). Fibre Channel devices always have the channel identifier A.
- ▶ The number <n> is the *User-Defined ID (UDID)*, a number from the range 0-32767, which is provided by the storage system in response to an OpenVMS-special SCSI inquiry command (from the range of command codes reserved by the SCSI standard for vendors' private use).

OpenVMS does not identify a Fibre Channel disk by its path or SCSI target/LUN, as other operating systems do. It relies on the Unit Device Identifier (UDID). Although OpenVMS uses the WWID to control all FC paths to a disk, a Fibre Channel disk that does not provide this additional UDID cannot be recognized by the operating system. You need the FC HBA WWID to configure the host connection.

In the DS8000, the volume nickname acts as the UDID for OpenVMS hosts. If the character string of the volume nickname evaluates to an integer in the range 0-32767, then this integer is replied as the answer when an OpenVMS host asks for the UDID.

The DS CLI command `chfbvol -name 21 1001` assigns the OpenVMS UDID 21 to the DS8000 volume 1001 (LSS 10, volume 01). Thus, the DS8000 volume 1001 appears as an OpenVMS device with the name \$1\$DGA21 or \$1\$GGA21. If executed on an OpenVMS host, the DS CLI command `lshostvol` shows the DS8000 volumes of this host with their corresponding OpenVMS device names.

The DS management utilities do not enforce UDID rules. They accept incorrect values that are not valid for OpenVMS. It is possible to assign the same UDID value to multiple DS8000 volumes. However, because the UDID is in fact the device ID seen by the operating system, you must fulfill several consistency rules. These rules are described in detail in the OpenVMS operating system documentation; see *HP Guidelines for OpenVMS Cluster Configurations* at the following address:

<http://h71000.www7.hp.com/doc/82FINAL/6318/6318PRO.HTML>

The rules are:

- ▶ Every FC volume must have a UDID that is unique throughout the OpenVMS cluster that accesses the volume. You can use the same UDID in a different cluster or for a different stand-alone host.
- ▶ If the volume is planned for MSCP serving, then the UDID range is limited to 0-9999 (by operating system restrictions in the MSCP code).

OpenVMS system administrators tend to use elaborate schemes for assigning UDIDs, coding several hints about physical configuration into this logical ID, for example, odd/even values or reserved ranges to distinguish between multiple data centers, storage systems, or disk groups. Thus, they must be able to provide these numbers without additional restrictions

imposed by the storage system. In the DS8000, UDID is implemented with full flexibility, which leaves the responsibility about restrictions to the user.

In Example 15-37, we configured a DS8000 volume with the UDID 8275 for OpenVMS attachment. This gives us the OpenVMS Fibre Channel disk device \$1\$DGA8275. You see the output from the OpenVMS command **show device/full \$1\$DGA8275**. The OpenVMS host has two Fibre Channel HBAs with names PGA0 and PGB0. Because each HBA accesses two DS8000 ports, we have four I/O paths.

*Example 15-37 OpenVMS volume configuration*

---

```
$ show device/full $1$DGA8275:
```

```
Disk $1$DGA8275: (NFTE18), device type IBM 2107900, is online, file-oriented
device, shareable, device has multiple I/O paths, served to cluster via MSCP
Server, error logging is enabled.
```

Error count	0	Operations completed	2
Owner process	" "	Owner UIC	[SYSTEM]
Owner process ID	00000000	Dev Prot	S:RWPL,O:RWPL,G:R,W
Reference count	0	Default buffer size	512
Current preferred CPU Id	9	Fastpath	1
Host name	"NFTE18"	Host type, avail	Compaq AlphaServer GS60
6/525, yes			
Alternate host name	"NFTE17"	Alt. type, avail	Compaq AlphaServer GS60
6/525, yes			
Allocation class	1		
I/O paths to device	5		
Path MSCP (NFTE17), primary path.			
Error count	0	Operations completed	0
Path PGA0.5005-0763-0319-8324 (NFTE18), current path.			
Error count	0	Operations completed	1
Path PGA0.5005-0763-031B-C324 (NFTE18).			
Error count	0	Operations completed	1
Path PGB0.5005-0763-0310-8324 (NFTE18).			
Error count	0	Operations completed	0
Path PGB0.5005-0763-0314-C324 (NFTE18).			
Error count	0	Operations completed	0

---

The DS CLI command **1shostvol** displays the mapping of DS8000 volumes to host system device names. You can find more details regarding this command in the *IBM System Storage DS8000: Command-Line Interface User's Guide*, SC26-7916.

More details about the attachment of an OpenVMS host can be found at the *IBM System Storage DS8000 Host Systems Attachment Guide*, SC26-7917.

### 15.5.3 Command Console LUN

HP StorageWorks FC controllers use LUN 0 as the *Command Console LUN (CCL)* for exchanging commands and information with inband management tools. This concept is similar to the Access LUN of IBM System Storage DS4000 (FASST) controllers.

Because the OpenVMS FC driver has been written with StorageWorks controllers in mind, OpenVMS always considers LUN 0 as CCL, never presenting this LUN as a disk device. On HP StorageWorks HSG and HSV controllers, you cannot assign LUN 0 to a volume.

The DS8000 assigns LUN numbers per host using the lowest available number. The first volume that is assigned to a host becomes this host's LUN 0; the next volume is LUN 1, and so on.

Because OpenVMS considers LUN 0 as CCL, you cannot use the first DS8000 volume assigned to the host even when a correct UDID has been defined. So, we recommend creating the first OpenVMS volume with a minimum size as a *dummy volume* for use as the CCL. Multiple OpenVMS hosts, even in different clusters, that access the same storage system can share the same volume as LUN 0, because there will be no other activity to this volume. In large configurations with more than 256 volumes per OpenVMS host or cluster, it might be necessary to introduce another dummy volume (when LUN numbering starts again with 0).

Defining a UDID for the CCL is not required by the OpenVMS operating system. OpenVMS documentation suggests that you always define a unique UDID, because this identifier causes the creation of a CCL device visible for the OpenVMS command **show device** or other tools. Although an OpenVMS host cannot use the LUN for any other purpose, you can display the multiple paths to the storage device and diagnose failed paths. Fibre Channel CCL devices have the OpenVMS device type GG.

In Example 15-38, the DS8000 volume with volume ID 100E is configured as an OpenVMS device with UDID 9998. Because this was the first volume in the volume group, it became LUN 0 and thus the CCL. Note that the volume WWID, as displayed by the **show device/full** command, contains the DS8000 Worldwide Node ID (6005-0763-03FF-C324) and the DS8000 volume number (100E).

---

*Example 15-38 OpenVMS command console LUN*

---

```
$ show device/full $1$GGA9998:
```

```
Device $1$GGA9998:, device type Generic SCSI device, is online, shareable,  
device has multiple I/O paths.
```

Error count	0	Operations completed	1
Owner process	" "	Owner UIC	[SYSTEM]
Owner process ID	00000000	Dev Prot	S:RWPL,O:RWPL,G:RWPL,W:RWPL
Reference count	0	Default buffer size	0
WWID	01000010:6005-0763-03FF-C324-0000-0000-100E		

I/O paths to device	4	
Path PGA0.5005-0763-0319-8324 (NFTE18), primary path, current path.		
Error count	0	Operations completed
Path PGA0.5005-0763-031B-C324 (NFTE18).		
Error count	0	Operations completed
Path PGB0.5005-0763-0310-8324 (NFTE18).		
Error count	0	Operations completed
Path PGB0.5005-0763-0314-C324 (NFTE18).		
Error count	0	Operations completed

---

The DS CLI command **chvolgrp** provides the flag -lun, which you can use to control which volume becomes LUN 0.

#### 15.5.4 OpenVMS volume shadowing

OpenVMS disks can be combined in host-based mirror sets called OpenVMS *shadow sets*. This functionality is often used to build disaster-tolerant OpenVMS clusters.

The OpenVMS shadow driver has been designed for disks according to DEC's *Digital Storage Architecture (DSA)*. This architecture includes requirements that are handled by today's SCSI/FC devices with other approaches. Two of these requirements are the forced error indicator and the atomic revector operation for bad-block replacement.

When a DSA controller detects an unrecoverable media error, a spare block is revectored to this logical block number, and the contents of the block are marked with a forced error. This causes subsequent read operations to fail, which is the signal to the shadow driver to execute a repair operation using data from another copy.

However, there is no forced error indicator in the SCSI architecture, and the revector operation is nonatomic. As a substitute, the OpenVMS shadow driver exploits the SCSI commands READ LONG (READL) and WRITE LONG (WRITEL), optionally supported by some SCSI devices. These I/O functions allow data blocks to be read and written together with their disk device error correction code (ECC). If the SCSI device supports READL/WRITEL, OpenVMS shadowing emulates the DSA forced error with an intentionally incorrect ECC. For details, see the article, "Design of VMS Volume Shadowing Phase II - Host-based Shadowing", by Scott H. Davis in the Digital Technical Journal, Vol. 3 No. 3, Summer 1991, archived at:

<http://research.compaq.com/wrl/DECarchives/DTJ/DTJ301/DTJ301SC.TXT>

The DS8000 provides volumes as SCSI-3 devices and thus does not implement a forced error indicator. It also does not support the READL and WRITEL command set for data integrity reasons.

Usually, the OpenVMS SCSI Port Driver recognizes if a device supports READL/WRITEL, and the driver sets the no forced error (NOFE) bit in the Unit Control Block. You can verify this setting with the SDA utility: After starting the utility with the **analyze/system** command, enter the **show device** command at the SDA prompt. Then, the NOFE flag should be shown in the device's characteristics.

The OpenVMS command for mounting shadow sets provides a qualifier, **/override=no\_forced\_error**, to support non-DSA devices. To avoid possible problems (performance loss, unexpected error counts, or even removal of members from the shadow set), we recommend that you apply this qualifier.

## 15.6 VMware

The DS8000 currently supports the VMware high-end virtualization solution Virtual Infrastructure 3 and the included VMware ESX Server starting with Version 2.5.

A great deal of useful information is available in *IBM System Storage DS8000 Host Systems Attachment Guide*, SC26-7917. This section is not intended to duplicate that publication, but rather provide more information about optimizing your VMware environment and a step-by-step guide to setting up ESX Server with the DS8000.

Other VMware products, such as VMware Server and Workstation, are not intended for the data center class environments where the DS8000 is typically used. The supported guest operating systems are Windows 2000 Server, Windows Server 2003, SUSE Linux SLES 8, 9 and 10, and Red Hat Enterprise Linux 2.1, 3.0, and 4.0. The VMotion feature is supported starting with Version 2.5.1.

This information is likely to change, so check the System Storage Interoperation Center for complete, up-to-date information at the following address:

[http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/ssic/displayessearchwithoutjs.wss?start\\_over=yes](http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/ssic/displayessearchwithoutjs.wss?start_over=yes)

### 15.6.1 VMware ESX Server 3

With Virtual Infrastructure 3, VMware focuses on the whole data center and no longer on single ESX hosts. Therefore, VMware has implemented a set of technologies that helps to better utilize the resources of all ESX hosts together. The central feature is the new VMware ESX Server Version 3. For a complete list of the new features in VMware ESX Server V3, visit the VMware website, found at the following address:

<http://www.vmware.com/>

Here, we focus only on the storage-related features.

One significant enhancement is the support of iSCSI and NFS storage. Also, the capabilities to handle FC-based storage have been improved. Special attention has been paid to the usability of direct SAN access (also known as raw LUN access) from the virtual machines. The so-called “Raw Device Mappings” (RDMs) can improve the virtual machine performance and reduce processing impact, and might be required in certain scenarios.

ESX Server V3 also provides enhanced support for booting directly from the SAN. This feature is now fully supported with the DS8000.

VMware Infrastructure V3 also offers Storage VMotion, which enables the migration of virtual machines from one data store to another with zero downtime.

One of the new features of ESX Server V3 is the new version of VMware’s virtual machine file system (VMFS). In addition to performance and reliability improvements, VMFS Version 3 now also supports the creation of subdirectories. In contrast to Version 2, now all files making up a virtual machine (virtual disks, virtual BIOS, and configuration files) are stored in VMFS V3 partitions. This makes it easier to move or back up virtual machines, because all files can be stored in one single location.

While ESX Server V3 can read VMFS-2 volumes, ESX Server V2.x cannot access VMFS-3 volumes at all. Procedures to upgrade from Version 2 are available in the service documents provided by VMware.

## 15.6.2 VMware disk architecture

Each virtual machine (VM) can access one or more virtual disks. The virtual disks can either be virtual machine disk files (.vmdk) stored on a VMFS-3 volume, or they can be raw disks (either local storage or SAN LUNs). See Figure 15-13.

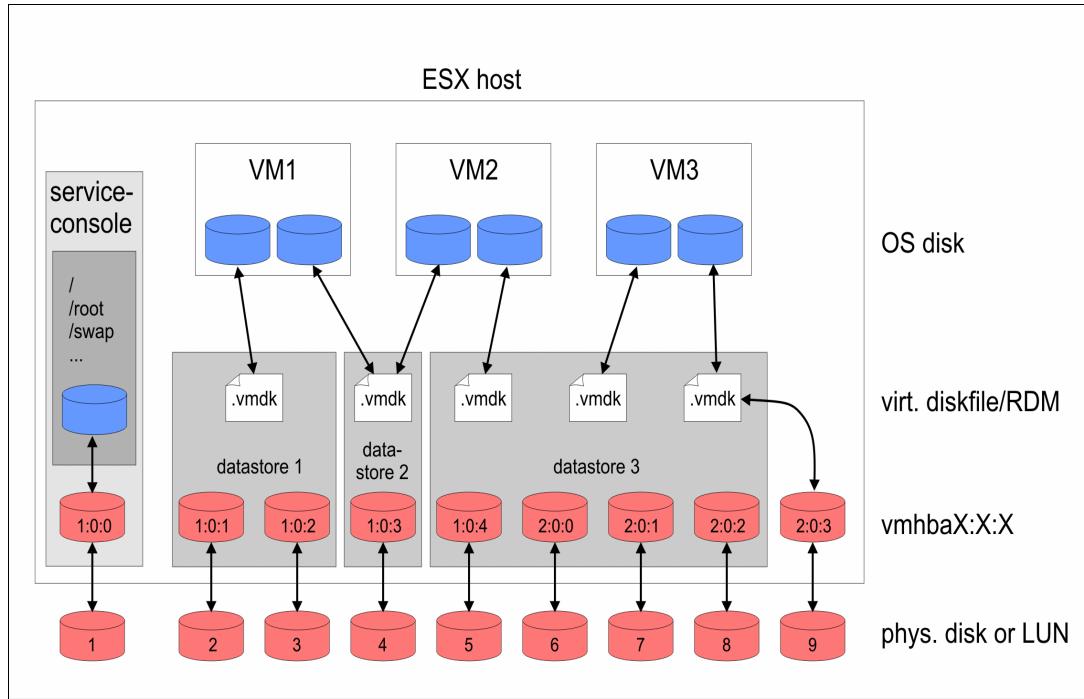


Figure 15-13 The logical disk structure of ESX Server

In Figure 15-13, LUNs are assigned to the ESX host via two HBAs (vmhba1 and vmhba2). LUN vmhba1:0:0 is used by the service console OS while the other LUNs are used for the virtual machines.

One or more LUNs build a VMFS datastore. Data stores can be expanded dynamically by adding additional LUNs. In this example VM1, VM2, and VM3 have stored their virtual disks on three different data stores. VM1 and VM2 share one virtual disk, which is located on data store 2 and is accessible by both VMs (for a cluster solution, for example). The VMFS distributed lock manager manages the shared access to the data stores.

VM3 uses both a virtual disk and an RDM to vmhba2:0:3. The .vmdk file acts as a proxy and contains all the information VM3 needs to access the LUN. While the .vmdk file is accessed when starting I/O, I/O itself is done directly to the LUN.

## 15.6.3 VMware setup and configuration

These are the high-level steps that you need to perform to use DS8000 disks with your virtual machines.

### Assigning LUNs to the ESX Server machine

Assign the LUNs that you want your virtual machines to use to your ESX Server machine's HBAs. One method of doing this volume assignment is to use the DS CLI. When making the host connections, it is important to use the flags -addrdiscovery lunpolling, -lbs 512, and -profile VMware. Another option is to use the -hosttype VMware parameter. When making the volume groups, you should use the parameter -type scsimap256.

As with other operating systems, you should have multiple paths from your server to the DS8000 to improve availability and reliability. Normally, the LUNs show up as multiple separate devices, but VMware contains native multipathing software that automatically conceals the redundant paths. Therefore, multipathing software is not needed on your guest operating systems.

As with other operating systems, you also need to also use persistent binding. See the *IBM System Storage DS8000 Host Systems Attachment Guide*, SC26-7917 for a discussion of why persistent binding is important and how to configure it for VMware.

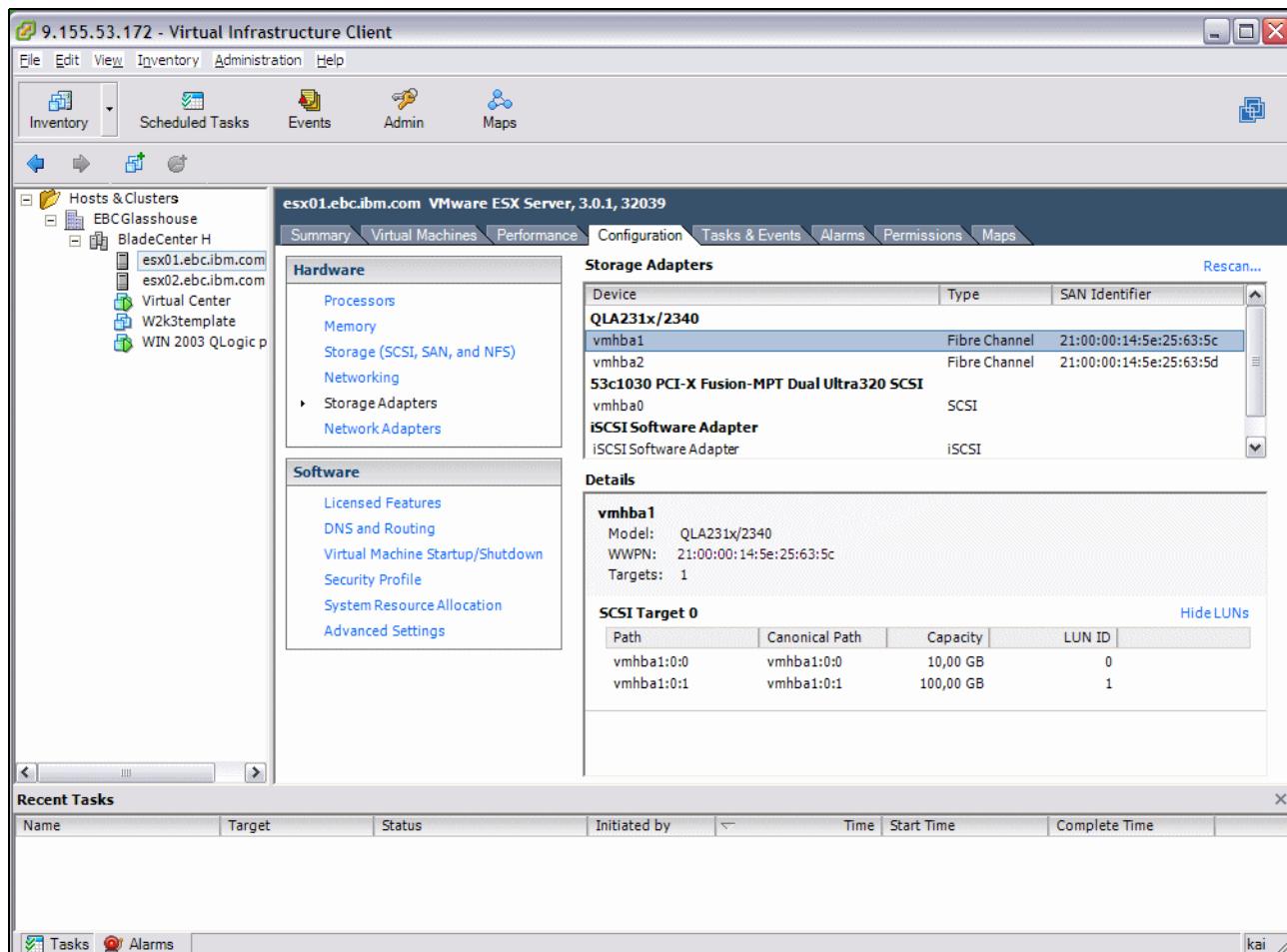


Figure 15-14 View of LUNs assigned to the hosts HBAs

After the LUNs are assigned properly, you can see them in Virtual Center by selecting the ESX host they have been assigned to and then choosing **Storage Adapters** from the Configuration tab. If you choose an adapter, the connected LUNs are shown in the details section.

You might have to tell VMware to refresh its disks by selecting **Rescan** in the upper right corner. Figure 15-14 shows the LUNs assigned to the selected ESX servers vmhba1.

### Assigning LUNs to the guest operating system

Now that the ESX Server machine can see the DS8000 LUNs, they can be presented to the virtual machines in two different ways, either as a data store for virtual disks or as an RDM.

**Note:** At least one VMFS datastore is required to store the virtual machines configuration files and the proxy files for RDMs. This is normally done automatically during the initial installation of ESX Server.

► Option 1: Using virtual disks

To store virtual disk files on this LUN, it must be formatted with the VMFS. In the Configuration tab, select **Storage (SCSI, SAN and NFS)**. On the right, you will be presented with a list of all configured data stores on this ESX host. To add a new one, click **Add Storage** in the upper right corner, then perform the following steps:

- a. Choose the storage type (choose LUN/disk for FC SAN storage).
- b. Select the LUN you want to use from the list.
- c. Look over the current disk layout.
- d. Enter a data store name.
- e. Select the maximum file size (depends on the block size) and enter the desired capacity of your new data store.
- f. On the Ready to complete page, click **Finish** to create the data store.

Perform a rescan to update the view.

To create a new virtual disk on this data store, select the virtual machine you want to add it to and click **Edit Settings**. In the lower left corner of the window, click **Add**, then perform the following steps:

- a. Choose device type **Hard disk**.
- b. Select **Create a new disk**.
- c. Enter the size and select the data store where you want to store this virtual disk.
- d. Select the virtual SCSI node and the mode of the disk.
- e. On the Summary tab, click **Finish** to provide this new virtual disk for the VM.

**Note:** With Virtual Infrastructure V3, it is now possible to add new disks to virtual machines while they are running. However, the guest OS must support this setup.

► Option 2: Using raw device mapping (RDM)

To use a physical LUN inside a virtual machine, you need to create a raw device mapping.

The LUN you want must already be known by the ESX host. If the LUN is not yet visible to the ESX host, check if it is assigned correctly and perform a rescan.

To create an RDM, select the virtual machine you want to add it to and click **Edit Settings**. On the lower left corner of the window, click **Add**, and then perform the following steps:

- a. Choose device type **Hard disk**.
- b. Select **Raw Device Mappings**.
- c. From the Select a disk window, select **Mapped SAN LUN**.
- d. Choose a raw LUN from the list.
- e. Select a data store onto which the raw LUN will be mapped (the proxy file will be stored here).
- f. Choose the compatibility mode (explained in “Compatibility modes” on page 452).
- g. Select the virtual SCSI node.

- h. On the Summary tab, click **Finish** to assign this LUN to the VM.

**Note:** RDM is a requirement for VMotion.

### Compatibility modes

VMware offers two different modes for RDMs: physical compatibility mode and virtual compatibility mode. In physical compatibility mode, all SCSI commands to the LUN are passed through the virtualization layer with minimal modification. As a result, system administrators can use the DS CLI command `lshostvol` to map the virtual machine disks to DS8000 disks. This option also generates the least processing impact.

Virtual compatibility mode lets you take advantage of disk modes and other features, such as snapshots, and redo logs that are normally only available for virtual disks.

Both RDM and virtual disks appear to the VM as regular SCSI disks and can be handled as such. The only difference is that virtual disks appear as “VMware Virtual Disk SCSI Disk Device” in the device tree and RDMs as “IBM 2107900 SCSI Disk Device” (see Figure 15-15).

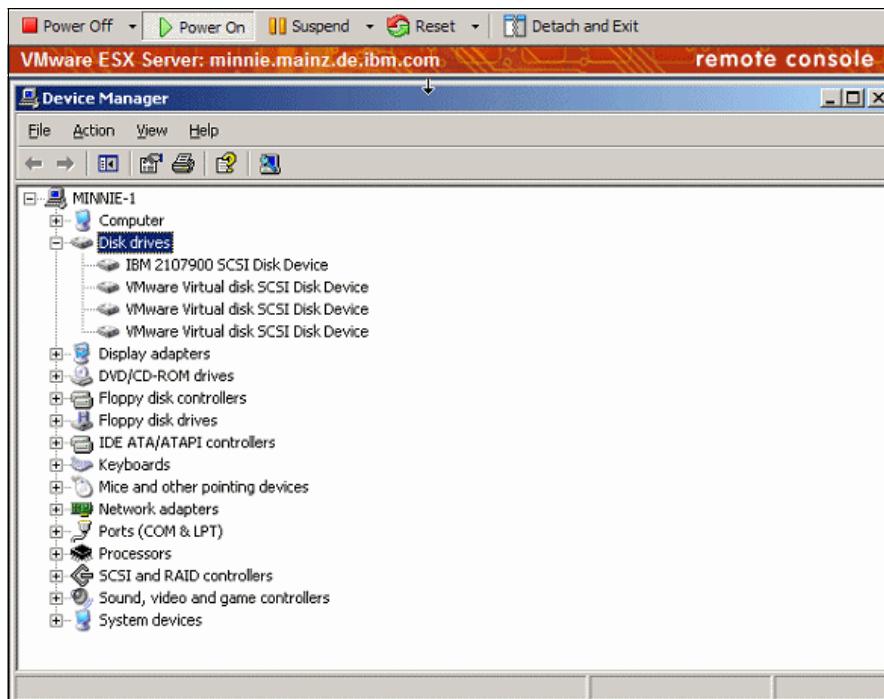


Figure 15-15 Device Management by the guest operating system

## 15.7 Sun Solaris

As with the previous models, the IBM System Storage DS8000 series continues to provide extensive support for Sun operating systems. Currently, the DS8000 supports Solaris 8, 9, and 10 on a variety of platforms. It also supports VERITAS Cluster Server and Sun Cluster. The Interoperability Matrix and the System Storage Interoperation Center (SSIC) provide complete information about supported configurations, including information about supported host bus adapters, SAN switches, and multipathing technologies.

These two tools can be found at the following addresses, respectively:

<http://www.ibm.com/servers/storage/disk/ds8000/interop.html>  
<http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/ssic/>

A great deal of useful information is available in the *IBM System Storage DS8000 Host Systems Attachment Guide*, SC26-7917. This section is not intended to duplicate that publication, but instead, this section provides more information about optimizing your Sun Solaris environment and a step-by-step guide to using Solaris with the DS8000.

### 15.7.1 Locating the WWPNs of your HBAs

Before you can assign LUNs to your server, you need to locate the WWPNs of the server's HBAs. One popular method for locating the WWPNs is to scan the /var/adm/messages file. Often, the WWPN only shows up in the file after a reboot. Also, the string to search for depends on the type of HBA that you have. Specific details are available in the *IBM System Storage DS8000 Host Systems Attachment Guide*, SC26-7917.

In many cases, you can also use the **prtconf** command to list the WWPNs, as shown in Example 15-39.

*Example 15-39 Listing the WWPNs*

---

```
# prtconf -vp | grep port-wwn
    port-wwn: 21000003.ba43fdc1
    port-wwn: 210000e0.8b099408
    port-wwn: 210000e0.8b0995f3
    port-wwn: 210000e0.8b096cf6
    port-wwn: 210000e0.8b098f08
```

---

### 15.7.2 Solaris attachment to DS8000

Solaris uses the LUN polling method to discover DS8000 LUNs. For this reason, each Solaris host is limited to 256 LUNs per HBA and volume group from the DS8000. You can assign LUNs using any of the supported DS8000 user interfaces, including the DS Command-Line Interface (DS CLI), the DS Storage Manager GUI(DS GUI), and the DS Open Application Programming Interface (DS Open API). When using the DS CLI, you should make the host connections using the flags -addrdiscovery lunpolling, -lbs 512, and -profile "SUN - Solaris". Another option is to use the -hosttype Sun parameter. When making the volume groups, you should use the parameter -type scsimap256.

For native HBA drivers, which are using the sd stack and therefore using the /kerne1/driv/sd.conf file, you should use persistent binding. If you do not use persistent binding, it is possible that Solaris will assign a different SCSI device identifier (SCSI ID) than the SCSI ID it used previously. This can happen if a new device is added to the SAN, for example. In this case, you have to reconfigure your applications or your operating system.

The methods of enabling persistent binding differ depending on your host bus adapter. The *IBM System Storage DS8000 Host Systems Attachment Guide*, SC26-7917 contains the recommended HBA settings for each supported type.

### 15.7.3 Multipathing in Solaris

As with other operating systems, you should use multiple paths between the DS8000 and your Solaris server. Multiple paths help to maximize the reliability and performance of your operating environment. The DS8000 supports three multipathing technologies on Solaris:

- ▶ IBM provides the System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver (SDD) as part of the DS8000 at no extra charge.
- ▶ Sun Solaris has a native multipathing software called the StorEdge Traffic Manager Software (STMS). STMS is commonly known as MPxIO (multiplexed I/O) in the industry, and the remainder of this section refers to this technology as MPxIO.
- ▶ IBM supports VERITAS Volume Manager (VxVM) Dynamic Multipathing (DMP), a part of the VERITAS Storage Foundation suite.

The multipathing technology that you should use depends predominantly on your operating environment and, of course, your business requirements. There are a few limitations depending on your operating system version, your host bus adapters, and whether you use clustering. Details are available in the *IBM System Storage DS8000 Host Systems Attachment Guide*, SC26-7917.

One difference between the multipathing technologies is in whether they suppress the redundant paths to the storage. MPxIO and DMP both suppress all paths to the storage except for one, and the device appears to the application as a single-path device. However, SDD allows the original paths to be seen, but creates its own virtual device (called a *vpath*) for applications to use.

If you assign LUNs to your server before you install multipathing software, you can see each LUN show up as two or more devices, depending on how many paths you have. In Example 15-40, the **iostat -nE** command shows that the volume 75207814206 appears twice: once as c2t1d1 on the first HBA and once as c3t1d1 on the second HBA.

*Example 15-40 Device listing without multipath software*

---

```
# iostat -nE
c2t1d1      Soft Errors: 0 Hard Errors: 0 Transport Errors: 0
Vendor: IBM      Product: 2107900      Revision: .212 Serial No: 75207814206
Size: 10.74GB <10737418240 Bytes>
Media Error: 0 Device Not Ready: 0 No Device: 0 Recoverable: 0
Illegal Request: 0 Predictive Failure Analysis: 0
c2t1d0      Soft Errors: 0 Hard Errors: 0 Transport Errors: 0
Vendor: IBM      Product: 2107900      Revision: .212 Serial No: 75207814205
Size: 10.74GB <10737418240 Bytes>
Media Error: 0 Device Not Ready: 0 No Device: 0 Recoverable: 0
Illegal Request: 0 Predictive Failure Analysis: 0
c3t1d1      Soft Errors: 0 Hard Errors: 0 Transport Errors: 0
Vendor: IBM      Product: 2107900      Revision: .212 Serial No: 75207814206
Size: 10.74GB <10737418240 Bytes>
Media Error: 0 Device Not Ready: 0 No Device: 0 Recoverable: 0
Illegal Request: 0 Predictive Failure Analysis: 0
c3t1d0      Soft Errors: 0 Hard Errors: 0 Transport Errors: 0
Vendor: IBM      Product: 2107900      Revision: .212 Serial No: 75207814205
Size: 10.74GB <10737418240 Bytes>
Media Error: 0 Device Not Ready: 0 No Device: 0 Recoverable: 0
Illegal Request: 0 Predictive Failure Analysis: 0
```

---

### IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver (SDD)

SDD is available from your local IBM support team, or it can be downloaded from the Internet. Both the SDD software and supporting documentation are available from this IBM website:

<http://www.ibm.com/servers/storage/support/software/sdd/index.html>

After you install the SDD software, you can see that the paths have been grouped into virtual vpath devices. Example 15-41 shows the output of the **showvpath** command.

*Example 15-41 Output of the showvpath command*

---

```
# /opt/IBMsdd/bin/showvpath
vpath1:          Serial Number : 75207814206
    c2t1d1s0      /devices/pci@6,4000/fibre-channel@2/sd@1,1:a,raw
    c3t1d1s0      /devices/pci@6,2000/fibre-channel@1/sd@1,1:a,raw

vpath2:          Serial Number : 75207814205
    c2t1d0s0      /devices/pci@6,4000/fibre-channel@2/sd@1,0:a,raw
    c3t1d0s0      /devices/pci@6,2000/fibre-channel@1/sd@1,0:a,raw
```

---

For each device, the operating system creates a node in the `/dev/dsk` and `/dev/rdsk` directories. After SDD is installed, you can see these new vpaths by listing the contents of those directories. Note that with SDD, the old paths are not suppressed. Instead, new vpath devices show up as `/dev/rdsk/vpath1a`, for example. When creating your volumes and file systems, be sure to use the vpath device instead of the original device.

SDD also offers parameters that you can tune for your environment. Specifically, SDD offers three different load balancing schemes:

- ▶ Failover:
  - No load balancing.
  - The second path is used only if the preferred path fails.
- ▶ Round robin:
  - The paths to use are chosen at random (but different paths than most recent I/O).
  - If there are only two paths, then they alternate.
- ▶ Load balancing:
  - The path chosen based on estimated path load.
  - Default policy.

The policy can be set through the use of the **datapath set device policy** command.

### **StorEdge Traffic Manager Software (MPxIO)**

On Solaris 8 and Solaris 9 systems, MPxIO is available as a bunch of OS patches and packages. You must install these patches and packages to use MPxIO. On Solaris 10 systems, MPxIO is installed by default. In all cases, MPxIO needs to be enabled and configured before it can be used with the DS8000.

Before you enable MPxIO, you need to configure your host bus adapters. Issue the **cfgadm -la** command to see the current state of your adapters. Example 15-42 shows two adapters, c3 and c4, of type fc.

*Example 15-42 cfgadm -la command output*

---

```
# cfgadm -la
Ap_Id          Type       Receptacle   Occupant   Condition
c3             fc         connected   unconfigured unknown
c4             fc         connected   unconfigured unknown
```

---

Note that the command reports that both adapters are unconfigured. To configure the adapters, issue **cfgadm -c configure cx** (where *x* is the adapter number, in this case, 3 and 4). Now, both adapters should show up as configured.

**Note:** The **cfgadm -c configure** command is unnecessary in Solaris 10.

To configure your MPxIO, you need to first enable it by editing the */kernel/drv/scsi\_vhci.conf* file. Find and change the *mpxio-disable* parameter to no (*mpxio-disable="no";*). For Solaris 10, you need to execute the **stmsboot -e** command to enable MPxIO.

Next, add the following stanza to supply the vendor identification (VID) and product identification (PID) information to MPxIO in the */kernel/drv/scsi\_vhci.conf* file:

```
device-type-scsi-options-list =
"IBM      2107900", "symmetric-option";
symmetric-option = 0x1000000;
```

The vendor string must be exactly 8 bytes, so you must type IBM followed by five spaces. Finally, the system must be rebooted. After the reboot, MPxIO is ready to be used.

For more information about MPxIO, including all the MPxIO commands and tuning parameters, see the Sun website at the following address:

<http://www.sun.com/storage/software/>

## VERITAS Volume Manager Dynamic Multipathing (DMP)

Before using VERITAS Volume Manager (VxVM) DMP, a part of the VERITAS Storage Foundation suite, you need to download and install the latest Maintenance Pack. You also need to download and install the Array Support Library (ASL) for the DS8000. Both of these packages are available at the following address:

<http://www.symantec.com/business/support/downloads.jsp?pid=53132>

During device discovery, the *vxconfigd* daemon compares the serial numbers of the different devices. If two devices have the same serial number, then they are the same LUN, and DMP combines the paths. Listing the contents of the */dev/vx/rdmp* directory shows only one set of devices.

The **vxdisk path** command also demonstrates DMP's path suppression capabilities. In Example 15-43, you can see that device *c7t2d0s2* is suppressed and is only shown as a subpath of *c6t1d0s2*.

*Example 15-43 vxdisk path command output*

# vxdisk path	SUBPATH	DNAME	DMNAME	GROUP	STATE
	c6t1d0s2	c6t1d0s2	Ethan01	Ethan	ENABLED
	c7t2d0s2	c6t1d0s2	Ethan01	Ethan	ENABLED
	c6t1d1s2	c7t2d1s2	Ethan02	Ethan	ENABLED
	c7t2d1s2	c7t2d1s2	Ethan02	Ethan	ENABLED
	c6t1d2s2	c7t2d2s2	Ethan03	Ethan	ENABLED
	c7t2d2s2	c7t2d2s2	Ethan03	Ethan	ENABLED
	c6t1d3s2	c7t2d3s2	Ethan04	Ethan	ENABLED
	c7t2d3s2	c7t2d3s2	Ethan04	Ethan	ENABLED

Now, you create volumes using the device name listed under the DANAME column. In Figure 15-16, a volume is created using four disks, even though there are actually eight paths.

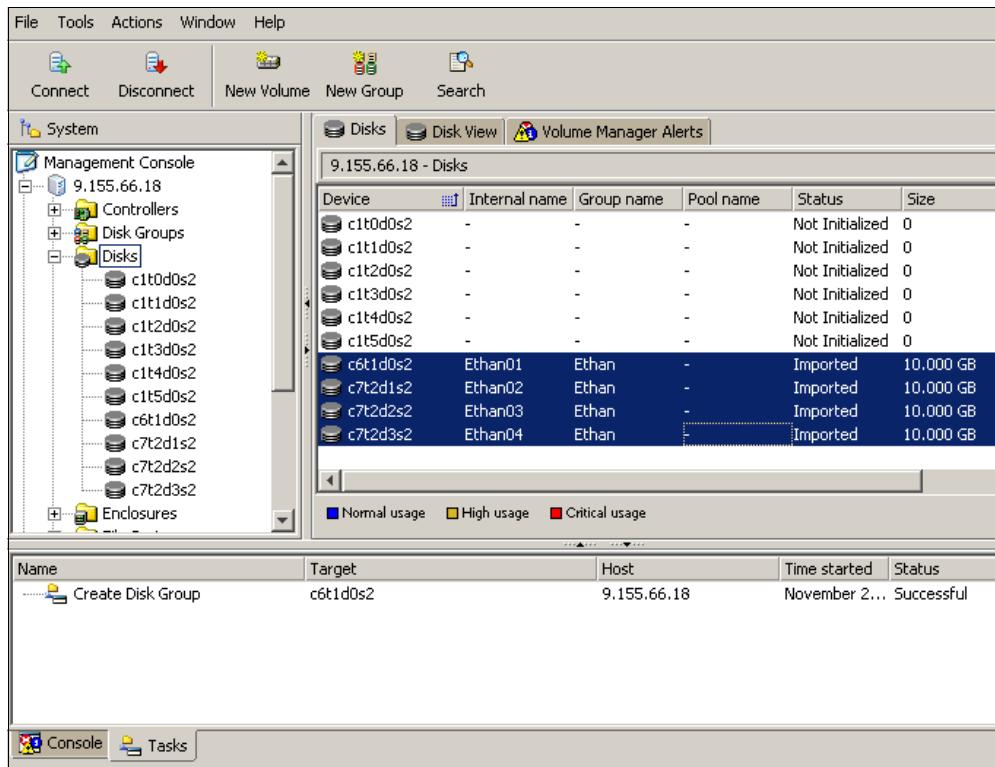


Figure 15-16 VERITAS DMP disk view

As with other multipathing software, DMP provides a number of parameters that you can tune to maximize the performance and availability in your environment. For example, it is possible to set a load balancing policy to dictate how the I/O should be shared between the different paths. It is also possible to select which paths get used in which order in case of a failure.

Complete details about the features and capabilities of DMP are on the VERITAS website at the following address:

<http://www.symantec.com/business/theme.jsp?themeid=datacenter>

#### 15.7.4 Dynamic Volume Expansion with VxVM and DMP

Starting with Licensed Machine Code 5.3.xx.xx, it is possible to expand a volume in the DS8000 even if it is mapped to a host. However, a volume that is in a FlashCopy, Metro Mirror, or Global Mirror relationship cannot be expanded unless the relationship is removed, which means the FlashCopy, Metro Mirror, or Global Mirror on that volume has to be removed before it is possible to expand the volume.

An example of how to expand a volume on a Solaris host with VERITAS Volume Manager (VxVM), where the volume is a DS8000 volume, is shown in the following section.

To display the volume size, use the command **lfbvol**, as shown in Example 15-44.

---

*Example 15-44 lfbvol -fullid before volume expansion*

---

```
dscli> lfbvol -fullid 4704
Date/Time: November 7, 2007 4:18:33 PM CET IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.991 DS: IBM.2107-7520781
Name          ID          accstate datastate configstate deviceMTM datatype extpool      cap(2^30B) cap(10^9B) cap(blocks)
-----
ITSO_v880_4704 IBM.2107-7520781/4704 Online  Normal  Normal    2107-900  FB 512   IBM.2107-7520781/P53    12.0     -    25165824
```

---

Here we can see that the capacity is 12 GB, and also that the volume ID is 4704. To determine what is the corresponding disk on the Solaris host, you have to install the DS CLI on this host and execute the **lshostvol** command. The output is shown in Example 15-45.

---

*Example 15-45 lshostvol output*

---

```
bash-3.00# /opt/ibm/dscli/bin/lshostvol.sh
Device Name          Volume ID
-----
c2t50050763030CC1A5d0  IBM.2107-7520781/4704
c2t50050763030CC08Fd0 IBM.2107-7503461/4704
c2t5005076303000663d0 IBM.2107-75ABTV1/4704
c3t50050763030B0663d0 IBM.2107-75ABTV1/4704
c3t500507630319C08Fd0 IBM.2107-7503461/4704
c3t50050763031CC1A5d0 IBM.2107-7520781/4704
```

---

Here we can see that the volume with ID 75207814704 is c2t50050763030CC1A5d0 or c3t50050763031CC1A5d0 on the Solaris host. To see the size of the volume on the Solaris host, we use the **luxadm** command, as shown in Example 15-46.

---

*Example 15-46 luxadm output before volume expansion*

---

```
bash-3.00# luxadm display /dev/rdsk/c2t50050763030CC1A5d0s2
DEVICE PROPERTIES for disk: /dev/rdsk/c2t50050763030CC1A5d0s2
  Status(Port A):      0.K.
  Vendor:             IBM
  Product ID:         2107900
  WWN(Node):          5005076303fffc1a5
  WWN(Port A):        50050763030cc1a5
  Revision:           .991
  Serial Num:         75207814704
  Unformatted capacity: 12288.000 MBytes
  Write Cache:         Enabled
  Read Cache:          Enabled
    Minimum prefetch: 0x0
    Maximum prefetch: 0x16
  Device Type:         Disk device
  Path(s):
    /dev/rdsk/c2t50050763030CC1A5d0s2
    /devices/pci@9,600000/SUNW,q1c@1/fp@0,0/ssl@w50050763030cc1a5,0:c,raw
    /dev/rdsk/c3t50050763031CC1A5d0s2
    /devices/pci@9,600000/SUNW,q1c@2/fp@0,0/ssl@w50050763031cc1a5,0:c,raw
```

---

This indicates that the volume size is 12288 MB, equal to 12 GB. To obtain the dmpnodename of this disk in VxVM, we have to use the **vxdmpadm** command (see Example 15-47). The capacity of this disk, as shown in VxVM, can be found on the output line labeled public: after issuing a **vxdisk list <dmpnodename>** command. You have to multiply the value for len by 512 bytes, which is equal to 12 GB (25095808 x 512).

---

*Example 15-47 VxVM commands before volume expansion*

---

```
bash-3.00# vxdmpadm getsubpaths ctrlr=c2
NAME      STATE[A]  PATH-TYPE[M] DMPNODENAME  ENCLR-TYPE  ENCLR-NAME  ATTRS
=====
NONAME    DISABLED   -          IBM_DS8x002_1 IBM_DS8x00  IBM_DS8x002  -
c2t50050763030CC08Fd0s2 ENABLED(A) -          IBM_DS8x002_0 IBM_DS8x00  IBM_DS8x002  -
c2t50050763030CC1A5d0s2 ENABLED(A) -          IBM_DS8x001_0 IBM_DS8x00  IBM_DS8x001  -
c2t5005076303000663d0s2 ENABLED(A) -          IBM_DS8x000_0 IBM_DS8x00  IBM_DS8x000  -

bash-3.00# vxdisk list IBM_DS8x001_0
Device:  IBM_DS8x001_0
devicetag: IBM_DS8x001_0
type: auto
hostid: v880
disk: name=IBM_DS8x001_0 id=1194446100.17.v880
group: name=20781_dg id=1194447491.20.v880
info: format=cdsdisk,privoffset=256,pubslice=2,privslice=2
flags: online ready private autoconfig autoimport imported
pubpaths: block=/dev/vx/dmp/IBM_DS8x001_0s2 char=/dev/vx/rdmp/IBM_DS8x001_0s2
guid: {9ecb6cb6-1dd1-11b2-af7a-0003ba43fdc1}
udid: IBM%5F2107%5F7520781%5F6005076303FFC1A50000000000004704
site: -
version: 3.1
iosize: min=512 (Bytes) max=2048 (blocks)
public: slice=2 offset=65792 len=25095808 disk_offset=0
private: slice=2 offset=256 len=65536 disk_offset=0
update: time=1194447493 seqno=0.15
ssb: actual_seqno=0.0
headers: 0 240
configs: count=1 len=48144
logs: count=1 len=7296
Defined regions:
config priv 000048-000239[000192]: copy=01 offset=000000 enabled
config priv 000256-048207[047952]: copy=01 offset=000192 enabled
log     priv 048208-055503[007296]: copy=01 offset=000000 enabled
lockrgn priv 055504-055647[000144]: part=00 offset=000000
Multipathing information:
numpaths: 2
c2t50050763030CC1A5d0s2 state=enabled
c3t50050763031CC1A5d0s2 state=enabled
```

---

We already created a file system on the logical volume of the VxVM diskgroup; the size of the file system (11 GB) mounted on /20781 will be displayed by using the **df** command, as shown in Example 15-48.

---

*Example 15-48 df command before volume expansion*

---

```
bash-3.00# df -k
Filesystem      kBytes   used   avail capacity  Mounted on
/dev/dsk/c1t0d0s0  14112721 4456706 9514888   32%      /
/devices           0       0       0      0%      /devices
ctfs              0       0       0      0%      /system/contract
proc              0       0       0      0%      /proc
```

mnttab	0	0	0	0%	/etc/mnttab
swap	7225480	1160	7224320	1%	/etc/svc/volatile
objfs	0	0	0	0%	/system/object
fd	0	0	0	0%	/dev/fd
swap	7224320	0	7224320	0%	/tmp
swap	7224368	48	7224320	1%	/var/run
swap	7224320	0	7224320	0%	/dev/vx/dmp
swap	7224320	0	7224320	0%	/dev/vx/rdmp
/dev/dsk/c1t0d0s7	20160418	2061226	17897588	11%	/export/home
/dev/vx/dsk/03461_dg/03461_vol	10485760	20062	9811599	1%	/03461
/dev/vx/dsk/20781_dg/20781_vol	11534336	20319	10794398	1%	/20781

To expand the volume on the DS8000, we use the command **chfbvol** (see Example 15-49). The new capacity must be larger than the previous one; you *cannot* shrink the volume.

#### Example 15-49 Expanding a volume

---

```
dscli> chfbvol -cap 18 4704
Date/Time: October 18, 2007 1:10:52 PM CEST IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.991 DS:
IBM.2107-7520781
CMUC00332W chfbvol: Some host operating systems do not support changing the volume
size. Are you sure that you want to resize the volume? [y/n]: y
CMUC00026I chfbvol: FB volume 4704 successfully modified.
```

---

To check that the volume has been expanded, we use the **lsfbvol** command, as shown in Example 15-50. Here you can see that the volume 4704 has been expanded to 18 GB in capacity.

#### Example 15-50 lsfbvol after expansion

---

```
dscli> lsfbvol 4704
Date/Time: November 7, 2007 11:05:15 PM CET IBM DSCLI Version: 5.3.0.991 DS: IBM.2107-7520781
Name           ID   accstate datastate configstate deviceMTM datatype extpool cap (2^30B) cap (10^9B) cap (blocks)
=====
ITSO_v880_4704 4704 Online    Normal    Normal  2107-900  FB 512    P53          18.0      -  37748736
```

---

To see the changed size of the volume on the Solaris host after the expansion, we use the **luxadm** command, as shown in Example 15-51.

#### Example 15-51 luxadm output after volume expansion

---

```
bash-3.00# luxadm display /dev/rdsk/c2t50050763030CC1A5d0s2
DEVICE PROPERTIES for disk: /dev/rdsk/c2t50050763030CC1A5d0s2
  Status(Port A):      O.K.
  Vendor:              IBM
  Product ID:          2107900
  WWN(Node):           5005076303ffc1a5
  WWN(Port A):         50050763030cc1a5
  Revision:            .991
  Serial Num:          75207814704
  Unformatted capacity: 18432.000 MBytes
  Write Cache:          Enabled
  Read Cache:           Enabled
  Minimum prefetch:    0x0
  Maximum prefetch:    0x16
```

---

```
Device Type: Disk device
Path(s):
/dev/rdsk/c2t50050763030CC1A5d0s2
/devices/pci@9,600000/SUNW,q1c@1/fp@0,0/ssd@w50050763030cc1a5,0:c,raw
/dev/rdsk/c3t50050763031CC1A5d0s2
/devices/pci@9,600000/SUNW,q1c@2/fp@0,0/ssd@w50050763031cc1a5,0:c,raw
```

---

The disk now has a capacity of 18 GB. To use the additional capacity, we have to issue the **vxdisk resize** command, as shown in Example 15-52. After the volume expansion, the disk size is 37677568 \* 512 bytes, equal to 18 GB.

*Example 15-52 VxVM commands after volume expansion*

---

```
bash-3.00# vxdisk resize IBM_DS8x001_0

bash-3.00# vxdisk list IBM_DS8x001_0
Device: IBM_DS8x001_0
devicetag: IBM_DS8x001_0
type: auto
hostid: v880
disk: name=IBM_DS8x001_0 id=1194446100.17.v880
group: name=20781_dg id=1194447491.20.v880
info: format=cdsdisk,privoffset=256,pubslice=2,privslice=2
flags: online ready private autoconfig autoimport imported
pubpaths: block=/dev/vx/dmp/IBM_DS8x001_0s2 char=/dev/vx/rdmp/IBM_DS8x001_0s2
guid: {fbdbfe12-1dd1-11b2-af7c-0003ba43fdc1}
udid: IBM%5F2107%5F7520781%5F6005076303FFC1A50000000000004704
site: -
version: 3.1
iosize: min=512 (Bytes) max=2048 (blocks)
public: slice=2 offset=65792 len=37677568 disk_offset=0
private: slice=2 offset=256 len=65536 disk_offset=0
update: time=1194473744 seqno=0.16
ssb: actual_seqno=0.0
headers: 0 240
configs: count=1 len=48144
logs: count=1 len=7296
Defined regions:
config priv 000048-000239[000192]: copy=01 offset=000000 enabled
config priv 000256-048207[047952]: copy=01 offset=000192 enabled
log priv 048208-055503[007296]: copy=01 offset=000000 enabled
lockrgn priv 055504-055647[000144]: part=00 offset=000000
Multipathing information:
numpaths: 2
c2t50050763030CC1A5d0s2 state=enabled
c3t50050763031CC1A5d0s2 state=enabled
```

---

**Note:** You need at least two disks in the diskgroup where you want to resize a disk; otherwise, the **vxdisk resize** command will fail. In addition, Sun has found some potential issues regarding the **vxdisk resize** command in VERITAS Storage Foundation 4.0 or 4.1. More details about this issue can be found at the following address:

<http://sunsolve.sun.com/search/document.do?assetkey=1-26-102625-1&searchclause=102625>

Now we have to expand the logical volume and the file system in VxVM. Therefore, we need the maximum size we can expand to, then we have to expand the logical volume and the file system (see Example 15-53).

*Example 15-53 VxVM logical volume expansion*

---

```
bash-3.00# vxvoladm -g 20781_dg maxgrow 20781_vol
Volume can be extended to: 37677056(17.97g)

bash-3.00# vxvoladm -g 20781_dg growto 20781_vol 37677056

bash-3.00# /opt/VRTS/bin/fsadm -b 17g /20781
UX:vxfs fsadm: INFO: V-3-25942: /dev/vx/rdsk/20781_dg/20781_vol size increased
from 23068672 sectors to 35651584 sectors
```

---

After the file system expansion, the **df** command shows a size of 17825792 KB, equal to 17 GB, on file system /dev/vx/dsk/20781\_vol, as shown in Example 15-54.

*Example 15-54 df command after file system expansion*

---

```
bash-3.00# df -k
Filesystem      kBytes   used  avail capacity  Mounted on
/dev/dsk/c1t0d0s0    14112721 4456749 9514845   32%    /
/devices          0       0     0     0%    /devices
ctfs             0       0     0     0%    /system/contract
proc             0       0     0     0%    /proc
mnttab           0       0     0     0%    /etc/mnttab
swap            7222640   1160 7221480   1%    /etc/svc/volatile
objfs            0       0     0     0%    /system/object
fd               0       0     0     0%    /dev/fd
swap            7221480     0 7221480   0%    /tmp
swap            7221528    48 7221480   1%    /var/run
swap            7221480     0 7221480   0%    /dev/vx/dmp
swap            7221480     0 7221480   0%    /dev/vx/rdmp
/dev/dsk/c1t0d0s7  20160418 2061226 17897588   11%   /export/home
/dev/vx/dsk/03461_dg/03461_vol
                    10485760 20062 9811599   1%   /03461
/dev/vx/dsk/20781_dg/20781_vol
                    17825792 21861 16691193   1%   /20781
```

---

## 15.8 Hewlett-Packard UNIX

The DS8000 attachment is supported with Hewlett-Packard UNIX (HP-UX) 11i or later. For providing a fault tolerant connection to the DS8000, several multipathing solutions are supported:

- ▶ IBM Multipath Subsystem Device Driver (SDD)
- ▶ HP-UX PVLINKS
- ▶ HP-UX Native Multipathing with HP-UX 11iv3

IBM SDD and HP's Native Multipathing offer load balancing over the available I/O paths and I/O path failover in case of a connection failure. PVLINKS is a failover solution, but does not offer automatic load balancing.

This section is intended to be a basic step-by-step configuration to attach an HP host to the point where the host is capable of running I/O to the DS8000 device. It is not intended to repeat the information that is contained in other publications.

### 15.8.1 Available documentation

For the latest available supported HP-UX configuration and required software patches, refer to the IBM System Storage Interoperation Center (SSIC) at the following address:

<http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/ssic>

To prepare the host to attach the DS8000, refer to the DS8000 Information Center at the following address:

<http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/dsichelp/ds8000ic/index.jsp>

In this Information Center, select **Configuring → Attaching Hosts → Hewlett-Packard Server (HP-UX) host attachment**.

For SDD installation, refer to *IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver User's Guide*, SC30-4131. The User's Guide is available at the download page for each individual SDD Operating System Version at the following address:

<http://www.ibm.com/support/dlsearch.wss?rs=540&tc=ST52G7&dc=D430>

### 15.8.2 DS8000-specific software

There are two DS8000 software components available:

- ▶ IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver (SDD)
- ▶ IBM System Storage DS8000 Command-Line Interface (DS CLI)

SDD is a multipathing software product with policy-based load balancing on all available paths to the DS8000. Install the DS CLI on the host for automation purposes of Copy Services, storage management, and storage allocation.

To get the latest version of SDD and the DS CLI to install on your host, you can either use the version that is delivered with the DS8000 Microcode bundle or you can download the latest available SDD version at the following address:

<http://www.ibm.com/support/dlsearch.wss?rs=540&tc=ST52G7&dc=D430>

You can download the latest available ISO-image for the DS CLI CD at the following address:

[ftp://ftp.software.ibm.com/storage/ds8000/updates/DS8K\\_Customer\\_Download\\_Files/CLI/](ftp://ftp.software.ibm.com/storage/ds8000/updates/DS8K_Customer_Download_Files/CLI/)

### 15.8.3 Locating the WWPNs of HBAs

Before you can assign LUNs to your server, you need to locate the worldwide port names of the server HBAs. On HP-UX, you can use the Fibre Channel Mass Storage Utility (fcmsutil) to display the WWPNs. The HP-UX device file for the HBA is a required parameter. Look for the *N\_port Port World Wide Name*. See Example 15-55.

*Example 15-55 Output of fcmsutil*

---

```
# fcmsutil /dev/fcd0
```

```
Vendor ID is = 0x1077
Device ID is = 0x2312
```

```

PCI Sub-system Vendor ID is = 0x103C
PCI Sub-system ID is = 0x12BA
PCI Mode = PCI-X 133 MHz
ISP Code version = 3.3.166
ISP Chip version = 3
Topology = PTTOPT_FABRIC
Link Speed = 2Gb
Local N_Port_id is = 0x491000
Previous N_Port_id is = 0x491000
N_Port Node World Wide Name = 0x50060b000039dde1
N_Port Port World Wide Name = 0x50060b000039dde0
Switch Port World Wide Name = 0x201000051e0384cd
Switch Node World Wide Name = 0x100000051e0384cd
Driver state = ONLINE
Hardware Path is = 0/2/1/0
Maximum Frame Size = 2048
Driver-Firmware Dump Available = NO
Driver-Firmware Dump Timestamp = N/A
Driver Version = @(#) fcd B.11.31.01 Jan 7 2007

```

---

#### 15.8.4 Defining the HP-UX host for the DS8000

To configure the server on the DS8000, you have to define a host connection using the DS GUI or the DS CLI. The hosttype parameter is required for this definition. The predefined hosttype *HP* automatically configures the DS8000 to present the DS8000 volumes in an HP-UX preferred method.

For HP-UX server attachment to DS8000, LUN IDs greater than x'3FFF' are not supported. When you create or assign LUNs and volumes, only LUN and volume IDs less than x'3FFF' are supported. This limits the maximum number of volumes that are allowed for HP host types to 16384.

With HP-UX 11i v3, HP introduced several major changes, especially in the I/O area, such as:

- ▶ Persistent Device Special Files (DSFs) that are created independently from the underlying hardware path information and the number of physical paths to a device, for example, /dev/(r)disk/disk14. This representation is called “agile view.”
- ▶ The older format for device special file names (such as /dev/(r)dsk/c12t0d1) is still available and is called “Legacy DSF” in HP-UX 11iv3. Accordingly, this representation is called “legacy view.”

After you configure the volumes on the DS8000, connect your host to the fabric, then discover the devices by using the **ioscan** command. Example 15-56 shows that the DS8000 devices have been discovered successfully, but the devices cannot be used, because no special device file is available.

*Example 15-56 Discovered DS8000 devices without a special device file*

---

```
# ioscan -fnC disk
Class      I H/W Path          Driver S/W State   H/W Type      Description
=====
disk      2 0/0/3/0.0.0.0    sdisk   CLAIMED     DEVICE       TEAC        DV-28E-C
                           /dev/dsk/c0t0d0  /dev/rdsk/c0t0d0
disk      0 0/1/1/0.0.0.0    sdisk   CLAIMED     DEVICE       HP 146 GMAT3147NC
                           /dev/dsk/c2t0d0  /dev/rdsk/c2t0d0
...

```

---

disk	7	0/2/1/0.71.10.0.46.0.1	sdisk	CLAIMED	DEVICE	IBM
2107900						
disk	8	0/2/1/0.71.42.0.46.0.1	sdisk	CLAIMED	DEVICE	IBM
2107900						
disk	6	0/2/1/0.71.51.0.46.0.1	sdisk	CLAIMED	DEVICE	IBM
2107900						
disk	11	0/5/1/0.73.10.0.46.0.1	sdisk	CLAIMED	DEVICE	IBM
2107900						
disk	9	0/5/1/0.73.42.0.46.0.1	sdisk	CLAIMED	DEVICE	IBM
2107900						
disk	10	0/5/1/0.73.51.0.46.0.1	sdisk	CLAIMED	DEVICE	IBM
2107900						

---

There are two options to create the missing special device file. The first one is a reboot of the host, which is disruptive. The alternative is to run the command **insf -eC disk**, which will reinstall the special device files for all devices of the Class disk.

After creating the special device files, the **ioscan** output should look like Example 15-57.

*Example 15-57 Discovered DS8000 devices with a special device file*

---

#	ioscan -fnkC disk						
Class	I	H/W Path	Driver	S/W State	H/W Type	Description	
disk	2	0/0/3/0.0.0.0	sdisk	CLAIMED	DEVICE	TEAC	DV-28E-C
				/dev/dsk/c0t0d0	/dev/rdsck0t0d0		
disk	0	0/1/1/0.0.0	sdisk	CLAIMED	DEVICE	HP 146	GMAT3147NC
				/dev/dsk/c2t0d0	/dev/rdsck2t0d0		
...							
disk	7	0/2/1/0.71.10.0.46.0.1	sdisk	CLAIMED	DEVICE	IBM	
2107900					/dev/dsk/c11t0d1	/dev/rdsck11t0d1	
disk	8	0/2/1/0.71.42.0.46.0.1	sdisk	CLAIMED	DEVICE	IBM	
2107900					/dev/dsk/c12t0d1	/dev/rdsck12t0d1	
disk	6	0/2/1/0.71.51.0.46.0.1	sdisk	CLAIMED	DEVICE	IBM	
2107900					/dev/dsk/c10t0d1	/dev/rdsck10t0d1	
disk	11	0/5/1/0.73.10.0.46.0.1	sdisk	CLAIMED	DEVICE	IBM	
2107900					/dev/dsk/c15t0d1	/dev/rdsck15t0d1	
disk	9	0/5/1/0.73.42.0.46.0.1	sdisk	CLAIMED	DEVICE	IBM	
2107900					/dev/dsk/c13t0d1	/dev/rdsck13t0d1	
disk	10	0/5/1/0.73.51.0.46.0.1	sdisk	CLAIMED	DEVICE	IBM	
2107900					/dev/dsk/c14t0d1	/dev/rdsck14t0d1	

---

The **ioscan** command also shows the relationship between agile and earlier representations.

*Example 15-58 Relationship between Persistent DSFs and Legacy DSFs*

---

#	ioscan -m dsf		
Persistent DSF		Legacy DSF(s)	
...			

---

---

/dev/rdisk/disk12	/dev/rdsk/c10t0d1
	/dev/rdsk/c14t0d1
/dev/rdisk/disk13	/dev/rdsk/c11t0d1
	/dev/rdsk/c15t0d1
/dev/rdisk/disk14	/dev/rdsk/c12t0d1
	/dev/rdsk/c13t0d1

---

Once the volumes are visible, such as in Example 15-57 on page 465, you can then create volume groups (VGs), logical volumes, and file systems.

### 15.8.5 Multipathing

You can use the IBM SDD multipath driver or other multipathing solutions from HP and Veritas.

#### Multipathing with IBM SDD

The IBM Multipath Subsystem Device Driver (SDD) is a multipathing software that is capable of policy-based load balancing on all available paths to the DS8000. The load balancing is a major advantage. SDD provides a virtual path for a device that points to the underlying HP-UX device files, for example, /dev/dsk/vpath11.

If you have installed the SDD on an existing machine and you want to migrate your devices to become vpath devices, use the command **hd2vp**, which will convert your volume group to access the vpath devices instead of the /dev/dsk/cXtYdZ devices.

Example 15-59 shows the output of the DS CLI command **lshostvol**. This command is an easy way of displaying the relationship between disk device files (paths to the DS8000), the configured DS8000 LUN serial number, and the assigned vpath device.

*Example 15-59 dscli command lshostvol*

---

```
dscli> lshostvol
Date/Time: November 18, 2005 7:01:17 PM GMT IBM DSCLI Version: 5.0.4.140
Disk Name      Volume Id      Vpath Name
=====
c38t0d5,c36t0d5 IBM.2107-7503461/1105 vpath11
c38t0d6,c36t0d6 IBM.2107-7503461/1106 vpath10
c38t0d7,c36t0d7 IBM.2107-7503461/1107 vpath9
c38t1d0,c36t1d0 IBM.2107-7503461/1108 vpath8
```

---

#### SDD troubleshooting

When all DS8000 volumes are visible after claiming them with **ioscan**, but are not configured by the SDD, you can run the command **cfgvpath -r** to perform a dynamic reconfiguration of all SDD devices.

#### Link errors handling with HP-UX

If a Fibre Channel link to the DS8000 fails, SDD automatically takes care of taking the path offline and bringing it back online after the path is established again. Example 15-60 shows the messages that the SDD posts to the syslog when a link went away and comes back.

*Example 15-60 Sample syslog.log entries for the SDD link failure events*

---

```
Nov 10 17:49:27 dwarf vmunix: WARNING: VPATH_EVENT: device = vpath8 path = 0
offline
```

```

Nov 10 17:49:27 dwarf vmunix: WARNING: VPATH_EVENT: device = vpath9 path = 0
offline
Nov 10 17:49:27 dwarf vmunix: WARNING: VPATH_EVENT: device = vpath10 path = 0
offline
Nov 10 17:50:15 dwarf vmunix: WARNING: VPATH_EVENT: device = vpath11 path = 0
offline

.....
```

---

```

Nov 10 17:56:12 dwarf vmunix: NOTICE: VPATH_EVENT: device = vpath9 path = 0 online
Nov 10 17:56:12 dwarf vmunix: NOTICE: VPATH_EVENT: device = vpath8 path = 0 online
Nov 10 17:56:12 dwarf vmunix: NOTICE: VPATH_EVENT: device = vpath10 path = 0
online
Nov 10 17:56:12 dwarf vmunix: NOTICE: VPATH_EVENT: device = vpath11 path = 0
online

```

---

## HP-UX multipathing solutions

Up to HP-UX 11iv2, PVLINKS was HP's multipathing solution on HP-UX and was built into the Logical Volume Manager (LVM). This multipathing solution performs a path failover to an alternate path after the primary path is not available any more, but does not offer load balancing.

To use PVLINKS, just add the HP-UX special device files to a newly created volume group with LVM (see Example 15-61). The first special device file for a disk device will become the primary path; the other device files will become alternate paths.

*Example 15-61 Volume group creation with earlier DSFs*

---

```

# vgcreate -A y -x y -l 255 -p 100 -s 16 /dev/vg08 /dev/dsk/c11t0d1
/dev/dsk/c15t0d1 /dev/dsk/c12t0d1 /dev/dsk/c13t0d1
Volume group "/dev/vg08" has been successfully created.
Volume Group configuration for /dev/vg08 has been saved in /etc/lvmconf/vg08.conf
#
# vgdisplay -v vg08
--- Volume groups ---
VG Name                  /dev/vg08
VG Write Access          read/write
VG Status                available
Max LV                  255
Cur LV                  0
Open LV                 0
Max PV                  100
Cur PV                  2
Act PV                  2
Max PE per PV           1016
VGDA                     4
PE Size (MBytes)        16
Total PE                 1534
Alloc PE                 0
Free PE                  1534
Total PVG                0
Total Spare PVs          0
Total Spare PVs in use   0

--- Physical volumes ---
```

PV Name	/dev/dsk/c11t0d1
PV Name	/dev/dsk/c15t0d1 Alternate Link
PV Status	available
Total PE	767
Free PE	767
Autoswitch	On
PV Name	/dev/dsk/c12t0d1
PV Name	/dev/dsk/c13t0d1 Alternate Link
PV Status	available
Total PE	767
Free PE	767
Autoswitch	On

---

With HP-UX 11iv3 and the new agile addressing, a native multipathing solution is available outside of HP Logical Volume Manager (LVM). It offers load balancing over the available I/O paths.

Starting with HP-UX 11iv3, LVM's Alternate Link functionality (PVLINKS) is redundant, but is still supported with earlier DSFs.

To use the new agile addressing with a volume group, just specify the persistent DSFs in the **vgcreate** command (see Example 15-62).

*Example 15-62 Volume group creation with Persistent DSFs*

---

```
# vgcreate -A y -x y -l 255 -p 100 -s 16 /dev/vgagile /dev/disk/disk12 /dev/disk/disk13
/dev/disk/disk14
Volume group "/dev/vgagile" has been successfully created.
Volume Group configuration for /dev/vgagile has been saved in /etc/lvmconf/vgagile.conf

# vgdisplay -v vgagile
--- Volume groups ---
VG Name          /dev/vgagile
VG Write Access  read/write
VG Status        available
Max LV          255
Cur LV          0
Open LV          0
Max PV          100
Cur PV          3
Act PV          3
Max PE per PV   1016
VGDA            6
PE Size (MBytes) 16
Total PE        2301
Alloc PE        0
Free PE         2301
Total PVG       0
Total Spare PVs 0
Total Spare PVs in use 0

--- Physical volumes ---
PV Name          /dev/disk/disk12
PV Status        available
Total PE        767
Free PE         767
Autoswitch      On
```

PV Name	/dev/disk/disk13
PV Status	available
Total PE	767
Free PE	767
Autoswitch	On
PV Name	/dev/disk/disk14
PV Status	available
Total PE	767
Free PE	767
Autoswitch	On

---

### Link errors handling with HP-UX

If a Fibre Channel link to the DS8000 fails, the multipathing software automatically takes care of taking the path offline and bringing it back online after the path is established again.

Example 15-63 shows the messages that are posted to the syslog when a link goes away and then comes back.

*Example 15-63 Sample syslog.log entries by HP's native multipathing solution for FC link failures*

---

```
Oct  4 03:08:12 rx4640-2 vmunix: 0/2/1/0: Fibre Channel Driver received Link Dead
Notification.
Oct  4 03:08:12 rx4640-2 vmunix:
Oct  4 03:08:12 rx4640-2 vmunix: class : tgtpath, instance 4
Oct  4 03:08:12 rx4640-2 vmunix: Target path (class=tgtpath, instance=4) has gone
offline.
The target path h/w path is 0/2/1/0.0x50050763030cc1a5
...
Oct  4 03:10:31 rx4640-2 vmunix:
Oct  4 03:10:31 rx4640-2 vmunix: class : tgtpath, instance 4
Oct  4 03:10:31 rx4640-2 vmunix: Target path (class=tgtpath, instance=4) has gone
online. The target path h/w path is 0/2/1/0.0x50050763030cc1a5
```

---

### VERITAS Volume Manager on HP-UX

With HP-UX 11i 3, there are two volume managers to choose from:

- ▶ The HP Logical Volume Manager (LVM)
- ▶ The VERITAS Volume Manager (VxVM)

According to HP (<http://www.docs.hp.com/en/5991-7436/ch03s03.html>), both volume managers can coexist on an HP-UX server. You can use both simultaneously (on different physical disks), but usually you will choose one or the other and use it exclusively.

The configuration of DS8000 logical volumes on HP-UX with LVM has been described earlier in this chapter. Example 15-64 shows the initialization of disks for VxVM use and the creation of a disk group with the vxdiskadm utility.

*Example 15-64 Disk initialization and disk group creation with vxdiskadm*

---

```
# vxdisk list
DEVICE      TYPE        DISK      GROUP      STATUS
c2t0d0      auto:none   -         -          online invalid
c2t1d0      auto:none   -         -          online invalid
c10t0d1     auto:none   -         -          online invalid
c10t6d0     auto:none   -         -          online invalid
c10t6d1     auto:none   -         -          online invalid
c10t6d2     auto:none   -         -          online invalid
```

```

# vxdiskadm
Volume Manager Support Operations
Menu: VolumeManager/Disk

1      Add or initialize one or more disks
2      Remove a disk
3      Remove a disk for replacement
4      Replace a failed or removed disk
5      Mirror volumes on a disk
6      Move volumes from a disk
7      Enable access to (import) a disk group
8      Remove access to (deport) a disk group
9      Enable (online) a disk device
10     Disable (offline) a disk device
11     Mark a disk as a spare for a disk group
12     Turn off the spare flag on a disk
13     Remove (deport) and destroy a disk group
14     Unrelocate subdisks back to a disk
15     Exclude a disk from hot-relocation use
16     Make a disk available for hot-relocation use
17     Prevent multipathing/S suppress devices from VxVM's view
18     Allow multipathing/U unsuppress devices from VxVM's view
19     List currently suppressed/non-multipathed devices
20     Change the disk naming scheme
21     Change/Display the default disk layouts
list   List disk information

?
??    Display help about menu
q     Exit from menus

```

Select an operation to perform: 1

Add or initialize disks  
 Menu: VolumeManager/Disk/AddDisks

Use this operation to add one or more disks to a disk group. You can add the selected disks to an existing disk group or to a new disk group that will be created as a part of the operation. The selected disks may also be added to a disk group as spares. Or they may be added as nohotuses to be excluded from hot-relocation use. The selected disks may also be initialized without adding them to a disk group leaving the disks available for use as replacement disks.

More than one disk or pattern may be entered at the prompt. Here are some disk selection examples:

all:	all disks
c3 c4t2:	all disks on both controller 3 and controller 4, target 2
c3t4d2:	a single disk (in the c#t#d# naming scheme)
xyz_0:	a single disk (in the enclosure based naming scheme)
xyz_:	all disks on the enclosure whose name is xyz

```
Select disk devices to add: [<pattern-list>,all,list,q,?] c10t6d0 c10t6d1
```

```
Here are the disks selected. Output format: [Device_Name]
```

```
c10t6d0 c10t6d1
```

```
Continue operation? [y,n,q,?] (default: y) y
```

```
You can choose to add these disks to an existing disk group, a new disk group, or you can leave these disks available for use by future add or replacement operations. To create a new disk group, select a disk group name that does not yet exist. To leave the disks available for future use, specify a disk group name of "none".
```

```
Which disk group [<group>,none,list,q,?] (default: none) dg01
```

```
There is no active disk group named dg01.
```

```
Create a new group named dg01? [y,n,q,?] (default: y)
```

```
Create the disk group as a CDS disk group? [y,n,q,?] (default: y) n
```

```
Use default disk names for these disks? [y,n,q,?] (default: y)
```

```
Add disks as spare disks for dg01? [y,n,q,?] (default: n) n
```

```
Exclude disks from hot-relocation use? [y,n,q,?] (default: n)
```

```
A new disk group will be created named dg01 and the selected disks will be added to the disk group with default disk names.
```

```
c10t6d0 c10t6d1
```

```
Continue with operation? [y,n,q,?] (default: y)
```

```
Do you want to use the default layout for all disks being initialized? [y,n,q,?] (default: y) n
```

```
Do you want to use the same layout for all disks being initialized? [y,n,q,?] (default: y)
```

```
Enter the desired format [cdsdisk,hpdisk,q,?] (default: cdssdisk) hpdisk
```

```
Enter the desired format [cdsdisk,hpdisk,q,?] (default: cdssdisk) hpdisk
```

```
Enter desired private region length [<privlen>,q,?] (default: 1024)
```

```
Initializing device c10t6d0.
```

```
Initializing device c10t6d1.
```

```
VxVM NOTICE V-5-2-120
```

```
Creating a new disk group named dg01 containing the disk
```

```
device c10t6d0 with the name dg0101.
```

```
VxVM NOTICE V-5-2-88  
Adding disk device c10t6d1 to disk group dg01 with disk  
name dg0102.
```

```
Add or initialize other disks? [y,n,q,?] (default: n) n
```

```
# vxdisk list
```

DEVICE	TYPE	DISK	GROUP	STATUS
c2t0d0	auto:none	-	-	online invalid
c2t1d0	auto:none	-	-	online invalid
c10t0d1	auto:none	-	-	online invalid
c10t6d0	auto:hpdisk	dg0101	dg01	online
c10t6d1	auto:hpdisk	dg0102	dg01	online
c10t6d2	auto:none	-	-	online invalid

The graphical equivalent for the vxdiskadm utility is the VERITAS Enterprise Administrator (VEA). Figure 15-17 shows the presentation of disks by this graphical user interface.

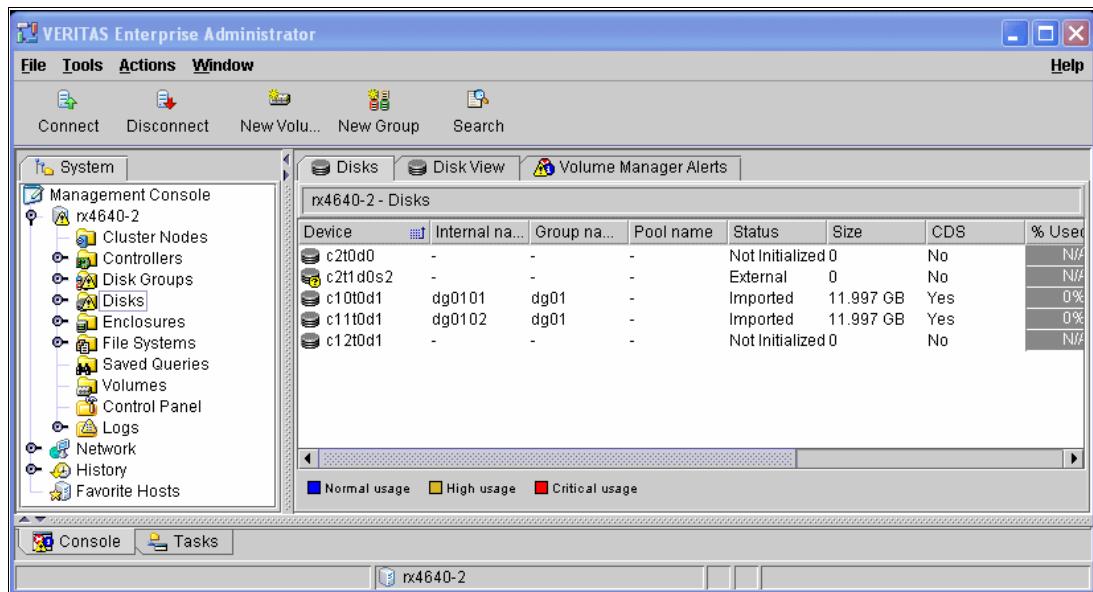


Figure 15-17 Disk presentation by VERITAS Enterprise Administrator



# IBM System z considerations

This chapter discusses the specifics of attaching the IBM System Storage DS8700 series system to System z hosts. This chapter covers the following topics:

- ▶ Connectivity considerations
- ▶ Operating systems prerequisites and enhancements
- ▶ z/OS considerations
- ▶ z/VM considerations
- ▶ VSE/ESA and z/VSE considerations
- ▶ Extended Distance FICON
- ▶ High Performance FICON for z (zHPF) with multitrack support
- ▶ z/OS Basic HyperSwap

## 16.1 Connectivity considerations

The DS8700 storage unit connects to System z hosts using FICON channels, with the addition of Fibre Channel Protocol (FCP) connectivity for Linux for System z hosts.

### FICON

You need to check for dependencies on the host hardware driver level and the supported feature codes. Your IBM service representative can help you determine your current hardware driver level on your mainframe processor complex. Examples of limited host server feature support are FICON Express2 LX (FC3319), and FICON Express2 SX (FC3320), which are available only for the z890 and z990 host server models. For the z9 and z10 servers, FICON Express4 LX (FC3321 at 10 km and FC3324 at 4 km) and FICON Express4 SX (FC3322) are available. In addition, z10 supports the new FICON Express8 LX (FC3325 at 10 km) and FICON Express8 SX (FC3326).

### LINUX FCP connectivity

You can use either direct or switched attachment to attach a storage unit to a System z host system that runs SLES 8 or 9 or Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3.0 with current maintenance updates for FICON.

FCP attachment to Linux on System z systems can only be done through a switched-fabric configuration. You cannot attach the host through a direct configuration.

## 16.2 Operating systems prerequisites and enhancements

The minimum software levels required to support the DS8700 are:

- ▶ z/OS V1.4+
- ▶ z/VM V4.4 or z/VM V5.1
- ▶ VSE/ESA V2.7 or z/VSE V3.1
- ▶ TPF V4.1 with PTF
- ▶ SLES 8 or 9 for System z
- ▶ Red Hat Enterprise Linux 3.0

Some functions of the DS8700 require later software levels than the minimum levels listed here. Refer to the IBM System Storage Interoperability Center (SSIC) at the following address:

<http://www-03.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/ssic/displaysssearchwithoutjs.wss>

**Important:** In addition to SSIC, always review the Preventive Service Planning (PSP) bucket of the 2107 for software updates.

The PSP information can be found at the Resource Link™ website at the following address:

<http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/resourcelink/svc03100.nsf?OpenDatabase>

You need to register for an IBM Registration ID (IBM ID) before you can sign in to the website.

Look under the Planning section, then go to Tools to download the relevant PSP package.

## 16.3 z/OS considerations

In this section, we discuss the program enhancements that z/OS has implemented to support the characteristics of the DS8700. We also give guidelines for the definition of Parallel Access Volumes (PAVs).

### 16.3.1 z/OS program enhancements

The list of relevant Data Facility Storage Management Subsystem (DFSMS) small program enhancements (SPEs) that have been introduced in z/OS for support of all DS8000 models, including DS8700, are the following:

- ▶ Scalability support
- ▶ Large volume support
- ▶ Extended Address Volumes (EAV)
- ▶ Read availability mask support
- ▶ Initial Program Load enhancements
- ▶ DS8700 device definition
- ▶ Read control unit and device recognition for DS8700
- ▶ Performance statistics
- ▶ Resource Measurement Facility
- ▶ System Management Facilities (SMF)
- ▶ Migration considerations

Many of these program enhancements are initially available as APARs and PTFs for the current releases of z/OS, and are later integrated into the following releases of z/OS. For this reason, we recommend that you review the DS8700 PSP bucket for your current release of z/OS.

#### **Scalability support**

The IOS recovery was designed to support a small number of devices per control unit, and a unit check was presented on all devices at failover. This does not scale well with a DS8700, which has the capability to scale up to 65,280 devices. Under these circumstances, you can have CPU or spin lock contention, or exhausted storage below the 16 M line at device failover, or both.

Starting with z/OS V1.4 and higher for DS8700 software support, the IOS recovery has been improved by consolidating unit checks at an LSS level instead of each disconnected device. This consolidation shortens the recovery time as a result of I/O errors. This enhancement is particularly important, because the DS8700 can have up to 65,280 devices in a storage facility.

#### **Benefits**

With enhanced scalability support, the following benefits are possible:

- ▶ Common storage area (CSA) usage (above and below the 16 M line) is reduced.
- ▶ The I/O supervisor (IOS) large block pool for error recovery processing and attention and the state change interrupt processing are located above the 16 M line, thus reducing the storage demand below the 16 M line.
- ▶ Unit control blocks (UCB) are pinned during event notification facility (ENF) signalling during channel path recovery.
- ▶ These scalability enhancements provide additional performance improvements by:
  - Bypassing dynamic pathing validation in channel recovery for reduced recovery I/Os.
  - Reducing elapsed time by reducing the wait time in channel path recovery.

## Large volume support

As today's storage facilities tend to expand to even larger capacities, we are approaching the UCB's 64 K limitation at a very fast rate. Thus, we must plan for large volume support (VS).

Support has been enhanced to expand volumes to 65,520 cylinders, using existing 16-bit cylinder addressing. This is often referred to as *64 K cylinder volumes*. Components and products, such as DADSM/CVAF, DFSMSdss, ICKDSF, and DFSORT, that previously shipped with 32,760 cylinders, now also support 65,520 cylinders. Checkpoint restart processing now supports a checkpoint data set that resides partially or wholly above the 32,760 cylinder boundary.

With LVS volumes, the VTOC has the potential to grow very large. Callers such as DFSMSdss have to read the entire VTOC to find the last allocated DSCB; in cases where the VTOC is very large, you can experience performance degradation. An interface is implemented to return the highly allocated DSCB on volumes initialized with an INDEX VTOC. DFSMSdss uses this interface to limit VTOC searches and to improve performance. The VTOC has to be within the first 64 K-1 tracks, while the INDEX can be anywhere on the volume.

## Extended Address Volumes

With LVS support, it is possible to address a capacity of up to 3.964 PB (64 K subchannels x 55.6 GB/Volume = 3.64 PB). To accommodate the needs of installations that require super large volumes, IBM has developed an even greater volume, an Extended Address Volumes (EAV) called the 3390 Model A, shown in Figure 16-1.

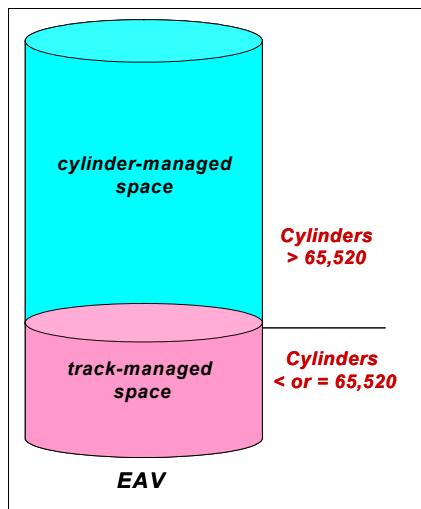


Figure 16-1 Entire new EAV

For the 3390 Model A, support has been enhanced to expand the volumes to 262,668 cylinders, using 28-bit cylinder addressing, which currently has a limit of 256 M tracks. The existing CCHH track address became 'CCCCccccH'x, where the cylinder address is 'cccCCCC'x and the head address is 'H'x, H=0-14.

**Note:** Starting with EAV, we will partially change from track to cylinder addressing.

The partial change from track to cylinder addressing creates two address areas on EAV volumes:

- ▶ Track Managed Space: The area on an EAV located within the first 65,520 cylinders. Using the 16-bit cylinder addressing allows a theoretical maximum address of 65,535 cylinders. In order to allocate more cylinders, we need to have a *new* format to address the area above 65,520 cylinders.
  - 16-bit cylinder numbers: Existing track address format: CCCCHHHH
    - HHHH: 16-bit track number
    - CCCC: 16-bit track cylinder
- ▶ Cylinder Managed Space: The area on an EAV located above the first 65,520 cylinders. This space is allocated in so-called Multicylinder Units (MCU), which currently have a size of 21 cylinders.
  - New cylinder-track address format to address the extended capacity on an EAV:
    - 28-bit cylinder numbers: CCCCCccch
    - H: A 4-bit track number (0-14)
    - ccc: The high order 12 bits of a 28-bit cylinder number
    - CCCC: The low order 16 bits of a 28-bit cylinder number

Components and products, such as DADSM/CVAF, DFSMSdss, ICKDSF, and DFSORT, will also now support 262,668 cylinders.

- ▶ DS8700 and z/OS limit CKD EAV volume size:
  - 3390 Model A: 1 - 262,668 cylinders (about 223 GB addressable Storage)
  - 3390 Model A: Up to 236 x 3390 Model 1 (Four times the size we have with LVS)
- ▶ Configuration Granularity
  - 1 Cylinder boundary sizes: 1 to 56,520 cylinders
  - 1113 Cylinders boundary sizes: 56,763 (51 x 1113) to 262,668 (236 x 1113) cylinders

The size of an existing Mod 3/9/A volume can be increased to its maximum supported size using Dynamic Volume Expansion (DVE). That can be done with the DS CLI command, as shown in Example 16-1.

*Example 16-1 Dynamically expand CKD volume*

---

```
dscli> chckdvol -cap 262268 -captype cyl 9ab0
```

```
Date/Time: 10. Mai 2010 07:52:55 CEST IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.1.193 DS:  
IBM.2107-75KAB25  
CMUC00022I chckdvol: CKD Volume 9AB0 successfully modified.
```

---

Keep in mind that Dynamic Volume Expansion can be done while the volume remains online to the host system. A VTOC refresh through ICKDSF is a best practice, as it shows the newly added free space. When the relevant volume is in a Copy Services relationship, then this Copy Services relationship must be terminated until both the source and target volumes are at their new capacity, and then Copy Service pair must be re-established.

The VTOC allocation method for an EAV volume has been changed compared to the VTOC used for LVS volumes. The size of an EAV VTOC index has been increased four-fold, and now has 8,192 blocks instead of 2,048 blocks. Because there is no space left inside the format 1 DSCB, new DSCB formats, Format 8 and Format 9, have been created to protect

existing programs from seeing unexpected track addresses. These DSCBs are called extended attribute DSCBs. Format 8 and 9 DSCBs are new for EAV. The existing Format 4 DSCB has been changed also to point to the new format 8 DSCB.

**Note:** When formatting a volume with ICKDSF where the VTOC index size has been omitted, the volume will take the default size of 15 tracks.

### How to identify an EAV

When a volume has more than 65,520 cylinders, the format 4 DSCB (modified) is updated to x'FFFE', which has a size of 65,534 cylinders. This will identify the volume as being an EAV. An easy way to identify an EAV is to list the VTOC Summary in TSO/ISPF option 3.4. Example 17-1 shows the VTOC summary of a 3390 Model 9 volume.

Example 16-2 TSO/ISPF 3.4 screen for a non-EAV volume: VTOC Summary

```

Menu RefList RefMode Utilities Help
+----- VTOC Summary Information -----
| Volume . : SBOXA7
| Command ==>
|
| Unit . . : 3390
|
| Volume Data          VTOC Data          Free Space   Tracks   Cyls
| Tracks . : 50,085    Tracks . :      90 Size . . : 2,559    129
| %Used . . : 94       %Used . . :      15 Largest . . : 226     15
| Trks/Cyls: 15        Free DSCBS: 3,845 Free
|                           Extents . . : 152
|
+-----+
2. Space           / Confirm Member Delete
3. Attrib          / Include Additional Qualifiers
4. Total           / Display Catalog Name
                   / Display Total Tracks

```

When the data set list is displayed, enter either:

"/" on the data set list command field for the command prompt pop-up,  
an ISPF line command, the name of a TSO command, CLIST, or REXX exec, or  
"=" to execute the previous command.

Example 17-2 shows a typical VTOC summary for an EAV volume. It is divided into two parts: the *Track Managed*, which is new, and the *Total* space.

Example 16-3 TSO/ISPF 3.4 screen for an EAV volume: VTOC Summary

```

Menu RefList RefMode Utilities Help
- +----- VTOC Summary Information -----
| Volume . : MLDC65
0 | Command ==>
|
| Unit . . : 3390          Free Space
|
| VTOC Data              Total          Tracks   Cyls
E | Tracks . . : 900      Size . . : 801,986    53,343
| %Used . . : 6            Largest . . : 116,115   7,741

```

D	Free DSCBS: 42,626	Free Extents . : 862	
	Volume Data Tracks . : 1,051,785	Track Managed Size . . : 735,206	Cyls 48,891
	%Used . : 23	Largest . : 116,115	7,741
	Trks/Cyls: 15	Free Extents . : 861	
	-----		

When the data set list is displayed, enter either:

"/" on the data set list command field for the command prompt pop-up, an ISPF line command, the name of a TSO command, CLIST, or REXX exec, or "=" to execute the previous command.

---

The DEVSERV command can also be used to identify an EAV volume. In Example 16-4, you can see the new value for the DTYPF field by running the DEVSERV PATHS command.

*Example 16-4 DEVSERV command*

---

```
DS P,BC05,2
IEE459I 19.14.18 DEVSERV PATHS 042
  UNIT DTYPF M CNT VOLSER CHPID=PATH STATUS
    RTYPE SSID CFW TC DFW PIN DC-STATE CCA DDC      CYL CU-TYPE
  BC05,3390 ,F,000, ,AB=+ AF=+
    2107 BC00 Y YY. YY. N SIMPLEX 05 05 10017 2107
  BC06,3390A ,0,000,ITS001,AB=+ AF=+
    2107 BC00 Y YY. YY. N SIMPLEX 06 06 262668 2107
***** SYMBOL DEFINITIONS *****
F = OFFLINE          0 = ONLINE
+ = PATH AVAILABLE
```

---

**Data set type dependencies on an EAV**

- ▶ For EAV Release 1, all VSAM data set types are eligible to be placed on the extended addressing space (cylinder managed space) of an EAV volume running on z/OS V1.10:
  - This includes all VSAM data types, such as KSDS, RRDS, ESDS, Linear DS, and also covers DB2, IMS™, CICS®, and zFS data sets.
  - The VSAM data sets placed on an EAV volume can be either SMS or non-SMS managed.
- ▶ For EAV Release 1 volume, the following data sets may exist, but are not eligible to have extents in the extended address space (cylinder managed space) in z/OS V1.10:
  - Catalogs
  - VTOC (it is still restricted to the first 64K-1 tracks)
  - VTOC index
  - VVDS
  - Page data sets
  - A VSAM data set with imbedded or keyrange attributes, which are not supported
  - Non-VSAM data sets

### **EAV and data set placement dependencies**

The EAV volume can be theoretically divided into two parts:; the track managed space from cylinder number 1 to cylinder number 65,520 and the cylinder managed space from number 65,521 to 262,668 cylinders:

- ▶ The EAV track managed area supports all type of data sets.
- ▶ The EAV cylinder managed area has restrictions, which are explained in “Data set type dependencies on an EAV”.

For example, imagine you have allocated a 3390 Model 9 with 65,520 cylinders and placed sequential data sets on it, as shown in Figure 16-2. Because of a volume full condition, you need to perform a Dynamic Volume Expansion to make the volume into an EAV as 3390 Model A. The required VTOC reformat has been successfully performed.

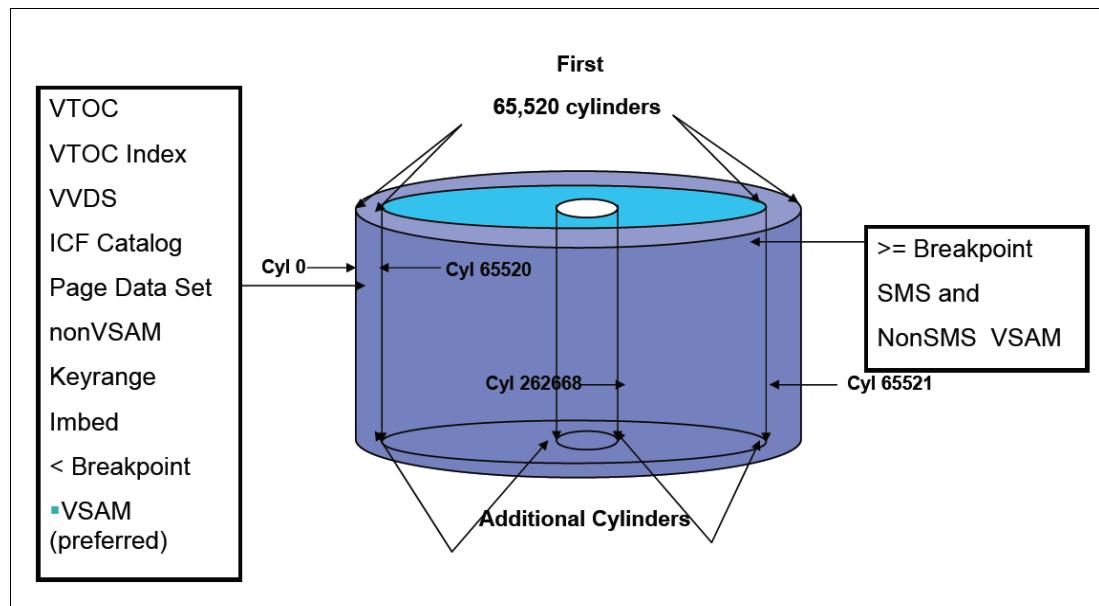


Figure 16-2 Data set placement on EAV

From a software point of view, trying to allocate an extent of sequential data sets will fail and produce the error IEF257I - Space requested not available, even if there is a surplus of space physically available in the cylinder managed area. This is a current limitation in z/OS V1.10 for data sets eligible to have extents on the cylinder managed area. Placing any kind of VSAM data set on the same volume will not cause allocations errors.

### **z/OS prerequisites for EAV volumes**

- ▶ EAV volumes are only supported on z/OS V1.10 and above. If you try to bring an EAV volume online for a system with a pre-z/OS V1.10 release, the EAV Volume will not come online.
- ▶ There are no additional HCD considerations for the 3390 Model A definitions.

- ▶ On parmlib member IGDSMSxx, the parameter USEEAV(YES) must be set to allow data set allocations on EAV volumes. The default value is NO and prevents allocating data sets to an EAV volume. Example 16-5 shows a sample message that you receive when trying to allocate a data set on EAV volume and USEEAV(NO) is set.

*Example 16-5 Message IEF021I with USEEVA set to NO*

---

```
IEF021I TEAM142 STEP1 DD1 EXTENDED ADDRESS VOLUME USE PREVENTED DUE TO SMS USEEAV
(NO)SPECIFICATION.
```

---

- ▶ There is a new parameter called Break Point Value (BPV). It determines which size the data set must have to be allocated on a cylinder-managed area. The default for that parameter is 10 cylinders and it can be set on parmlib member IGDSMSxx and in the Storage Group definition (Storage Group BPV overrides system-level BPV). The BPV value can be 0-65520: 0 means that cylinder-managed area is always preferred and 65520 means that a track-managed area is always preferred.

**Note:** Before implementing EAV volumes, have the latest maintenance and z/OS V1.10 and V1.11 coexisting maintenance levels applied.

### ***Data set allocation: Space considerations***

Consider the following items:

- ▶ When allocating a data set extent on an EAV volume, the space requested is rounded up to the next Multicylinder Unit (MCU) if the entire extent is allocated in cylinder-managed space. Individual extents always start and end on an MCU boundary.
- ▶ A given extent is contained in a single managed space, which means an extent cannot straddle where the cylinder-managed area begins.
- ▶ Exact space will be obtained if allocated on a track-managed area, exactly how it was before EAV implementation.
- ▶ If the requested space is not available from the preferred managed space (as determined by BPV), the system may allocate the space from both cylinder-managed and track-managed spaces.
- ▶ Because VSAM striped data sets require that all the stripes be the same size, the system will attempt to honor exact requested space using a combination of cylinder-managed and track-managed spaces.

### ***VSAM Control Area (CA) considerations***

Consider the following items:

- ▶ VSAM data sets created in z/OS V1.10 (EAV and non-EAV) might have different CA sizes from what would have been received in prior releases. The reason for this is that a CA must be compatible with Multicylinder Units (MCU) for a cylinder-managed area.
- ▶ VSAM data sets allocated with compatible CAs on a non-EAV are eligible to be extended to additional volumes that support cylinder-managed space. Note that VSAM data sets physically copied from a non-EAV to an EAV might have an incompatible CA and thus would not be EAS eligible. This means extents for additional space would not use cylinder-managed space.

**Note:** This is a migration to z/OS V1.10 consideration.

## **EAV Migration considerations**

Consider the following items:

► Assistance:

Migration assistance will be provided through use of the Application Migration Assistance Tracker. For more details about Assistance Tracker, see APAR II13752, which can be found at the following address:

<http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=isgIII13752>

► Recommended actions:

- Review your programs and take a look at the calls for the macros OBTAIN, REALLOC, CVAFDIR, CVAFSEQ, CVAFDSM, and CVAFFILT. Those macros were changed and you need to update your program to reflect those changes.
- Look for programs that calculate volume or data set size by any means, including reading a VTOC or VTOC index directly with a BSAM or EXCP DCB. This task is important because now we have new values returning for the volume size.
- Review your programs and look for EXCP and STARTIO macros for DASD channel programs and other programs that examine DASD channel programs or track addresses. Now that we have new addressing mode, programs must be updated.
- Look for programs that examine any of the many operator messages that contain a DASD track, block address, data set, or volume size. The messages now show new values.

► Migrating data:

- Define new EAVs by creating them on the DS8700 or expanding existing volumes using Dynamic Volume Expansion.
- Add new EAV volumes to storage groups and storage pools, and update ACS routines.
- Copy data at the volume level: TDMF®, DFSMSdss, PPRC, DFSMS, Copy Services Global Mirror, Metro Mirror, Global Copy, and FlashCopy.
- Copy data at the data set level: SMS attrition, LDMF, DFSMSdss, and DFSMSHsm.
- Good volume candidates for EAV include DB2, zFS, CICS VSAM, RLS, and IMS VSAM. Poor EAV candidates are DFSMSHsm ML1, Backup, or ML2, although Small Data Set Packaging (SDSP) is eligible for cylinder managed space. Other poor EAV candidates are work volumes, TSO/GDG/batch/load libraries, and system volumes.
- DFSMSdss and DFSMSHsm considerations when migrating to EAV are described in *DFSMS V1.10 and EAV Technical Guide*, SG24-7617.

## **Read availability mask support**

Dynamic CHPID Management (DCM) allows you to define a pool of channels that is managed by the system. The channels are added and deleted from control units based on workload importance and availability needs. DCM attempts to avoid single points of failure when adding or deleting a managed channel by not selecting an interface on the control unit on the same I/O card.

Control unit single point of failure information was specified in a table and had to be updated for each new control unit. Instead, with the present enhancement, we can use the Read Availability Mask command, PSF/RSD, to retrieve the information from the control unit. By doing this task, there is no need to maintain a table for this information.

## **Initial Program Load enhancements**

During the Initial Program Load (IPL) sequence, the channel subsystem selects a channel path to read from the SYSRES device. Certain types of I/O errors on a channel path cause the IPL to fail even though there are alternate channel paths that might work. For example, consider a situation where there is a bad switch link on the first path but good links on the other paths. In this case, you cannot IPL, because the same faulty path is always chosen.

The channel subsystem and z/OS were enhanced to retry I/O over an alternate channel path. This circumvents IPL failures that were caused by the selection of the same faulty path to read from the SYSRES device.

## **DS8700 device definition**

To exploit the increase in the number of LSSs that can be added in the DS8700 (255 LSSs), the unit must be defined as 2107 in the HCD/IOCP. The host supports 255 logical control units when the DS8700 is defined as UNIT=2107. You must install the appropriate software to support this setup. If you do not have the required software support installed, you can define the DS8700 as UNIT=2105; in this case, only the 16 logical control units (LCUs) of Address Group 0 can be used.

Starting with z9-109 processors, you can define an additional subchannel set with ID 1 (SS 1) on top of the existing subchannel set (SS 0) in a channel subsystem. With this additional subchannel set, you can configure more than 2 x 63 K devices for a channel subsystem. With z/OS V1.7+, you can define Parallel Access Volume (PAV) alias devices (device types 3380A and 3390A) of the DS8700 (2107) DASD control units to SS 1. Device numbers can be duplicated across channel subsystems and subchannel sets.

## **Read control unit and device recognition for DS8700**

The host system informs the attached DS8700 of its capabilities, so that it supports native DS8700 control unit and devices. The DS8700 then only returns information that is supported by the attached host system using the self-description data, such as read data characteristics (RDC), sense ID, and read configuration data (RCD).

The following commands display device type 2107 in their output:

- ▶ DEVSERV QDASD and PATHS command responses
- ▶ IDCAMS LISTDATA COUNTS, DSTATUS, STATUS, and IDCAMS SETCACHE

## **Performance statistics**

Two sets of performance statistics that are reported by the DS8700 were introduced. Because a logical volume is no longer allocated on a single RAID rank or single device adapter pair, the performance data is now provided with a set of rank performance statistics and Extent Pool statistics. The RAID RANK reports are no longer reported by RMF and IDCAMS LISTDATA batch reports. RMF and IDCAMS LISTDATA are enhanced to report the logical volume statistics that are provided on the DS8700.

These reports consist of back-end counters that capture the activity between the cache and the ranks in the DS8700 for each individual logical volume. These rank and Extent Pool statistics are disk system-wide instead of volume-wide only.

## Resource Measurement Facility

Resource Measurement Facility (RMF) supports DS8700 from z/OS V1.4 and above with APAR number OA06476 and PTFs UA90079 and UA90080. RMF has been enhanced to provide Monitor I and III support for the DS8700 storage system. The Disk Systems Postprocessor report contains two DS8700 sections: Extent Pool Statistics and Rank Statistics. These statistics are generated from SMF record 74 subtype 8:

- ▶ The Extent Pool Statistics section provides capacity and performance information about allocated disk space. For each Extent Pool, it shows the real capacity and the number of real extents.
- ▶ The Rank Statistics section provides measurements about read and write operations in each rank of an Extent Pool. It also shows the number of arrays and the array width of all ranks. These values show the current configuration. The wider the rank, the more performance capability it has. By changing these values in your configuration, you can influence the throughput of your work.

Also, response and transfer statistics are available with the Postprocessor Cache Activity report generated from SMF record 74 subtype 5. These statistics are provided at the subsystem level in the Cache Subsystem Activity report and at the volume level in the Cache Device Activity report. In detail, RMF provides the average response time and byte transfer rate per read and write requests. These statistics are shown for the I/O activity, which is called *host adapter activity*, and for the transfer activity from hard disk to cache, which is called *disk activity*.

Reports have been designed for reporting FICON channel utilization. RMF also provides support for Remote Mirror and Copy link utilization statistics. This support was delivered by APAR OA04877; PTFs have been available since z/OS V1R4.

**Note:** RMF cache reporting and the results of a LISTDATA STATUS command report a cache size that is half the actual size, because the information returned represents only the cluster to which the logical control unit is attached. Each LSS on the cluster reflects the cache and nonvolatile storage (NVS) size of that cluster. z/OS users will find that only the SETCACHE CFW ON | OFF command is supported while other SETCACHE command options (for example, DEVICE, SUBSYSTEM, DFW, NVS) are not accepted. Note also that the cache and NVS size reported by the LISTDATA command is somewhat less than the installed processor memory size. The DS8700 licensed internal code uses part of the processor memory and this is not reported by LISTDATA.

## System Management Facilities

System Management Facilities (SMF) is a component of MVS/ESA SP that collects input/output (I/O) statistics, provided at the data set and storage class levels. It helps you monitor the performance of the direct access storage subsystem.

SMF collects disconnect time statistics that are summarized and reported at the data set level.

To support Solid State Drives, SMF is enhanced to separate DISC time for READ operations from WRITE operations. Here we discuss two subtypes:

- ▶ SMF 42 Subtype 6

This records DASD data set level I/O statistics. I/O response and service time components are recorded in multiples of 128 microseconds for the Data Set I/O Statistics section:

- S42DSRDD (Average disconnect time for reads)
- S42DSRDT (Total number of read operations)

- ▶ SMF 74 Subtype 5

The DS8700 provides the ability to obtain cache statistics for every volume in the storage subsystem. These measurements include the count of the number of operations from DASD cache to the back-end storage, the number of random operations, the number of sequential reads and sequential writes, the time to execute those operations, and the number of bytes transferred. These statistics are placed in the SMF 74 subtype 5 record.

For more information, refer to *MVS System Management Facilities (SMF)*, SA22-7630.

When using firmware level 5.1+ for the DS8700 and a Windows based software tool, the DS8700 identifies automatically extents that benefit from residing on Solid State Drives (SSD). For more information about Solid State Drives and this autonomic approach of the DS8700 to dynamically place hot extents onto SSD, refer to *IBM System Storage DS8700 Easy Tier*, REDP-4667.

### **Migration considerations**

The DS8700 is supported as an IBM 2105 for z/OS systems without the DFSMS and z/OS small program enhancements (SPEs) installed. This allows clients to roll the SPE to each system in a Sysplex without having to take a Sysplex-wide outage. You must take an IPL to activate the DFSMS and z/OS portions of this support.

### **Coexistence considerations**

IBM provides support for the DS8700 running in 2105 mode on systems that do not have this SPE installed. The support consists of the recognition of the DS8700 real control unit type and device codes when it runs in 2105 emulation on these down-level systems.

Input/Output definition files (IODF) created by HCD can be shared on systems that do not have this SPE installed. Additionally, you should be able to use existing IODF files that define IBM 2105 control unit records for a 2107 subsystem as long as 16 or fewer logical subsystems are configured in the DS8700.

#### **16.3.2 Parallel Access Volume definition**

For EAV volumes, the static Parallel Access Volume (PAV) should not be considered for future planning. For performance reasons, you should use HyperPAV instead, and you will be able to increase the amount of real device addresses within an LCU.

You can find more information regarding dynamic PAV on at the following address:

<http://www.ibm.com/s390/wlm/>

Again, consider HyperPAV over dynamic PAV management, which allows for less alias device addresses and for more real or base device addresses within a LCU.

### **RMF considerations**

RMF reports all I/O activity against the Base PAV address, not by the base and associated aliases. The performance information for the base includes all base and alias activity.

As illustrated in Example 16-6, on the Data Set Delays screen in RMF Monitor III, for Volser=MLDC65 with device Address DC65, you can see the identification for an EAV Volume (3390A) in the Device field.

The presence of PAV: 1.0H means that HyperPAV is used.

*Example 16-6 Data Set Delays : Volume screen*

---

```
RMF V1R10 Data Set Delays - Volume
Command ==>                               Scroll ==> CSR

Samples: 120      System: SC70  Date: 05/10/09 Time: 18.04.00 Range: 120   Sec

----- Volume MLDC65 Device Data -----
Number:    DC65      Active:     0%      Pending:    0%      Average Users
Device:    3390A     Connect:    0%      Delay DB:   0%      Delayed
Shared:    Yes        Disconnect: 0%      Delay CM:   0%      0.0
PAV:       1.0H

----- Data Set Name -----  Jobname  ASID  DUSG% DDLY%
No I/O activity detected.
```

---

### **Missing Interrupt Handler values considerations**

The DS8700 provides a recommended interval of 30 seconds as part of the Read Configuration Data. z/OS uses this information to set its Missing Interrupt Handler (MIH) value.

Missing Interrupt Handler times for PAV alias addresses must not be set. An alias device inherits the MIH of the base address to which it is bound and it is not possible to assign an MIH value to an alias address. Alias devices are not known externally and are only known and accessible by IOS. If an external method is used to attempt to set the MIH on an alias device address, an IOS090I message is generated. For example, the following message is observed for each attempt to set the MIH on an alias device:

IOS090I *alias-device-number* IS AN INVALID DEVICE

**Tip:** When setting MIH times in the IECIOSxx member of SYS1.PARMLIB, do not use device ranges that include alias device numbers.

#### **16.3.3 HyperPAV z/OS support and implementation**

DS8700 series users can benefit from enhancements to PAV with support for HyperPAV. HyperPAV allows an alias address to be used to access any base on the same logical control unit image per I/O base. We discuss more about HyperPAV characteristics in 7.7.7, “I/O priority queuing” on page 177.

In this section, we see the commands and options that you can use for setup and control of HyperPAV and for the display of HyperPAV status information. We also discuss the migration to HyperPAV, and finally the system requirements for HyperPAV.

## HyperPAV options

The following SYS1.PARMLIB(IEC10Sxx) options allow enablement of HyperPAV at the LPAR level:

HYPERPAP= YES | NO | BASEONLY

Where:

<b>YES</b>	Attempt to initialize LSSs in HyperPAV mode.
<b>NO</b>	Do not initialize LSSs in HyperPAV mode.
<b>BASEONLY</b>	Attempt to initialize LSSs in HyperPAV mode, but only start I/Os on base volumes.

The BASEONLY option returns the LSSs with enabled HyperPAV capability to a pre-PAV behavior for this LPAR.

## HyperPAV migration

You can enable HyperPAV dynamically. Because it can take some time to initialize all needed LSSs in a DS8700 into HyperPAV mode, planning is prudent. If many LSSs are involved, then pick a quiet time to perform the SETIOS HYPERPAP=YES command and do not schedule concurrent DS8700 microcode changes or IODF activation together with this change.

Example 16-7 shows a command example to dynamically activate HyperPAV. Note that this activation process might take some time to complete on all attached disk storage subsystems that support HyperPAV. Verify that HyperPAV is active through a subsequent display command, as shown in Example 16-7.

*Example 16-7 Activate HyperPAV dynamically*

---

SETIOS HYPERPAP=YES

IOS189I HYPERPAP MODE CHANGE INITIATED - CONTROL UNIT CONVERSION WILL COMPLETE ASYNCHRONOUSLY

---

D IOS,HYPERPAP  
IOS098I 15.55.06 HYPERPAP DATA 457  
HYPERPAP MODE IS SET TO YES

---

If you are currently using PAV and FICON, then no HCD or DS8700 logical configuration changes are needed on the existing LSSs.

HyperPAV deployment can be staged:

1. Load/Authorize the HyperPAV feature on the DS8700.
2. If necessary, you can run without exploiting this feature by using the z/OS PARMLIB option.
3. Enable the HyperPAV feature on z/OS images in which you want to utilize HyperPAV using the PARMLIB option or the SETIOS command.
4. Eventually, enable the HyperPAV feature on all z/OS images in the Sysplex and authorize the licensed function on all attached DS8700s.
5. Optionally, reduce the number of aliases defined.

Full coexistence with traditional PAVs, such as static PAV or dynamic PAV, as well as sharing with z/OS images without HyperPAV enabled, allows migration to HyperPAV to be a flexible procedure.

## HyperPAV definition

The correct number of aliases for your workload can be determined from analysis of RMF data. The PAV Tool, which can be used to analyze PAV usage, is available at the following address:

<http://www-03.ibm.com/servers/eserver/zseries/zos/unix/bpxalty2.html#pavanalysis>

See also “HyperPAV Analysis” on page 582.

## HyperPAV commands for setup, control, and status display

You can use the following commands for HyperPAV management and status information:

```
SETIOS HYPERPAV= YES | NO | BASEONLY  
SET IOS=xx  
D M=DEV  
D IOS,HYPERPAV  
DEVSERV QPAV,dddd
```

In Example 16-8, the command **d m=dev** shows system configuration information for the base address 0710 that belongs to an LSS with enabled HyperPAV.

*Example 16-8 Display information for a base address in an LSS with enabled HyperPAV*

---

```
SY1 d m=dev(0710)  
SY1 IEE174I 23.35.49 DISPLAY M 835  
DEVICE 0710 STATUS=ONLINE  
CHP 10 20 30 40  
DEST LINK ADDRESS 10 20 30 40  
PATH ONLINE Y Y Y Y  
CHP PHYSICALLY ONLINE Y Y Y Y  
PATH OPERATIONAL Y Y Y Y  
MANAGED N N N N  
CU NUMBER 0700 0700 0700 0700  
MAXIMUM MANAGED CHPID(S) ALLOWED: 0  
DESTINATION CU LOGICAL ADDRESS = 07  
SCP CU ND = 002107.000.IBM.TC.03069A000007.00FF  
SCP TOKEN NED = 002107.900.IBM.TC.03069A000007.0700  
SCP DEVICE NED = 002107.900.IBM.TC.03069A000007.0710  
HYPERPAV ALIASES IN POOL 4
```

---

In Example 16-9, address 0718 is an alias address belonging to a HyperPAV LSS. If you happen to catch a HyperPAV alias in use (bound), it shows up as bound.

*Example 16-9 Display information for an alias address belonging to a HyperPAV LSS*

---

```
SY1 D M=DEV(0718)  
SY1 IEE174I 23.39.07 DISPLAY M 838  
DEVICE 0718 STATUS=POOLED HYPERPAV ALIAS
```

---

The D M=DEV command in Example 16-10 shows HA for the HyperPAV aliases.

*Example 16-10 The system configuration information shows the HyperPAV aliases*

---

```
SY1 d m=dev  
SY1 IEE174I 23.42.09 DISPLAY M 844  
DEVICE STATUS: NUMBER OF ONLINE CHANNEL PATHS  
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 A B C D E F
```

```

000 DN 4 DN DN DN DN DN DN . DN DN 1 1 1 1
018 DN DN DN DN 4 DN DN DN DN DN DN DN DN DN DN
02E 4 DN 4 DN 4 8 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 DN 4 DN
02F DN 4 4 4 4 4 4 DN 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 DN DN 4
030 8 . . . . . . . . . . . . .
033 4 . . . . . . . . . . . .
034 4 4 4 4 DN DN
03E 1 DN DN
041 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 AL AL AL AL AL AL AL AL AL
048 4 4 DN 4
051 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 UL UL UL UL UL UL UL UL UL
061 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 AL AL AL AL AL AL AL AL AL
071 4 4 4 4 DN DN DN DN HA HA DN DN . . .
073 DN DN DN . DN . DN . DN . HA . HA .
098 4 4 4 4 DN 8 4 4 4 4 4 DN 4 4 4 4
0EO DN DN 1 DN DN
0F1 1 DN DN
FFF . . . . . . . . . . . HA HA HA HA
***** SYMBOL EXPLANATIONS *****
@ ONLINE, PHYSICALLY ONLINE, AND OPERATIONAL INDICATORS ARE NOT EQUAL
+ ONLINE # DEVICE OFFLINE . DOES NOT EXIST
BX DEVICE IS BOXED SN SUBCHANNEL NOT AVAILABLE
DN DEVICE NOT AVAILABLE PE SUBCHANNEL IN PERMANENT ERROR
AL DEVICE IS AN ALIAS UL DEVICE IS AN UNBOUND ALIAS
HA DEVICE IS A HYPERPAV ALIAS

```

---

## HyperPAV system requirements

HyperPAV has the following z/OS requirements:

- ▶ HyperPAV is supported starting with z/OS V1.8.
- ▶ For prior levels of the operating system, the support is provided as a small program enhancement (SPE) back to z/OS V1.6, as follows:
  - IOS support (OA13915)
  - DFSMS support: DFSMS, SMS, AOM, DEVSERV (OA13928, OA13929, OA14002, OA14005, OA17605, and OA17746)
  - WLM support (OA12699)
  - GRS support (OA14556)
  - ASM support (OA14248)
- ▶ RMF (OA12865)

In addition, DS8700 storage system need to have the following licensed functions:

- ▶ FICON Attachment
- ▶ PAV
- ▶ HyperPAV

The corresponding feature codes for the DS8700 licensed functions are listed in 10.2, “Activation of licensed functions” on page 238.

## 16.4 z/VM considerations

In this section, we discuss specific considerations that are relevant when attaching a DS8700 series to a z/VM environment.

### 16.4.1 Connectivity

z/VM provides the following connectivity:

- ▶ z/VM supports FICON attachment as 3990 Model 3 or 6 controller
- ▶ Native controller modes 2105 and 2107 are supported on z/VM V5.2.0 with APAR VM63952:
  - This brings support up to equal to z/OS.
  - z/VM simulates controller mode support by each guest.
- ▶ z/VM supports FCP attachment for Linux systems running as a guest.
- ▶ z/VM itself supports FCP-attached SCSI disks starting with z/VM V5.1.0.

### 16.4.2 Supported DASD types and LUNs

z/VM supports the following extended count key data (ECKD™) DASD types:

- ▶ 3390 Models 2, 3, and 9, including the 32,760 and 65,520 cylinder custom volumes.
- ▶ 3390 Model 2 and 3 in 3380 track compatibility mode.
- ▶ 3390 Model A volumes are not supported at this time. When running z/OS as a VM guest, EAV volumes can be used if they are directly attached to the z/OS guest.

z/VM also provides the following support when using Fibre Channel Protocol (FCP) attachment:

- ▶ FCP-attached SCSI LUNs as emulated 9336 Model 20 DASD
- ▶ 1 TB SCSI LUNs

### 16.4.3 PAV and HyperPAV z/VM support

z/VM provides PAV support. In this section, we provide basic support information, which is useful when you have to implement PAV in a z/VM environment.

You can find additional z/VM technical information for PAV support on the z/VM Technical website at the following address:

<http://www.vm.ibm.com/storman/pav/>

For further discussion of PAV, see 7.7.5, “PAV in z/VM environments” on page 175.

#### **z/VM guest support for dedicated PAVs**

z/VM allows a guest z/OS to use PAV and dynamic PAV tuning as dedicated volumes. The following considerations apply:

- ▶ Alias and base addresses must be attached to the z/OS guest. You need a separate ATTACH for each alias address. You should attach the base address and its aliases address to the same guest.
- ▶ A base address cannot be attached to SYSTEM if one of its alias address(es) is attached to that guest. This means that you cannot use PAVs for Full Pack minidisks. The QUERY

PAV command is available for authorized (class B) users to query base and alias addresses: QUERY PAV rdev and QUERY PAV ALL.

- ▶ To verify that PAV aliases are bound to the correct bases, use the command QUERY CHPID xx combined with QUERY PAV *rdev-rdev*, where *xx* is the CHPID whose device addresses should be displayed, showing the addresses and any aliases, and *rdev* is the real device address.

### **PAV minidisk support with small program enhancement**

Starting with z/VM V5.2.0 with APAR VM63952, z/VM supports PAV minidisks. With this small program enhancement (SPE), z/VM provides:

- ▶ Support of PAV minidisks.
- ▶ Workload balancing for guests that do not exploit PAV, such as CMS.
- ▶ A real I/O dispatcher queues minidisk I/O across system-attached alias volumes.
- ▶ Linkable minidisks for guests that do exploit PAV (for example, z/OS and Linux).
- ▶ The PAVALIAS parameter of the DASDOPT and MINIOPT user directory statements or the CP DEFINE ALIAS command, which creates alias minidisks, both fullpack and non-fullpack, for using guests.
- ▶ Dynamic alias to base reassociation is supported for guests that exploit PAV for dedicated volumes and for minidisks under restricted conditions.

### **HyperPAV support**

z/VM supports HyperPAV for dedicated DASD and minidisks starting with z/VM Version 5.3.0.

#### **16.4.4 Missing-interrupt handler**

z/VM sets its missing-interrupt handler (MIH) value as a factor of 1.25 of what the hardware reports. This way, with the DS8700 setting the MIH value to 30 seconds, z/VM is set to a MIH value of approximately 37.5 seconds. This allows the guest to receive the MIH 30 seconds before z/VM does.

### **16.5 VSE/ESA and z/VSE considerations**

The following considerations apply regarding VSE/ESA and z/VSE support:

- ▶ An APAR is required for VSE 2.7 to exploit large volume support, but support for EAV is still not provided.
- ▶ VSE has a default MIH timer value to 180 seconds. You can change this setting to the suggested DS8700 value of 30 seconds by using the SIR MIH command, which is documented in *Hints and Tips for VSE/ESA 2.7*, which you can download from the VSE/ESA website at the following address:

<http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/zseries/zvse/documentation/>

## 16.6 Extended Distance FICON

DS8700 Extended Distance FICON, also known as Simplified FICON Channel Extension, is an enhancement to the FICON architecture. It can eliminate performance degradation at extended distances, having no Channel Extender installed, by implementing a new IU pacing protocol. You can use a less complex and cheaper Channel Extender, which only performs frame forwarding, rather than a Channel Extender that dissects every Channel Control Word (CCW) to optimize the transfer through the channel extender to get the best performance. These are typically Channel Extenders that have XRC Emulation running on them.

The enhancement has been implemented on the standard FICON architecture (FC-SB-3) layer with a new protocol for “persistent” Information Unit (IU) pacing. This has been achieved for the DS8700 z/OS Global Mirror (XRC) SDM “Read Record Set” (RRS) data transfer from a DS8700 to the SDM host address space. The control units that support the Extended Distance FICON feature are able to increase the pacing count. The pacing count is the number of IUs that are “in flight” from a channel to a control unit. Standard FICON supports Information Units pacing of 16 IUs in flight. Extended Distance FICON now extends the IU pacing for the RRS CCW Chain to permit 255 IUs in flight without waiting for an acknowledgement from the control unit, eliminating handshakes between channel and control unit. This support allows the channel to remember the last pacing information and use this information for subsequent operations to avoid performance degradation at the start of a new I/O operation. Figure 16-3 shows the placement of channel extenders in a z/OS Global Mirror implementation.

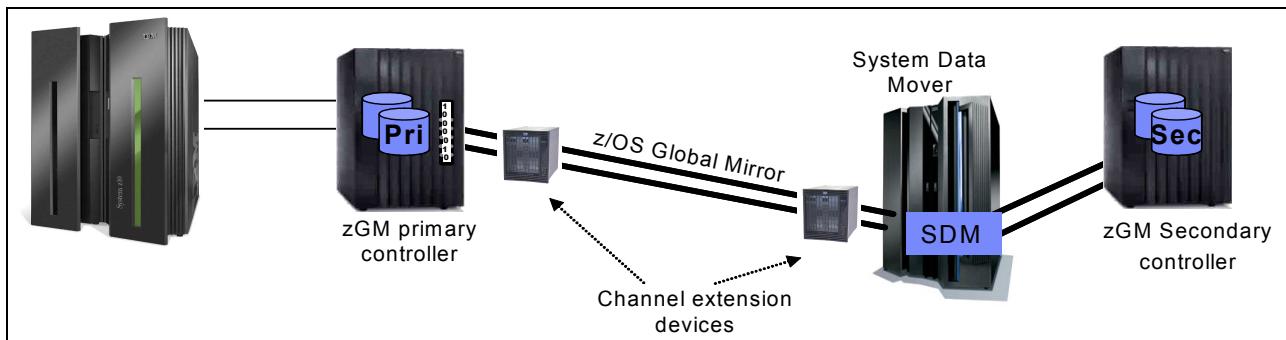


Figure 16-3 Channel extenders in a z/OS Global Mirror implementation

Improved IU pacing with 255 IU instead of 16 will improve the utilization of the link. For a 4 Gbps link, the channel remains utilized at a distance of 50 km and improves the distance between servers and control units.

Extended Distance FICON reduces the need for channel extenders in DS8700 series 2-site and 3-site z/OS Global Mirror configurations because of the increased number of read commands simultaneously in flight.

- ▶ Enables greater throughput over distance for IBM z/OS Global Mirror (XRC) using the same distance.
- ▶ What Extended Distance FICON does not do:
  - Extend the achievable physical FICON distances.
  - Offer any performance enhancements in a non-z/OS GM (XRC) environment.

Current, more expensive channel extenders have an “XRC emulation” running on their adapter card to emulate the RRS operation. This is a chargeable feature.

For example, Brocade provides functions to:

- ▶ Detect a SDM channel program and disconnect it.
- ▶ Send a message to the primary site.
- ▶ Reconstruct and execute the program at the primary site.
- ▶ Send the data to the remote site in a large packet over the large distance.
- ▶ Reconnect and complete the chain with the data mover.

Extended Distance FICON eliminates the need for these kind of spoofing functions.

### **Vendors supplying Channel Extenders**

- ▶ Brocade (former CNT) USDx
- ▶ Brocade (former CNT) Edge Server (FC-IP)
- ▶ Brocade 7500 (FC-IP)
- ▶ Ciena (Sonet)
- ▶ Nortel and ADVA
- ▶ CISCO

#### **16.6.1 Extended Distance FICON: Installation considerations**

If you want to take advantage of Extended Distance FICON, remember the following considerations:

- ▶ Extended Distance FICON is, at this time, only supported on system z10 Channels. FICON Express8, FICON Express4, and FICON Express2 are supported.
- ▶ z/OS V1.7 or above is required.
- ▶ APAR OA24218 must be installed for the DFSMS SDM LPAR. The SDM APAR implements a MaxTracksRead(246) limit and 246 RRS CCW limit. This influences the SDM Multi-reader function in a positive way.
- ▶ SDM Parmlib must be updated to MaxTracksRead = 246. This is the maximum number of RRSs that is currently supported in a single channel program. Due to compatibility reasons, the permitted range of MaxTracksRead is 1 - 255, but it will be treated as a value of 246.
- ▶ The fabric requires sufficient buffer credits to support the link data rate at extended distance.

**Note:** With the current EDF implementation, you are restricted to using either persistent IU pacing or XRC emulation.

### **Enabling and running Extended Distance FICON**

When the prerequisites listed above are met, the channel and Control Unit (CU) indicates support of persistent IU pacing when establishing logical paths. Channel and CU provide automatic concurrent enablement on all existing logical paths.

When either side has installed the support for Extended Distance FICON:

- ▶ CU detects the DSO command with a suborder indicating that this is a RRS chain.
- ▶ CU sets persistent pacing credit for the logical path based on the number of RRS commands in the chain.
- ▶ Persistent Pacing Credit is recorded for this logical path and sends the channel the first command response.
- ▶ The channel sends now a number of CCWs up to the pacing credit (246), which is set to the path on subsequent I/O execution.

## **Write thresholds during EDF**

With Extended Distance FICON:

- ▶ CU can handle many read commands because they do not take up data buffer space on the adapter.
- ▶ Write commands still need to be paced at the default FICON value of 16 IUs.
- ▶ CU detects a threshold of larger write chains and will reset pacing for the logical path back to the default when the large writes result in high write buffer congestion.
- ▶ Once RRS chains are detected in the absence of buffer congestion, pacing credit will be increased again.

## **Disabling and enabling the EDF at the DS8700**

Persistent IU Pacing is enabled in the DS8700 code by default. In case of any severe problems, the EDF function can be disabled/enabled in each DS8700 CEC.

**Note:** Disabling the EDF function in the DS8700 microcode can only be done by an IBM System Support Representative.

## **Summary**

The Extended Distance FICON channel support produces performance results similar to XRC Emulation mode at long distances. It should be used to enable a wider range of choices in channel extension technology, when using z/OS Global Mirroring, because emulation in the extender might not be required. This reduces the total cost of ownership and provides comparable performance when mirroring application updates over long distances.

## **16.7 High Performance FICON for z with multitrack support**

To increase system performance and improve System z FICON channel efficiency, the DS8700 provides support for High Performance FICON for System z (zHPF) with multitrack. zHPF with multitrack operations is an optional licensed feature on DS8700 storage systems.

With the introduction of zHPF, the FICON architecture has been streamlined by removing significant impact from the storage subsystem and the microprocessor within the FICON channel. A command block is created to chain commands into significantly fewer sequences. The effort required to convert individual commands into FICON format is removed as multiple System z I/O commands are packaged together and passed directly over the fiber optic link.

zHPF provides an enhanced FICON protocol and system I/O architecture that results in improvements for small block transfers (a track or less) to disk using the device independent random access method.

In situations where this is the exclusive access in use, it can improve FICON I/O throughput on a single DS8700 port by 100%. Realistic workloads with a mix of data set transfer sizes can see 30 - 70% of FICON I/Os utilizing zHPF, resulting in up to a 10-30% channel utilization savings.

Although customers should see I/Os complete faster as the result of implementing zHPF, the real benefit is expected to be obtained by using fewer channels to support existing disk volumes, or increasing the number of disk volumes supported by existing channels.

Additionally, the changes in architectures offer end-to-end system enhancements to improve reliability, availability, and serviceability (RAS).

zHPF uses multitrack operations to allow reading or writing more than a track's worth of data by a single transport mode operation. DB2, VSAM, zFS, HFS, PDSE, striped extended format data sets, and other applications that use large data transfers with Media Manager are expected to benefit from zHPF multitrack function.

In addition, zHPF complements the Extended Address Volumes for System z (EAV) strategy for growth by increasing the I/O rate capability as the volume sizes expand vertically.

In laboratory measurements, multitrack operations (for example, reading 16 x 4 KB/IO) converted to the zHPF protocol on a FICON Express8 channel achieved a maximum of up to 40% more MBps than multitrack operations using the native FICON protocol.

IBM laboratory testing and measurements are available at the following address:

[http://www.ibm.com/systems/z/hardware/connectivity/ficon\\_performance.html](http://www.ibm.com/systems/z/hardware/connectivity/ficon_performance.html)

zHPF with multitrack operations is available on z/OS V1.8, V1.9, V1.10, and V1.11 with the PTFs for APARs OA26084 and OA29017.

At the time of the writing of this book, zHPF and support for multitrack operations is exclusive to the System z10 servers and applies to all FICON Express8, FICON Express4, and FICON Express2 features (CHPID type FC).

The FICON Express adapters are *not* supported.

zHPF is transparent to applications. However, z/OS configuration changes are required: Hardware Configuration Definition (HCD) must have Channel path ID (CHPID) type FC defined for all the CHPIDs that are defined to the DS8700 control unit. For the DS8700, installation of the Licensed Feature Key for the High Performance FICON feature is required. Once these items are addressed, existing FICON port definitions in the DS8700 will function in either native FICON or zHPF protocols in response to the type of request being performed. These are nondisruptive changes.

For z/OS, after the PTFs are installed in the LPAR, you must then set ZHPF=YES in IECIOSxx in SYS1.PARMLIB or issue the SETIOS ZHPF=YES command. ZHPF=NO is the default setting.

IBM recommends customers use the ZHPF=YES setting after the required configuration changes and prerequisites are met.

For more information about zHPF in general, refer to:

<http://www-03.ibm.com/support/techdocs/atsmastr.nsf/fe582a1e48331b5585256de50062ae1c/05d19b2a9bd95d4e8625754c0007d365?OpenDocument>

## 16.8 z/OS Basic HyperSwap

z/OS Basic HyperSwap is a single site z/OS only solution that extends Sysplex and Parallel Sysplex® high availability capability to data. The average capacity space per controller grows permanently and the impact is huge if there is a disk subsystem failure. Therefore, IBM created a new function called Basic HyperSwap, which is available only in a z/OS environment.

All Basic HyperSwap volumes are defined to a Tivoli Storage Productivity Center for Replication (TPC-R) HyperSwap session. TPC-R supports a new session type called Basic HyperSwap. The underlying session though is a Metro Mirror session.

With TPC-R 4.1.1 and above, Metro Mirror sessions with HyperSwap now support two-site or three-site configurations with freeze and HyperSwap. This function guarantees consistent data at the recovery site. This function is possible because freeze support is triggered through the z/OS HyperSwap address space if there is a communication failure between the application and the recovery site or a failure at the recovery site. A failure at the application or primary site that is identified as a HyperSwap trigger will cause the HyperSwap to occur between the primary and secondary devices of a Metro Mirror session. This swap operation is solely managed by the z/OS HyperSwap address spaces in all sysplex images.

## How it works

The Basic HyperSwap session is only suitable for planned swaps and not for unplanned failures of the disk storage subsystem. Use only TPC-R 4.1.1+ and a Metro Mirror (MM) session with HyperSwap to support a two-site Metro Mirror configuration.

z/OS monitors all activity and when a primary disk failure is detected, a data freeze occurs for all volumes within the MM/Basic HyperSwap session. During this data freeze, all application I/Os are queued and appear as extended long busy SCSI full condition. This action is necessary to maintain data integrity on all volumes across the HyperSwap operation. z/OS IOS then recovers the PPRC target devices and does a Unit Control Block (UCB) swap pointing to the volumes on the secondary subsystem. When all UCBs have been swapped, the I/Os are released and the application continues to run on the recovered secondary site. This is valid for all subsystems defined in a MM/Basic HyperSwap session. There is no impact to the applications if they tolerate the “long busy condition”.

The scope of MM/Basic HyperSwap is throughout a sysplex environment and the volumes must be mirrored using MM (PPRC). All hosts in a Parallel Sysplex must have connectivity to both MM primary and secondary devices through FICON channels.

The subsequent swap back through a planned HyperSwap to the former configuration, before the event happened, is fully under control of TPC-R through a MM failover / MM fallback from Site 1 to Site 2.

Figure 16-4 shows the Basic HyperSwap components.

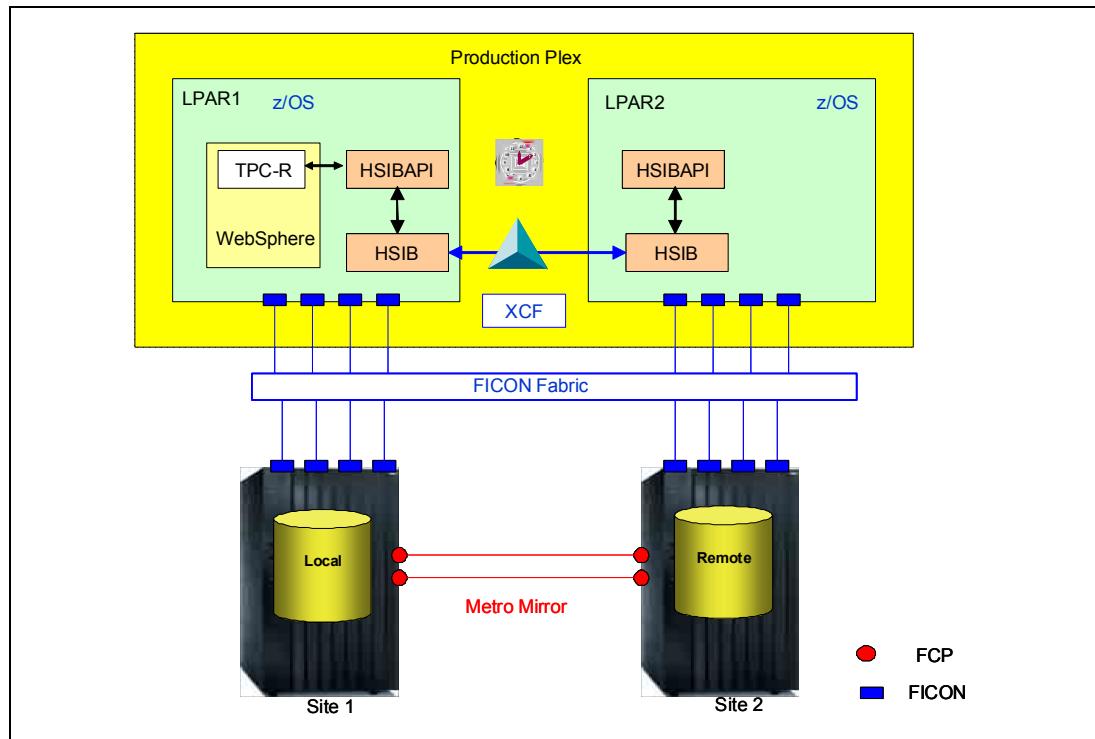


Figure 16-4 Metro Mirror with Basic HyperSwap system overview

Starting with Version 4.1.1, TPC-R can communicate solely through an inband approach over the host FICON channel.

When the TPC-R server is connected to the DS8000 subsystems only through IP, HyperSwap is not supported, but all conventional Copy Services operations are supported through IP.

### Metro Mirror with Basic HyperSwap system requirements

Metro Mirror with Basic HyperSwap has the following hardware and software requirements:

- ▶ **Hardware:**
  - DS8700 or any other DS8000 family member, DS6000, or ESS800.
  - Metro Mirror (PPRC) licensed function.
  - FICON Connectivity to MM primary and secondary devices. IP connectivity is not required any longer with TPC-R 4.1.1+, but IP connectivity may still be provided and connected in parallel to FICON connectivity.
- ▶ **Software:**
  - z/OS V1.9 (including Basic HyperSwap SPE) or above.
  - TPC-R V4.1.1
    - Basic Edition is available with z/OS V1.9 and provides only support for a Basic HyperSwap session.
    - TPC-R two-site or three-site support is required for Metro Mirror based two-site or MGM three-site support with HyperSwap. This includes full support to manage any Copy Services configuration through TPC-R. Note that the Basic Edition supports a Basic HyperSwap session only.

- An embedded IBM WebSphere Application Server OEM and its embedded Apache Derby database are part of the TPC-R software package and are offered at no charge.
- An IBM System Service Runtime Environment (SSRE) or WebSphere Application Server V6.1 on z/OS are no longer an option since the advent of TPC-R V4.1.0+ with the embedded WebSphere Application Server OEM.

**Note:** Basic HyperSwap provides only a high availability solution and is not deployed as a disaster recovery solution. Since the advent of TPC-R V4.1.1+, Basic HyperSwap provides high availability, disaster recovery, and consistent data at the recovery site.

For more information about Basic HyperSwap, refer to *IBM Systems for SAP Business Intelligence: 25 Terabyte Scalability Study*, REDP-4411.



# IBM System i considerations

This chapter discusses the specifics for the IBM System Storage DS8700 series system attachment to System i. This chapter covers the following topics:

- ▶ Supported environment
- ▶ Logical volume sizes
- ▶ Protected versus unprotected volumes
- ▶ Adding volumes to the System i configuration
- ▶ Multipath
- ▶ Sizing guidelines
- ▶ Migration
- ▶ Boot from SAN

For further information about these topics, refer to *IBM i and IBM System Storage: A Guide to Implementing External Disks on IBM i*, SG24-7120.

## 17.1 Supported environment

Not all hardware and software combinations for i5/OS and IBM i support the DS8700. This section describes the hardware and software prerequisites for attaching the DS8700.

### 17.1.1 Hardware

The DS8700 is supported on all System i models that support Fibre Channel attachment using the adapters listed below.

The following System i Fibre Channel adapters are supported on DS8700:

- ▶ FC 5749 4 Gigabit Fibre Channel Disk Controller PCI-x
- ▶ FC 5760 4 Gigabit Fibre Channel Disk Controller PCI-x
- ▶ FC 5774 4 Gigabit Fibre Channel Disk Controller PCI Express
- ▶ FC 5735 8 Gigabit Fibre Channel Disk Controller PCI Express

FC 5760 is IOP-based adapter and can address up to 32 logical volumes. The other adapters listed above are IOP-less and can address up to 64 volumes.

IBM i V6R1, in combination with IOP-less adapters, provides SCSI command tag queuing support on DS8700 systems.

The System i Storage website provides information about current hardware requirements, including support for switches. You can find this page at the following address:

[http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/iseries/storage/storage\\_hw.html](http://www.ibm.com/servers/eserver/iseries/storage/storage_hw.html)

### 17.1.2 Software

IBM i V6.1 and V5.4 support the DS8700 system storage via native Fibre Channel attachment to POWER5 and POWER6 processor-based servers. In addition, the DS8700 is supported with IBM i V6.1 partitions via a PowerVM™ VIOS attached to POWER6 processor-based servers and blades. The System i must be running i5/OS V5R4 or IBM i V6R1.

Prior to attaching the DS8700 to System i, you should check for the latest PTFs.

## 17.2 Logical volume sizes

IBM i is supported on DS8700 as Fixed Block (FB) storage. Unlike other Open Systems using FB architecture, IBM i only supports specific volume sizes, and these might not be an exact number of extents. In general, these relate to the volume sizes available with internal devices, although some larger sizes are now supported for external storage only. IBM i volumes are defined in decimal gigabytes ( $10^9$  bytes).

Table 17-1 gives the number of extents required for different System i volume sizes.

Table 17-1 IBM i logical volume sizes

Model type		IBM i device size (GB)	Number of logical block addresses (LBAs)	Extents	Unusable space (GiB <sup>1</sup> )	Usable space%
Unprotected	Protected					
2107-A81	2107-A01	8.5	16,777,216	8	0.00	100.00
2107-A82	2107-A02	17.5	34,275,328	17	0.66	96.14
2107-A85	2107-A05	35.1	68,681,728	33	0.25	99.24
2107-A84	2107-A04	70.5	137,822,208	66	0.28	99.57
2107-A86	2107-A06	141.1	275,644,416	132	0.56	99.57
2107-A87	2107-A07	282.2	551,288,832	263	0.13	99.95

1. GiB represents “binary gigabytes” ( $2^{30}$  bytes), and GB represents “decimal gigabytes” ( $10^9$  bytes).

**Note:** Logical volumes of size 8.59 and 282.2 are not supported as a System i Load Source Unit (boot disk) where the Load Source Unit is located in the external storage server.

When creating the logical volumes for use with IBM i, you see that in almost every case that the IBM i device size does not match a whole number of extents, and so some space is wasted. You should also note that the FC 5760 Fibre Channel Disk Adapters used by System i can only address 32 logical unit numbers (LUNs), so creating more, smaller LUNs requires more Input Output Adapters (IOAs) and their associated Input Output Processors (IOPs). For more sizing guidelines for IBM i, refer to 17.6, “Sizing guidelines” on page 521.

## 17.3 Protected versus unprotected volumes

When defining IBM i logical volumes, you must decide whether these should be *protected* or *unprotected*. This is simply a notification to IBM i; it does not mean that the volume is protected or unprotected. In reality, all DS8700 LUNs are protected, either RAID 5, RAID 6, or RAID 10. Defining a volume as *unprotected* means that it is available for IBM i to mirror that volume to another of equal capacity, either internal or external. If you do not intend to use IBM i (host-based) mirroring, define your logical volumes as protected.

Under some circumstances, you might want to mirror the IBM i Load Source Unit (LSU) to a LUN in the DS8700. In this case, only one LUN should be defined as unprotected; otherwise, when you start mirroring to mirror the LSU to the DS8700 LUN, IBM i attempts to mirror all unprotected volumes.

### **17.3.1 Changing LUN protection**

Although it is possible to change a volume from protected to unprotected (or unprotected to protected) using the DS CLI, be extremely careful if you do this action. If the volume is not assigned to any System i or is non-configured, you can change the protection. However, if it is configured, you should not change the protection. If you want to do so, you must first delete the logical volume. This returns the extents used for that volume to the Extent Pool. You are then able to create a new logical volume with the correct protection after a short period of time (depending on the number of extents returned to the Extent Pool).

However, before deleting the logical volume on the DS8700, you must first remove it from the IBM i configuration (assuming it was still configured). This is an IBM i task that is disruptive if the disk is in the System ASP or User ASPs 2-32, because it requires an IPL of IBM i to completely remove the volume from the IBM i configuration. This is no different from removing an internal disk from an IBM i configuration. Indeed, deleting a logical volume on the DS8700 is similar to physically removing a disk drive from an System i. Disks can be removed from an Independent ASP with the IASP varied off without requiring you to IPL the system.

## **17.4 Adding volumes to the System i configuration**

Once the logical volumes have been created and assigned to the host, they appear as *non-configured units* to IBM i. This might be some time after they are created on the DS8700. At this stage, they are used in exactly the same way as non-configured internal units. There is nothing particular to external logical volumes as far as IBM i is concerned. You use the same functions for adding the logical units to an Auxiliary Storage Pool (ASP) as you use for internal disks.

### **17.4.1 Using the 5250 interface**

You can add disk units to the configuration either by using the text (5250 terminal mode) interface with Dedicated Service Tools (DST) or System Service Tools (SST), or with the System i Navigator GUI. The following steps show how to add a logical volume in the DS8700 to the System ASP by using green screen SST:

1. Start System Service Tools by running STRSST and sign on.

2. Select Option 3, Work with disk units, as shown in Figure 17-1.

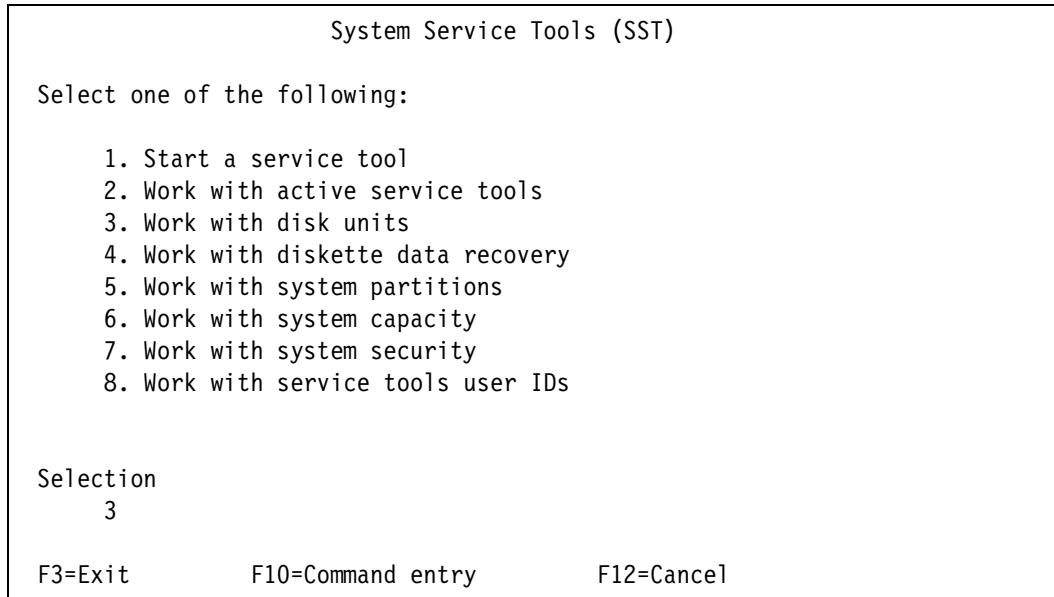


Figure 17-1 System Service Tools menu

3. Select Option 2, Work with disk configuration, as shown in Figure 17-2.

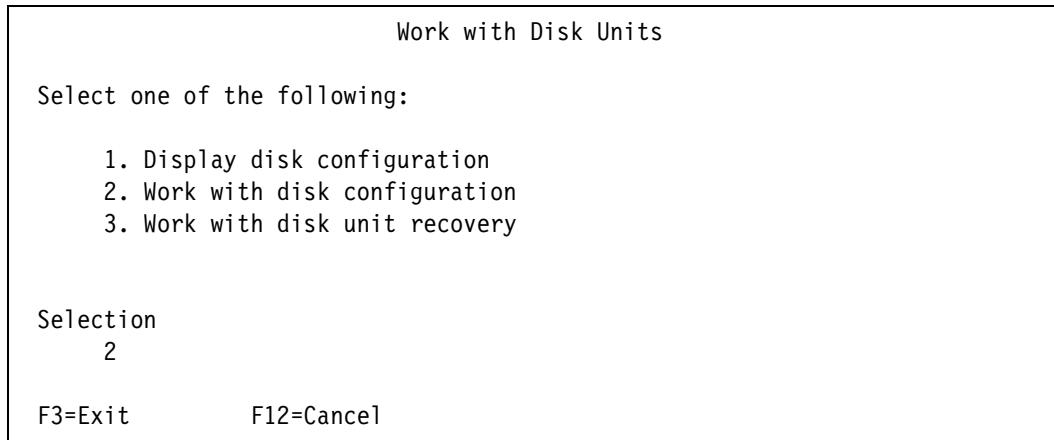


Figure 17-2 Work with Disk Units menu

4. When adding disk units to a configuration, you can add them as empty units by selecting Option 2 or you can choose to allow IBM i to balance the data across all the disk units. Typically, we recommend balancing the data. Select Option 8, Add units to ASPs and balance data, as shown in Figure 17-3.

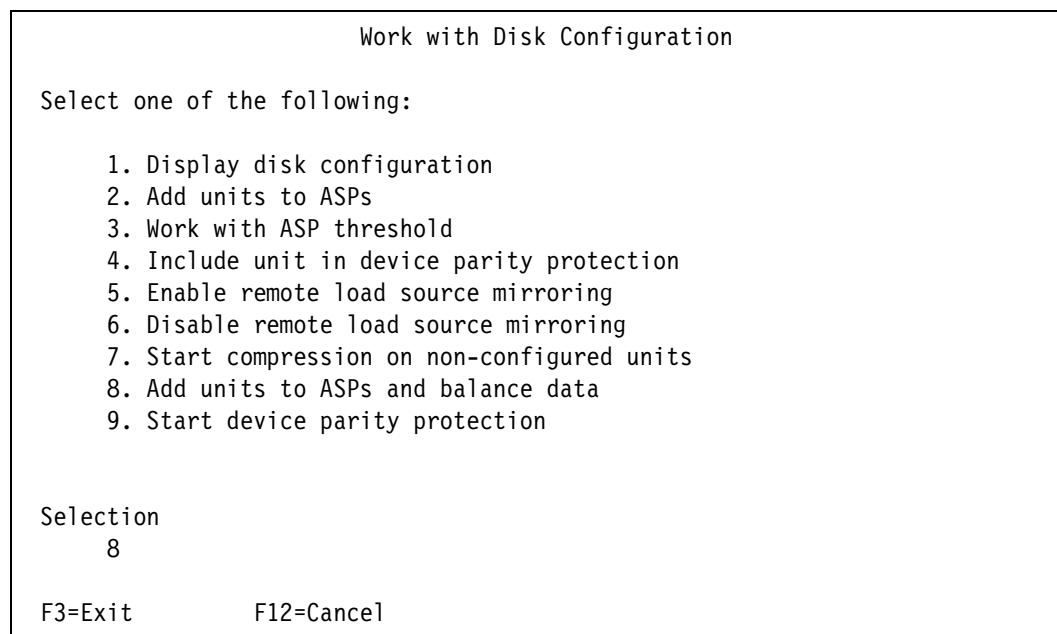


Figure 17-3 Work with Disk Configuration menu

5. Figure 17-4 shows the Specify ASPs to Add Units to screen. Specify the ASP number to the left of the desired units. Here we have specified ASP1, the System ASP. Press Enter.

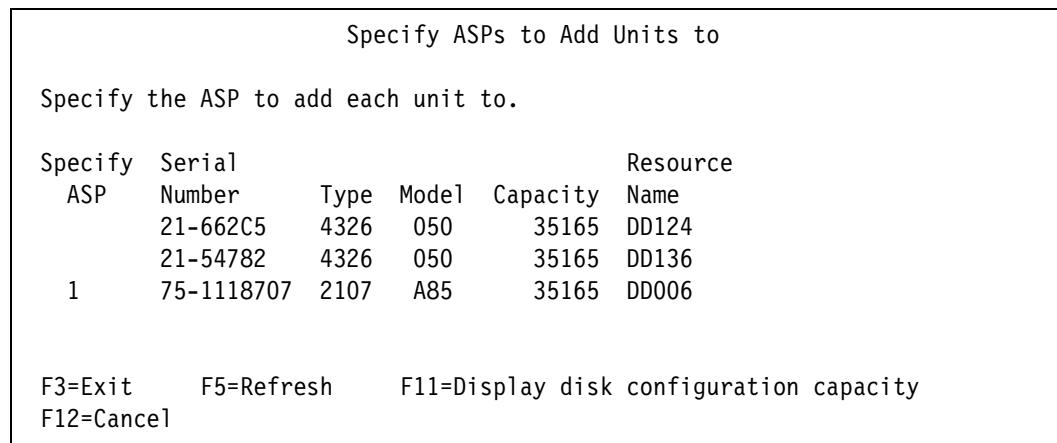


Figure 17-4 Specify ASPs to Add Units

6. The Confirm Add Units window appears for review, as shown in Figure 17-5. If everything is correct, press Enter to continue.

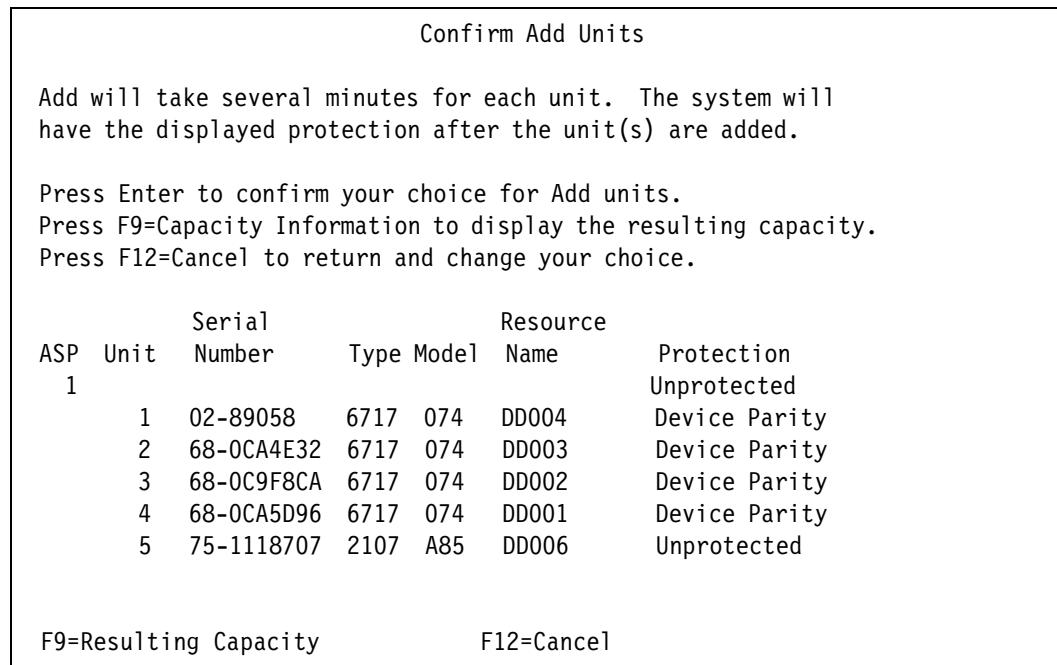


Figure 17-5 Confirm Add Units

7. Depending on the number of units you are adding, this step can take some time. When it completes, open your disk configuration to verify the capacity and data protection.

## 17.4.2 Adding volumes to an Independent Auxiliary Storage Pool

Independent Auxiliary Storage Pools (IASPs) can be switchable or private. Disks are added to an IASP using the System i Navigator GUI. In this example, we add a logical volume to a private (non-switchable) IASP.

1. Start System i Navigator. Figure 17-6 shows the initial window.

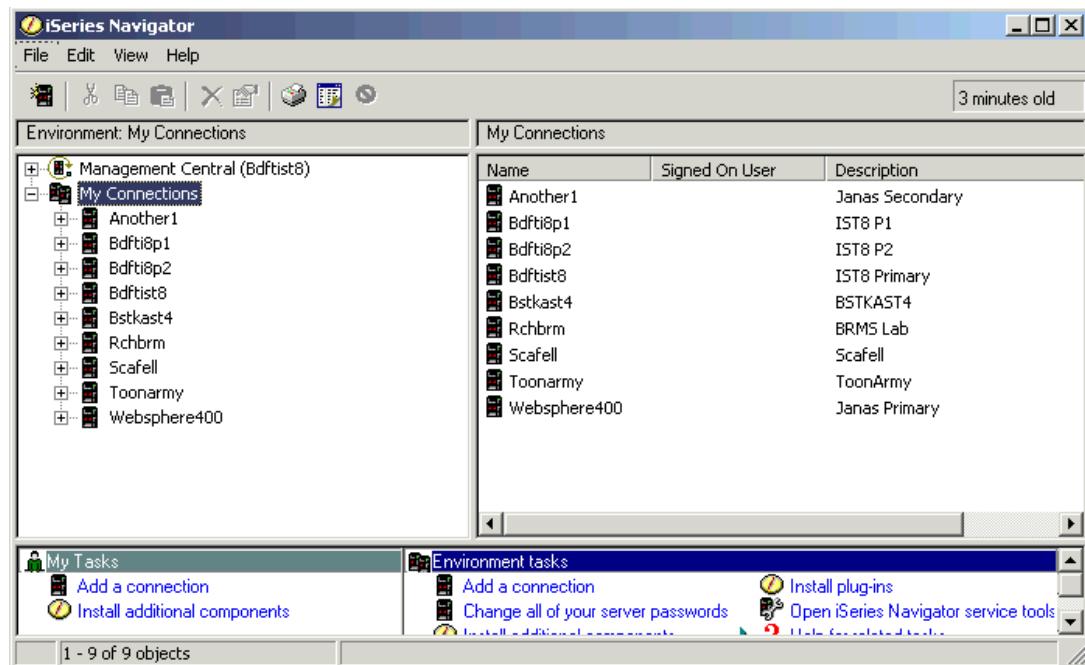


Figure 17-6 System i Navigator initial window

2. Expand the System i to which you want to add the logical volume and sign on to that server, as shown in Figure 17-7.

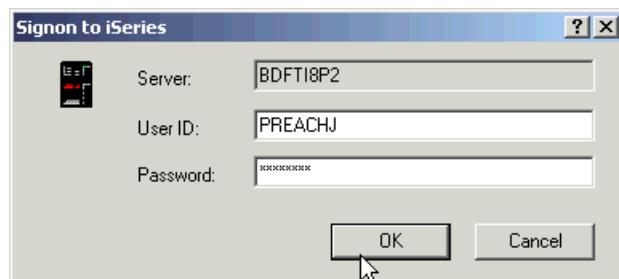


Figure 17-7 System i Navigator Signon to System i window

3. Expand **Configuration and Service** → **Hardware** → **Disk Units**, as shown in Figure 17-8.

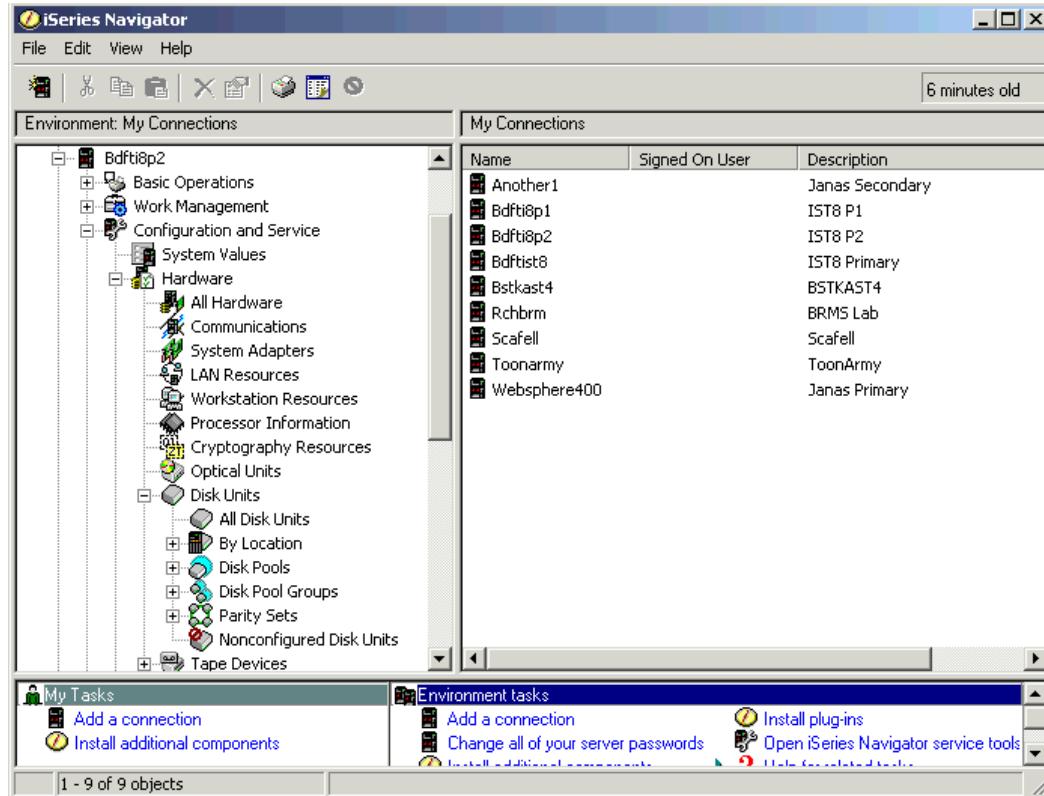


Figure 17-8 System i Navigator Disk Units

4. The system prompts you to sign on to SST, as shown in Figure 17-9. Enter your Service tools ID and password and press **OK**.



Figure 17-9 SST Sign-on

5. Right-click **Disk Pools** and select **New Disk Pool**.
6. The New Disk Pool wizard appears. Click **Next**.

7. In the New Disk Pool window shown in Figure 17-10, select **Primary** from the drop-down menu for the Type of disk pool, give the new disk pool a name, and leave the Database entry as the default **Generated by the system**. Ensure the disk protection method matches the type of logical volume you are adding. If you leave it unchecked, you see all available disks. Select **OK** to continue.

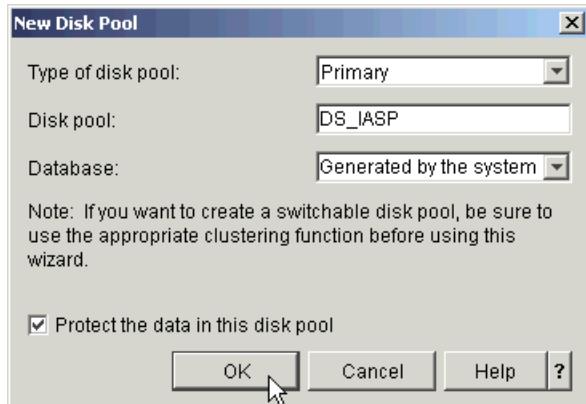


Figure 17-10 Defining a new disk pool

8. A confirmation window, such as the one shown in Figure 17-11, opens and summarizes the disk pool configuration. Select **Next** to continue.

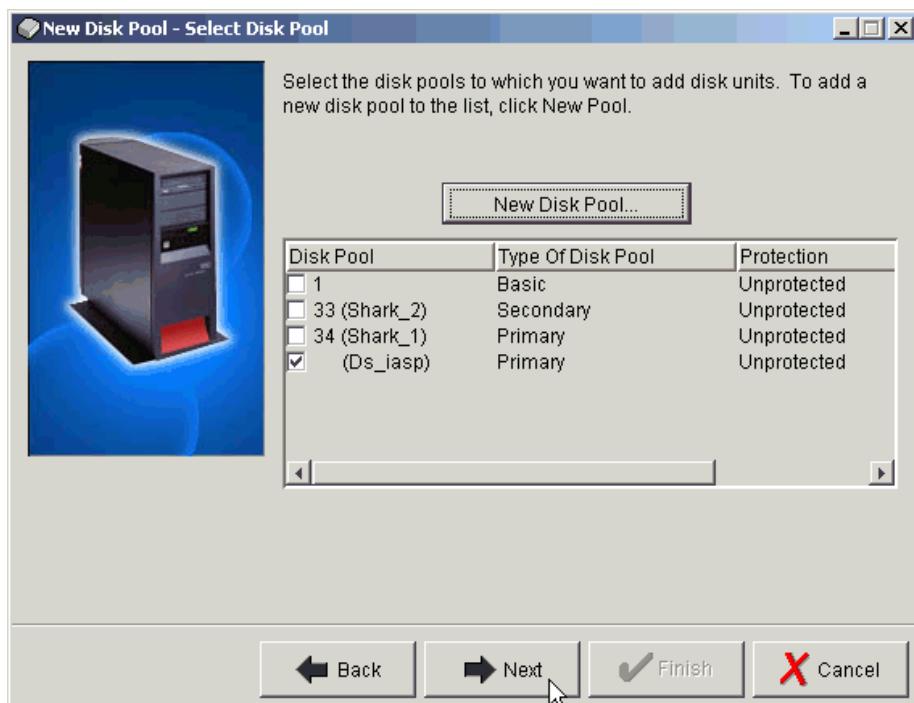


Figure 17-11 New Disk Pool - Select Disk Pool

9. Now you need to add disks to the new disk pool. In the Add to Disk Pool window, click **Add Disks**, as shown in Figure 17-12.

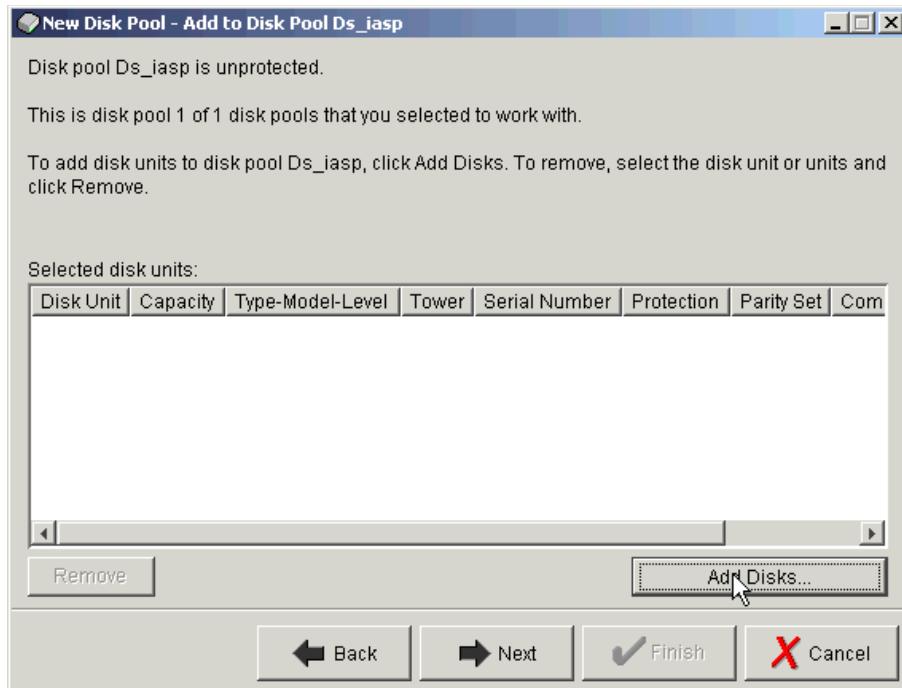


Figure 17-12 Add disks to disk pool

10. A list of non-configured units, similar to the ones shown in Figure 17-13, appears. Highlight the disks you want to add to the disk pool and click **Add**.

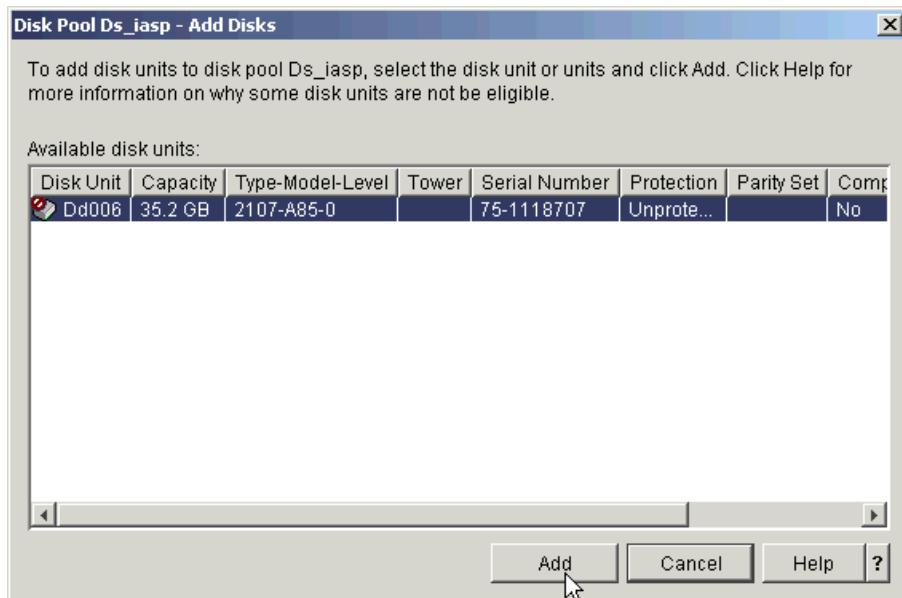


Figure 17-13 Choose the disks to add to the disk pool

11. A confirmation window opens, as shown in Figure 17-14. Click **Next** to continue.

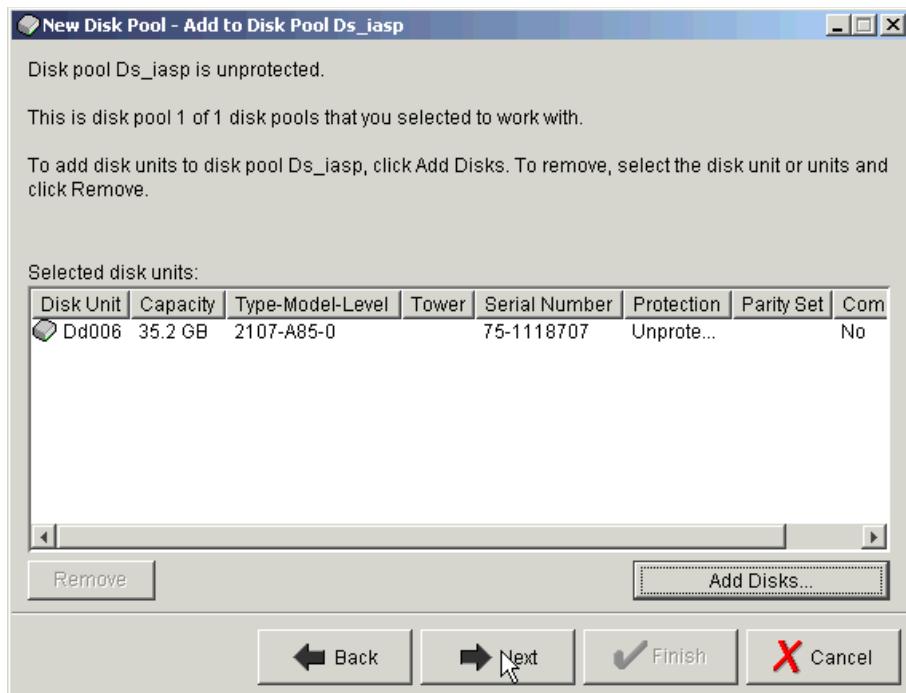


Figure 17-14 Confirm disks to add to disk pool

12. A summary of the Disk Pool configuration, similar to Figure 17-15, appears. Click **Finish** to add the disks to the Disk Pool.

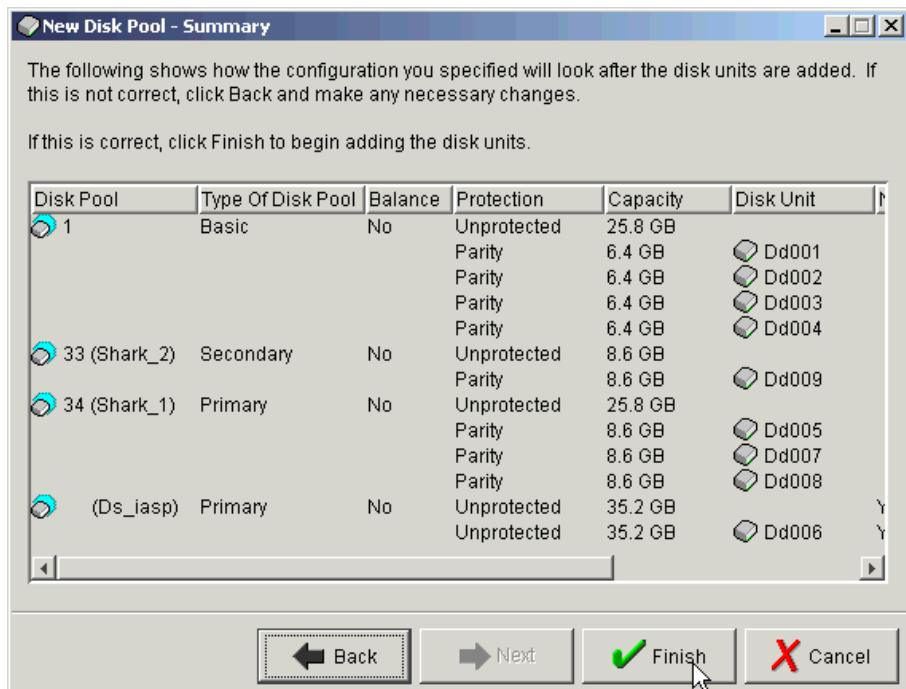


Figure 17-15 New Disk Pool - Summary

13. Take note of and respond to any message windows that appear. After you take action on any messages, the New Disk Pool Status window shown in Figure 17-16 appears and shows progress. This step might take some time, depending on the number and size of the logical units you add.

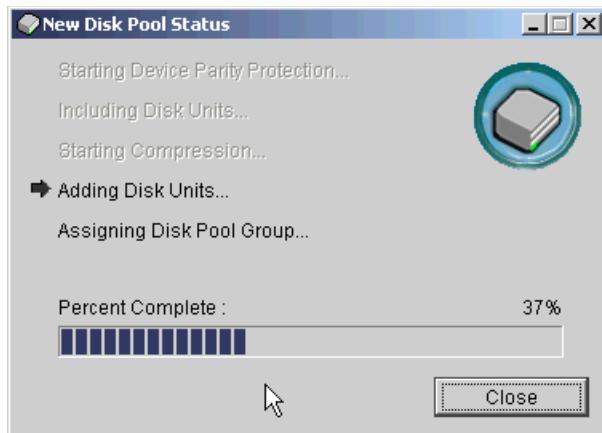


Figure 17-16 New Disk Pool Status

14. When complete, click **OK** in the information window shown in Figure 17-17.



Figure 17-17 Disks added successfully to disk pool

15. The new Disk Pool can be seen in the System i Navigator Disk Pools window shown Figure 17-18.

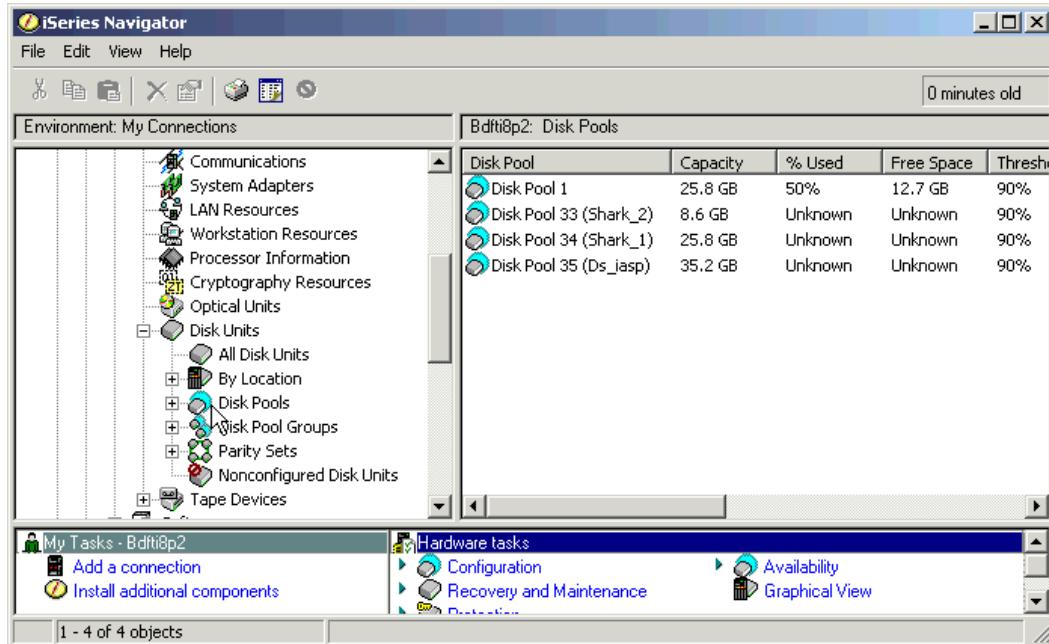


Figure 17-18 New disk pool shown on System i Navigator

16. To see the logical volume, as shown in Figure 17-19, expand **Configuration and Service** → **Hardware** → **Disk Pools**, and click the disk pool that you have just created.

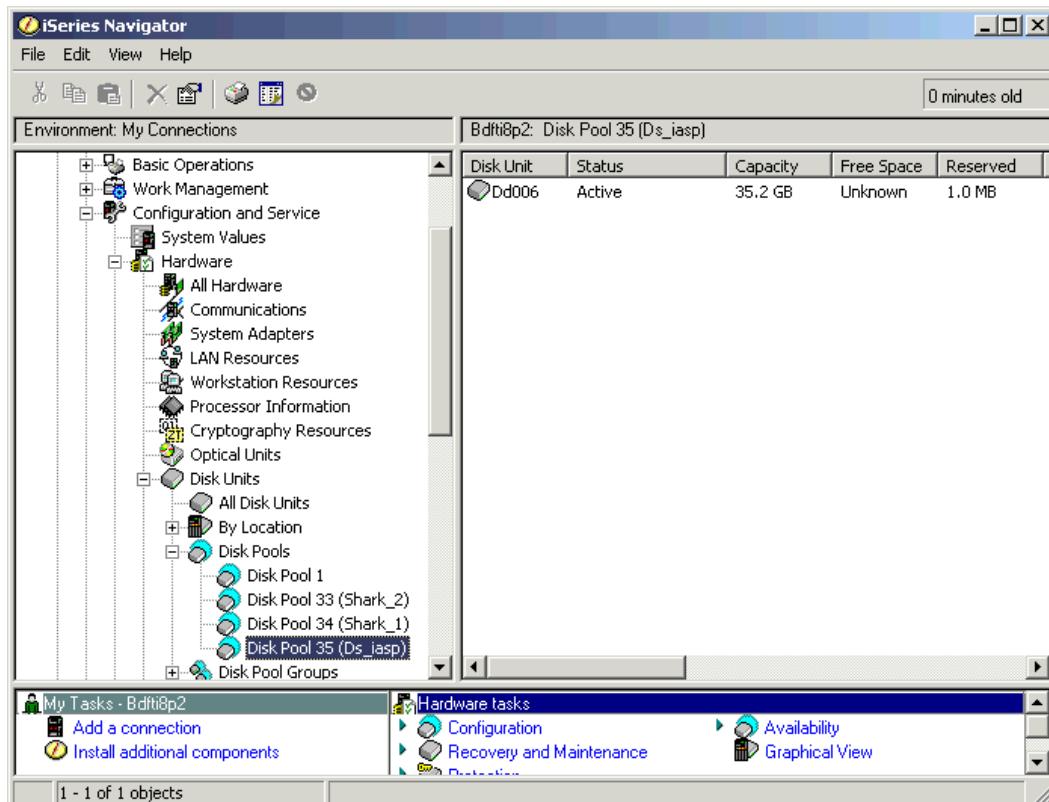


Figure 17-19 New logical volumes shown on System i Navigator

## 17.5 Multipath

With IBM i, multipath is part of the base operating system. You can define up to eight connections from multiple I/O adapters on a System i server to a single logical volume in the DS8700. Each connection for a multipath disk unit functions independently. Several connections provide availability by allowing disk storage to be utilized even if a single path fails.

Multipath is important for System i, because it provides greater resilience to SAN failures, which can be critical for IBM i due to the single level storage architecture. Multipath is not available for System i internal disk units, but the likelihood of path failure is much less with internal drives. This is because there are fewer interference points where problems can occur, such as long fiber cables and SAN switches, as well as the increased possibility of human error when configuring switches and external storage, and the concurrent maintenance on the DS8700, which can make some paths temporarily unavailable.

Many System i clients still have their entire environment on the System ASP and loss of access to any disk will cause the system to fail. Even with User ASPs, loss of a UASP disk eventually causes the system to stop. Independent ASPs provide isolation so that loss of disks in the IASP only affects users accessing that IASP while the rest of the system is unaffected. However, with multipath, even loss of a path to disk in an IASP does not cause an outage.

With the combination of multipath and RAID 5, RAID 6, or RAID 10 protection in the DS8700, we can provide full protection of the data paths and the data itself without the requirement for additional disks.

### 17.5.1 Avoiding single points of failure

In Figure 17-20, there are fifteen single points of failure, excluding the System i itself and the DS8700 storage facility. Failure points 9-12 are only present if you use an *inter-switch link* (ISL) to extend your SAN. An outage to any one of these components (either planned or unplanned) causes the system to fail if IASPs are not used (or the applications within an IASP if they are).

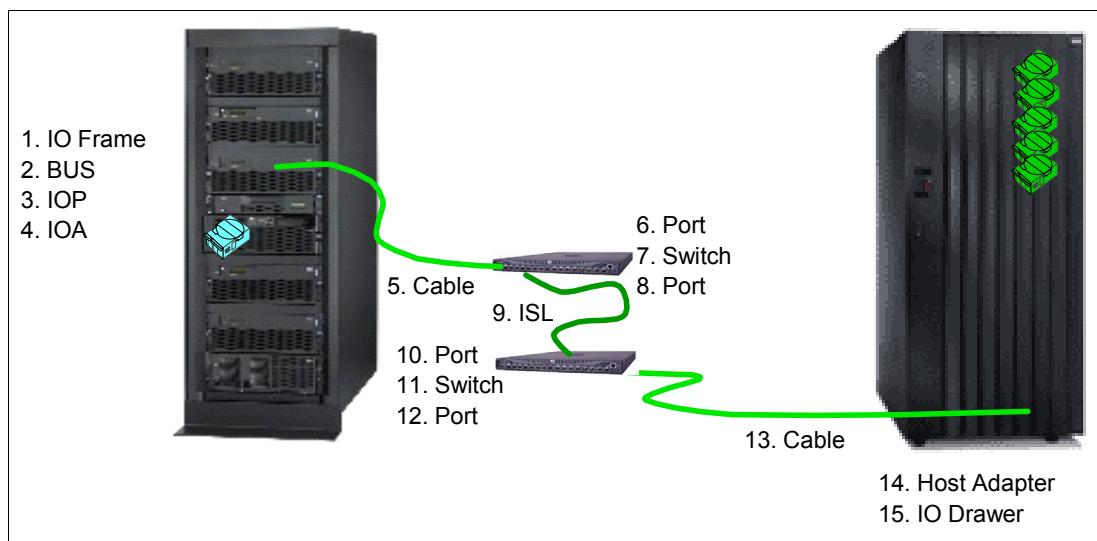


Figure 17-20 Single points of failure

When implementing multipath, provide as much redundancy as possible. At a minimum, multipath requires two IOAs connecting the same logical volumes. Ideally, place these on different buses and in different I/O racks in the System i. If a SAN is included, use separate switches also for each path. You should also use Host Adapters in different I/O drawer pairs in the DS8700, as shown in Figure 17-21.

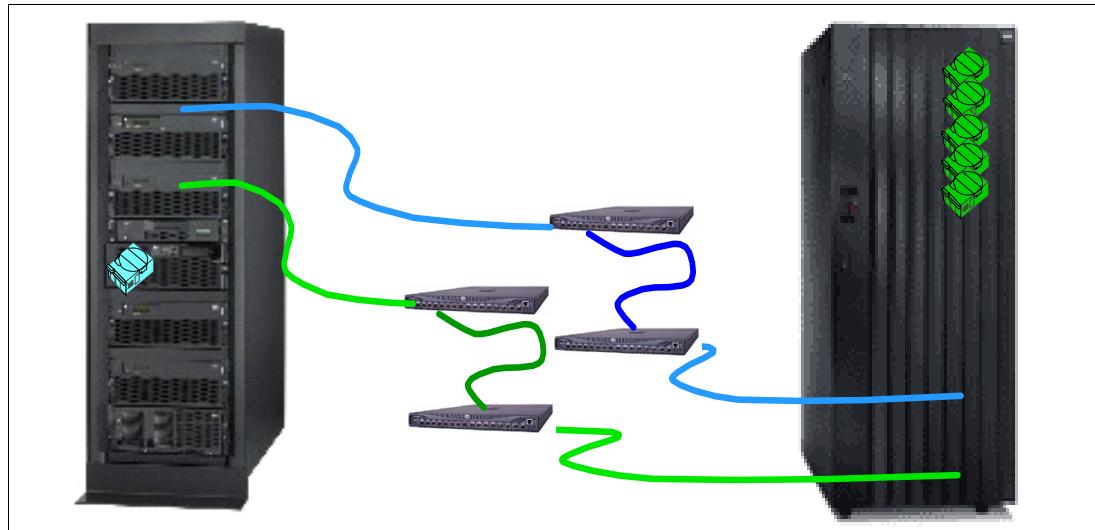


Figure 17-21 Multipath removes single points of failure

Unlike other systems, which might only support two paths (dual-path), IBM i V5R3 supports up to eight paths to the same logical volumes. At a minimum, you should use two paths, although some small performance benefits might be experienced with more paths. However, because IBM i multipath spreads I/O across all available paths in a *round-robin* manner, there is no load *balancing*, only load *sharing*.

### 17.5.2 Configuring multipath

The following I/O adapters are supported on a System i attached to a DS8700 storage subsystem:

- ▶ FC 5749 4 Gigabit Fibre Channel Disk Controller PCI-x
- ▶ FC 5760 4 Gigabit Fibre Channel Disk Controller PCI-x
- ▶ FC 5774 4 Gigabit Fibre Channel Disk Controller PCI Express
- ▶ FC 5735 8 Gigabit Fibre Channel Disk Controller PCI Express

All of these adapters can be used for multipath, and there is no requirement for all the paths to use the same type of adapter. This does not change with multipath support. When deciding how many I/O adapters to use, your first priority should be to consider the performance throughput of the IOA, because this limit might be reached before the maximum number of logical units. See 17.6, “Sizing guidelines” on page 521 for more information about sizing and performance guidelines.

In order to achieve better redundancy, we recommend configuring each logical path in a multipath configuration using different System i BUSes or different System i expansion towers, if possible.

### 17.5.3 Adding multipath volumes to System i using the 5250 interface

If you use the 5250 interface, sign on to SST and perform the following steps, as described in 17.4.1, “Using the 5250 interface” on page 502.

1. Option 3, Work with disk units.
2. Option 2, Work with disk configuration.
3. Option 8, Add units to ASPs and balance data.

You are then presented with a window similar to Figure 17-22. The values in the Resource Name column show DDxxx for single path volumes and DMPxxx for those that have more than one path. In this example, the 2107-A85 logical volume with serial number 75-1118707 is available through more than one path and reports as DMP135.

4. Specify the ASP to which you want to add the multipath volumes.

Specify ASPs to Add Units to					
Specify the ASP to add each unit to.					
Specify	Serial	Type	Model	Capacity	Resource
ASP	Number				Name
	21-662C5	4326	050	35165	DD124
	21-54782	4326	050	35165	DD136
1	75-1118707	2107	A85	35165	DMP135

F3=Exit      F5=Refresh      F11=Display disk configuration capacity  
F12=Cancel

Figure 17-22 Adding multipath volumes to an ASP

**Note:** For multipath volumes, only one path is shown. In order to see the additional paths, see 17.5.5, “Managing multipath volumes using System i Navigator” on page 517.

5. A confirmation window opens, as shown in Figure 17-23. Check the configuration details, and if correct, press Enter to accept.

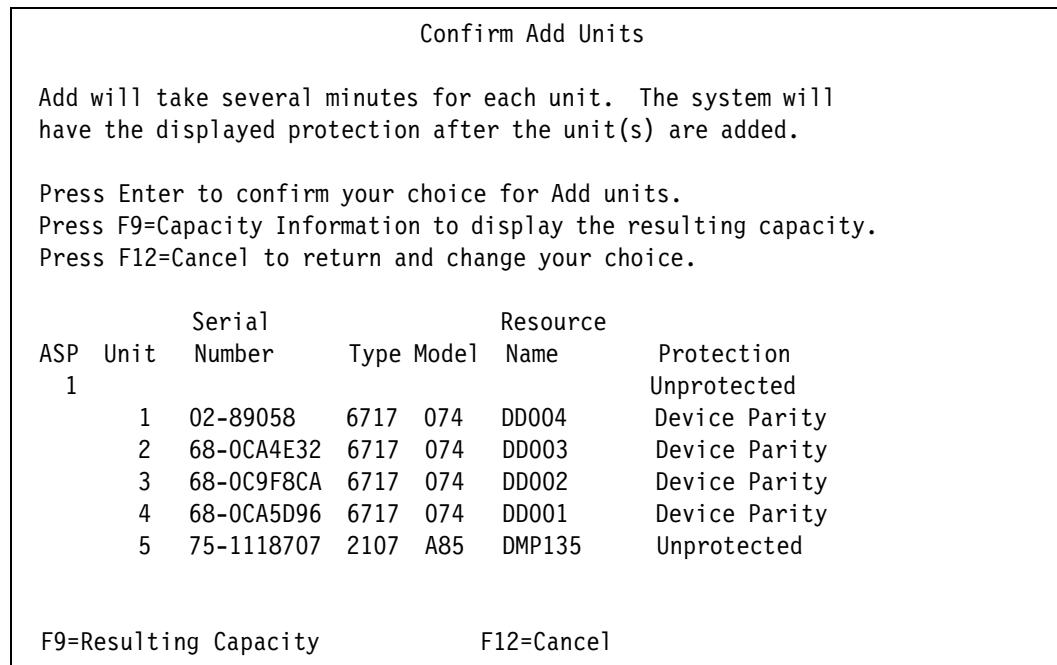


Figure 17-23 Confirm Add Units

#### 17.5.4 Adding multipath volumes to System i using System i Navigator

You can use the System i Navigator GUI to add volumes to System, User, or Independent ASPs. In this example, we add a multipath logical volume to a private (non-switchable) IASP. The same principles apply when adding multipath volumes to the System or User ASPs.

Follow the steps outlined in 17.4.2, “Adding volumes to an Independent Auxiliary Storage Pool” on page 506.

When you get to the point where you select the volumes to add, you see a window similar to that shown in Figure 17-24. Multipath volumes appear as DMPxxx. Highlight the disks you want to add to the disk pool and click **Add**.

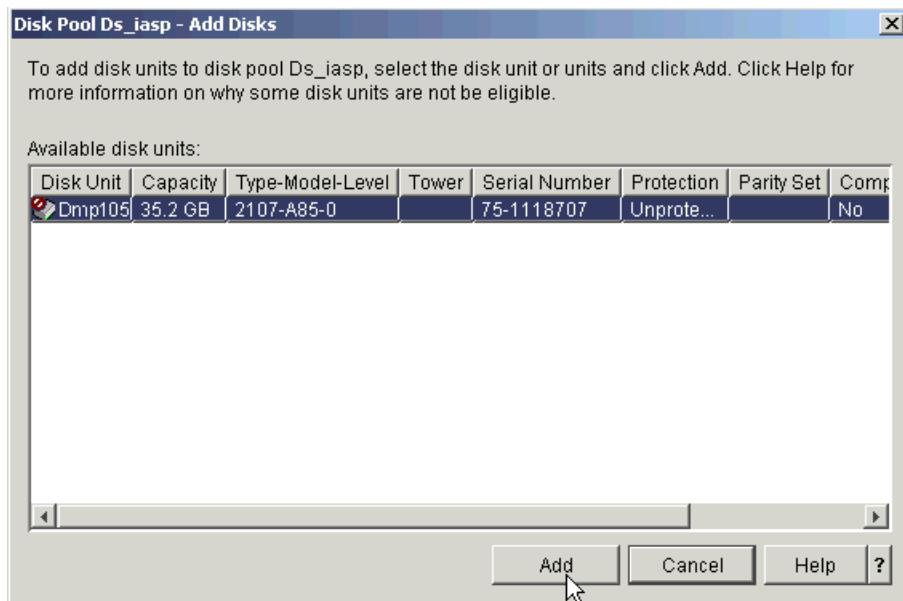


Figure 17-24 Adding a multipath volume

**Note:** For multipath volumes, only one path is shown. In order to see the additional paths, see 17.5.5, “Managing multipath volumes using System i Navigator” on page 517.

The remaining steps are identical to those given in 17.4.2, “Adding volumes to an Independent Auxiliary Storage Pool” on page 506.

### 17.5.5 Managing multipath volumes using System i Navigator

All units are initially created with a prefix of DD. As soon as the system detects that there is more than one path to a specific logical unit, it automatically assigns a unique resource name with a prefix of DMP for both the initial path and any additional paths.

When using the standard disk windows in System i Navigator, only a single (the initial) path is shown. The following steps show how to see the additional paths:

1. To see the number of paths available for a logical unit, open System i Navigator and expand **Configuration and Service** → **Hardware** → **Disk Units**, as shown in Figure 17-25, and click **All Disk Units**. The number of paths for each unit is shown in the column *Number of Connections* that shows on the right of the window. In this example, there are eight connections for each of the multipath units.
2. To see the other connections to a logical unit, right-click the unit and select **Properties**, as shown in Figure 17-25.

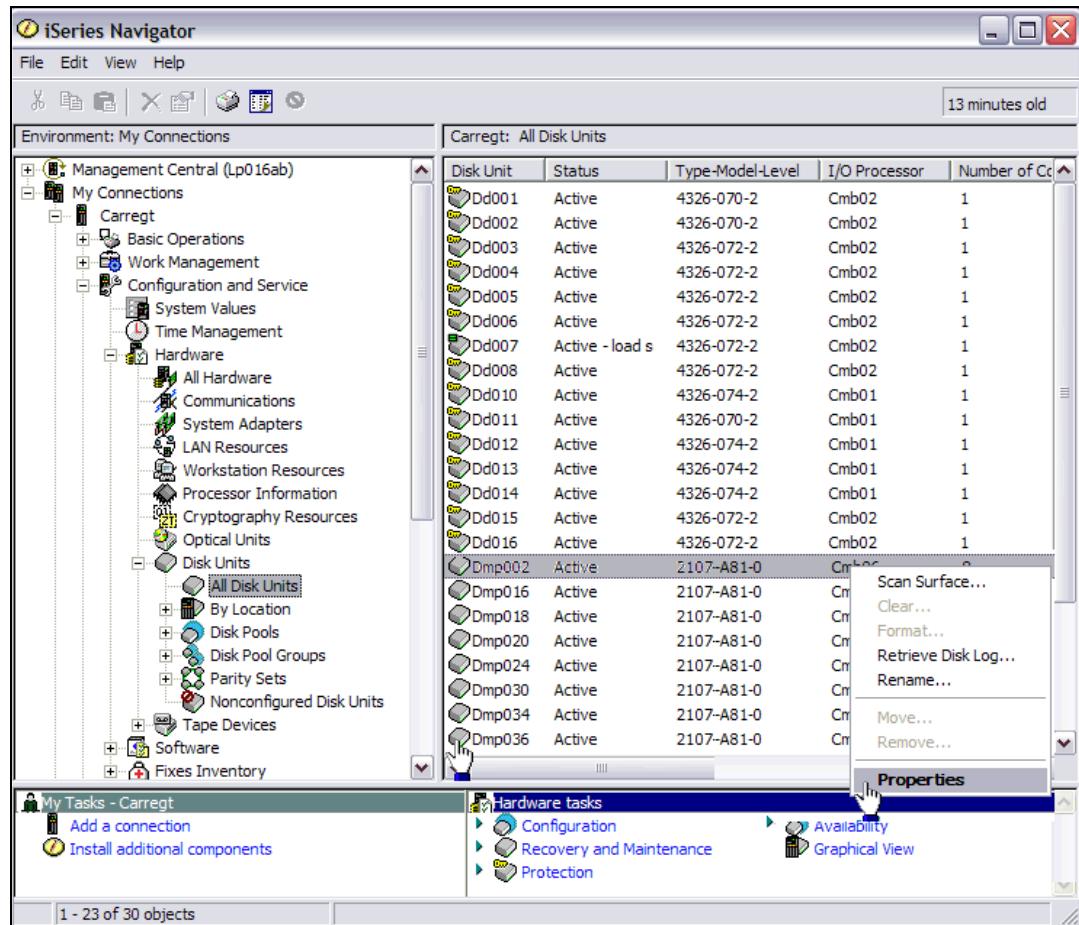


Figure 17-25 Selecting properties for a multipath logical unit

You now see the General properties tab for the selected unit, as shown in Figure 17-26. The first path is shown as Device 1 in the box labelled Storage.



Figure 17-26 Multipath logical unit properties

To see the other paths to this unit, click the **Connections** tab, as shown in Figure 17-27, where you can see the other seven connections for this logical unit.

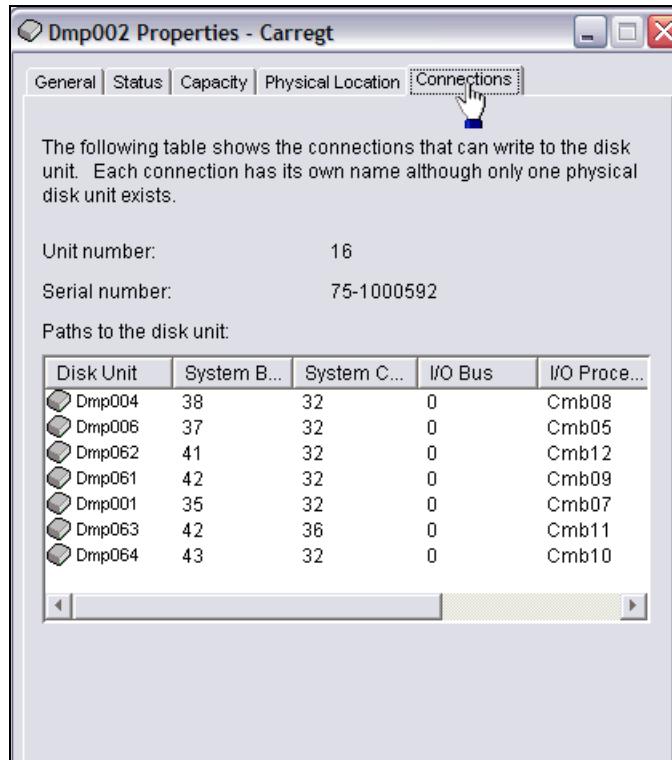


Figure 17-27 Multipath connections

## 17.5.6 Multipath rules for multiple System i hosts or partitions

When you use multipath disk units, you must consider the implications of moving IOPs and multipath connections between nodes. You must not split multipath connections between nodes, either by moving IOPs between logical partitions or by switching expansion units between systems. If two different nodes both have connections to the same LUN in the DS8700, both nodes might potentially overwrite data from the other node.

The system enforces the following rules when you use multipath disk units in a multiple system environment:

- ▶ If you move an IOP with a multipath connection to a different logical partition, you must also move all other IOPs with connections to the same disk unit to the same logical partition.
- ▶ When you make an expansion unit switchable, make sure that all multipath connections to a disk unit switch with the expansion unit.
- ▶ When you configure a switchable independent disk pool, make sure that all of the required IOPs for multipath disk units switch with the independent disk pool.

If a multipath configuration rule is violated, the system issues warnings or errors to alert you about the condition. It is important to pay attention when disk unit connections are reported missing. You want to prevent a situation where a node might overwrite data on a LUN that belongs to another node.

Disk unit connections might be missing for a variety of reasons, but especially if one of the preceding rules has been violated. If a connection for a multipath disk unit in any disk pool is found to be missing during an IPL or vary on, a message is sent to the QSYSOPR message queue.

If a connection is missing, and you confirm that the connection has been removed, you can update Hardware Service Manager (HSM) to remove that resource. Hardware Service Manager is a tool for displaying and working with system hardware from both a logical and a packaging viewpoint, an aid for debugging Input/Output (I/O) processors and devices, and for fixing failing and missing hardware. You can access Hardware Service Manager in System Service Tools (SST) and Dedicated Service Tools (DST) by selecting the option to start a service tool.

## 17.5.7 Changing from a single path to multipath

If you have a configuration where the logical units were only assigned to one I/O adapter, you can easily change to multipath. Simply assign the logical units in the DS8700 to another I/O adapter, and the existing DDxxx drives change to DMPxxx, and new DMPxxx resources are created for the new path.

## 17.6 Sizing guidelines

Figure 17-28 shows the process that you can use to size external storage on System i. Ideally, you should have IBM i Performance Tools reports, which you can use to model an existing workload. If these reports are not available, you can use workload characteristics from a similar workload to understand the I/O rate per second and the average I/O size. For example, the same application might be running at another site and its characteristics can be adjusted to match the expected workload pattern on your system.

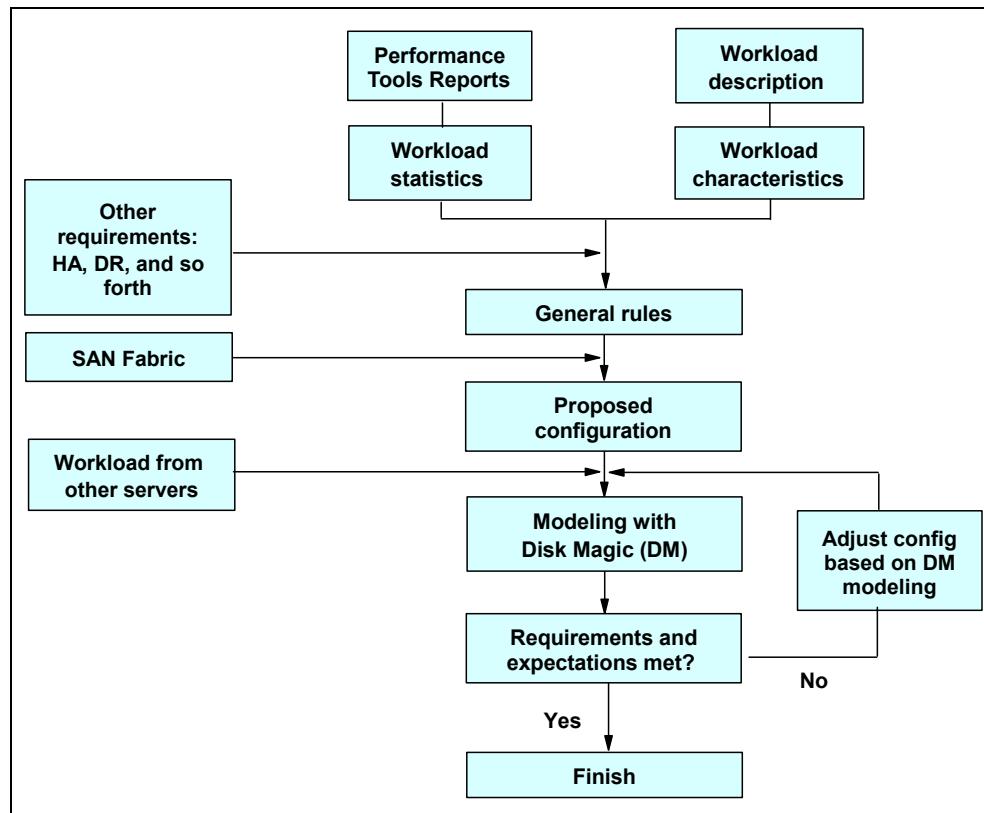


Figure 17-28 Process for sizing external storage

### 17.6.1 Planning for arrays and DDMs

We recommend that you use 146 GB 15,000 RPM DDMs for System i production workloads. The larger, slower drives might be suitable for less I/O intensive work, or for those workloads that do not require critical response times (for example, archived data or data that is high in volume but low in use, such as scanned images).

You can also use Solid State Drives with 73 GB or 146 GB capacities. From a performance point of view, they will be the best option for heavy I/O applications.

**Note:** SSD can only be used with RAID 5. There are some other restrictions regarding SSD. For more information, refer to *DS8000: Introducing Solid State Drives*, REDP-4522.

You might consider using RAID 10 for a System i workload, because it provides significant high availability and performance improvements compared to RAID 5 or RAID 6.

## 17.6.2 Cache

The DS8700 cache size is significant for a System i workload. We recommend using the Disk Magic utility to determine the required cache size based on the System i workload.

## 17.6.3 Number of System i Fibre Channel adapters

The most important factor to take into consideration when calculating the number of Fibre Channel adapters in the System i is the throughput capacity of the adapter.

Because this guideline is based only on System i adapters and the Access Density (AD) of System i workload, it does not change when using the DS8700.

**Note:** *Access Density* is the ratio that results from dividing the occupied disk space capacity by the average I/Os per second. These values can be obtained from the IBM i System, Component, and Resource Interval performance reports.

Table 17-2 shows the approximate capacity which can be supported with various IOA/IOP combinations.

Table 17-2 Capacity per I/O adapter

I/O adapter	I/O processor	Capacity per port
5760	2844	853 GB
5749		2800 GB
5774		2800 GB
5735		4600 GB

Note: Specified capacities are calculated from the number of IOPS an adapter can handle on 70% utilization, and assuming AD is 1.5 IOPS/GB.

## 17.6.4 Size and number of LUNs

As discussed in 17.2, “Logical volume sizes” on page 500, IBM i can only use fixed logical volume sizes. As a general rule, we recommend that you configure more logical volumes than actual DDMs. As a minimum, we recommend a 2:1 ratio. For example, with 146 GB DDMs, you need to use a maximum size of 70.56 GB LUNs. This is important for IOP-based adapters, because they do not support SCSI command tag queuing. Using more, smaller LUNs can reduce I/O queues and wait times by allowing IBM i to support more parallel I/Os. Unlike IOP-based adapters, IOP-less ones support SCSI command tag queuing. Therefore, you can have bigger LUNs defined on a single physical disk.

IOP-based adapters can support up to 32 LUNs, but we do not recommend using the maximum number for performance reasons. Therefore, define less than 32 LUNs per adapter. Table 17-2 can help you to determine the number of LUNs per adapter, because it shows the recommended capacity per adapter.

With IOP-less adapters, we can use up to 64 LUNs per port without any performance impact if the appropriate maximum capacity allocated to each port is as shown in Table 17-2.

For example, assume you require 2 TB capacity and are using 5749 I/O adapters. If you define 70 GB LUNs, you may assign 64 LUNs per port without any performance impact.

### 17.6.5 Recommended number of ranks

As a general guideline, consider 1,500 disk operations per second for an *average* RAID rank.

When considering the number of ranks, take into account the maximum disk operations per second per rank, as shown in Table 17-3. These are measured at 100% DDM utilization with no cache benefit and with an average I/O of 4 KB. Larger transfer sizes reduce the number of operations per second.

Based on these values, you can calculate how many host I/Os per second each rank can handle at the recommended utilization of 40% for IOP-based adapters or 60% for IOP-less adapters. We show workload read-write ratios of 70% read and 50% read in Table 17-3.

Table 17-3 Disk operations per second per RAID rank

RAID rank type	Disk IOPS	Host IOPS (70% read)		Host IOPS (50% read)	
		IOP-less	IOP-based	IOP-less	IOP-based
RAID 5 15K RPM (7+P)	1700	728	486	567	378
RAID 5 15K RPM (6+P+S)	1488	638	425	496	330
RAID 10 15K RPM (4+4)	1700	1041	694	927	678
RAID 10 15K RPM (3+3+2S)	1275	781	520	695	464
RAID 6 15K RPM (6+P+Q)	1700	560	374	408	272
RAID 6 15K RPM (5+P+Q+S)	1488	490	327	357	238

As you can see in Table 17-3, RAID 10 can support higher host I/O rates than RAID 5. However, you must balance this against the reduced effective capacity of a RAID 10 rank when compared to RAID 5. As expected, RAID 6 is also slightly less performant than RAID 5.

### 17.6.6 Sharing ranks between System i and other servers

As a general guideline, consider using separate Extent Pools in DS8700 for System i workload and other workloads. This isolates the I/O for each server.

However, you might consider sharing ranks when the other servers' workloads have a sustained low disk I/O rate compared to the System i I/O rate. Generally, System i has a relatively high I/O rate where that of other servers might be lower, often below one I/O per GB per second.

As an example, a Windows file server with a large data capacity can typically have a low I/O rate with fewer peaks and can be shared with System i ranks. However, SQL, DB, or other application servers might show higher rates with peaks, and we recommend using separate ranks for these servers.

The decision to mix platforms on a DS8700 array, rank, or Extent Pool is only based on your System i performance requirements.

### 17.6.7 Connecting using SAN switches

When connecting DS8700 systems to System i using switches, you should plan your configuration so that I/O traffic from multiple System i adapters can go through one port on a DS8700 and zone the switches accordingly. DS8700 host adapters can be shared between System i and other platforms.

Based on the available measurements and experiences, we recommend that you plan no more than four System i I/O adapters to one host port in the DS8700.

For a current list of switches supported under IBM i, refer to the System i Storage website at the following address:

[http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/eserver/iseries/storage/storage\\_hw.html](http://www-1.ibm.com/servers/eserver/iseries/storage/storage_hw.html)

## 17.7 Migration

For many System i clients, migrating to the DS8700 is best achieved using traditional Save/Restore techniques. However, there are some alternatives you might want to consider.

### 17.7.1 Metro Mirror and Global Copy

Depending on the existing configuration, it might be possible to use Metro Mirror or Global Copy to migrate from an ESS or any other DS8000 family model to a DS8700 (or indeed, any combination of external storage units that support Metro Mirror and Global Copy). For further discussion about Metro Mirror and Global Copy, refer to Chapter 6, “IBM System Storage DS8700 Copy Services overview” on page 113 or refer to *IBM System Storage DS8000: Copy Services in Open Environments*, SG24-6788.

Consider the example shown in Figure 17-29. Here, the System i has its internal Load Source Unit (LSU) and possibly some other internal drives. The ESS provides additional storage capacity. Using Metro Mirror or Global Copy, it is possible to create copies of the ESS logical volumes in the DS8700.

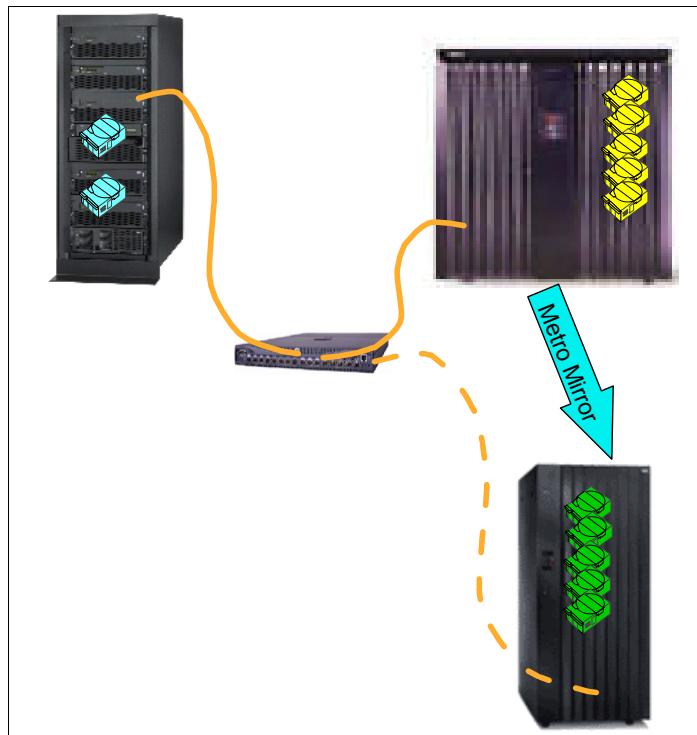


Figure 17-29 Using Metro Mirror to migrate from ESS to DS8700

When you are ready to migrate from the ESS to the DS8700, you should do a complete shutdown of the System i, unassign the ESS LUNs, and assign the DS8700 LUNs to the System i. After you IPL the System i, the new DS8700 LUNs are recognized by IBM i, even though they are different models and have different serial numbers.

**Note:** It is important to ensure that both the Metro Mirror or Global Copy source and target copies are not assigned to the System i at the same time, because this is an invalid configuration. Careful planning and implementation are required to ensure that this does not happen; otherwise, unpredictable results might occur.

You can also use the same setup if the ESS LUNs are in an IASP. Although the System i does not require a complete shutdown, varying off the IASP in the ESS, unassigning the ESS LUNs, assigning the DS8700 LUNs, and varying on the IASP have the same effect.

You must also take into account the licensing implications for Metro Mirror and Global Copy.

**Note:** This is a special case of using Metro Mirror or Global Copy and only works if the same System i is used, along with the LSU to attach to both the original ESS and the new DS8700. It is not possible to use this technique on a different System i.

### 17.7.2 IBM i data migration

It is also possible to use native IBM i functions to migrate data from existing disks to the DS8700, whether the existing disks are internal or external. When you assign the new DS8700 logical volumes to the System i, initially they are non-configured (see 17.4, “Adding volumes to the System i configuration” on page 502 for more details). If you add the new units and choose to spread data, IBM i automatically migrates data from the existing disks onto the new logical units.

You can then use the IBM i command STRASPBAL TYPE(\*ENDALC) to mark the units to remove from the configuration, as shown in Figure 17-30. This can reduce the downtime associated with removing a disk unit. This keeps new allocations away from the marked units.

```
Start ASP Balance (STRASPBAL)

Type choices, press Enter.

Balance type . . . . . > *ENDALC      *CAPACITY, *USAGE, *HSM...
Storage unit . . . . .               1-4094
+ for more values

Bottom
F3=Exit   F4=Prompt   F5=Refresh   F12=Cancel   F13=How to use this display
F24=More keys
```

Figure 17-30 Ending allocation for existing disk units

When you subsequently run the IBM i command STRASPBAL TYPE(\*MOVDTA), all data is moved from the marked units to other units in the same ASP, as shown in Figure 17-31. Obviously, you must have sufficient new capacity to allow the data to be migrated.

```
Start ASP Balance (STRASPBAL)

Type choices, press Enter.

Balance type . . . . . > *MOVDTA      *CAPACITY, *USAGE, *HSM...
Time limit . . . . .           1-9999 minutes, *NOMAX

Bottom
F3=Exit   F4=Prompt   F5=Refresh   F12=Cancel   F13=How to use this display
F24=More keys
```

Figure 17-31 Moving data from units marked \*ENDALC

You can specify a time limit that the function is to run for each ASP being balanced or the balance can be set to run to completion. If you need to end the balance function prior to this, use the End ASP Balance (ENDASPBAL) command. A message is sent to the system history (QHST) log when the balancing function is started for each ASP. A message is also sent to the QHST log when the balancing function completes or is ended.

If the balance function is run for a few hours and then stopped, it will continue from where it left off when the balance function restarts. This allows the balancing to be run during off-hours over several days.

In order to finally remove the old units from the configuration, you need to use Dedicated Service Tools (DST) and reIPL the system (or partition).

Using this method allows you to remove the existing storage units over a period of time. However, it requires that both the old and new units are attached to the system at the same time, so it might require additional IOPs and IOAs if migrating from an ESS to a DS8700.

It might be possible in your environment to reallocate logical volumes to other IOAs, but careful planning and implementation are required.

## 17.8 Boot from SAN

Traditionally, System i hosts have required the use of an internal disk as a boot drive or load source unit (LSU). The boot from SAN support has been available since i5/OS V5R3M5.

### 17.8.1 Boot from SAN and cloning

Boot from SAN support enables you to take advantage of some of the advanced features available in the DS8700 series and Copy Services functions. One of these functions is known as FlashCopy; this function allows you to perform a near instantaneous copy of the data held on a LUN or a group of LUNs. Therefore, when you have a system that only has external LUNs with no internal drives, you are able to create a clone of your system.

**Important:** When we refer to a *clone*, we are referring to a copy of a system that only uses external LUNs. Boot (or IPL) from SAN is therefore a prerequisite for this function.

When you use cloning:

- ▶ You need enough free capacity on your external storage unit to accommodate the clone. Additionally, you should remember that Copy Services functions are resource intensive for the external storage unit; running them during the normal business hours can impact performance.
- ▶ You should not attach a clone to your network until you have resolved any potential conflicts that the clone has with the parent system.

### 17.8.2 Why consider cloning

By using the cloning capability, you can create a complete copy of your entire system in minutes. You can then use this copy in any way you want, for example, you could potentially use it to minimize your backup windows, or protect yourself from a failure during an upgrade, maybe even use it as a fast way to provide yourself with a backup or test system. You can do all of these tasks using cloning with minimal impact to your production operations.



# Maintenance and upgrades

The subjects covered in this part include:

- ▶ Licensed machine code
- ▶ Monitoring with Simple Network Management Protocol
- ▶ Remote support
- ▶ Capacity upgrades and Capacity on Demand





# Licensed machine code

In this chapter, we discuss considerations related to the planning and installation of new licensed machine code (LMC) bundles on the IBM System Storage DS8700 series. We cover the following topics in this chapter:

- ▶ How new microcode is released
- ▶ Bundle installation
- ▶ DS8700 EFIxes
- ▶ Concurrent and non-concurrent updates
- ▶ Code updates
- ▶ Host adapter firmware updates
- ▶ Loading the code bundle
- ▶ Post-installation activities
- ▶ Summary

## 18.1 How new microcode is released

The various components of the DS8700 system use firmware that can be updated as new releases become available. These components include device adapters, host adapters, power supplies, and Fibre Channel interface cards. In addition, the microcode and internal operating system that run on the HMCs and each central processor complex (CEC) can be updated. As IBM continues to develop the DS8700, new functional features will also be released through new licensed machine code (LMC) levels.

When IBM releases new microcode for the DS8700, it is released in the form of a bundle. The term *bundle* is used because a new code release can include updates for various DS8700 components. These updates are tested together and then the various code packages are bundled together into one unified release. In general, when referring to what code level is being used on a DS8700, the term bundle should be used. Components within the bundle will each have their own revision levels.

For a DS8000 Cross Reference table of Code Bundles, go to the following address:

<http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=ssg1S1002949>

The Cross Reference Table shows the levels of code prior to Release 6, which is installed on the DS8700. It should be updated as new bundles are released. It is important that you always match your DS CLI version to the bundle installed on your DS8700.

Starting with the release of the DS8700, the naming convention of bundles is PR.MM.AA.E, where the letters refer to:

P	Product (7 = DS8700)
R	Release (5)
MM	Maintenance Level (xx)
AA	Service Pack (xx)
E	EFIX level (0 is base, and 1.n is the interim fix build above base level.)

## 18.2 Bundle installation

It is likely that a new bundle will include updates for the following components:

- ▶ Linux OS for the HMC
- ▶ AIX OS for the CECs
- ▶ Microcode for HMC and CECs
- ▶ Microcode/Firmware for Host Adapters

It is less likely that a bundle includes updates for the following components:

- ▶ Firmware for Power subsystem (PPS, RPC, and BBU)
- ▶ Firmware for Storage DDMs
- ▶ Firmware for Fibre Channel interface cards
- ▶ Firmware for Device Adapters
- ▶ Firmware for Hypervisor on CECs

The installation process involves several stages:

1. Update the HMC code. The new code version is supplied on CD or downloaded using FTP or SFTP (Secure File Transfer). This can potentially involve updates to the internal Linux version of the HMC, updates to the HMC licensed machine code, and updates to the firmware of the HMC hardware.

2. Load new DS8700 licensed machine code (LMC) onto the HMC and from there to the internal storage of each CEC.
3. Occasionally, new Primary Power Supply (PPS) and Rack Power Control (RPC) firmware is released. New firmware can be loaded into each RPC card and PPS directly from the HMC. Each RPC and PPS is quiesced, updated, and resumed one at a time until all of them have been updated. There are usually no service interruptions for power updates.
4. Occasionally, new firmware for the Hypervisor, service processor, system planar, and I/O enclosure planars is released. This firmware can be loaded into each device directly from the HMC. Activation of this firmware might require a shutdown and reboot of each CEC, one at a time. This would cause each CEC to fail over its logical subsystems to the alternate CEC. Certain updates do not require this step, or it might occur without processor reboots. See 4.3, “CEC failover and failback” on page 63 for more information.
5. Perform updates to the CEC operating system (currently AIX V6.1), plus updates to the internal LMC, performed one at a time. The updates cause each CEC to fail over its logical subsystems to the alternate CEC. This process also updates the firmware running in each device adapter owned by that CEC.
6. Perform updates to the host adapters. For DS8700 host adapters, the impact of these updates on each adapter is less than 2.5 seconds and should not affect connectivity. If an update were to take longer than this, the multipathing software on the host, or control-unit reconfigured initiation (CUIR), would direct I/O to a different host adapter. If a host is attached with only a single path, connectivity would be lost. See 4.4.2, “Host connections” on page 68 for more information about host attachments.
7. Occasionally, new DDM firmware is released. New firmware can be loaded concurrently or non-concurrently to the drives. The firmware update method depends on the drive type.

While the installation process described above might seem complex, it does not require a great deal of user intervention. The code installer normally just starts the distribution and activation process and then monitors its progress using the HMC.

**Important:** An upgrade of the DS8700 microcode might require that you upgrade the DS CLI on workstations. Check with your IBM representative on the description and contents of the release bundle.

## 18.3 DS8700 EFIXes

For the DS8700, customers have the option to add a small number of fixes by applying an EFIX update on top of a bundle. Applying EFIXes instead of complete bundles reduces the time required to apply the update. Depending on the code being updated, an EFIX may not require the CECs to be restarted.

The windows used to apply EFIXes are the same ones used to apply a full bundle. When this book was written, the following four components could be upgraded by an EFIX:

- ▶ Storage Facility Image (SFI) Microcode
- ▶ Device Adapter (DA) Firmware
- ▶ Host Adapter (HA) Microcode
- ▶ Storage Enclosure (SE) Firmware

EFIXes can be built from any service pack or existing EFIX. Applying an EFIX will change the last digit of the reported code bundle. A code bundle whose last digit is 0 represents a full release. A last digit of 1 or greater represents an EFIX bundle.

## 18.4 Concurrent and non-concurrent updates

The DS8700 allows for concurrent microcode updates. This means that code updates can be installed with all attached hosts up and running with no interruption to your business applications. You also have the ability to install microcode update bundles non-concurrently, with all attached hosts shut down. However, this should not be necessary. This method is usually only employed at DS8700 installation time.

## 18.5 Code updates

The microcode that runs on the HMC normally gets updated as part of a new code bundle. The HMC can hold up to six different versions of code. Each CEC can hold three different versions of code (the previous version, the active version, and the next version). Most organizations should plan for two code updates per year.

**Best Practice:** Many customers with multiple DS8700 systems follow the updating schedule detailed here where just the HMC is updated 1 to 2 days before the rest of the bundle is applied.

Prior to the update of the CEC operating system and microcode, a pre-verification test is run to ensure that no conditions exist that need to be corrected. The HMC code update will install the latest version of the pre-verification test. Then the newest test can be run and if problems are detected, there are one to two days before the scheduled code installation window to correct them. An example of this procedure is shown below:

<b>Thursday</b>	Copy or download the new code bundle to the HMCs. Update the HMC(s) to the new code bundle. Run the updated pre-verification test. Resolve any issues raised by the pre-verification test.
<b>Saturday</b>	Update the SFIs.

Note that the actual time required for the concurrent code load varies based on the bundle that you are currently running and the bundle to which you are updating. Always consult with your IBM service representative regarding proposed code load schedules.

## 18.6 Host adapter firmware updates

One of the final steps in the concurrent code load process is the update of the host adapters. Normally, every code bundle contains new host adapter code. For DS8700 Fibre Channel cards, regardless of whether they are used for open systems attachment or System z (FICON) attachment, the update process is concurrent to the attached hosts. The Fibre Channel cards use a technique known as *adapter fast-load*. This allows them to switch to the new firmware in less than two seconds. This fast update means that single path hosts, hosts that are fiber boot, and hosts that do not have multipathing software do not need to be shut down during the update. They can keep operating during the host adapter update, because the update is so fast. This also means that no SDD path management should be necessary.

### Remote Mirror and Copy path considerations

For Remote Mirror and Copy paths that use Fibre Channel ports, there are no special considerations. The ability to perform a fast-load means that no interruption occurs to the Remote Mirror operations.

## **Control Unit-Initiated Reconfiguration**

Control Unit-Initiated Reconfiguration (CUIR) prevents loss of access to volumes in System z environments due to incorrect or wrong path handling. This function automates channel path management in System z environments in support of selected DS8700 service actions.

Control Unit-Initiated Reconfiguration is available for the DS8700 when operated in the z/OS and z/VM environments. The CUIR function automates channel path vary on and vary off actions to minimize manual operator intervention during selected DS8700 service actions.

CUIR allows the DS8700 to request that all attached system images set all paths required for a particular service action to the offline state. System images with the appropriate level of software support respond to these requests by varying off the affected paths, and either notifying the DS8700 subsystem that the paths are offline, or that it cannot take the paths offline. CUIR reduces manual operator intervention and the possibility of human error during maintenance actions, at the same time reducing the time required for the maintenance window. This is particularly useful in environments where there are many systems attached to a DS8700.

## **18.7 Loading the code bundle**

When new code bundles are released, they are placed onto the Internet at the following address:

<ftp://ftp.software.ibm.com/storage/DS8000/updates/>

When it comes time to copy the new code bundle onto the DS8700, there are three ways to achieve this:

- ▶ Load the new code bundle onto the HMC using CDs.
- ▶ Download the new code bundle directly from IBM using FTP.
- ▶ Download the new code bundle directly from IBM using SFTP.

The ability to download the code bundle from IBM eliminates the need to order or burn CDs. However, access to the FTP site might require customer firewall changes. These policies are usually set at the time of the initial DS8700 installation.

If Secure File Transfer (SFTP) is chosen for downloading the new code bundle, you have to follow the guidelines for using SSL explained in 20.4.3, “Code download (inbound)” on page 561. Please reference that same section for an explanation of the SFTP protocol.

With the DS8700, it is also possible to completely disable any non-secure FTP users and executables on the HMC to comply with corporate security policies. Contact IBM Service to perform this extra security procedure.

## **18.8 Post-installation activities**

Once a new code bundle has been installed, you might need to perform the following tasks:

1. Upgrade the DS CLI of external workstations. For the majority of new release code bundles, there is a corresponding new release of DS CLI. Make sure you upgrade to the new version of DS CLI to take advantage of any improvements IBM has made.
2. Verify the connectivity from each DS CLI workstation to the DS8700.
3. Verify the connectivity from the SSPC to the DS8700.
4. Verify the connectivity from any stand-alone TPC Element Manager to the DS8700.

5. Verify the connectivity from the DS8700 to all TKLM Key Servers in use.

## 18.9 Summary

IBM might release changes to the DS8700 series Licensed Machine Code. IBM plans to make most DS8700 series Licensed Machine Code changes available for download by the DS8700 series from the IBM System Storage technical support website. Note that not all Licensed Machine Code changes might be available through the support website. If the machine does not function as warranted and your problem can be resolved through your application of downloadable Licensed Machine Code, you are responsible for downloading and installing these designated Licensed Machine Code changes as IBM specifies. IBM has responsibility for installing changes that IBM does not make available for you to download.

The DS8700 series includes many enhancements to make the Licensed Machine Code change process simpler, quicker, and more automated. If you prefer, you can request IBM to install downloadable Licensed Machine Code changes; however, you might be charged for that service.



# Monitoring with Simple Network Management Protocol

This chapter provides information about the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) notifications and messages for the IBM System Storage DS8000 series. This chapter covers the following topics:

- ▶ Simple Network Management Protocol overview
- ▶ SNMP notifications

## 19.1 Simple Network Management Protocol overview

SNMP has become a standard for monitoring an IT environment. With SNMP, a system can be monitored, and event management, based on SNMP traps, can be automated.

SNMP is an industry-standard set of functions for monitoring and managing TCP/IP-based networks. SNMP includes a protocol, a database specification, and a set of data objects. A set of data objects forms a Management Information Base (MIB).

SNMP provides a standard MIB that includes information such as IP addresses and the number of active TCP connections. The actual MIB definitions are encoded into the agents running on a system.

MIB-2 is the Internet standard MIB that defines over 100 TCP/IP specific objects, including configuration and statistical information, such as:

- ▶ Information about interfaces
- ▶ Address translation
- ▶ IP, Internet-control message protocol (ICMP), TCP, and User Datagram Protocol (UDP)

SNMP can be extended through the use of the SNMP Multiplexing protocol (SMUX protocol) to include enterprise-specific MIBs that contain information related to a specific environment or application. A management agent (a SMUX peer daemon) retrieves and maintains information about the objects defined in its MIB and passes this information on to a specialized network monitor or network management station (NMS).

The SNMP protocol defines two terms, agent and manager, instead of the terms client and server, which are used in many other TCP/IP protocols.

### 19.1.1 SNMP agent

An *SNMP agent* is a daemon process that provides access to the MIB objects on IP hosts on which the agent is running. The agent can receive SNMP get or SNMP set requests from SNMP managers and can send SNMP trap requests to SNMP managers.

Agents send traps to the SNMP manager to indicate that a particular condition exists on the agent system, such as the occurrence of an error. In addition, the SNMP manager generates traps when it detects status changes or other unusual conditions while polling network objects.

### 19.1.2 SNMP manager

An *SNMP manager* can be implemented in two ways. An SNMP manager can be implemented as a simple command tool that can collect information from SNMP agents. An SNMP manager also can be composed of multiple daemon processes and database applications. This type of complex SNMP manager provides you with monitoring functions using SNMP. It typically has a graphical user interface for operators. The SNMP manager gathers information from SNMP agents and accepts trap requests sent by SNMP agents.

### 19.1.3 SNMP trap

A *trap* is a message sent from an SNMP agent to an SNMP manager without a specific request from the SNMP manager.

SNMP defines six generic types of traps and allows definition of enterprise-specific traps. The trap structure conveys the following information to the SNMP manager:

- ▶ Agent's object that was affected
- ▶ IP address of the agent that sent the trap
- ▶ Event description (either a generic trap or enterprise-specific trap, including trap number)
- ▶ Time stamp
- ▶ Optional enterprise-specific trap identification
- ▶ List of variables describing the trap

#### 19.1.4 SNMP communication

The SNMP manager sends SNMP get, get-next, or set requests to SNMP agents, which listen on UDP port 161, and the agents send back a reply to the manager. The SNMP agent can be implemented on any kind of IP host, such as UNIX workstations, routers, and network appliances.

You can gather various information about the specific IP hosts by sending the SNMP get and get-next requests, and can update the configuration of IP hosts by sending the SNMP set request.

The SNMP agent can send SNMP trap requests to SNMP managers, which listen on UDP port 162. The SNMP trap1 requests sent from SNMP agents can be used to send warning, alert, or error notification messages to SNMP managers.

Note that you can configure an SNMP agent to send SNMP trap requests to multiple SNMP managers. Figure 19-1 illustrates the characteristics of SNMP architecture and communication.

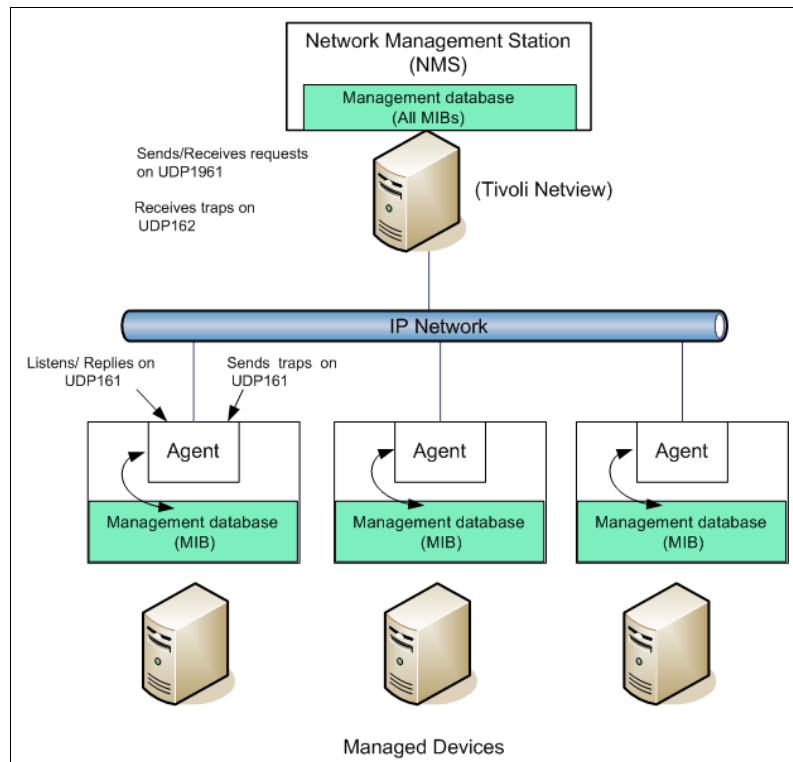


Figure 19-1 SNMP architecture and communication

### 19.1.5 Generic SNMP security

The SNMP protocol uses the community name for authorization. Most SNMP implementations use the default community name *public* for a read-only community and *private* for a read-write community. In most cases, a community name is sent in a plain-text format between the SNMP agent and the manager. Some SNMP implementations have additional security features, such as the restriction of the accessible IP addresses.

Therefore, you should be careful about the SNMP security. At the very least, do not allow access to hosts that are running the SNMP agent from networks or IP hosts that do not necessarily require access.

You might want to physically secure the network to which you send SNMP packets by using a firewall, because community strings are included as plain text in SNMP packets.

### 19.1.6 Message Information Base

The objects, which you can get or set by sending SNMP get or set requests, are defined as a set of databases called the *Message Information Base (MIB)*. The structure of MIB is defined as an Internet standard in RFC 1155; the MIB forms a tree structure.

Most hardware and software vendors provide you with extended MIB objects to support their own requirements. The SNMP standards allow this extension by using the private sub-tree, called *enterprise specific MIB*. Because each vendor has a unique MIB sub-tree under the private sub-tree, there is no conflict among vendors' original MIB extensions.

### 19.1.7 SNMP trap request

An SNMP agent can send SNMP trap requests to SNMP managers to inform them about the change of values or status on the IP host where the agent is running. There are seven predefined types of SNMP trap requests, as shown in Table 19-1.

Table 19-1 SNMP trap request types

Trap type	Value	Description
coldStart	0	Restart after a crash.
warmStart	1	Planned restart.
linkDown	2	Communication link is down.
linkUp	3	Communication link is up.
authenticationFailure	4	Invalid SNMP community string was used.
egpNeighborLoss	5	EGP neighbor is down.
enterpriseSpecific	6	Vendor-specific event happened.

A trap message contains pairs of an OID and a value shown in Table 19-1 to notify the cause of the trap message. You can also use type 6, the *enterpriseSpecific* trap type, when you have to send messages that do not fit other predefined trap types, for example, DISK I/O error and application down. You can also set an integer value field called *Specific Trap* on your trap message.

## 19.1.8 DS8000 SNMP configuration

SNMP for the DS8000 is designed in such a way that the DS8000 only sends traps in case of a notification. The traps can be sent to a defined IP address.

The DS8000 does not have an SNMP agent installed that can respond to SNMP polling. The default Community Name is set to *public*.

The management server that is configured to receive the SNMP traps receives all the generic trap 6 and specific trap 3 messages, which are sent in parallel with the Call Home to IBM.

Before configuring SNMP for the DS8000, you are required to get the destination address for the SNMP trap and also the port information on which the *Trap Daemon* listens.

**Tip:** The standard port for SNMP traps is port 162.

## 19.2 SNMP notifications

The HMC of the DS8000 sends an SNMPv1 trap in two cases:

- ▶ A serviceable event was reported to IBM using Call Home.
- ▶ An event occurred in the Copy Services configuration or processing.

A serviceable event is posted as a generic trap 6 specific trap 3 message. The specific trap 3 is the only event that is sent for serviceable events. For reporting Copy Services events, generic trap 6 and specific traps 100, 101, 102, 200, 202, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215, 216, or 217 are sent.

### 19.2.1 Serviceable event using specific trap 3

In Example 19-1, we see the contents of generic trap 6 specific trap 3. The trap holds the information about the serial number of the DS8000, the event number that is associated with the manageable events from the HMC, the reporting Storage Facility Image (SFI), the system reference code (SRC), and the location code of the part that is logging the event.

The SNMP trap is sent in parallel with a Call Home for service to IBM.

---

*Example 19-1 SNMP special trap 3 of an DS8000*

---

```
Nov 14, 2005 5:10:54 PM CET
Manufacturer=IBM
ReportingMTMS=2107-922*7503460
ProbNm=345
LparName=null
FailingEnclosureMTMS=2107-922*7503460
SRC=10001510
EventText=2107 (DS 8000) Problem
Fru1Loc=U1300.001.1300885
Fru2Loc=U1300.001.1300885U1300.001.1300885-P1
```

---

For open events in the event log, a trap is sent every eight hours until the event is closed. Use the following link the discover explanations about all System Reference Codes (SRC):

<http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/dsichelp/ds8000sv/index.jsp>

In this page, select **Messages and codes** → **List of system reference codes and firmware codes**.

## 19.2.2 Copy Services event traps

For state changes in a remote Copy Services environment, there are 13 traps implemented. The traps 1xx are sent for a state change of a physical link connection. The 2xx traps are sent for state changes in the logical Copy Services setup. For all of these events, no Call Home is generated and IBM is not notified.

This chapter describes only the messages and the circumstances when traps are sent by the DS8000. For detailed information about these functions and terms, refer to *DS8000 Copy Services for IBM System z*, SG24-6787 and *IBM System Storage DS8000: Copy Services in Open Environments*, SG24-6788.

### Physical connection events

Within the trap 1xx range, a state change of the physical links is reported. The trap is sent if the physical remote copy link is interrupted. The Link trap is sent from the primary system. The *PLink* and *SLink* columns are only used by the 2105 ESS disk unit.

If one or several links (but not all links) are interrupted, a trap 100, as shown in Example 19-2, is posted and indicates that the redundancy is degraded. The *RC* column in the trap represents the return code for the interruption of the link; return codes are listed in Table 19-2 on page 543.

*Example 19-2 Trap 100: Remote Mirror and Copy links degraded*

---

```
PPRC Links Degraded
UNIT: Mnf Type-Mod SerialNm LS
PRI: IBM 2107-922 75-20781 12
SEC: IBM 2107-9A2 75-ABTV1 24
Path: Type PP PLink SP SLink RC
1: FIBRE 0143 XXXXXX 0010 XXXXXX 15
2: FIBRE 0213 XXXXXX 0140 XXXXXX OK
```

---

If all links are interrupted, a trap 101, as shown in Example 19-3, is posted. This event indicates that no communication between the primary and the secondary system is possible.

*Example 19-3 Trap 101: Remote Mirror and Copy links are inoperable*

---

```
PPRC Links Down
UNIT: Mnf Type-Mod SerialNm LS
PRI: IBM 2107-922 75-20781 10
SEC: IBM 2107-9A2 75-ABTV1 20
Path: Type PP PLink SP SLink RC
1: FIBRE 0143 XXXXXX 0010 XXXXXX 17
2: FIBRE 0213 XXXXXX 0140 XXXXXX 17
```

---

Once the DS8000 can communicate again using any of the links, trap 102, as shown in Example 19-4, is sent after one or more of the interrupted links are available again.

*Example 19-4 Trap 102: Remote Mirror and Copy links are operational*

---

```
PPRC Links Up
UNIT: Mnf Type-Mod SerialNm LS
PRI: IBM 2107-9A2 75-ABTV1 21
```

```

SEC: IBM 2107-000 75-20781 11
Path: Type PP PLink SP SLink RC
1: FIBRE 0010 XXXXXX 0143 XXXXXX OK
2: FIBRE 0140 XXXXXX 0213 XXXXXX OK

```

---

Table 19-2 shows the Remote Mirror and Copy return codes.

*Table 19-2 Remote Mirror and Copy return codes*

Return code	Description
02	Initialization failed. ESCON link reject threshold exceeded when attempting to send ELP or RID frames.
03	Timeout. No reason available.
04	There are no resources available in the primary storage unit for establishing logical paths because the maximum number of logical paths have already been established.
05	There are no resources available in the secondary storage unit for establishing logical paths because the maximum number of logical paths have already been established.
06	There is a secondary storage unit sequence number, or logical subsystem number, mismatch.
07	There is a secondary LSS subsystem identifier (SSID) mismatch, or failure of the I/O that collects the secondary information for validation.
08	The ESCON link is offline. This is caused by the lack of light detection coming from a host, peer, or switch.
09	The establish failed. It is retried until the command succeeds or a remove paths command is run for the path. <b>Note:</b> The attempt-to-establish state persists until the establish path operation succeeds or the remove remote mirror and copy paths command is run for the path.
0A	The primary storage unit port or link cannot be converted to channel mode if a logical path is already established on the port or link. The establish paths operation is not retried within the storage unit.
10	Configuration error. The source of the error is one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ The specification of the SA ID does not match the installed ESCON adapter cards in the primary controller.</li> <li>▶ For ESCON paths, the secondary storage unit destination address is zero and an ESCON Director (switch) was found in the path.</li> <li>▶ For ESCON paths, the secondary storage unit destination address is not zero and an ESCON director does not exist in the path. The path is a direct connection.</li> </ul>
14	The Fibre Channel path link is down.
15	The maximum number of Fibre Channel path retry operations has been exceeded.

Return code	Description
16	<p>The Fibre Channel path secondary adapter is not Remote Mirror and Copy capable. This could be caused by one of the following conditions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ The secondary adapter is not configured properly or does not have the current firmware installed.</li> <li>▶ The secondary adapter is already a target of 32 different logical subsystems (LSSs).</li> </ul>
17	The secondary adapter Fibre Channel path is not available.
18	The maximum number of Fibre Channel path primary login attempts has been exceeded.
19	The maximum number of Fibre Channel path secondary login attempts has been exceeded.
1A	The primary Fibre Channel adapter is not configured properly or does not have the correct firmware level installed.
1B	The Fibre Channel path was established but degraded due to a high failure rate.
1C	The Fibre Channel path was removed due to a high failure rate.

### Remote Mirror and Copy events

If you have configured Consistency Groups and a volume within this *Consistency Group* is suspended due to a write error to the secondary device, trap 200 (Example 19-5) is sent. One trap per LSS, which is configured with the Consistency Group option, is sent. This trap can be handled by automation software, such as *TPC for Replication*, to freeze this Consistency Group. The *SR* column in the trap represents the suspension reason code, which explains the cause of the error that suspended the remote mirror and copy group. Suspension reason codes are listed in Table 19-3 on page 547.

---

*Example 19-5 Trap 200: LSS Pair Consistency Group Remote Mirror and Copy pair error*

---

LSS-Pair Consistency Group PPRC-Pair Error  
 UNIT: Mnf Type-Mod SerialNm LS LD SR  
 PRI: IBM 2107-922 75-03461 56 84 08  
 SEC: IBM 2107-9A2 75-ABTV1 54 84

---

Trap 202, as shown in Example 19-6, is sent if a Remote Copy Pair goes into a suspend state. The trap contains the serial number (*SerialNm*) of the primary and secondary machine, the logical subsystem or LSS (*LS*), and the logical device (*LD*). To avoid SNMP trap flooding, the number of SNMP traps for the LSS is throttled. The complete suspended pair information is represented in the summary. The last row of the trap represents the suspend state for all pairs in the reporting LSS. The suspended pair information contains a hexadecimal string of a length of 64 characters. By converting this hex string into binary, each bit represents a single device. If the bit is 1, then the device is suspended; otherwise, the device is still in full duplex mode.

---

*Example 19-6 Trap 202: Primary Remote Mirror and Copy devices on the LSS were suspended because of an error*

---

Primary PPRC Devices on LSS Suspended Due to Error  
 UNIT: Mnf Type-Mod SerialNm LS LD SR

Trap 210, as shown in Example 19-7, is sent when a Consistency Group in a Global Mirror environment was successfully formed.

*Example 19-7 Trap210: Global Mirror initial Consistency Group successfully formed*

2005/11/14 15:30:55 CET  
Asynchronous PPRC Initial Consistency Group Successfully Formed  
UNIT: Mnf Type-Mod SerialNm  
IBM 2107-922 75-20781  
Session ID: 4002

Trap 211, as shown in Example 19-8, is sent if the Global Mirror setup got into an severe error state, where no attempts are made to form a Consistency Group.

*Example 19-8 Trap 211: Global Mirror Session is in a fatal state*

Asynchronous PPRC Session is in a Fatal State  
UNIT: Mnf Type-Mod SerialNm  
IBM 2107-922 75-20781  
Session ID: 4002

Trap 212, shown in Example 19-9, is sent when a Consistency Group cannot be created in a Global Mirror relationship. Some of the reasons might be:

- ▶ Volumes have been taken out of a copy session.
  - ▶ The Remote Copy link bandwidth might not be sufficient.
  - ▶ The FC link between the primary and secondary system is not available.

**Example 19-9 Trap 212: Global Mirror Consistency Group failure - Retry will be attempted**

Asynchronous PPRC Consistency Group Failure - Retry will be attempted  
UNIT: Mnf Type-Mod SerialNm  
IBM 2107-922 75-20781  
Session ID: 4002

Trap 213, shown in Example 19-10, is sent when a Consistency Group in a Global Mirror environment can be formed after a previous Consistency Group formation failure.

### *Example 19-10 Trap 213: Global Mirror Consistency Group successful recovery*

Asynchronous PPRC Consistency Group Successful Recovery  
UNIT: Mnf Type-Mod SerialNm  
          IBM 2107-9A2 75-ABTV1  
Session ID: 4002

Trap 214, shown in Example 19-11, is sent if a Global Mirror Session is terminated using the DS CLI command **rmgmir** or the corresponding GUI function.

*Example 19-11 Trap 214: Global Mirror Master terminated*

---

2005/11/14 15:30:14 CET  
Asynchronous PPRC Master Terminated  
UNIT: Mnf Type-Mod SerialNm  
IBM 2107-922 75-20781  
Session ID: 4002

---

Trap 215, shown in Example 19-12, is sent if, in the Global Mirror Environment, the master detects a failure to complete the FlashCopy commit. The trap is sent after a number of commit retries have failed.

*Example 19-12 Trap 215: Global Mirror FlashCopy at Remote Site unsuccessful*

---

Asynchronous PPRC FlashCopy at Remote Site Unsuccessful  
A UNIT: Mnf Type-Mod SerialNm  
IBM 2107-9A2 75-ABTV1  
Session ID: 4002

---

Trap 216, shown in Example 19-13, is sent if a Global Mirror *Master* cannot terminate the Global Copy relationship at one of his *subordinates*. This might occur if the master is terminated with **rmgmir** but the master cannot terminate the copy relationship on the subordinate. You might need to run a **rmgmir** against the subordinate to prevent any interference with other Global Mirror sessions.

*Example 19-13 Trap 216: Global Mirror subordinate termination unsuccessful*

---

Asynchronous PPRC Slave Termination Unsuccessful  
UNIT: Mnf Type-Mod SerialNm  
Master: IBM 2107-922 75-20781  
Slave: IBM 2107-921 75-03641  
Session ID: 4002

---

Trap 217, shown in Example 19-14, is sent if a Global Mirror environment was suspended by the DS CLI command **pausegmir** or the corresponding GUI function.

*Example 19-14 Trap 217: Global Mirror paused*

---

Asynchronous PPRC Paused  
UNIT: Mnf Type-Mod SerialNm  
IBM 2107-9A2 75-ABTV1  
Session ID: 4002

---

Trap 218, shown in Example 19-15, is sent if a Global Mirror has exceeded the allowed threshold for failed consistency group formation attempts.

*Example 19-15 Trap 218: Global Mirror number of consistency group failures exceed threshold*

---

Global Mirror number of consistency group failures exceed threshold  
UNIT: Mnf Type-Mod SerialNm  
IBM 2107-9A2 75-ABTV1  
Session ID: 4002

---

Trap 219, shown in Example 19-16, is sent if a Global Mirror has successfully formed a consistency group after one or more formation attempts had previously failed.

*Example 19-16 Trap 219: Global Mirror first successful consistency group after prior failures*

---

Global Mirror first successful consistency group after prior failures  
UNIT: Mnf Type-Mod SerialNm  
IBM 2107-9A2 75-ABTV1  
Session ID: 4002

---

Trap 220, shown in Example 19-17, is sent if a Global Mirror has exceeded the allowed threshold of failed FlashCopy commit attempts.

*Example 19-17 Trap 220: Global Mirror number of FlashCopy commit failures exceed threshold*

---

Global Mirror number of FlashCopy commit failures exceed threshold  
UNIT: Mnf Type-Mod SerialNm  
IBM 2107-9A2 75-ABTV1  
Session ID: 4002

---

Trap 221, shown in Example 19-18, is sent when the repository has reached the user-defined warning watermark or when physical space is completely exhausted.

*Example 19-18 Trap 221: Space Efficient repository or overprovisioned volume has reached a warning watermark*

---

Space Efficient Repository or Over-provisioned Volume has reached a warning watermark  
UNIT: Mnf Type-Mod SerialNm  
IBM 2107-9A2 75-ABTV1  
Session ID: 4002

---

Table 19-3 shows the Copy Services suspension reason codes.

*Table 19-3 Copy Services suspension reason codes*

Suspension reason code (SRC)	Description
03	The host system sent a command to the primary volume of a Remote Mirror and Copy volume pair to suspend copy operations. The host system might have specified either an immediate suspension or a suspension after the copy completed and the volume pair reached a full duplex state.
04	The host system sent a command to suspend the copy operations on the secondary volume. During the suspension, the primary volume of the volume pair can still accept updates but updates are not copied to the secondary volume. The out-of-sync tracks that are created between the volume pair are recorded in the change recording feature of the primary volume.

Suspension reason code (SRC)	Description
05	Copy operations between the Remote Mirror and Copy volume pair were suspended by a primary storage unit secondary device status command. This system resource code can only be returned by the secondary volume.
06	Copy operations between the Remote Mirror and Copy volume pair were suspended because of internal conditions in the storage unit. This system resource code can be returned by the control unit of either the primary volume or the secondary volume.
07	Copy operations between the remote mirror and copy volume pair were suspended when the secondary storage unit notified the primary storage unit of a state change transition to simplex state. The specified volume pair between the storage units is no longer in a copy relationship.
08	Copy operations were suspended because the secondary volume became suspended as a result of internal conditions or errors. This system resource code can only be returned by the primary storage unit.
09	The Remote Mirror and Copy volume pair was suspended when the primary or secondary storage unit was rebooted or when the power was restored. The paths to the secondary storage unit might not be disabled if the primary storage unit was turned off. If the secondary storage unit was turned off, the paths between the storage units are restored automatically, if possible. After the paths have been restored, issue the <code>mkpprc</code> command to resynchronize the specified volume pairs. Depending on the state of the volume pairs, you might have to issue the <code>rmpprc</code> command to delete the volume pairs and reissue a <code>mkpprc</code> command to reestablish the volume pairs.
0A	The Remote Mirror and Copy pair was suspended because the host issued a command to freeze the Remote Mirror and Copy group. This system resource code can only be returned if a primary volume was queried.

### Thin Provisioning event trap

A new event trap (event trap 223) was introduced with the Thin Provisioning feature (available with LMC 6.5.1.xx). The trap is sent out when certain Extent Pool capacity thresholds are reached, causing a change in the extent status attribute, such as:

- ▶ The extent status is not zero (the available space is already below the threshold) when the first ESE volume is configured.
- ▶ The extent status changes state if ESE volumes are configured in the Extent Pool.

Example 19-19 shows generated event trap 223.

*Example 19-19 Trap 223: Extent Pool status*

---

```
2009/08/01 17:05:29 PDT Extent Pool Capacity Threshold Reached
UNIT: Mnf Type-Mod SerialNm
      IBM 2107-922 75-03460
Extent Pool ID: P1
Limit: 95%
Threshold: 95%
Status: 0
```

---

The extent status attribute is set to a value based on the comparison between the extent threshold and the percentage of remaining available real capacity in the Extent Pool. The extent status value is set as shown in Table 19-4.

*Table 19-4 Extent status attribute value*

Extent status	Description	Condition
10	%Available Real Cap. = 0	Full - Extent Pool full
1	Ext. Threshold >= %Avail. Real Cap. > 0	Exceeded - threshold exceeded
0	%Avail. Real Cap. > Ext. Threshold	Below - below threshold

SNMP traps and their destination (SNMP manager) can be set using the DS CLI. Example 19-20 shows an example.

*Example 19-20 Setting an SNMP trap using the DS CLI*

---

```
dscli>chsp -snmp on snmpaddr 9.155.87.211,9.155.66.14,9.145.243.185 -desc "ATS
DS8000 S/N 75-20780" -name ATS_Mainz_20780
Date/Time: August 13, 2009 12:51:07 PDT IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.30.244 DS:
IBM.2107-7520781
Storage-complex IBM.2107-7520781 successfully modified.
dscli> showsp
Date/Time: August 13, 2009 12:51:57 PDT IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.30.244 DS: -
Name ATS_Mainz_20780
desc ATS DS8000 S/N 75-20780
acct -
SNMP Enabled
SNMPAdd 9.155.87.211,9.155.66.14,9.145.243.185
emailnotify Disabled
emailaddr -
emailrelay Disabled
emailrelayaddr -
emailrelayhost -
numkssupported 4
```

---

## 19.3 SNMP configuration

The SNMP for the DS8000 is designed to send traps as notifications. The DS8000 does not have an SNMP agent installed that can respond to SNMP polling. Also, the SNMP community name for Copy Service related traps is fixed and set to public.

## **SNMP preparation on the HMC**

During the planning for the installation (see 9.3.4, “Monitoring with the HMC” on page 219), the IP addresses of the management system are provided for the IBM service personnel. This information must be applied by the IBM service personnel during the installation. Also, the IBM service personnel can configure the HMC to either send a notification for every serviceable event, or send a notification for only those events that Call Home to IBM.

The network management server that is configured on the HMC receives all the generic trap 6 specific trap 3 messages, which are sent in parallel with any events that Call Home to IBM.

## **SNMP preparation with the DS CLI**

Perform the configuration for receiving the Copy Services-related traps using the DS CLI. Example 19-21 shows how SNMP is enabled by using the **chsp** command.

*Example 19-21 Configuring the SNMP using dscli*

---

```
dscli> chsp -snmp on -snmpaddr 10.10.10.11,10.10.10.12
Date/Time: November 16, 2005 10:14:50 AM CET IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204
CMUC00040I chsp: Storage complex IbmStoragePlex_2 successfully modified.

dscli> showsp
Date/Time: November 16, 2005 10:15:04 AM CET IBM DSCLI Version: 5.1.0.204
Name           IbmStoragePlex_2
desc          ATS #1
acct          -
SNMP          Enabled
SNMPAddrs    10.10.10.11,10.10.10.12
emailnotify   Disabled
emailaddr     -
emailrelay    Disabled
emailrelayaddr -
emailrelayhost -
```

---

## **SNMP preparation for the management software**

For the DS8700, you can use the ibm2100.mib file, which is delivered on the DS CLI CD. Alternatively, you can download the latest version of the DS CLI CD image from the following address:

[ftp://ftp.software.ibm.com/storage/ds8000/updates/DS8K\\_Customer\\_Download\\_Files/CLI](ftp://ftp.software.ibm.com/storage/ds8000/updates/DS8K_Customer_Download_Files/CLI)



# Remote support

In this chapter, we discuss the outbound (Call Home and Support Data offload) and inbound (code download and remote support) communications for the IBM System Storage DS8700. This chapter covers the following topics:

- ▶ Introduction to remote support
- ▶ IBM policies for remote support
- ▶ Remote connection types
- ▶ DS8700 support tasks
- ▶ Scenarios
- ▶ Audit logging

## 20.1 Introduction to remote support

Remote support is a complex topic that requires close scrutiny and education for all parties involved. IBM is committed to servicing the DS8700, whether it be warranty work, planned code upgrades, or management of a component failure, in a secure and professional manner. Dispatching service personnel to come to your site and perform maintenance on the system is still a part of that commitment. But as much as possible, IBM wants to minimize downtime and maximize efficiency by performing many support tasks remotely.

Of course, this plan of providing support remotely must be balanced with the customer's expectations for security. Maintaining the highest levels of security in a data connection is a primary goal for IBM. This goal can only be achieved by careful planning with a customer and a thorough review of all the options available.

### 20.1.1 Suggested reading

The following publications may be of assistance in understanding IBM's remote support offerings:

- ▶ The *IBM System Storage DS8000 Introduction and Planning Guide*, GC35-0515 contains additional information about physical planning. You can download it at the following address:  
<http://www.ibm.com/systems/storage/disk/ds8000/index.html>
- ▶ A *Comprehensive Guide to Virtual Private Networks, Volume I: IBM Firewall, Server and Client Solutions*, SG24-5201. You can download it at the following address:  
<http://www.redbooks.ibm.com/abstracts/sg245201.html?Open>
- ▶ The Security Planning website is available at the following address:  
[http://publib16.boulder.ibm.com/doc\\_link/en\\_US/a\\_doc\\_lib/aixbman/security/ipsec\\_planning.htm](http://publib16.boulder.ibm.com/doc_link/en_US/a_doc_lib/aixbman/security/ipsec_planning.htm)
- ▶ *VPNs Illustrated: Tunnels, VPNs, and IPSec*, by Jon C. Snader
- ▶ *VPN Implementation*, S1002693, can be downloaded at the following address:  
<http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?rs=1114&uid=ssg1S1002693>

### 20.1.2 Organization of this chapter

A list of the relevant terminology for remote support is first presented. The remainder of this chapter is organized as follows:

- ▶ Connections
  - We review the different types of connections that can be made from the HMC to the world outside of the DS8700.
- ▶ Tasks
  - We review the various support tasks that need to be run on those connections.
- ▶ Scenarios
  - We illustrate a scenario about how each task is performed over the different types of remote connections.

### **20.1.3 Terminology and definitions**

Listed here are brief explanations of some of the terms to be used when discussing remote support. See “Abbreviations and acronyms” on page 589 for a full list of terms and acronyms used in this IBM Redbooks publication. Having an understanding of these terms will contribute to your discussions on remote support and security concerns. A generic definition will be presented here and then more specific information about how IBM implements the idea is given further on in this chapter.

#### **IP network**

There are many protocols running on Local Area Networks (LANs) around the world. Most companies use the Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) standard for their connectivity between workstations and servers. IP is also the networking protocol of the global Internet. Web browsing and email are two of the most common applications that run on top of an IP network. IP is the protocol used by the DS8700 HMC to communicate with external systems, such as the SSPC or DS CLI workstations. There are two varieties of IP; refer to 8.3.2, “System Storage Productivity Center and network access” on page 195 for a discussion about the IPv4 and IPv6 networks.

#### **SSH**

Secure Shell is a protocol that establishes a secure communications channel between two computer systems. The term SSH is also used to describe a secure ASCII terminal session between two computers. SSH can be enabled on a system when regular Telnet and FTP are disabled, making it possible to only communicate with the computer in a secure manner.

#### **FTP**

File Transfer Protocol is a method of moving binary and text files from one computer system to another over an IP connection. It is not inherently secure as it has no provisions for encryption and only simple user and password authentication. FTP is considered appropriate for data that is already public, or if the entirety of the connection is within the physical boundaries of a private network.

#### **SFTP**

SSH File Transfer Protocol is unrelated to FTP. It is another file transfer method that is implemented inside a SSH connection. SFTP is generally considered to be secure enough for mission critical data and for moving sensitive data across the global Internet. FTP ports (usually ports 20/21) do not have to be open through a firewall for SFTP to work.

#### **SSL**

Secure Sockets Layer refers to methods of securing otherwise unsecure protocols such as HTTP (websites), FTP (files), or SMTP (email). Carrying HTTP over SSL is often referred to as HTTPS. An SSL connection over the global Internet is considered reasonably secure.

#### **VPN**

A Virtual Private Network is a private “tunnel” through a public network. Most commonly, it refers to using specialized software and hardware to create a secure connection over the Internet. The two systems, although physically separate, behave as though they are on the same private network. A VPN allows a remote worker or an entire remote office to remain part of a company’s internal network. VPNs provide security by encrypting traffic, authenticating sessions and users, and verifying data integrity.

## **Business-to-Business VPN**

Business-to-business is a term for specialized VPN services for secure connections between IBM and its customers. This offering is also known as *Client Controlled VPN* and *Site-to-Site VPN*. This offering is in direct response to customers' concerns about being in control of VPN sessions with their vendors. It includes the use of a hardware VPN appliance inside the customer's network, presumably one that can interact with many vendors' VPN clients.

## **IPSec**

Internet Protocol Security is a suite of protocols used to provide a secure transaction between two systems that use the TCP/IP network protocol. IPSec focuses on authentication and encryption, two of the main ingredients of a secure connection. Most VPNs used on the Internet use IPSec mechanisms to establish the connection.

## **Firewall**

A firewall is a device that controls whether data is allowed to travel onto a network segment. Firewalls are deployed at the boundaries of networks. They are managed by policies which declare what traffic can pass based on the sender's address, the destination address, and the type of traffic. Firewalls are an essential part of network security and their configuration must be taken into consideration when planning remote support activities.

## **Bandwidth**

Bandwidth refers to the characteristics of a connection and how they relate to moving data. Bandwidth is affected by the physical connection, the logical protocols used, physical distance, and the type of data being moved. In general, higher bandwidth means faster movement of larger data sets.

## **20.2 IBM policies for remote support**

The following guidelines are at the core of IBM's remote support strategies for the DS8700:

- ▶ When the DS8700 needs to transmit service data to IBM, no host data of any kind is included. Only logs and process dumps are gathered for troubleshooting. The I/O from host adapters and the contents of NVS cache memory are never transmitted.
- ▶ When a VPN session with the DS8700 is needed, the HMC will always initiate such connections and only to predefined IBM servers/ports. There is never any active process that is "listening" for incoming sessions on the HMC.
- ▶ IBM maintains multiple-level internal authorizations for any privileged access to the DS8700 components. Only approved IBM service personnel can gain access to the tools that provide the one-time security codes for HMC command-line access.
- ▶ While the HMC is based on a Linux operating system, IBM has disabled or removed all unnecessary services, processes, and IDs. This includes standard Internet services such as telnet, ftp, 'r' commands, and rcp programs.

## 20.3 Remote connection types

The DS8700 HMC has a connection point for the customer's network via a standard Ethernet (10/100/1000 Mb) cable. The HMC also has a connection point for a phone line via the modem port. These two physical connections offer four possibilities for sending and receiving data between the DS8700 and IBM. The connection types are:

- ▶ Asynchronous modem connection
- ▶ IP network connection
- ▶ IP network connection with VPN
- ▶ IP network connection with Business-to-Business VPN

In the most secure environments, both of these physical connections (Ethernet and modem) remain unplugged. The DS8700 serves up storage for its connected hosts, but has no other communication with the outside world. Of course, this means that all configuration tasks have to be done while standing at the HMC (there is no usage of the SSPC or DS CLI). This level of security, known as an air gap, also means that there is no way for the DS8700 to alert anyone that it has encountered a problem and there is no way to correct such a problem other than to be physically present at the system.

So rather than leaving the modem and Ethernet disconnected, customers will provide these connections and then apply policies on when they are to be used and what type of data they may carry. Those policies are enforced by the settings on the HMC and the configuration of customer network devices, such as routers and firewalls. The next four sections discuss the capabilities of each type of connection.

### 20.3.1 Modem

A modem creates a low-speed asynchronous connection using a telephone line plugged into the HMC modem port. This type of connection favors transferring small amounts of data. It is relatively secure because the data is not traveling across the Internet. However, this type of connection is not terribly useful due to bandwidth limitations. Average connection speed in the US mainland is 28-36 Kbps, and can be less in other parts of the world.

DS8700 HMC modems can be configured to call IBM and send small status messages. Authorized support personnel can call the HMC and get privileged access to the command line of the operating system. Typical PEpackage transmission over a modem line could take 15 to 20 hours depending on the quality of the connection. Code downloads over a modem line are not possible.

The customer has control over whether or not the modem will answer an incoming call. These options are changed from the WebUI on the HMC by selecting **Service Management** → **Manage Inbound Connectivity**, as shown in Figure 20-1.

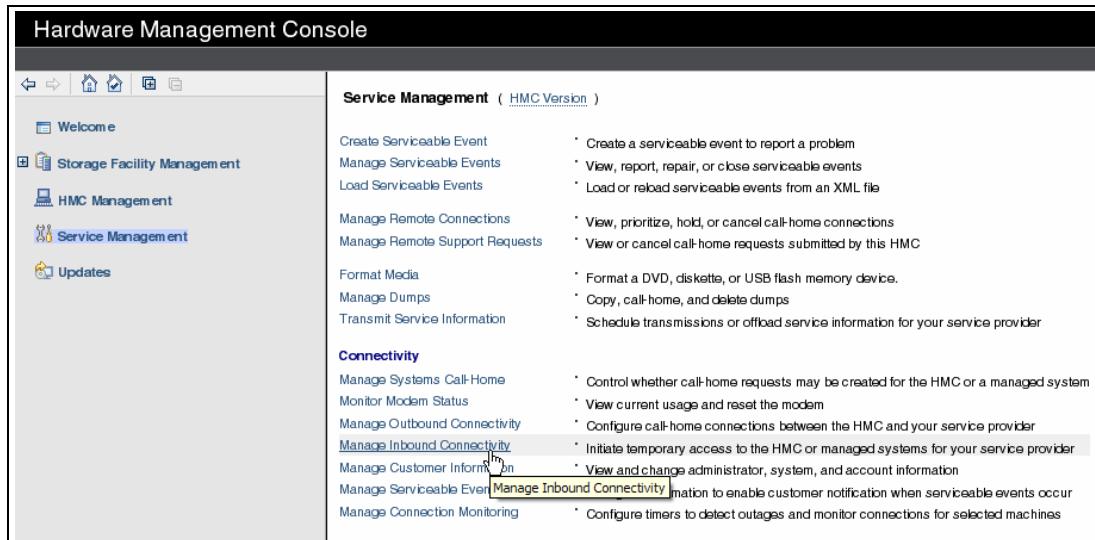


Figure 20-1 Service Management in WebUI

The HMC provides several settings to govern the usage of the modem port:

- ▶ Unattended Session

This check box allows the HMC to answer modem calls without operator intervention. If this is not checked, then someone must go to the HMC and allow for the next expected call. IBM Support must contact the customer every time they need to dial in to the HMC.

- ▶ Duration: Continuous

This option indicates that the HMC can answer all calls at all times.

- ▶ Duration: Automatic

This option indicates that the HMC will answer all calls for n days following the creation of any new Serviceable Event (problem).

- ▶ Duration: Temporary

This option sets a starting and ending date, during which the HMC will answer all calls.

These options are shown in Figure 20-2.

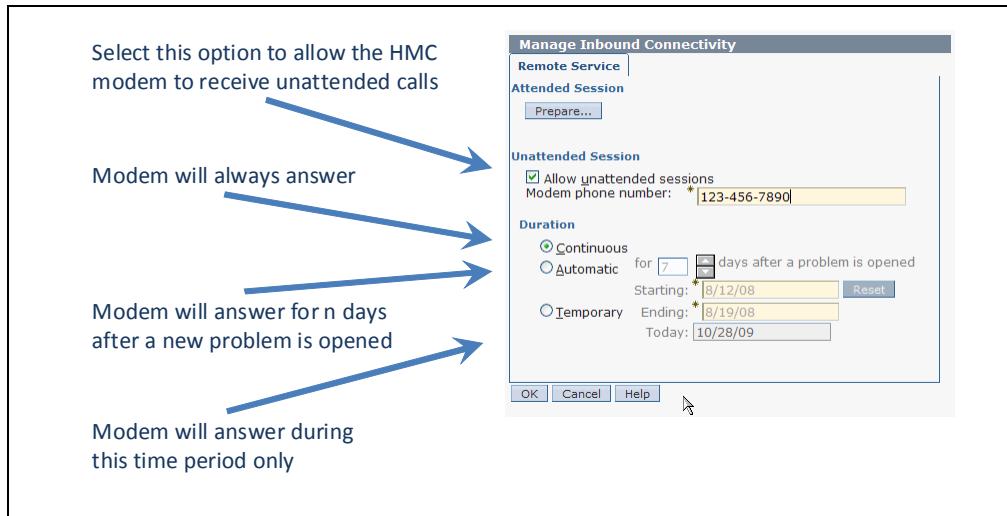


Figure 20-2 Modem settings

See Figure 20-3 on page 563 for an illustration of a modem connection.

### 20.3.2 IP network

Network connections are considered high-speed in comparison to a modem. Enough data can flow through a network connection to make it possible to run a graphical user interface (GUI). Managing a DS8700 from an SSPC would not be possible over a modem line; it requires the bandwidth of a network connection.

HMCs connected to a customer IP network, and eventually to the Internet, can send status updates and offloaded problem data to IBM using SSL sessions. They can also use FTP to retrieve new code bundles from the IBM code repository. It typically takes less than an hour to move the information.

Though favorable for speed and bandwidth, network connections introduce security concerns. Care must be taken to:

- ▶ Verify the authenticity of data, that is, is it really from the sender it claims to be?
- ▶ Verify the integrity of data, that is, has it been altered during transmission?
- ▶ Verify the security of data, that is, can it be captured and decoded by unwanted systems?

The Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol is one answer to these questions. It provides transport layer security with authenticity, integrity, and confidentiality, for a secure connection between the customer network and IBM. Some of the features that are provided by SSL are:

- ▶ Client and server authentication to ensure that the appropriate machines are exchanging data
- ▶ Data signing to prevent unauthorized modification of data while in transit
- ▶ Data encryption to prevent the exposure of sensitive information while data is in transit

See Figure 20-4 on page 564 for an illustration of a basic network connection.

### 20.3.3 IP network with traditional VPN

Adding a VPN “tunnel” to an IP network greatly increases the security of the connection between the two endpoints. Data can be verified for authenticity and integrity. Data can be encrypted so that even if it is captured enroute, it cannot be “replayed” or deciphered.

Having the safety of running within a VPN, IBM can use its service interface (WebUI) to:

- ▶ Check the status of components and services on the DS8700 in real time
- ▶ Queue up diagnostic data offloads
- ▶ Start, monitor, pause, and restart repair service actions

Performing the following steps result in the HMC creating a VPN tunnel back to the IBM network, which service personnel can then use. There is no VPN service that sits idle, waiting for a connection to be made by IBM. Only the HMC is allowed to initiate the VPN tunnel, and it can only be made to predefined IBM addresses. The steps to create a VPN tunnel from the DS8700 HMC to IBM are:

1. IBM support calls the HMC using the modem. After the first level of authentications, the HMC is asked to launch a VPN session.
2. The HMC hangs up the modem call and initiates a VPN connection back to a predefined address or port within IBM Support.
3. IBM Support verifies that they can see and use the VPN connection from an IBM internal IP address.
4. IBM Support launches the WebUI or other high-bandwidth tools to work on the DS8700.

See Figure 20-5 on page 565 for an illustration of a traditional VPN connection.

### 20.3.4 IP network with Business-to-Business VPN

The Business-to-Business VPN option does not add any new functionality, IBM Support can perform all of the tasks as with the traditional HMC-based VPN. What a Business-to-Business VPN does provide is a greater measure of control over the VPN sessions by the customer. Instead of a VPN tunnel being created between the HMC and the IBM network, a tunnel is created from the customer’s VPN appliance to the IBM network. This option has also been referred to as *client controlled VPN*.

Customers who work with many vendors that have their own remote support systems often own and manage a VPN appliance, a server that sits on the edge of their network and creates tunnels with outside entities. This is true for many companies that have remote workers, outside sales forces, or small branch offices. Because the device is already configured to meet the customer’s security requirements, they only need to add appropriate policies for IBM support. Most commercially-available VPN servers are interoperable with the IPSec-based VPN that IBM needs to establish. Using a Business-to-Business VPN layout leverages the investment that a customer has already made in establishing secure tunnels into their network.

The VPN tunnel that gets created is valid for IBM Remote Support use only and has to be configured both on the IBM and customer sides. This design provides several advantages for the customer:

- ▶ Allows the customer to use Network Address Translation (NAT) so that the HMC is given a non-routable IP address behind the company firewall.
- ▶ Allows the customer to inspect the TCP/IP packets that are sent over this VPN.
- ▶ Allows the customer to disable the VPN on their device for ‘lockdown’ situations.

Note that the Business-to-Business VPN only provides the tunnel that service personnel can use to actively work with the HMC from within IBM. To offload data or call home, the HMC still needs to have one of the following:

- ▶ Modem access
- ▶ Non-VPN network access (SSL connection)
- ▶ Traditional VPN access

See Figure 20-6 on page 566 for an illustration of a Business-to-Business VPN connection.

## 20.4 DS8700 support tasks

These are the tasks that require the HMC to contact the outside world. Some tasks can be done using either the modem or the network connection, and some can only be done over a network. The combination of tasks and connection types is illustrated in 20.5, “Scenarios” on page 562. The support tasks that require the DS8700 to connect to outside resources are:

- ▶ Call Home and heartbeat
- ▶ Data offload
- ▶ Code download
- ▶ Remote support

### 20.4.1 Call Home and heartbeat (outbound)

Here we discuss the Call Home and heartbeat capabilities.

#### ***Call Home***

Call Home is the capability of the HMC to contact IBM Service to report a service event. This is referred to as *Call Home for service*. The HMC provides machine reported product data (MRPD) information to IBM by way of the Call Home facility. The MRPD information includes installed hardware, configurations, and features. The Call Home also includes information about the nature of a problem so that an active investigation can be launched. Call Home is a one-way communication, with data moving from the DS8700 HMC to the IBM data store.

#### ***Heartbeat***

The DS8700 also uses the Call Home facility to send proactive *heartbeat* information to IBM. A heartbeat is a small message with some basic product information so that IBM knows the unit is operational. By sending heartbeats, both IBM and the customer ensure that the HMC is always able to initiate a full Call Home to IBM in the case of an error. If the heartbeat information does not reach IBM, a service call to the client will be made to investigate the status of the DS8700. Heartbeats represent a one-way communication, with data moving from the DS8700 HMC to the IBM data store.

The Call Home facility can be configured to:

- ▶ Use the HMC modem
- ▶ Use the Internet via a SSL connection
- ▶ Use the Internet via a VPN tunnel from the HMC to IBM

Call Home information and heartbeat information are stored in the IBM internal data store so the support representatives have access to the records.

## 20.4.2 Data offload (outbound)

For many DS8700 problem events, such as a hardware component failure, a large amount of diagnostic data is generated. This data may include text and binary log files, firmware dumps, memory dumps, inventory lists, and timelines. These logs are grouped into collections by the component that generated them or the software service that owns them. The entire bundle is collected together in what is called a *PEPackage*. A DS8700 PEpackage can be quite large, often exceeding 100 MB. In some cases, more than one may be needed to properly diagnose a problem. The HMC is a focal point, gathering and storing all the data packages. So the HMC must be accessible if a service action requires the information. The data packages must be offloaded from the HMC and sent in to IBM for analysis. The offload can be done several ways

- ▶ Modem offload
- ▶ Standard FTP offload
- ▶ SSL offload

### Modem offload

The HMC can be configured to support automatic data offload using the internal modem and a regular phone line. Offloading a PEpackage over a modem connection is extremely slow, in many cases taking 15 to 20 hours. It also ties up the modem for this time so that IBM support cannot dial in to the HMC to perform command-line tasks. If this is the only connectivity option available, be aware that the overall process of remote support will be delayed while data is in transit.

### Standard FTP offload

The HMC can be configured to support automatic data offload using File Transfer Protocol (FTP) over a network connection. This traffic can be examined at the customer's firewall before moving across the Internet. FTP offload allows IBM Service personnel to dial in to the HMC using the modem line while support data is being transmitted to IBM over the network.

**Note:** FTP offload of data is supported as an outbound service only. There is no active FTP server running on the HMC that can receive connection requests.

When a direct FTP session across the Internet is not available or desirable, a customer can configure the FTP offload to use a customer-provided FTP proxy server. The customer then becomes responsible for configuring the proxy to forward the data to IBM.

The customer is required to manage their firewall(s) so that FTP traffic from the HMC (or from an FTP proxy) can pass onto the Internet.

### SSL offload

For environments that do not permit FTP traffic out to the Internet, the DS8700 also supports offload of data using SSL security. In this configuration, the HMC uses the customer-provided network connection to connect to the IBM data store, the same as in a standard FTP offload. But with SSL, all the data is encrypted so that it is rendered unusable if intercepted.

Customer firewall settings between the HMC and the Internet for SSL setup require four IP addresses open on port 443 based on geography as detailed below:

- ▶ North and South America
- |                       |                              |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>129.42.160.48</b>  | IBM Authentication Primary   |
| <b>207.25.252.200</b> | IBM Authentication Secondary |
| <b>129.42.160.49</b>  | IBM Data Primary             |
| <b>207.25.252.204</b> | IBM Data Secondary           |

- ▶ All other regions
- |                       |                              |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>129.42.160.48</b>  | IBM Authentication Primary   |
| <b>207.25.252.200</b> | IBM Authentication Secondary |
| <b>129.42.160.50</b>  | IBM Data Primary             |
| <b>207.25.252.205</b> | IBM Data Secondary           |

### 20.4.3 Code download (inbound)

DS8700 microcode updates are published as *bundles* that can be downloaded from IBM. As explained in 18.7, “Loading the code bundle” on page 535, there are three possibilities for acquiring code on the HMC:

- ▶ Load the new code bundle using CDs.
- ▶ Download the new code bundle directly from IBM using FTP.
- ▶ Download the new code bundle directly from IBM using SFTP.

Loading code bundles from CDs is the only option for DS8700 installations that have no outside connectivity at all. If the HMC is connected to the customer network then IBM support will download the bundles from IBM using either FTP or SFTP.

#### **FTP**

If allowed, the support representative will open an FTP session from the HMC to the IBM code repository and download the code bundle(s) to the HMC. The customer firewall will need to be configured to allow the FTP traffic to pass.

#### **SFTP**

If FTP is not allowed, an SFTP session can be used instead. SFTP is a more secure file transfer protocol running within an SSH session, as defined in 20.1.3, “Terminology and definitions” on page 553. If this option is used, the customer firewall will need to be configured to allow the SSH traffic to pass.

Once the code bundle is acquired from IBM, the FTP or SFTP session will be closed and the code load can take place without needing to communicate outside of the DS8700.

### 20.4.4 Remote support (inbound and two-way)

Remote support describes the most interactive level of assistance from IBM. Once a problem comes to the attention of the IBM Support Center and it is determined that the issue is more complex than a straight-forward parts replacement, the problem will likely be escalated to higher levels of responsibility within IBM Support. This could happen at the same time that a Support Representative is being dispatched to the customer site.

IBM will most likely need to trigger a data offload, perhaps more than one, and at the same time be able to interact with the DS8700 to dig deeper into the problem and develop an action plan to restore the system to normal operation. This type of interaction with the HMC is what requires the most bandwidth.

If the only available connectivity is by modem, then IBM Support will have to wait until any data offload is complete and then attempt the diagnostics and repair from a command-line environment on the HMC. This process is slower and more limited in scope than if a network connection can be used.

If a VPN is available, either from the HMC directly to IBM or by using VPN devices (Business-to-Business VPN option), then enough bandwidth is available for data offload and interactive troubleshooting to be done at the same time. IBM Support will be able to use graphical tools (WebUI and others) to diagnose and repair the problem.

## 20.5 Scenarios

Now that the four connection options have been reviewed (see 20.3, “Remote connection types” on page 555) and the tasks have been reviewed (see 20.4, “DS8700 support tasks” on page 559), we can examine how each task is performed given the type of access available to the DS8700.

### 20.5.1 No connections

If both the modem or the Ethernet are not physically connected and configured, then the tasks are performed as follows:

- ▶ Call Home and heartbeat: The HMC will not send heartbeats to IBM. The HMC will not call home if a problem is detected. IBM Support will need to be notified at the time of installation to add an exception for this DS8700 in the heartbeats database, indicating that it is not expected to contact IBM.
- ▶ Data offload: If absolutely required and allowed by the customer, diagnostic data can be burned onto a DVD, carried back to an IBM facility, and uploaded to the IBM data store.
- ▶ Code download: Code must be loaded onto the HMC using CDs carried in by the Service Representative.
- ▶ Remote support: IBM cannot provide any remote support for this DS8700. All diagnostic and repair tasks must take place with an operator physically located at the console.

### 20.5.2 Modem only

If the modem is the only connectivity option, then the tasks are performed as follows:

- ▶ Call Home and heartbeat: The HMC will use the modem to call IBM and send the Call Home data and the heartbeat data. These calls are of short duration.
- ▶ Data offload: Once data offload is triggered, the HMC will use the modem to call IBM and send the data package. Depending on the package size and line quality, this call could take up to 20 hours to complete.
- ▶ Code download: Code must be loaded onto the HMC using CDs carried in by the Service Representative. There is no method of download if only a modem connection is available.
- ▶ Remote support: If the modem line is available (not being used to offload data or send Call Home data), IBM Support can dial in to the HMC and execute commands in a command-line environment. IBM Support cannot utilize a GUI or any high-bandwidth tools.

See Figure 20-3 for an illustration of a modem-only connection.

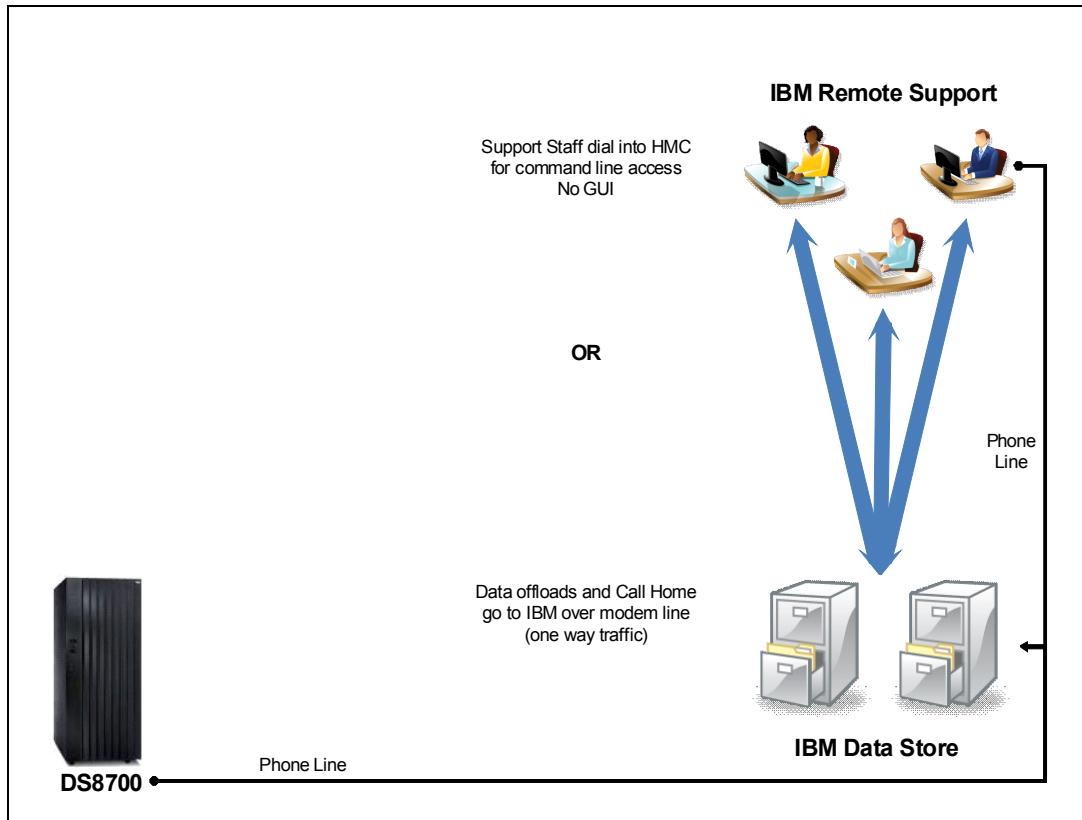


Figure 20-3 *Remote support with modem only*

### 20.5.3 Modem and network with no VPN

If the modem and network access, without VPN, are provided, then the tasks are performed as follows:

- ▶ Call Home and heartbeat: The HMC will use the network connection to send Call Home data and heartbeat data to IBM across the Internet.
- ▶ Data offload: The HMC will use the network connection to send offloaded data to IBM across the Internet. Standard FTP or SSL sockets may be used.
- ▶ Code download: Code can be downloaded from IBM using the network connection. The download can be done using FTP or SFTP.
- ▶ Remote support: Even though there is a network connection, it is not configured to allow VPN traffic, so remote support must be done using the modem. If the modem line is not busy, IBM Support can dial in to the HMC and execute commands in a command-line environment. IBM Support cannot utilize a GUI or any high-bandwidth tools.

See Figure 20-4 for an illustration of a modem and network connection without using VPN tunnels.

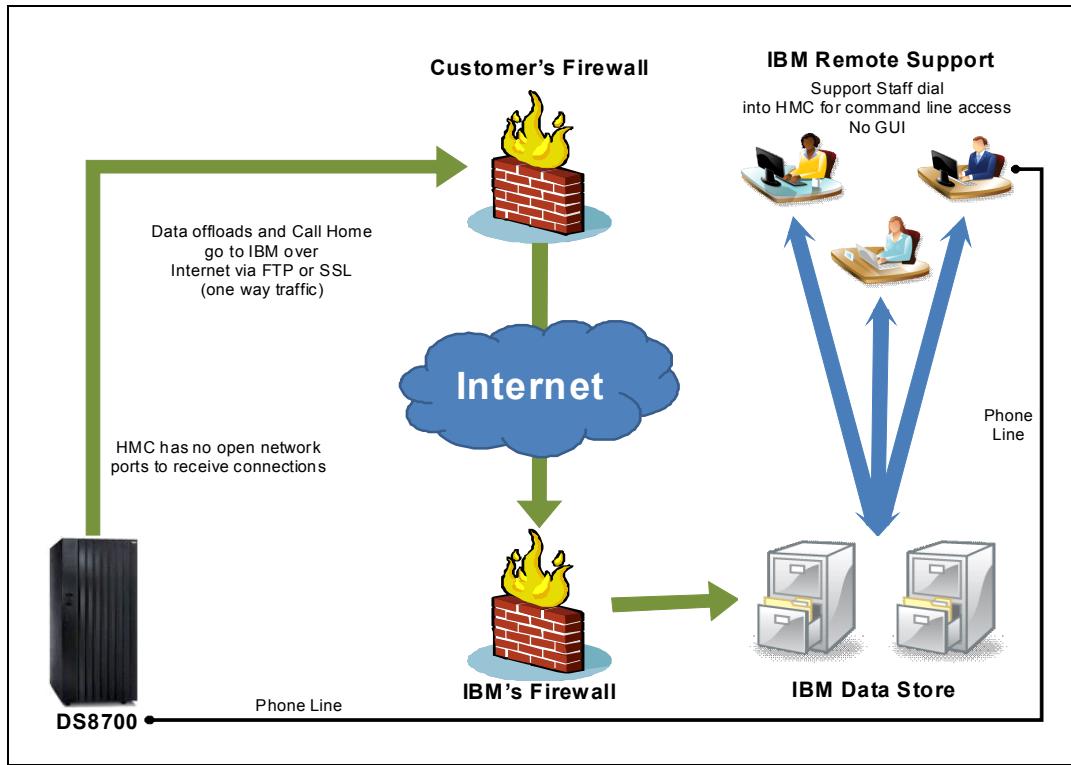


Figure 20-4 *Remote support with modem and network (no VPN)*

#### 20.5.4 Modem and traditional VPN

If the modem and a VPN-enabled network connection is provided, then the tasks are performed as follows:

- ▶ Call Home and heartbeat: The HMC will use the network connection to send Call Home data and heartbeat data to IBM across the Internet, outside of a VPN tunnel.
- ▶ Data offload: The HMC will use the network connection to send offloaded data to IBM across the Internet, outside of a VPN tunnel. Standard FTP or SSL sockets may be used.
- ▶ Code download: Code can be downloaded from IBM using the network connection. The download can be done using FTP or SFTP outside of a VPN tunnel.
- ▶ Remote support: Upon request, the HMC establishes a VPN tunnel across the Internet to IBM. IBM Support can use a GUI and high-bandwidth tools to interact with the HMC at the same time that data is offloading.

See Figure 20-5 for an illustration of a modem and network connection plus traditional VPN.

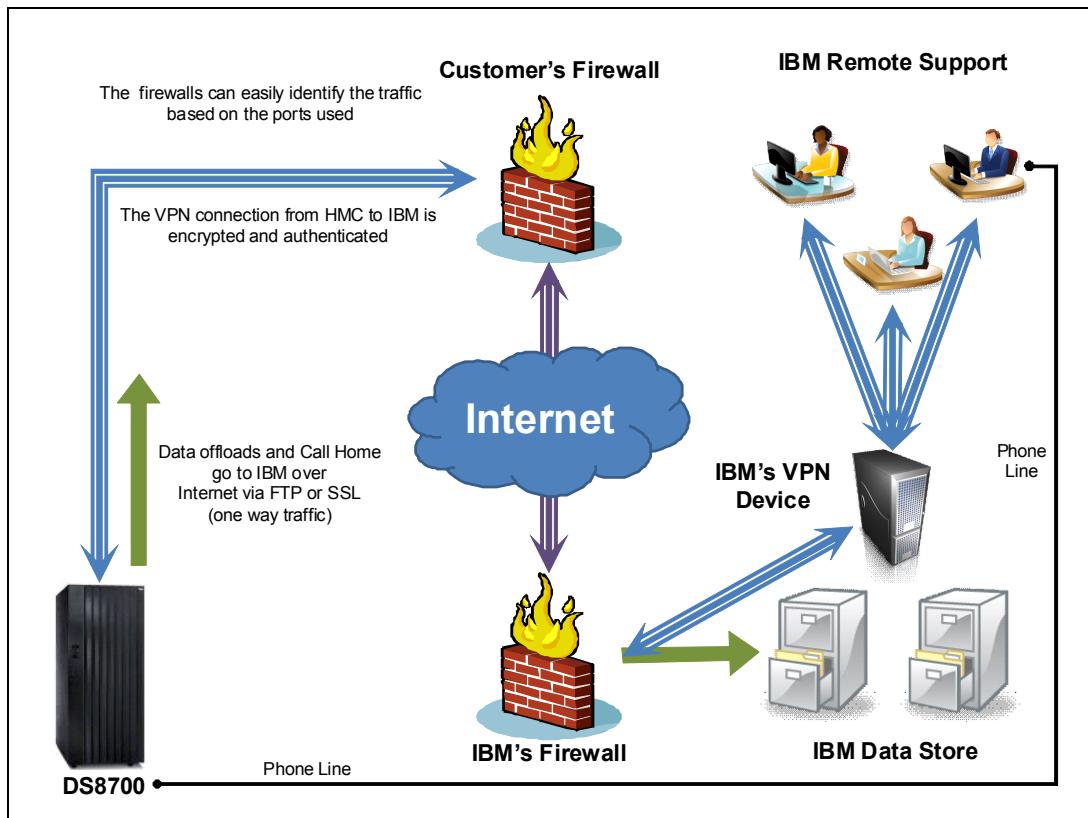


Figure 20-5 Remote support with modem and traditional VPN

### 20.5.5 Modem and Business-to-Business VPN

If a modem plus a network connection plus a Business-to-Business VPN appliance are installed, then the tasks are performed as follows:

- ▶ Call Home and heartbeat: The HMC will use the network connection to send Call Home data and heartbeat data to IBM across the Internet, outside of a VPN tunnel.
- ▶ Data offload: The HMC will use the network connection to send offloaded data to IBM across the Internet, outside of a VPN tunnel. Standard FTP or SSL sockets may be used.
- ▶ Code download: Code can be downloaded from IBM using the network connection. The download can be done using FTP or SFTP outside of a VPN tunnel.
- ▶ Remote support: The VPN tunnel is established between the customer's VPN appliance and the IBM VPN appliance. IBM Support can use a GUI and high-bandwidth tools to interact with the HMC at the same time as data offload. The HMC does not have to be involved in establishing the VPN session.

See Figure 20-6 for an illustration of a modem and network connection plus Business-to-Business VPN deployment.

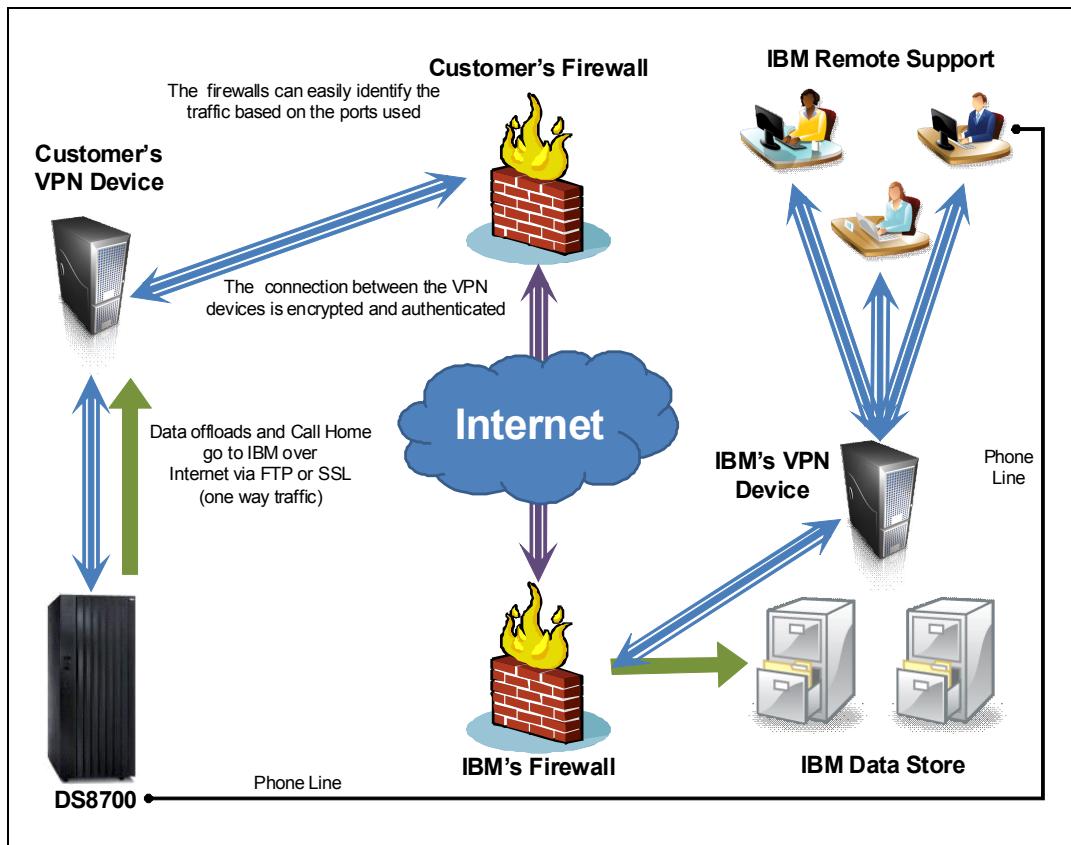


Figure 20-6 Remote support with modem and Business-to-Business VPN

## 20.6 Audit logging

The DS8700 offers an audit logging security function designed to track and log changes made by administrators using either Storage Manager DS GUI or DS CLI. This function also documents remote support access activity to the DS8700. The auditlogs can be downloaded by DS CLI or Storage Manager.

Example 20-1 illustrates the DS CLI command **offloadauditlog**, which provides clients with the ability to offload the audit logs to the DS CLI workstation in a directory of their choice.

*Example 20-1 DS CLI command to download audit logs*

---

```
dscli> offloadauditlog -logaddr smc1 c:\auditlogs\7520781_2009oct11.txt
Date/Time: October 11, 2009 7:02:25 PM MST IBM DSCLI Version: 5.4.30.253
CMUC00243I offloadauditlog: Audit log was successfully offloaded from smc1 to c:
\auditlogs\7520781_2009oct11.txt.
```

---

The downloaded auditlog is a text file that provides information about when a remote access session started and ended and what remote authority level was applied. A portion of the downloaded file is shown in Example 20-2.

*Example 20-2 Audit log entries related to a remote support event via modem*

---

```
U,2009/10/05  
18:20:49:000,,1,IBM.2107-7520780,N,8000,Phone_started,Phone_connection_started  
U,2009/10/05 18:21:13:000,,1,IBM.2107-7520780,N,8036,Authority_to_root,Challenge  
Key = 'ZyM1NGMs'; Authority_upgrade_to_root,,,  
U,2009/10/05'18:26:02:000,,1,IBM.2107-7520780,N,8002,Phone_ended,Phone_connection_  
ended
```

---

The *Challenge Key* shown above is not a password on the HMC. It is a token shown to the IBM Support representative that is dialing in to the DS8700. The representative must use the Challenge Key in an IBM internal tool to generate a *Response Key* that is given to the HMC. The Response Key acts as a one-time authorization to the features of the HMC. The Challenge and Response Keys change every time a remote connection is made.

The Challenge-Response process must be repeated again if the representative needs to escalate privileges to access the HMC command-line environment. There is no direct user login and no root login via the modem on a DS8700 HMC.

For a detailed description about how auditing is used to record “who did what and when” in the audited system, refer to the following address:

<http://www.ibm.com/support/techdocs/atstrmstr.nsf/WebIndex/TD103019>





# Capacity upgrades and Capacity on Demand

This chapter discusses aspects of implementing capacity upgrades and Capacity on Demand (CoD) with the IBM System Storage DS8700. This chapter covers the following topics:

- ▶ Installing capacity upgrades
- ▶ Using Capacity on Demand

## 21.1 Installing capacity upgrades

Storage capacity can be ordered and added to the DS8700 through disk drive sets. A disk drive set includes 16 disk drive modules (DDM) of the same capacity and spindle speed (RPM). DS8700 disk drive modules are available in the following varieties:

- ▶ Fibre Channel (FC) DDMs
  - 300 GB, 15K RPM
  - 450 GB, 15K RPM
  - 600 GB, 15K RPM
- ▶ Fibre Channel (FC) DDMs with full disk encryption (FDE)
  - 300 GB, 15K RPM
  - 450 GB, 15K RPM
- ▶ Serial Advanced Technology Attachment (SATA) DDMs
  - 2 TB, 7.2K RPM
- ▶ Solid State Drive (SSD) DDMs
  - 73 GB
  - 146 GB

Starting with DS8700 Release 5.1, SSD drives can now be ordered in a group of eight drives (half disk drive sets).

**Note:** Full Disk Encryption (FDE) drives can only be added to a DS8700 that was initially ordered with FDE drives installed. Refer to *IBM System Storage DS8700 Disk Encryption Implementation and Usage Guidelines*, REDP-4500 for more information about full disk encryption restrictions.

The disk drives are installed in Storage Enclosures (SE). A storage enclosure interconnects the DDMs to the Fibre Channel switch cards that connect to the device adapters. Each storage enclosure contains a redundant pair of Fibre Channel switch cards. Figure 21-1 shows a sketch of a Storage Enclosure.

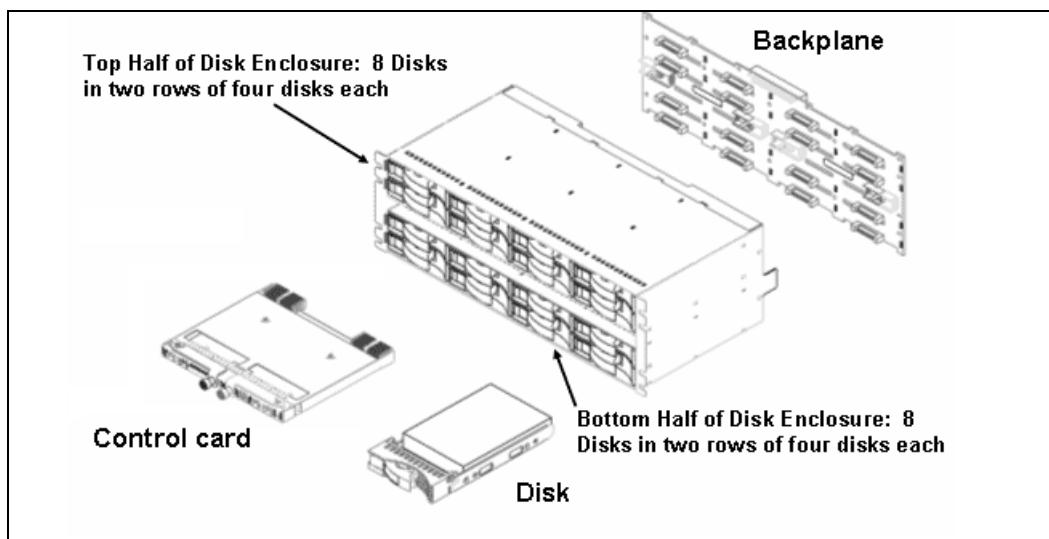


Figure 21-1 DS8700 Storage Enclosure

The storage enclosures are always installed in pairs, one enclosure in the front of the unit and one enclosure in the rear. A storage enclosure pair can be populated with one or two disk drive sets (16 or 32 DDMs), or in the case of SSDs, a half disk drive set (eight DDMs). All DDMs in a disk enclosure pair must be of the same type (capacity and speed). Most commonly, each storage enclosure is shipped full with 16 DDMs, meaning that each pair has 32 DDMs. If a disk enclosure pair is populated with only eight or 16 DDMs, disk drive filler modules called *baffles* are installed in the vacant DDM slots. This is to maintain the correct cooling airflow throughout the enclosure.

Each storage enclosure attaches to two device adapters (DAs). The DAs are the RAID adapter cards that connect the CECs to the DDMs. The DS8700 DA cards are always installed as a redundant pair, so they are referred to as *DA pairs*.

Physical installation and testing of the device adapters, storage enclosure pairs, and DDMs are performed by your IBM service representative. After the additional capacity is added successfully, the new storage appears as additional unconfigured array sites.

You might need to obtain new license keys and apply them to the storage image before you start configuring the new capacity; see Chapter 10, “IBM System Storage DS8700 features and license keys” on page 235 for more information. You cannot create ranks using the new capacity if this causes your machine to exceed its license key limits. Please be aware that applying increased feature activation codes is a concurrent action, but a license reduction or deactivation is often a disruptive action.

**Note:** Special restrictions in terms of placement and intermixing apply when adding Solid State Drives. Refer to *IBM System Storage DS8700 Easy Tier*, REDP-4667 for more information about the SSD configuration rules.

### 21.1.1 Installation order of upgrades

Individual machine configurations vary, so it is not possible to give an exact pattern for the order in which every storage upgrade will be installed. This is because it is possible to order a machine with multiple underpopulated storage enclosures (SEs) across the device adapter (DA) pairs. This is done to allow future upgrades to be performed with the fewest physical changes. It should be noted, however, that all storage upgrades are concurrent, in that adding capacity to a DS8700 does not require any downtime.

As a general rule, when adding capacity to a DS8700, storage hardware is populated in the following order:

1. DDMs are added to underpopulated enclosures. Whenever you add 16 DDMs to a machine, eight DDMs are installed into the front storage enclosure and eight into the rear storage enclosure. If you add a complete 32 pack, then 16 are installed in the front storage enclosure and 16 are installed in the rear storage enclosure.
2. Once the first storage enclosure pair on a DA pair is fully populated with DDMs (32 DDMs total), a second storage enclosure pair can be added to that DA pair.
3. Once a DA pair has two fully populated storage enclosure pairs (64 DDMs total), another DA pair is added. The DA cards are installed into the I/O enclosures that are located at the bottom of the racks. They are not located in the storage enclosures.

## 21.1.2 Checking how much total capacity is installed

There are four DS CLI commands you can use to check how many DAs, SEs, and DDMs are installed in your DS8700. They are:

- ▶ **lsda**
- ▶ **lsstgenc1**
- ▶ **lsddm**
- ▶ **lsarraysite**

When the -l parameter is added to these commands, additional information is shown. In the next section, we show examples of using these commands.

For these examples, the target DS8700 has two device adapter pairs (for a total of four DAs) and four fully-populated storage enclosure pairs (for a total of eight SEs). This means there are 128 DDMs and 16 array sites because each array site consists of eight DDMs. In the examples, 10 of the array sites are in use, and six are *Unassigned*, meaning that no array is created on that array site. The example system also uses full disk encryption capable DDMs.

Example 21-1 shows a listing of the Device Adapter cards.

*Example 21-1 List the device adapters*

```
dscli> lsda -l IBM.2107-75LY981
Date/Time: October 21, 2009 12:05:13 PM MST IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS: IBM.2107-75LY981
ID          State   loc           FC Server DA pair interfs
=====
IBM.1400-1B1-01135/R0-P1-C3  Online U1400.1B1.SJ01135-P1-C3 - 0      0      0x0230,0x0231,0x0232,0x0233
IBM.1400-1B2-01138/R0-P1-C6  Online U1400.1B2.SJ01138-P1-C6 - 1      0      0x0360,0x0361,0x0362,0x0363
IBM.1400-1B3-01132/R0-P1-C3  Online U1400.1B3.SJ01132-P1-C3 - 0      2      0x0360,0x0361,0x0362,0x0363
IBM.1400-1B4-01133/R0-P1-C6  Online U1400.1B4.SJ01133-P1-C6 - 1      2      0x0360,0x0361,0x0362,0x0363
```

Example 21-2 shows a listing of the Storage Enclosures.

*Example 21-2 List the storage enclosures*

```
dscli> lsstgenc1 IBM.2107-75LY981
Date/Time: October 21, 2009 12:07:23 PM MST IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS: IBM.2107-75LY981
ID          Interfaces       interadd stordev cap (GB) RPM
=====
IBM.2107-D01-05P9J/R1-S12 0x0233,0x0363,0x0232,0x0362    0x1    16 146.0  15000
IBM.2107-D01-06DR2/R1-S22 0x0231,0x0361,0x0230,0x0360    0x1    16 146.0  15000
IBM.2107-D01-06F6T/R1-S23 0x0231,0x0161,0x0030,0x0160    0x0    16 146.0  15000
IBM.2107-D01-06FD0/R1-S14 0x0033,0x0163,0x0032,0x0162    0x0    16 146.0  15000
IBM.2107-D01-06FD1/R1-S13 0x0033,0x0163,0x0032,0x0162    0x1    16 146.0  15000
IBM.2107-D01-06FPW/R1-S11 0x0233,0x0363,0x0232,0x0362    0x1    16 146.0  15000
IBM.2107-D01-06G4K/R1-S24 0x0031,0x0161,0x0030,0x0160    0x0    16 146.0  15000
IBM.2107-D01-06GWC/R1-S21 0x0231,0x0361,0x0230,0x0360    0x0    16 146.0  15000
```

Example 21-3 shows a listing of the storage drives. Because there are 128 DDMs in the example machine, only a partial list is shown here.

*Example 21-3 List the DDMs (abbreviated)*

---

```
dscli> lsddm IBM.2107-75LY981
Date/Time: October 21, 2009 12:10:50 PM MST IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS: IBM.2107-75LY981
ID          DA Pair dkcpt (10^9B) dkuse      arsite State
=====
IBM.2107-D01-05P9J/R1-P1-D1  2           146.0 array member S2      Normal
IBM.2107-D01-05P9J/R1-P1-D2  2           146.0 array member S1      Normal
IBM.2107-D01-05P9J/R1-P1-D3  2           146.0 array member S3      Normal
IBM.2107-D01-05P9J/R1-P1-D4  2           146.0 array member S1      Normal
IBM.2107-D01-05P9J/R1-P1-D5  2           146.0 spare required S2      Normal
...
IBM.2107-D01-06F6T/R1-P1-D1  0           300.0 array member S12     Normal
IBM.2107-D01-06F6T/R1-P1-D2  0           300.0 array member S9      Normal
IBM.2107-D01-06F6T/R1-P1-D3  0           300.0 array member S10     Normal
IBM.2107-D01-06F6T/R1-P1-D4  0           300.0 array member S12     Normal
IBM.2107-D01-06F6T/R1-P1-D5  0           300.0 spare required S10     Normal
```

---

Example 21-4 shows a listing of the array sites.

*Example 21-4 List the array sites*

---

```
dscli> lsarraysite -1
Date/Time: October 21, 2009 12:15:09 PM MST IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS: IBM.2107-75LY981
arsite DA Pair dkcpt (10^9B) diskRPM State      Array diskclass encrypt
=====
S1   2           146.0  15000 Assigned  A0    ENT      supported
S2   2           146.0  15000 Assigned  A1    ENT      supported
S3   2           146.0  15000 Unassigned -    ENT      supported
S4   2           146.0  15000 Unassigned -    ENT      supported
S5   2           146.0  15000 Unassigned -    ENT      supported
S6   2           146.0  15000 Unassigned -    ENT      supported
S7   2           146.0  15000 Unassigned -    ENT      supported
S8   2           146.0  15000 Unassigned -    ENT      supported
S9   0           300.0  15000 Assigned  A2    ENT      supported
S10  0           300.0  15000 Assigned  A3    ENT      supported
S11  0           300.0  15000 Assigned  A5    ENT      supported
S12  0           300.0  15000 Assigned  A6    ENT      supported
S13  0           300.0  15000 Assigned  A7    ENT      supported
S14  0           300.0  15000 Assigned  A8    ENT      supported
S15  0           300.0  15000 Assigned  A4    ENT      supported
S16  0           300.0  15000 Assigned  A9    ENT      supported
```

---

## 21.2 Using Capacity on Demand

IBM offers Capacity on Demand (CoD) solutions that are designed to meet the changing storage needs of rapidly growing e-businesses. This section discusses CoD on the DS8700.

There are various rules about CoD and these are explained in the *IBM System Storage DS8000 Introduction and Planning Guide*, GC35-0515. The purpose of this chapter is to explain aspects of implementing a DS8700 that has CoD disk packs.

### **21.2.1 What is Capacity on Demand**

The Standby CoD offering is designed to provide you with the ability to tap into additional storage and is particularly attractive if you have rapid or unpredictable growth, or if you simply want the knowledge that the extra storage will be there when you need it.

In many database environments, it is not unusual to have rapid growth in the amount of disk space required for your business. This can create a problem if there is an unexpected and urgent need for disk space and no time to create a purchase order or wait for the disks to be delivered.

With this offering, up to four Standby CoD disk drive sets (64 disk drives) can be factory-installed or field-installed into your system. To activate them, you simply logically configure the disk drives for use, which is a nondisruptive activity that does not require intervention from IBM. Upon activation of any portion of a Standby CoD disk drive set, you must place an order with IBM to initiate billing for the activated set. At that time, you can also order replacement CoD disk drive sets.

This offering allows you to purchase licensed functions based upon your machine's physical capacity, excluding unconfigured Standby CoD capacity. This can help improve your cost of ownership, because the extent of IBM authorization for licensed functions can grow at the same time you need your disk capacity to grow.

Contact your IBM representative to obtain additional information regarding Standby CoD offering terms and conditions.

**Note:** Solid State Drive drives are not available as Standby Capacity on Demand disk drives.

### **21.2.2 How to tell if a DS8700 has CoD**

A common question is: How can you determine if a DS8700 has CoD disks installed? There are two important indicators that you need to check for:

- ▶ Is the CoD indicator present in the Disk Storage Feature Activation (DSFA) website?
- ▶ What is the Operating Environment License (OEL) limit displayed by the `1skey` DS CLI command?

#### **Verify CoD on the DSFA website**

The data storage feature activation (DSFA) website provides feature activation codes and license keys to technically activate functions acquired for your IBM storage products. To check for the CoD indicator on the DSFA website, you need to perform the following tasks:

1. Obtain the machine signature by using the DS CLI. First, connect to the DS CLI and execute `shows1 -fullid`, as shown in Example 21-5 on page 575. The signature is a unique value that can only be accessed from the machine. You will also need to record the Machine Type displayed and the Machine Serial Number (ending with 0).

*Example 21-5 Displaying the machine signature*

```
dscli> showsi -fullid IBM.2107-75LY981
Date/Time: October 21, 2009 2:47:26 PM MST IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS:
IBM.2107-75LY981
Name          mtc105h
desc          -
ID            IBM.2107-75LY981
Storage Unit  IBM.2107-75LY980
Model         941
WWNN          5005076308FFC6D4
Signature      587d-da0d-12da-9182    < Machine Signature
State         Online
ESSNet        Enabled
Volume Group  IBM.2107-75LY981/V0
os400Serial   6D4
NVS Memory    4.0 GB
Cache Memory  114.6 GB
Processor Memory 125.4 GB
MTS           IBM.2421-75LY980      < Machine Type (2421) and S/N (75LY980)
numegsupported 1
```

2. Log on to the DSFA website at the following address:

<http://www.ibm.com/storage/dsfa>

Select **IBM System Storage DS8000 Series** from the DSFA start page. The next window requires you to choose the Machine Type and then enter the serial number and signature, as shown in Figure 21-2.

The screenshot shows a web browser window for the DSFA (IBM System Storage Data Activation Feature Activation) website. The URL is <http://www.ibm.com/storage/dsfa>. The page title is "Select DS8000 series machine". On the left, there is a sidebar menu with the following items:

- Home
- Solutions
- Services
- Products
- Support & downloads
- My IBM

Below the menu, there is a breadcrumb trail: "IBM System Storage" > "Data storage feature activation". The main content area has the title "Select DS8000 series machine". It contains instructions: "Enter your machine information. You can find this information in the DS Storage Manager application under storage unit properties." and "You must complete all fields marked with an asterisk (\*). Click Submit when you are finished." There are three input fields with dropdown menus:

- Machine type:** \* A dropdown menu showing "2421" as the selected option.
- Serial number:** \* A dropdown menu showing "Select one", "2107", "2421" (which is highlighted with a gray background), "2422", "2423", and "2424".
- Machine signature:** \* A dropdown menu showing "2422", "2423", and "2424".

A "Submit" button is located at the bottom left of the form.

*Figure 21-2 DSFA machine specifics*

On the **View Authorization Details** window, the feature code *0901 Standby CoD indicator* is shown for DS8700 installations with Capacity on Demand. This is illustrated in Figure 21-3. If instead you see *0900 Non-Standby CoD*, then the CoD feature has *not* been ordered for your machine.

The screenshot shows the IBM System Storage Data storage feature activation (DSFA) interface. The main title is "View authorization details" for an "IBM 2421 Model 941 Serial number 75-PB930". A sidebar on the left lists navigation options like "Data storage feature activation", "Select DS6000 series machine", "Select DS8000 series machine", "View machine summary", "Manage activations", "Retrieve activation codes", "Assign function authorization", "View authorization details", "Select TS series LTO machine", and "Help". Below the sidebar is a "Related links" section with links to "IBM System Storage support feedback" and "Electronic service call". The main content area displays "Licensed function indicator features" with a table:

Feature	Qty	Description
0901	1	Standby CoD indicator
7035	1	OEL 50TB indicator
7255	1	PTC 50TB indicator

Below this is a "Function authorization feature codes" section with a table:

Feature	Qty	Description

The "Operating environment" section shows "IBM 2396 Model LFA Serial number 75-12605".

Figure 21-3 Verifying CoD using DSFA

### Verify CoD on the DS8700

Normally, new features or feature limits are activated using the DS CLI `applykey` command. However, CoD does not have a discrete key. Instead, the CoD feature is installed as part of the Operating Environment License (OEL) key. The interesting thing is that an OEL key that activates CoD will change the feature limit from the limit that you have paid for, to the *largest possible number*.

In Example 21-6, you can see how the OEL key is changed. The machine in this example is licensed for 80 TB of OEL, but actually has 82 TB of disk installed, because it has 2 TB of CoD disks. However, if you attempt to create ranks using the final 2 TB of storage, the command will fail because it exceeds the OEL limit. Once a new OEL key with CoD is installed, the OEL limit will increase to an enormous number (9.9 million TB). This means that rank creation will succeed for the last 2 TB of storage.

*Example 21-6 Applying an OEL key that contains CoD*

---

```
dscli> lskey IBM.2107-75ABCD1
Date/Time: October 21, 2009 2:47:26 PM MST IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS: IBM.2107-75ABCD1
Activation Key          Authorization Level (TB) Scope
=====
Operating environment (OEL)    80.3           A11

dscli> applykey -key 1234-5678-9ABC-DEF0-1234-5678-9ABC-DEF0 IBM.2107-75ABCD1
Date/Time: October 21, 2009 2:47:26 PM MST IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS: IBM.2107-75ABCD1
CMUC00199I applykey: Licensed Machine Code successfully applied to storage image IBM.2107-75ABCD1

dscli> lskey IBM.2107-75ABCD1
Date/Time: October 21, 2009 2:47:26 PM MST IBM DSCLI Version: 6.5.0.220 DS: IBM.2107-75ABCD1
Activation Key          Authorization Level (TB) Scope
=====
Operating environment (OEL)    9999999         A11
```

---

### 21.2.3 Using the CoD storage

In this section, we review the tasks required to start using CoD storage.

#### CoD array sites

If CoD storage is installed, it will be a maximum of 64 CoD disk drives. Because 16 drives make up a drive set, it is more specific to say that a machine can have up to four drive sets of CoD disk. Because eight drives are used to create an array site, this means that a maximum of eight array sites of CoD can potentially exist in a machine. If a machine has, for example, 384 disk drives installed, of which 64 disk drives are CoD, then there are a total of 48 array sites, of which eight are CoD. From the machine itself, there is no way to tell how many of the array sites in a machine are CoD array sites, as opposed to array sites you can start using right away. During the machine order process, this must be clearly understood and documented.

#### Which array sites are the CoD array sites

Given a sample DS8700 with 48 array sites, of which eight represent CoD disks, the customer should configure only 40 of the 48 array sites. This assumes that all the disk drives are the same size. It is possible to order CoD drive sets of different sizes. In this case, you would need to understand how many of each size have been ordered and ensure that the correct number of array sites of each size are left unused until they are needed for growth.

#### How to start using the CoD array sites

Simply use the standard DS CLI (or DS GUI) commands (starting with `mkarray`, then `mkrank`, and so on) to configure storage. Once the ranks are members of an Extent Pool, then volumes can be created. See Chapter 13, “Configuration using the DS Storage Manager GUI” on page 295 and Chapter 14, “Configuration with the DS Command-Line Interface” on page 359 for more information about this topic.

## **What if you accidentally configure a CoD array site**

Given the sample DS8700 with 48 array sites, of which eight represent CoD disks, if you accidentally configure 41 array sites but did not intend to start using the CoD disks yet, then use the **rmarray** command immediately to return that array site to an *unassigned* state. If volumes have been created and those volumes are in use, then you have started to use the CoD arrays and should contact IBM to inform IBM that the CoD storage is now in use.

## **What you do after the CoD array sites are in use**

Once you have started to use the CoD array sites (and remember that IBM requires that a Standby CoD disk drive set must be activated within a twelve-month period from the date of installation; all such activation is permanent), then contact IBM so that the CoD indicator can be removed from the machine. You must place an order with IBM to initiate billing for the activated set. At that time, you can also order replacement Standby CoD disk drive sets. If new CoD disks are ordered and installed, then a new OEL key will also be issued and should be applied immediately. If no more CoD disks are desired, or the DS8700 has reached maximum capacity, then an OEL key will be issued to reflect that CoD is no longer enabled on the machine.



A

## Tools and service offerings

This appendix gives information about the tools that are available to help you when planning, managing, migrating, and analyzing activities with your IBM System Storage DS8700 storage subsystem. In this appendix, we also reference the sites where you can find information about the service offerings that are available from IBM to help you in several of the activities related to the DS8700 implementation.

## Capacity Magic

Because of the additional flexibility and configuration options storage subsystems provide, it becomes a challenge to calculate the raw and net storage capacity of disk subsystems such as the DS8700. You have to invest considerable time, and you need an in-depth technical understanding of how spare and parity disks are assigned. You also need to consider the simultaneous use of disks with different capacities and configurations that deploy RAID 5, RAID 6, and RAID 10.

Capacity Magic can do the physical (raw) to effective (net) capacity calculations automatically, taking into consideration all applicable rules and the provided hardware configuration (number and type of disk drive sets).

Capacity Magic is designed as an easy-to-use tool with a single, main interface. It offers a graphical interface that allows you to enter the disk drive configuration of a DS8700 and other IBM subsystems, the number and type of disk drive sets, and the RAID type. With this input, Capacity Magic calculates the raw and net storage capacities; also, the tool has a functionality that lets you display the number of extents that are produced per rank, as shown in Figure A-1.

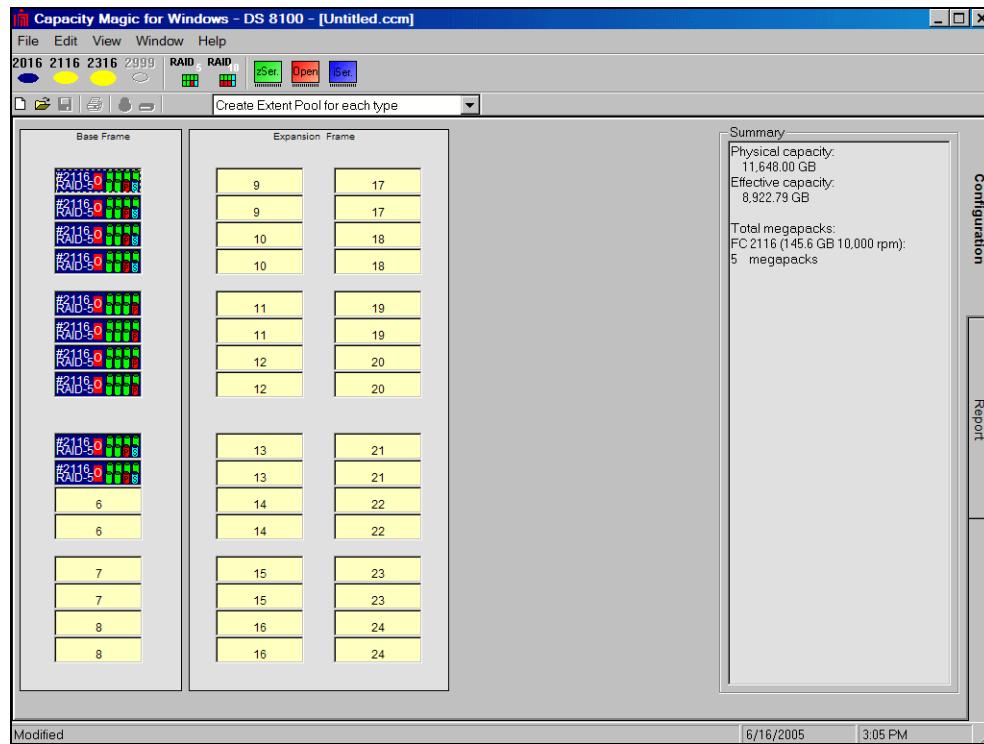


Figure A-1 Configuration window

Figure A-1 shows the configuration window that Capacity Magic provides for you to specify the desired number and type of disk drive sets.

Figure A-2 shows the resulting output report that Capacity Magic produces. This report is also helpful in planning and preparing the configuration of the storage in the DS8700, because it also displays extent count information.

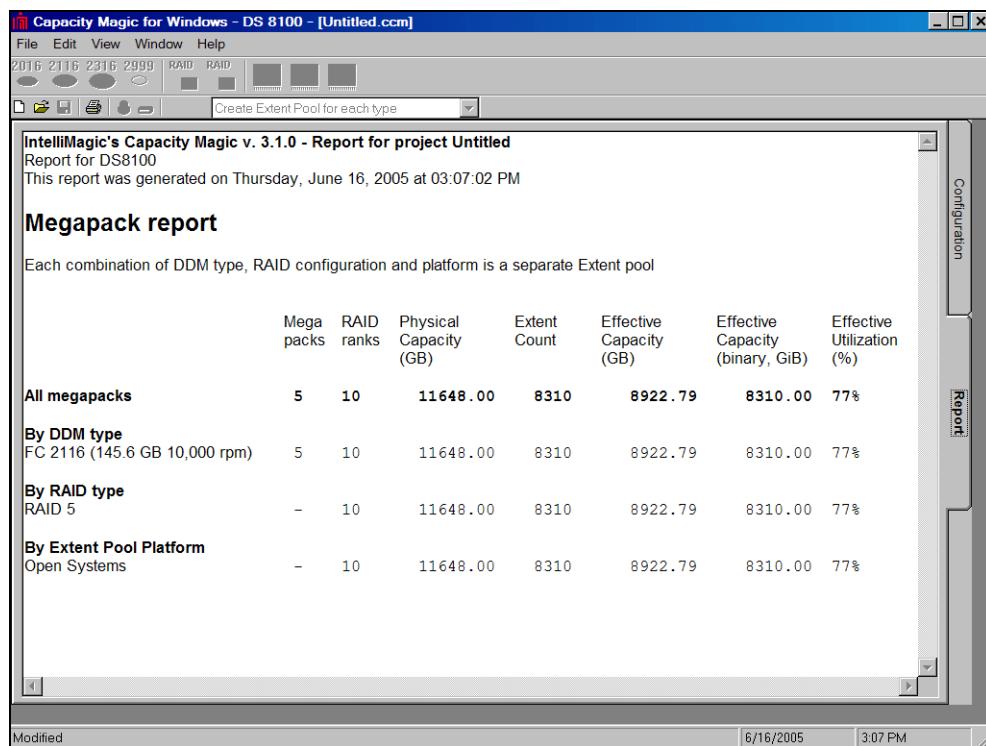


Figure A-2 Capacity Magic output report

**Note:** Capacity Magic is a tool used by IBM and IBM Business Partners to model disk storage subsystem effective capacity as a function of physical disk capacity to be installed. Contact your IBM Representative or IBM Business Partner to discuss a Capacity Magic study.

## Disk Magic

Disk Magic is a Windows-based disk subsystem performance modeling tool. It supports disk subsystems from multiple vendors, but it offers the most detailed support for IBM subsystems. Currently, Disk Magic supports modelling to advanced-function disk subsystems, such as the IBM System Storage DS8700, IBM System Storage DS8000, IBM System Storage DS6000, ESS, IBM System Storage DS4000, IBM System Storage DS5000, IBM System Storage N series, and the SAN Volume Controller.

A critical design objective for Disk Magic is to minimize the amount of input that you must enter, while offering a rich and meaningful modeling capability. The following list provides several examples of what Disk Magic can model, but it is by no means complete:

- ▶ Move the current I/O load to a different disk subsystem model.
- ▶ Merge the current I/O load of multiple disk subsystems into a single DS8700.
- ▶ Insert a SAN Volume Controller in an existing disk configuration.
- ▶ Increase the current I/O load.
- ▶ Implement a storage consolidation.
- ▶ Increase the disk subsystem cache size.

- ▶ Change to larger capacity disk drives.
- ▶ Change to higher disk rotational speed.
- ▶ Upgrade from ESCON to FICON host adapters.
- ▶ Upgrade from SCSI to Fibre Channel host adapters.
- ▶ Increase the number of host adapters.
- ▶ Use fewer or more Logical Unit Numbers (LUNs).
- ▶ Activate Metro Mirror.
- ▶ Activate z/OS Global Mirror.
- ▶ Activate Global Mirror.

With the availability of SSD, Disk Magic supports modelling when SSD ranks are included in the configuration. In an IBM z/OS environment, Disk Magic can provide an estimation of which volumes are good SSD candidates and migrate those volumes to SSD in the model. In an open system environment, Disk Magic can model the SSD on a server basis.

**Note:** Disk Magic is a tool used by IBM and IBM Business Partners to model disk storage subsystem performance. Contact your IBM Representative or IBM Business Partner to discuss a Disk Magic study.

## HyperPAV Analysis

Traditional aliases allow you to simultaneously process multiple I/O operations to the same logical volume. The question is, how many aliases do you need to assign to the LCUs in your DS8000?

It is difficult to predict the ratio of aliases to base addresses required to minimize IOSQ time. If the ratio is too high, this limits the amount of physical volumes that can be addressed, due to the 64K addressing limit. If the ratio is too small, then you might see high IOSQ times, which will impact the business service commitments.

HyperPAV would help the performance by reducing the IOSQ Time and also help in reducing the number of aliases required in an LCU, which would free up more addresses to be used as base addresses.

To estimate how many aliases are needed, a HyperPAV analysis can be done using SMF records 70 through 78. The analysis result would provide recommendations about how many aliases are required. This analysis can be performed against IBM and non-IBM disk subsystems.

**Note:** Contact your IBM Representative or IBM Business Partner to discuss a HyperPAV study.

## FLASHDA

The FLASHDA is a tool written in SAS that can help with deciding which data sets or volumes are the best candidates to be migrated to SSD from HDD.

The prerequisites to use this tool are APAR OA25688 and APAR OA25559, which will report DISC Time separately by read I/O and write I/O. The tool uses SMF 42 subtype 6 and SMF 74 subtype 5 records and provides a list by data set, showing the amount of accumulated DISC Time for the read I/O operations during the time period selected.

If the complete SMF records 70 through 78 are also provided, the report can be tailored to show the report by data set by each disk subsystem. It can also show the report by volume by disk subsystem. If you are running z/OS v1R10, you can also include the number of cylinders used by volume.

Figure A-3 shows the output of the FLASHDA tool. It shows the data set name with the Address and VOLSER where the data set resides and the Total DISC Time in millisecond for all the Read I/Os. This list is sorted in descending order to show which data sets would benefit the most when moved to an SSD rank.

<b>Address</b>	<b>Volser</b>	<b>Dataset name</b>	<b>Total Rd DISC</b>
C1D2	I10YY5	IMS10.DXX.WWXPRT11	5,184,281
2198	XAGYAA	DB2PAG.DSNDDB.XX10X97I.CGPL.I0001.YY01	3,530,406
783E	XA2Y58	DB2PA2.DSNDDB.XX40X97E.RESB.I0001.YY02	2,978,921
430A	Y14Y3S	DB214.DSNDDB.ZZXDSENT.WWXSC.I0001.YY01	2,521,349
21B2	XAGYC6	DB2PAG.DSNDDB.XX40XTKL.MSEG.J0001.YY06	2,446,672
7A10	XA2Y76	DB2PA2.DSNDDB.XX40X97E.RESB.I0001.YY03	2,123,498
7808	XA2Y04	DB2PA2.DSNDDB.XX40X97E.RESB.I0001.YY01	1,971,660
2A13	X39Y60	DB2X39.DSNDDB.YY30X956.MONX.J0001.YY01	1,440,200
2B60	X39Y12	DB2X39.DSNDDB.YY40X975.EQUI.J0001.YY02	1,384,468
C1D2	I10YY5	IMS10.DJX.WWJIFPC1	1,284,444
783B	XA2Y55	DB2PA2.DSNDDB.XX40X97E.RESB.I0001.YY04	1,185,571
2B5A	X39Y06	DB2X39.DSNDDB.YY40X975.EQUI.J0001.YY01	1,016,916

Figure A-3 FLASHDA output

This next report, shown in Figure A-4, is based on the above FLASHDA output and from information extracted from the SMF records. Here the report shows the ranking of the Total Read DISC Time in millisecond by volume. It also shows the number of cylinders defined for that volume and the serial number of the disk subsystem (DSS) where that volume resides.

<b>Address</b>	<b>Volser</b>	<b>Total Rd DISC</b>	<b>#cyls</b>	<b>DSS</b>
C1D2	I10YY5	6,592,229	32760	IBM-KLZ01
2198	XAGYAA	3,608,052	65520	IBM-MN721
783E	XA2Y58	3,032,377	65520	IBM-OP661
430A	Y14Y3S	2,654,083	10017	IBM-KLZ01
21B2	XAGYC6	2,648,126	65520	IBM-MN721
7A10	XA2Y76	2,389,512	65520	IBM-OP661
7808	XA2Y04	2,102,741	65520	IBM-OP661
22AA	XAGY84	1,458,696	65520	IBM-MN721
2193	XAGYA5	1,455,057	65520	IBM-MN721
2A13	X39Y60	1,444,708	65520	ABC-04749
21B5	XAGYC9	1,429,231	65520	IBM-MN721
2B60	X39Y12	1,387,409	65520	ABC-04749

Figure A-4 Total Read DISC Time report by volume

Using the report by data set, you can select the data sets that are used by your critical applications and migrate them to the SSD ranks.

If you use the report by volume, you can decide how many volumes you want to migrate to SSD, and calculate how many SSD ranks are needed to accommodate the volumes that you selected. A Disk Magic study can be performed to see how much performance improvement can be achieved by migrating those volumes to SSD.

**Note:** Contact your IBM Representative or IBM Business Partner to discuss a FLASHDA study.

## IBM i SSD Analyzer Tool

The SSD Analyzer Tool is designed to help you determine if SSDs could help improve performance on your IBM i system(s). The tool works with the performance data that is collected on your system and works with releases V5R4 and V6R1.

Figure A-5 shows the detailed analysis report by job name, sorted in descending order by *Disk Read Wait Total Seconds*. This list can be used to select the data used by the job that would get the highest benefit when migrated to an SSD media.

SSD Data Analysis - Jobs Sorted by Disk Read Time Performance member I289130103 in library SB01 Time period from 2009-10-16-13.01.05.000000 to 2009-10-16-14.00.00.000000					
Job Name	CPU Total Seconds	Disk Read Wait Total Seconds	Disk Read Wait Average Seconds	Disk Read Wait /CPU	
POP004CU/DB2ADMIN/460669	30.426	3,468.207	.006636	114	
POP004CU/DB2ADMIN/516129	33.850	3,461.419	.006237	102	
POP004CU/DB2ADMIN/387280	48.067	3,427.064	.006548	71	
POP004CU/DB2ADMIN/499676	71.951	3,395.609	.007191	47	
POP010CU/DB2ADMIN/487761	33.360	3,295.738	.006799	99	
POP004CU/DB2ADMIN/516028	78.774	2,962.103	.007409	38	
POP004CU/DB2ADMIN/516000	79.025	2,961.518	.007441	37	
POP004CU/DB2ADMIN/516010	78.640	2,957.033	.007412	38	

Figure A-5 IBM i SSD Analyzer Tool: DETAIL report

**Note:** Contact your IBM Representative or IBM Business Partner to discuss an IBM i SSD analysis.

## IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center

IBM Tivoli Productivity Center (previously known as the TotalStorage Productivity Center) is a standard software package for managing complex storage environments. One subcomponent of this package is IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center for Disk (TPC for Disk), which is designed to help reduce the complexity of managing SAN storage devices by allowing administrators to configure, manage, and performance monitor storage from a single console.

TPC for Disk is designed to:

- ▶ Configure multiple storage devices from a single console
- ▶ Monitor and track the performance of SAN-attached Storage Management Interface Specification (SMI-S) compliant storage devices
- ▶ Enable proactive performance management by setting performance thresholds based on performance metrics and the generation of alerts

IBM Tivoli Productivity Center for Disk centralizes the management of networked storage devices that implement the SNIA SMI-S specification, which includes the IBM System Storage DS family, XIV®, N series, and SAN Volume Controller (SVC). It is designed to help reduce storage management complexity and costs while improving data availability, centralizing management of storage devices through open standards (SMI-S), enhancing storage administrator productivity, increasing storage resource utilization, and offering proactive management of storage devices. IBM Tivoli Productivity Center for Disk offers the ability to discover storage devices using Service Location Protocol (SLP) and provides the ability to configure devices, in addition to gathering event and errors logs and launching device-specific applications or elements.

For more information, see *Managing Disk Subsystems using IBM TotalStorage Productivity Center*, SG24-7097. Also, refer to the following address:

<http://www.ibm.com/servers/storage/software/center/index.html>

## IBM Certified Secure Data Overwrite

STG Lab Services offers IBM Certified Secure Data Overwrite service for the DS8700 and DS8000 series, and ESS models 800 and 750. This offering is meant to overcome the following issues:

- ▶ Deleted data does not mean gone forever. Usually, deleted means that the pointers to the data are invalidated and the space can be reused. Until the space is reused, the data remains on the media and what remains can be read with the right tools.
- ▶ Regulations and business prudence require that the data actually be removed when the media is no longer available.

The service executes a multipass overwrite of the data disks in the storage system:

- ▶ It operates on the entire box.
- ▶ It is three pass overwrite, which is compliant with the DoD 5220.20-M procedure for purging disks.
  - Writes all sectors with zeros.
  - Writes all sectors with ones.
  - Writes all sectors with a pseudo-random pattern.
  - Each pass reads back a random sample of sectors to verify the writes are done.
- ▶ There is a fourth pass of zeros with InitSurf.
- ▶ IBM also purges client data from the server and HMC disks.

## Certificate of completion

After the overwrite process has been completed, IBM delivers a complete report containing:

- ▶ A certificate of completion listing:
  - The serial number of the systems overwritten.
  - The dates and location the service was performed.
  - The overwrite level.
  - The names of the engineers delivering the service and compiling the report.
- ▶ A description of the service and the report
- ▶ On a per data drive serial number basis:
  - The G-list prior to overwrite.
  - The pattern run against the drive.
  - The success or failure of each pass.
  - The G-list after the overwrite.
  - Whether the overwrite was successful or not for each drive.

Figure A-6 shows a sample report by drive.

DS8000 PROD1 (Serial # 12345)									
Disk Drive	Disk Drive Serial# (Electronic)	DDM Barcode Serial# (Visible)	Overwrite Status	Sector Defects at Start	Sector Defects After 1st Pass	Sector Defects After 2nd Pass	Sector Defects After 3rd Pass	Sector Defects After 4th Pass	
pdisk0	3HY6LFKZ	350A8459	Successful	0	0	0	0	0	
pdisk1	3HY6N92M	350B055D	Successful	0	0	0	0	0	
pdisk2	3HY6FV79	350B0756	Successful	0	0	0	0	0	
pdisk3	3HY6N1NA	350B075C	Successful	0	0	0	0	0	
pdisk4	3HY6MAQQ	350B0D07	Successful	0	0	0	0	0	
pdisk5	3HY6P1E5	350B0D3D	Successful	0	0	0	0	0	
pdisk6	3HY6P2PG	350B0D79	Successful	0	0	0	0	0	
pdisk7	3HY6P2QB	350B0D85	Successful	0	0	0	0	0	
pdisk8	3HY6P2PR	350B0D86	Successful	0	0	0	0	0	
pdisk9	3HY6P16J	350B0D86	Successful	0	0	0	0	0	
pdisk10	3HY6P2BX	350B0DA9	Successful	0	0	0	0	0	
pdisk11	3HY6P3LF	350B0DCF	Successful	0	0	0	0	0	
pdisk12	3HY6P3L2	350B0DDC	Successful	21	21	21	21	21	
pdisk13	3HY6M5ZX	350B0DDD	Successful	0	0	0	0	0	
pdisk14	3HY6P3K6	350B0DDE	Successful	0	0	0	0	0	
pdisk15	3HY6P3JW	350B0DE2	Successful	0	0	0	0	0	
pdisk16	3HY6NZF	350B0DE4	Successful	0	0	0	0	0	
pdisk18	3HY6NPQM	350B0E0C	Successful	0	0	0	0	0	
pdisk19	3HY6NYZO	350B0E0D	Failed	0	0	–	–	–	
pdisk20	3HY6P484	350B0E1F	Successful	0	0	0	0	0	
pdisk21	3HY6P4NZ	350B0E72	Successful	0	0	0	0	0	
pdisk22	3HY6P5JB	350B0E73	Successful	0	0	0	0	0	
	3HY6SVDT	350BF7DC		0	0	0	0	0	
	~CV	350C91		0	0	0	0	0	

Figure A-6 Sample report by drive

## Drives erased

As a result of the erase service, all disks in the storage system are erased. Figure A-7 shows all the drives that are covered by the Secure Data Overwrite Service.

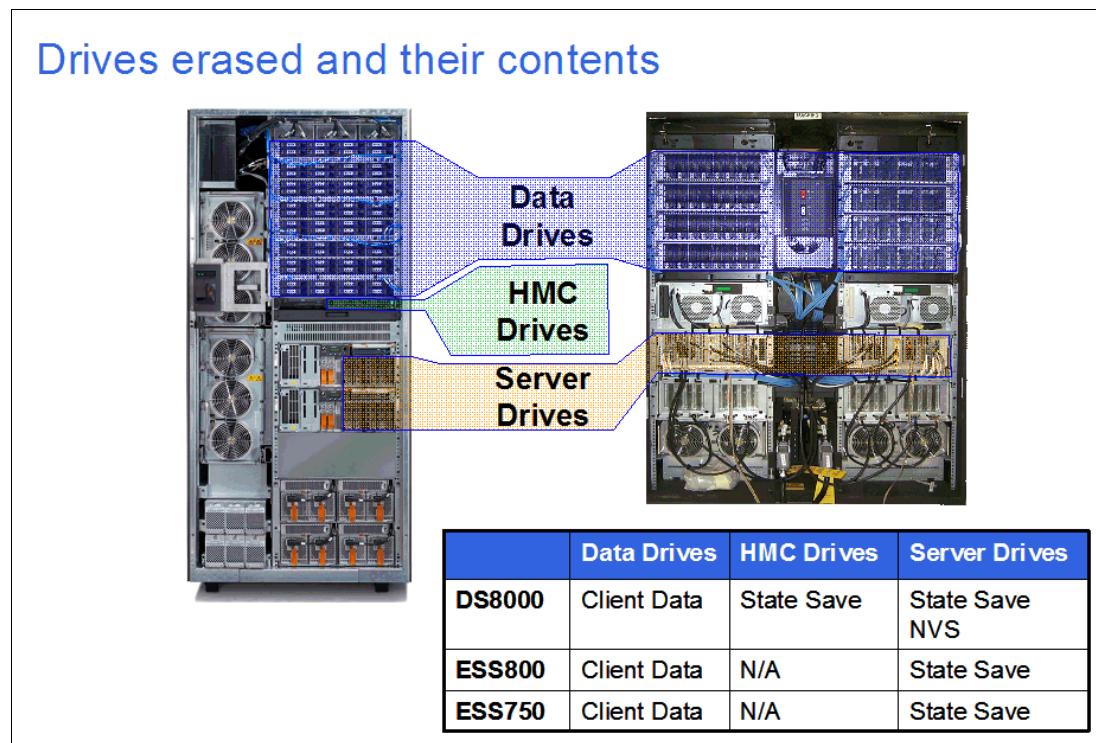


Figure A-7 Drives erased and their contents

## IBM Global Technology Services: Service offerings

IBM can assist you in deploying IBM System Storage DS870 subsystems, IBM Tivoli Productivity Center, and SAN Volume Controller solutions. IBM Global Technology Services has the right knowledge and expertise to reduce your system and data migration workload, as well as the time, money, and resources needed to achieve a system-managed environment.

For more information about available services, contact your IBM representative or IBM Business Partner, or visit the following addresses:

<http://www.ibm.com/services/>  
<http://www.ibm.com/servers/storage/services/disk.html>

For details about available IBM Business Continuity and Recovery Services, contact your IBM Representative or visit the following address:

<http://www.ibm.com/services/continuity>

For details about educational offerings related to specific products, visit the following address:

<http://www.ibm.com/services/learning/index.html>

Select your country, and then select the product as the category.

## **IBM STG Lab Services: Service offerings**

In addition to the IBM Global Technology Services, the STG Lab Services and Training teams are set up to assist you with one-off, customer tailored solutions and services that will help you in your daily work with IBM Hardware and Software components. For more information about this topic, go to the following address:

<http://www.ibm.com/systems/services/labservices/>

# Abbreviations and acronyms

<b>AAL</b>	Arrays Across Loops	<b>EB</b>	Exabyte
<b>AC</b>	Alternating Current	<b>ECC</b>	Error Checking and Correction
<b>AL-PA</b>	Arbitrated Loop Physical Addressing	<b>EDF</b>	Extended Distance FICON
<b>AMP</b>	Adaptive Multistream Prefetching	<b>EEH</b>	Enhanced Error Handling
<b>API</b>	Application Programming Interface	<b>EPO</b>	Emergency Power Off
<b>ASCII</b>	American Standard Code for Information Interchange	<b>EPOW</b>	Emergency Power Off Warning
<b>ASIC</b>	Application Specific Integrated Circuit	<b>ESCON</b>	Enterprise Systems Connection
<b>B2B</b>	Business-to-Business VPN	<b>ESS</b>	Enterprise Storage Server
<b>BBU</b>	Battery Backup Unit	<b>ESSNI</b>	Enterprise Storage Server Network Interface
<b>CEC</b>	Central Electronics Complex	<b>FATA</b>	Fibre Channel Attached Technology Adapter
<b>CG</b>	Consistency Group	<b>FB</b>	Fixed Block
<b>CHPID</b>	Channel Path ID	<b>FC</b>	Flash Copy
<b>CIM</b>	Common Information Model	<b>FCAL</b>	Fibre Channel Arbitrated Loop
<b>CKD</b>	Count Key Data	<b>FCIC</b>	Fibre Channel Interface Card
<b>CoD</b>	Capacity on Demand	<b>FCP</b>	Fibre Channel Protocol
<b>CPU</b>	Central Processing Unit	<b>FCSE</b>	FlashCopy Space Efficient
<b>CSDO</b>	Certified Secure Data Overwrite	<b>FDE</b>	Full Disk Encryption
<b>CUIR</b>	Control Unit Interface Reconfiguration	<b>FFDC</b>	First Failure Data Capture
<b>DA</b>	Device Adapter	<b>FICON</b>	Fiber Connection
<b>DASD</b>	Direct Access Storage Device	<b>FIR</b>	Fault Isolation Register
<b>DC</b>	Direct Current	<b>FRR</b>	Failure Recovery Routines
<b>DDM</b>	Disk Drive Module	<b>FTP</b>	File Transfer Protocol
<b>DFS</b>	Distributed File System	<b>GB</b>	Gigabyte
<b>DFW</b>	DASD Fast Write	<b>GC</b>	Global Copy
<b>DHCP</b>	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol	<b>GM</b>	Global Mirror
<b>DMA</b>	Direct Memory Access	<b>GSA</b>	Global Storage Architecture
<b>DMZ</b>	De-Militarized Zone	<b>GUI</b>	Graphical User Interface
<b>DNS</b>	Domain Name System	<b>HA</b>	Host Adapter
<b>DPR</b>	Dynamic Path Reconnect	<b>HACMP</b>	High Availability Cluster Multi-Processing
<b>DPS</b>	Dynamic Path Selection	<b>HBA</b>	Host Bus Adapter
<b>DSCIMCLI</b>	Data Storage Common Information Model Command-Line Interface	<b>HCD</b>	Hardware Configuration Definition
<b>DSCLI</b>	Data Storage Command-Line Interface	<b>HMC</b>	Hardware Management Console
<b>DSFA</b>	Data Storage Feature Activation	<b>HSM</b>	Hardware Security Module
<b>DVE</b>	Dynamic Volume Expansion	<b>HTTP</b>	Hypertext Transfer Protocol
<b>EAV</b>	Extended Address Volume	<b>HTTPS</b>	Hypertext Transfer Protocol over SSL
		<b>IBM</b>	International Business Machines Corporation

<b>IKE</b>	Internet Key Exchange	<b>NAT</b>	Network Address Translation
<b>IKS</b>	Isolated Key Server	<b>NFS</b>	Network File System
<b>IOCDs</b>	Input/Output Configuration Data Set	<b>NIMOL</b>	Network Installation Management on Linux
<b>IOPS</b>	Input Output Operations per Second	<b>NTP</b>	Network Time Protocol
<b>IOSQ</b>	Input/Output Supervisor Queue	<b>NVRAM</b>	Non-Volatile Random Access Memory
<b>IPL</b>	Initial Program Load	<b>NVS</b>	Non-Volatile Storage
<b>IPSec</b>	Internet Protocol Security	<b>OEL</b>	Operating Environment License
<b>IPv4</b>	Internet Protocol version 4	<b>OLTP</b>	Online Transaction Processing
<b>IPv6</b>	Internet Protocol version 6	<b>PATA</b>	Parallel Attached Technology Adapter
<b>ITSO</b>	International Technical Support Organization	<b>PAV</b>	Parallel Access Volumes
<b>IWC</b>	Intelligent Write Caching	<b>PB</b>	Petabyte
<b>JBOD</b>	Just a Bunch of Disks	<b>PCI-X</b>	Peripheral Component Interconnect Extended
<b>JFS</b>	Journaling File System	<b>PCI Express</b>	Peripheral Component Interconnect Express
<b>KB</b>	Kilobyte	<b>PCM</b>	Path Control Module
<b>Kb</b>	Kilobit	<b>PFA</b>	Predictive Failure Analysis
<b>Kbps</b>	Kilobits per second	<b>PHYP</b>	POWER® Systems Hypervisor
<b>KVM</b>	Keyboard-Video-Mouse	<b>PLD</b>	Power Line Disturbance
<b>L2TP</b>	Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol	<b>PM</b>	Preserve Mirror
<b>LBA</b>	Logical Block Addressing	<b>PMB</b>	Physical Memory Block
<b>LCU</b>	Logical Control Unit	<b>PPRC</b>	Peer-to-Peer Remote Copy
<b>LDAP</b>	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol	<b>PPS</b>	Primary Power Supply
<b>LED</b>	Light Emitting Diode	<b>PSTN</b>	Public Switched Telephone Network
<b>LFU</b>	Least Frequently Used	<b>PTC</b>	Point-in-Time Copy
<b>LIC</b>	Licensed Internal Code	<b>RAM</b>	Random Access Memory
<b>LIP</b>	Loop initialization Protocol	<b>RAS</b>	Reliability, Availability, Serviceability
<b>LMC</b>	Licensed Machine Code	<b>RIO</b>	Remote Input/Output
<b>LPAR</b>	Logical Partition	<b>RPC</b>	Rack Power Control
<b>LRU</b>	Least Recently Used	<b>RPM</b>	Revolutions per Minute
<b>LSS</b>	Logical SubSystem	<b>RPO</b>	Recovery Point Objective
<b>LUN</b>	Logical Unit Number	<b>SAN</b>	Storage Area Network
<b>LVM</b>	Logical Volume Manager	<b>SARC</b>	Sequential Adaptive Replacement Cache
<b>MB</b>	Megabyte	<b>SATA</b>	Serial Attached Technology Adapter
<b>Mb</b>	Megabit	<b>SCSI</b>	Small Computer System Interface
<b>Mbps</b>	Megabits per second	<b>SDD</b>	Subsystem Device Driver
<b>MFU</b>	Most Frequently Used	<b>SDM</b>	System Data Mover
<b>MGM</b>	Metro Global Mirror	<b>SE</b>	Storage Enclosure
<b>MIB</b>	Management Information Block	<b>SFI</b>	Storage Facility Image
<b>MM</b>	Metro Mirror		
<b>MPIO</b>	Multipath Input/Output		
<b>MRPD</b>	Machine Reported Product Data		
<b>MRU</b>	Most Recently Used		

<b>SFTP</b>	SSH File Transfer Protocol	<b>YB</b>	Yottabyte
<b>SMIS</b>	Storage Management Initiative Specification	<b>ZB</b>	Zettabyte
<b>SMP</b>	Symmetric Multiprocessor	<b>zHFF</b>	High Performance FICON for z
<b>SMS</b>	Storage Management Subsystem	<b>zIIP</b>	z9 Integrated Information Processor
<b>SMT</b>	Simultaneous Multithreading		
<b>SMTP</b>	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol		
<b>SNIA</b>	Storage Networking Industry Association		
<b>SNMP</b>	Simple Network Monitoring Protocol		
<b>SOI</b>	Silicon on Insulator		
<b>SP</b>	Service Processor		
<b>SPCN</b>	System Power Control Network		
<b>SPE</b>	Small Programming Enhancement		
<b>SRM</b>	Storage Resource Management		
<b>SSD</b>	Solid State Drive		
<b>SSH</b>	Secure Shell		
<b>SSIC</b>	System Storage Interoperation Center		
<b>SSID</b>	Subsystem Identifier		
<b>SSL</b>	Secure Sockets Layer		
<b>SSPC</b>	System Storage Productivity Center		
<b>SVC</b>	SAN Volume Controller		
<b>TB</b>	Terabyte		
<b>TCE</b>	Translation Control Entry		
<b>TCO</b>	Total Cost of Ownership		
<b>TCP/IP</b>	Transmission Control Protocol / Internet Protocol		
<b>TKLM</b>	Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager		
<b>TPC</b>	Tivoli Storage Productivity Center		
<b>TPC-BE</b>	Tivoli Storage Productivity Center Basic Edition		
<b>TPC-R</b>	Tivoli Storage Productivity Center for Replication		
<b>TPC-SE</b>	Tivoli Storage Productivity Center Standard Edition		
<b>UCB</b>	Unit Control Block		
<b>UDID</b>	Unit Device Identifier		
<b>UPS</b>	Uninterruptable Power Supply		
<b>VPN</b>	Virtual Private Network		
<b>VTOC</b>	Volume Table of Contents		
<b>WLM</b>	Workload Manager		
<b>WUI</b>	Web User Interface		
<b>WWPN</b>	Worldwide Port Name		
<b>XRC</b>	Extended Remote Copy		



# Related publications

The publications listed in this section are considered particularly suitable for a more detailed discussion of the topics covered in this book.

## IBM Redbooks publications

For information about ordering these publications, see “How to get IBM Redbooks publications” on page 594. Note that some of the documents referenced here may be available in softcopy only.

- ▶ *DS8000 Copy Services for IBM System z*, SG24-6787
- ▶ *DS8000: Introducing Solid State Drives*, REDP-4522
- ▶ *DS8000 Performance Monitoring and Tuning*, SG24-7146
- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8000: Copy Services in Open Environments*, SG24-6788
- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8000: LDAP Authentication*, REDP-4505
- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8000: Remote Pair FlashCopy (Preserve Mirror)*, REDP-4504
- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8700 Disk Encryption Implementation and Usage Guidelines*, REDP-4500
- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8700 Easy Tier*, REDP-4667
- ▶ *IBM System Storage Productivity Center Deployment Guide*, SG24-7560
- ▶ *IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center V4.1 Release Guide*, SG24-7725
- ▶ *Migrating to IBM System Storage DS8000*, SG24-7432

## Other publications

These publications are also relevant as further information sources. Note that some of the documents referenced here may be available in softcopy only.

- ▶ *Device Support Facilities: User's Guide and Reference*, GC35-0033
- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8000: Command-Line Interface User's Guide*, SC26-7916
- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8000 Host Systems Attachment Guide*, SC26-7917
- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS8000 Introduction and Planning Guide*, GC35-0515
- ▶ *IBM System Storage DS Open Application Programming Interface Reference*, GC35-0516
- ▶ *IBM System Storage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver User's Guide*, SC30-4131
- ▶ *IBM System Storage Productivity Center Introduction and Planning Guide*, SC23-8824
- ▶ *IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center V4.1 Release Guide*, SG24-7725
- ▶ *Outperforming LRU with an adaptive replacement cache algorithm*, by N. Megiddo, et al., in IEEE Computer, volume 37, number 4, pages 58–65, 2004
- ▶ Snader, *VPNs Illustrated: Tunnels, VPNs, and IPsec*, Pearson Education, 2006, ISBN 8131706702
- ▶ *System Storage Productivity Center Software Installation and User's Guide*, SC23-8823

## Online resources

These websites and URLs are also relevant as further information sources:

- ▶ Documentation for the DS8000  
<http://publib.boulder.ibm.com/infocenter/dsicelp/ds8000ic/index.jsp>
- ▶ IBM Disk Storage Feature Activation (DSFA) website  
<http://www.ibm.com/storage/dsfa>
- ▶ System Storage Interoperation Center (SSIC)  
<http://www.ibm.com/systems/support/storage/config/ssic>

## How to get IBM Redbooks publications

You can search for, view, or download IBM Redbooks publications, Redpapers, Hints and Tips, draft publications and Additional materials, as well as order hardcopy IBM Redbooks publications or CD-ROMs, at this website:

[ibm.com/redbooks](http://ibm.com/redbooks)

## Help from IBM

IBM Support and downloads

[ibm.com/support](http://ibm.com/support)

IBM Global Services

[ibm.com/services](http://ibm.com/services)

# Index

## Numerics

2805 53  
2805-MC4 195, 264  
3390 Model A 392, 476

## A

AAL 77  
  benefits 48  
Accelerated Graphics Port (AGP) 33  
activate licenses  
  applying activation codes using the DS CLI 249  
  functions 236  
Adaptive Multi-stream Prefetching (AMP) 17, 37, 155  
address groups 107  
Advanced Function Licenses 218  
  activation 218  
affinity 91  
agile view 464  
AIX 420  
  boot support 431  
  I/O access methods 428  
  LVM configuration 427  
  WWPN 421  
AIX MPIO 424  
alias devices 347  
allocation 99  
allocation unit 97  
AMP 17, 37, 155  
applying activation codes using the DS CLI 249  
architecture 32  
array sites 88  
arrays 46, 88  
arrays across loops (AAL) 77  
audit logging 285  
Audittrace 286  
Audittrace.log 286  
authorization 236

## B

base frame 30, 56  
Basic Disk 415  
Basic HyperSwap 495–496  
battery backup assemblies 51  
battery backup unit (BBU) 30–31  
battery pack 23  
BBU 30–31  
boot support 401  
Break Point Value (BPV) 481  
bridge 35  
business continuity 6, 11  
Business-to-Business 215

## C

cables 193  
cache 23, 153  
  pollution 155  
caching algorithm 153  
Call Home 15, 72, 220, 260, 541  
Capacity Magic 152, 580  
Capacity on Demand 25, 569  
CEC 8, 23, 31, 37, 56  
Central Electronic Complex (CEC) 8, 23, 55–56  
cfgmgr 430  
Channel Control Word (CCW) 492  
Channel Extender 492  
chfbvol 378  
Chipkill 60  
chpass 230  
chuser 230  
chvg 430  
CIM 210  
  agent 196, 215  
CIMOM 281, 283  
CIMOM discovery 284  
CKD volumes 94  
  allocation and deletion 99  
clear key mode 4  
CLOCK 156  
commands  
  structure 363  
community name 540  
components 29  
concurrent copy session timeout 344  
configuration  
  FC port 443  
  flow 260  
  volume 444  
configuration state 103  
configuring 103  
configuring the DS8000 370, 386  
configuring using DS CLI  
  configuring the DS8000 370, 386  
consistency group 125  
  timeout 345  
Consistency Group FlashCopy 120  
Control Unit Initiated Reconfiguration see CUIR  
cooling  
  disk enclosure 50  
  rack cooling fans 79  
cooperative caching 149  
Copy Services  
  event traps 542  
  interfaces 135  
CSCAN 156  
CUIR 71  
Cylinder Managed Space 477

## D

DA 42  
Fibre Channel 145  
DA pair 203  
daemon 538  
DASD type 490  
data migration  
    Disk Magic 581  
data set FlashCopy 120, 125  
datapath query device command 409, 411, 422  
DB2 155  
DDM 48, 73, 145  
    hot pluggable 78  
DDR2 37  
deadlock 4  
deconfiguring 103  
default profile 361  
demand paging 153  
demand-paged data 40  
destage 32, 97  
device adapter (DA) 24, 35, 42, 203  
Device Mapper for multipath I/O (DM-MPIO) 436  
Device Special Files 464  
device specific modules 406  
DEVSERV 479  
DFSA 238  
diagela 59  
Diagnostic Error Log Analysis (diagela) 59  
Disable Transfer Ready 19  
disk drive set 10–11, 203  
disk drives  
    capacity 201  
disk enclosure 30, 43  
    power and cooling 50  
Disk Magic 152, 581  
disk manager 411  
Disk Storage Feature Activation (DSFA) 238  
disk subsystem 42  
disk virtualization 86  
Diskpart 411  
DM-MPIO 436  
DoD 5220.20-M 585  
DPR 70  
DS API 114  
DS CIM Command-Line Interface (DSCIMCLI) 215  
DS CLI 114, 137, 196, 212  
    applying activation codes 249  
    command structure 363  
    configuring second HMC 233  
    console  
    default profile 361  
    help 366  
    highlights 360  
    interactive mode 363–364  
    operating systems 360  
    return codes 365  
    script command mode 364  
    script mode 363  
    single-shot mode 363  
    user accounts 361  
user assistance 366  
user management 225  
DS Command-Line Interface see DS CLI  
DS GUI 296  
DS HMC  
    external 232  
    planning 207  
DS HMC planning  
    activation of Advanced Function Licenses 218  
    host prerequisites 218  
    latest DS8000 microcode 218  
    maintenance windows 219  
    time synchronization 219  
DS Open API 138, 215  
DS SM 114  
    user management 228  
DS Storage Manager 136  
DS Storage Manager GUI 32  
DS6000  
    business continuity 11  
    Capacity Magic 580  
    dynamic LUN/volume creation and deletion 15  
    large LUN and CKD volume support 15  
    simplified LUN masking 16  
    SNMP configuration 541  
    user management using DS CLI 225  
DS8000  
    activate license functions 236  
    activation of Advanced Function Licenses 218  
    AIX 420  
    AIX MPIO 424  
    applying activation codes using the DS CLI 249  
    architecture 32  
    arrays 46  
    base frame 30  
    battery backup assemblies 51  
    boot support 401  
    business continuity 6  
    Capacity Magic 580  
    components 29  
    configuration  
        flow 260  
    configuring 370, 386  
    considerations prior to installation 186  
    data placement 157  
    DDM 48  
    disk enclosure 43  
    Disk Magic 581  
    disk subsystem 42  
    distinguish Linux from other operating systems 432  
    DS CLI console  
    DS CLI highlights 360  
    DS HMC  
        planning 207  
    DS8100 Model 921 23  
    ESCON 193  
    existing reference materials 432  
    expansion frame 31  
    external DS HMC 232  
    FC port configuration 443

Fibre Channel disk drives 9  
 Fibre Channel/FICON 193  
 FICON 19  
 floor type and loading 188  
 frames 30  
 general considerations 400  
 HBA and operating system settings 403  
 host adapter 9  
 host interface and cables 193  
 host prerequisites 218  
 I/O priority queuing 18  
 IBM Redbooks publications 593  
 input voltage 191  
 Linux 431  
 Linux issues 434  
 maintenance windows 219  
 microcode 218  
 modular expansion 30  
 multipathing support 402  
 Multiple Allegiance 18  
 network connectivity planning 194  
 online resources 594  
 OpenVMS 443  
 OpenVMS volume shadowing 446  
 PAV 18  
 performance 17, 141  
 planning for growth 205  
 power and cooling 50  
 power connectors 191  
 power consumption 192  
 power control features 192  
 Power Line Disturbance (PLD) 192  
 power requirements 191  
 POWER5 8, 39, 146  
 PPS 50  
 prerequisites and enhancements 474  
 processor complex 38  
 project planning 263, 295  
 RAS 55, 57  
 Remote Mirror and Copy connectivity 200  
 remote power control 198  
 remote support 196  
 room space and service clearance 190  
 RPC 50  
 SAN connection 198  
 scalability 15
 

- benefits 28
- for performance 28

 SDD 421  
 SDD for Windows 404  
 server-based 37  
 service 15  
 service processor 80  
 setup 15  
 SMP 37  
 spare 46  
 sparing considerations 201  
 SPCN 40, 80  
 stripe size 162  
 supported environment 11  
 System z performance 18  
 technical environment 209  
 time synchronization 219  
 troubleshooting and monitoring 441  
 updated and detailed information 400  
 volume configuration 444  
 VSE/ESA 491  
 Windows 403  
 Windows Server 2003 VDS support 416  
 z/OS considerations 475  
 z/OS Metro/Global Mirror 13  
 z/VM considerations 490  
 DS8100
 

- Model 921 23

 DS8700
 

- disk drive set 10
- EPO 32
- expansion enclosure 46
- I/O enclosure 41
- processor memory 40
- rack operator window 32
- RIO-G 41
- service processor 40
- SPCN
- storage capacity 10
- switched FC-AL 45

 DSCB 477  
 dscimcli 196  
 DSFA 238, 241  
 DSMs 406  
 dual parity 152  
 Dynamic alias 347  
 Dynamic CHPID Management (DCM) 482  
 dynamic data relocation 16  
 Dynamic Disk 415  
 Dynamic Extent Pool Merge 16, 92  
 dynamic LUN/volume creation and deletion 15  
 Dynamic Path Reconnect (DPR) 70  
 Dynamic Volume Expansion (DVE) 103, 111, 378, 392, 411, 429, 477  
 dynamic volume migration 105  
 Dynamic Volume Relocation (DVR) 16, 105, 295, 359

## E

EAM 102  
 eam rotateexts 376  
 eam rotatevols 376  
 Early Power-Off Warning (EPOW) 41, 62  
 Earthquake Resistance Kit 84  
 Easy Tier 5, 14, 92, 101, 105, 325  
 EAV 94, 174  
 ECC 60, 74  
 Element Manager 210  
 emergency power off (EPO) 81  
 encryption 4  
 Enterprise Choice 23
 

- warranty 236

 Enterprise Storage Server Network Interface server (ESSNI) 209  
 EPO 32, 81

EPO switch 32, 81  
Error Checking and Correcting (ECC) 60  
ESCON 69, 193  
ESS 800  
  Capacity Magic 580  
ESSNI 209  
Ethernet  
  switches 51  
Ethernet adapter 29  
expansion frame 22, 24, 31, 56  
Extended Address Volumes (EAV) 6, 16, 94, 475–476  
extended attribute DSCB 478  
Extended Distance 5  
Extended Distance FICON 178–179, 492  
Extended Remote Copy (XRC) 13, 133  
extent pool merge 101, 295, 359  
extent pools 91, 96, 164  
extent rotation 100  
Extent Space Efficient 16  
Extent Space Efficient Volumes 96  
extent type 90–91  
external DS HMC 232

## F

fallback 66  
failover 65  
FATA 164  
FATA disk drives  
  capacity 201  
  differences with FC 151  
  performance 151  
FC port configuration 443  
FC-AL  
  non-switched 44  
  overcoming shortcomings 143  
  switched 9  
fcmsutil 463  
FCP 23  
FDE 6, 10, 25, 81  
feature conversion 203  
Fibre Channel  
  distances 49  
  host adapters 49  
Fibre Channel/FICON 193  
FICON 9, 19, 23, 32, 69  
  host adapters 49  
File Transfer Protocol (FTP) 560  
fixed block LUNs 94  
FlashCopy 11–12, 114, 526  
  benefits 117  
  Consistency Group 120  
  data set 120  
  establish on existing RMC primary 120, 122  
  inband commands 12, 125  
  incremental 12, 119  
  Multiple Relationship 12, 120  
  no background copy 117  
  options 118  
  persistent 124  
  Refresh Target Volume 119

FlashCopy SE 12, 115  
floating spare 78  
floor type and loading 188  
Fluxbox 300  
frames 30  
  base 30  
  expansion 31  
Full Disk Encryption (FDE) 6, 9–10, 25, 81, 204, 238, 570  
functions  
  activate license 236

## G

GDS for MSCS 420  
general considerations 400  
Geographically Dispersed Sites for MSCS see GDS for MSCS  
Global Copy 11, 13, 114, 127, 134, 524  
Global Mirror 11, 13, 114, 128, 135  
  how it works 130  
go-to-sync 128

## H

HA 9, 49  
HACMP-Extended Distance (HACMP/XD) 149  
hard drive rebuild 61  
Hardware Management Console (HMC) 10, 194, 197  
help 367  
  DS CLI 366  
High Performance FICON 5  
High Performance FICON for z (zHPF) 180, 494  
Historic Data Retention 284  
hit ratio 40  
HMC 15, 32, 51, 57, 71, 136, 194  
HMC planning  
  technical environment 209  
host  
  interface 193  
  prerequisite microcode 218  
host adapter see HA  
host adapters 9, 22  
  Fibre Channel 49  
  FICON 49  
  four port 146  
host attachment 108  
host considerations  
  AIX 420  
  AIX MPIO 424  
  boot support 401  
  distinguish Linux from other operating systems 432  
  existing reference materials 432  
  FC port configuration 443  
  general considerations 400  
  HBA and operating system settings 403  
  Linux 431  
  Linux issues 434  
  multipathing support 402  
  OpenVMS 443  
  OpenVMS volume shadowing 446  
  prerequisites and enhancements 474

SDD 421  
SDD for Windows 404  
support issues 432  
supported configurations (RPQ) 402  
System z 474  
troubleshooting and monitoring 441  
updated and detailed information 400  
VDS support 416  
volume configuration 444  
VSE/ESA 491  
Windows 403  
z/OS considerations 475  
z/VM considerations 490  
hosttype 382  
hybrid extent pool 325  
HyperPAV 18, 173–174, 347, 485–486  
HyperPAV license 237  
HyperSwap 6, 496  
Hypervisor 58  
Hypervisor (PHYP) 57

## I

I/O enclosure 41, 50  
I/O latency 40  
I/O priority queuing 18, 177  
I/O tower 26  
i5/OS 18, 96  
IASP 506  
IBM Certified Secure Data Overwrite 16  
IBM FlashCopy SE 12, 96, 373, 386  
IBM Redbooks publications 593  
IBM Registration 474  
IBM Subsystem Device Driver (SDD) 402  
IBM System Storage Interoperability Center (SSIC) 139, 219, 400, 474  
IBM System Storage N series 160  
IBM Tivoli Storage Productivity Center Basic Edition (TPC BE) 52  
IBM TotalStorage Multipath Subsystem Device Driver see SDD  
IBM TotalStorage Productivity Center 10  
IBM TotalStorage Productivity Center for Data 265  
IBM TotalStorage Productivity Center for Disk 265  
IKS 10, 53, 83  
impact 97  
inband commands 12, 125  
increase capacity 351  
Incremental FlashCopy 12, 119  
Independent Auxiliary Storage Pool 506  
Independent Auxiliary Storage Pools see IASP  
index scan 155  
indicator 236  
Information Unit (IU) 492  
initckdvol 98  
initfbvol 98  
Input Output Adapter (IOA) 501  
Input Output Processor (IOP) 501  
input voltage 191  
install group 7, 11, 203  
installation

DS8000 checklist 186  
Intelligent Write Caching (IWC) 6, 37, 40, 155  
interactive mode  
    DS CLI 363–364  
inter-disk allocation 428  
internal fabric 9  
IOCDS 70  
IOPS 150  
IOS 496  
ioscan 464  
IOSQ Time 175  
IPv6 6, 51, 220–221  
isolated key server (IKS) 10, 53  
IU Pacing 494  
IWC 6, 37, 40, 155

## L

lane 34  
large LUN and CKD volume support 15  
lateral change 246  
LCU 343  
LCU type 344  
LDAP authentication 359  
LDAP based authentication 224  
Least Recently Used (LRU) 154  
Legacy DSF 464  
licensed function  
    authorization 236  
    indicator 236  
Linux 431  
Linux issues 434  
logical configuration 187  
logical control unit (LCU) 70, 106  
logical size 96  
logical subsystem see LSS  
logical volumes 93  
long busy state 344  
long busy wait 149  
longwave 49  
lsfbvol 411  
lshostvol 452  
LSS 105  
lsuser 226  
LUN polling 453  
LUNs 526  
    allocation and deletion 99  
    fixed block 94  
    masking 16  
    System i 96  
LVM  
    configuration 427  
    mirroring 428  
    striping 161, 427

## M

machine reported product data (MPRD) 559  
machine type 23  
maintenance windows 219  
man page 367

Management Information Base (MIB) 538  
managepwfile 227, 362  
manual mode 105  
memory DIMM 37  
Metro Mirror 11, 13, 114, 126, 134, 524  
Metro/Global Mirror 11  
MIB 538, 540  
microcode  
    update 72  
Microsoft Cluster 411  
Microsoft Multi Path Input Output 406  
Migrate Volume 92, 105  
mirroring 428  
mkckdvol 390  
mkfbvol 375  
mkrank 255  
mkuser 230  
Model 941 22  
Model 94E 22  
modified data 32  
modular expansion 30  
Most Recently Used (MRU) 154  
MPIO 406  
MRPD 559  
MSCS 411  
Multicylinder Unit (MCU) 477, 481  
multipath storage solution 407  
multipathing support 402  
Multiple Allegiance 18, 176  
Multiple Global Mirror 13  
Multiple Reader 13, 19  
Multiple Relationship FlashCopy 12, 120  
Multiple Subchannel Sets (MSS) 174  
multirank 164

## N

network connectivity planning 194  
Network Time Protocol (NTP) 219  
NMS 538  
nocopy 164  
non-volatile storage (NVS) 35, 63  
NTP 219  
Nucleus Initialization Program (NIP) 171  
NVS 35, 40, 58, 63

## O

OEL 237  
offloadauditlog 566  
online resources 594  
open systems  
    performance 165  
    sizing 165  
OpenVMS 443  
OpenVMS volume shadowing 446  
Operating Environment License (OEL) 187, 237  
OS/400 data migration 525  
Out of Band Fabric agent 292  
over provisioning 96

## P

Parallel Access Volumes see PAV  
PAV 18, 106  
Payment Card Industry (PCI) 5  
Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard (PCI-DSS) 4  
PCI Express 9, 31, 33, 36  
    adapter 193  
    slot 42  
PCI-DSS 4  
PCI-X 33  
Peer-to-Peer Remote Copy (PPRC) 126  
performance 164  
    data placement 157  
    FATA disk drives 151  
    open systems 165  
        determining the number of paths to a LUN 165  
    where to attach the host 166  
    workload characteristics 157  
z/OS 168  
    connect to System z hosts 168  
    disk array sizing 150  
Performance Accelerator feature 26  
persistent binding 450  
Persistent FlashCopy 124  
physical partition (PP) 162, 428  
physical paths 292  
physical planning 185  
    delivery and staging area 188  
    floor type and loading 188  
    host interface and cables 193  
    input voltage 191  
    network connectivity planning 194  
    planning for growth 205  
    power connectors 191  
    power consumption 192  
    power control features 192  
    Power Line Disturbance (PLD) 192  
    power requirements 191  
    Remote Mirror and Copy connectivity 200  
    remote power control 198  
    remote support 196  
    room space and service clearance 190  
    sparing considerations 201  
    storage area network connection 198  
physical size 96  
planning  
    DS Hardware Management Console 183  
    logical 183  
    physical 183  
    project 183  
planning for growth 205  
power 50  
    BBU 79  
    disk enclosure 50  
    I/O enclosure 50  
    PPS 79  
    processor enclosure 50  
    RPC 79  
    power and cooling 50

BBU 79  
PPS 79  
rack cooling fans 79  
RPC 79  
power connectors 191  
power consumption 192  
power control card 31  
power control features 192  
Power Line Disturbance (PLD) 192  
power loss 67  
power requirements 191  
Power Sequence Controller (PSC) 198  
power subsystem 79  
POWER5 8, 39, 146  
POWER6 4, 7  
PPRC-XD 127  
PPS 30, 79  
Predictive Failure Analysis (PFA) 74  
prefetch wastage 155  
prefetched data 40  
prefetching 153  
Preserve Mirror 113, 118, 123  
Preventive Service Planning (PSP) 474  
primary frame 56  
primary power supply see PPS  
priority queuing 177  
probe job 283  
processor complex 8, 38, 56  
processor enclosure  
  power 50  
project plan  
  considerations prior to installation 186  
  physical planning 185  
  roles 187  
project planning 263, 295  
  information required 187  
PTC 118  
PVLINKS 467

## R

rack operator window 32  
rack power control cards see RPC  
RAID 10 164  
  AAL 77  
  drive failure 77  
  implementation 77  
RAID 5 164  
  drive failure 74  
RAID 6 6, 75, 102  
  implementation 76  
  performance 152  
raidtype 370  
RANDOM 17  
random write 152  
ranks 89, 97  
RAS 55  
  CUIR 71  
  fault avoidance 59  
  First Failure Data Capture 59  
  naming 56

read availability mask 475  
rebuild time 76  
reconfiguring 103  
recovery key 4–5  
Recovery Point Objective see RPO  
Redbooks Web site 594  
  Contact us xviii  
reduction 246  
reference materials 432  
related publications 593  
  help from IBM 594  
  how to get IBM Redbooks publications 594  
  online resources 594  
reliability, availability, serviceability see RAS  
Remote Mirror and Copy function see RMC  
Remote Mirror and Copy see RMC  
Remote Pair FlashCopy 7, 12, 113, 118, 123  
remote power control 198  
remote support 72, 196  
reorg 160  
repalloc 373  
report 283  
repository 96, 373, 386  
repository size 97  
Requests for Price Quotation see RPQ  
return codes  
  DS CLI 365  
reverse restore 119  
RIO-G 31, 36, 41  
  interconnect 61  
RMC 11, 13, 114, 125, 200  
  Global Copy 127  
  Global Mirror 128  
  Metro Mirror 126  
rmsestg 374  
rmuser 230  
role 280  
room space 190  
rotate extents 100, 346  
rotate volumes 346, 375–376, 389  
rotated volume 100  
rotateexts 378, 392  
RPC 30, 50  
RPO 135  
RPQ 203, 402

## S

SAN 69  
SAN LUNs 526  
SAN Volume Controller (SVC) 160  
SARC 17, 40, 153–154  
scalability 15  
  DS8000  
    scalability 148  
script command mode  
  DS CLI 364  
script mode  
  DS CLI 363  
scripts 411  
scrubbing 74

SDD 18, 165, 421  
     for Windows 404  
 SDDSM 407, 410  
 Secure Data Overwrite 585  
 secure key mode 4  
 Security Administrator 224  
 self-healing 60  
 SEQ 17  
 SEQ list 155  
 Sequential prefetching in Adaptive Replacement Cache  
 see SARC  
 server affinity 91  
 server-based SMP 37  
 service clearance 190  
 service processor 40, 80  
 session timeout 345  
 settings  
     HBA and operating system 403  
 SFI 57  
 S-HMC 10  
 shortwave 50  
 showckdvol 390  
 showfbvol 391  
 showpass 227  
 showsestg 373  
 showuser 226  
 shutdown 411  
 silicon on insulator (SOI) 8  
 Simplified FICON Channel Extension 492  
 simplified LUN masking 16  
 simultaneous multi-threading (SMT) 37  
 single-shot mode  
     DS CLI 363  
 sizing  
     open systems 165  
     z/OS 168  
 SMIS 138  
 SMS alert 285  
 SMT 37  
 SMUX 538  
 SNIA 138  
 SNMP 219, 538  
     agent 538–539  
     configuration 541, 549  
     Copy Services event traps 542  
     event 285  
     manage 538  
     notifications 541  
     preparation for the management software 550  
     preparation on the DS HMC 550  
     preparation with DS CLI 550  
     trap 538, 540  
     trap 101 542  
     trap 202 544  
     trap 210 545  
     trap 211 545  
     trap 212 545  
     trap 213 545  
     trap 214 546  
     trap 215 546  
     trap 216 546  
     trap 217 546  
     trap request 538  
 SOI 8  
 Solid State Drive (SSD) 6, 9, 150, 203  
 Space Efficient 163, 370  
 Space Efficient repository 102  
 Space Efficient volume 111  
 spares 46, 78  
     floating 78  
 sparing 78, 201  
 sparing considerations 201  
 spatial ordering 156  
 SPCN 40, 62, 80  
 spindle 164  
 SSD 6  
 SSIC 400, 443  
 SSID 344  
 SSL connection 15  
 SSPC 10, 57, 218, 264  
     install 267  
 SSPC user management 277  
 Standby Capacity on Demand see Standby CoD  
 Standby CoD 11, 25, 205  
 storage area network connection 198  
 storage capacity 10  
 storage complex 56  
 storage facility image 57  
 Storage Hardware Management Console see HMC  
 Storage Management Initiative Specification (SMIS) 138  
 Storage Networking Industry Association (SNIA) 138  
 Storage Pool Striping 91, 100, 158–160, 164, 346, 375, 428  
 Storage Tier Advisor Tool 5  
 storage unit 56  
 storport 407  
 stripe 97  
     size 162  
 striped volume 101  
 Subsystem Device Driver (SDD) 402  
 Subsystem Device Driver DSM 407  
 switched FC-AL 9  
     advantages 44  
     DS8700 implementation 45  
 System Data Mover (SDM) 139  
 System i 526  
     adding multipath volumes using 5250 interface 515  
     adding volumes 502  
     adding volumes to an IASP  
     adding volumes using System i Navigator 516  
     avoiding single points of failure 513  
     cache 522  
     changing from single path to multipath 520  
     changing LUN protection 502  
     configuring multipath 514  
     connecting through SAN switches 523  
     Global Copy 524  
     hardware 500  
     logical volume sizes 500  
     LUNs 96

managing multipath volumes using System i Navigator 517  
Metro Mirror 524  
migration to DS8000 524  
multipath 513  
multipath rules for multiple System i systems or partitions 520  
number of Fibre Channel adapters 522  
OS/400 data migration 525  
planning for arrays and DDMs 521  
protected versus unprotected volumes 501  
protected volume 501  
recommended number of ranks 523  
sharing ranks with other servers 523  
size and number of LUNs 522  
sizing guidelines 521  
software 500  
using 5250 interface 502  
System Management Facilities (SMF) 484  
system power control network see SPCN  
System Storage Productivity Center (SSPC) 10, 57, 194  
System z  
host considerations 474  
performance 18  
prerequisites and enhancements 474

## T

TCO 14  
temporal ordering 156  
Thin Provisioning 7, 96  
Three Site BC 266  
time synchronization 219  
Tivoli Enterprise Console 285  
Tivoli Key Lifecycle Manager (TKLM) 10, 53  
Tivoli Productivity Center 584  
Tivoli Storage Productivity Center for Replication (TPC-R) 114  
TKLM 10, 53  
tools  
Capacity Magic 580  
topology 10  
total cost of ownership (TCO) 14  
TotalStorage Productivity Center (TPC) 210  
TotalStorage Productivity Center for Fabric 265  
TotalStorage Productivity Center for Replication (TPC-R) 7, 71, 266  
TotalStorage Productivity Standard Edition (TPC-SE) 265  
TPC for Disk 585  
TPC for Replication 137  
TPC Information Center 284  
TPC topology viewer 286  
TPC-BE 284  
TPC-R 114, 495  
track 97, 116  
Track Managed Space 477  
Track Space Efficient (TSE) 16, 96, 346, 373  
Track Space Efficient Volumes 96  
translation control entry (TCE) 58  
transposing 103

trap 538, 540  
troubleshooting and monitoring 441

## U

UCB 496  
UDID 444  
Unit Control Block (UCB) 496  
Unit Device Identifier (UDID) 444  
user accounts  
DS CLI 361  
user assistance  
DS CLI 366  
user management  
using DS CLI 225  
using DS SM 228  
user management using DS SM 228  
user role 280

## V

value based licensing 237  
value based pricing 5  
VDS support  
Windows Server 2003 416  
VERITAS Volume Manager (VxVM) DMP 456  
virtual capacity 102  
Virtual Private Network (VPN) 196  
virtual space 96–97  
virtualization  
abstraction layers for disk 86  
address groups 107  
array sites 88  
arrays 88  
benefits 111  
concepts 85  
definition 86  
extent pools 91  
hierarchy 109  
host attachment 108  
logical volumes 93  
ranks 89  
volume group 108  
VM guest 490  
volume groups 108, 334  
volume manager 102  
volume relocation 101  
volumes  
CKD 94  
VPN 15  
VSE/ESA 491  
vxdiskadm 469

## W

warranty 236  
Web UI 210, 215  
web-based user interface (Web UI) 210  
window  
rack operator 32  
Windows 403

SDD 404  
Windows 2003 406  
WLM 171  
workload 165  
Workload Manager 171  
write penalty 151  
write threshold 494  
WWPN 421

## X

XRC 13, 133  
XRC session 345

## Z

z/OS  
    considerations 475  
    VSE/ESA 491  
z/OS Global Mirror 11, 13, 19, 23, 114, 133, 135  
z/OS Global Mirror session timeout 345  
z/OS Metro/Global Mirror 13, 131, 133  
z/OS Workload Manager 172  
z/VM considerations 490  
zHPF 5, 19, 180, 494  
    Extended Distance 5  
    extended distance 181  
    multitrack 181  
zIIP 139

**IBM**



**Redbooks**

# **IBM System Storage DS8700 Architecture and Implementation**

(1.0" spine)  
0.875" <-> 1.498"  
460 <-> 788 pages







# IBM System Storage DS8700 Architecture and Implementation



**Dual IBM POWER6  
based controllers  
with up to 384 GB of  
cache**

**Automatic and  
dynamic data  
relocation with Easy  
Tier**

**2 TB SATA drives and  
600 GB 15K rpm FC  
drives**

This IBM Redbooks publication describes the concepts, architecture, and implementation of the IBM System Storage DS8700 storage subsystem.

This book has reference information that will help you plan for, install, and configure the DS8700 and also discusses the architecture and components.

The DS8700 is the most advanced model in the IBM System Storage DS8000 series. It includes IBM POWER6-based controllers, with a dual 2-way or dual 4-way processor complex implementation. Its extended connectivity, with up to 128 Fibre Channel/FICON ports for host connections, make it suitable for multiple server environments in both open systems and IBM System z environments. If desired, the DS8700 can be integrated in an LDAP infrastructure.

The DS8700 supports thin provisioning. Depending on your specific needs, the DS8700 storage subsystem can be equipped with SATA drives, FC drives, and Solid State Drives (SSDs). The DS8700 can now automatically optimize the use of SSD drives through its *no charge* Easy Tier feature. The DS8700 also supports Full Disk Encryption (FDE) feature.

Its switched Fibre Channel architecture, dual processor complex implementation, high availability design, and the advanced Point-in-Time Copy and Remote Mirror and Copy functions that incorporates make the DS8700 storage subsystem suitable for mission-critical business functions.

**INTERNATIONAL  
TECHNICAL  
SUPPORT  
ORGANIZATION**

**BUILDING TECHNICAL  
INFORMATION BASED ON  
PRACTICAL EXPERIENCE**

IBM Redbooks are developed by the IBM International Technical Support Organization. Experts from IBM, Customers and Partners from around the world create timely technical information based on realistic scenarios. Specific recommendations are provided to help you implement IT solutions more effectively in your environment.

**For more information:  
[ibm.com/redbooks](http://ibm.com/redbooks)**